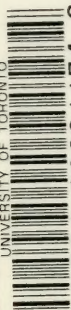


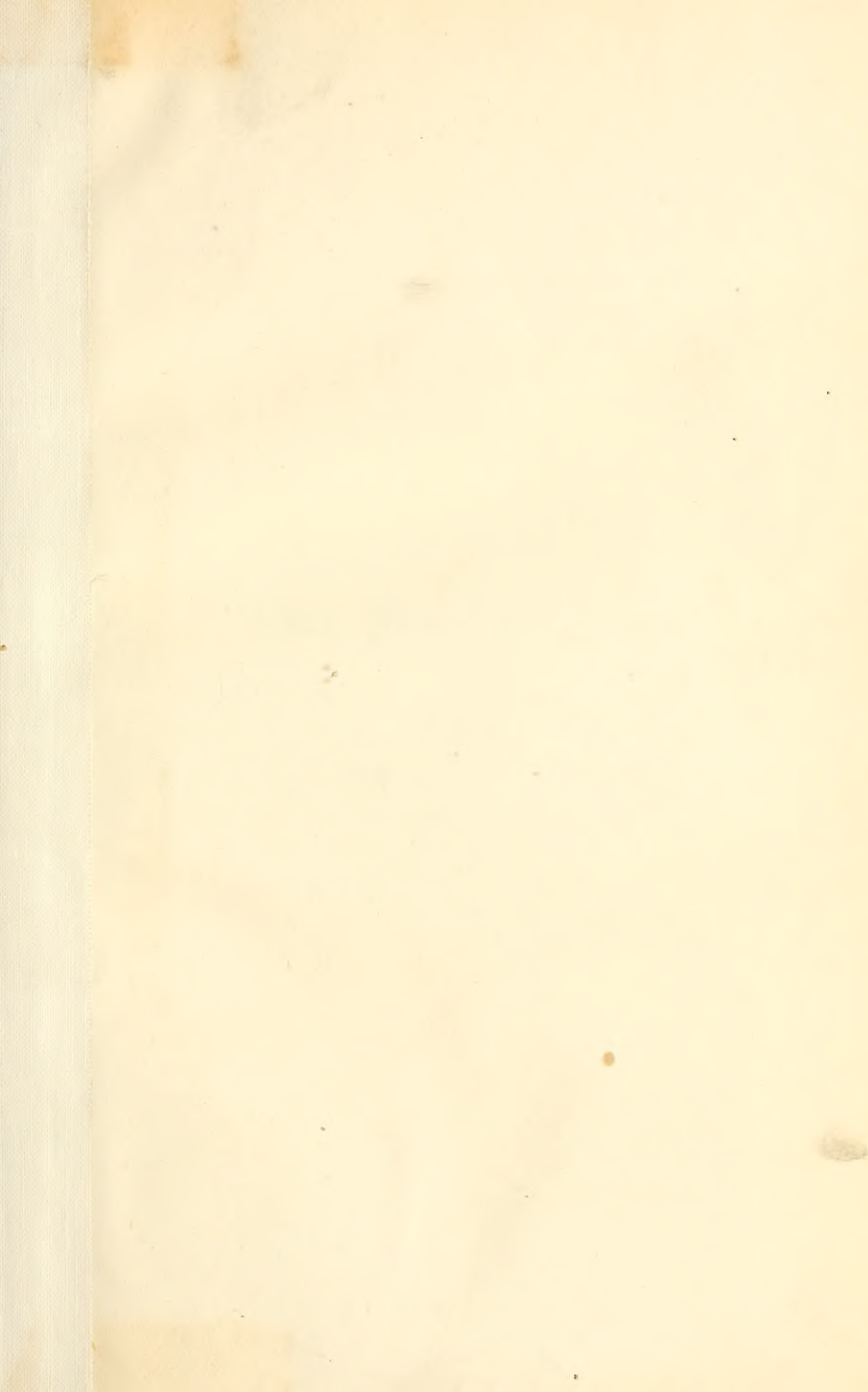
UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 00361174 6











# Duke Huon of Burdeaux.

---

Early English Text Society.

Extra Series, Nos. XLIII, L.

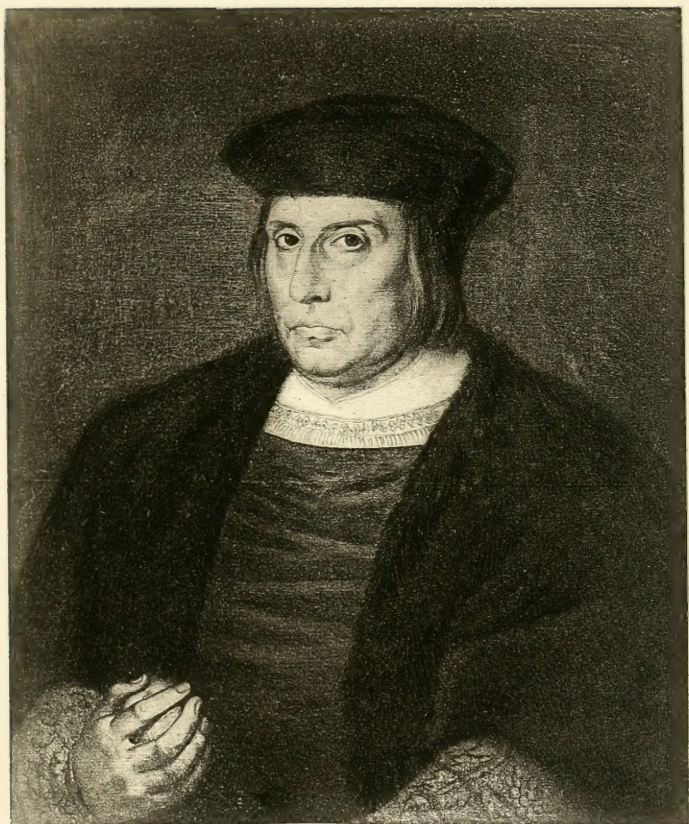
1884, 1887.

BERLIN: ASHER & CO., 5, UNTER DEN LINDEN.  
NEW YORK: C. SCRIBNER & CO.; LEYPOLDT & HOLT.  
PHILADELPHIA: J. B. LIPPINCOTT & CO.

41, 43, 50







*Sir John Bourchier, Knight,  
Second Baron Berners (1469-1533)  
from a painting by Hans Holbein  
now in the possession of the Hon. H. Tyrwhitt Wilson.*



Early English Text Society  
[Publications]: Extra Series

THE

Nos. 41<sup>^</sup> 43<sup>^</sup> 50

ENGLISH CHARLEMAGNE ROMANCES.

Pts. VIII, IX, XII

The Boke of

# Duke Huon of Burdeaux

done into English by

Sir John Bouchier, Lord Berners,

and printed by Wynkyn de Worde about 1534 A.D.

EDITED FROM THE UNIQUE COPY OF THE FIRST EDITION,

NOW IN THE POSSESSION OF THE EARL OF CRAWFORD AND BALCARRES,

with an Introduction,

BY

S. L. LEE, B.A.,

BALLIOL COLLEGE, OXFORD.

VOL. II.

38077  
7/10/96

LONDON:

PUBLISHED FOR THE EARLY ENGLISH TEXT SOCIETY

BY N. TRÜBNER & CO., 57 & 59, LUDGATE HILL.

MDCCCLXXXIV, MDCCCLXXXVII.

PR

1119

E5

no. 41,

etc.

Extra Series,

XLIII, L.

---

R. CLAY AND SONS, CHAUCER PRESS, BUNGAY.



## PREFATORY NOTE.

THE portrait which is prefixed to this volume will, I hope, prove of some general interest. As the work of Holbein, and a memorial of a first discoverer of the capacities of English prose, it deserves a very prominent position among portraits of English men of letters. The original painting is at Keythorpe Hall, Leicestershire. It has been reproduced here for the first time by the kind permission of its owner, the Hon. H. Tyrwhitt Wilson. Lord Berners is represented in the robes of the Chancellor of the Exchequer: he holds in his right hand a lemon to protect him (according to a contemporary belief) from the plague, to which his presence in the Exchequer Court frequently exposed him. The picture is described by Mr. Ralph Wornum in his edition of Horace Walpole's *Anecdotes of Painting* (i. 82), but Dr. Alfred Woltmann in his elaborate book on Holbein makes no mention of it. The present engraving is the work of Messrs. Dawson of the Typographic Etching Company.

I regret that I have been unable to complete the reprint of this romance in a second part. The tale of Huon's wife, Esclaramonde, and of the treacherous advances made towards her by the Emperor of Germany (*chapters* lxxxvi—clvii), is alone printed here. The concluding portions of Lord Berners' work, relating the wooing and marriage of Huon's daughter, Clariet, the repulsive trials to which Ide, Clariet's daughter, was subjected, and the early fortunes of Croisant, Ide's son (*chapters* clviii—clxxxiv), are reserved for a third part. For that part I am also preparing glossaries of the proper names, places, and obscure words, with appendices on the leading differences in the language of the first and third editions, and on

some of the more curious legends introduced into the story. Lovers of fairy lore may find much to interest them in the pages that follow. Huon's second journey to the East (pp. 361 *et seq.*), to obtain succour in behalf of his wife and child, involves him in more marvellous perils than any he met with in his earlier travels. The descriptions of Judas Iscariot (pp. 363-7) and of Cain are singular examples of the mediæval mythology that grew out of scriptural history. The account of the last days of Oberon (pp. 597-606) is, like many passages in the first part, worthy of notice in future commentaries on Shakespeare's *Midsummer Night's Dream*.

The length of this romance will doubtless deter all but a very few students from proceeding very far in its perusal. It must in fairness be admitted, too, that the plot works sluggishly, wanting in rapid energy, and abounding in detail, which the modern critic will denounce as superfluous. But such incidents as those to which I have drawn attention effectively relieve the story's prolixity, and the never unmelodious monotony of its language is at times broken, as I have shown before, by tones of the purest beauty. It is moreover in its bulk, as in all other respects, an excellent representative of the popular literature of sixteenth-century England. And let us remember that it is not in effect much longer than an ordinary three-volume novel of our own day, with which in an historical sense it invites comparison. It therefore behoves lovers of the fiction of the present age to treat *Huon of Burdeaux*, its author, and those sixteenth-century readers who could eagerly devour its pages, sympathetically: for the judgment that we pass to-day on Lord Berners' book and its first enthusiastic patrons, assuredly awaits three centuries and a half hence whatever may survive of the light literature of our own time, and ourselves, who reward it with a golden homage.

I desire to take this, the first opportunity allowed me, of correcting a misstatement made by Mrs. T. H. Ward in the *Athenæum* (August 18th, 1883), to disprove an assertion of mine that appeared in the same journal five weeks earlier. Mrs. Ward there set among her "facts" the remark that "Lord Berners—unless Mr. Lee has some quite fresh information, in which case I must plead ignorance—

died on March 16th, 1532," and she proceeded to point out, that as I accepted March 10th, 1533, for the date of the completion of an important translation of Lord Berners—"the Golden Boke of Marke Aurelie"—I made "the translation finished nearly a year after the translator's death." If Mrs. Ward had done me the honour of turning to my record of the life of Lord Berners in the Introduction to Part I, published in January last, she might possibly have avoided the frequently repeated error into which she has here fallen. I showed there that notices of the death of Lord Berners in Mr. James Gairdner's *Papers of Henry VIII* (vol. vi, nos. 238 and 239) prove conclusively that, reckoning the new year, as is the modern custom, from the first of January, he died on March 16th, 1533. The makers of biographical dictionaries have, I know, antedated the event by one year in their forgetfulness of the well-known fact that with Lord Berners' contemporaries the twenty-fifth day of March was the first day of a new year. The mistake is one worth correcting permanently, and I hope to be able to do so in the article on Lord Berners that I am writing for Mr. Leslie Stephen's new *Dictionary of National Biography*. As for Lord Berners' relations to so-called Euphuism, which was the original subject of my brief controversy with Mrs. Ward, I am quite ready to admit that Dr. Landmann, in a work privately printed at Giessen in 1881, was the first, as Mrs. Ward has shown, to call attention to the important influence he exerted in the matter; but I do not imagine that Lord Berners' connexion with Euphuism is so thoroughly understood in England as to make such a re-statement of the facts as I intend to give in an appendix wholly a work of supererogation.

S. L. LEE.

26, Brondesbury Villas, London, N. W.

December 26, 1883.






## Huon of Burdeux.

¶ Howe kynge Oberon deuysyd with his  
 knyghtes in his cyte of Mommure in the  
 4 fayrre of the dedes of Huon of Burdeux, &  
 of that<sup>1</sup> sholde fall<sup>2</sup> after to hym.

Ca. .lxxxvi.

8  Han kynge Oberon was departyd fro  
 Burdeux he came to his cyte of Mom-  
 mure. Than<sup>3</sup> he began sore to wepe.  
 Than Gloryaunt demaundyd of hym  
 why he made that sorow. 'Gloryauns,'

Oberon returns to  
 Mommur and  
 bewails the sad  
 fate that is still  
 in store for Huon.

12 quod Oberon, 'it is for the vnhappy Huon / he is alone,  
 and I knowe well here after he shalbe betrayed, and  
 all for Esclaramonde his wyfe / for though<sup>4</sup> he haue or<sup>5</sup>  
 this tyme sufferyd greate trauayle and myche trouble  
 16 and pouerte / yet I knowe surely that he shall suffer  
 more than euer he dyd, & he shal<sup>6</sup> haue no socoure of  
 any man lyuyng' / 'why, sir,' quod Gloryauns, 'how  
 can that be? / for Huon is a grete lorde, & hath many  
 20 frendes, and is the moost hardyest knyght now lyuyng /  
 & he is at accorde with kynge Charlemayn, therfore he  
 were a greate foole that wolde make hym any warre, &  
 do hym any dyspleasure' / 'well,' quod Oberon, 'god  
 24 ayde hym in all his affayres / for or<sup>5</sup> it be longe he shall  
 haue myche to do.' Thus Oberon entred in to his ryche  
 palays, & sayd agayne, 'A, fre<sup>7</sup> knyght Huon, I know  
 well ye shalbe betrayed for the loue of your wyfe, who

Esclaramonde will  
 cause him much  
 suffering.

<sup>1</sup> which.      <sup>2</sup> happen.      <sup>3</sup> and there.      <sup>4</sup> that.      <sup>5</sup> ere.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. lxxv. back, col. 1.      <sup>7</sup> deare.

is fayre and good, and yf ye take not good hede ye shall leue her and your selfe in grete perell of deth / and yf ye scape the deth, yet shall you suffer suche payne and pouerte that there is no clerke lyuynge so 4 sage that can put it in wrytynge.' 'Syr,' quod Gloryauns / 'me thynke this can not be, seynge the loue that is now betwene hym and Charlemayn.' 'Gloryauns,' quod Oberon, 'yet I say agayne to<sup>1</sup> you *that*, or<sup>2</sup> this 8 yere be passyd, Huon shalbe in such distres, and so hardely kept, that yf he had .x. realmes he wolde gyue them all to be out of that daunger that he shalbe in' / than Gloryauns was pensyue, and sayd / 'A, *sir*, for 12 goddes sake neuer leue Huon your frende in suche daunger / but rather socoure hym' / 'nay, surely,' quod Oberon, 'that wyll I not doo / syn<sup>3</sup> I haue promysyd hym my dygnyte & londe; he shal not be aydyd 16 nor socouryd by me, for he shalbe closyd in suche a plase *that* I wolde not go thether for .x. of the best cytyes of the worlde.' Now let vs retourne to<sup>1</sup> Huon, beynge in his palays at Burdeux. 20

Nor will Oberon  
aid him,

now that Huon  
will one day bear  
his crown.

¶ How Huon toke homage of his men & chastesyd his rebelles, & of .iii. pylgremes, by whom myche yll fell <sup>4</sup>after, as ye shall here. Ca. .lxxxvii. 24



The lords of  
Bordeaux do  
homage to Huon.

After that kynge Charlemayn was departyd fro Burdeux & that Huon was retournyd, he assambled all his barons, to whom he made good chere, 28 and there they toke there londes & fees of hym & made there homage. Than he toke a .M. chosyn knyghtes with hym, & rode in his londes & tooke possessyon of townes & castelles, 32 & was obeyed in euery place except of one Named

<sup>1</sup> vnto.

<sup>2</sup> before.

<sup>3</sup> seeing.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. lxxv. back, col. 2.

Angelers, who was cosyn germaine to Amaury, whom Angelers, a relative of the Earl Amaury,  
 Huon had slayne before at Parys before themperour  
 Charlemayn for y<sup>e</sup> loue of Charlot / this Angelers was  
 4 false & a traytoure, & he had a stronge castell with / in  
 a<sup>1</sup>.iii legges of Burdeux / he wolde not holde of Huon resists Huon's authority,  
 nor obey hym, tho he was his lege man / whan Huon  
 saw that he wolde not holde of hym nor do hym  
 8 homage, he was sore dyspleasyd, and made promyse that,  
 yf that he mygth gette hym parforce, he wolde surely  
 hange hym vp & <sup>2</sup>as many as were in the castell.<sup>3</sup> than  
 Huon assaylled y<sup>e</sup> castell, & they within defendyd Huon marches to take his castle,  
 12 them<sup>4</sup> valyauntly / so that many were hurt and slayne  
 of<sup>5</sup> both partes / Huon was there .viii. dayes & coude  
 not wyn y<sup>e</sup> castell / than Huon ordenyd before the  
 place a payre of galowes, & on<sup>6</sup> y<sup>e</sup>.ix. day he made a which falls after nine days' siege.  
 16 freshe assault by suche force<sup>7</sup> that he wan y<sup>e</sup> castell  
 & entred parforce. Angelers was taken & .lx.<sup>8</sup> men Angelers and his men are taken and hanged.  
 with hym, & they were al hangyd on y<sup>e</sup> galowes. Than  
 Huon gaue the castell to<sup>9</sup> one of his knyghtes /<sup>10</sup> than  
 20 he departyd & went to the castell of Blay, where as he  
 was receyued with gret ioy / and the fayre Esclaramonde  
 was in her<sup>11</sup> palays at Burdeux well acompenyd with  
 ladyes & dameselles / & as they were deysynge to  
 24 gyther, there entred into y<sup>e</sup> palays .iii. pylgremes who Three pilgrims visit Esclaramonde at Bordeaux.  
 ryght humbly salutyd the lady Esclaramonde. 'Syr,'  
 quod y<sup>e</sup> lady, 'I pray you shew me out of what cowntre  
 ye are come' / 'dame,'<sup>12</sup> quod one of them, 'know for  
 28 trouth that we are come fro Ierusalem, & haue made  
 our offerynge to the holy sepulture. we haue sufferyd  
 myche pouertie in oure iurnay, wherfore, lady, we  
 requyre you humbly for the loue of our lorde Jesu  
 32 Cryst to gyue vs sum meet.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'ye  
 shall haue ynough' / & than she commaundyd two of

<sup>1</sup> omitted.<sup>2</sup> Fol. lxvi. col. 1.<sup>3</sup> with him.<sup>4</sup> selues.<sup>5</sup> on.<sup>6</sup> vppon.<sup>7</sup> strength.<sup>8</sup> Fortie.<sup>9</sup> vnto.<sup>10</sup> and.<sup>11</sup> the.<sup>12</sup> Madame.

They are well  
entertained,

but soon set out  
for Vienna.

On their way they  
meet Duke Raoul,  
who was  
hawking.

He is a traitor

and a mover of  
war.

He welcomes the  
pilgrims,

and asks how  
they have fared.

her knyghtes to se<sup>1</sup> y<sup>e</sup> pylgremes sholde haue meet and  
drynke / & so they were set at y<sup>e</sup> end of the hall, & a  
table coueryd for them, & thereon brede & fleshe &  
wyne / they were well serued. Than the duchess 4  
Esclaramonde went to vysyt them, & demaundyd where  
they were borne & whether they wolde go. ‘Dame,’<sup>2</sup>  
quod they, ‘we be all .iii. borne at Vyene, & thither we  
wolde retourne’ / ‘syrs, god be your gyde,’ quod the 8  
lady, & she gaue them .x. Florence, wherof they had  
grete ioy & thankyd y<sup>e</sup> duchess. <sup>3</sup>Alas! that gyft was  
yll imployed,<sup>4</sup> as ye shal here <sup>5</sup>after. They departyd  
& toke ther way, & trauayled so longe that on a twes- 12  
daye <sup>6</sup>they aryued halfe a legge fro Vyene / & ther they  
met duke Raoull, who was goynge a hawkyng / he  
was a grete & puyssaunt lord of londes & seynoryes, &  
hardy in dedes of armes. grete damage<sup>7</sup> it was that he 16  
was such a traytoure, for a more subtylman coude not  
be knowen / for all the dayes of his lyfe he was euer a  
mouer of warre & stryfe & to do treason, without  
hauynge regarde other to kynne or other / god con- 20  
founde hym / for by hym & hys cause Huon sufferyd  
so myche yll that it cannot be recountyd. This duke  
Raoull was to mary / thus as he was in the feldes a  
hawkyng, & .xx. knyghtes with hym, he met the sayd 24  
thre pylgremes, & anone he knew them. Than he rode  
to them & sayd, ‘syrs, ye be welcom home’ / they were  
ioyfull, whan they saw the duke, there lord, salute them  
so humbly, & for ioy therof they shewed hym such 28  
newes that by y<sup>e</sup> occasyon therof .xx. M knyghtes lost  
after theyr lyues, & Raoull hymselfe receyued y<sup>e</sup> deth /  
& Huon had suche trouble that he had neuer none  
suche before, as ye shall here <sup>5</sup>after. Than the duke 32  
sayd to the pylgremes / ‘frendes, I pray you shew me  
by what countrees ye haue passyd to com hether.’

<sup>1</sup> that.

<sup>2</sup> Madame.

<sup>3</sup> but.

<sup>4</sup> bestowed.

<sup>5</sup> here.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. lxvi. col. 2.

<sup>7</sup> pittie.



‘Syr,’ *quod* they, ‘we haue passyd by Fraunce, & fyrst  
 we were at Burdeux, & there we founde y<sup>e</sup> duches  
 Esclaramonde, wyfe to Huon of Burdeux, of whom ye  
 4 haue herd so myche spekyng of.<sup>1</sup> she is so fayre &  
 so well fourmyd,<sup>2</sup> so swete, pleasaunt, & gracyous as can  
 be deuysyd. she is doughter to the admyrall Gaudys,  
 whom Huon hath slayne, & taken her to his wyfe /  
 8 grete damage<sup>3</sup> is it *that* Huon sholde haue suche a  
 wyfe / for she were meter to be wyfe to a pusaunt  
 kinge, for who so euer had suche a wyfe to lye by  
 myght wel say *that* there were none lyke her in all y<sup>e</sup>  
 12 worlde / wolde to our lorde god, *sir* / that she were  
 your wyfe’ / whan the duke herde that, he chaungyd  
 coloure & greatly couertyd the lady in his herte / so  
*that* he was stryken with<sup>4</sup> such<sup>5</sup> sparke of that for the<sup>5</sup>  
 16 byrnyng loue that he had to the lady Esclaramonde,<sup>6</sup>  
 he promysed & sware that he wolde haue her, who so  
 euer sayd the contrary, & sayd howe<sup>7</sup> he wolde slee  
 Huon, & than haue Esclaramonde to his wyfe. Thus  
 20 duke Raoull sware the deth of Huon /<sup>8</sup> than he departyd  
 fro the pylgremes. yll was employed<sup>9</sup> the almes that  
 Esclaramonde had gyuen them.

They tell him how  
 Esclaramonde  
 receiued them at  
 Bordeaux,  
 and how fair  
 she is,

and how worthy  
 to be the wife of a  
 greater prince  
 than Huon—even  
 of Raoul himself.

The Duke swears  
 that he will wed  
 Esclaramonde.



¶ How duke Raoull of Austrych, by the  
 24 reporte of the pylgremes, was amourous of  
 the fayre Esclaramonde / and of the tornay  
 that was cryed,<sup>10</sup> to thentent to haue slayne  
 Huon.

Capitulo .lxxxviii.

<sup>1</sup> for.      <sup>2</sup> fauoured.      <sup>3</sup> pittie.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. lxvi. back, col. l.      <sup>5-5</sup> violent and.      <sup>6</sup> as.

<sup>7</sup> that.      <sup>8</sup> and.      <sup>9</sup> bestowed.      <sup>10</sup> proclaimed.



Duke Raoul announces his intention to visit his uncle the Emperor of Almayne, and secretly resolves to hold a great tournament, to which Huon is to be induced to come to meet his death.

A messenger is sent to the Emperor asking him to arrange the tournament at Mayence,

and he does as he is requested.

Raoul assembles his barons and makes them swear to compass the death of Huon,

Thus duke Raoull retournyd to the cyte of Vyen ryght pensyue, and sent for his preuey counsell, & than he commaundyd them to assamble as myche<sup>1</sup> 4 people as they coude, by cause he sayde that he wolde goo to his vncl thempour of Almayne / to whom he sent a secret message that he shold cause the tournay to be cryed<sup>2</sup> in 8 sum conuenient place, to thentent that the knyghtes of Almayne and of other countrees sholde assemble there. The false traytoure dyd it for a craft, to thentent that Huon by his prowes and hardenes sholde 12 come to that tournay. The messenger rode forth tyll<sup>3</sup> he came to Strabrouge, where as he founde thempour, who was vncl to Raoull, for he was thempours brothers sonne / whan thempour herde the message he 16 was ioyfull / <sup>4</sup>whan he herd those<sup>4</sup> newes fro his neuewe duke Raoull, whom he loued entyerly / and to do hym pleasure he sent to all londes vnder his obey-saunce, to all knyghtes and <sup>5</sup>squyers suche as of custome 20 were wont to iust and tournay, desyrynge them to come at a day assygnyd to the cyte of Mayence, for there he wolde kepe open courte. <sup>6</sup>thempour knewe not for what entent his neuewe Raoull had deuysyd that 24 tournay. Alas ! he dyd it<sup>7</sup> to fynde<sup>8</sup> place to slee Huon, to thentent to haue his wyfe Esclaramonde. Than duke Raoull on a day assembled his barons, speecially suche as he had parfyte trust in / he shewed them at 28 length<sup>9</sup> y<sup>e</sup> cause why he had assembled all that<sup>8</sup> people / to go to the tournay. ‘ Therefore, syrs,<sup>10</sup> I wyll that ye sware to me the deth of Huon of Burdeux / for I wyll that ye & I togyther<sup>11</sup> put <sup>12</sup>to our payne<sup>12</sup> to slee hym / 32

<sup>1</sup> many.      <sup>2</sup> proclaimed.      <sup>3</sup> vntill.

<sup>4-4</sup> and not a little pleased to heare such.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. lxvi. back, col. 2.      <sup>6</sup> Now.      <sup>7</sup> but.      <sup>8</sup> the.

<sup>9</sup> large.      <sup>10</sup> quoth he.      <sup>11</sup> omitted.

<sup>12-12</sup> all our vttermost.

- & than I wyll wed his wyfe, of whom I am so amourous *that* I can not slepe nor take any rest' / y<sup>e</sup> same tyme that they thus made promyse & sware y<sup>e</sup> deth of
- 4 Huon, There was amonge them a varlet with duke Raoull who in his youghth had serued Huon of Burdeux / and<sup>1</sup> whan he vnderstode<sup>2</sup> yf Huon came to the tournay, howe<sup>3</sup> he sholde be murderyd / as preuely as he coude /
- 8 he departyd fro Vyene, & neuer restyd tyll<sup>4</sup> he came to the cite of Burdeux, where as he founde duke Huon in his palays with his lordes, who had been<sup>5</sup> aduertesyd that there sholde be<sup>6</sup> a great tournay at Mayence in
- 12 Almayne / and he deuysyd with his lordes<sup>7</sup> to go thether. The same tyme thether came<sup>8</sup> the varlet,<sup>8</sup> who<sup>9</sup> humbly salutyd duke Huon, who sayd to hym, 'frend, where hast thou ben so longe?' 'Syr,' quod the varlet,
- 16 'I come now fro Viene in Austrych, and<sup>10</sup> duke Raoull who is lorde there<sup>11</sup> hathe cryed<sup>12</sup> a tournay in euery countre, and,<sup>13</sup> syr, yf ye go thether ye shalbe slayne / for thys tournay is deuysyd for none other entent / for<sup>14</sup>
- 20 by cause it is<sup>15</sup> well knowen that there can be no hye dedes of armes done in any place / but that ye wyll be<sup>16</sup> at it. and whan they haue slayne you y<sup>e</sup> duke Raoull wyll haue<sup>17</sup> the duches your wyfe in mariage ;
- 24 therefore, syr, for goddes sake aduyse you well that ye come not there, in as moch as ye loue your lyfe / for ye can not scape / there be a .xx. M men that hath sworne your deth ;<sup>18</sup> yf ye enter in to the tornay ye can
- 28 neuer scape the deth / and I haue herde duke Raoull swere that when he hath slayne you he wyll kepe all your londes.' When duke Huon hadde herd the verlet / he sware by god and made<sup>19</sup> promyse that
- 32 duke Raoull sholde derely by his fals treason. Then

and to aid him in his quest of Esclaramonde.

One of the Duke's servants had of old served Huon,

and goes to Bordeaux to warn him of the plot against his life.

Huon contemplates going to Mayence when the man arrives,

and reveals the danger which threatens his old master.

Huon swears to make Raoul own his treachery.

<sup>1</sup> now.    <sup>2</sup> that.    <sup>3</sup> there.    <sup>4</sup> vntill.    <sup>5</sup> before.

<sup>6</sup> held.    <sup>7</sup> how.    <sup>8-8</sup> after time.    <sup>9</sup> and.    <sup>10</sup> where.

<sup>11</sup> of.    <sup>12</sup> proclaymed.    <sup>13</sup> but.    <sup>14</sup> omitted.    <sup>15</sup> too.

<sup>16</sup> present.    <sup>17</sup> Fol. lxvii. col. 1.    <sup>18</sup> therefore.

<sup>19</sup> a solemn.

Esclaramonde  
begs her husband  
not to go from  
Bordeaux.

But Huon is deaf  
to her entreaties,  
and declares he  
will set out at  
once to slay the  
traitor.

Esclaramonde  
begs him to take  
many armed men  
with him,

and offers to go  
with him herself.

the duches Esclaramonde kneled downe before Huon & sayd, 'A, syr,<sup>1</sup> I desyre you to forbere your goynge thyther at this tyme / for I haue herd often reputed<sup>2</sup> that this duke Raoull is pusant & hath grate londes, &<sup>3</sup> 4 is nephew to themperour of Almayne / and also I haue herde saye that a falsen traytoure there is none lyuynge in this worlde.' 'Dame,'<sup>4</sup> *quod* Huon, 'I haue well herd you / but by y<sup>e</sup> lorde that fourmed me to his 8 ymage, thoughe I sholde lose halfe my londes I wyll go<sup>5</sup> se y<sup>e</sup> traytoure / what weneth<sup>6</sup> he to abasshe me with his thretnynges? / yf I may mete hym in<sup>7</sup> the tornay, or in any other place where so euer it be, though he 12 had with him .x. M men of armes, and that I had but alonely my swerde in my hande, I shall sle him what so euer sholde fall therof, and let oure lorde god do with me as it shall please hym; <sup>8</sup>nor<sup>8</sup> I shall neuer 16 haue ioye at my herte tyll I haue slayne hym.' When the duches herde Huon, how he wolde do none other wyse, & that she coulde not let him of his enterpryce, she was sorowfull, and sayde, 'Syr, syn<sup>9</sup> it is your plea- 20 sure / reason it is that I muste be content / but yet, syr, I desyre you to take with you .x.M. men well armyd, to thentent *that* ye be not founde vnprouyded, so that yf ye be assayled<sup>10</sup> ye may be of<sup>11</sup> pusaunce to 24 resyste your enemyes / & also<sup>8</sup> that it <sup>12</sup>may be youre pleasure that I may<sup>12</sup> go with you; & I wyll <sup>13</sup>be armed with<sup>14</sup> shelde <sup>8</sup>& helme<sup>8</sup> & swerde by my syde, & yf I may mete duke Raoul, I shall gyue hym suche a buffet 28 that I shall stryke hym from his horse, &<sup>15</sup> I am so dyspleased with hym that there is no membre<sup>16</sup> in me but that trembleth for angre /<sup>17</sup> I shall neuer haue ioye at my herte tyll I be reuenged of hym.' When Huon 32

<sup>1-1</sup> Deare Lord.      <sup>2</sup> repeated.      <sup>3</sup> besides.

<sup>4</sup> Madame.      <sup>5</sup> to.      <sup>6</sup> thinketh.      <sup>7</sup> at.      <sup>8-8</sup> omitted.

<sup>9</sup> seeing.      <sup>10</sup> yet.      <sup>11</sup> sufficient.

<sup>12-12</sup> will please you to suffer me to.      <sup>13</sup> Fol. lxvii. col. 2.

<sup>14</sup> my.      <sup>15</sup> for.      <sup>16</sup> ioynt.      <sup>17</sup> and.



herde the duches his wyfe he was wel comforted, &  
 began to laugh, & sayde, 'fayre ladye, I can<sup>1</sup> you grete  
 thanke for your wordes, but ye are to farre gone with  
 4 chyld to ryde armed; it is a seuen monethes past syn  
 ye were fyrst with chylde' / then Huon made to be  
 cryed<sup>2</sup> in all his londes that euery man sholde be redy  
 to go with hym to the tornay at Mayence. The dukes  
 8 entent was anone knowen through<sup>3</sup> all the countre, so  
 that it<sup>4</sup> spred a brode that<sup>5</sup> the brute therof came to the  
 herynge of duke Raoull / and, when he herd that Huon  
 wold come to the tornay, he was<sup>6</sup> ioyfull therof / then  
 12 he sware that he wolde go and se Esclaramonde in the  
 guyse of a pylgreme /<sup>7</sup> then he toke<sup>8</sup> on a beggers gar-  
 ment and<sup>9</sup> a staffe & a wallet / he shewed his entent to  
 them of his preuey counsell. they wold haue stopped  
 16 his goynge, but they coude not / thus he appareled him  
 selfe lyke a begger / and with an herbe rubbed so<sup>10</sup> his  
 face and handes that suche as hadde not sene hym<sup>11</sup>  
 apparelled coude not haue knowen hym, he was so  
 20 foule and blacke.<sup>12</sup> he desyred his men to kepe secret  
 his enterpryce. Then he departyd fro Vyen, & neuer  
 rested tyll he came to the cyte of Burdeux, and so wente  
 to<sup>13</sup> the palays &<sup>14</sup> founde Huon amonge his barons,  
 24 makynge grete chere and feest, for to<sup>15</sup> hym was come  
 dyuers lordes and knyghtes, deuysynge of the tornay  
 that shold be holden at Mayence. Thus Raoull came  
 before Huon, & desyred hym for the honoure of our  
 28 lorde god to gyue hym some mete & almes. 'Frende,'  
 quod Huon, 'thou shalt haue ynough / but I pray the  
 tell me<sup>16</sup> fro whens thou comest, and whyther thou wylt  
 go, & of what countre thou arte of'<sup>5</sup> / 'sir,' quod Raoul,  
 32 'I am<sup>16</sup> borne of the countre of Berry, but it is .xx. yere

Huon tells her  
 that her health  
 will not allow  
 her to bear him  
 company.

Proclamation is  
 made throughout  
 Bordeaux bidding  
 all knights  
 accompany Huon  
 to Mayence.

Raoul hears of  
 Huon's intention,

and disguising  
 himself like a  
 pilgrim, desires to  
 visit  
 Esclaramonde.

He leaves Vienna  
 and arrives at  
 Bordeaux.

He sees Huon  
 among his barons,

and begs for  
 sustenance.

<sup>1</sup> giue.    <sup>2</sup> proclaimed.    <sup>3</sup> out.    <sup>4</sup> being.    <sup>5</sup> omitted.

<sup>6</sup> not a little.    <sup>7</sup> and.    <sup>8</sup> putte.    <sup>9</sup> tooke.    <sup>10</sup> on.

<sup>11</sup> otherwise.    <sup>12</sup> then.    <sup>13</sup> vnto.    <sup>14</sup> where he.

<sup>15</sup> Fol. lxxvii. back. col. 1.    <sup>16</sup> was.

He tells a lying story of his pilgrimage and previous life.

passed syn I was there. when I departed thens I was but yonge, for yf I sawe <sup>1</sup>nowe before me <sup>1</sup>my father or mother, I shold not know them; & syr, I come fro beyonde y<sup>e</sup> see, where as I haue ben prysoner amonge <sup>4</sup>y<sup>e</sup> sarazyns y<sup>e</sup> space of .xiiii. yeres in a stronge castell, where I haue suffred moche dysease of hungre & colde, & at <sup>2</sup>last I scaped by reason of a yonge man to whome I promysed, <sup>3</sup>yf he coude brynge me to Acre in saue <sup>8</sup>garde, that I wolde then gyue hym twenty ducates of golde / the yong man was couetous to haue the money, and founde the meanes that he brought me to Acre, where as I founde a kynnesman of myn who payed the <sup>12</sup>yonge man <sup>4</sup>that I <sup>5</sup>promysyd <sup>6</sup>hym / and also he gaue me .xv. ducates, the whiche I haue spent with comyng hyther.' 'Frende,' quod Huon, 'I praye to <sup>6</sup>god to ayde the, for yf thou were not soo yll apparelled thou <sup>16</sup>sholdest seme a man of a hye lygnage / for it semeth to me, yf thou were wel armyd and wepene, and were in some bysenes, thou were lyke ynough to be fered.'

Huon receives him kindly.

¶ How after that duke Raoull had ben at <sup>20</sup>Burdeux in the guyse of a pylgreme to se the fayre lady Esclaramonde, he retournyd agayne to Vyen. Capitulo .lxxxix.

Raoul in his disguise dines with Huon and Esclaramonde.



After that Huon had longe deuysed <sup>24</sup>with Raoull / he wasshed & sate downe to dyner, & the duches his wyfe by him / then Huon commaunded that at the ende of the table, ryght before <sup>28</sup>his table, Raoull the pylgreme to be set, & <sup>7</sup>was well serued / but Raoull hadde lytell care other of mete <sup>8</sup>or drynke, for his thought was of another

<sup>1-1</sup> after mother.    <sup>2</sup> the.    <sup>3</sup> that.  
<sup>4</sup> the money the which I had.    <sup>5</sup> had.    <sup>6</sup> vnto.  
<sup>7</sup> there he.    <sup>8</sup> Fol. lxvii. back, col. 2.

- mater wherupon he sore studied / for before him he  
 saw the noble duchess Esclaramonde, of whom he was  
 so amorous that he coude not *with*draw his eyen fro  
 4 her / for the more he beheld her the more he was  
 enbrased *with*<sup>1</sup> loue / he thought he neuer sawe before  
 soo fayre a lady in all his lyfe / so *that* for the grete  
 beaute *that* was *in* her / he chaunged often tymes his  
 8 coloure, but it coude not be *perceyued* by cause he was  
 so blacke & foule *with* rubbyng of certeyn herbes / &  
 he sayd to<sup>2</sup> him selfe / that who so euer had suche a  
 lady to his wyfe myght wel make auaunt to be the  
 12 happyest man of y<sup>e</sup> worlde,<sup>3</sup> *that* myght<sup>4</sup> haue his  
 pastyme *with* so fayre a lady / & sayd,<sup>5</sup> by the lorde  
*that* fourned him / though he sholde be dampned in  
 hell for euer / he wold slee Huon & haue his wyfe in  
 16 maryage, & all Huons londes to be his for euer. Alas,  
*that* it had not pleased our lord god *that* at *that*<sup>6</sup> houre  
 Huon might haue knowen the treason of Raoull / he  
 sholde then haue bought it ful derely. When y<sup>e</sup>  
 20 traytour had eten and made good chere / Huon gaue  
 hym<sup>7</sup> gowne / shyрте / hosen & shoes / & money for  
 his dyspence / Raoull toke it, he durst not refuse it,  
 but thanked Huon / & so toke his leue & departed, he  
 24 durst no lenger tary for fere of knowlege / & as soone  
 as he coude he departed out of the towne / of his  
 iourneys I wyll make no longe rehersall / but he  
 laboured so longe *that* he aryued at Vien; then he  
 28 went to his palays, where as he was well receyued of  
 his lordes / & they laughed when they sawe hym in  
*that* apparell / then *with*in a whyle after he made hym  
 redy, & his men, who were a grete nombre, & so  
 32 departyd fro Vyenn, & toke the way to Mayence.  
 When his vnckle, the emperoure of almayne, was aduert-  
 tised of his comynge / he wente & met hym *without*

His love for the  
fair lady grows  
apace,

and he swears to  
slay Huon and  
make her his own  
wife.

Huon, however,  
gives him  
clothing and  
money,

and he journeys  
back to Vienna.

Soon afterwards  
he leaves Vienna  
for Mayence.

<sup>1</sup> her.<sup>2</sup> within.<sup>3</sup> euen he.<sup>4</sup> but.<sup>5</sup> swore.<sup>6</sup> this.<sup>7</sup> a.

His uncle, the  
Emperor of  
Germany,  
welcomes him  
warmly.

y<sup>e</sup> towne to do hym the more honour, & when he saw  
hym he was ioyefull, & kyssed hym & sayd, 'fayre  
nephew, I am glad of your <sup>1</sup>comynge; I haue longe  
desyred to se you.' y<sup>e</sup> good emperour knew nothyng<sup>4</sup>  
of y<sup>e</sup> treason *that* his nephew had purchased agaynst  
Huon of Burdeux / for yf he had knowen it / to haue  
dyed in the quarel he wolde neuer haue consented to  
*that* treason. thus hande in hande themperour & his<sup>8</sup>  
nephew Raoull entred *with* grete ioye *in* to y<sup>e</sup> cyte  
of Mayence, where as they were hyghly receyued /  
grete ioy was made at theyr comynge; moch people  
were in the towne, come thyder to iust & tourney, and<sup>12</sup>  
many other to beholde the tryumphe. Now let vs  
speke of Huon of Burdeux.

A tournament is  
arranged.

¶ How duke Huon toke leue of the duches  
his wyfe, & how he aryued at Mayence &<sup>16</sup>  
went to the palays. Capitulo .lxxxx.

Huon leaves  
Bordeaux for the  
tournament at  
Mayence.



¶ Hen Huon saw his tyme to departe fro  
Burdeux to go to y<sup>e</sup> turney to<sup>2</sup> Mayence,  
he made redy his trayn, & toke *with*<sup>20</sup>  
him .x.M. men of armes for the garde  
of his parson of <sup>3</sup>the best horse men in  
all his countre / then he toke his leue of y<sup>e</sup> fayre Esclara-  
monde his wyfe, who began sore to wepe when she saw<sup>24</sup>  
his departure / ryght swetly they kyssed togyther at  
theyr departyng / then he toke his hors & he & his  
company departed fro Burdeux / & rested not tyll<sup>4</sup> he  
cam to Coleyn on y<sup>e</sup> ryne, ther he taryed .ii. dayes to<sup>28</sup>  
refresshe him, & on<sup>5</sup> y<sup>e</sup> .iii. day he armed him<sup>6</sup> &  
called his company before him, & said, 'syrs, I wyl  
take leue of you al, for none of you shal go *with* me. be  
nothyng abasshed / for he *that* alwayes hath saued me<sup>32</sup>

He is strongly  
guarded at his  
departure,

but he leaves his  
companions at  
Cologne, and  
proceeds alone.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxviii. col. 1.

<sup>4</sup> vntill.

<sup>2</sup> at.

<sup>5</sup> vpon.

<sup>3</sup> Fol. lxviii. col. 2.

<sup>6</sup> selfe.



- out of all perelles wyll not forsake me at this tyme' /  
 when his men herde him they had grete meruayle /  
*that* he wolde take his vyage alone, & he said to<sup>1</sup> them,  
 4 ' syrs, haue no doute of me *that*<sup>2</sup> I shal<sup>3</sup> dye tyll<sup>4</sup> myn  
 houre be come' / they of Coleyn enquiryed nothynge of  
 theyr estate, for as then there was no warre, & they Huon's men-at-  
 byleued *that* they wolde go to the tourney / when his arms marvel at  
 8 lordes saw he wold <sup>5</sup>go alone,<sup>5</sup> they were sory *that* he his resolve.  
 wold go to the tourney alone, and sayd one to another,  
 ' we fere gretly he shall neuer returne agayne / & we  
 shall neuer haue suche another mayster agayne' / ' syrs,'  
 12 *quod* Huon, ' ye shall not nede to take any sorowe  
 for me / for certaynly I knowe well yf any peryllous  
 besynes sholde come to me, *that* I shold be ayded by Huon puts vain  
 kyng Oberon' / but he neded not to haue sayd so, for trust in king  
 16 when kyng Oberon departed fro him, he bad him not Oberon.  
 to trust vpon any ayde fro him, & therfore Huon was a  
 fole, & yll aduysed to truste theron, or to vndertake so  
 peryllous an enterpryce as he dyde, wherby he was in  
 20 grete peryll of dethe, as ye shall here<sup>6</sup> after.
- ¶ When Huon was redy he lepte on<sup>7</sup> his horse  
 without any styrrup, clene armed as he was, & after  
 stretched him so in his styrropes that y<sup>e</sup> lethers  
 24 streyned out thre fyngers ; he was apusauite knyght,  
 armed or vnarmed, & gretly to be fered / he toke leue  
 of his men & left them wepyng in y<sup>e</sup><sup>8</sup> cite of Coleyn /  
 then he rode towards y<sup>e</sup> cite <sup>9</sup>of Mayence ;<sup>10</sup> so longe  
 28 he rode *that* he had a syght of the cyte, & then he sawe  
 aboute in the medow many tentes & ryche paulyons,  
 pyght vp with pomelles of fyne golde shynnyng agaynst  
 the sonne / Huon behelde them well, & so passed forth  
 32 & entred in to the cite, where as he sawe euery strete full  
 of knyghtes & squyers abydyng<sup>11</sup> y<sup>e</sup> daye of<sup>12</sup> turney

<sup>1</sup> vnto.<sup>2</sup> for.<sup>3</sup> not.<sup>4</sup> vntill.<sup>5-5</sup> thus depart.<sup>6</sup> here.<sup>7</sup> vpon.<sup>8</sup> that.<sup>9</sup> Fol. lxviii. back, col. 1.<sup>10</sup> and.<sup>11</sup> there vntill.<sup>12</sup> the.

and arrives at the palace where the Emperor and his nephew are staying.

Duke Raoul, he learns, is looking forward to marrying some great lady.

Huon knows of his design on his wife,

and enters the hall of the palace.

Huon passed forth tyl<sup>1</sup> he came to y<sup>e</sup> palays, where as he founde themperour & his nephew raoul, whom Huon loued but lytel, as he shewyd wel shortly after, as ye shal here / when Huon was come before the palays he 4 sawe themperour & Raoull his nephew goynge vp y<sup>e</sup> stayres, then Huon met with a gret almayn, & sayd to him, ‘frende, I pray thee shew me what be yonder two prynces that goth vp y<sup>e</sup> stayres, & that so moch 8 honour is done to them.’ / ‘sir,’ quod he, ‘y<sup>e</sup> fyrst is themperour, & he that foloweth is his nephew, duke Raoull / he was sone to themperours brother / the turney that shal be made is done for the loue of him, & at his 12 request, & after the tourney he thynketh to mary a grete lady, whose name shall not be knowen tyll the turney be done’ / when Huon herde that he blusshed in the face for the gret yre that he was in, for he knew 16 wel that Raoull, if he coude fynde y<sup>e</sup> meanes, <sup>2</sup> he wyll<sup>2</sup> haue fro him his wyfe the fayre Escclaramonde / but he promysed in his mynde that fyrst he sholde derely by her / ‘frende,’ quod Huon, ‘I desyre you<sup>3</sup> do so 20 moche for me as to holde my horse tyl<sup>1</sup> I retorne agayne out of the hal, & that I haue spoken with y<sup>e</sup> emperour & with his lordes / ‘syr,’ quod the squyer with a good wyll, ‘I shall here holde your hors tyl<sup>1</sup> ye 24 come’ / now god ayde Huon, for or<sup>4</sup> he myght retourne he was in grete peryll of deth, as ye shall here.

¶ How Huon slew duke Raoul in the presence of themperour syttyng at his 28 table / and of the meruayles <sup>5</sup> that he dyd, & how in the chase that was made after him he strake downe themperour and wanne his good horse. Capitulo lxxxxi. 32

<sup>1</sup> vntill.    <sup>2</sup> f would.    <sup>3</sup> to.    <sup>4</sup> ere.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. lxviii. back, col. 2.



4 **H**uon, who was full of yre & dys-  
 pleasure, went vp in to the palays &  
 came in to y<sup>e</sup> hall, where as he founde  
 moche<sup>1</sup> peple; there was themperour,  
 who had<sup>2</sup> wasshed his handes, &  
 was set at the table / Huon preased  
 forth before the table *with* his swerde in his hande, &  
 8 sayd, 'noble emperoure, I coniure the by y<sup>e</sup> grete vertu  
 deuyne, & by your<sup>3</sup> parte of paradyce, &<sup>4</sup> that your  
 soule<sup>5</sup> to be dampned yf case be that ye say not the  
 trouth & gyue trewe iugement *with* out falshode, nor  
 12 to spare to say the trouth for no man lyuyng, though  
 he be your nere<sup>6</sup> parent' / 'frende,' *quod* themperour,  
 'say your pleasure, & I shall answere you' / 'sir,'  
*quod* Huon, 'yf ye had<sup>7</sup> weddyd a lady, & loue her  
 16 derely, & *that* she be fayre / good / swete / & sage / &  
 replete *with* all good vertues / & *that* ye knowe surely  
*that* she loueth you entyrelly as a good true wyfe ought  
 to loue her lord & husbonde, & then a traytoure  
 20 pryuely to purchase your dethe for loue of your wyfe /  
 & yf by aduenture after ye fynde him in y<sup>e</sup> felde /  
 or in towne, medowe / or wood / in palays / or in hall,  
 & *that* ye myght accomplysshe your thought & your  
 24 desyre agaynst the same traytour who dyd purchase  
 the sayd treason agaynst you / I demaunde then of you  
 yf ye wolde slee him or not?' / 'frende,' *quod*  
 themperour, 'ye haue coniured me; I shall answere you  
 28 to the trouth / not for y<sup>e</sup> valewe of x cytes I wyll not  
 lye /<sup>8</sup> knowe for trouth yf I had a wyfe, such<sup>9</sup> one as  
 ye speke of / adorned *with* such fayre vertues,<sup>10</sup> wherof  
 there be many suche / how be it, yf I had suche one as  
 32 ye resyte, & that I knewe surely that she loued me  
 enterly / then<sup>11</sup> yf I knewe any man lyuyng that wolde

Huon lays his  
 case before  
 the Emperor,  
 although he omits  
 all names.

The Emperor  
 declares that any  
 traitor pursuing  
 a wife who dearly  
 loves, and is  
 dearly loved by  
 her husband, is  
 worthy of death  
 wheresoeuer he  
 may be found.

1 many.      2 newly.      3 hopefull.      4 or.      5 is.  
 6 nearest.      7 haue.      8 therefore.      9 a.      10 and.

11 Fol. lxxviii. col. 1 (this should be lxxix, lxxviii repeated).

purchase me suche a treason / thoughe he were my nere  
parent, yf I myght fynde him, in what soeuer place it  
were <sup>1</sup>in<sup>1</sup>, and though I shold be slayne in the quarell,  
there shold nother<sup>2</sup> chyrche,<sup>3</sup> aultre, <sup>1</sup>nor crucefyx<sup>1</sup> <sup>4</sup>  
that sholde saue his lyfe / but that with my two handes  
I shold slee him ; and also my herte sholde serue me  
further / that after I hadde slayne hym / I wolde  
drawe out his herte out of his body, and ete it for <sup>8</sup>  
dyspyte.' When Huon herde the emperour, he sayd /  
' o, ryght noble and vertuous emperoure / iust and  
trewe iugement ye haue gyuen / the which I repeale  
not / but I shall shewe you what hath moued me to <sup>12</sup>  
demaunde of you this iugement / yf suche a case sholde  
a<sup>4</sup> fallen to<sup>5</sup> you / and, syr, to y<sup>e</sup> entent that ye shall  
know y<sup>e</sup> trouth what hath me moued thus to do / <sup>1</sup>syr,<sup>1</sup>  
ye may se here before you he that wolde do<sup>6</sup> lyke case <sup>16</sup>  
agaynst me, which is your neuewe Raoul / who hath  
purchased my deth lyke a cruell and a false traytoure,  
to the entent to haue Esclaramonde my wyfe, and all  
myne herytages / the iugement that ye haue gyuen is <sup>20</sup>  
iust and trewe / ye shall neuer be blamed in any  
courte / but ye shall therin be named a noble prynce /  
and therfore, syr, <sup>7</sup>I haue founde<sup>7</sup> so nere me <sup>1</sup>he<sup>1</sup> that  
purchaseth<sup>8</sup> my dethe & shame / I sholde neuer be <sup>24</sup>  
worthy to appere in any prynces courte without I were  
reuenged of hym / and I had rather dye then to forbere  
him any lenger ' / ther with he drew his swerde / <sup>9</sup>when  
Raoull sawe the clerenes of the swerde he was a frayde, <sup>28</sup>  
bycause he was vnarmed / how be it, he thought that  
Huon wolde not haue ben so hardy as to do hym any  
hurte in the presence of his vncle the emperoure ; but  
when he sawe that Huon dyde lyft vp his swerde to <sup>32</sup>  
stryke hym, he was in greate fere, and fledde to the  
Emperoure to saue his lyfe / but Huon parceyued hym

Huon then  
accuses Raoul of  
working evil  
against him and  
his wife,

and drawing his  
sword, cuts off  
Raoul's head.

1-1 omitted.      2 be.      3 nor.      4 haue.      5 vnto.  
6 in.      7-7 hauing found him.      8 for.      9 and.

- so quye<sup>1</sup>kely that he strake hym with a reuerse<sup>2</sup> in  
 suche wyse that he strake of his heed from his sholders,  
 and the body fell downe before the Emperoure / and  
 4 the heed fell on<sup>3</sup> the table in the dysshe before the  
 Emperoure, wherof he hadde great doloure / 'god gyue  
 me good lucke,' quod Huon ; 'this traytoure shall neuer  
 be amorous of my wyfe,<sup>4</sup> I am sure ynough of hym.'
- 8 The emperoure, who satte at the table, hadde grete  
 sorowe at his herte when he sawe his neuewe deed  
 before hym / then he cryed alowde and sayde, 'Syr,  
 ye my barons, loke that this knyght scape you not ; I  
 12 shall neuer ete nor drynke tyll<sup>5</sup> I se hym hanged. I  
 sholde haue greate sorowe at my herte yf he sholde  
 escape.'

The Emperor is  
 greatly grieved to  
 see his nephew  
 slain,

and bids his  
 guards seize  
 Huon.

- Huon vnderstode him wel, and fered hym but lytell /  
 16 but with his swerde he layde on rounde aboute hym  
 and strake of armes, handes, and legges, so that there  
 was none so hardy that durst approche nere to hym ; he  
 slewe so many that it was ferefull to beholde hym /  
 20 within a shorte space he hadde slayne mo then eyght  
 and twenty / and the emperoure was in suche fere that  
 he wyst not how to saue himselfe for the grete  
 meruayles that he sawe Huon doo / he doutyd bycause  
 24 he was vnarmed / and Huon cryed & sayd, 'traytours,  
 I doute you nothyng.' then on all partyes Almayns  
 & Bauyers assayled Huon / but he defended hym<sup>6</sup> by  
 suche force and puyssaunce, that by the murder that  
 28 he made the bloode ranne vpon y<sup>e</sup> pauement lyke a  
 ryuer / Huon might haue taryed to longe, for the  
 emperoure and his men wente and armed theym / and  
 Huon, who sawe well that he coude not longe endure  
 32 without<sup>7</sup> paryll of dethe / strykyng with his swerde  
 rounde aboute hym / he withdrewe backe downe the  
 stayres of the palayes, and none durst approche nere

Huon is furious,  
 and slays twenty-  
 eight of the men  
 who lay hands on  
 him.

After much  
 bloodshed, Huon  
 makes his escape.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxxviii. col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> stroke.

<sup>3</sup> vpon.

<sup>4</sup> for now.

<sup>5</sup> vntill.

<sup>6</sup> himself.

<sup>7</sup> great.



A cousin of  
Raoul challenges  
him on leaving  
the palace.

They fight  
together fiercely,

but the German  
falls from his  
saddle, and is  
killed.

Huon is beset on  
all sides,

and does marvels  
with his sword.

him bycause they were vnarmed, and for feere of him.  
Huon, by his hye prowes for al his <sup>1</sup>enemyes, came to<sup>2</sup>  
his horse and mountyd on<sup>3</sup> hym, and so yssued out /  
and there was a knyght called Galeram, who was cosyn <sup>4</sup>  
germayn to duke Raoul, and he was clene armed and  
mounted on a good horse / and he folowed Huon, and  
sayde, ‘<sup>4</sup>horseson and thefe,<sup>4</sup> thou hast slayn duke  
Raoull, my cosyn ; without thou tourne to<sup>2</sup> me I shall <sup>8</sup>  
stryke the behynde.’ When Huon herde hym he sware  
he had rather dye then to refuse too tourne too<sup>2</sup> hym /  
soo<sup>5</sup> he tourned, and they couched theyr speres / and  
mette so fyersly togider that they gaue eche other <sup>12</sup>  
meruaylous<sup>6</sup> strokes / Galerames spere brake all to  
peces / and Huon, who had employed all his force and  
vertu, strake Galeram on<sup>3</sup> the shelde with his spere /  
the whiche was bygge and stronge / soo that Galeram <sup>16</sup>  
fell out of the<sup>7</sup> saddle so rudely that in the fall he brake  
his necke, and so lay deed on<sup>3</sup> the erth ; & Huon, who  
thought he had not ben deed, returned agayne to hym /  
but when he sawe that he stered not / he departed <sup>20</sup>  
thense / but he taryed very longe / for he sawe well  
he was closed in rounde aboute, and sawe wel without  
god had pyte of hym he was not lyke to scape without  
deth or taken prysoner / they cast on hym dartes and <sup>24</sup>  
swerdes ; one with a sharpe swerde cam to<sup>2</sup> hym and  
gaue hym a grete stroke / but his <sup>8</sup>harneys<sup>8</sup> saued his  
lyfe, for all the strokes that he<sup>9</sup> receyued he neuer  
remoued out of his sadell. Whan Huon saw in what <sup>28</sup>  
daunger he was in<sup>10</sup> / he called vpon oure<sup>11</sup> lorde god,  
humbly prayenge hym to delyuer hym out of that  
paryll / with his swerde he dyde meruayles / he slewe  
and claued hedes to the brayne ;<sup>12</sup> he semed rather a <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxxviii, back, col. 1.    <sup>2</sup> vnto.    <sup>3</sup> vpon.  
<sup>4-4</sup> Abide, Villaine.    <sup>5</sup> then.    <sup>6</sup> great.    <sup>7</sup> his.  
<sup>8-8</sup> good armour.    <sup>9</sup> had.    <sup>10</sup> omitted.  
<sup>11</sup> the.    <sup>12</sup> that.

- spyryte of hell then a man, for he that had sene hym  
 wolde haue sayde that he had ben noo mortall man / he  
 sawe passe by hym a knyght of Almayne / called syr  
 4 Hans Sperguer / as he passed by / Huon gaue hym  
 suche a stroke that he claue hym<sup>1</sup> to the gyrdell, wherof  
 the Almaynes were so abashed that none durst  
 approche nere to hym, they fered him so<sup>2</sup> sore. Alas  
 8 that his men at Coleyne had not knowen what case he  
 was in / they were to<sup>3</sup> farre of / Huon, who fared lyke  
 a wylde boore ; he layde on rounde aboute hym so that  
 his swerde was all bloody of y<sup>e</sup> men that he had slayne  
 12 and maymed / they cast dartes at him, so that at last  
 his horse was slayne vnder hym, wher of he was sorow-  
 full ; how be it, lyke a coragious knyght, with his  
 swerde he<sup>4</sup> foughte valyauntly *with* his enemyes /<sup>5</sup> he  
 16 sawe where the erle of Seyne com to hym to haue  
 stryken hym with his swerde, but Huon mette with<sup>2</sup>  
 hym so hastily that he had no layser to stryke hym,  
 and Huon gaue hym suche a stroke that his helme  
 20 coude not saue his lyfe / for Huons swerde entred in  
 to his brayne, and so fell downe deed amonge the horse  
 fete / Huon, who was quicke and experte, toke the deed  
 knyghtes horse and lept vpon hym / and when he sawe  
 24 that he was new horsed agayne he was ioyfull, and  
 then he was able to departe in the spyte of all<sup>2</sup> his  
 enemies / but themperour, who had gret sorow at his  
 herte for the deth of his neuwe Raoull, made grete  
 28 haste after Huon with .x. thousande men with hym,  
 and so came fro Mayence<sup>6</sup> on the sporres, desyryng to  
 ouertake Huon / and so rode on before his men, for his  
 horse was so good *that* he wold rynne as fast as a  
 32 byrde coude flye / in al y<sup>e</sup> world there was no horse  
 lyke to<sup>2</sup> hym / the emperoure on this horse folowed  
 Huon / & as he rode he sawe all the waye deed men lye

He attacks his  
enemies like a  
wild boar,

but his horse  
is killed under  
him.

He soon obtains  
another horse,

and rides away.

The Emperor  
pursues with ten  
thousand men,

and follows as  
fast as a bird  
flies.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxxviii, back, col. 2.    <sup>2</sup> omitted.    <sup>3</sup> so.

<sup>4</sup> still.    <sup>5</sup> and.    <sup>6</sup> all.

Huon is  
overtaken,

and the Emperor  
vows his death.

The knight turns  
to fight with his  
enemy.

The Emperor is  
stricken to earth,

and Huon, seizing  
his swift horse,  
takes to flight.

The Germans  
find their  
sovereign like to  
die,

that Huon had slayne / he sporred his horse that anone  
he ouer toke Huon, and sayd / 'thou traytoure, tourne  
thy shelde towards me, or elles my spere shall go  
through thy body, for y<sup>e</sup> sorowe that lyeth at my herte 4  
for loue of my neuewe, whom thou hast slayne, con-  
strayneth me to make hast to be reuenged <sup>1</sup>vpon<sup>2</sup> thee,  
nor I shal neuer haue ioy at my hert tyl<sup>3</sup> I haue slayne  
the / moche it greueth me that I am constrayned to 8  
slee the with my spere, for I had rather hange the.'  
When Huon herde themperour, who was so nere hym,  
and saw howe he was mounted on so good a horse / he  
called vpon our lorde god, and desyred hym of hys 12  
grace to ayde hym to conquere that horse / and when  
he sawe that the emperour was farre before his men /  
he tourned his horse heed towards the emperoure,  
and couched his spere / and the emperour came agaynst 16  
hym lyke the tempest / and they mette togyder so  
rudely that theyr sheldes<sup>4</sup> were persed, so that the  
emperours spere brake all to shyuers / and Huons spere,  
which<sup>5</sup> was<sup>6</sup> rude and stronge,<sup>7</sup> strake the emperour 20  
with suche puyssaunce that he was stryken fro his  
horse to the erth sore astonyed, so that he wyst not  
where he was / and Huon, who had greate desyre to  
haue the emperours horse, alyghtyd quyeckely fro his 24  
owne horse, and toke the emperours horse and mounted  
on hym, and was therof ryght ioyous / then he sayde  
to hymselfe that he douted not them all / he strake the  
good horse with the sporres, and founde hym quyecke 28  
and lyght vnder hym / then he lefte the emperoure  
lyenge on the erth, and<sup>8</sup> was not<sup>9</sup> contente that he was  
soo soone socoured / for yf the Almaynes hadde not  
quyeckely come Huon had slayne him /<sup>10</sup> when the 32  
Almayns cam to theyr lord, and founde hym lyeng on

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxix, col. 1.      <sup>2</sup> of.      <sup>3</sup> vntill.      <sup>4</sup> speares.  
<sup>5</sup> omitted.      <sup>6</sup> so.      <sup>7</sup> that he.      <sup>8</sup> who.  
<sup>9</sup> a little.      <sup>10</sup> but.

- the erth, they beleued<sup>1</sup> he had ben deed / they began  
 to make grete sorow, and the emperour, who was come but he revives,  
 agayne to hym selfe, sayde / 'syrs, thanked be god I  
 4 fele no hurte but I maye well ryde / but I haue grete  
 sorowe at my herte that Huon hath thus ledde awaye and grieves for  
the loss of his  
horse.  
 my good horse, and is scaped awaye, and also hathe  
 slayne my two neuwes / but, syrs, I counsell you  
 8 that none folowe hym, for it shall be but a loste <sup>2</sup>tyme  
 for the good horse that is vnder hym, and he that is on  
 hym is<sup>3</sup> valyaunt in armes /<sup>4</sup> he is gretely to be doutyd /  
 therfore I counsell let vs retourne backe agayne / for  
 12 we may lose more then we shall wyne / but by the  
 grace of god, or<sup>5</sup> it be thre monethes past, I shall  
 assemble suche a nombre of men that the valays and  
 mountaynes shall be full of men / then wyll I goo to  
 16 the cyte of Burdeaux, and wyll not departe thens tyll I  
 haue wonne it, and yf I may gette Huon I shall make  
 hym dye of an yll<sup>6</sup> deth, & shall take and wast all  
 his londes.'

The Emperor  
 declares that  
 within three  
 months Bordeaux  
 will be in his  
 hands.

\* \* \* \* \*

- 20 ¶ How Huon, after<sup>7</sup> he was mounted on<sup>8</sup> the  
 emperours good horse, he aryued at Coleyne,  
 where as<sup>9</sup> he founde his men, and how he  
 departyd thense / and of the emperoure  
 24 who lay <sup>10</sup>in a busschement<sup>10</sup> in a wode,  
 abydyng<sup>11</sup> to haue slayne Huon.

Capitulo .lxxxii. [= xcii.]

<sup>1</sup> verily.

<sup>2</sup> Fol. lxix, col. 2.

<sup>3</sup> so.

<sup>4</sup> that.

<sup>5</sup> ere.

<sup>6</sup> euill.

<sup>7</sup> that.

<sup>8</sup> vpon.

<sup>9</sup> omitted.

<sup>10-10</sup> enambushed

<sup>11</sup> there.



A knight proposes  
that an ambush  
shall be prepared  
in a little wood  
near Cologne,

and that Huon be  
there slain on his  
journey.

The Emperor  
rejoices in this  
counsel,

and declares that  
he, with ten  
thousand men,  
will carry out the  
plan.

Hus as ye haue herde, Huon departed  
with y<sup>e</sup> emperours good horse and lefte  
the emperour lyenge on the erth, who  
commaunded his barons to returne 4  
backe & not to folowe Huon any  
further / ther with there cam to the  
emperour a knyght called Godun, he was borne at  
Norembrege, & he sayde / 'syr, yf ye wyll beleue me 8  
& do after my counsell ye shall do otherwyse / ye shall  
retourne to Mayence this night & ordayne foure C<sup>1</sup> of  
suche men as ye haue here / & sende them with in two  
legees of Coleyn, on y<sup>e</sup> hye way in to Fraunce, & there 12  
ye shall fynde a lytell wood, <sup>2</sup>and there lette them lye  
<sup>3</sup>in a busschement<sup>3</sup> tyll Huon passe by them / for I  
knowe well he wyll go straye to Coleyne this nyght, &  
lodge in a frenche mans house that dwelleth there / 16  
and in the mornynge surely he wyll departe thens and  
so passe by the said busschement, so that it shall not be  
possyble to saue hym selfe alone / but other he shalbe  
slayne or taken.' When the emperoure herde Godun, 20  
he sayde / 'syr, ye haue gyuen me good counsell, and  
this is lykely to be done / but it were conuenyent to  
sende mo then foure thousande / for the grete desyre  
that I haue to gete hym in to my handes constreyneth 24  
me to cause hym to be taken, to the entent to be  
reuenged of hym / therfore I wolde go myselfe and  
take with me x thousande men, and shall goo and lye  
in the place that ye haue apoynted / for I shall neuer 28  
haue parfyte ioie at my herte as longe as Huon is  
alyue / for he hath caused moch sorowe at my herte for  
the deth of my two neuwes, whom so pyteously he  
hath slayne. let vs take oure waye a<sup>4</sup> two legees besyde 32  
Coleyne, nerer we wyll not approche, too the entent  
that our comynge be not knowen' / then he chase out

<sup>1</sup> Thousand.      <sup>2</sup> Fol. lxix. back, col. 1.

<sup>3-3</sup> enambushed.      <sup>4</sup> about.



.x. thousande of the moost valyauntes men in his  
 company, & the rest he sent backe to Mayence. Thus  
 the emperour rode forth and rode so longe that daye &  
 4 nyghte / that an houre, or it was daye, he came to the  
 said wode, & there layde his busschement.<sup>1</sup> And Huon  
 rode<sup>2</sup> after he was departed fro themperour that late in  
 the euenynge he came to Coleyne, wher as he was  
 8 receyued of his men with grete ioye / then Gerames  
 said, 'syr, I requyre you shewe vs of your aduentures' /  
 then Huon shewed them euery thyng, & the maner  
 how he had slayn duke Raoull, & how he departed fro  
 12 Mayence, & how he was pursued / and how he wanne  
 themperours good horse / then<sup>3</sup> Gerames & all the other  
 had gret ioye, and <sup>4</sup>thanked god of his fayre aduenture,  
 & had grete meruayle howe he scaped / but they knewe  
 16 nothyng what the emperour was aboute to do, nor that  
 he was in the woode abydyng<sup>5</sup> for Huon / that nyght  
 Huon and his company wære at Coleyne makynge good  
 chere / <sup>6</sup>the nexte mornynge they herd masse<sup>7</sup> / then  
 20 they mounted on theyr horses and yssued out of the  
 towne; they were to y<sup>e</sup> nombre of .xiii. M. hardy fyght-  
 yng men. and, when they were out in the feldes, Huon,  
 lyke a good man of warre, sayd / 'syrs, I desyre you  
 24 let vs kepe togyther and ryde lyke men of warre, to the  
 entent that we be not sodeynly taken;' and so they  
 dyde / the daye was fayre & clere; they myght well be  
 parceyued a farre of / as they were by the emperour of  
 28 Almain, who lay <sup>8</sup>in a busschement<sup>8</sup> for Huon. the  
 emperoure spyed them fyrst, and sayd to his company /  
 'syrs, yonder<sup>9</sup> I se moche<sup>10</sup> people comynge <sup>11</sup>to vs  
 warde<sup>11</sup> / they seme<sup>12</sup> men well experte in armes; neuer  
 32 byleue me but they be frenche men, and he *that* is theyr

The Emperor  
 reaches the little  
 wood near  
 Cologne, and lies  
 in ambush.

Huon meets his  
 companions again  
 at Cologne,

and tells them his  
 adventures.

The following  
 morning Huon,  
 with thirteen  
 thousand men,  
 leaves the city.

The Emperor sees  
 them from afar  
 approaching the  
 wood,

<sup>1</sup> ambush.      <sup>2</sup> so.      <sup>3</sup> wherat.      <sup>4</sup> Fol. lxix. back, col. 2.

<sup>5</sup> there.      <sup>6</sup> and.      <sup>7</sup> service.      <sup>8-8</sup> enambushed.

<sup>9</sup> a farre off.      <sup>10</sup> many.      <sup>11-11</sup> towarde vs.

<sup>12</sup> vnto me.

and marvels at  
the number of  
armed men.

He fears to do  
battle with Huon  
and his troops,

but urges his own  
men to bear  
themselves  
bravely.

captayne is Huon of Burdeux / he is not come hyther  
lyke a small parsonage, but he is hyghly accompanied  
lyke a grete and a myghty prynce. I se well he is  
valyaunt by that he hathe doone; he is so noble and <sup>4</sup>  
hardy that none may be compared to hym. ye haue  
well sene howe *that* he all alone came in to my palayes,  
and there slewe my neuewe duke Raoull, wher with my  
herte is in grete dyspleasure / he is gretely to be <sup>8</sup>  
douted, for without god helpe vs we shall haue ynoughe  
to doo with hym / wolde to god that he and I were at  
accordement & agreed / for he is so noble and so  
valyaunt that he fereth no man / ye haue well sene syn <sup>12</sup>  
he departed fro Mayence he hathe slayne mo then .xl.  
of my men, and hath borne me to the erthe / and he  
hath taken fro me my good horse, wherby he maye be  
well assured *that* there is no man shall take hym yf he <sup>16</sup>  
<sup>1</sup>be on <sup>2</sup>his backe / how be it, we must set on <sup>2</sup>hym,  
for my herte shall neuer be in ease as long as he lyueth /  
therfore, *sirs*, I desyre you euery man this day shewe  
the loue that ye bere to <sup>3</sup>me & the saue garde of youre <sup>20</sup>  
lyues / for to flye away auayleth not / therfore, syrs,  
set on togyther, and do so that we may haue the fyrst  
crye.' <sup>4</sup>



¶ Of the gret batayle within two legees of <sup>24</sup>  
Coleyne bytwene the emperour of Almayn  
& Huon of Burdeux, & of the trewes that  
was taken bytwene them.

Ca. .lxxxiii. [= xciii.] <sup>28</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxx. col. 1.

<sup>2</sup> vppon.

<sup>3</sup> vnto.

<sup>4</sup> aduantage.



- 4 Von, who rode before his barons  
 deuysynge with olde Gerames, re-  
 garded on his ryght hande towards  
 the lytel wood;<sup>1</sup> he sawe in the **Huon perceives**  
 wood grete clerenesse by reason of **his foemen in the**  
 the sonne shynynge on the helmes **wood,**  
 and on the spere poyntes, wherby he parceyued clerely<sup>2</sup>  
 8 that ther was moch people hyden in the wood / he  
 shewed them to <sup>3</sup>Gerames and to his other company /  
 and sayd, 'syrs, be in a suerte *that* without batayle we **and prepares his**  
 can not scape / here is themperour who lyeth in awayte **army for battle.**  
 12 for vs. I desyre you let vs do so that he shall haue no  
 cause too make ony auaunt of vs / yonder ye may se  
 them how they set them selfe *in* ordre to abyde vs,  
 therefore let vs quickly set on them' / & soo they dyd  
 16 in suche wyse that with<sup>4</sup> rynnynge of theyr horses y<sup>e</sup>  
 erth trymbled, & the sonne lost his lyght by reason of  
 the poulder that rose vp in to the ayre on<sup>5</sup> both partes /  
 Huon, who ranne before on his pusaunt horse / behelde  
 20 Godun, who was formost of<sup>6</sup> his company ; he ranne at  
 hym with a strong spere, so that he ran hym clene  
 through the body so that he fel downe deed<sup>7</sup> to the  
 erth / & with the same spere Huon met Crassyn  
 24 polynger who bare themperours baner / Huon strake him  
 so fyersly that he bare horse & man & baner al to the  
 erth,<sup>8</sup> wherof the almayns and Bauyers were sorowfull /  
 Huon dyde soo moche or<sup>9</sup> his spere was broken that he  
 28 fyrst bare fyue to the erth so that they hadde no power  
 after to releue them selfe / ther were many speres  
 broken, and many a knyghte borne to the erth that<sup>1</sup>  
 there dyed among y<sup>e</sup> hors fete / for the father coude  
 32 not helpe the sone / nor the sone coude not helpe the  
 father / and many an horse ranne a brode in the felde

<sup>1</sup> and.<sup>2</sup> plainly.<sup>3</sup> Fol. lxx. col. 2.<sup>4</sup> the very.<sup>5</sup> from.<sup>6</sup> in. <sup>7</sup> omitted.<sup>8</sup> ground.<sup>9</sup> ere.

The Earl Savary  
works much  
havoc among the  
men of Bordeaux,

but Huon gives  
him a fatal  
wound.

Huon and the  
Emperor meet on  
the field of battle,

and bitterly  
reproach each  
other.

and theyr maysters lyeng deed in the bloode and myre.  
Huon, who rode aboute in the batayle sleynge and  
woundynge his enemyes, behelde on his ryghte syde  
and sawe the erle Sauary sleynge many of them of 4  
Burdeaux. 'A, good lorde,' quod Huon, 'yf yonder  
knyght reygne longe / he shall do me grete damage.'  
Then he rode to hym / & gaue hym suche a stroke  
with his swerde so that he strake of his shulder and 8  
arme so rudely that it fell vpon the erthe / so that for  
the greate payne that the erle Sauary endured he fell  
from his horse / <sup>1</sup>& there was slayne amonge the hors  
feete, wherof themperour, who was therby, was<sup>2</sup> ryght 12  
sorowfull when he saw another of his nephewes slayn /  
& sayd, 'a, Huon, of god be thou cursed, syn *thou* hast  
taken<sup>3</sup> so many of my frendes; I shall neuer haue ioye  
in my hert tyl I haue the in my handes to hange the' / 16  
'syr,' quod Huon, 'or<sup>4</sup> ye haue taken me, ye are lyke to  
lese mo of your frendes, & beware of your selfe *that* ye  
come not in<sup>5</sup> my handes / by youre nephewe Raoull ye  
haue all this damage, who by his falsenes thoughte to 20  
haue betrayed me & to haue had my wyfe / yf I haue  
slayne your nephewes and your men, I haue done it in  
defendyng myn owne body; I say to you yf ye be not  
wel ware of me I shall brynge you to that poynt that 24  
it shall be harde for you to be caryed awaye in a lytter.'  
'Huon,' quod the emperoure, 'the grete hate that I  
haue to the for the dethe of my nephewes, <sup>6</sup>wherby I<sup>6</sup>  
fele suche<sup>7</sup> doloure at my herte that I had rather dye 28  
then that I sholde not be reuenged of the / therfore  
beware<sup>8</sup> of me, for I shall nother ete nor drynke tyll I  
haue the other quyeke or deed' / then they two wente  
backe to take theyr course togyther / but or<sup>4</sup> they met 32  
y<sup>e</sup> almayns came rynnynge thyther for<sup>9</sup> fere that they  
hadde of lesynge of<sup>2</sup> theyr emperoure / and on the other

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxx. back, col. 1.

<sup>2</sup> omitted.

<sup>3</sup> slaine.

<sup>4</sup> ere.

<sup>5</sup> to.

<sup>6-6</sup> makes me.

<sup>7</sup> much.

<sup>8</sup> thou.

<sup>9</sup> the.

- parte came thyther y<sup>e</sup> olde Gerames, who fought so  
 fyersly that whom soo euer he strake with a full stroke  
 hadde no nede of ony surgyon ; and his company fayled  
 4 not for theyr partes / and Huon with his good swerde  
 opened the thycke prese, soo that the almayns<sup>1</sup> douted  
 hym. Huon with his noble chyualry caused his enemyes  
 to recule backe halfe a bowe shotte / then there was a  
 8 knyght of almayn sawe well that without some remedy  
 were founde / the emperour & his company were lyke  
 to be slayne ; he went out of the batayle as preuely as  
 coude, and ronne on y<sup>e</sup> sporres & rested not <sup>2</sup>tyll he cam  
 12 to Coleyne / then<sup>3</sup> incontynent he rode to the prouostes  
 house, & founde him in his house newly come fro  
 masse / then y<sup>e</sup> knight sayd to him / ‘syr prouost, yf  
 euer ye wyll se the emperour a lyue, cause the comons  
 16 of this cyte to be armed, & come, & socoure themperour  
 hastely / for when I cam from hym he had gret nede of  
 ayde / ther is Huon of Burdeux, who hath slayn thre of  
 his nephewes, & this other day he was lodged in this  
 20 cite. the emperour knoweth well ye knewe nothyng  
 therof / for Huon had lodged his men in the suburbes,  
 & in other lytell houses, bycause he wolde not be  
 perceyued / syr prouost, make hast in this besynes’ /  
 24 when the prouost herd what daunger themperoure was  
 in, he sowned<sup>4</sup> the watch belle & made to be cryed in  
 euery strete that euery man that was able to bere her-  
 neys<sup>5</sup> sholde arme them / & to<sup>6</sup> go out in to the felde  
 28 to socoure themperoure, who was in grete daunger of  
 his lyfe / when the burgesses of the towne herde that  
 crye euery man armed them as well as they coude / some  
 were harneysed behynde, & some in a Jacke all smoked,  
 32 and with staues & other wepens / what a fote & a  
 horse backe, there went out of y<sup>e</sup> cyte a<sup>6</sup> .xx.M. men /  
 yf ye had sene y<sup>e</sup> horsemen, ye wolde haue laughed at

Old Gerames  
 fights with  
 youthful vigour.

A German, in  
 fear for the  
 Emperor's safety,

goes to the  
 provost of  
 Cologne, and begs  
 him arm the  
 burghers.

The watch bell  
 at Cologne is  
 sounded.

The burghers arm  
 in haste and leave  
 the city, twenty  
 thousand strong.

<sup>1</sup> greatly.      <sup>2</sup> Fol. lxx. back, col. 2.      <sup>3</sup> where.

<sup>4</sup> sounded.      <sup>5</sup> armes.      <sup>6</sup> omitted.



Very rude is their  
equipment.

The Emperor,  
after losing  
nearly all his men  
in the battle,

seeks out Huon,

and challenges  
him.

The duel begins.

The Emperor is  
flung heavily to  
the earth, and  
lies in a swoon.

them, for it semed they were set a<sup>1</sup> horse backe in dyspyte / there was neuer sene so rude <sup>2</sup>& foule a sorte<sup>2</sup> / it was no meruayle / for they <sup>3</sup>hadde not ben<sup>3</sup> accustomed to ryde in harneys / the prouost rode<sup>4</sup> <sup>4</sup> before, and exorted theym to do theyr deuours, so they toke the<sup>5</sup> way to come to the batayle, where as Huon & his company dyde parte of theyr wylles. <sup>6</sup>the emperour seyng that he began to lese his men and place, he rode <sup>8</sup> serchyng in the batayle for duke Huon / where as he founde by aduenture Huon, who had<sup>7</sup> newly slayn<sup>8</sup> the Emperoures seneschall. When that the Emperoure sawe hym slayne, he was ryght sorowful, & in<sup>9</sup> grete <sup>12</sup> rage, then<sup>10</sup> cryed to <sup>11</sup>Huon, and said / 'thou knyghte that neuer arte satysfied to shedde the bloode of my men to abate my lygnage and force, I pray the turne thy shelde to<sup>12</sup> me, for yf thou knewest the grete hate that <sup>16</sup> I <sup>13</sup>haue to<sup>13</sup> the thou woldest neuer appere before me.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'I <sup>14</sup>haue grete<sup>14</sup> meruayle that ye so sore hate me & haue taryed so long <sup>15</sup>to be reuenged<sup>15</sup> / therfore, <sup>14</sup>sir,<sup>14</sup> beware <sup>14</sup>of me<sup>14</sup> / for yf I may<sup>16</sup> I <sup>20</sup>shal<sup>17</sup> sende you after your nephewes, whom ye say that ye loue so wel' / they toke their cours with grete & rude speres / & so cam togyther lyke y<sup>e</sup> tempest, & met so rudely that y<sup>e</sup> buckles of theyr harneys<sup>18</sup> al to brast;<sup>19</sup> <sup>24</sup> themperoure spere brake all too peces / but Huons spere was bygge & rude<sup>20</sup> / <sup>21</sup>he strake the emperour therwith<sup>14</sup> by<sup>22</sup> such pusaunce that the<sup>23</sup> spere ranne through his shoulder / so that themperoure fell to the <sup>28</sup> erth so rudely that with the fall he brake the bone of his thygh / wherby he was in suche doloure that he sowned / and when Huon sawe hym lye on the grounde

<sup>1</sup> on.      <sup>2-2</sup> a company.      <sup>3-3</sup> were not.      <sup>4</sup> went.  
<sup>5</sup> their.      <sup>6</sup> and.      <sup>7</sup> then.      <sup>8</sup> by aduenture.      <sup>9</sup> a.      <sup>10</sup> he.  
<sup>11</sup> Fol. lxxii, col. 1 (this should be lxxi, which is omitted).  
<sup>12</sup> vnto.      <sup>13-13</sup> beare.      <sup>14-14</sup> omitted.      <sup>15-15</sup> for reuenge.  
<sup>16</sup> can.      <sup>17</sup> will.      <sup>18</sup> Armour.      <sup>19</sup> and.      <sup>20</sup> stronge.  
<sup>21</sup> and therewith.      <sup>22</sup> with.      <sup>23</sup> his.

he cam to hym with his swerde in his hande, and  
 had<sup>1</sup> slayne him yf he had not ben socoured / but  
 there came so many almayns, that whether Huon wolde  
 4 or not, they toke<sup>2</sup> and bare<sup>3</sup> the emperoure<sup>3</sup> out of the  
 felde, & layde hym in the wode, &<sup>4</sup> demaunded of him  
 how he dyd / 'syr,' quod he, 'I am sore hurte / for  
 my thygh is broken, wherby I endure<sup>5</sup> as moch doloure  
 8 as<sup>5</sup> I can abyde / but<sup>6</sup> I trust as for deth I shall scape  
 by the grace of god'<sup>6</sup> / when they herde that they were<sup>7</sup>  
 ioyfull / and said, 'syr, knowe for trouth<sup>8</sup> youre men  
 are sore abasshed<sup>9</sup> / for they be so<sup>10</sup> opprest by Huon  
 12 and his men / that we fere all your men shal<sup>11</sup> be  
 slayne / we shall<sup>11</sup> go agayne to the batayle & leue some  
 with you to<sup>12</sup> kepe your body'<sup>12</sup> / 'syr,'<sup>13</sup> quod the  
 emperour, '<sup>14</sup> your force nor your defence can<sup>15</sup> auayle  
 16 you nothyng<sup>16</sup> agaynste Huon / nor agaynst his men.  
 But I shall shewe you what ye shall do /<sup>17</sup> sende quyckly  
 to Huon and desyre<sup>18</sup> of<sup>18</sup> hym in my name to<sup>19</sup> sease  
<sup>20</sup> fyghtyng<sup>20</sup>, and<sup>18</sup> desyre hym<sup>18</sup> that there maye be a  
 20 truse hadde bytwene hym and me for the space of halfe  
 a yere /<sup>21</sup> in that space I trust<sup>21</sup> to fynde some other  
 treaty /<sup>18</sup> so<sup>18</sup> that he and I myghte be frendes / and yf he  
 refuse this,<sup>22</sup> I se none other remedy but that we shall  
 24 be all slayne or taken, and then he wyll cause me to dye  
 in some<sup>23</sup> pryson.' 'Syr,' quod his knyghtes, 'we shall  
 doo your commaundement / but we fere sore that we  
 shall not be herde.' 'Syr,' quod the emperoure, 'go  
 28 to hym and do the best ye can.' Then they returned  
 to y<sup>e</sup> batayle, where as they founde there company redy

Huon would have  
 slain the  
 Emperor, had not  
 the Germans come  
 to his aid.

The Emperor  
 bids his men beg  
 of Huon a truce  
 for half a year.

<sup>1</sup> would haue.      <sup>2</sup> the Emperour.      <sup>3-3</sup> him.

<sup>4</sup> then.      <sup>5-5</sup> more greefe than.

<sup>6-6</sup> but, as for death, I trust by the grace of god, I shall  
 escape it.

<sup>7</sup> all.      <sup>8</sup> that.      <sup>9</sup> discomfited.      <sup>10</sup> sore.      <sup>11</sup> will.

<sup>12-12</sup> looke vnto your Maiestie.      <sup>13</sup> Well.      <sup>14</sup> but.

<sup>15</sup> cannot.      <sup>16</sup> anything.      <sup>17</sup> ye shall.      <sup>18-18</sup> omitted.

<sup>19</sup> Fol. lxxii. col. 2.      <sup>20-20</sup> slaying of my men.

<sup>21-21</sup> for within that time I hope.      <sup>22</sup> then.      <sup>23</sup> noysome.

Messengers set  
out to beg the  
truce.

Huon willingly  
accedes to the  
request.

But, had he  
continued the  
murderous attack,  
all his enemies  
would have been  
slain, and he  
would have been  
spared much  
future trouble.

to fle away / for they were nere all slayne and taken /  
the knyghtes fro themperoure came to Huon and desyred  
hym in the name of the emperoure that he wolde sease  
the batayle and <sup>1</sup>blowe the retreyte,<sup>1</sup> and they sholde<sup>2</sup> 4  
do lykewyse in the same maner / and that there myght  
be a ferme truse bytwene them for halfe a yere / and  
in that season they trusted *that* some good wayes  
sholde<sup>2</sup> be founde that the emperoure and he myght be 8  
good frendes togyther. ‘Syr,’ quod Huon / ‘if the  
emperour your mayster hadde me in that daunger /  
that<sup>3</sup> he is in / he wolde not suffre me to scape a lyue  
for all y<sup>e</sup> golde in the worlde / how be it, I am content 12  
*that* he haue truse for halfe a yere / the which I shall  
surely kepe on my parte / and yf I be assayled I shall  
defende me / and yf so be that he come to Burdeux to  
assayle me / by the helpe of god and my good frendes, 16  
I shal doo the best that I *can* / But yf he wyll haue  
peace with me & pardon me his dyspleasure / for the  
dethe of his nephewes, I shall be redy to make peace /  
and I shal make amendes for all wronges, though I was 20  
not the begynner.’ Then Huon caused the retreyt to  
be blowen,<sup>4</sup> and in lykewyse so dyde the almayns  
who had therof grete ioie; it came to them at a good  
poynt / for or<sup>5</sup> elles all hadde ben slayne or <sup>6</sup>folye<sup>7</sup> 24  
when he had the ouer<sup>8</sup> hande<sup>9</sup> that he pursued not<sup>10</sup>  
his chase, for then he myghte haue had an ende of  
that warre, and nother shelde nor spere more broken /  
where as after many a man was slayne, and was the 28  
cause that the cyte of Burdeux was lost & the fayre  
Eslaramond taken & sette in pryson in the cyte  
of Mayence, and Huon suffred so moche payn and  
trouble / that no mortall man can shewe it / thus as ye 32  
haue herde Huon graunted the trewes, and soo bothe

<sup>1-1</sup> sound the treatie.

<sup>4</sup> sounded. <sup>5</sup> omitted.

<sup>7</sup> foyled. <sup>8</sup> vpper.

<sup>2</sup> would.

<sup>3</sup> which.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. lxxii. back, col. 1.

<sup>9</sup> now.

<sup>10</sup> still.

partes withdrewē / wherof themperour and his company  
 were ryght ioyfull. Then Huon called his company /  
 and shewed Gerames and his lordes how he had  
 4 graunted trewes to the Emperour for halfe a yere / 'and  
 therfore I charge you al not to breke the peace' / the  
 Emperoure was glad when he herde it / for he knewe  
 well that<sup>1</sup> he was<sup>2</sup> scaped a greate daunger. Then he  
 8 charged all his men on payne of deth that they sholde  
 not breke the trewes. 'And, syrs,' quod he, 'I pray  
 you make redy a lytter that I myght<sup>3</sup> be caryed to  
 Coleyne / for the payne *that* I fele in my legge causeth  
 12 all my body to tymblye / and when I come there  
 I wyll tary tyll I be hole.' 'Syr,' quod his lordes,  
 'your commaundement shall be done' / then they layde  
 the Emperoure in a lytter, sore complaynyng the losse  
 16 and dethe of his nephewes and lordes that were slayne,  
 and his legge greued hym sore. Then Huon said  
 to Gerames, 'syr, thanked be god we haue vaynquysshed  
 the Emperoure & slayne many of his men / therfore it  
 20 is good that we now returne to Burdeux. I haue gret  
 desyre to se my wyfe Esclaramonde / who thynkethe<sup>4</sup>  
 longe for my comynge; I am sure she is sorowfull that  
 I haue taryed thus<sup>5</sup> long.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'yf ye  
 24 haue grete desyre to returne, so hath all other of youre  
*seruantes*; they wold gladly se theyr wyues and  
 chyl dren, and some to<sup>6</sup> se theyr louers.'

Huon tells his  
 company how the  
 truce is made.

The Emperor is  
 borne in a litter  
 to Cologne.

Huon longs to see  
 Esclaramonde  
 again.

7¶ How Huon graunted the trewes to the  
 28 emperour, & how the *prouost* of Coleyne  
 came and assayled Huon, not knowinge of  
 any peace taken.

Capitulo .lxxxiiii.<sup>8</sup> [= xciv.]

<sup>1</sup> omitted.    <sup>2</sup> had.    <sup>3</sup> may.    <sup>4</sup> thinking.    <sup>5</sup> so.  
<sup>6</sup> would.    <sup>7</sup> Fol. lxxii. back, col. 2.    <sup>8</sup> lxxxiiii in text.



Huon sees the  
burghers of  
Cologne ad-  
vancing towards  
him,

and suspects the  
Emperor of  
treachery.

The provost of  
Cologne exhorts  
the men to fight  
well.

Hen Huon vnderstode y<sup>e</sup> olde Gerames,  
he hadde grete ioy / then he sounded  
the trompettes with suche brute *that*  
meruayle it was to here, and com- 4  
maunded euery man to set forwarde  
towards Burdeux. Then he behelde on his ryght  
hande and saw *them* of Coleyne comynge in<sup>1</sup> grete  
nombre / they were well a<sup>2</sup> twenty thousande bur- 8  
gesses and other / they came with baners dysplayde  
redy to fyght. When Huon sawe *them*, he had grete  
meruayle fro whens they sholde come so hastily. Then  
he sayde to his men / 'syrs, I parceyue clerely we be 12  
betrayde, for yf I had wold<sup>3</sup> the Emperour nor his  
men coude not haue scaped / he hath falsely betrayed  
me, syn vnder y<sup>e</sup> colour of <sup>4</sup>trewes they<sup>5</sup> to set newly  
vpon me.' Thus Huon sayde by themperour without 16  
cause, for he knew no thyng thereof, nor that any  
socoures sholde haue come to hym. 'Syrs,' quod  
Huon, 'lette vs rest here and tarye tyll they come  
nerer to vs / than let vs sette on them with suche hast 20  
that they shall not know what to do.' 'Syr,' quod  
his men, 'haue no dought we shall not fayle you for  
fere of any deth / we trust to slee so many that the  
erth shalbe couered with the deed bodyes of your 24  
enemyes' / Huon ordred his batayle, and the prouost of  
Coleyne comfortyd his men, saynge, 'syrs, our em-  
perour is dyscomfytyd by Huon and his men,<sup>6</sup> who be  
yonder abydyng before vs / they wene<sup>7</sup> to departe in 28  
saue garde / but they haue no power so to do / for the  
moost parte of *them* are sore hurt, and there horses  
sore traunaylled, wherfore they shall the sooner be  
dyscomfytyd.' Than the prouost and his men ranne 32  
quyckely vpon Huon and his men / there began a feerse  
bataylle, wherin many a valyaunt man lay on the erth

<sup>1</sup> a.

<sup>2</sup> nere.  
<sup>5</sup> come.

<sup>3</sup> pleased.

<sup>6</sup> companie.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. lxxiii. col. 1.

<sup>7</sup> thinke.



- deed / and at the<sup>1</sup> fyrst brunt ther wer so many slayne The attack is made, and the fight begins.  
*that* y<sup>e2</sup> felde was coueryd *with* deed & hurte<sup>3</sup> men ;  
 sum were ouerthrowen without any hurte,<sup>4</sup> and yet  
 4 they coude neuer asyse bycause of the<sup>5</sup> prese of the  
 horses that ranne<sup>6</sup> ouer them. Huon, who was<sup>1</sup> full of  
 yre bycause he<sup>7</sup> thought that vnder the coloure of trewes  
 he was assaylled / he ran<sup>8</sup> at a knyght who had done  
 8 <sup>9</sup>gret damage<sup>9</sup> among his men ; it was he *that* went to  
 Coleyne for that socoures / and Huon strake hym clene  
 throw the bodeye with his spere, so that he fell downe  
 deed to the erth. Than Huon cryed his crye to gader<sup>10</sup>  
 12 his men togyther / he layde on the ryght syde and on  
 the lyft / so that he cut of arnes and legges, and rasyd Huon slays the knight who had summoned this new army,  
 helmes fro y<sup>e</sup> hedes / he semyd rather a man of y<sup>e</sup> fayrye  
 than a mortall man. But he had myche to do / for his  
 16 men, who had fought all y<sup>e</sup> day, were sore trauaylled &  
 wery ; how <sup>11</sup>be it, they defendyd them selues ryght  
 valyauntly, & they<sup>12</sup> slew so many of the comons of  
 Coleyne *that* y<sup>e</sup> blode ran on the grounde in grete  
 20 stremes / and themperour, who was issued out of the The Emperor,  
 wood in his lytter, whan he came in to the felde / he  
 herde the brute & crye of the batayle, wherwith he hearing the noise, is brought into the field,  
 was sore abasshed. Than he demaundyd what noyse it  
 24 myght be. ‘Syr,’ quod a knyght, ‘it is the good  
 prouost of Coleyne, who hath brought with him the  
 commons of the citie of Coleyne to ayde and socoure  
 you.’ ‘Syr,’ quod themperour, ‘and he shal derely and is very wrathful with the prouost of Cologne.  
 28 aby<sup>e13</sup> it / how be it, I thynke he knoweth not of the  
 trewes that we haue taken with Huon / for and<sup>14</sup> I knew  
*that* he was aduertesyd therof, I shode cause hym to  
 dye an yll deth. Go to hym and commaunde hym that  
 32 incontinēt he goo to Huon too make amendes for his

<sup>1</sup> verie.

<sup>2</sup> whole.

<sup>3</sup> maimed.

<sup>4</sup> at all.

<sup>5</sup> great.

<sup>6</sup> did runne.

<sup>7</sup> had.

<sup>8</sup> fiercely.

<sup>9-9</sup> verie great hurt.

<sup>10</sup> call.

<sup>11</sup> Fol. lxxiii. col. 2.

<sup>12</sup> omitted.

<sup>13</sup> buy.

<sup>14</sup> if.

The provost  
laments the losses  
his men meet  
with.

A knight, sent by  
the Emperor, bids  
him make amends  
to Huon for  
breaking the  
truce.

The provost,  
much abashed,  
seeks out Huon,

and begs him  
have mercy upon  
him, for he knew  
nought of the  
truce.

trespas / and yf he wyll not do it I charge you incon-  
tynent<sup>1</sup> sle hym.' Whan themperour had made his  
*commaundement* to one of his knyghtes / he role as  
fast as he myght to the prouost, who was ryght sorow- 4  
full for that he hadde lost foure .M. of his comons, and  
the knyght slayne that came to hym. Than themper-  
ours knyght sayd, 'Syr prouost, ye haue done ryght  
yll / syn<sup>2</sup> ye haue broken the trewes that was made 8  
betwen hym and Huon / yf the emperour may gette  
you ye shall neuer se fayre day more / without incon-  
tynent ye go to Huon and dele so with hym that he  
be content, so that no reproche be layde to the em- 12  
perour' / whan the prouost and his company herde  
themperours *commaundement*, they were sore abashed,  
and reculed backe. And the prouost, who was in grete  
fere for that he had done / and desyrynge to accom- 16  
plysse themperours *commaundement*, strake his horse  
with the sporres, and restyd not tyll he had founde out  
duke Huon. Than he lyghtyd a fote, and toke his  
sworde, and sayd, 'A, ryght noble and vertues prynce, I 20  
<sup>3</sup>desyre the, in the honour of Jesu Cryst, haue pyte of<sup>4</sup>  
me, and pardon me the iniurye *that* I haue done<sup>5</sup> with-  
out the knowlege or lycence of themperour, who wyll  
cause me to dye a shamfull deth without ye pardone 24  
me / for all I knew not of y<sup>e</sup> trewes betwen you and  
y<sup>e</sup> emperour / for I thought he was<sup>6</sup> deed / syr, that<sup>7</sup> I  
haue done was to thentent to rescue my ryghtfull lorde,  
and therby I haue lost this day moo then .iiii. .M. 28  
burgesses and comons of the cyte of Coleyne, and y<sup>e</sup>  
most parte of my best frendes, and therefore, syr, I pray  
you haue pyte of<sup>4</sup> me, elles themperour wyll sle me or  
set me in perpetuall pryson.'

32

<sup>1</sup> to.      <sup>2</sup> seeing      <sup>3</sup> Fol. lxxiii. back, col. 1.      <sup>4</sup> on.  
<sup>5</sup> against you.      <sup>6</sup> had beene.      <sup>7</sup> which.

¶ How Huon aryued at Burdeux, and of the counsell of the rayre Esclaramonde his wyfe, the whiche he wolde not beleue nor

4 folow.

Capitulo lxxxv.



Han Huon vnderstode y<sup>e</sup> prouost / he had gret pyte, & thought that he ought lyghtly<sup>1</sup> to pardon hym, seyng that that he had done was in a iust cause, syn<sup>2</sup> he was not aduertesyd of<sup>3</sup>

Huon has pity on the provost,

8 trewes taken between themperour and hym. Than Huon aproched to the prouost, and sayd, 'frende, aryse  
12 vp, I pardon you; this trespas that ye haue done for your lorde is<sup>4</sup> reasonable / syn ye knew no thyng of y<sup>e</sup> trewes / ye haue done as a trew subyet ought to do to his lorde / I can not be angrye with you for it.'<sup>5</sup> Than

and pardons him.

16 the prouost toke leue of Huon, & retournyd to themperour, who as than was nere to Coleyne /<sup>6</sup> Huon rode forth towards burdeux, and so on a wednesday to<sup>7</sup> dynner he entred in to Burdeux, where as he was

Huon rides to Bordeaux.

20 receyued<sup>8</sup> with grete solempnyte of the Burgesses, & of all the clergie of y<sup>e</sup> cyte. Than he alyghtyd at his palays, where as he was by the duches Esclaramonde well receyued with grete ioy, and she demaundyd of

Esclaramonde welcomes him warmly,

24 hym yf he were hole and in good poynt.<sup>9</sup> 'Fayre ladye,' quod Huon, 'thanked be our lord god, I am in good helth.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'of your comynge I am ryght ioyous / & I desyre you to shew me of your

28 aduentures.' 'Dame,'<sup>10</sup> quod Huon, 'know for trouthe I haue ben at Mayence, whereas I founde themperour, and with hym was duke Roaull his neuew, who had cryed<sup>11</sup> a tournay; & bycause he was aduertesyd of my

and he relates to her his adventures.

32 commynge, his entencyone was that yf he had founde me

<sup>1</sup> in reason.    <sup>2</sup> and that.    <sup>3</sup> the.    <sup>4</sup> but.    <sup>5</sup> the same.

<sup>6</sup> and.

<sup>7</sup> about.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. lxxiii. back, col. 2.

<sup>9</sup> estate.

<sup>10</sup> Madame.

<sup>11</sup> proclaimed.

Huon continues  
his narration.

there, He was<sup>1</sup> concludyd with his men to haue slayne  
me / but by the grace of god I haue done so myche, that  
in the presence of themperour his vnclē, and before<sup>2</sup>  
all them that were there present, I strake of his hede / 4  
bycause he made his auaunt that as soone as he had  
slayne me he wolde haue you to his wyfe / & also<sup>2</sup> all  
myn herytage / & whan I had slayne hym I departyd  
in hast fro<sup>3</sup> Mayence / and it was not longe after but 8  
that themperour folowed me with all his men, mountyd  
vp on the good horse that ye haue sene, who is so good  
that I beleue surely there is not suche another in all<sup>2</sup>  
the worlde / and themperour, who had grete desyre to 12  
reuenge the deth of his neuw duke Raoull, auaunsyd  
hym selfe a bowe shote before his companye, and cryed  
after me with many iniuryous wordes. And whan I  
saw that he was far of fro his men I tournyd towardes 16  
hym, & ranne & bare hym to the erth / than I toke  
the good horse and mountyd on hym, and lete myne  
owne goo / and whan his men saw hym lyeng on the  
erthe, they feryd lest he had been deed / they assem- 20  
bled about hym, & tooke no hede to folow me, by cause  
they knew well it was but a folye to folow me, <sup>4</sup>syn<sup>5</sup> I  
was mountyd on themperours good horse. Thus I de-  
partyd fro them, and went and lay all that nyght at 24  
Coleyne, wher as I founde my men whom I had left  
there whan I went to themperours courte all alone /  
the next day I departyd / but I was not gone farre  
out of Coleyne whan themperour and .x. M. men met 28  
me in the way, where as they had lyene in a lytell  
wood in awayte for me. Than they ranne at me & at  
my men / there was a grete batayle on both partes, and  
many slayne & woundyd. But I dyd so myche by the 32  
grace of god & my good company / that I ouercame  
them, and I slew two of his newewes, and I bare

<sup>1</sup> had.    <sup>2</sup> omitted.    <sup>3</sup> to.    <sup>4</sup> Fol. lxxiii. col. 1.

<sup>5</sup> seeing.

themperour to the erth / and whan he sawe that the  
 losse of the batayle ran on his syde, he sent to me  
 than a messenger to haue trewes for halfe a yere /  
 4 the whiche I grauntyd bycause I thought I had done  
 hym dysplesure ynough as in sleynge of thre of his  
 neuwes. Thus we departyd, & as I<sup>1</sup> retournyd I met  
 y<sup>e</sup> prouost of Coleyne, who brought with hym .xx M.  
 8 men to haue rescued themperour, & so we fought  
 togyther. But as soone as themperour was aduertysed  
 therof / he sende & commaundyd hym that he sholde  
 no more fyght with me. Than the prouost came to me  
 12 & cryed me mercy for *that*<sup>2</sup> he had done, excusynge  
 hym selfe *that* he knew nothyng of y<sup>e</sup> trewes. Than  
 we made to sounde the retrayte of both partes. <sup>3</sup>Thus  
 we departyd without any moo strokes gyuyng, wherof  
 16 I thanke god *that* I am thus scapyd.' 'Syr,' quod  
 Esclaramonde, 'ye ought to thanke god *that* he hathe  
 sent you *that* grace / for I haue herde say that them-  
 perour<sup>4</sup> whom ye haue slayne his two neuwes is greate /  
 20 puyssaunt / and a ryche prynce, ryght sage and experte  
 in the warre, wherefore it is to be feeryd that he wyll  
 not let the mater thus to rest.' 'Dame,'<sup>5</sup> quod Huon,  
 'I know well this that ye say is trew; I thynke well  
 24 he be dys<sup>6</sup>pleasyd with me for y<sup>e</sup> deth of his neuwes  
 and many other of his kyn / thus, as I haue sayd, I  
 iustyd with hym two tymes / & at the seconde tyme  
 I strake hym to the erthe in such wyse that he brake  
 28 his thy, so that he was constreynyd to be borne<sup>7</sup> in a  
 lytter / and it hath ben shewed<sup>8</sup> me syn / that y<sup>e</sup> losse  
 of his good horse greuyth hym more than the losse  
 of all<sup>9</sup> his men. Lady, to shew you the paretles and  
 32 aduentures that I haue founde<sup>10</sup> syn I departyd fro  
 you, it sholde<sup>11</sup> be to longe to shew you. But surely I

Esclaramonde  
 fears that the  
 Emperor will  
 pursue the strife.

Huon knows that  
 the Emperor is  
 sore distressed  
 by his escape

and the loss of  
 his own horse,

1 he. 2 which. 3 and. 4 of. 5 Madame.

6 Fol. lxxiii. col. 2. 7 thence. 8 told.

9 omitted. 10 had. 11 would.



and he has heard  
how the Emperor  
has vowed to  
destroy the city of  
Bordeaux.

Esclaramonde  
says that her  
brother will lead  
a hundred  
thousand men  
to his assistance.

He has been a  
christian for five  
years past.

She desires Huon  
to visit him,

thynke as soone as the trewes be<sup>1</sup> expyryd, but<sup>2</sup> that<sup>3</sup>  
themperour with all his puyssaunce wyll come and  
besege me here in Burdeux, for it hath ben shewed  
me of trouthe that<sup>3</sup> themperour hath so made his oth <sup>4</sup>  
and promyse / and hath sworne by his crowne imperyall  
that he wyll not departe hense tyll he haue taken and  
dystroyed this<sup>4</sup> cyte.' 'Syr,' quod Esclaramonde, 'yf  
ye wyll beleue me / ye shall <sup>5</sup>well resyte<sup>5</sup> this, and I <sup>8</sup>  
shall tell you how / ye know well I haue a brother  
called kynge Salybraunt, who is kynge of Bougye, the  
whiche extendyth on the one syde nere too Mombrant,  
and on the other syde nere to Trypoley in Barbarye / <sup>12</sup>  
he may lede in batayle a .C.M. men / and, syr, surely  
he is a good crysten man,<sup>2</sup> how be it, ther be<sup>6</sup> but few  
that knoweth it / <sup>7</sup>this .v. yere he hathe surely<sup>7</sup> beleued  
on Jesu Cryst / and, syr, yf ye wyll go to hym, and <sup>16</sup>  
desyre his ayde by the same token *that*, whan ye were  
prisoner in Babylone, I dyscoueryd the secretnes<sup>8</sup> of  
my mynde to hym, and shewed hym of y<sup>e</sup> loue between  
you and me / and how ye sholde<sup>9</sup> lede me in to Fraunce, <sup>20</sup>  
wherof he was ioyfull, and desyred me affectuously  
that I sholde doo so myche to you / that we myght  
come and se hym in his owne realme. But the aduen-  
ture fell so that our departynge was<sup>10</sup> other wyse than <sup>24</sup>  
we had deuysyd / he was there & saw how my father  
was slayne, & all suche <sup>11</sup>as were with hym / than for  
fere he ranne away, & dyd hyde hym in a garden  
behynd the palays, and there taryed tyll it was nyght / <sup>28</sup>  
and than he stalle away, and went *in* to his owne  
realme / there shall ye fynde hym yf ye wyll goo  
thyther / I know surely<sup>12</sup> he wyll make you<sup>13</sup> good  
chere / and wyll not refuse<sup>14</sup> to <sup>15</sup>socoure you, <sup>16</sup>the <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> is.      <sup>2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> then.      <sup>4</sup> the.      <sup>5-5</sup> resist.

<sup>6</sup> are.      <sup>7-7</sup> verily he hath.      <sup>8</sup> secrets.      <sup>9</sup> would.

<sup>10</sup> fell.      <sup>11</sup> Fol. lxxiii. back, col. 1.      <sup>12</sup> that.

<sup>13</sup> exceeding great.      <sup>14</sup> for.      <sup>15</sup> ayde and.


<sup>16-16</sup> for hee will bee so exceeding puisaunt and mightie.

whiche shalbe so grete and puyssaunt<sup>16</sup> that he wyll  
 brynge with hym moo than a .C. M. sarazyns / &,<sup>1</sup> syr,  
 I wolde counsell<sup>2</sup> you to take<sup>3</sup> with you a<sup>4</sup> .v. or .vi.  
 4 prestes<sup>5</sup> furnysshyd with oyle and creme / for, as soone  
 as he hath his men oute of his owne countre, he wyll  
 cause them to be crystenyd, and suche as wyll not he  
 wyll cause them to dye an yll deth. Syr, I requyre  
 8 you beleue my counsell at this tyme / for ye know  
 well<sup>6</sup> out of Fraunce ye<sup>7</sup> get no socoure / for yf sum  
 wolde they dare not, for dought of kyng Charlemayne;  
 the hate *that* he hath to you is not yet quenched for  
 12 the deth of his sonne Charlote, he wyll neuer forget it<sup>8</sup> /  
 and, syr, yf ye go not to my brother for socoure ye may  
 happe to repent it, and peraduenture it may be to late /  
 and do as he doth that cloyth<sup>9</sup> the stable dore whan  
 16 the horse is stollen.' Thus the fayre<sup>10</sup> esclaramonde  
 exortyd duke Huon her husbonde, whom she loued  
 entyrlly.

and to take with  
him priests to  
christen his men,  
who are still  
Saracens.

Huon can expect  
no aid from  
France.

¶ How Huon had grete ioye for the byrth of  
 20 Claryet his daughter. Capitulo .lxxxvi.

11  Han Huon had well herd his wyfe he  
 sayd, 'my ryght dere lady and com-  
 24 panyon, ryght well I know the grete  
 loue that ye bere to me, the whiche  
 hathe constreynynd you to say thus,  
 wherof I thanke you. 12 By the lorde that on y<sup>e</sup> crosse  
 dyed<sup>13</sup> to redeme humayne lynage, I wyll go to no place  
 28 nor sende for any socoures / tyll<sup>14</sup> I se them befor my  
 cyte, and that I haue cause to purchase<sup>15</sup> for socoures,  
 nor tyll<sup>14</sup> I fele the strokes of y<sup>e</sup> Almayns and bauyers  
 that they can gyue whan they be out of there owne

Huon thanks his  
wife for her good  
counsel, but

refuses to set out  
for the East  
before Bordeaux  
is in positive  
danger.

<sup>1</sup> also.    <sup>2</sup> and advise.    <sup>3</sup> along.    <sup>4</sup> some.    <sup>5</sup> well.

<sup>6</sup> that.    <sup>7</sup> shall.    <sup>8</sup> omitted.    <sup>9</sup> shutteth.    <sup>10</sup> Ladie.

<sup>11</sup> Fol. lxxiiii. back, col. 2.    <sup>12</sup> But.    <sup>13</sup> for.

<sup>14</sup> vntill.    <sup>15</sup> labour.

He would be  
reproached for  
departing now.

Esclaramonde  
presses her  
husband to  
obtain men from  
her brother before  
the Emperor  
arrives,

and tells him  
her fear of the  
Germans.

Esclaramonde  
becomes a  
mother.

coun tre / nor as longe as my shy lde is hole<sup>1</sup> fyrste, I  
thynke they shall fele the sharpnes of my spere hede  
and good sworde /<sup>2</sup> by goddes grace I shall not abandone  
you nor leue my cyte and good burgesses /<sup>3</sup> it myght 4  
greatly be layde to my reproche, yf I sholde thus goo  
away.' 'A, syr,' quod Esclaramounde, 'ye may well  
know that this that I haue sayd is for the fere that I  
haue of you / for I haue ben well aduertesyd that 8  
themperour sore hateth you, and not without cause, for  
his neuewes and lordes that ye haue slayn, and ther-  
fore, *sir*, yf ye wyll beleue me ye shall <sup>4</sup>haue men to  
defende you brought hyther by the kynge my brother / 12  
so that whan the emperour is come in to your londe, it  
shall lye in you other to make peace or warre at your  
wyll / reason it were that ye made hym sum amendes  
for the hurtes that ye haue done to<sup>5</sup> hym / and on the 16  
other parte, yf he wyll haue no peace / than it shall lye  
in you to make hym suche warre so that he shall not  
departe without your agrement and to his great losse.  
syr, the fere that I haue to lese you constreyneth me 20  
thus to say / I haue herd often tymes sayd / that the  
entre into warre is large / but the issuyng out ther of  
is very straye / nor ther is no warre but it causeth  
pouerte. But syn<sup>6</sup> it is your pleasure not to beleue me, 24  
it is reason *that* I must be content that your pleasure  
be fulfilled.' Than they entred in to other deuyses /  
<sup>7</sup>gret ioye and feest was made in the palayes at Burdeux  
betwene Huon and the lordes of the coun tre. at last 28  
the fayre Esclaramond, who was grete with chylde, fell  
vpon trauelynge, and she prayed to god <sup>8</sup>and to oure  
ladye for ayde & helpe. she was in her chambre,  
whereas she<sup>8</sup> sufferyd gret payne / wher of Huon had 32  
grete pyte whan he herd ther of / for <sup>9</sup>there was grete

<sup>1</sup> and sound.    <sup>2</sup> and yet.    <sup>3</sup> for.    <sup>4</sup> Fol. lxxv. col. 1.

<sup>5</sup> vnto.    <sup>6</sup> seeing.    <sup>7</sup> and.    <sup>8-8</sup> for helpe, and.

<sup>9-9</sup> the loue betwene them was exceeding great.

loue between them<sup>9</sup> / at last y<sup>e</sup> ladye was brought to bed  
 of a fayre doughter / wher of Huon thanked god / than  
 entred in to the ladies chambre a greate nombre of the  
 4 ladyes of the fayrye / & came to Esclaramondys bed  
 and sayd, 'Lady, ye ought well to thanke god / for ye  
 haue brought forth y<sup>e</sup> <sup>1</sup>moost<sup>1</sup> fayrest and best creature  
 that as now is in the worlde, and to whom oure lord  
 8 god hath grauntyd moost graces at her byrth / for  
<sup>2</sup>more fayrer / nor more sage / nor courteys<sup>2</sup> hath not  
 be borne this .C. yeres past / for she shall haue such  
 desteney and happe<sup>3</sup> in this worlde / that of the realme  
 12 of Arogon she shalbe quene crownyd, and she shall soo  
 gouerne her selfe that she <sup>4</sup>shalbe<sup>5</sup> a seint in paradise.  
 At Tortouse ther is the chyrche where <sup>1</sup>as yet<sup>1</sup> she is  
 honouryd / the whiche is foundyd in her name, and is  
 16 namyd saynt Clare.' Esclaramounde was ioyfull of the  
 wordes of these ladyes of the fayrye. <sup>6</sup>grete ioy<sup>7</sup> was  
 made <sup>8</sup>in the chambre<sup>8</sup> for the byrth of this chylde /  
 who was gretly regardyd of the ladyes of the fayry, and  
 20 they sayd eche to other that this chyld was the fayrest  
 creature of <sup>9</sup>the world / they toke this chyld eche after  
 other and blyssyd it thre times, and than<sup>10</sup> layde it  
 doune and departyd sodenly so that no man wyst  
 24 where they were become, wherof all the ladyes & other  
 hed grete meruayle. This tydynges was brought to  
 Huon, he was ryght ioyefull, and sayd / 'A, syr<sup>11</sup> kynge  
 Oberon, I beleue surely that as yet ye haue not forgotten  
 28 me. Now I dought no thyng themperour nor all his  
 puyssaunce syn<sup>12</sup> ye haue remembraunce of me.' Than  
 Huon cam in to the hall, and thyder his doughter was  
 brought to<sup>13</sup> hym to se / he toke her in his armes and  
 32 shewed her to his lordes, who were<sup>14</sup> ioyfull to se her.

Ladies of  
fairyland attend  
the birth of her  
daughter,

and declare her to  
be the fairest and  
best creature born  
in a hundred  
years.

The fairies thrice  
bless the child.

Huon thinks  
that king Oberon  
is still mindful of  
him.

<sup>1-1</sup> omitted.

<sup>2-2</sup> a more faire, modest, wise, and courteous. <sup>3</sup> fortune.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. lxxv. col. 2.

<sup>5</sup> accounted of as if she were.

<sup>6</sup> and.

<sup>7</sup> and feasting.

<sup>8-8</sup> euerywhere.

<sup>9</sup> in all.

<sup>10</sup> they.

<sup>11</sup> worthy.

<sup>12</sup> seeing.

<sup>13</sup> unto.

<sup>14</sup> very.

The babe is  
christened  
Clariette.

Than she was borne to chyrche and with grete solemp-  
nyte crystenyd / and named Claryet, because she was  
soo fayre and clere to beholde. Than she was brought  
to the duches, who had of her gret ioy / whan the 4  
duches had kept her chambre a moneth, than she was  
chyrchyd, wher of all the courte was ioyfull, and such  
feest was made that yf I sholde shew you the ryches  
and noblesse that was there shewed, it sholde be ouer 8  
longe to reherse. Therefore I<sup>1</sup> leue spekyng therof at  
this tyme tyll<sup>2</sup> another season.

¶ Howe themperour assembled a grete hoste  
and came to Burdeux. Capitulo .lxxxxvii. 12

3



E haue well<sup>4</sup> herde here before the  
maner & cause why this warre was  
mouyd betwene y<sup>e</sup> emperour of Al-  
mayne & Huon, duke of Burdeux, the 16  
whiche, after the trewes was expyrd,

The Emperor of  
Germany  
assembles his  
men at Mayence

and that the emperour was hole of his thygh that Huon  
had broken, he publysshyd the warre<sup>5</sup> / and sent ouer  
all his empyre / that euery duke / erle / baron / 20  
knyght / and squyer shold com to hym, and sowdeours  
fro all partes, and that within a moneth they to be at

to make war upon  
Huon.

the cyte of Mayence, to thentent too make warre vpon  
Huon of Burdeux / this commaundement was pub- 24  
lysshed / and suche delygence was made that by the  
day apoyntyd euery man was com to the cyte of  
Mayence, and lodgyd in the cyte and in paulyions about  
the cyte / there were assembled no than .lx. M.<sup>6</sup> men, 28  
well aparelyd<sup>7</sup> for the warre. whan this emperoure,  
who was named Tyrrey, saw them he was<sup>8</sup> ioyfull / &  
sore thretened Huon, and made promyse before<sup>9</sup> all his  
barons that he wolde neuer retourne in to his owne 32

Sixty thousand  
men are collected  
together.

<sup>1</sup> will.

<sup>2</sup> vntill.

<sup>3</sup> Fol. lxxv. back, col. 1.

<sup>4</sup> at large.

<sup>5</sup> againe.

<sup>6</sup> and all.

<sup>7</sup> appointed.

<sup>8</sup> verie.

<sup>9</sup> to.



- countre tyll he had fyrst slayne Huon, who had done hym so great damage. Than he commaundyd his constables & marshalles to be redy to departe the next 4 day, & to take the way towards Coleyne with al his artylery and caryage, the which was done. The next day themperour entred in to the felde and so rode towards Coleyne / and whan themperour was within a 8 legge than there met with hym the olde Sauary hys brother, who was father to duke Raoull, slayne by Huon. whan these two brethern met togyther there was great ioy made.<sup>1</sup>
- 12 ¶ But than duke Sauary began to wepe, & sayd to his brother themperoure, 'Syr, of your cominge I am ryght ioyfull. But when the pyteous deth of my dere beloued sonn your neuwe Raoull cometh to my mynde / 16 there is no membre on me / but for doloure <sup>2</sup>and dyspleasure trymbleth / nor I can neuer haue parfyte ioy at my herte as longe as he that hath done me thys dyspleasure <sup>3</sup>be alyue.'<sup>3</sup> This duke Sauary was a noble 20 man / but betwene hym and his sonne Raoull was great dyfference, for this <sup>4</sup>duke Raoull was the untrewest traytoure that euer lyued : the which ylnes<sup>5</sup> procedyd by y<sup>e</sup> duches his mother / who was doughter to 24 Hurdowyn of Fraunce, the moost untrewest and falsest traytour that as than lyued in the worlde / whan themperour herde his brother speke the water<sup>6</sup> fell <sup>7</sup>out of<sup>7</sup> his eyen, & <sup>8</sup>embracyd hym, and sayd, 'My ryght dere 28 brother, your doloure<sup>9</sup> dyspleaseth me / for your doloure is myne,<sup>10</sup> therof I wyll haue my<sup>11</sup> parte / and yf ye haue <sup>9</sup>ioy my parte shal<sup>12</sup> be therin. But it is not possyble for vs / to haue hym agayne for whom we make this 32 sorowe' / god ayde Huon fro his enemyes, for they greatly desyryd his deth; yet often tymes they that

They prepare to march to Cologne.

On the way the Emperor, whose name was Thierry, met his brother Savary, father of duke Raoul.

Duke Savary weeps for the loss of his son.

He is not an untrue traitor, like duke Raoul.

The Emperor consoles his brother.

<sup>1</sup> betwene them.    <sup>2</sup> Fol. lxxv. back, col. 2.    <sup>3-3</sup> liueth.  
<sup>4</sup> the.    <sup>5</sup> wickedness.    <sup>6</sup> tears.    <sup>7-7</sup> from.    <sup>8</sup> he.  
<sup>9</sup> much.    <sup>10</sup> and.    <sup>11</sup> a.    <sup>12</sup> likewise.

The army is well  
received in  
Cologne.

It was a great  
host with long  
lines of artillery,

and passed over  
the Rhone into  
the country of  
Bordeaux.

desyre another mans deth auaunseth there owne. Thus,  
as ye haue herde, themperour and duke Sauary entred  
in to the cyte of Coleyne, where as they were reseuyed  
with great ioy / and so rode to y<sup>e</sup> palayes: <sup>1</sup>there they 4  
souppyd. I wyl make no longe rehearsall of y<sup>e</sup> good  
chere that they made there. Than after soupper they  
went to there rest, and the next mornynge rose and  
herde masse,<sup>2</sup> and tooke a soppe in wyne,<sup>1</sup> Than departyd 8  
out of Coleyne. It was a goodly host to beholde, they  
& theyr caryage / &<sup>3</sup> artelyrey strechyd foure legges of  
lenght. Thus they all had sworne y<sup>e</sup> deth of Huon /  
they passyd by hye Borgoyne and by Dolpheurey,<sup>4</sup> and 12  
so passyd the ryuer of Rone, and so in to the countre  
of Burdeaux. Nowe I wyl leue spekyng of them tyll  
another season.

<sup>5</sup> ¶ How themperoure Tyrrey of Almayne 16  
beseged the cyte of Burdeaux / and howe  
Huon made hym redy to fyght with his  
enemyes. Capitulo .lxxxxviii.



Huon orders all  
his men to be  
ready in arms,  
and to come to  
Bordeaux, when  
he heard of the  
Emperor's  
protest.

The town is well  
fortified and  
furnished with  
food and guns.

Hus ye haue well<sup>6</sup> herde here before 20  
the deuises that the duches Esclara-  
mond had made to her husbonde  
Huon; who as soone as she was  
chyrched, Huon sent his commaunde- 24  
ment throw al his countre euery man  
to be redy in armes and to come to Burdeaux, bycause  
he was aduertysed of y<sup>e</sup> cominge of his enemyes / the  
messengers made such delygence that in<sup>7</sup> .xv. dayes 28  
after euery man was come to Burdeaux / and the<sup>8</sup> duke  
Huon reseuyed them with great ioy. Than he repayryd  
the cyte and the toures and walles, and it was well  
furnysshed with vytaylles and artelery, as in suche a 32

<sup>1</sup> and. <sup>2</sup> service. <sup>3</sup> their. <sup>4</sup> Dolphine.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. lxxvi. col. 1. <sup>6</sup> omitted. <sup>7</sup> within. <sup>8</sup> there.

case it<sup>1</sup> aparteynyd. <sup>2</sup>At that tyme y<sup>e</sup> cyte of Burdeux was not so strong as it is now / whan duke Huon saw his cyte so well garnyshed with men and vytaylle /  
<sup>4</sup>he was ryght ioyfull. <sup>3</sup>Than he called to hym the olde Gerames, & sayd / ‘my ryght dere frende, ye se well this warre <sup>4</sup>that is aparent betwene themperour and me, & nowe we be well aduertysed of his comynge, who is  
<sup>8</sup>redye to come with all his host to besege this oure cyte / & therefore, my hertye<sup>5</sup> frende, who hath aydyd me in so many besynesses, I pray you counsell and ayde me now; for<sup>6</sup> all the condute of my warre / I wyll”  
<sup>12</sup>ye haue the charge, & that ye wyll comforte my men <sup>8</sup>to do<sup>8</sup> well, so that of vs there be none <sup>9</sup>yll songe<sup>9</sup> made, and that our enemyes haue no cause to prayse y<sup>e</sup> warre that they haue agaynst vs / nor that whan they  
<sup>16</sup>be retournyd in to there countres that they make not there auauntes amonge theyr wenches and<sup>10</sup> louers.’ ‘Syr,’ quod Gerames, ‘I thanke you of the honoure and gret trust that ye haue in me / how be it, ye haue  
<sup>20</sup>many other more sage and hardy than I am, too whom this<sup>11</sup> charge sholde better aperteyne than to me. But, sir, as for me, I shall so aquyte me that I trust I shall not be reprehendyd.’ Thus, as ye haue herde, Huon  
<sup>24</sup>made his deuyses amonge all his barons / and made all his ordynaunces for the defence of the cyte and the maner of theyr yssues,<sup>12</sup> and apoyntyd men for their rescue in reculynge. And themperour was entred in to  
<sup>28</sup>the countre of Burdeux with a <sup>13</sup>grete puyssaunce,<sup>13</sup> byrnynge and dystroyenge the countre, wher of the poore peple were sore abashed, bycause they neuer had warre before / <sup>3</sup>thus themperour neuer restyd  
<sup>32</sup>exilynge<sup>14</sup> & destroyenge the countre tyll they came

Huon begs the aid of Gerames in the conduct of the war.

Gerames, in spite of his age,

promises to do all he can.

The Emperor. burns and destroys all the country he passes through,

<sup>1</sup> well.      <sup>2</sup> for.      <sup>3</sup> and.      <sup>4</sup> Fol. lxxvi. col. 2.

<sup>5</sup> deere.      <sup>6</sup> in.      <sup>7</sup> that.      <sup>8-8</sup> omitted.

<sup>9-9</sup> euill report.      <sup>10</sup> their.      <sup>11</sup> great.      <sup>12</sup> issuing.

<sup>13-13</sup> mightie armie.      <sup>14</sup> wasting.

until he arrives  
before the city of  
Bordeaux,  
and there  
encamps.

Huon prepares his  
men for a sortie.

Twenty thousand  
are ordered to  
follow him.

Esclaramonde  
prays for their  
safety.

before the cite of Burdeux and theyr he pyght vp his tentes and paulyons / and themperoure lay on the waye ledynge to Parys / on the other parte duke Sauarey, father to Raoull, was lodgyd by themperours marshalles / 4 so that all the cyte was closyd rownde aboute. Huon, who was within the cyte, behelde theyr countenaunces and maner of theyr lodgyng. He commaundyd that all his men sholde be redy to yssue out vpon <sup>1</sup>there 8 enemyes / the whiche they dyd. Than Huon armed hym<sup>2</sup> rychely / and mountyd vpon his good horse, the whiche was the emperours / and sware that, or<sup>3</sup> he returnyed agayne, he wolde shew his enemyes what 12 they of Burdeux coude do / whan he was mountyd on his good horse he cam in to the cyte, and founde the old Gerames redy aparelyd and<sup>4</sup> all his company. Than he ordaynyd<sup>5</sup> .v. M. men to kepe the cyte, & 16 .xx. M.<sup>6</sup> to go with hym / thus duke Huon made his ordenaunces. ye may well know<sup>7</sup> that the sorow was great that Esclaramonde made for the duke her husbonde / she was ryght sage.<sup>8</sup> she feryd to lese hym, 20 bycause she knew hym so aduenturus / and that his enemyes were of so grete nombre / <sup>9</sup>ryght peteously wepyng she made her prayers to our<sup>10</sup> lorde god deuoutly that he wolde kepe, and defende Huon, her 24 husbonde, & all hys men fro daunger & losse, & to sende hym peace.<sup>11</sup>

¶ Of the grete batayle that was before Burdeux, where as Huon had grete losse & the 28 olde Gerames taken. Capitulo .lxxxxix.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxxvi. back, col. 1.

<sup>4</sup> with.

<sup>5</sup> appoynted.

<sup>8</sup> wise.

<sup>9</sup> but.

<sup>10</sup> the.


<sup>2</sup> selfe verie.

<sup>3</sup> ere.

<sup>6</sup> men.

<sup>7</sup> imagine.

<sup>11</sup> with his enemies.

- 1  Thus, as he haue herde, Burdeux was be-  
 4 seged by themperour of<sup>2</sup> hie Almaynes,  
 & by hys brother the duke Sauary, with  
 a grete nombre of men. Than Huon  
 yssuyd out, and whan he was past the  
 porte, he made haste, to thentent to surpyrce his  
 enemyes, for at that tyme themperour was set at dyner.  
 8 Than Huon & his company all at ones dasht in amonge Huon and his  
company take the  
besiegers by  
surprise,  
 the tentes and paulyons / and bet them downe to y<sup>e</sup>  
 erthe, so that they that were within were sore<sup>3</sup> abasshed,  
 for they had<sup>4</sup> thought<sup>5</sup> that Huon durst neuer a<sup>6</sup>  
 12 yssued out of the cyte agaynst hym, and the great  
 nombre that he was of. Huon layde on rounde aboute and fight with  
vigour,  
 hym so that who so euer met with hym had no nede of  
<sup>7</sup> leche<sup>7</sup> craft. Also the olde Gerames dyd meruaylles,  
 16 and so dyd the Burdeloys. many a ryche tent and  
 paulyon was beten downe<sup>4</sup> to y<sup>e</sup> erthe,<sup>8</sup> and they within  
 slayne and all to hewyn. <sup>9</sup>Huon, who was mountyd on  
 his<sup>10</sup> good horse, met with<sup>4</sup> a knyght of themperours  
 20 house, and he gaue hym suche a stroke with his sword  
 that he claue his hede to the teth / and than<sup>11</sup> strake  
 another that his hede / helme & al, flew to the erth. they  
 that sawe that stroke was sore abasshed. Themperoures  
 24 men assembled togyther by heepes. But by the hie<sup>12</sup>  
 prowess of Huon anone they were agayne departyd /  
<sup>13</sup>he was so doughtyd and feryd that none was so hardy  
 to aproche nere<sup>4</sup> to<sup>4</sup> hym. The crye and noyce mountyd  
 28 so hie that the emperour, who was <sup>4</sup>as than<sup>4</sup> at <sup>4</sup>hys<sup>4</sup> The Emperor is  
roused from  
dinner,  
 dyner, whan he herde the<sup>14</sup> crye he rose fro the table,  
 and demaundyd what noyse it was. 'Syr,' quod a  
 knyght, who was fled and sore hurt / 'sir, know for  
 32 trouth that your enemye Huon is issuyd oute of Bur- and learns the  
cause of the  
disturbance that  
he hears from  
afar,

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxxvi. back, col. 2.    <sup>2</sup> the.    <sup>3</sup> much.  
<sup>4</sup> omitted.    <sup>5</sup> verily.    <sup>6</sup> haue.    <sup>7-7</sup> a leches.  
<sup>8</sup> ground.    <sup>9</sup> and.    <sup>10</sup> a.    <sup>11</sup> he.  
<sup>12</sup> mightie.    <sup>13</sup> for.    <sup>14</sup> them.



The Emperor  
arms himself,  
and orders his  
men to the onset.

He promises that  
Huon's wife and  
land shall be  
given to the  
warrior who slays  
the knight.

There is much  
rivalry for the  
promised gifts.

deux, and hathe done so myche<sup>1</sup> that he hathe slayne  
a quarter of <sup>2</sup>all<sup>2</sup> your hoost, and without that ye doo  
rescue your men<sup>3</sup> shortly, your losse is lyke to be ryght<sup>4</sup>  
grete, <sup>5</sup>for I haue sene Huon your enemy mountyd <sup>4</sup>  
vpon your good hors, wheron he doth gret meruaylles /  
for there is none *that* meteth <sup>2</sup>with<sup>2</sup> hym but <sup>2</sup>*that*<sup>2</sup>  
<sup>6</sup>is slayne, he is so cruell and hardy.' whan themperour  
herde the knyght he swet for displeasure; <sup>7</sup>incontynent <sup>8</sup>  
he armed hym / and issued out of his tent and mountyd  
on his horse / and founde his men redy. Than he saw  
Huon mountyd on his good horse / than<sup>8</sup> he sayd to  
his men, 'Syr, I requyre you at this tyme put to your <sup>12</sup>  
paynes that I may be reuengyd of myne enemye, who  
before my face yonder sleeth<sup>9</sup> my men. he is so  
valyaunt that whom so euer he stryketh with a full  
stroke is but deed / gret damage it was whan he slew <sup>16</sup>  
my neuew.<sup>10</sup> who so euer can delyuer hym to me  
quycke or deed shalbe my frende for euer, and I shall<sup>11</sup>  
shew hym y<sup>e</sup> courtesy / that Esclaramond, who is so  
fayre, I shall gyue her to<sup>12</sup> hym in maryage, & all the <sup>20</sup>  
countrie<sup>13</sup> of Burdeux.'

¶ Than suche as herde his promyse made them  
redy for <sup>14</sup>couytes<sup>14</sup> of that gyft. But sum hastyd so  
myche to acomplysh themperours wyll that it was to <sup>24</sup>  
late after for them to repent. It is a<sup>15</sup> saynge that  
an yll haste is not good / sum hastyd so sore<sup>16</sup> that  
after<sup>17</sup> bought it full<sup>18</sup> dere, as ye shall<sup>19</sup> here. after  
these wordes spoken by the emperour, suche as desyryed <sup>28</sup>  
to accomplyshe his wyll ran in all togyther in to the  
batayle agaynst the Burdeloys / there was grete occy-  
syon<sup>20</sup> on both partes. Huon, who had grete desyre in  
his hert to slee his enemyes / dyd so myche by hys <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> hurt.      <sup>2-2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> verie.      <sup>4</sup> exceeding.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. lxxvii. col. 1.      <sup>6</sup> he.      <sup>7</sup> and.      <sup>8</sup> whereon.

<sup>9</sup> killeth.      <sup>10</sup> nephewes.      <sup>11</sup> will.      <sup>12</sup> vnto.      <sup>13</sup> Court.

<sup>14-14</sup> the couetousness.      <sup>15</sup> an old.      <sup>16</sup> much.

<sup>17</sup> afterwardes.      <sup>18</sup> too.      <sup>19</sup> heare.      <sup>20</sup> slaughter made.

proves that he reculyd his enemyes to theyr tentes / but Huon is as  
 & it had been yll with them, &<sup>1</sup> duke Sauary had not mightie as ever.  
 rescued them / he with his grete proves made them to  
 4 recouer agayne the felde / <sup>2</sup>there was a sore batayle on  
 both partes. The olde Gerames that day slewe many a Old Gerames also  
 man. But he aduenturyd hym selfe so far forth fights with  
 amonge his enemyes / that his horse was slayne vnder strength,  
 8 hym / so *that* he was <sup>3</sup>constreynyd to fall to the erth / although his  
 and there<sup>4</sup> he was taken & led to themperours tent, and horse is killed  
 gret fetters set<sup>5</sup> on<sup>6</sup> his legges. Alas that Huon had under him,  
 not knowen therof; if he had, he shold not haue ben and he is taken  
 12 led away without grete losse. But he was in y<sup>e</sup> batayle prisoner.  
 doying meruelles in armes. he helde his sworde in his  
 hande tayntyd with blood and braynes of men that he  
 had slayne / there was none so hardy that durst aproch  
 16 nere to<sup>7</sup> hym / he cryed<sup>8</sup> 'Burdeaux' to draw his men  
 togyther / and dashct in to y<sup>e</sup> greatest prease, & strake Huon is to be  
 on al partes in suche wyse that his enemyes<sup>8</sup> gaue hym found wherever  
 place, for none durst abyde his strokes / <sup>9</sup>the prease the fight is  
 20 was so grete of the men of duke Sauareys that he had hottest.  
 gret payne to breke in among them. he fought so  
*that* he semyd rather a man of the fayrre or a speryt  
 than a mortall man / euery man had grete meruayle of His prowess is  
 24 the proves that he shewed<sup>10</sup> & his company. Than cam marvellous.  
 agaynst hym y<sup>e</sup> olde duke Sauary, with a byrnynge  
 desyre too be reuenged for the deth of his son Raoull;  
 and Huon parseyued hym well, and made suche hast  
 28 that the duke had no leyser to gyue the fyrst stroke /  
 for Huon gaue hym suche a stroke with his sworde  
*that* he cut clene of a quarter of his shyld, & y<sup>e</sup> stroke He unhorses at  
 gleynt<sup>11</sup> to the horse necke by suche vertue that it strake one blow Duke  
 32 of clene the horse hede / so that there by the duke fell Savary, who  
 to the erth / and yf he hadde not ben well socouryd he desires vengeance  
 for his son's  
 death.

<sup>1</sup> if.    <sup>2</sup> and.    <sup>3</sup> Fol. lxxvii. col. 2.    <sup>4</sup> then.  
<sup>5</sup> clapt.    <sup>6</sup> vpon.    <sup>7</sup> vnto.    <sup>8</sup> still.    <sup>9</sup> Now.  
<sup>10</sup> shewed *after* company.    <sup>11</sup> glyded.

He would have  
been slain, had  
he not been  
succoured by his  
men.

Huon perceives  
that his men are  
outnumbered,

and retires to  
Bordeaux.

Sixteen thousand  
of his soldiers  
were left dead  
upon the field.

While retreating,  
Huon kills a  
cousin of the  
Emperor, and  
four German  
knights.

The Emperor  
with his barons  
attacks him,

had been slayne / but there came to hym so many men,  
that whether Huon wolde or not he was socouryd / and  
mountyd vpon a new horse / whan Huon sawe that he  
was scapyd, he called vpon our lorde god, and sayd, 4  
'A, good lorde, yf I tary here longe I se well that my  
force shall but lytell profyte me, for there be .xx.  
agaynst one.' Than he called certen of his lordes that  
were aboute hym, & sayd, 'Syr, I perseyue well our 8  
force can not longe contynew<sup>1</sup> / therfore it is better<sup>2</sup>  
departe betymes than to <sup>3</sup>tary to longe.' 'Syr,' quod  
they, 'as it shall please you' / <sup>4</sup>than they tournyd them  
towards Burdeux a soft pace / and Huon dyd / as the 12  
sheparde doth go behynde his shepe / so wente he with  
his sworde in his hande / defending his company fro  
his enemyes, <sup>5</sup>sorowfull & angry for the losse that he  
had that day, for in the mornynge whan he departyd 16  
from Burdeux he had a .xx. M. of good fyghtinge men,  
& at his retourne he saw well he had not past<sup>6</sup> .iiii. M.,  
wherwith he was sore displeasyd / & often tymes by  
the way turnyd & returnyd to his enemyes. At last he 20  
met with a knyght named Jozerane, & gaue hym suche  
a stroke that he fell downe deed to y<sup>e</sup> erth, wherof  
themperour Tyrrey was sore dyspleasyd / for he was his  
cosyn germayne; & after<sup>7</sup> he slew other .iiii. knyghtes 24  
of Almayne. Than he returnyd agayne after hys men,  
& so led them forth<sup>8</sup> as the sheparde doth his shepe /  
& often tymes tournyd & retournyd vpon his enemyes,  
so that there was none so hardy that durst aproche nere 28  
hym / therwith thither came themperour rychely armed  
with y<sup>e</sup><sup>9</sup> armes imperyall,<sup>10</sup> mountyd vpon a puyssaunt  
horse. Than he cryed, 'on forth, my barons / take  
hede that this traytoure Huon scape not away / yf I 32  
maye haue hym in my handes / all the golde in the

<sup>1</sup> endure.<sup>2</sup> to.<sup>3</sup> Fol. lxxvii. back, col. 1.<sup>4</sup> so.<sup>5</sup> right.<sup>6</sup> aboute.<sup>7</sup> that.<sup>8</sup> still.<sup>9</sup> omitted.<sup>10</sup> and.

- worlde shall not redeme hym fro hanginge.' Huon,  
 who herd the emperour, sayd, 'A, false olde lepar,<sup>1</sup>  
 thou lvest falsly, I was neuer traytour.' Than them-  
 4 perour ranne at Huon, & strake hym on the shyld, and  
 strake it clene throwe, and the spere brake all to peces.  
 And Huon with his sworde strake themperour on the  
 helme, so that the serkell set with stone & perle was  
 8 betten to the erth. <sup>2</sup>yf the horse had not swaruyd,  
 themperour had neuer<sup>3</sup> scapyd alyue; neuertheles, the  
 stroke lyght so on his shulder *that* y<sup>e</sup> sword persyd the  
 mayle and gaue hym a depe wounde; & forther, y<sup>e</sup> and is sore  
wounded by  
Huon.  
 12 sworde dissendyd to y<sup>e</sup> arson<sup>4</sup> of the sadell, so *that* the  
 hors <sup>5</sup>was stryken nye a sounder in two peces / <sup>2</sup>so  
 that<sup>6</sup> themperour & the horse fell downe<sup>7</sup> togyther <sup>8</sup>to  
 y<sup>e</sup> erth<sup>8</sup> / so *that* &<sup>9</sup> he had not ben rescued by y<sup>e</sup>  
 16 Almayns he had ben slayn. Huon was sorie when he  
 saw the Emperour so scapyd with his life; than he  
 tournyd and rode towardes Burdeaux after his men, who  
 tarried still for hym, and Huon dyd so myche by his  
 20 prowes *that* for all themperour & his men he entred in  
 to his cyte of Burdeaux. But as than he knew not *that*  
 the olde Gerames was taken prisoner. <sup>10</sup>Thus, as ye  
 haue herd, duke Huon entred in to Burdeaux *with*  
 24 .iiii. M. men, of whome y<sup>e</sup> moost parte were sore hurte /  
 he rode to the palays & there alyghtyd. Than he lokyd  
 aboute hym, & was sore abasshed whan he saw not  
 Gerames by hym / *than* he demaundyd yf any man  
 28 knew where he was. 'Syr,' quod a knyght named  
 Gallerance, 'knew for trouthe<sup>11</sup> he is taken prysoner, &  
 is in the handes of your enemyes / for to haue aydyd  
 hym I was woundyd in thre places, & nerehande  
 32 slayne. I employed my force to haue socouryd hym,  
 but I coude fynde no remedy' / whan Huon herd that /

Under Huon's  
protecting care,  
his men reach  
Bordeaux in  
safety.

He is saddened  
to hear of  
Gerames' fate,

<sup>1</sup> dotard.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> not.      <sup>4</sup> bow.  
<sup>5</sup> Fol. lxxvii. back, col. 2.      <sup>6</sup> the.      <sup>7</sup> to the ground.  
<sup>8-8</sup> omitted.      <sup>9</sup> if.      <sup>10</sup> so.      <sup>11</sup> that.

and piteous is his  
sorrow.

Huon tells his  
wife the sad  
tidings.

She begs him  
seek succour from  
her brother,

but he declares he  
will not abandon  
the city.

he prasyd gretly Gerames force & vertue, & gretly compleynyed & sayd, 'alas that I had not knowen of his takynge, or<sup>1</sup> I had<sup>2</sup> returnyd I wolde soner haue dyed / but at the leest I wold haue taken sum man suffeeyent<sup>4</sup> to a<sup>3</sup> redemyd hym agayne out of daunger.' A pyteous<sup>4</sup> thyng it was to here duke Huon what sorow he made for his frende Gerames / but his compleyntes coude not auayle hym / his lordes sayd, 'syr,<sup>5</sup> with goddes grace<sup>5</sup> 8 ye shal haue hym agayne saue & alyue.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'it shall be a grete aduenture without they put hym to deth.' Than Huon mountyd vp to the palays, where as he met Esclaramond his wyfe / whom<sup>12</sup> he kyssyd & embraced many tymes. 'Syr,' quod y<sup>e</sup> lady, 'I pray you shew me of your newes.' 'Lady,' quod Huon, 'they be but pore & dolowrus, for of .xx. M. men that I had with me<sup>6</sup> out of this cyte, I haue<sup>16</sup> brought home alyue but .iiii. M., and yet the moost parte of them is<sup>7</sup> sore woundyd / and besyde that,<sup>2</sup> the olde Gerames is taken prisoner, who hath suffred before this tyme so many paynes & trauaylles for my sake.' 'A,<sup>8</sup> 20 syr,' quod y<sup>e</sup> lady, sore wepyng / 'I had rather ye had beleued me, and that ye had gone and sought for socoure of my brother / who wolde not a<sup>3</sup> faylled you / he<sup>9</sup> wolde a<sup>3</sup> come with you with so myche people and<sup>24</sup> puyssaunce that themperour sholde not a<sup>3</sup> durst to<sup>3</sup> abyden you.' 'Dame,'<sup>10</sup> quod Huon, 'speke no more therof / for the losse of as myche as .x. cytyes be in valure I wolde not haue gone thether nor too none<sup>28</sup> other parte for any socoure, nor yet wyll not tyll I se me sorer<sup>11</sup> oppressyd than I am as yet / I myght well be reputyd for a coward and recreaunt thus to abandoned my cyte / I had rather be dysmembred in to peces<sup>32</sup> than for fere I sholde leue you / it sholde<sup>12</sup> be gretly to


<sup>1</sup> ere.      <sup>2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> haue.      <sup>4</sup> lamentable.  
<sup>5-6</sup> by the grace of god.      <sup>6</sup> Fol. lxxviii. col. 1.      <sup>7</sup> be.  
<sup>8</sup> Alas.      <sup>9</sup> but.      <sup>10</sup> Madame.      <sup>11</sup> more.      <sup>12</sup> would.



my reproche in the courtes of hye prynces, and whan I  
com there to be markyd with the fynger for that grete  
defaute.' 'Syr,' *quod* Esclaramonde, 'your pleasure is  
4 myne, syn<sup>1</sup> ye wyll haue it so / but I am ryght sorye<sup>2</sup>  
for the olde Gerames, who is prysoner in y<sup>e</sup> tentes of  
your enemyes / who hath suffred for your sake many  
grete paynes & pouertyes. I cannot be but sory whan  
8 I remembre hym.' 'Dame,'<sup>3</sup> *quod* Huon, 'as yet  
Gerames is not deed. I hope, by the grace of our lorde  
god, *that* we shall haue hym agayne alyue.' 'Syr,'  
*quod* she, 'I pray to god<sup>1</sup> it may be so.' Now let vs  
12 leue spekyng of Huon, and speke of themperour, who  
lay sore hurt on the erth.

Huon hopes to  
rescue Gerames.

¶ How themperour reasyd vp a payre of  
galowes to hang vp the olde Gerames and  
16 all the Burdeloys that were taken prysoners.  
Capitulo .C.

4  
20  E haue well<sup>5</sup> herde here before re-  
countyd how Huon entred in to Bur-  
deux after he hadde betten downe  
themperour Tyrrey, whom he left  
lyenge on<sup>6</sup> y<sup>e</sup> erth, and had ben slayne  
and<sup>7</sup> his men had not quykely rescued hym. <sup>8</sup>his  
24 men were sorowfull,<sup>9</sup> they feryd he had ben deed, &  
vnlasyd his helme, & was ryght ioyfull whan they  
founde hym alyue. Than they demaundyd & sayd,  
'sir, we desyre you shew vs what case ye fele yourself  
28 in.' 'Syr,' *quod* he, 'I am sore hurt, wherby I fele  
gret payne; this enemye Huon hath brought me in this  
case. I was foolyshly counselled whan I cam hyther to  
seke for hym, for yf I had taryed styl at Mayence, I

The Germans  
find the Emperor  
sorely wounded,

and he regrets  
his departure  
from Mayence.

<sup>1</sup> that. <sup>2</sup> sorowful. <sup>3</sup> Madame.  
<sup>4</sup> Fol. lxxviii. col. 2. <sup>5</sup> alreedy. <sup>6</sup> vpon. <sup>7</sup> if.  
<sup>8</sup> now. <sup>9</sup> for.

His wound  
causes him much  
doulour.

The knights  
taken in battle  
are ordered into  
his presence.

Gerames comes  
before him and  
tells his condition.

The Emperor bids  
him be hanged  
early the next  
morning, with  
sixty of his  
company.

Gerames defies his  
captor.

beleue to do me displeasure he wolde haue come  
thether / syrs, I praye you bere me in to my tent *that*  
my wounde may be serchyd' / than he was borne in to  
his tent & vnarmed / & layd on<sup>1</sup> his bed, & he sownyd 4  
thryse for paine of his hurt. And whan he cam to  
hym selfe, & his woundes<sup>2</sup> serchyd by his surgyons /  
he demaundyd where y<sup>e</sup> knyghtes of Burdeux were *that*  
were taken in y<sup>e</sup> batayle, & commaundyd<sup>3</sup> *that* they 8  
sholde be brought to his presence / Gerames was  
brought before hym, who was gret & puyssaunt, with a  
berde as whyte as snow ; he was a fayre olde knyght to  
beholde / his vysage playne & smylnghe, he semyd to 12  
be a man of hye affayres / whan y<sup>e</sup> emperour saw hym /  
he sayd, 'thou old catyue, shew me what thou art /  
beware,<sup>4</sup> shewe me the trouthe' / 'sir,' quod Gerames,  
'know well *that* for fere of any deth I wyll<sup>5</sup> not spare 16  
to say y<sup>e</sup> trouthe / syn ye wyl<sup>6</sup> know what I am, I am  
named Gerames, & am Huons seruauant, whom I loue  
naturally, & also I am his parent,<sup>7</sup> wherby I haue y<sup>e</sup>  
more cause to loue hym / & I haue slayne dyuers of 20  
your men.' 'Well,' quod the emperour, 'I repute the  
for a foole to gyue me thys knowlege / for, by the  
grace of <sup>8</sup>our lord Jesu Cryst,<sup>8</sup> tomorow erlye, or<sup>9</sup> I ete  
or <sup>10</sup>drynke, thou shalt be drawen and hangyd / and 24  
.lx. of thy company *that* were taken with thee in the  
batayle.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'of this *that* y<sup>e</sup> shew me  
I can<sup>11</sup> you no thanke for it / but I hope, by the ayde  
of <sup>12</sup>our lorde<sup>12</sup> Jesu Cryst, that I shall do you <sup>12</sup>yet<sup>12</sup> 28  
more damage or<sup>9</sup> I dye.' 'A, velayne,' quod theemperour,  
'gret meruayle I haue of the that thus before me <sup>13</sup>&  
my barons<sup>12</sup> thou dost vse<sup>13</sup> thretnynges / and yet thou  
seest <sup>12</sup>clerely<sup>12</sup> how thou art my prysoner, and that it 32

<sup>1</sup> vpon.    <sup>2</sup> were.    <sup>3</sup> demaunded.    <sup>4</sup> and.

<sup>5</sup> shall.    <sup>6</sup> needs.    <sup>7</sup> kinsman.    <sup>8-9</sup> God.    <sup>9</sup> ere.

<sup>10</sup> Fol. lxxviii. back, col. 1.    <sup>11</sup> giue.    <sup>12-12</sup> omitted.

<sup>13</sup> these.

lyeth in me to put the to what deth it please me /  
 know for trouth, &<sup>1</sup> it were not so late of y<sup>e</sup> day as it  
 is, I wolde not suffer the to lyue one houre. But or<sup>2</sup> I  
 4 slepe I shall cause <sup>3</sup>gybettes and <sup>3</sup>galowes to be made  
 where as thou and thy company shalbe hanged / and I  
 shall cause the to be hangyd so nere to the cyte / that  
 yf Huon be so nere a kynne to the as thou sayest, he  
 8 wyll shew how well he loueth the / he maye haue grete  
 doloure whan before his iyen he shall se his cosyn and  
 his men hanged / and than after<sup>4</sup> I wyll assayle the  
 cyte / and take it parforce, so that than Huon in any  
 12 wyse shall not scape out of my handes, & so to be  
 hanged with other / and the fayre Esclaramonde shalbe  
 brynt or condempnyd to pryson / and than I wyll  
 byrne all the cyte and dystroy it clene.' 'Syr,' quod  
 16 Gerames, 'ye may say your pleasure, but in the  
 doynge is all the mater' / <sup>5</sup>whan themperour saw *that*  
 Gerames doughtyd not the deth, he was sore abasshed.  
 Than he commaundyd incontynent galowes to be reysyd  
 20 vp so gret to hange theron the .lx.<sup>6</sup> prysoners, and to  
 be set on a lytell rocke nere to the cyte of Burdeux,  
 to thentent that Huon and his men myght se them  
 playne / therby to abasshe them / the whiche was  
 24 done / so the mater restyd tyll<sup>7</sup> the next day in the  
 mornynge. And whan it was day Huon within y<sup>e</sup> cyte  
 rose and came to hys palays, and regardyd out at the  
 wyndowes to se and beholde the <sup>8</sup>host of his enemyes /  
 28 and as he stode he spyed the new galowes stondynge  
 on y<sup>e</sup> rocke. Than he callyd his lordes, and sayd /  
 'Syrs, neuer beleue / but yonder galowes that I se new  
 reysyd is for none other entent but<sup>9</sup> to hang theron  
 32 my men *that* be taken, & my<sup>10</sup> frende Gerames, wherof  
 I am<sup>11</sup> sorowfull. Therefore, syrs, quykely make you redy

Directions for  
 setting up the  
 gallows near the  
 city are straight-  
 way given.

The Emperor  
 vows to destroy  
 Huon and his  
 wife, and to burn  
 Bordeaux.

The gallows  
 are set up,

and Huon espies  
 them from his  
 palace.

He points them  
 out to his lords,

<sup>1</sup> if.      <sup>2</sup> ere.      <sup>3-3</sup> a.      <sup>4</sup> wardes.      <sup>5</sup> &.  
<sup>6</sup> fortie.      <sup>7</sup> vntill.      <sup>8</sup> Fol. lxxviii. back, col. 2.  
<sup>9</sup> for.      <sup>10</sup> good.      <sup>11</sup> verie.

and urges them  
to follow him to  
the rescue.

and mount on<sup>1</sup> your horses / for or<sup>2</sup> they be hangyd  
we wyll proue our selfe against them / loke <sup>3</sup>to the host  
warde<sup>3</sup> & se whan they be commynge <sup>4</sup>to y<sup>e</sup> galowes  
warde<sup>4</sup> / & whan ye se them be redy on horsbacke, & <sup>4</sup>  
y<sup>e</sup> gate open, *that* we may issue out all at ones / & let  
vs neuer thynke to returne tyll<sup>5</sup> we haue rescued our  
men / for I thynke<sup>6</sup> neuer to returne in to this cyte tyll<sup>5</sup>  
I haue delyueryd them out of y<sup>e</sup> handes of our enemyes.' <sup>8</sup>  
Than they armed them a<sup>7</sup> vii. M. by tale of good men  
of armes, well horsyd, redy at y<sup>e</sup> gate to departe whan  
tyme cam. Now we wyl leue spekinge of Huon / &  
speke of themperour. 12

Seven thousand  
men are armed.

¶ How Huon issued out of Burdeux & rescued  
the old Gerames and his company, whom  
themperour wolde haue hanged.

Capt. .Ci. 16

The condemned  
knights are tied  
together in  
couples on the  
following day.



Hemperour, who had grete desyre that  
Gerames & his company were hanged /  
caused them to be brought forth by  
couples, one fast tyed to another, and <sup>20</sup>  
Gerames<sup>9</sup> the formest / who then ryght  
tenderly began to wepe when he saw

Gerames weeps,  
and prays to God  
to haue mercy on  
their souls.

hymselfe in that case / 'A, good lord,' quod he, 'I  
requyre the haue mercy on our soules, & kepe & <sup>24</sup>  
defende my good lord duke Huon / who by y<sup>e</sup> com-  
maundement of kyng Oberon shold gyue me his duchy,  
and he to haue kyng Oberons dygnyte of y<sup>e</sup> fayre after  
foure yere passed / I can not say what fortune wyl fal / <sup>28</sup>  
but I may wel say *that* I shall neuer come to greter  
honour / yet I am comforted in that I am so olde <sup>10</sup>&  
hoore;<sup>10</sup> it is good reason that I be content to haue lyued

<sup>1</sup> vpon.    <sup>2</sup> ere.    <sup>3-3</sup> towards the Hoaste.  
<sup>4-4</sup> toward the gallows.    <sup>5</sup> vntill.    <sup>6</sup> purpose.    <sup>7</sup> aboute.  
<sup>8</sup> Fol. lxxix. col. 1.    <sup>9</sup> was.    <sup>10-10</sup> omitted.

so longe / it is now <sup>1</sup>good<sup>1</sup> tyme that I departe out of  
 this worlde.' Then themperour called to <sup>2</sup>hym a  
 knyght / & sayd, '*sir* Othon, I wyl that incontynent ye  
 4 take thre .M. men, & take these prysoners & hange them  
 vp all vpon the galowes that were made yester nyght  
 late / & if it be so that Huon yssue out, loke that ye  
 quyte your selfe valyauntly / & yf ye<sup>3</sup> nede of ony  
 8 ayde, take my horne and blowe it, for I haue redy a  
 poynted .x. M. men to socoure you yf nede be' / when  
 Othon herde themperour he was ryght sory to haue that  
 4<sup>commission</sup> / for in his youth he was brought vp in  
 12 the house of duke Seunyn, father to Huon, & som what  
 he was of his kyn, but as then he had slayne a man,  
 wherfore he fled fro Burdeux, & came & serued them-  
 perour at Mayence / wherfore he was <sup>5</sup>wo and <sup>5</sup>sorowfull  
 16 to haue that commysyson. Then he sayd to themperour,  
 'syr, me thynke ye do yll to cause them to dye so  
 hastily, better it were to abyde to se what ende your  
 warre wyl come vnto / and also yf it fortune that any of  
 20 your lordes to be taken here after / for one of theym ye  
 myght recouer hym agayne / and yf ye slee theym / and<sup>6</sup>  
 yf ony of <sup>7</sup>youre barons happe to be taken, they shall  
 dye of lyke deth / and therfore, syr, yf ye wyl byleue  
 24 me ye shall forbere sleynge of them at this tyme / and,  
 syr, yf ye wyll gyue me lysence / I shall doo so moche to  
 duke Huon / that for the offence that he hath done to<sup>2</sup>  
 you he shall make<sup>8</sup> amendes at youre<sup>9</sup> pleasure, and he  
 28 shal go to<sup>2</sup> some holy pylgrymage to praye for the soules  
 of your nephewes and other of youre lordes that he hathe  
 slayne / and he to haue with hym two hondred men  
 in theyr shyrtes, and so to go to the holy sepulture at  
 32 his owne charge and coste / and he to holde of you all  
 his londes, and to doo you homage.' Then the lordes

The Emperor bids  
 Sir Otho direct  
 the hanging, with  
 three thousand  
 men.

Sir Otho was of  
 distant kin to  
 Huon, and  
 regrets such a  
 commission.

He pleads with  
 the Emperor for  
 delay,

and promises that  
 Huon will make  
 him amends for  
 the death of his  
 nephews.

<sup>1-1</sup> omitted.

<sup>2</sup> vnto.

<sup>3</sup> haue.

<sup>4-4</sup> euill office.

<sup>5-5</sup> right.

<sup>6</sup> then.

<sup>7</sup> Fol. lxxix. col. 2.

<sup>8</sup> you.

<sup>9</sup> owne.



The Emperor's  
lords approve  
Sir Otho's  
counsel;

but the Emperor  
bursts into a rage,

and swears all  
who plead for a  
respite of the  
lives of Huon's  
men shall die  
forthwith.

Otho is again  
ordered to  
despatch Gerames  
and the rest,

and he departs  
to work the  
Emperor's will.

that were there present all with one voyce said to<sup>1</sup> the  
emperour, 'Syr, the counsell that syr Othon hath gyuen<sup>1</sup>  
you is worthy to be byleued; we al agree ther to, and  
desyre you so to doo,'<sup>2</sup> when the emperoure herde theym <sup>4</sup>  
he was sorowfull and sore dyspleased. 'Syr,' quod  
Othon, 'ye may surely knowe yf ye hange any of them  
that be taken / yf Huon happe to take any of your men,  
he shal neuer scape vnhangyd and drawen.' When the <sup>8</sup>  
emperour hadde herde Othon speke he was soo troubled,  
& angry that it semed by his face that for <sup>3</sup>pure yre<sup>3</sup>  
he was nye<sup>4</sup> in a rage, and sayd / 'beholde, syrs, this  
foole, who wolde let me to take vengeance on them <sup>12</sup>  
that so sore hath troubled me / he hath herde me or<sup>5</sup>  
this tyme swere and make solempne promyse that I  
wold neuer retorne in to my countre tyll I hadde  
hanged and drawen Huon of Burdeux / for, by the <sup>16</sup>  
lorde that made me to his semylytude, I knowe noo  
man this day, though he were neuer so nere a kynne to  
me, excepte myne owne brother / but I shal make hym  
to be slayne yf he speke any more to me for respytynge <sup>20</sup>  
of theyr lyues / nor I shall neuer loue hym / for I  
make a vowe to oure lorde god that I wyll neuer  
retorne in to my countre tyll<sup>6</sup> I haue taken <sup>7</sup>this cite  
parforce.' 'Syr,' quod Othon, 'syn<sup>8</sup> it is your pleasure, <sup>24</sup>  
I shall speke no more therof / but I byleue it wyll be  
longe here after or<sup>9</sup> ye fynde ony *that* wyll be glad to  
do youre pleasure.' 'Othon,' quod themperour / 'dys-  
patch the mater and reuenge me vpon the old Gerames <sup>28</sup>  
and vpon all his company' / 'syr,' quod Othon, 'it is  
conuenyent that I doo it, syn<sup>8</sup> it is your pleasure' / then  
without ony more wordes he departed & toke Gerames  
& the other prysoners, and wente with them towards <sup>32</sup>  
the galowes. Gerames went before with the halter

<sup>1</sup> vnto.      <sup>2</sup> but.      <sup>3-3</sup> verie anger.      <sup>4</sup> neerehand.  
<sup>5</sup> ere.      <sup>6</sup> vntill.      <sup>7</sup> Fol. lxxix, back, col. 1.  
<sup>8</sup> seeing.      <sup>9</sup> before.

aboute his necke, sore wepyng, and all his company  
 after hym; so at the last they came to the place of  
 execucion / then<sup>1</sup> y<sup>e</sup> ladders were set vp / <sup>2</sup>then the  
 4 hangman came to<sup>3</sup> Gerames, & sayd / 'come on, thou  
 olde dottarde, *thou* hast lyued longe ynough / thou  
 shalt no more se hym whom thou louest so well / but<sup>2</sup>  
 I hope shortely he shall bere the company wayynge in  
 8 the wynde' / when Gerames herde hym / he behelde  
 hym fyersly, and sayd, 'A, thou vnhappy vyllayne, yf  
 one of my handis were lose *thou* sholdest neuer se fayre  
 day more / how arte thou so hardy to say or to thinke  
 12 so <sup>4</sup>vylayn wordes<sup>4</sup> of the best and moost valyauntes  
 knyght that is now lyuynge'? / then Othon came to  
 them / and <sup>5</sup>herde how the hangman<sup>5</sup> reuiled Gerames /  
 & <sup>6</sup>sayd, 'a, *thou* <sup>7</sup>false rybaude,<sup>7</sup> thynkest thou not that  
 16 this knyght hathe ynough to suffre / though thou doest  
 not reuyle him? / yf thou<sup>8</sup> were in that poynt<sup>9</sup> *that* they  
 be in, and they in the cyte of Burdeux, thou woldest  
 soone repente thy<sup>10</sup> wordes' / & therwith he lyfte vp a  
 20 staffe that he had in his hande, and strake the hang  
 man ther with that he fell downe to the erthe, and<sup>11</sup>  
 sayd, 'A, thou false thefe, do thyne offyce, and speke no  
 wordes' / then<sup>12</sup> the hangman durst speke no more;<sup>13</sup>  
 24 then he toke Gerames by y<sup>e</sup> halter *that* was aboute his  
 necke, & so mounted vpon the ladder, and Gerames  
 after hym / who<sup>14</sup> made pyteous complayntes for Huon  
 his good lorde / the same tyme that Gerames mounted  
 28 vpon the fyrst steppe of the ladder, they within the  
 cyte vpon the walles perceyued it, & sawe clerely<sup>15</sup> *that*  
 without the prysoners were shortly<sup>16</sup> rescued / theyr  
 lyues were lost. then they sayd to Huon / 'syr, yf ye  
 32 tary any lenger your men shall be all hanged, for

The hangman  
rudely accosts  
the old Gerames.

Otho reproaches  
the fellow with  
his wickedness,

and strikes him  
sorely.

Gerames mounts  
the ladder with a  
halter about his  
neck.

Huon's lords  
perceive him  
from the city  
walls,

<sup>1</sup> where.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> vnto.      <sup>4-4</sup> villainous a word.

<sup>5-5</sup> hearing the hangman how he.      <sup>6</sup> he.

<sup>7-7</sup> base slaue.      <sup>8</sup> thyselfe.      <sup>9</sup> case.      <sup>10</sup> saucie.

<sup>11</sup> then he.      <sup>12</sup> whereupon.      <sup>13</sup> but.

<sup>14</sup> Fol. lxxix. back, col. 2.      <sup>15</sup> evidently.      <sup>16</sup> speedily.

and Huon  
recognizes his old  
friend in direst  
peril.

He bids his lords  
follow him to the  
rescue,

and seven  
thousand fighting  
men issue from  
the city gates.

Huon slays the  
hangman at one  
blow.

Gerames leaves  
the ladder.

A fierce battle  
takes place.

yonder we se one of them is mountyd vpon the ladder,  
who hath a berd as whyte as<sup>1</sup> snow.' when Huon herd  
that he was sore dyspleased, & sayd / 'a, good lord, I  
knowe suerly<sup>2</sup> it is my true frende Gerames whom<sup>4</sup>  
they wolde fyrst put to dethe / therfore, syrs,<sup>3</sup> quickly  
let vs yssu out at the gate / for, yf Gerames be not  
quickly<sup>4</sup> socoured, the traytours wyll put hym to deth ;  
but, yf<sup>2</sup> I may come tyme ynough, it<sup>5</sup> shall be derely<sup>8</sup>  
solde to them therwith.' <sup>6</sup>Huon, with .vii. M. fyght-  
ynge men yssued out at the gate so fyersly *that* the  
erthe semed to synke<sup>7</sup> vnder them / theyr horses  
made such brute<sup>8</sup> / and so within a shorte space by a<sup>12</sup>  
prey<sup>9</sup> way they cam to the place where as the galowes  
were<sup>10</sup> / Huon was the fyrst that aryued there / <sup>11</sup>he  
aduysed<sup>11</sup> well the hangman that sholde haue hanged  
Gerames / he<sup>12</sup> gaue hym suche a stroke with his spere<sup>16</sup>  
*that* he ran hym <sup>13</sup>clene<sup>13</sup> through, so that he fell of<sup>14</sup>  
the ladder <sup>13</sup>starke<sup>13</sup> deed ; so was Gerames reuenged of  
the inurye that he had done to hym before. then Huon  
sayd, 'Gerames, come<sup>15</sup> of the ladder and arme you in<sup>20</sup>  
some harneys<sup>16</sup> of them *that* shall be here slayne' /  
Gerames thanked our lorde god & cam downe the  
ladder, and then thyder came Huons company, who  
untyed all the other prysoners / then <sup>13</sup>there<sup>13</sup> began a<sup>24</sup>  
sore batayle / the Almaynes wolde not flye / <sup>17</sup>Huon<sup>17</sup>  
cryed to them, & said, 'ye false traytours, youre dethes  
is<sup>18</sup> Juge<sup>d</sup> ; dere shall be solde to you the offence that ye  
haue done to<sup>19</sup> me when ye wolde slee thus my men with<sup>28</sup>  
so vylayne<sup>20</sup> a dethe / better it had ben for you to haue  
ben at Mayence <sup>21</sup>hyden in the lappes of your wenches<sup>22</sup>  
and louers.' when they vnderstode Huon, anone they

<sup>1</sup> the.      <sup>2</sup> that.      <sup>3</sup> I requyre you.      <sup>4</sup> presently.  
<sup>5</sup> his perill.      <sup>6</sup> Hereupon.      <sup>7</sup> groane.      <sup>8</sup> a thundering.  
<sup>9</sup> secret.      <sup>10</sup> stood.      <sup>11-11</sup> and he marked.      <sup>12</sup> and.  
<sup>13-13</sup> omitted.      <sup>14</sup> from.      <sup>15</sup> downe.      <sup>16</sup> armour.  
<sup>17-17</sup> the which Huon seeing.      <sup>18</sup> are.      <sup>19</sup> vnto.  
<sup>20</sup> villainous.      <sup>21</sup> Fol. lxxx. col. 1.      <sup>22</sup> mothers.

- knewe hym, wherof they were sore abashed / then  
 Huon mette with a knyght of Almayn, and ranne hym  
 clene through, and so he serued thre other / then he  
 4 drewe his swerde wher with he dyd grete meruayles /  
 for or<sup>1</sup> he seased he slewe .xiii. and also his men dyd  
 meruaylles in armes / so that within a shorte space the  
 Almaynes were dyscomfyted, so that none scaped a  
 8 waye a lyue excepte syr Othon, who valyauntly de-  
 fended hymselfe / but, when he sawe *that* his force  
 wolde not helpe hym, he yelded hym selfe to Huon,  
 and gaue hym his swerde, and cryed hym mercy, and  
 12 sayde / 'syr, I requyre<sup>2</sup> you slee me not, but haue  
 pyte of<sup>3</sup> me / for<sup>4</sup> I promyse you faythfully that  
 agaynste my wyll I came hyther, but I was forced so  
 to do by the emperour; and, fyrst, I desyred respyte  
 16 <sup>5</sup>for them,<sup>6</sup> <sup>6</sup>so moche that the emperour was sore dys-  
 pleased with me. I entreated for a peace to haue ben  
 had<sup>7</sup> bytwene you and hym, but my wordes coude not  
 profyte.<sup>8</sup> syr, I am your kynsman, and was brought  
 20 vp in duke Seuyne, your faders house, and there I  
 serued a mayster who dyd bete me, and when I felte my  
 selfe stronge and of age, I was dyspleased that he dyde  
 bete me<sup>9</sup> without<sup>10</sup> cause / <sup>4</sup>I slew hym and fledde  
 24 away, and came to Mayence, & euer syn I haue serued  
 the emperoure who is come hyther to besyege you.'  
 'Frende,' quod Huon, 'fere not your deth, but I pray  
 you fro hens forth ayde and serue me as ye ought to do  
 28 to your carnall<sup>11</sup> frende' / 'syr,' quod Othon, 'god  
 shame me yf I do *the* contrary / but I shall serue you  
 truly as longe as lyfe is in my body' / then Huon came  
 to y<sup>e</sup> fote of y<sup>e</sup> ladder, where as he founde Gerames as  
 32 then not vntyed / Huon kyssed and embrased hym  
 oftentimes, and sayd, 'ryght dere frende, I am ryght

Huon fights with  
his customary  
vigour.

Of all the  
Germans there,  
only Sir Otho  
escaped alive.

He begs Huon  
have mercy upon  
him.

He claims kinship  
with him.

Huon promises  
him pardon if he  
will join him for  
the future.

Sir Otho consents  
to serve Huon for  
all time.

<sup>1</sup> ere.      <sup>2</sup> beseech.      <sup>3</sup> on.      <sup>4</sup> and.      <sup>5-6</sup> omitted.

<sup>6</sup> In.      <sup>7</sup> made.      <sup>8</sup> preuaile.

<sup>9</sup> so.

<sup>10</sup> a.

<sup>11</sup> louing.

Huon congratulates Gerames on his escape,

and bids all the prisoners, whom he frees, to arm themselves with the weapons of the Germans he has slain.

A second band of Germans attack the French while retiring to Bordeaux.

They turn about and give battle.

Huon spares none within his reach.

Sir Otho fights nobly.

glad at my herte when I se you <sup>1</sup>hole of body' / then he wente to the other, and lossed them, and vnbounde theyr eyen, and sayd, 'Syr, arme <sup>2</sup>you all<sup>2</sup> with the harneys of them that be deed / for a man that is armed hath<sup>3</sup> 4 aduantage afore<sup>4</sup> other that be not so'<sup>5</sup> / it was nedeful for them to be armed, god defende them from yll<sup>6</sup> / for anone after they had so meruaylous a rencounter that they had neuer <sup>7</sup>none suche<sup>7</sup> before / for the other .x. 8 thousande men came to reuenge them *that* were deed / they wente<sup>8</sup> to haue come tyme ynoughe / but they fayled, for they came to late / for<sup>9</sup> Huon had taken of all them theyr truage. When Huon saw that he had 12 done that<sup>10</sup> he came for / he returned hym towardes the cyte / but he was soo pursued that he was nere surprysed and stopped fro entrynge in to the cyte / when Huon saw his enemyes comyng he cryed a hye<sup>11</sup> to his 16 men, <sup>12</sup>and sayde,<sup>12</sup> 'Syr, let vs turne vpon them that cometh <sup>13</sup>to vs warde<sup>13</sup> / to y<sup>e</sup> entent that they shall not make theyr auantes that they haue caused vs to flye awaye before them' / then he and all his men returned 20 agaynst theyr enemyes with a<sup>14</sup> valyaunt corage / <sup>15</sup>at that metyng many speres were broken on bothe partes, & many a knyght borne to the erth / that had neuer<sup>3</sup> power after to releue theym selfe / there was suche 24 occysyon<sup>16</sup> on both partyes that pyte it was to se it<sup>17</sup> / <sup>15</sup>grete meruayle it was to se Huon how he bett downe his enemies, and claue helmes and rased them fro the hedes of *his* enemyes. he delte in suche wyse that 28 none<sup>18</sup> Almayne durst abyde his strokes, he was so douted and fered ; he made the thycke prese to breke a sonder and flye awaye before him ; and by him was syr Otho, who that dyd many a noble dede 32

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxxx. col. 2.

<sup>2-2</sup> yourselves.

<sup>3</sup> the.

<sup>4</sup> of.

<sup>5</sup> armed.

<sup>6</sup> euill.

<sup>7-7</sup> the like.

<sup>8</sup> hoped.

<sup>9</sup> omitted.

<sup>10</sup> which.

<sup>11</sup> aloud.

<sup>12-12</sup> saying.

<sup>13-13</sup> toward vs.

<sup>14</sup> most.

<sup>15</sup> and.

<sup>16</sup> a slaughter.

<sup>17</sup> them.

<sup>18</sup> no.



of armes / for next Huon aboue all other that day he  
bare the pryce / fynally, Huon and Othon and his other  
men dyd so moche that the Almayns were chasyd to  
4 theyr tentes, & many slayne<sup>1</sup> in the chase and sore hurte  
so that they neuer rode on horse backe after / some  
tyme it fortuneth *that* it is foly to aduenture to moche  
forward / and to late to repent after<sup>2</sup> / I say this for  
8 Huon and his company, who were gone so moche for-  
warde that in great daunger they returned to the cyte /  
for y<sup>e</sup> almayns, who were thyrty thousande men redy  
before theyr tentes / when they sawe Huon & his men  
12 chase theyr company, they set forth agaynst Huon.  
<sup>3</sup> When Huon sawe them / he sayd to<sup>4</sup> his men / ‘ syrs,  
it is good that we <sup>5</sup>recule to<sup>5</sup> our cyte / for yonder I  
se comyng mo then thyrty thousande almayns as fast  
16 as they can’ / <sup>6</sup>when Huons company sawe them, they  
douted gretely, and not without cause / for they had  
ben before at two grete skyrmysshes, wherby they and  
theyr horses were very and sore trauayled, the whiche  
20 was no meruayle / <sup>6</sup>by the counsell of Huon they  
returnyd a fause galop towardes theyr cyte / and y<sup>e</sup>  
Almayns were at theyr backe, and chased them so  
quickly that more then fiue Hundred Almaynes entred  
24 in to the cyte with them of Burdeux / but they that  
kept the gates that daye were sage<sup>7</sup> and dyscrete, for as  
soone as they perceyued that Huon and his company  
were entred / and with them a<sup>8</sup> fyue hondred of theyr  
28 enemyes / they wolde kepe theyr gates no lenger open,  
for fere that theyr enemyes shold haue entred with to  
grete a nombre, so<sup>9</sup> for hast they cut a sonder the corde  
that helde vp the purcoloys, the whiche fell downe by  
32 suche force that it fell on<sup>10</sup> the horse of an Almayn that  
was vnder,<sup>11</sup> the whiche horse was cut clene a sonder,

The Germans are  
chased back to  
their tents.

A third band of  
Germans now  
threaten Huon's  
company.

His men, wearied  
with the two  
skirmishes, grow  
faint-hearted.

They gallop back  
to Bordeaux with  
the Germans in  
pursuit,  
and five hundred  
enter the city  
before the gates  
are closed,

but the French  
have arrived in  
safety.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxxx. back, col. 1.      <sup>2</sup> afterward.      <sup>3</sup> and.

<sup>4</sup> vnto.      <sup>5-5</sup> recoil into.      <sup>6</sup> so.      <sup>7</sup> wise.      <sup>8</sup> aboute.

<sup>9</sup> that.      <sup>10</sup> vpon.      <sup>11</sup> it.

The Germans  
retire to their  
tents.

Huon orders the  
five hundred of  
them who have  
entered the city  
to be slain  
forthwith.  
They pray for  
mercy.

Gerames supports  
their prayer,

and Huon yields  
to him.

Huon bids them  
be all unarmed

and sent to  
divers houses on  
parole.

soo that the man and the fore parte of the horse fell  
withyn the gate, and the hynder parte of the horse fell  
without / wherof y<sup>e</sup> Almaines that folowed after were  
sorowfull and angry that they had not come thyder 4  
soner / then they returned to theyr tentes, complayn-  
ynge for the grete losse and<sup>1</sup> damage that they had<sup>2</sup>  
that daye by the hye prowess of Huon & his men / and  
also they that were entred in to the cyte were sore 8  
abasshed when they saw themself closed<sup>3</sup> within the  
cyte. When Huon perceyued it, he had grete meruayle /  
that they were soo entred in amonge his men / for he  
knewe not therof, and yet he<sup>4</sup> was the last that entred / 12  
then he sayde, ‘A, ye false traytours, ye shall al dye an  
yll deth’ / <sup>5</sup>then he sayd to his men, ‘syrs, slee them  
all’ / then incontynente they alyghted and kneled  
downe before Huon, and requyred hym to haue mercy, 16  
& pyte of theym / as to saue theyr lyues / ‘and put vs  
in pryson / <sup>6</sup>we be all men of a noble lygnage / & it  
maye so be that by vs ye may haue peace with the em-  
perour.’ Then Gerames sayd to Huon / ‘syr, I requyre 20  
you to haue pyte of them, and put them not to deth,  
for so it may be that by them ye may haue peace.’<sup>7</sup>  
‘Frende,’ quod Huon, ‘I am content to do at your  
pleasure as ye wyll haue me do’ / then he commaunded 24  
they sholde al be vnarmed / then they al made promyse  
to Huon not to departe without lycence / ‘Gerames,’  
quod Huon, ‘I wyll that these prysoners be brought vp  
in to the borow & there departed,<sup>8</sup> and set in<sup>9</sup> dyuers 28  
houses that be sure, and let them haue all thynges  
necessary for theyr lyuyng’ / then Gerames delyuered  
theym to the kepyng of suche as he trusted / and so  
eche of them was kepte in a courtouse pryson. Now 32


<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxxx. back, col. 2.      <sup>2</sup> sustained.      <sup>3</sup> enclosed.

<sup>4</sup> himselfe.      <sup>5</sup> and.      <sup>6</sup> quoth they.

<sup>7</sup> with the Emperour.      <sup>8</sup> parted.      <sup>9</sup> to.

let vs leue to speke of Huon and of his prysoners, and  
<sup>1</sup>speke of<sup>1</sup> the emperoure.

¶ Howe the Emperoure assayled the cyte of  
 4 Burdeux two tymes, where as he lost many  
 of his men. Capitulo .C.ii.

8  S ye haue herde here before how  
 Huon chased his enemyes to theyr  
 tentes / and how it was tyme for  
 hym to returne to his cyte, & how  
 he was so pursued by the Almayns  
*that* more then fyue hondred of them

12 entred in to y<sup>e</sup> cyte, and were closed with in it, and  
 the resydue returned to theyr tentes sorowfull & angry  
 for y<sup>e</sup> grete losse that they had. <sup>2</sup>When they were

When the  
 Germans returned  
 to their tents, the  
 Emperor inquired  
 of their fortunes.

16 how they had sped / & yf they had<sup>3</sup> taken Huon  
 quyeke or deed. ‘Syr,’ *quod* a knyght, ‘it is folye for  
 you to speke thus / for Huon is no man so lightly to  
 be taken / for the .lx.<sup>4</sup> men *that* ye sent to haue ben

20 hanged be rescued by Huon, and the thre .M. men  
 that ye sent with them are all slayne, & dyuers other  
 sore hurt,<sup>5</sup> in peryll of dethe, and besyde that, fyue .C.  
 men of y<sup>e</sup> best of your frendes are entred in to

They tell him of  
 the rescue of their  
 prisoners,  
 and of the prowess  
 of Huon.

24 Burdeux / for we so hastily pursued Huon & his men /  
 that entrynge in to the cyte fyue .C. of our men entred  
 in to the cyte, entermedled with Huons men, & theyr  
 they be inclosed in<sup>6</sup> / therefore, sir, we alow<sup>7</sup> &

28 counsel you *that* ye agree with Huon / <sup>8</sup>yf ye do not  
 ye shall lose<sup>9</sup> youre men / for Huon is so fell & cruell /  
*that* he wyll <sup>10</sup>hange vp your men as ye had thought too  
 haue done his, of whom one of them was his cosyn /

They advise him  
 to make peace  
 with Huon.

<sup>1-1</sup> returne to.    <sup>2</sup> so.    <sup>3</sup> not.    <sup>4</sup> fiftie.    <sup>5</sup> and.  
<sup>6</sup> within.    <sup>7</sup> aduise.    <sup>8</sup> for.    <sup>9</sup> all.

<sup>10</sup> Fol. lxxxi. col. 2.

The Emperor will  
not listen to their  
counsel.

He bids all his  
host assemble,  
and sends to his  
brothers for  
further aid.

Huon perceives  
by its noise the  
attacking force  
approach the city.

The Germans set  
ladders against  
the walls, but the  
French overturn  
them.

ye may do as it please you.' when theemperour herd  
his barons what counsell they gaue hym, he was<sup>1</sup>  
sorrowfull, and sayd, 'syrs, ye do me grete wronge to  
requyre me to make ony peace with Huon / syn ye <sup>4</sup>  
knowe well what othe & promys I haue made *that* I  
wyll neuer be at peace with hym / and to y<sup>e</sup> entent  
that ye shal speke no more therof / knowe for trouthe  
*that* tho<sup>2</sup> .x.M. of my nexte<sup>3</sup> frendes were taken by <sup>8</sup>  
Huon, I wolde rather suffre them to <sup>4</sup>be slayne of<sup>4</sup> a  
shamefull deth then to agree to any peace with Huon  
tyll I haue slayne hym / and his cyte <sup>5</sup>brynt<sup>5</sup> &  
dystroyed.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'syn<sup>6</sup> it is youre plesure <sup>12</sup>  
ye may do as ye thynke best.' 'Syr,' quod the  
emperour, 'I wyll that ye assemble all myn hoost, and  
sende to my broder that he brynge all his men / and  
then with all our puyssaunce<sup>7</sup> assayle the cyte / and <sup>16</sup>  
that none be so hardy<sup>8</sup> to recule backe tyl<sup>9</sup> y<sup>e</sup> cyte  
be taken' / this was proclaymed through the hoost / &  
euery man<sup>10</sup> redy to assayle the cyte; and y<sup>e</sup> chefe  
captayne was duke Sauarey, who brought all his men <sup>20</sup>  
in good ordre to the dykes, well furnysshed with  
ladders & other necessary thynges parteynyng to  
assaulte. The same tyme Huon and his men were  
vnarmed and goynge to dyner / <sup>11</sup>when he herde the <sup>24</sup>  
noyse and crye without / he toke a sop in wyne, and  
armyd hym and all his men / and euery man went  
to the walles to theyr defenses / and Huon and <sup>12</sup>the<sup>12</sup>  
olde Gerames / Othon / and Barnarde, a valyaunt knyght, <sup>28</sup>  
mountyd on the toure ouer y<sup>e</sup> gate, and the Almayns  
on euery parte entred in to the dykes, and rayسد vp  
many a<sup>13</sup> ladder to the wall; and<sup>11</sup> they with in caste<sup>14</sup>  
downe <sup>12</sup>agayne theyr ladders, so that they that were <sup>32</sup>  
on them fell downe in to the dykes,<sup>12</sup> soo that they had

<sup>1</sup> verie.    <sup>2</sup> if.    <sup>3</sup> neerest.    <sup>4-4</sup> die.    <sup>5-5</sup> be burnt.  
<sup>6</sup> seeing.    <sup>7</sup> we will.    <sup>8</sup> as.    <sup>9</sup> vntill.    <sup>10</sup> was.  
<sup>11</sup> but.    <sup>12-12</sup> omitted.    <sup>13</sup> scaling.    <sup>14</sup> them.

- no power to releue vp agayn / for there was caste  
 downe on them erthe and <sup>1</sup>tymbre & stones, <sup>2</sup>so *that*  
 they coude not aryse<sup>2</sup> / fyerse was y<sup>e</sup> assaulte *that* y<sup>e</sup>  
 4 Almayns made, & they *within* made goodly<sup>3</sup> defence,  
 for <sup>2</sup>they slewe *with* bowes & crosbowes / *that* pyte it  
 was to see the deed & hurt men *that* lay on the erth<sup>2</sup> /  
 Huon & Gerames shotte so with theyr crosbowes /  
 8 that at euery shotte they slew some man, or sore  
 wounded hym / <sup>4</sup>longe enduryd this assault / so that  
 fynally the Almayns were constrayned to recule back a  
 bowe shotte / whereof they *within* were<sup>5</sup> ioyfull. Then  
 12 themperour Tyrrey, beyng sorowful and full of yre<sup>6</sup> /  
 came to his men, & rebuked them shamefully / com-  
 maundyng them that incontynent they shold returne  
 agayn to assaile the cyte / sayenge *that* <sup>2</sup>yf they wolde  
 16 quickly assaile y<sup>e</sup> cyte agayne<sup>2</sup> they sholde not fayle  
 to winne it. Then the Almayns, to please theyr lorde,  
 returned in gret hast *with* theyr ladders & pyrkes / &  
 came in to the dykes / where as then there was no  
 20 water, & reysed<sup>7</sup> vp <sup>2</sup>theyr ladders<sup>2</sup> to y<sup>e</sup> walles / but  
 they were no soner vp / but they *within* bete them  
 downe agayne / <sup>8</sup>so *that* they *that* were vpon them  
 were<sup>8</sup> in daunger of theyr liues / for they <sup>2</sup>*within*<sup>2</sup> caste  
 24 downe tymbre & <sup>2</sup>stones & fagottes, *with* fyre & hote  
 oyle & leade<sup>9</sup> / so *that* y<sup>e</sup> assaylauntes were fayne  
 parforce to recule<sup>10</sup> backe / & they *within* shot arrowes  
 so thycke / *that* it semed lyke snow. themperour was  
 28 sore dyspleased, & duke Sauarey / when they saw none  
 other remedy. many were slayne and sore hurt /<sup>11</sup>  
 themperour & Sauarey his broder, seyng *that* they  
 coude nothyng profyte, sowned y<sup>e</sup> retrayt / & so  
 32 returned to theyr tentes, sore dyspleased for y<sup>e</sup> gret  
 losse *that* they had / <sup>12</sup>they lost *that* daye mo then

Both besiegers  
and besieged fight  
valourously,

but the Germans  
at length retire.

The Emperor is  
wroth with his  
men,

and they return  
to the attack.

But a second time  
they are repulsed,

and the retreat is  
sounded.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxxxi. back, col. 1.    <sup>2-2</sup> omitted.    <sup>3</sup> noble.  
<sup>4</sup> and.    <sup>5</sup> very.    <sup>6</sup> rage.    <sup>7</sup> them.    <sup>8-8</sup> and put them.  
<sup>9</sup> vpon.    <sup>10</sup> recoile.    <sup>11</sup> and.    <sup>12</sup> for.



Two thousand  
Germans were  
slain and three  
thousand  
wounded.

The Duke Savary,  
the Emperor's  
brother, thinks  
the city  
impregnable,

but the Emperor  
resolves to  
continue the  
siege.

Huon thanks God  
for his success,

and bids his men  
be wary in the  
future,

but his losses  
have been very  
heavy.

.ii. M. men lyenge deed in y<sup>e</sup> felde & in y<sup>e</sup> dykes / &  
mo then .iii. M. sore hurt / then duke sauary sayd to  
themperour / 'sir, methynke it is but foly to assayle  
thes cite / it is stronge & wel furnysshed with men & 4  
good knyghtes to defende it / wherfore we may wel  
perceyue that with out gret damage we can not wyne  
it / without it be <sup>1</sup>by famyne / <sup>2</sup>he that is lorde therof  
is hardy & cruell / & to be fered & douted / for he is 8  
experte in armes / wherfore it is impossible to take y<sup>e</sup>  
cyte perforce.' When themperour vnderstode him, he  
was right sorowful, & made agayn new promys not to  
departe thens / tyll<sup>3</sup> he had Huon at his plesure. Huon, 12  
who lytel set by y<sup>e</sup> thretnynges of themperour, went in  
to his palais, & sayd to his men / 'syrs, we ought  
gretely to thanke god for y<sup>e</sup> defence of our cyte / many  
Almayns be slayne & hurte / I doute them nothyng / 16  
for our cyte is stronge / or<sup>4</sup> it be lost it wyll cost many  
men theyr lyues / I desyre you all take good hede that  
we be not begyled.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'we shall take  
good hede therof / as well for you as for y<sup>e</sup> sauegarde 20  
of our lyues.' Thus Huon & his men deuysed togyder /  
how be it, they were sore apayred<sup>5</sup> / for at y<sup>e</sup> beginnyng  
they were a<sup>6</sup> .xx. M men / & then they were not  
past<sup>7</sup> .vi. M. Now let vs leue spekyng of them & 24  
speke of themperour, who was ryght sorowful for his  
losse.



¶ Howe Huon sent Habourey his messenger  
to themperour to requyre peace / & of his 28  
answere. Ca. Ciii.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxxxii. back, col. 2.    <sup>2</sup> for.    <sup>3</sup> untill.  
<sup>4</sup> and before.    <sup>5</sup> greened.    <sup>6</sup> about.    <sup>7</sup> aboue.



4 **W**hen thempour had herd duke Sauerey  
 his broder speke / he made a solempne  
 othe / *that* what so euer fortune sholde  
 fall / he wolde not departe thens,  
 wynter nor somer, tyll he had won y<sup>e</sup>  
 cyte / then he sent for his rerebande / as farre as his  
 empyre stretched, commaundyng every man to come to  
 8 him, all excuses layde a parte / & so they dyd / <sup>1</sup>of  
 theyr commynge by the way I make no mencyon, but  
 so longe they trauallyed *that* they came with in a leege  
 of Burdeux.<sup>2</sup> When thempour knew therof he had  
 12 gret ioye, & mounted on his horse with other lordes with  
 him / & rode <sup>3</sup>& met them, & spake to them, & made  
 them good chere. Thus his force encreased, & Huons  
 minysshed <sup>4</sup>dayly / often tymes Huon <sup>5</sup>wolde yssue<sup>5</sup>  
 16 out on <sup>6</sup>his hors called Amphage / and made dayly  
 many grete skyrmysshes / *somm* tyme he wan / &  
 some tyme he lost / he slewe many Almayns / so *that*  
 they all fered him / for there was none *that* durst  
 20 abyde him / his hors was so delyuer<sup>7</sup> *that* none durst  
 aproche nere hym without he were slayne / & Huons  
 men <sup>8</sup>dyd acqyte<sup>8</sup> them valyauntly / so *that* yf they  
 lost at one tyme / they wanne .iii. tymes for it / but  
 24 theyr force coude not longe endure / <sup>9</sup>theyr enemies  
 were so many & they so fewe, for<sup>2</sup> they had made so  
 many issues <sup>10</sup>out<sup>10</sup> *that* they had lost many of theyr  
 company / for of .xx.M. they were lefte but .v.C.<sup>11</sup> /  
 28 & a .C. archers / and a .C. crosbowes to kepe theyr  
 towne with all<sup>10</sup> / wherof Huon was <sup>10</sup>ryght<sup>10</sup> sorowfull /  
<sup>1</sup>when he sawe that he had but .v. C. men / he called  
 to hym Gerames / Othon / Barnarde / & Richar,  
 32 <sup>12</sup>they were all of his kynne and he sayd to them<sup>12</sup> /  
 ‘syrs, I se <sup>10</sup>well<sup>10</sup> *that* euery daye we do minysshe<sup>13</sup> /

The Emperour  
summons new  
forces.

From the furthest  
parts of his  
empire do they  
come.

Meanwhile  
Huon's forces are  
diminishing,

but the Germans  
are much afraid  
of him.

He makes  
skirmishes daily,  
and if he loses  
once, he wins  
thrice;

but his men  
dwindle rapidly to  
five hundred.

Huon calls his  
chief lords  
together,

<sup>1</sup> Now.    <sup>2</sup> and.    <sup>3</sup> Fol. lxxxii. col. 1.    <sup>4</sup> diminished.  
<sup>5-5</sup> issued.    <sup>6</sup> vpon.    <sup>7</sup> cruell.    <sup>8-8</sup> quit.    <sup>9</sup> for.  
<sup>10-10</sup> omitted.    <sup>11</sup> men.    <sup>12-12</sup> saying.    <sup>13</sup> diminish.

and advises that a  
 messenger be sent  
 to sue for peace.

Harbourey is  
 despatched on the  
 embass-y,

and Huon bids  
 him promise all  
 possible  
 reparation to the  
 Emperor.

Harbourey  
 departs,  
 and arrives at the  
 Emperor's tent.

He delivers  
 Huon's message.

wherfore <sup>1</sup>at length<sup>1</sup> we can not<sup>2</sup> endure agaynst the  
 emperoures force / therfore I thynke that it were good /  
 that we sente to themperour to knowe yf he wyll here  
 spekyng of ony peace.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'we thynke <sup>4</sup>  
 your aduyse ryght good / <sup>3</sup>it were good too knowe yf  
 he wyll agree therto or not' / then Huon called  
 Habourey his messenger, and commaunded him that  
 incontynent he sholde go to the emperour, & say vnto <sup>8</sup>  
 hym 'that yf it be his pleasure to here spekyng of any  
 peace, I shall<sup>4</sup> condyscende therto / and too make hym  
 amendes at his pleasure / for y<sup>e</sup> wronge and damage  
 that I haue done<sup>5</sup> him and my<sup>6</sup> men. Also shewe <sup>12</sup>  
 hym how<sup>7</sup> I wyll become his man, and do hym homage  
 for all the landes *that* I haue / the whiche I was wonte  
 to holde of the kyng of Fraunce / but syn<sup>8</sup> I haue no  
 socoure fro hym / I am dry<sup>9</sup>uen parforce to purchase <sup>16</sup>  
 for my profite in some other place / & besyde *that*,  
 shewe hym / *that* the v. C. prysoners that I haue of his  
 men / I shall deliuer them quyte without any raunsome  
 payenge / & also when lent cometh / I & a C. knyghtes <sup>20</sup>  
 with me at my coste and charge / shall passe the see  
 and go to y<sup>e</sup> holy sepulture / to pray for the soules of  
 his neuwes that I haue slayn / & for all other as hath  
 ben slayne by occasyon of this warre.' 'Syr,' quod the <sup>24</sup>  
 messenger, 'I am redy to fulfyll your commaundement,  
 what so euer fall ther of' / and so<sup>10</sup> departed, & went  
 to themperours host, and entred in to the ryche tent /  
 and then he kneled downe before themperour, & sayde, <sup>28</sup>  
 'The puyssaunt<sup>11</sup> god, who on a<sup>12</sup> crosse dyed to saue  
 all humayne lygnage,<sup>13</sup> kepe & defende from all yll /  
 themperoure & all his barony. syr, duke Huon of  
 Burdeux sendeth to you salutacion and good amyte, <sup>32</sup>  
 requyrynge you, in the honour of <sup>14</sup>our lorde Iesu cryst,<sup>14</sup>

1-1 omitted.    2 long.    3 and.    4 quoth he.    5 vnto.  
                 6 his.    7 that.    8 seeing.    9 Fol. lxxxii. col. 2.  
 10 hee.    11 almightie.    12 the.    13 kinde.    14-14 god.

that he may haue peace with you / by *that* he will  
 become your lege man / & do you homage, & holde his  
 landes of you / and wyl delyuer quyte y<sup>e</sup>.v. C. men of  
 4 yours that he hath in pryson in the eyte / & more ouer,  
 he offereth hymself and a .C. knyghtes to passe the see  
 this nexte lent and to go to the holy sepulture to pray  
 to our lorde god for the soules of your neuewes that be  
 8 deed, & for other *that* by hym and<sup>1</sup> his meanes hath  
 ben slayn in this warre / syr, yf it well<sup>2</sup> please you  
 this to do / ye shall do a gret almes dede / for lyfe can  
 not be had agayne to *them* that be deed.' When  
 12 themperour Tyrrey had well herd Habourey, y<sup>e</sup>  
 messenger / he became as reed as a bronde of fyre / and  
 regarded the messenger fyersly, and sayd, 'A voyde  
 my syght, thou fals gloton<sup>3</sup> / but *that* I doute to be  
 16 reproued, I shold cause *thee* to be hewen<sup>4</sup> al to<sup>4</sup> peces,  
 but a messenger oughte not to be touched for any  
 wordes that he can speke / but saye to thy lord / *that*  
 by him & by his cause<sup>5</sup> I haue<sup>6</sup> <sup>7</sup>had slayne<sup>7</sup> mo then  
 20 xx.M. men, besyde my thre neuewes and my yonger  
 brother; but by that<sup>8</sup> lorde *that* dyed on a<sup>8</sup> crosse to  
 redeme vs all, I wyll neuer haue peace with hym tyll I  
 haue hym at my pleasure / nor neuer returne agayne  
 24 hider to me nor none other vpon any such message.'  
 When Habourey the messenger herde the emperour,  
 he was in grete fere, and wolde gladly he had ben in  
 Burdeux / then he departed without any mo wordes<sup>4</sup>  
 28 spekyng, and rested not tyll he came to Burdeux / <sup>9</sup>he  
 wente to the palays, where as he founde duke Huon /  
 then he sayd, 'Syr, I haue ben with themperour / and  
 shewed hym at length<sup>10</sup> all youre message / but his  
 32 answeere wyll not serue to your demaunde / for he sayd  
 to me / that he wyl haue no peace with you tyl he haue

The Emperor  
 rages against the  
 envoy,  
 and threatens  
 him.

He refuses to  
 make peace,

and Harbourey  
 takes his leave.

He repeats to  
 Huon the  
 Emperor's  
 answer.

<sup>1</sup> by.      <sup>2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> varlet.      <sup>4-4</sup> in.      <sup>5</sup> meanes.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. lxxxii. back, col. 1.      <sup>7-7</sup> lost.      <sup>8</sup> the.

<sup>9</sup> where.      <sup>10</sup> full.

you at *his* pleasure / to do with you what he wyl / and thus I departed from hym, and lefte hym syttyng at his table at dyner.'

¶ Howe Huon yesued out of Burdeux & came 4 to the tentes & fought with themperour.

Cap. C.iii.

Huon is sore displeased,

and gives order for a sudden sortie.



<sup>1</sup> Hen Huon vnderstode y<sup>e</sup> messenger he was full of yre and dyspleasure, and <sup>8</sup> sayd / 'syrs, I commaunde you al in hast go and arme you / for, or<sup>2</sup> euer y<sup>e</sup> Almayns be rysyn fro theyr dyneres, and armed I shall make them so sorowfull that they <sup>12</sup> shall curse the houre that euer they were borne / for I had rather dye then to leue them in this poynt, for I wyl go serue them of theyr fyrst messe.' then euery man armed hym / and Huon lept on<sup>3</sup> his good horse <sup>16</sup> Amphage / then he toke<sup>4</sup> leue of the fayre Esclaramonde hys wyfe, an so departed out of Burdeux with his company, and rode towardses themperours tentes / the same tyme themperour was rysyn fro his table / and he <sup>20</sup> had ordeyned .iii. hondred men on horse backe to kepe y<sup>e</sup> tentes whyles he was at dyner / then Huon and his company came so quickly that he was amonge them, or<sup>2</sup> they perceyued any thyng, & he cryed 'Burdeux,' & <sup>24</sup> strake a knyghte *with* his spere clene through the body, so *that* he fell deed to the erth / then he ran at a nother and serued him in lyke wyse, & so he slew <sup>28</sup> *iiii* or<sup>5</sup> his spere brake / then he drew his swerde & bette downe men & horses / & brake the thyckest presse, so *that* euery man gaue hym way / and Gerames / Othon / Barnarde / & Rycher,<sup>6</sup> & all his company dyde meruayles in armes / <sup>32</sup> so moche they

The Germans are dining, and do not perceiue the approach of the French.

Huon and his companions fight wildly, and hew down their foemen.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxxxii. back, col. 2.    <sup>2</sup> ere.    <sup>3</sup> vpon.    <sup>4</sup> his.

<sup>5</sup> before.    <sup>6</sup> Rychard. always so written in 1601 ed.

<sup>7</sup> a.d.



- dyd that *within* a shorte space the thre .C. Almayns that were set to kepe y<sup>e</sup> tentes were all slayne / then Huon & his company entred in amonge y<sup>e</sup> tentes & 4 paunlyons;<sup>1</sup> they bete downe<sup>2</sup> tentes, & suche as they met were slayne / then y<sup>e</sup> almayns on all partes armed them / & theemperour sowned his trompettes, & armed him / he was so sorowful & angry with y<sup>e</sup> trauel & 8 damage he was put to by Huon / *that* he enraged & was nere out of his wyt / for nyght & day he coulde take no rest. When he was armed, he mounted on his horse, & xx .M. Almayns with him, & they all sware the 12 deth<sup>3</sup> of Huon / whom god defende, for, yf he longe taryed there, he sholde be in daunger of his lyfe / but he was wyse and sage<sup>4</sup> in feates of armes;<sup>5</sup> he loked towardes the emperours tente and sawe wel twenty 16 thousande men redy to come vpon hym / then he sayd to his men / ‘syrs, it is tyme that we recule<sup>6</sup> to oure cyte / we may wel now go without blame / <sup>7</sup>we may noo lenger tary here without grete daunger’ / ‘syr,’ 20 quod Gerames, ‘we be redy to do your commaundement’ / then they toke the way to returne to the cyte / but the emperour, who desyred gretly the deth of Huon, he and his men pursued Huon as faste as theyr horses 24 wolde<sup>8</sup> go / and when the emperour was nere to Huon, he sayd, ‘A, thou fals traytoure, so many tymes *thou* haste troubled & angred me that lenger I wyll not suffre the to lyue / turne towarde me, for with the 28 I wyll iust, or elles I shall slee the flyenge / I hadde rather<sup>9</sup> dye then not to take of the vengeance for the hurtes that thou haste done to me’ / when Huon herde how the emperour called him traytour, he was sore 32 dyspleased, & turned his horse towarde the emperour, and sayd, ‘A, false olde churle, where as thou sayest I am a traytoure / I shall shewe the how thou lyst
- The guards about the tents are all slain,  
and the Frenchmen make havoe among them.
- The Emperor is well-nigh distracted.
- With twenty thousand men he moves to the attack.
- Huon orders his men to retreat.
- The Emperor pursues them, and, coming up with Huon, insults him loudly.
- Huon turns to do battle with him,

<sup>1</sup> where.<sup>2</sup> the.<sup>3</sup> Fol. lxxxiii. col. 1.<sup>4</sup> discreet.<sup>5</sup> and.<sup>6</sup> retire.<sup>7</sup> for.<sup>8</sup> could.<sup>9</sup> to.

and the Emperor  
narrowly escapes  
death.

Huon would have  
cut off his head,  
but the Germans  
rescue their  
sovereign.

The Emperor is  
filled with a  
longing for  
vengeance.

falsely' / then they ranne eche at other *with* theyr  
speres in theyr restes, so that they met so rudely and  
strake eche other on theyr sheldes by suche force *that*  
theyr sheldes brast<sup>1</sup> a sonder / themperoure was a 4  
pyssaunt prynee, so *that* his spere brast<sup>1</sup> all to peces /  
but Huons spere was stronge & helde, wherwith he gaue  
the emperoure suche a stroke *that* shelde nor haubert  
coude not warraunt hym, but *that* y<sup>e</sup> spere entred in to 8  
themperours syde / so that yf he had not swarued  
a syde, he had not scaped y<sup>e</sup>2 deth / *that* stroke was so  
sore that themperour fell to y<sup>e</sup> erth in such wyse *that*  
nere hande he hadde broken his necke *with* y<sup>e</sup> fal, & so 12  
lay in a swone. Huon, seynge themperour lyenge on y<sup>e</sup>  
erth, <sup>3</sup>in grete yre<sup>4</sup> & dyspleasure<sup>5</sup> desyred to haue  
slayne themperour / then he drewe out his good<sup>2</sup>  
swerde, & turned to <sup>6</sup>him to haue stryken<sup>6</sup> of his heed / 16  
the whiche he had done, yf he had not ben quykely<sup>2</sup>  
rescued / but the Almaynes fro all partes cam thither /  
so that they rescued themperour fro deth, and set hym  
on a hors with moche payne / then he thanked our 20  
lorde god *that* he was so<sup>7</sup> scaped, and made auowe  
to god *that* he wolde neuer more fyght *with* Huon  
hande to hande / but he wolde pursue hym to the deth,  
yf he coude. 24



¶ How Huon made another issue out of  
Burdeux, and toke away al the bestes that  
were in the pasturs without the towne  
pertaynyng to themperours hoost. 28  
Cap. C.v.

<sup>1</sup> burst.

<sup>2</sup> omitted.  
<sup>5</sup> he.

<sup>3</sup> Fol. lxxxiii. col. 2.  
<sup>6-6</sup> strike.

<sup>4</sup> rage.  
<sup>7</sup> well.



4 When Huon saw that he coude do no  
 more at *that* tyme, and *that* y<sup>e</sup> Almayns  
 encreased in grete nombre to haue  
 assayled hym / then he spurred his  
 good horse Amphage, who made suche  
 lepes that it semed he had flowen in the ayre / he had  
 his swerde in *his* hande, and strake therwith so gret  
 8 strokes that none durst approche nere hym / thus he  
 rode after his men and led them towards the cyte as  
 y<sup>e</sup> shepherde doth his shepe, for as soone as *his*  
 enemies approached nere hym, he shewed theym his  
 12 shelde and spere poynt / and as he rode there came  
 a yonge knyght named Gerard / ryghte hardy and  
 valyaunt in armes; he was bastarde sone to the  
 emperoure / who desyred greatly to wyne honoure  
 16 and prayse / he sawe Huon on his good horse, and  
 sawe<sup>1</sup> *that* no man durst approche nere<sup>2</sup> him / <sup>3</sup>cam  
 after him & cryed, 'A, thou fals traytour, to flye awaye<sup>4</sup>  
 shall not auayle <sup>5</sup>the, for I brynge thy dethe in the  
 20 poynt of my spere, with y<sup>e</sup> whiche I shall slee the  
 fleyng without thou turne to me, for or<sup>6</sup> thou scape  
 me I shall cause the to be hanged in the syght of them  
 within Burdeux' / when Huon vnderstode the knyght,  
 24 and saw the grete hate and yre<sup>7</sup> that he was in, and  
 herynge howe he called hym traytoure / he thought  
 and sayd to hymselfe / that he had rather dye then he  
 that had sayd these wordes shold <sup>8</sup>departe<sup>8</sup> without  
 28 felynge the sharpenesse of his spere / the whiche he  
 couched in the rest and spurred his horse, who ranne  
 lyke the thonder / <sup>9</sup>he gaue the knyght suche an  
 horryble stroke / that<sup>10</sup> his shelde nor<sup>11</sup> armure coude  
 32 saue his lyfe / for his spere persed through bothe his  
 sydes, and<sup>3</sup> was clene borne ouer his hors croupe starke

Huon flees from  
the enemy at a  
flying pace.

Gerard, a bastard  
son of the  
Emperor, pursues  
and defies him.

Huon turns again  
and rushes upon  
him, so that he  
kills him.

<sup>1</sup> likewise. <sup>2</sup> vnto.

<sup>3</sup> hee. <sup>4</sup> it.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 1.

<sup>6</sup> ere. <sup>7</sup> rage.

<sup>8-9</sup> haue departed. <sup>9</sup> and.

<sup>10</sup> neither. <sup>11</sup> his.

deed / 'go thy waye,' *quod* Huon, 'thou shalte neuer  
 haue power to do any man dyspleasure<sup>1</sup> more' / <sup>2</sup>then  
 he drewe his swerde, wherwith he delte suche dys-  
 syplyne among the Almayns that all fled before hym. 4  
 Gerames / Othon / and Bernarde & Rychar employed  
 theyr forces and vertues ryght valyauntly / but the  
 Almayns dyd so moche that Huon lost parte of his  
 men, and the rest he ledde with him / oftentimes he 3  
 turned and returned agaynst his enemyes / but what so  
 euer force or prowes he shewed, yf he had not in hast  
 gone away / he nor neuer<sup>3</sup> one of his men hadde scaped  
 without deth / for mo then .xxx. M. Almayns were 12  
 nere hym, and all they<sup>4</sup> desyred his deth / but god  
 dyd hym that grace / that he and the small nombre that  
 he had lefte entred with hym in to the cyte, and y<sup>e</sup>  
 gates<sup>5</sup> closed / and themperour in grete dyspleasure 16  
 retourned to his tent / and by the waye he founde his  
 bastarde sone deed / for whom he made suche sorowe  
 that his lordes nor his broder coude not apease hym ;  
 and so he caused hym to be borne to the tentes, 20  
 and was gretely complayned of all the barons / <sup>6</sup>for he  
 was lyke to haue ben a<sup>7</sup> noble man. And Huon went  
 to his palayes, where he founde the fayre Esclaramounde,  
 who demaunded how he dyde. 'Ryght well, lady,' 24  
*quod* Huon ; 'thanked be god I am returned in saue  
 garde, but I haue lost many of my men ;' and therwith  
 he wepte, and the lady comforted hym as moche as she  
 myghte / then themperour, beynge in his hoost, 28  
 knowynge for trouth that Huon had but a small  
 company in the cyte and *that* he thought he coude do  
 hym but small damage fro thensforth / dyslodged and  
 cam and lay nerer to y<sup>e</sup> cyte, and dressed vp his engyns 32  
 and montons<sup>8</sup> to breke the walles, and made euery daye

All the Germans  
 flee before him in  
 fear.  
 But he loses many  
 men at every  
 onset,  
 and is in great  
 peril.  
 He was fighting  
 with thirty  
 thousand  
 Germans,  
 but he returns at  
 length to the city  
 in safety.  
 Huon begins to  
 despair of his  
 fortune.  
 The Emperor  
 moves his host  
 nearer to the  
 walls,

<sup>1</sup> any.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> a.      <sup>4</sup> those.      <sup>5</sup> were.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 2.      <sup>7</sup> verie.

<sup>8</sup> mountains.

- betynge<sup>1</sup> at the walles ; and they within defended them  
 valyauntly<sup>2</sup> with theyr crosbowes ; many men, bothe  
 within and without, were slayne / this syege endured  
 4 fro the begynnyng of August vnto<sup>3</sup> Ester after /  
 wherof Huon was sore dyspleased, and<sup>4</sup> complayned for  
 the losse of his noble barons / and<sup>5</sup> men that he had  
 lost. Also he sawe his tours and gates sore<sup>6</sup> beaten,  
 8 and his enemyes<sup>7</sup> before his<sup>8</sup> cyte / and loked for no  
 socours fro any parte / and<sup>9</sup> he had with hym<sup>10</sup> but<sup>10</sup>  
 thre hondred knyghtes and a hondred men to kepe the  
 cyte with all / then he called Esclaramonde his wyfe,  
 12 and sayd, 'Dame,<sup>11</sup> I knowe well ye endure trouble and  
 dyspleasure ynough / and therefore I pray you & ye can  
 gyue me any good counsell, gyue it me<sup>12</sup> / for the yre<sup>13</sup>  
 & dysplesure *that* I haue at my herte troubleth so myne  
 16 vnderstondyng that I can not tell what to do / &<sup>12</sup> on  
 y<sup>e</sup> other parte I se my cyte besyged & my men slayn,  
 nor I can gete<sup>14</sup> none apoyntment<sup>14</sup> *with* themperour,  
 who<sup>15</sup> is so<sup>16</sup> sore dysplesed *with* me *that* I can neuer  
 20 haue his loue / he hath slayne my men, wherof I am so  
 sorowfull *that* my herte nere fayleth me' / 'sir,' quod  
 Esclaramonde, 'ye do grete wronge to say these wordes  
 before me or<sup>17</sup> to complayn *your* damages / if ye wold a<sup>18</sup>  
 24 beleued me<sup>19</sup> ye had gone to my brother for socoure,  
 who wold haue come with you & brought<sup>21</sup> such<sup>22</sup>  
 nombre of men that themperour durst not<sup>18</sup> abyden  
 you, & also to haue made ther by my brother a crysten  
 28 man, for he hath byleued in our lorde god this seuen  
 yere past' / 'dame,'<sup>23</sup> quod Huon, 'all that ye say  
 myght well haue ben,<sup>24</sup> but I had leuer<sup>25</sup> haue lost thre

and assaults the  
city more  
violently than  
before.

From August to  
Easter does the  
siege continue.

Only three  
hundred men are  
now with Huon,

and he, not  
knowing what to  
do, asks  
Esclaramonde to  
give him counsel.

She repeats her  
advice that he  
should go to her  
brother for aid.

<sup>1</sup> battering.      <sup>2</sup> for.      <sup>3</sup> to the.      <sup>4</sup> verie much.

<sup>5</sup> other good.      <sup>6</sup> so.      <sup>7</sup> lying.      <sup>8</sup> the.      <sup>9</sup> that.

<sup>10-10</sup> not aboue.      <sup>11</sup> Madame.      <sup>12</sup> now.      <sup>13</sup> rage.

<sup>14-14</sup> no agreement.      <sup>15</sup> for he is.      <sup>16</sup> omitted.

<sup>17</sup> in this sort.      <sup>18</sup> haue.      <sup>19</sup> then.

<sup>20</sup> Fol. lxxxiiii. col. 1.      <sup>21</sup> you.      <sup>22</sup> a.      <sup>23</sup> Madame.

<sup>24</sup> done.      <sup>25</sup> rather.



Huon still  
hesitates to  
abandon his wife  
and friends in so  
great a danger,

but he knows, if  
he has no succour,  
his city and  
himself and his  
men will fall into  
the Emperor's  
hands.

He therefore  
determines to  
seek out his  
brother-in-law.

Esclaramonde  
fears that the city  
must fall in his  
absence,

but nevertheless  
bids him depart  
at once.

Huon tells her of  
a device whereby  
the town may be  
victualled.

such cytes as this is<sup>1</sup> then to haue lefte you, & my lordes,  
& good burgesses, whom I loue so faythfully. yf I  
had but a .M. knightes to defende my cyte / *with* an  
yll wyll I shall<sup>2</sup> departe fro you, for I am<sup>3</sup> in certayne<sup>3</sup> 4  
that yf I go and seke for socours I shall haue payne  
ynough, & ye that shall abyde here are lyke to haue  
more.<sup>4</sup> I know wel *that* themperour, who<sup>5</sup> hateth vs,<sup>6</sup>  
setteth all his entent to haue vs / & yf he take you, ye 8  
shall be in grete paryll / & yf I tary here *with* you, &  
go for no socour / *this* cyte wyl be taken &<sup>7</sup> famished /  
& both you, & I<sup>8</sup> destroyed / for themperour, who  
loueth vs but<sup>9</sup> lytell, and not *with* out a cause, yf he 12  
may take me I shall dye of<sup>1</sup> a shamefull dethe / it is  
no meruayle though<sup>10</sup> he be displeased with me / for I  
haue slayn his sones & neuwes, & many of his best  
frendes; yf he maye take me I shall haue no pyte 16  
shewed to<sup>1</sup> me / & I know well *with* out I haue some  
socours myne ende is at hande / wherfore, dame,<sup>11</sup> I  
thynke it best that I go to your brother for socours /  
for I<sup>12</sup> haue taryed ouer long' / 'syr,' quod Esclaramond, 20  
'ye speke it<sup>13</sup> very late / for now ye know well that all  
our brede and wyne / and flesshe / & fysshe / begyn to  
fayle vs, and all<sup>14</sup> other vytales / wherfore it shall<sup>15</sup> not  
be longe after your departure but that this cyte shall<sup>16</sup> 24  
be taken and dystroyed / and the men within slayne /  
and I ledde in to grete mysery / yet for all *that* I wold  
not counseyle you to abyde here / but I pray you make  
hast to departe.' When Huon herde her, he began to 28  
wepe / and abashed<sup>17</sup> his chere to the erth, and studied<sup>18</sup>  
a lytell, and<sup>19</sup> sayd, 'Dame,<sup>11</sup> I thynke vpon 20 one  
thyng / the whiche to you shall<sup>16</sup> be ryght<sup>1</sup> profytable /  
wherby ye shall haue vytaile ynoughe to lyue by<sup>1</sup> an 32

<sup>1</sup> omitted.    <sup>2</sup> should.    <sup>3-3</sup> assured.    <sup>4</sup> for.    <sup>5</sup> so.

<sup>6</sup> as he.    <sup>7</sup> or.    <sup>8</sup> be.    <sup>9</sup> a.    <sup>10</sup> if.    <sup>11</sup> Madame.

<sup>12</sup> see that I.    <sup>13</sup> of this.    <sup>14</sup> our.    <sup>15</sup> cannot.

<sup>16</sup> will.    <sup>17</sup> abashing.    <sup>18</sup> studying.    <sup>19</sup> he.

<sup>20</sup> Fol. lxxxiii. col. 2.

- hole yere.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'of that I thanke god, yf it  
 may so come to passe.' 'Dame,'<sup>1</sup> quod Huon, 'I shall  
 tell you how this cyte may be reuytayled without<sup>2</sup> grete  
 4 losse of any men / trewe it is<sup>3</sup> here without in the  
 medowe there are two hondred men set there by the  
 Emperoure to kepe y<sup>e</sup> beestes pertaynyng to his hoost,  
 the whiche are without nombre / what in beefferes /  
 8 keen / and hogges / and mo then x thousande shepe /  
 the<sup>4</sup> whiche beestes<sup>5</sup> by the grace of Iesu, or<sup>5</sup> I slepe I  
 wyll brynge them<sup>4</sup> in to this cyte / and than ye may slee  
 them and poudre theym in salte, soo that ye shall haue  
 12 no famyn for a hole yere.' 'Syr,' quod she, 'I pray to<sup>6</sup>  
 god ye may brynge it<sup>7</sup> to passe.' thus they taryed tyll<sup>8</sup>  
 souper tyme / and after when it was nyght / & that  
 they thought that they of y<sup>e</sup> hoost were a slepe / and  
 16 sawe that the wether was troublous<sup>9</sup> as they wolde  
 desyre it, he armed hym and all his men / he<sup>10</sup> set men  
 at the gate to defende hym at his reculynge.<sup>11</sup> Then he  
 mounted on<sup>12</sup> his good horse / then<sup>10</sup> he opened the gate,  
 20 and yssued out as preuely as he myght / and tooke the  
 way to the medowe and came thyder / and Huon then  
 cryed, and sayd / 'a, ye vyllaynes, this pasturage is  
 myn / I come to chalenge it / in an yll<sup>13</sup> houre ye put  
 24 your beestes here to pasture; ye shall make me  
 amendes / for<sup>14</sup> the beestes that I fynde here in my  
 pasture I wyll goo and pounce theym / and yf the  
 emperoure wyll haue theym he must bye them and  
 28 make amendes for theyr forfeyt, & ye that be the  
 keepers shall derely a bye it.'

The Emperor  
has much cattle  
for his host.

and these he will  
bring into the  
city.

Huon arms his  
men for the  
adventure,  
and leaves the  
city by night.

He challenges the  
keepers of the  
cattle to surrender  
them to him.

<sup>1</sup> Madame.      <sup>2</sup> any.      <sup>3</sup> that.      <sup>4</sup> omitted.      <sup>5-5</sup> ere.  
<sup>6</sup> vnto.      <sup>7</sup> well.      <sup>8</sup> vntill.      <sup>9</sup> euen.      <sup>10</sup> and.  
<sup>11</sup> recoiling.      <sup>12</sup> vpon.      <sup>13</sup> euill.      <sup>14</sup> all.

They prepare to  
fight,



but Huon slays  
very many of  
them forthwith.

He and his  
companions kill  
all the two  
hundred keepers,  
save one, who  
escapes to warn  
the Emperor.

The Emperor  
rushes forth with  
his men, but the  
cattle had already  
entered the city.

Huon and his  
men turn upon  
the Germans who  
were in pursuit of  
them,

and kills many of  
them with his  
own hand.

1 Hen the keepers herd Huon speke they  
had grete fere / <sup>2</sup>they thought to haue  
gon and taken theyr horses, & <sup>3</sup>to haue  
defended them selfe, but Huon & his 4  
company gaue them no layser so to  
doo / then <sup>4</sup>Huon with his spere strake one starke  
deed, & after he slew y<sup>e</sup> seconde / <sup>5</sup>the thyrd / &  
fourth / & so slewe many as long as his spere helde; 8  
then he set his hande on his swerde, wherwith he claue  
a sonder helmes and sheldes and bette downe men on  
euery syde, & Gerames / Othon / & Rycher / dyd <sup>6</sup>  
valyauntly. <sup>2</sup>so moche dyd Huon and his men within a 12  
shorte space that the two hondred men *that* kept the  
beestes were all slayne except one, who scaped & ran to  
themperours hoost; then <sup>7</sup>he shewed themperour how  
Huon & his men were yssued out of the cyte, and that 16  
all the keepers of the beestes were all <sup>8</sup>slayne, and  
y<sup>e</sup> beestes taken and dryuen in to y<sup>e</sup> cyte / when  
themperoure herde these tydynges he was ryght  
sorowfull, and armed hym & his men, & lept on theyr 20  
horses & ranne towards the cyte to stoppe Huon fro  
entrynge in to y<sup>e</sup> cyte / but or <sup>9</sup>they came thyder al y<sup>e</sup>  
beestes were entred in to y<sup>e</sup> cyte / & <sup>10</sup>when Huon saw  
themperour comynge, he sayde to <sup>11</sup>his men, 'syrs, 24  
I requyre you let vs turne vpon oure enemyes who  
cometh after vs / for I wold fayne shewe them how  
men that cometh fro foraging can rynne with theyr  
speres.' then they turned agaynst the Almayns so that 28  
eche of them bare a man to the erth, & they drew  
theyr swerdes / & slew men rounde aboute them / and  
Huon vpon his good hors Amphage held his swerde in his  
hande all <sup>12</sup>be sprent <sup>12</sup>with y<sup>e</sup> bloode of his enemyes, 32  
wherwith he cutte of armes, legges, & handes / he was


<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxxxiiii, back, col. 1.    <sup>2</sup> and.    <sup>3</sup> so.    <sup>4</sup> for.  
<sup>5</sup> then.    <sup>6</sup> verie.    <sup>7</sup> where.    <sup>8</sup> omitted.    <sup>9</sup> before.  
<sup>10</sup> Now.    <sup>11</sup> vnto.    <sup>12-12</sup> to be sprinkled.

more doutē then the deuyll / for by his prowes he dyd  
 so moche that his enemyes fled before hym and made  
 hym <sup>1</sup>way, so that in <sup>2</sup>the spyte<sup>2</sup> of al the Almayns,  
 4 after that he and his men had slayne foure M. of his  
 enemyes / he entred into the cite with all the pray of  
 his beestes / wherwith themperour & his men that  
 folowed were sore dyspleased for the losse that they  
 8 had,<sup>3</sup> & for that Huon was so scaped fro theyr handes /  
 and *that* he had taken away there beestes and slayne  
 his men / thus as ye haue herde Huon entred into the  
 cyte of Burdeux *with* all his praye.

Four thousand  
 men lie dead on  
 the field.

The Emperour is  
 sore distressed.

12 ¶ How Huon of Burdeux made hym redy to  
 go to seke for some socours, & of the sorowe  
 that the duches his wyfe made. Ca. c.vi.

16 fter that Huon was entred in to the  
 cyte, he wente to his palays, & there  
 founde the duches Esclaramonde,  
 who vnased *his* helme & clypped &  
 kyssed him, & said, '*sir*, I pray you,  
 20 how haue ye done?' 'fayre lady,'

Huon tells  
 Esclaramonde of  
 the success of the  
 adventure.

quod he, 'we haue slayn many an Almayn, & haue  
 brought away y<sup>e</sup> pray / for in <sup>4</sup>all the emperours host  
 we haue not left nother porke / kyne / nor moton : we  
 24 haue broughte all into this cite, thanked be god / so  
 now I shall leue you in more suertye in myne absence /  
 for ye haue nowe wytayle ynoughe for a hole yere.

Nowe I wyll go to your brother / & yf I fynde that  
 28 he wyl be chrystened, I shall bryng hym with me / yf  
 not, I shall defye hym and slee hym without he wyll  
 beleue on Iesu chryste, what so euer fortune fall.'

He will depart at  
 once on his  
 mission to her  
 brother,  
 but if he will not  
 be converted, he  
 will slay him.

'Syr,' quod Esclarmonde, sore wepynge, 'haue no  
 32 dought<sup>5</sup> / for it is more then .vii. yeres syns he desyred

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 2.    <sup>2-2</sup> despite.    <sup>3</sup> receiued.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. lxxxv. col. 1.    <sup>5</sup> of that.

Huon calls his friends together, and informs them of his purpose.

He bids them remain quietly within the city in his absence,

and warns them of their danger.

He entrusts to them the keeping of his wife and daughter.

Gerames and his companions weep on hearing Huon's words,

to be chrystenyd, wherfore, syr, I requyre you loue my brother' / 'dame,'<sup>1</sup> quod Huon, 'I shall do your pleasure' / then he called to hym hys preuy frendes, and sayd / 'syr, ye knowe wel what daunger and parell we 4 be in: and by-cause in all thyngys nedefull<sup>2</sup> oughte to be made prouysyon with delygens / this citey is now well prouyded of vytaile, wherfore ye shal not nede to make enye issuinge out without ye se<sup>3</sup> a<sup>3</sup> great adwantage: and as for assawlt, yf ye defende it well it is inpreyngnable for our enemyes to wyn it<sup>4</sup> / yf ye be to yeld it vp, beware what ye do / for the great hate *that* the emperour hathe agaynst vs paradventure wyl con- 12 strayne hym to breke his promys: yf ye be taken by force, or by this meanes, ye shall all dye myserably, & my wyfe<sup>5</sup> muredred<sup>3</sup> vp<sup>3</sup> in pryson, or elles myserably to fynyshe her dayes / and my lytell doughter, Claryet, 16 whome I loue so derely,<sup>6</sup> shalbe lost, and my citey dystroyed and brought to vtter ruyn / wherfore I commaunde<sup>7</sup> vnto you my wyfe & my doughter and all the rest<sup>8</sup> tyl my<sup>8</sup> returne agayne, the whiche shalbe shortely 20 yf I may / and I shall brynge with me suche socoure that ye shall al be ioyfull therof' / 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'god gyue grace to sende you agayne in sauegard / ye knowe wel<sup>10</sup> ye leue vs in great pouerte and fere, wher- 24 fore we al desyre you not to forget vs,' and therewith they al wepte / then Huon sayd, 'I praye you make no suche sorowe for my departynge: for<sup>11</sup> knowe the busynes that causeth me to departe: for without I go for 28 some socoure ye know well we ar but dede / & Gerames, I gyue you the keypyng of my wyfe and chyld / ye ar bounde to serue me trewely / for in you I haue my parfyght trust.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames, 'haue ye no 32

<sup>1</sup> Madame.      <sup>2</sup> there.      <sup>3-3</sup> omitted.      <sup>4</sup> but.  
<sup>5</sup> bee.      <sup>6</sup> shee.      <sup>7</sup> commend.      <sup>8-8</sup> vntill I.  
<sup>9</sup> Fol. lxxxv. col. 2.      <sup>10</sup> that.  
<sup>11</sup> yee.



doughte but *that* as longe as I haue lyfe in my body, I  
shal not fayle them in lyfe nor dethe.'

but Gerames  
promises to  
protect  
Esclaramonde and  
Clariet, so long as  
he lives.

¶ When Huon hard Gerames say so, he began sore  
4 to wepe / and the fayre lady Esclaramonde be gan to  
make suche sorowe that<sup>1</sup> pety it was to see:<sup>2</sup> she  
wrange hyr handes and tare hyr here, and made suche  
cryes<sup>3</sup> that euery man had pety of hyr / <sup>4</sup>they comforted  
8 hyr as moche as they myght: she had great cause to  
wepe and to be sorowfull / for <sup>5</sup>or euer<sup>5</sup> Huon returned  
to Burdeaux she and all they that were with her suf-  
feryd so moche payne and pouerte that to shewe it wold  
12 cause a harde harte to wepe for petye. And after that  
Huon had thus spoke to his companye, he entered in  
to his chapell, & was confessyd of the bysshop of the  
citye, <sup>6</sup>and was hoselyd.<sup>6</sup> Then the bysshop gaue to  
16 Huon a stoole that was halowed and of great vertue, &  
sayde, 'syr, I requyre you, for y<sup>e</sup> loue of our lorde Iesu  
chryst / kepe well this stoole, for such an owre maye  
falle that it wyl stand you in good stede.' Huon ryght  
20 humbly toke it, and thankyd the bysshope. It dyd  
hym good seruyse after<sup>7</sup> / for on a daye as he passed  
he / <sup>8</sup>had therof so great nede that he wolde not a for-  
borne it for .xiiii. good cities, as ye shall here<sup>9</sup> after.


Esclaramonde is  
sorely grieved  
when Huon takes  
leave of her.

Huon is confessed  
by the bishop of  
the city,  
who gives him a  
hallowed stool,

which should  
stand him in  
good stead.

24 ¶ How Huon departed fro the cytye of Bur-  
deaux, and sayled tyl<sup>10</sup> he came into the  
hye see, & had manye great fortunes.

Ca. .cvii.

28  Hen Huon had taken the halowed  
stoole, he delyuered it to his chapleine,  
who was a wyse man and of a holy  
lyfe, and commaundyd hym to kepe it  
32 well. Then he toke .v. knyghtes to

Huon takes with  
him five knights,

<sup>1</sup> great.    <sup>2</sup> her.    <sup>3</sup> out-cries.    <sup>4</sup> yet.    <sup>5-6</sup> before.

<sup>6-6</sup> and receiued the Sacrament.    <sup>7</sup> afterward.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. lxxxv. back, col. 1.    <sup>9</sup> more heereafter.    <sup>10</sup> vntill.

and a chaplain  
and a clerk.

Huon finally bids  
his wife farewell  
amid her tears.

He and his  
company embark  
in a ship moored  
on the Garonne,  
and sail away.

Huon weeps at  
the thought of  
having left his  
wife and  
daughter.

The ship enters  
the high sea.

haue with hym, and his chappleyne and a clarke to  
serue hym. Then Huon went to his wyfe, and kyssyd  
her at lys departynge, and she fell in a swoune in his  
armys, & Huon sore wepynge releuyd her, and sayd / 4  
'fayre ladye, I requyre you forbere makynge of this  
sorow.' 'A,<sup>1</sup> syr,' quod she, 'well I ought to be dolent,<sup>2</sup>  
syn ye le/<sup>3</sup>ue me me besegyde with them that desyrethe  
your dethe' / 'dame,'<sup>4</sup> quod Huon, 'dyscomfort you 8  
not / for by the grace of god I shall make a shorte  
retourne.' Then he clypped and kyssed her, recom-  
maundyng her to our lorde Iesu chryst. Then Huon  
and suche as were appoynted to go *with* hym departed 12  
out of the palays, and went to a backe posterne vpon  
the ryuer of Geround, where there was a shyp redy and  
rychely garnyshyd with all thynges conueniente /  
then<sup>5</sup> Huon clene<sup>6</sup> armyd & his men enterid into the 16  
shyp & had no hors with them / when Huon departed,  
he delyuered his good hors to the kepyng of syr Bar-  
narde his cosyn / and toke his leue of Gerames and of  
all his other companye / and so lyfte<sup>7</sup> vp sayle, and 20  
so<sup>8</sup> or<sup>9</sup> it was day in the mornynge he was more then .ii.  
leges fro Burdeaux. Then Huon regarded y<sup>e</sup> citey, and  
sore wepynge dyd recommaunde it to our lorde Iesu  
chryste, humblye requyryng hym to haue in his saue- 24  
garde his citey / wyfe / and chylde, & al other that  
were within it. Thus duke Huon sayled a long the  
ryuer of Gerounde, petyously complaynyng for his wyfe,  
the fayre Esclaramoude, & for his fayre doughter, 28  
Claryet / whom he coude not forget / for he had so great  
dought to lese them that when he rememberyd them  
he wepte. <sup>10</sup>So long they sayled<sup>10</sup> that they enteryd  
in to the hyghe see / <sup>11</sup>he had good cause to wepe and 32  
to make<sup>12</sup> sorow : for he neuer entered agayne in to

<sup>1</sup> good.    <sup>2</sup> sorowfull.    <sup>3</sup> Fol. lxxxv. back, col. 2.

<sup>4</sup> Madame.    <sup>5</sup> there.    <sup>6</sup> being.    <sup>7</sup> hoysed.    <sup>8</sup> so omitted.

<sup>9</sup> ere.    <sup>10-10</sup> They sayled so long.    <sup>11</sup> and.    <sup>12</sup> great.

Burdeaux tyll<sup>1</sup> the emperour had taken it, who hated  
 duke Huon mortally. Huon beyng in his shyp  
 thought in hymself, that<sup>2</sup> his harte gaue hym or<sup>3</sup> he  
 4 returned to the cytye of Burdeaux, that<sup>4</sup> the cytye shuld  
 be taken and his wyfe<sup>5</sup> led away / wherfore<sup>6</sup> he deter-  
 myned in his corage, that if it so / <sup>7</sup>fortuned, and if  
 euer he returned agayn, what so euer ende came therof,  
 8 he wolde sle the emperoure Thyrry, & that castell nor  
 towne shulde not saue hym. There was a notable  
 knyght with Huon who sayd:<sup>8</sup> ‘syr, leue your musyng  
 and set<sup>9</sup> your hope<sup>10</sup> in god. he shall ayde you &  
 12 socoure you in all your affayres<sup>11</sup> / he shall<sup>12</sup> helpe your  
 wyfe and kepe your cytye tyll<sup>1</sup> ye returne / discomforte  
 your selfe no further.<sup>13</sup> thynke of god / and praye to<sup>14</sup>  
 hym to geue you the grace to acomplyshe your vyage /  
 16 the whiche I hope ye shall <sup>15</sup>do<sup>15</sup> yf ye thus do’ / when  
 Huon harde hym he was<sup>16</sup> confortyd, and thanked the  
 knyght: and so sayled forthe tyll<sup>1</sup> they were far on<sup>17</sup>  
 the see & loste theyr ryght way / for the shyp turned  
 20 on the ryght hand and loste the waye that they shulde  
 haue sayled / and sayld in to places not knowen to  
 enye of the maryners / wherof the patron was sore  
 abashed in hym selfe, without makyng eny knowleg  
 24 therof / <sup>2</sup>so longe they sayled with wynd and wether  
 that they aryued at a porte where as they founde many  
 botes / then<sup>18</sup> they caste theyr ancre and went a lond to  
 refresshe them<sup>19</sup> / then Huon called to hym the mayster  
 28 of the shyp and demaundyd of hym yf he coud sayle  
 to y<sup>e</sup> realme of Aufamie / ‘syr,’ quod y<sup>e</sup> mayster, ‘I  
 was neuer there nor I haue no wyll<sup>20</sup> to go thether / it  
 were a folye for me to take on<sup>17</sup> me to sayle thether,

Huon fears that  
 the Emperor will  
 take the city  
 while he is away.

A knight offers  
 him consolation.

They sail onwards  
 and lose their  
 way.

They arrive at a  
 port,  
 where they find  
 many boats.

<sup>1</sup> vntill.    <sup>2</sup> and.    <sup>3</sup> that before.    <sup>4</sup> omitted.

<sup>5</sup> the faire Escleremond.    <sup>6</sup> therefore.    <sup>7</sup> Fol. lxxxvi. col. 1.

<sup>8</sup> vnto him.    <sup>9</sup> put.    <sup>10</sup> trust.    <sup>11</sup> enterpryzes.

<sup>12</sup> will.    <sup>13</sup> but.    <sup>14</sup> vnto.    <sup>15-15</sup> not faile of.

<sup>16</sup> much.    <sup>17</sup> vppon.    <sup>18</sup> there.    <sup>19</sup> themselves.

<sup>20</sup> minde.

The pilot of the vessel does not know in what direction to sail,

and a new pilot is sought and found.

He warns Huon that the voyage to Aufamie, the realm of his brother-in-law, is long and perilous.

Huon is sad at the thought that a whole year must pass ere he can return to Bordeaux.

Huon and his company move into a new ship.

syn<sup>1</sup> I had neuer no knowlege to sayle by that straynge see. But I counsayle you<sup>2</sup> here in this porte where as ye ar now to hyer a nother patron that can brynge you thether.' 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I praye you to <sup>4</sup> do so moche as to gette me one' / 'syr,' quod he, 'I shall do that<sup>3</sup> I can' / then he and Huon serchyd fro shyppe to shyppe and fro bote to bote to get a pelot / at laste they <sup>4</sup> came to an aunsyent man / who sayd that <sup>8</sup> he coude well brynge them thether / and sayd how he had bene there before that tyme. 'Frend,' quod Huon, 'yf ye wyll bringe me to the realme of Aufamie I shall geue you gold and syluer plente' / 'syr,' quod the olde <sup>12</sup> patron, 'I shall do your pleasure / but, syr, one<sup>5</sup> I say to you / knowe for trouthe the vyage is <sup>6</sup> ryghte perelous & dangerous<sup>6</sup> to passe and a<sup>7</sup> long vyage.<sup>8</sup> it wyll be halfe a yeere or<sup>9</sup> ye can com thether / and besyde <sup>16</sup> that we muste pas by a perelous Goulfe / the whiche is reputed to be one of the mouthes of hel / for<sup>10</sup> if by aduenture by<sup>11</sup> fortune of the wynde that we be blowen nere to<sup>12</sup> it we shal neuer departe / but be loste for <sup>20</sup> euer.' when Huon hard the pylot, he began to wepe and complayne for hys wyfe and his dere daughter whome he had lefte in the citeye of Burdeaux in great dought<sup>13</sup> to be taken. For he saw well then<sup>2</sup> he coud <sup>24</sup> not returne<sup>14</sup> of a hole yere with eny socours / how be it, he lefte not his vyage / then he commaundyd his seruantis to dyscharge all his baggage and vytayles out of the one shyp in to the other / <sup>15</sup> when the new shyp <sup>28</sup> with y<sup>e</sup> new patron was redy in all thynges Huon entered into it. Then the newe patron demaunded of the olde maryner the cause why thei came thether and fro whense they came. 'Syr,' quod he, 'trew it is we <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> seeing.      <sup>2</sup> that.      <sup>3</sup> what.      <sup>4</sup> Fol. lxxxvi. col. 2.  
<sup>5</sup> thing.      <sup>6-6</sup> very daungerous for.      <sup>7</sup> verie.      <sup>8</sup> for.  
<sup>9</sup> ere.      <sup>10</sup> and.      <sup>11</sup> or.      <sup>12</sup> vnto.      <sup>13</sup> daunger.  
<sup>14</sup> for the space.      <sup>15</sup> and.

- came fro the citey of Burdeaux / the whiche stonde the  
 vpon a notable ryuer, and when we were entered in to  
 the see / a sore wynde rose vpon vs in suche wyse that  
 4 we were constrayned to abandon our shype to the wynde,  
 and wether, and fortune of the see / the whiche hathe  
 brought vs hether' / 'frend,' quod the new patron /  
 'as sone as ye were out of the ryuer of Gerounde, yf ye  
 8 had turned your <sup>1</sup>sterne towards the sirode,<sup>2</sup> ye hadde  
 neuer comen hether, and within a moneth ye shulde  
 haue com to the realme of Aufamie, where as now ye  
 be<sup>3</sup> far of' / when Huon vnderstode the cause of theyr  
 12 comynge thether, he was ryght sorowfull and sore dys-  
 pleased yf he coude haue amendyd it. But his dys-  
 pleasure coude not ayde<sup>4</sup> him : but rather hynder hym /  
 therfore he let it pas, and so toke leue of hys fyrst  
 16 patron, and lyfte vp theyr aneres and sayles : and when  
 they were in the see the wynde arose / and encreased  
 more and more <sup>5</sup>in suche wyse that they were more  
 then<sup>5</sup> .vi. wekys that y<sup>e</sup> wynde chaungyd not, so that  
 20 yf god had sufferyd the wynd to haue continued one  
 monethe or .vi. wekys lenger, they had com to the  
 place where as they wolde haue bene. But or<sup>6</sup> they  
 came there, they sufferyd moche payne / for there rose  
 24 vpon them suche a wynde<sup>7</sup> that they were forsed to  
 auayle theyr sayles. The heuen waxed darke, the mone  
 was couerid / the tourment was great and maruaylous,<sup>8</sup>  
 the waues of the se were of a great heyghte and orryble<sup>9</sup>  
 28 to beholde / whereby, whether they wolde or not, they  
 were constreyned to go as the wynde wolde lede them /  
 theyr fortune was so<sup>10</sup> terryble / that there was neuer  
 sene suche a<sup>11</sup> storme before / wherof Huon and his men  
 32 and his patron were <sup>12</sup>sore abasshed,<sup>12</sup> and specyally the

The old mariner  
tells the new  
pilot of the  
previous voyage,

and the latter  
shows how their  
old ship came to  
stray from the  
right course.

Huon sets forth  
again in his new  
ship,

and encounters  
mighty storms.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxxxvi. back, col. 1.      <sup>2</sup> sea roade.      <sup>3</sup> verie.

<sup>4</sup> helpe.      <sup>5-5</sup> for the space of.      <sup>6</sup> ere.      <sup>7</sup> and tempest.

<sup>8</sup> dangerous.      <sup>9</sup> terrible.      <sup>10</sup> great and.

<sup>11</sup> mightie.      <sup>12-12</sup> greatly afraide.



The pilot is  
sorely discomfited,

and knows not  
whither he is  
going.

At length the sun  
appears,

and the winds  
abate.

The ship goes  
with the wind,  
as none knows in  
what direction to  
guide her.

patron more then Huon was / he was sore dyscom-  
forted / and peteouslye he called on our lorde Iesu  
chryste / requyrnge hym to bryng them to a good  
porte / there was nother maryner nor patron but *that*<sup>1</sup> 4  
were sore abasshyd,<sup>2</sup> nor they wyste not where they  
were. They were in this tourmente<sup>3</sup> the space of .x.  
dayes, In<sup>1</sup> the whiche tyme they neuer saw the <sup>4</sup>clere-  
nes of the sonne: for the darkenesse that was there as 8  
then / the which<sup>5</sup> greatly anoyed<sup>6</sup> them. And when  
it came to the xi day, and that the tourment and wynd  
began to abate and the see<sup>7</sup> pesable and styll / where  
with<sup>8</sup> Huon and his compagne were well comforted: 12  
the heuen clered vp and the<sup>9</sup> sonne cast out his rayes  
alonge vpon the see / then<sup>10</sup> when the master<sup>11</sup> sawe  
the fortune of the see, and the great tourment began to  
sease, he caused one of the maryners to mounte vp into 16  
the toppe to se yf he myght se<sup>12</sup> any lond / but he coude  
se none, wherof the patron was sore<sup>13</sup> abasshyed & sayd  
how<sup>14</sup> he knew not <sup>15</sup>wher<sup>15</sup> he was, for he neuer sayld  
in that<sup>16</sup> partyes / and sayd to Huon, ‘syr, it is fyfty 20  
yeres syn<sup>14</sup> I fyrste vsed the see / but yet I neuer sayled  
in these partyes, wherof I haue great maruayle’ / when  
Huon harde that he was sore dyspleasyd and sayd /  
‘syr, let vs take the aduantage of the wynde and let 24  
our shyppe dryue vnder the conducte of our lord Iesu  
chryst. I hope that our lorde god wyll not suffer vs  
to be pershysshed in this se.’ ‘Syr,’ quod the patron,  
‘I<sup>17</sup> agre well to your sayinge, and so let vs do’ / then 28  
they turned theyr helme and toke the wynd in to theyr  
ful sayle / the wynde was good and fresshe and the see<sup>18</sup>  
meke & pesable / so that within a shorte tyme<sup>19</sup> they  
had sayled a great iourney. Then Huon called on<sup>20</sup> our 32

<sup>1</sup> all.    <sup>2</sup> afraide.    <sup>3</sup> for.    <sup>4</sup> Fol. lxxxvi. back, col. 2.

<sup>5</sup> did verie.    <sup>6</sup> annoy.    <sup>7</sup> waxed.    <sup>8</sup> therewith.

<sup>9</sup> glorious.    <sup>10</sup> omitted.    <sup>11</sup> of the shippe.    <sup>12</sup> diserie.

<sup>13</sup> greatly.    <sup>14</sup> that.    <sup>15-15</sup> in what country.

<sup>16</sup> those.    <sup>17</sup> do.    <sup>18</sup> very.    <sup>19</sup> space.    <sup>20</sup> vpon.

lord god and helde vp his handes towardes the<sup>1</sup> heuen,  
 & sayd / <sup>2</sup>very god, who in this <sup>3</sup>worlde transetory  
 woldeste<sup>3</sup> wochesaue to be borne in the wombe of a  
 4 maid, and after <sup>4</sup>here reygned<sup>4</sup> .xxxii. yeres, and then  
<sup>5</sup>reseyuyd<sup>5</sup> dethe and passyon vpon a frydaye / and after  
<sup>6</sup>rose<sup>6</sup> from dethe to lyfe and wente into hell and drewe  
 out <sup>1</sup>the<sup>1</sup> sowles / out of <sup>1</sup>the<sup>1</sup> paynes infernall<sup>7</sup> / syr,<sup>1</sup>  
 8 <sup>8</sup>as I beleue that this is trewe, I requyre the to haue  
 petye and compassyon of<sup>9</sup> vs & gyue vs grace<sup>10</sup> to scape  
 safely<sup>10</sup> out of this perelous see / and to kepe and saue  
 my ryght dere<sup>11</sup> wyfe Esclaramonde & my chylde: and  
 12 my noble lordes whome I haue lefte in Burdeaux in  
 great perell of theyr lyues, and gyue me that<sup>12</sup> grace  
 that I may brynge with me suche socours and ayde that  
 thereby to<sup>13</sup> brynge them out of the daunger that they  
 16 be in.'

Huon puts his  
trust in Christ.

¶ How Huon aryued on the perelous Goulfe,  
 wher as he spake with Iudas, and howe he  
 aryued at the porte of the Adamant.

20

Ca. .Cviii.

24 **W**hen Huon had made his prayers to  
 god / he behelde in to the see and sawe  
 a farre of / lyke a great pese of can-  
 was / and therby he harde as <sup>14</sup>great a  
 noyse as thoughe there had ben a  
 thowsande smethes and a thowsande carpenters and a  
 thowsande great rynnynge riuers to gether,<sup>15</sup> betynge  
 28 and labourynge.<sup>16</sup> <sup>17</sup>Huon, who harde this great noyse :  
 hadde great fere therof, so that he wyste not what to do,

Huon looks  
ahead.

He hears a  
thunderous roar,

and grows fearful.

<sup>1</sup> omitted.    <sup>2</sup> Thou.    <sup>3-3</sup> transitorie world diddest.

<sup>4-4</sup> afterwards diddest raigne heere vpon earth.

<sup>5-5</sup> didst suffer.    <sup>6-6</sup> that didst rise.    <sup>7</sup> Even so.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. lxxxvii. col. 1.    <sup>9</sup> vpon.

<sup>10-10</sup> that we may safely escape.    <sup>11</sup> and louing.    <sup>12</sup> the.

<sup>13</sup> I may.    <sup>14</sup> Fol. lxxxvii. col. 2.    <sup>15</sup> all.

<sup>16</sup> (tabourynge in original.)    <sup>17</sup> to gether.

The ship  
approaches the  
gulf, that forms  
one of the gates of  
hell.

The pilot fears  
that they will not  
pass that way in  
safety.

Huon addresses  
his wife,

and prepares  
himself for death.

The ship goes  
nearer to the  
perilous waters.

and so were al tho<sup>1</sup> that were in his companye / the  
patron commaunded a maryner to mounte vp into the  
toppe<sup>2</sup> to se what thyng it was that made all that  
noyse / and so he dyd,<sup>3</sup> and behelde that waye / and at 4  
last he parseyued the daungerous Goulfe, wherof he had  
harde often tymes spoken <sup>4</sup>of<sup>4</sup> / wherof<sup>5</sup> he had suche  
fere that nere hand he had fallen downe into the see /  
he came downe and sayd to<sup>6</sup> the patron, 'Syr, we be al 8  
in the way to be lost, for we be nere one of the Goulfes  
of hel' / wherof Huon and the patron and all other had  
suche fere that they<sup>7</sup> trymbelyd. 'Syr,' quod the  
patron, 'knowe for trougthe it is inpossyble to scape 12  
out of this perelous Gulfe / for all y<sup>e</sup> sees and waters  
and ryuers there assemblethe to gether / and perforce  
we muste passe that waye' / when Huon harde that,<sup>8</sup>  
he began petyously to complayne and sayd / 'a, swete<sup>9</sup> 16  
wyfe Esclaramonde, I se nowe clerely that our loues  
must departe / the beaute and y<sup>e</sup> bounte that is in you  
I can not forget. Alas! I shall neuer se you.<sup>10</sup> I  
praye to our lorde Iesu christ to gyue you that grace to 20  
be agreyde withe the emperoure Therry to the entente  
that in peas and reste ye maye vse the resedewe of your  
lyfe / for as for me I shall neuer brynge you eny socours  
or ayde.' Then he studyed a season and then sayd,<sup>11</sup> 24  
'good lorde, I thanke the, syn it pleaseth the that I  
shall pas out of this worlde, I humbely requyre the to  
receyue my sowle into thyne han<sup>12</sup>/des. as for the<sup>13</sup>  
body and lyfe I care lytell for / synne<sup>14</sup> it pleaseth the 28  
that I shal thus ende my dayes.'<sup>15</sup> Then Huon lefte  
his wepyng and the wynde seasyd and the sayle  
abated: yet neuer the lesse, the shyppe styll went  
forthe a lone in such wyse as thoughe it had flowen on 32

<sup>1</sup> those.      <sup>2</sup> of the mast.      <sup>3</sup> and looked round about him.

<sup>4-4</sup> omitted.      <sup>5</sup> and thereof.      <sup>6</sup> vnto.      <sup>7</sup> all.

<sup>8</sup> then.      <sup>9</sup> and louing.      <sup>10</sup> more.      <sup>11</sup> againe.

<sup>12</sup> Fol. lxxxvii. back, col. 1.      <sup>13</sup> my.      <sup>14</sup> seeing,

<sup>15</sup> and depart this life.

- y<sup>e</sup> see / 'Syr,' quod the mayster,<sup>1</sup> 'ye maye se clerely<sup>2</sup>  
 that we nede not to trawaile our selfe to gyde our  
 shyppe / for the Goulfe that is so nere vs drawethe the  
 4 shyp to<sup>3</sup> hym in suche haste as ye maye see. <sup>4</sup>Anone  
 ye shall se that we shall tounge therin' / 'mayster,'  
 quod Huon, 'it is conuenyente<sup>5</sup> that we abyde the  
 aduenture and fortune of the see, such as our lorde god  
 8 wyll sende. lette vs truste in hym, and desyre hym  
 that his pleasure be fulfilled: <sup>4</sup>more I can not <sup>6</sup>saye,  
 for agaynste hym we can not<sup>6</sup> stryue.' Then Huons  
 chapelayne confessen them one after another.<sup>4</sup> Then  
 12 incontynent the great noyse seasyd. For<sup>7</sup> they came  
 thether at a good poynte / for the<sup>8</sup> same tyme as they<sup>9</sup>  
 fortune was y<sup>e</sup> gulfe was full and playne / so that a  
 shyppe myght pas ouer it without daunger as well as  
 16 in a nother place of the see / <sup>4</sup>when the patron sawe  
 that, he sayde to Huon, 'Syr, we oughte greatly to  
 thanke our lorde god / for we ar nowe come at suche  
 a tyme that the Goulfe is full and playne, so that we  
 20 maye passe ouer suerly with oute any daunger' / when  
 Huon harde *that*, he was ryght Ioyfull and all wepynge  
 he knelyd downe and so dyd all the companye, and  
 dewoutly they thanked our lord god that he had sent  
 24 them that<sup>9</sup> grace. Then Huon rose vp and saw besyde  
 hym a great pese of canwasse. And the waues of the  
 see / betynge agaynste it with great vyolence / wherof  
 he hadde great marueyle. For the waues of the see  
 28 bet <sup>10</sup>so sore agaynste the clothe and with so great  
 vyolens: that they reculed backe / & for all the  
 betynge of the see agaynste the canuas yet it brake not.  
 Then Huon harde a woyses cryenge on hye, <sup>11</sup>petuously<sup>11</sup>  
 32 complaynyng, saynge, 'O, very god, in an yll oure I  
 was borne when I solde the pusuant god who ded me

The gulf draws  
her towards the  
danger.

Happily the gulf  
was very full, so  
that ships might  
pass near it in  
safety.

Huon and his  
company kneel  
and thank God  
for their  
salvation.

A piece of canvas  
is seen above the  
waves,

and a piteous  
voice is heard,  
complaining of  
much evil  
fortune.

<sup>1</sup> of the shippe.    <sup>2</sup> evidently.    <sup>3</sup> vnto.    <sup>4</sup> and.  
<sup>5</sup> now.    <sup>6-6</sup> omitted.    <sup>7</sup> But.    <sup>8</sup> verie.    <sup>9</sup> good.  
<sup>10</sup> Fol. lxxxvii. back, col. 2.    <sup>11-11</sup> and pitifully.

It tells how  
Jesus was sinfully  
sold for thirty  
pence,

and how he who  
did the deed was  
blinded by the  
devil.

The pilot asks  
who it is that  
makes the pitiful  
complaint,

but no answer is  
vouchsafed.

Then Huon  
repeats the  
question.

that grace<sup>1</sup> as to take me as one of hys dycepples & apostelles / and for the goodnes that he dyd me I renderyd hym an yll<sup>2</sup> rewarde for the dewyll: the enemye of all humayne lynage enteryd into my body, y<sup>e</sup> whiche <sup>4</sup> was ful of synne / and exortyd me to selle my god & good lorde / for .xxx. pens of money that was then corante in the countre of Iudee / and, vnhappy that I was, yf I had trusted in his great marce all the trespas <sup>8</sup> that I had done had bene forgeuen me. But pryde and mysbeleue and wanhope<sup>3</sup> that was in me with the deuyl: who blyndyd myne vnderstondyng,<sup>4</sup> wolde not suffer me to haue enye hope of grace or pardon for <sup>12</sup> my trespas. For of my synne I neuer had repentaunce. And the deuyl doughtyng to haue loste me put me in to dysparasyon, wherby I loste <sup>5</sup>goddes grace.<sup>5</sup> For yf I wolde haue axed marcy of my lord god he wolde <sup>16</sup> haue pardoned me of all the trespas that I had commytted agaynst hym. Alas!<sup>6</sup> caytyue that I am, fro hense shall I neuer departe.<sup>7</sup> ¶ when the mayster of the shyppe harde this woyce / he demaunded of hym <sup>20</sup> and sayd / ‘what arte thou that thus peteously complaynethe? I commaunde the to shewe me <sup>8</sup>yf<sup>8</sup> there be any man leuyng in this worlde that can ayde and socoure the, and caste the out of the<sup>9</sup> payne that thou arte <sup>24</sup> in:’ when the voice hard hym, he spake no mo wordes nor gaue<sup>10</sup> none answer.<sup>11</sup> Then Huon <sup>12</sup>awaunsed hymselfe to the bourde of the shyppe,<sup>13</sup> desyrus to know what thyng it was that made that peteous<sup>14</sup> complaynte, <sup>28</sup> and sayde, ‘Thou that so sore doste complayne,<sup>15</sup> I coniuire the in the name of our lorde Iesu chryste and by all his powre, and by the glorious<sup>16</sup> vyrgyn saynt Mary

<sup>1</sup> fauour.    <sup>2</sup> euill.    <sup>3</sup> false hope.    <sup>4</sup> and.

<sup>5-5</sup> the grace of god.    <sup>6</sup> poore.

<sup>7</sup> but alwaies to remaine in this torment and paine.

<sup>8-8</sup> and whether.    <sup>9</sup> torment and.    <sup>10</sup> made.

<sup>11</sup> at all.    <sup>12</sup> Fol. lxxxviii. col. 1.    <sup>13</sup> being.    <sup>14</sup> pitifull.

<sup>15</sup> and mourne.    <sup>16</sup> blessed.



his mother / and by all the sayntes & holy aungelles  
and arcangelles: that are in y<sup>e</sup> realme of paradyse /  
and by all that euer god <sup>1</sup>made<sup>1</sup> in heuen and in erthe /  
4 *that* thou answeere and shewe me what man thou arte,  
and who hathe put the here<sup>2</sup> / and wherfore thou art  
here: and wether thou mayste come to vs or not: &  
what is thy name: and why that this canwas is here  
8 set / wherfore it seruethe: <sup>3</sup>and yf euer it may be put  
fro the.<sup>3</sup> And also shew me yf euer thou shalte  
departe<sup>4</sup> hens or not.

¶ When this woyse had harde Huon coniure hym  
12 in such wyse, it answered hym shortely and sayde:  
‘O thou mortall man that haste coniured me so sore:  
and <sup>5</sup>a<sup>5</sup> desyryd<sup>6</sup> to know my name, I shall shewe <sup>7</sup>the;  
know<sup>7</sup> for sartayne that my name is Iudas, & <sup>8</sup>am the<sup>9</sup>  
16 same man that solde<sup>10</sup> Iesu Chryste to the Iues for  
.xxx. pens than beyng corante<sup>11</sup> in the countree of  
Iudee / & deliuryd into theyr handes my ryght dere  
lorde and mayster, who so moche <sup>12</sup>honoure had done to<sup>12</sup>  
20 me, as to <sup>13</sup>holde me *with* hym<sup>13</sup> as one of his apostelles,  
and by a false and faynte loue I kyssed hym on the  
mouthe<sup>6</sup> to shewe the Iues wiche he<sup>14</sup> was. And after  
I saw hym beten and yll intretyd as ye may here<sup>15</sup> in  
24 the holy scryptures & Ewangelystes: who <sup>16</sup>of his  
passyon hathe made mensyon<sup>16</sup> / and when I sawe how  
I had betrayed my mayster, I was sorowfull<sup>17</sup> and sore  
dyspleasyd <sup>18</sup>but I neuer durst cry hym marcy / wh[c]rein  
28 I dyd<sup>19</sup> great foly / for he was so petuous<sup>20</sup> and full  
of marcy,<sup>21</sup> yf I had cryed hym marcy he wolde<sup>22</sup> afor-  
geven me / but the dewyll, whiche is ennemye to all

The reply comes  
that it is Judas  
Iscariot who is  
speaking.

He recites how  
he grieved to see  
his Master injured  
after he had  
betrayed Him,

but dared not ask  
Him for mercy.

<sup>1-1</sup> hath made and created. <sup>2</sup> in this miserie.

<sup>3-3</sup> omitted. <sup>4</sup> from. <sup>5-5</sup> also hast. <sup>6</sup> for.

<sup>7-7</sup> vnto the. <sup>8</sup> I. <sup>9</sup> selfe. <sup>10</sup> our lord. <sup>11</sup> money.

<sup>12-12</sup> honoured. <sup>13-13</sup> account. <sup>14</sup> he he *in original*.

<sup>15</sup> read. <sup>16-16</sup> therein haue made mention of his passion.

<sup>17</sup> at my hart. <sup>18</sup> Fol. lxxxviii. col. 2. <sup>19</sup> commit.

<sup>20</sup> pitifull. <sup>21</sup> that. <sup>22</sup> haue.

He strangled  
himself upon a  
tree,

and his soul was  
set in this place  
to remain there  
for ever.

Tormented unto  
death, Judas  
cannot die.

The canvas, on  
which he lies, was  
given him by God  
to save him from  
the wind on the  
right side,  
because he once  
gave away such a  
canvas in charity  
for the love of  
God.

Huon advises  
Judas to ask for  
God's mercy even  
yet.

vmayne creatures, wold not suffre me to do it. But I went  
and strangelyd and hangyd my selfe on a tree.<sup>1</sup> when  
I was dede my sowle was taken and set in the plase  
where as ye see me now : and here I shall be<sup>2</sup> for euer **4**  
in tourmente and <sup>3</sup>in<sup>3</sup> payne / for neuer shall I departe  
from hens : for nowe it is to late to call for grace, for <sup>4</sup>y<sup>e</sup>  
dome<sup>4</sup> is geuen vpon me : wherfore I do and muste suffer  
this tourmen & payne : <sup>5</sup>for all the waters and ryuers of **8**  
<sup>y<sup>e</sup></sup> world doth assemble together here, there<sup>6</sup> as I am in  
this Goulfe / wher I am so<sup>7</sup> beten and tourmented by  
the great waues and course of the great ryuers. Thus  
I am tourmented and can not<sup>8</sup> dye, nor neuer come out **12**  
of this tourmente nor payne / this Canwas that ye de-  
maunde wherto it <sup>9</sup>dothe serue,<sup>9</sup> and whye<sup>10</sup> it is here  
set, know for<sup>11</sup> trouthe, that on a day I gaue it for the  
loue of god / nor I neuer gaue after eny thyng for goddes **16**  
sake, as longe as I leuyde / and therfore when I was  
set here, our lorde god wolde *that* the good dede that I  
had done in geuyng this canvas for his sake, shulde  
not be vnrewardyd : therfor our lorde god wold that **20**  
this Canwas shulde be set on my ryght syde, to the  
entente<sup>12</sup> to saue me from the wynde, and from the  
great waues of the see that<sup>13</sup> cometh so boysteously a  
gaynst me / as ye haue sene how they bete agaynste **24**  
this Canwas / I had no grace to aske marcey of our  
lorde god for my trespas, the deuyll was so great withe  
me / wherfore let euery man take ensaple by me, and  
aske marcey while he haue space.<sup>1</sup> <sup>14</sup>Thus I haue **28**  
shewed you all my dede.<sup>15</sup> 'Iudas,' quod Huon, 'I  
belyue yf that *thou* wilte yet crye to god for marcey he  
wyll haue marcey and pety of<sup>16</sup> the.' 'Nay, nay,' quod  
Iudas, 'to praye can not awayle me, for I am dampned **32**

<sup>1</sup> and.    <sup>2</sup> remaine.    <sup>3-3</sup> omitted.    <sup>4-4</sup> iudgement.  
<sup>5</sup> continually.    <sup>6</sup> heere euen.    <sup>7</sup> sore.    <sup>8</sup> by no meanes.  
<sup>9-9</sup> serueth.    <sup>10</sup> wherefore.    <sup>11</sup> a.    <sup>12</sup> for.    <sup>13</sup> here  
<sup>14</sup> Fol. lxxxviii, back, col. 1.    <sup>15</sup> state.    <sup>16</sup> on.

- for euer / and yf ye wyll beleue me be ware,<sup>1</sup> tary not  
 here to long, for yf ye do ye shall neuer departe hense  
 for the Goulfe, <sup>2</sup>the<sup>2</sup> whiche is nowe full and playne,  
 4 it wyll not reste<sup>3</sup> long but *that* y<sup>e</sup> see wyll issue out, &  
 all the ryuers with in it / ye were happy that ye came  
 at the owre that ye dyd. For anone the waters wyll  
 Issue out with suche a bowndaunce / that the waues  
 8 that wyll ryse shall seme lyke hye mountaynes: it is  
 more then two hondred yeres synne there passyn any  
 shyppe this way / but that men, shyppe and all, were  
 swallowed in to the Goulfe / wherfore, Huon, I counsayle  
 12 the that incontynente thou departe hense / without  
 thou wylte be lost for euer; it is tyme that thou depart  
 hens whyles the Goulfe is full / it will not longe rest,  
 but that the waters wyll Issue out with suche brute  
 16 and noyse, that yf ye be .xv. leges of ye shall well here  
 the tourmente that it wyll make. If ye had comen but  
 halfe an owre soner then y<sup>e</sup> dyd ye had neuer scaped  
 the daunger therof.'
- 20 ¶ When Huon vnderstode Iudas, he hadde great  
 maruayle / he<sup>1</sup> Ioyned his handys towarde the heuen:  
 thankyng god of the grace that he had sente hym /  
 Then Huon desyred y<sup>e</sup> patron that they myght departe  
 24 thense in hast. 'Syr,' quod he, 'it shall be done.' Then  
 they drewe vp theyr sayles, and so departyd / they hade  
 not sayled a leege but that they sawe a farre of great  
 brondis of fyre brynnyng<sup>4</sup> Issuyng out of y<sup>e</sup> Goulfe so  
 28 longe and so hye that they had nere hande come to  
<sup>5</sup>theyr shyppe. And the waues that Issued out of y<sup>e</sup>  
 Goulfe were as hye as mountaynes, and they aproched  
 so nere<sup>6</sup> theyr shyppe that they <sup>7</sup>were nye<sup>7</sup> perysshyd for  
 32 theyr shyppe was nere hard full of water, so that they  
 had moche to do to lade out the water, and were fayne

Judas declares  
 that he is for ever  
 damned,

and urges Huon,  
 as he loves life,  
 to hasten away  
 from the perilous  
 gulf.

The pilot hurries  
 the ship away,  
 and sees behind  
 him burning fires  
 issuing from  
 the gulf.

<sup>1</sup> and.      <sup>2-2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> continu.      <sup>4</sup> burning.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. lxxxviii. back, col. 2.      <sup>6</sup> vnto.

<sup>7-7</sup> had like to haue.

At a great pace  
they passed on,  
for the water  
drove them  
onwards.

No land is in  
sight for many  
weeks.

At length a high  
rock with a thick  
wood,  
and a white  
house upon it, is  
seen afar off.

They sail in that  
direction,

to abate theyr sayle. For<sup>1</sup> the water that Issuyd out  
of the Goulfe draue them so rudely<sup>2</sup> that a byrde coude  
fleye no faster then they wente. In that case they  
were a monethe, and durste neuer hoyses vp sayle / 4  
<sup>3</sup>Thus they draue a greate season without seyght<sup>4</sup> of  
any londe / then Huon called vpon god, and sayde /  
'A, verey god, I hadde rather haue taryed styll in myne  
own cowntre, and haue taken suche fortune as it shulde / 8  
a<sup>5</sup> pleased the to sende me: then here to be loste in  
this straunge see. A, lady Esclaramond, I pray to<sup>6</sup>  
god<sup>7</sup> kepe you and Claryet, my doughter / <sup>8</sup>I thynke I  
shal neuer se you more.' Thus Huon complainyd 12  
saylyng in the see in fere of his lyfe.<sup>1</sup> Thus they were  
in the daunger of this Goulfe .v. wekys, and neuer  
coude se londe, wher of they were in great fere / often  
times they prayed to our lorde to haue petye of them. 16  
Then Huon desyred the patron to mounte vp to y<sup>e</sup>  
maste / to se yf he myght se any londe.<sup>1</sup> The patron,  
who greatly desyryd so to do, anone he mounted vp  
and regardyd on all partyes to se yf he myght spye any 20  
londe. at last he sawe afarre of an hye rocke / and on  
y<sup>e</sup> heygth therof they sawe a thicke wode, and at the  
enter of the wode he sawe a lytell howse / wherof he  
thankyd god, and descendyd downe and shewyd Huon 24  
what he had sene, and sayde / 'syr, yonder, a far of,  
I haue sene a great rocke, & on y<sup>e</sup> heygth therof a  
great thycke wode, & therin I haue sene a lytel house,  
or hermy<sup>9</sup>tage; the howse is whyght, I can not tel 28  
what yt is<sup>3</sup> / by the grace of god or<sup>10</sup> yt be nyght we  
shall take<sup>7</sup> londe there and refresshe vs<sup>11</sup> / when Huon  
hard that he was ryght ioyfull, and thankyd god. Then  
they drewe to that parte, and had good wynde and a 32  
fresshe / wenyng to haue come thether the same

<sup>1</sup> and.    <sup>2</sup> swiftly.    <sup>3</sup> but.    <sup>4</sup> seeing.    <sup>5</sup> haue.  
<sup>6</sup> vnto.    <sup>7</sup> to.    <sup>8</sup> for.    <sup>9</sup> Fol. lxxxix. col. 1.  
<sup>10</sup> ere.    <sup>11</sup> our selves.

- nyght, but they sayled .iiii. dayes and .iiii. nyghtes,  
 and coude come no nerer to the woode then they were  
 before, wherof they had marueyle / it semed to them  
 4 euer that the wode and the howse rose vp hygher and  
 hygher / <sup>1</sup>then they could not tell whether they went /  
 yf they had knowen they wold not haue gone thether  
 for all the golde of <sup>2</sup>the worlde / for yf god had not  
 8 had petye of them they were all lykely to haue ben  
 lost / for the plase that they sawe a farre of was a  
 castell, and therin cloyd the rock of the Adamant:  
 the which castell was daungerous to aproche / for yf  
 12 enye shyppe come nere it and haue any Iron nayles  
 within it, and <sup>3</sup>a shyppe come within the syght therof,  
 the Adamant wyll drawe the shyppe to <sup>4</sup>hym. And  
 therfore in those partyes the shyppes that sayleth by  
 16 that see ar made and pynned with woooden nayles, and  
 without any maner of Iron, otherwyse they be loste  
 and perysshyd. For the propertye of the Adamant is  
 to drawe Iron to hym / thus Huon and his company  
 20 were there the space of .vi. dayes, goynge and saylynge  
 about the rocke of the castell of the Adamant. But  
 yf they had had a good wynde the fyrst daye, they had  
 aryued euen at the whyghte howse, that they sawe  
 24 fyrste in the woode / the which was the fayrest and most  
 rycheeste howse in y<sup>e</sup> worlde, within the whiche was so  
 moch golde and rychesse that no man leuinge <sup>5</sup>coude  
 esteme the walue therof / for the pyllers within that  
 28 howse were of Cassedony / and the walles and towres of  
 whyghte Alablaster. There was neuer dyscryued  
 in[s]crypture nor hystory the beauty of such a castell as  
 this was, for whenne the sonne cast his rayes on it  
 32 semyd a far of to be of fyne christal, it was so clere  
 shynynge. In this castell was nother man nor woman:  
 but dede mennes bones lyenge at the gate of this

but it seems to  
 recede before  
 them.

They little knew  
 that they were  
 approaching the  
 rock of the  
 Adamant, which  
 is very dangerous.

It draws towards  
 it all ships with  
 iron nails in it.

Therefore ships  
 sailing in that sea  
 should be made  
 with wooden  
 nails.

The white house  
 or castle, how-  
 ever, is full of  
 fine gold,  
 and very beauti-  
 fully wrought.

But only dead  
 men's bones lie  
 within it.

<sup>1</sup> and.    <sup>2</sup> in.    <sup>3</sup> that.    <sup>4</sup> vnto.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. lxxxix. col. 2.



castell / at the porte there lay many shyppes, so that  
theyr mastes semyd a far of to be a great foreste.

¶ How Huon deuysed withe his patron in  
regardyng of the castell of the Adamat. 4  
Ca. .C.ix.



The castle is  
impregnable.

His castel was set on a rocke of the  
Adamant stone: for<sup>1</sup> the eest to the  
weest was not so stronge a castell / 8  
for yf al the worlde had come before  
it, and men within to defend it, coude  
neuer be won by eny mortall men:

The thick wood  
which the  
mariners thought  
they saw from  
afar, was made of  
the masts of ships  
attracted by the  
Adamant, and  
wrecked.

the forest that<sup>2</sup> semyd to them a far of were y<sup>e</sup> mastes 12  
of <sup>3</sup>the<sup>3</sup> shyppes that had bene there aryued by con-  
straynte of the Adamant / but for all y<sup>e</sup> shyppes that  
were there / there was no <sup>4</sup>leuyng man / but<sup>4</sup> there  
lay <sup>3</sup>the<sup>3</sup> bones of them<sup>5</sup> that had dyed by famyne 16  
& rage / Huon and his company had great maruayle /  
for when they aproched nere to y<sup>e</sup> castell, they were  
forsyd to stryke sayle / for the Adamant drewe the  
shypp so sore *that*, yf they had not quickly stricken 20  
theyr sayle, the<sup>6</sup> shypp had broken all to peses, &  
they all<sup>7</sup> drowned in the see. The shyppe wente  
so faste that it was maruayle<sup>8</sup> to consider it,<sup>9</sup> Then  
the patron of the shyp, who was wyse & sage,<sup>10</sup> 24  
knew anone how <sup>11</sup>they were nere to the castell of the  
Adamant, because they shyppe went so fast without  
sayle thetherward / faster then yf they had had a full  
wynd in all theyr sayles / nor<sup>9</sup> they coude not tourne 28  
theyr shyppe no<sup>12</sup> way fro that part,<sup>13</sup> they wold gladly  
haue returned <sup>3</sup>yf they had coude,<sup>3</sup> but it wold not be

Huon's ship  
strikes her sails,

but she  
approaches the  
rock at a swift  
pace, and the  
sailors cannot  
turn her course  
aside.

<sup>1</sup> from.      <sup>2</sup> so.      <sup>3</sup> <sup>3</sup> omitted.

<sup>4-4</sup> man living therein, yet.      <sup>5</sup> men.      <sup>6</sup> their.

<sup>7</sup> been.      <sup>8</sup> maruailous.      <sup>9</sup> and.      <sup>10</sup> discreet.

<sup>11</sup> Fol. lxxxix, back, col. 1.      <sup>12</sup> any.      <sup>13</sup> for.

bycause the Adamant drew <sup>1</sup>so sore the Iron<sup>1</sup> to hym  
 by nature; when the patron sawe that clerely<sup>2</sup> they  
 shold<sup>3</sup> aryue there, he began peteously to wepe,<sup>4</sup> and  
 4 sayde to Huon / 'syr, our lorde god hathe created vs in  
 this worlde to lyue and to dye / and there is none but  
 5 that<sup>5</sup> muste passe the passage of this, and bycause we  
 knowe suerly that no creature can scape that / wher-  
 8 fore<sup>6</sup> we ought to be contente with that<sup>7</sup> can be none  
 otherwyse / syr I say this that <sup>5</sup>dethe to abyde, we  
 must be comforted, for here<sup>5</sup> we muste all dye' / when  
 Huon harde the patron, he had great maruayle, and  
 12 sayde / 'patron, I praye you shewe me the cause why  
 ye say thus? / in this castell that we se before vs, is<sup>8</sup>  
 there<sup>9</sup> Sarasyns within it, or spyrytes of hell that hathe  
 sworne our dethe / suerly I dought them not, make good  
 16 chere, be nothyng abasshed, take <sup>10</sup>corage in you,<sup>10</sup>  
 for by the ayde of our lorde Iesu chryst, and by the  
 forse of myne armes and good sword, if ther be eny  
 man within the castell that wyll resyste agaynste vs, I  
 20 assure you I shall sone delyuer<sup>11</sup> hym. Anone ye shall  
 se what I can do / I neuer saw in all my lyfe so fayre  
 a castell / I cannot tell yf<sup>12</sup> they within wyll defend vs  
 the entre in to the porte<sup>13</sup>; yf they wyll haue any  
 24 trybute of me, I shall gladly pay it, so they demaund  
 no thyng elles / and yf I se<sup>14</sup> they wyll demaunde eny  
 thyng elles,<sup>15</sup> I shall shewe them how my sword can  
 cut<sup>16</sup> / for I had <sup>17</sup>rather<sup>18</sup> dye then in any prynces  
 28 courte it shulde be layde to my reproche<sup>19</sup> that for eny  
 man I shulde recule<sup>20</sup> backe one fote, for fere or dought  
 of<sup>9</sup> deth / for I wyll neuer be taken alyue, therby to  
 dye in pryson' / 'syr,' quod the patron, 'your forse

The pilot warns  
 Huon that he  
 must now be  
 prepared to die.

The knight does  
 not understand  
 the sailor's words,

and longs to  
 attack the little  
 castle.

He promises to  
 fight with any  
 that hold it to the  
 death, if they bar  
 his entrance.

1-1 the yron so sore. 2 needes. 3 must. 4 lament.

5 5 omitted. 6 therefore. 7 which. 8 are.

9 any. 10-10 good courage and ioy. 11 you from.

12 whether. 13 or not. 14 that. 15 of mee.

16 answere it. 17 Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 2. 18 to.

19 and shame. 20 retire.

The pilot replies  
that human  
prowess is of no  
avail,

and tells him of  
the fatal rock.

Huon is filled  
with grief, and  
weeps piteously.

He prays to God  
to receive his soul  
into paradise,

and to save his  
wife and child.

His ship enters  
the port about the  
rocks,  
and breaks many  
rotten vessels  
fixed to the  
Adamant stone,  
as she runs in  
among them.

and great prowes can nothyng profyghte<sup>1</sup> you / for yf  
ye<sup>2</sup> were as strong & as great as euer was Sampson / it  
shuld no thyng awauntage you ; I shall shewe you the  
cause wye / the castell that ye se yonder before you is <sup>4</sup>  
the most fayrest and stron[g]este castell of<sup>3</sup> the worlde /  
it is set and compassed<sup>4</sup> a bought with a rocke of  
Adamantis stones / the whiche naturally drawethe<sup>5</sup> to<sup>6</sup>  
it all maner of Iron / as ye maye well se by our shyppe <sup>8</sup>  
that gothe so faste with out any sayle : the Adamant  
drawethe<sup>5</sup> it bycause of the ancrs and nayles that be  
in our shyppe / the woode that semethe to be a forest  
ar the mastes of suche shyppes as hath there aryued,<sup>7</sup> <sup>12</sup>  
drawne thether by the Adamant.'

¶ When Huon vnderstode the patron, he was<sup>8</sup>  
sorowfull, and no maruayle / then peteously he com-  
playned for his wyfe &<sup>9</sup> his child / for he saw wel<sup>10</sup> he <sup>16</sup>  
coud not scape the deth, nor neuer depart<sup>11</sup> thens. then  
he wepte peteously, and sayd, <sup>12</sup> 'a, very god,<sup>12</sup> who in  
this worlde haste fourmyd me / I require thy grase /  
that this<sup>13</sup> pouer synner that I am, enclyned to all <sup>20</sup>  
myssefortunes, that it maye please the to reseuyue my  
sowle into paradyse ; as for my lyfe<sup>14</sup> none accounte  
therof. But I praye the, good lorde, to saue my wyfe  
and chylde, whome I haue lefte in daunger of deth, or <sup>24</sup>  
elles <sup>15</sup> wylayne pryson.' <sup>15</sup> And with thos wordes the  
shypentered in to the porte with such a force & pusaunce  
that it ran <sup>16</sup> In amonge the other shyppes, so that yf  
the shype had not ben stronge, and y<sup>e</sup> other shyppes <sup>28</sup>  
rotten, Huons shype had bene broken all to peses / <sup>9</sup> it  
ranne vnder the water .iii. or .iiii. of the other old  
shippes / <sup>17</sup> when Huon sawe that lys shyppe was not

<sup>1</sup> auaile.      <sup>2</sup> we.      <sup>3</sup> in all.      <sup>4</sup> round.

<sup>5</sup> doth draw.      <sup>6</sup> vnto.      <sup>7</sup> and are.      <sup>8</sup> right.      <sup>9</sup> for.

<sup>10</sup> that.      <sup>11</sup> from.      <sup>12-12</sup> ah, good Lord.      <sup>13</sup> thus.

<sup>14</sup> I make.      <sup>15-15</sup> in shamefull imprisonment.

<sup>16</sup> Fol. lxxxx. col. 1.

<sup>17-17</sup> and was not broken, thanked be almightie God.

broken he thanked god.<sup>17</sup> Than he loked into the  
hauen, and sawe so many shyppes that he had<sup>1</sup> maruayle  
therof / and he was sore<sup>2</sup> abasshed in that he sawe  
4 nother man <sup>3</sup>nor<sup>3</sup> woman <sup>4</sup>sterynge abrode. Also he  
<sup>5</sup>regardyd<sup>5</sup> the castell, the which was so fayre and riche  
that there was none suche in<sup>6</sup> the worlde. Then he  
thought to sende thether one of his companye<sup>7</sup> to knowe  
8 what people were with in the castell / he sawe well<sup>8</sup>  
there was no waye to enter / but by a a strayte waye of  
C.C.C. and .lxxx. greses of heyght: y<sup>e</sup> way was so  
strayte<sup>9</sup> that no man but one at ones coude mounte vp  
12 the grees,<sup>10</sup> he had great maruayle<sup>11</sup> when he sawe no  
man comynge fro the castel. Then he called one of his  
knyghtes, and sayde, 'Syr Arnolde, I wyll<sup>12</sup> that ye go  
vp to this castell to see what people be within,<sup>13</sup> other<sup>14</sup>  
16 sarasyns or paynymes; knowe who is lorde there,<sup>15</sup> and  
saye howe<sup>8</sup> I greatly desyre to be aqueynted withe  
hym; yf ye can do so moch that I myght<sup>16</sup> be aqueynted  
withe hym: then I & my men wyll mount vp to gether  
20 tyll<sup>17</sup> some good aduenture fall: for I haue hope in  
<sup>18</sup>god yet<sup>18</sup> we shall skape this daunger.' 'Syr,' quod  
Arnolde, 'I shall do <sup>19</sup>your pleasure'<sup>19</sup> / then he departed,  
and went fro one shyppe to another tyll<sup>17</sup> he came to the  
24 londe / <sup>20</sup>then he went to the rocke and founde the grees<sup>21</sup>  
and mounted vp. But or<sup>22</sup> he came to the castell gate  
he rested hymselfe .iii. tymes,<sup>20</sup> when he came to the  
gate he rested hym he was so wery: and beheld the  
28 gate, the <sup>23</sup>whiche semyd to<sup>24</sup> hym meruelusly fayre;<sup>25</sup>  
then he began to crye and calle to the entent that some  
man shuld come<sup>20</sup> to speke with hym; <sup>20</sup>when he saw

No man or  
woman is visible.

The approach to  
the castle is by  
three hundred  
and eighty steep  
narrow steps.

Huon bids Sir  
Arnold, a knight,  
climb up to the  
castle and bring  
word what  
people live there.

Sir Arnold  
departs,  
and mounts up  
the steps.

The gate of the  
castle is  
marvellously fair.

He calls out for a  
man to speak  
with,

<sup>1</sup> great. <sup>2</sup> dismayed and. <sup>3-3</sup> omitted. <sup>4</sup> nor Child.

<sup>5-5</sup> looked about him and beheld. <sup>6</sup> throughout all.

<sup>7</sup> for. <sup>8</sup> that. <sup>9</sup> and narrow. <sup>10</sup> degraees.

<sup>11</sup> & was sore troubled in mind. <sup>12</sup> and command.

<sup>13</sup> it. <sup>14</sup> either. <sup>15</sup> of. <sup>16</sup> maye. <sup>17</sup> vntill

<sup>18-18</sup> our lord that. <sup>19-19</sup> as you haue commaunded me.

<sup>20</sup> and. <sup>21</sup> degrees. <sup>22</sup> before. <sup>23</sup> Fol. lxxxx. col. 2.

<sup>24</sup> vnto. <sup>25</sup> and rich.

but no one replies *that* none dyd speke, he stode & harkened yf any parson were comynge to open the gate; but none apered / <sup>1</sup>then he knockyd and called a gayn, & sayd, 'porter *that* art within, com and open the gate, that<sup>2</sup> 4 cursed be thou of god.' this Arnolde had a good occupacion to crye<sup>3</sup> and call, for within was nother man nor<sup>4</sup> woman<sup>5</sup> that wold open the gate / when he saw that he was nye <sup>6</sup>gruged for<sup>6</sup> dyspleasure / & loked 8 downe vnder the gate to knowe yf he myght se<sup>7</sup> other man or woman to speke to<sup>8</sup> / then he <sup>9</sup>loked on the ryght hand of the hal dore,<sup>9</sup> and there he saw an orryble serpent / the whiche kept the castell and 12 palays / it was a marueylous great serpent / heyer then any hors, his eyen lyke .ii. torches brynnyn<sup>10</sup> / when Arnolde saw hym he was<sup>11</sup> sorowful and sore dyspleasyde, and when the serpent harde y<sup>e</sup> knockyng 16 and<sup>12</sup> noyse at the gate, brayenge & cryenge, he came <sup>13</sup>to the gate warde<sup>13</sup> / <sup>1</sup>when Arnold saw the serpent<sup>14</sup> aprochyng to the gate, he fled a way in so great hast *that* he had<sup>4</sup> nere hand <sup>15</sup>fallen<sup>15</sup> downe the steyres: 20 he rested not tyl<sup>16</sup> he come to y<sup>e</sup> shyp wher<sup>17</sup> Huon was, & sayde, 'syr, I haue bene aboue at the gate of the castell, and cried and knocked therat more then the space of an owre: but there was nother man nor<sup>4</sup> 24 woman<sup>5</sup> *that* dyd apere, & when I saw *that* I leyde me downe to loke vnder the gate, to know yf I myght se other man or woman to speke vnto / but I could neuer se eny creature / but a great and a orryble serpent, 28 hygher then a great hors, with eyen redder then fyer, with maruelous great talons and tayle / there was neuer man saw a fowler fygure of a best.' <sup>18</sup>'alas,' quod

for neither man  
nor woman is  
within.

On the right of  
the hall door he  
sees a serpent  
higher than a  
horse, with eyes  
gleaming like  
torches.

The noise of Sir  
Arnold's shouting  
rouses the  
serpent;  
it approaches the  
gate.  
The knight is  
filled with alarm,  
and hurries back  
to the ship.

He tells Huon of  
the horrible  
serpent.

<sup>1</sup> and.      <sup>2</sup> or elles.      <sup>3</sup> knocke.      <sup>4</sup> omitted.  
<sup>5</sup> nor Child.      <sup>6-6</sup> angry with.      <sup>7</sup> espie.      <sup>8</sup> vnto.  
<sup>9-9</sup> turned him round about.      <sup>10</sup> burning.      <sup>11</sup> right.  
<sup>12</sup> great.      <sup>13-13</sup> towarde the gate.      <sup>14</sup> with great furie.  
<sup>15-15</sup> (with verie feare) fell.      <sup>16</sup> vntill.      <sup>17</sup> whereas.  
<sup>18</sup> Fol. lxxxx, back, col. 1.



Huon, 'nowe I see well<sup>1</sup> we be all but dede / for we  
 haue no thyng to ete nor drynke, wherfore we shal  
 dye for famyne and rage. But yf I maye enter in to  
 4 the castell, I shall gyue that serpent suche a stroke that  
 he shall neuer more hurte enye man leuyng. Alas,  
 what haue I sayde, my hardynesse nor<sup>2</sup> prowes<sup>1</sup> nor a  
 wauntynge<sup>1</sup> can not helpe me / for I se well that I and  
 8 all you muste dye, for it is impossible for vs to departe<sup>3</sup>  
 hens.' Than the patron sayd to Huon, sore wepyng,  
 'syr, it behoueth vs to depart<sup>4</sup> our wytayle: yf ye  
 wyll sustayne the ryght & customes of the see / when  
 12 men comethe to suche a case that there is no remedye  
 to gette any fresshe vytayle / then it is a reason that  
 the lorde and capetayne<sup>5</sup> haue the one halfe to his parte  
 and the other parte egally to be delyuered<sup>6</sup> amonge his  
 16 men.' 'Mayster,' quod Huon, 'ye maye do your  
 pleasure, do as ye shall thinke best.' Then the patron  
 caused al theyr vytayles to be brought forth, and then  
 it was deuyded / the patron was a wyse man / when  
 20 Huon saw that, he began to wepe, he dyd eate but lytell  
 at euery meale by cause his vytayle sholde endure the  
 lenger / howbeit all that but lytell awayled, for or<sup>7</sup> .xv.  
 dayes were passyd / all theyr vytayles were expyred<sup>8</sup>  
 24 excepte Huons parte of the whiche he gaue euery man  
 parte, & kepte for hym selfe no more then other men  
 had. And as they were in this daunger they saw a  
 galyot<sup>9</sup> wherin were .xxx. men, sarasyns, <sup>1</sup>and<sup>1</sup> theues  
 28 and pyraottes of the see / they came and aryuede nere  
 to the shyppe where as Huon was in / not knowynge  
 what plase they were in / when they aryued it was in a  
 darke nyght / they hadde<sup>10</sup> meruayle of Huons shyppe  
 32 wherein they sawe great lyght / <sup>11</sup> <sup>12</sup>then they sayd one  
 to another / 'it is happye for vs that we haue founde

Huon complains  
 that his men have  
 nought to eat or  
 drink.  
 He longs to fight  
 with the serpent.

The pilot advises  
 the men to divide  
 such food as is  
 still left them.

One half should  
 be given to their  
 lord and captain,  
 and the rest  
 equally divided  
 among them-  
 selves.

Huon bids him do  
 as he thinks fit.

After fifteen days  
 the men's food is  
 all consumed,

and Huon divides  
 with them his  
 own portion.

A pirate ship  
 comes alongside  
 of Huon's vessel,  
 and threatens it.

<sup>1</sup> omitted.    <sup>2</sup> my.    <sup>3</sup> from.    <sup>4</sup> part.    <sup>5</sup> to,  
<sup>6</sup> deided.    <sup>7</sup> before.    <sup>8</sup> spent.    <sup>9</sup> galley.  
<sup>10</sup> great.    <sup>11</sup> and.    <sup>12</sup> Fol. lxxxx. back, col. 2.

here this fayre shyppe / it can not be but it is rych  
and full of goodes : they shall not scape vs : but it  
shalbe owrs, for therin ar but fewe men to defende the  
shyppe.' 4

¶ Howe a galey withe sarasyns came and  
assayled Huon, who were all slayne, and  
also all Huons men ; and how Huon went  
to the castel of the Adamant & slewe the 8  
great serpent, and of the merueilles that he  
founde there. Ca. .cx.



Huon joyfully  
welcomes the  
men in the  
galley,

but they, speak-  
ing in Spanish,  
declare them-  
selves Saracens,

and threaten  
Huon and his  
company with  
death.

Huon bids his  
companions arm  
themselves,

Hen Huon sawe the galey aryue, and  
goynge to his shyppe he had great 12  
maruayle what men they were / then  
he alyghtyd a torche & toke it in his  
hande, and came a borde on the shyppe,  
and sayd / 'syrs of this galy, ye ar wel aryued here ; 16  
<sup>1</sup>ye be welcome ; <sup>1</sup> we haue great ioy of your companye' /  
when the sarasyns hard Huon, they <sup>1</sup>well <sup>1</sup>perseyuyd by  
his language that he and his company were chrysten  
men / then eche of them behelde other smyllynge for 20  
ioye / one of them turned his speche and spake good  
spanysshe, and sayde to Huon / 'felowe, it is no nede  
for vs to hyde what we be : al we that thou seest here  
be sarasyns, and ye be chrystened / wherfore we wyl 24  
haue all the rychesse that is yn your shyppe / and  
besyde that, all your hedes shall be streken of and your  
bodys cast into the see.' 'Paynym,' quod Huon, 'or<sup>2</sup>  
thou haste our shyp at thy commaundement, fyrste 28  
thou shalte bye it derely.' Then Huon cryyd to his  
men that they sholde arme themselfe to defend them  
fro the paynymes / <sup>3</sup>the which they dyd dylygently.  
And Huon, who was redy armed, and by that tyme the 32

<sup>1</sup> - <sup>1</sup> omitted.

<sup>2</sup> ere.

<sup>3</sup> Fol. lxxxxi. col. 1.

- Sarasyns were enteryd into the shyp. Huon was redy before them with his sworde in his handes, wherwith he stroke the fyrst that he met *withall* in such wyse  
 4 that his hede flew fro his shulders. Then he strake another and claue hym to the throte / and so the thyrd and the fourthe were shortely slayne / he layd on so rounde a boughte hym that his enemyes were  
 8 afrayed to beholde hym. Then the chefe mayster of y<sup>e</sup> theues came and rebuked his men bycause they had sufferyd Huon to do them so moche hurte and damage / he approachid to Huon to haue stryken hym / but Huon,  
 12 who was lyght and expert in dedes of armes, awoydyd his stroke, and strake the Sarasyn with a reuerse that his hede flewe fro the body a great waye of. Then Huon cryed ‘Burdeaux’ / to reioyse his men and to geue them  
 16 corage. Also Arnolde, who had sene the serpente in the castell, dyd marueylles, & bet downe his enemyes, wherof Huon <sup>1</sup>toke great pleasure.<sup>1</sup> And there was a great myghty Sarasyn / who *cam* behi[n]d this knyght  
 20 Arnold as he fought with a nother Sarasyn, and he gaue Arnolde with an axe such a great stroke *that* he claue his hede to the tethe / whereof Huon was ryght sorowfull, and sayd he had rather dye then the deth of  
 24 Arnolde shulde not be reuenged. Then he aprochyd<sup>2</sup> to the same paynyme and lyfte<sup>3</sup> vp his sword with bothe his handes, <sup>4</sup>and<sup>4</sup> he stroke the sarasyn on the shulder that y<sup>e</sup> sworde entered in to the breste. And  
 28 the patron of Huons shyppe vnarmyd came to<sup>5</sup> the batayle with a great staffe in his handes, wherwith he layd on y<sup>e</sup> sarasyns in suche wyse that suche as he stroke <sup>6</sup>ne <sup>7</sup>dyd<sup>6</sup> after no sorgyon. Then a Sarasyn  
 32 aduised hym, and came and gaue the patron suche a stroke with a sword on the hede *that* his hede

and fights himself with his wonted boldness.

He slays the captain of the ship;

and cheers on his men.

But Arnold, the knight who had seen the serpent in the castle, is killed, and Huon swears vengeance upon his murderer.

The captain of Huon's ship is likewise slain.

1-1 had great ioy.      2 neere vnto.      3 lifting.

4-4 omitted.      5 into.      6-6 needed.

7 Fol. lxxxxi. col. 2.

At length Huon has only four men left alive with him, while seven Saracens are still uninjured.

Nevertheless, all the Saracens are at length slain,

and Huon's knights seize the victuals in their ship.

For seven months they live upon them, and then food fails them.

Huon tells his companions that death alone lies before them all.

was clouen to the brayne, wherwith Huon was ryghte sorowfull.<sup>1</sup> But it was not long or<sup>2</sup> he reuengyd his dethe / for he strake the sarasyne suche a stroke *that* he claue hym to the brest / <sup>3</sup> when the patrons seruantes <sup>4</sup> sawe<sup>4</sup> theyr mayster<sup>5</sup> slayne, they<sup>6</sup> made great sorowe / and disarmyd as they were, they came<sup>7</sup> to the batayle with great staues in theyr handys / and fought with them fersly. But y<sup>e</sup> sarasyns who were<sup>6</sup> armyd had <sup>8</sup> anone slayne them all, wherof Huon was sory,<sup>8</sup> for he had then with hym lefte a lyue no mo but .iiii. men of defence. And the Sarasyns, who in y<sup>e</sup> begynnynge were .xxx., were all slayne excepte .vii. parsones / they<sup>9</sup> <sup>12</sup> feryd Huon / for they saw wel none coude endure agaynste his strokys / *then* they fled out of Huons shyp and enteryd in to theyr owne galey. But Huon and his .iii. knyghtes that were with hym folowed them <sup>16</sup> and <sup>10</sup> slew them all, and caste them into the see. Then Huon and the .iii. knyghtes that were *with* hym toke all y<sup>e</sup> flesshe / bread / and wyne that was in the galey and bare it into theyr shyp, wherby they leuyd more <sup>20</sup> then .vii. monethes. And then when theyr vytales began to fayle them<sup>11</sup> they were<sup>12</sup> sorowful / they had no vitayle to leue by longe, and yet they dyd ete but lytell; so they became<sup>13</sup> pale & lene for<sup>14</sup> famyne / <sup>24</sup> peteously Huon complayned and sayd / 'O ye, my <sup>15</sup> ryghte<sup>15</sup> dere and trewe frendis, who for my loue haue left your londes, your wyues, and chyl dren. Now I perseyue ye must nedys dey for the rage of famyne: <sup>28</sup> alas,<sup>16</sup> catyue that I am, I shal not long lyue after you: ' great petye it was to here the complayntes *that* <sup>17</sup> Huon made, who sawe<sup>15</sup> his men dye before his face / and also

<sup>1</sup> and sore displeased.    <sup>2</sup> before.    <sup>3</sup> and.    <sup>4</sup> that.

<sup>5</sup> was.    <sup>6</sup> all.    <sup>7</sup> and entred into.

<sup>8</sup> right sorrowfull and angry.    <sup>9</sup> greatly.

<sup>10</sup> so fast that they.    <sup>11</sup> then.    <sup>12</sup> right.    <sup>13</sup> beganne to be.

<sup>14</sup> through.    <sup>15-15</sup> omitted.    <sup>16</sup> poor.

<sup>17</sup> Fol. lxxxxi. back, col. 1.

he saw<sup>15</sup> that he must folowe the same daunce. Then  
 he sayde, 'a, lady Escaramonde, I shall neuer see you  
 more; I praye our lord god that he wyll comforte you  
 4 in all your affayres / as for me,<sup>1</sup> it is impossyble to lyue  
 .iiii. dayes lenger.' After that he hade made this  
 petyous<sup>2</sup> complaynte he behelde his<sup>3</sup> .iii. knyghtes, who  
 renderyd vp theyr sowles and dyed for<sup>4</sup> hunger. The  
 8 petefull complayntes then that<sup>5</sup> he made was petye to  
 here / he hade no hope to be aydyd by any man  
 mortall,<sup>6</sup> wherfore he knewe suerly<sup>7</sup> he coude not lyue  
<sup>8</sup>past .iiii.<sup>8</sup> dayes lenger. Then all wepyng he wente fro  
 12 his knyghtes that lay<sup>9</sup> dede and wente to the bourd of  
 his shyp and lokyd in to y<sup>e</sup> see yf he coude<sup>10</sup> spye any  
 maner of shyp comynge thether. For he thoughte that  
 yf any shyp came thether of the sarasins, he wolde  
 16 haue some vytales or elles to dye in the quarel / thus  
 Huon was there <sup>11</sup>all<sup>11</sup> alone without<sup>12</sup> compaignie.<sup>13</sup>

He prays to God  
to protect his  
wife.

The four knyghts  
die of hunger.

Huon looks out in  
vain for a passing  
vessel.

¶ When Huon saw *that* no maner of shyp was  
 comynge thether, he was<sup>14</sup> sorowfull. Then he turned  
 20 hym and regardyd the castell, the which semyd to<sup>15</sup>  
 hym maruaylously fayre and great, and sayd / 'a, good  
 lorde, how cane it be that this fayre and rych castell  
 shuld be voyde without man or woman; I haue great  
 24 maruayle of *that* syr Arnolde shewyd me / for he  
 shewyde me *that* within the castell was nother man nor  
 woman, and howe that there shulde be a great serpente.  
 I cannot tell yf<sup>16</sup> it be trewe or not, and<sup>17</sup> whether he  
 28 spake it for fere / but by the grace of god, thoughe I  
 shulde<sup>18</sup> dye in the quarell, I wyll knowe the trouth /  
 for I were as good to dye by the<sup>19</sup> serpent as to dye for  
 hunger' / then he <sup>20</sup>toke his sworde and dyd<sup>21</sup> on his

He surveys the  
castle on the rock  
again,

and resolves to  
visit it,  
although he may  
die in the  
endeavour.

<sup>1</sup> poore soule.    <sup>2</sup> pitifull.    <sup>3</sup> the.    <sup>4</sup> through.  
<sup>5</sup> that then.    <sup>6</sup> mortall man.    <sup>7</sup> that.    <sup>8-8</sup> aboute twoo.  
<sup>9</sup> there.    <sup>10</sup> might.    <sup>11-11</sup> omitted.    <sup>12</sup> any.  
<sup>13</sup> sore weeping and almost dead through famine.    <sup>14</sup> right.  
<sup>15</sup> vnto.    <sup>16</sup> whether.    <sup>17</sup> or.    <sup>18</sup> shall.  
<sup>19</sup> horrible.    <sup>20</sup> Fol. lxxxxi. back. col. 2.    <sup>21</sup> put.



He mounts the steps, and reaches the fair castle.

He admires the alabaster and the fine gold of which it is built.

But on examining the curiously-wrought gate, he sees an inscription saying that the castle is only to be entered by the worthiest of all knights,

for the serpent can overthrow all of small prowess :

but on the right side of the gate hangs a purse with a key within it.

Huon trusts in God to aid him.

helme, & toke his shelde, and dyd so moche withe goynge fro shyp to shyp tyll<sup>1</sup> he came to the<sup>2</sup> londe. And then with moche payne he mounted vp the degrees / and so came to <sup>3</sup>y<sup>e</sup> gate of <sup>3</sup>y<sup>e</sup> castell / <sup>4</sup>then he sate downe <sup>4</sup>and rested hym / & beheld the fayre castel ; he thought he neuer saw no<sup>5</sup> suche before, for the walles and toures were of fyne alabaster clere shynnyng, and the towres rychely coueryd with fyne golde of Arabe ; 8 when the sun cast his rayes<sup>6</sup> ther on<sup>7</sup> it caste so great<sup>8</sup> lyght *that* it gaue lyght<sup>8</sup> far of / <sup>4</sup>when he had longe behelde it<sup>9</sup> he saw the gate, the whiche was fayre and rych, that great beaute it was to behold it : for the .ii. 12 leuys of the gate were coueryd *with* fyne gold intermedelyd with other rych oueragis. And on his ryght syde he saw by the gate a wyndowe, and ouer the same there was wryten in letters of golde, saynge : Let any 16 man be ware how he entereth in to this castel, without he be the worthiest knyght of all other, or elles it were foly to assaye it. For he shall fynde there such aduventure / <sup>10</sup>yf his body were harder than a stethy of 20 stele yet he shuld be but dede and loste without he be of *that* pusaunce to resyste agaynste the great serpente, & vanquesshe hym / many men haue assayed that neuer coude spede / & he that wyll enter in to the 24 castell beholde a lytell purse *that* hangeth on the ryght hand of the gate, where he shall fynde y<sup>e</sup> keye for to open the gate / when Huon had red the writynge, he began sore to muse in hym selfe, and said, <sup>11</sup>'very god,<sup>11</sup> 28 syn thou haste sauyd me from so many parelles in tyme paste, I humbly requyre the at this tyme to ayde<sup>12</sup> me ; and to geue me y<sup>e</sup> grace that I maye vanquesshe this orryble serpent & brynge hym to the deth / <sup>13</sup>for I had 32

<sup>1</sup> vntill.      <sup>2</sup> gate of the.      <sup>3-3</sup> omitted.      <sup>4</sup> and.

<sup>5</sup> none.      <sup>6</sup> and speares.      <sup>7</sup> thereuppon.


<sup>8</sup> a.      <sup>9</sup> at his pleasure.      <sup>10</sup> as.      <sup>11-11</sup> good Lord.

<sup>12</sup> and succour.      <sup>13</sup> Fol. lxxxvii. col. 1.

rather dye in fyghtyng lyke a valyaunte knyght /  
 then to dye for famyne.' Then Huon rose vp and went  
 to the purse, & toke out the keye and opened the gate  
 4 and enteryd, and closyd the gate agayne after hym.

He finds the key,  
 and passes  
 through the gate.

¶ How Huon of Burdeux fought with the  
 orryble serpent, and slew hym, within the  
 castell of the Adamant. Ca. .cxi.

- 8  Hen Huon was enterid into the castell,  
 he sawe before the hall dore the  
 orryble serpent, who was resyn vp :  
 his skyn was of dyuers colours, and it  
 12 was so harde that no Iron nor steele  
 coude enter in to it / when Huon saw the best so great  
 he doughtyd hymselfe, and callyd vpon Iesu Chryst  
 requyringe hym to haue petye vpon hym & to geue hym  
 16 that<sup>1</sup> grace to sle that dredefull best / when the beest  
 sawe Huon, he had great marueyle / for he had bene  
 there a longe space that neuer man came there /  
 he strechyd<sup>2</sup> out his clawes and cast his tayle round  
 20 about hym, and came hastily agaynst Huon / who,  
 when he sawe the beest aproche nere to hym, he made  
 the sygne of y<sup>e</sup> crosse on<sup>3</sup> his forhede, recommaundyng  
 hymselfe to god ; with his sworde in his hande and his  
 24 sheld before hym and he fersly marchyd towards the  
 serpent / he was so hydeous and ferfull to behold *that*  
 the beest semyd rather an enemye of hel then any other  
 beest / his body was marueylous great, with an vgelye  
 28 hede with .ii. eyen bygger then .ii. basyns ful of  
 brynnyng<sup>4</sup> fyre / when he cam nere to<sup>5</sup> Huon he lyfte  
 vp one of his pawes thinkyng to haue drawen downe  
 Huon to the erth / he strake on<sup>3</sup> Huons shyld by<sup>6</sup>  
 32 such force that he pullyd it fro his sholder / lether nor

The horrible  
 serpent is before  
 the door of the  
 hall.

Huon doubts  
 his power to  
 resist it.

The serpent  
 advances towards  
 him,

and Huon  
 prepares to meet  
 him.

The beest pull's  
 his shield from  
 his shoulder,

<sup>1</sup> the.    <sup>2</sup> Fol. lxxxii. col. 2.    <sup>3</sup> vpon.    <sup>4</sup> burning.  
<sup>5</sup> unto.    <sup>6</sup> with.

and his sword  
cannot hurt it.

buckyll coude not resyst it / & then with his teth & nayles he tare the shyldes all to peses / Huon, who was lyger and light, lept by the syde of the serpent and gaue hym a great stroke with hys sworde on<sup>1</sup> the ere, 4 that he thought to haue clouen asonder his hede. But he coude do it no more hurte then yf he had streken on<sup>1</sup> a stethy / so *that* his sword reboundyd agayne / wherof Huon was<sup>2</sup> sorowfull, and sayd / 'a, good lord, 8 now I se well that my dayes ar at an end: A,<sup>3</sup> lady Esclaramonde, I praye our lord god to saue you & my doughter Claryet / for this daye ye shall lese me.' Then he auansyd hym to the serpent, and gaue hym a 12 great stroke on<sup>1</sup> the haunche be hynde / & yf he dyd but lytell with his fyrst stroke he dyd lesse hurt with that stroke / for he coude in no wyse cut through y<sup>e</sup> serpentis skyn: wherfore he was in great fere; and 16 <sup>4</sup>the serpent, when he felte hymselfe stryken, cast his taylor rounde about Huon by<sup>5</sup> suche forse that Huon<sup>6</sup> ouerthrew<sup>7</sup> to y<sup>e</sup> erthe and<sup>8</sup> quykely releuyd agayne.

Huon sees a spear  
by the gate with a  
broad head,  
and seizes it with  
both hands.

Then he saw by the gate a great square spere with 20 a sharpe, brode hede / <sup>9</sup>then he put vp his sworde and toke the spere in bothe his handys, and came<sup>10</sup> agaynste y<sup>e</sup> serpent, who came and encounteryd hym withe the open mouthe to haue swallowed Huon / but Huon, 24 who was stronge and lyght, toke the spere and layde it on his arme, & saw the serpent with his mouth open / he strake the spere into the mouth of the serpent so depe that with the hede of y<sup>e</sup> spere he cut his hart 28 a sonder / when the serpente felte hymselfe hurte to the dethe, he caste out a terryble crye, so that all the palays<sup>11</sup> sowned,<sup>9</sup> so that the noyse myght be harde a leage of. Thus the orryble serpente was slayne / when 32 Huon sawe that he was dede, he knelyd downe & lyfte

The serpent  
opens his mouth  
to attack Huon,  
but the knight  
thrusts the spear  
down its throat,  
and reaches its  
heart.

<sup>1</sup> vppon.    <sup>2</sup> right.    <sup>3</sup> faire.    <sup>4</sup> Fol. lxxxxii. back, col. 1.

<sup>5</sup> with.    <sup>6</sup> he.    <sup>7</sup> Huon.    <sup>8</sup> bee.    <sup>9</sup> and.

<sup>10</sup> with all his force and strength.    <sup>11</sup> place.

vp his handys to the heuen, thankyng our lorde god  
 of<sup>1</sup> his grace. Then he rose and wente to the serpent,  
 and regardyd<sup>2</sup> hym, for he was hedyous and ferfull to  
 4 beholde / he was .xviii. fote longe; when Huon had  
 well regardyd<sup>2</sup> hym he went and sate downe to rest  
 hym<sup>3</sup> by the hall dore<sup>3</sup> / for he was so wery and faynt  
 with the blud that he had lost, and with swete, that he  
 8 had moche payne to draw his breth / the whiche was  
 no maruayle, for he had nother eten nor dronken of all  
 that daye / when he had well restyd hym then he rose  
 vp desyrynge<sup>4</sup> to know whether any man or woman  
 12 were within y<sup>e</sup> castell or not, to speke vnto them / he  
 enteryd into the hall, the whiche he marueylously  
 regardyd: it was so fayre and ryche to beholde that  
 there is no clarke in the worlde can dyscryue the beaute  
 16 & <sup>5</sup>rychesse therof; the ryche chambers that were on  
 the syde of the hall were al composyd and made  
 of whyght marbyll polysshed / the postes were coueryd  
 with fyne golde / at the ende of the hall there was a  
 20 chameney, wherof the two pillers that susteynyd the  
 mantell tree were of fyne Iaspar / and the mantell was  
 of a ryche Calsedony / and the Lyntell was made of  
 fyne Emeradis traylyd with a wyng of fyne golde / and  
 24 the Grapys of fine Saphers. This chemeny was so ryche  
 that none such coude be founde. And all the pyllers  
 in the hall were of <sup>6</sup>a<sup>6</sup> red Calsedony / <sup>7</sup>the pament<sup>8</sup>  
 was of fyne Ambre.  
 28 ¶ when Huon had well aduysyd<sup>2</sup> this hall, he  
 lokyd towardys the chaumbers, and ouer the dorys of  
 euery chaumber was written in letters of gold, the  
 which shewyd where the keyes were of euery chambre.  
 32 Huon, who coude well rede the letters, and vnderstonde  
 it / he founde a purse wherin were the keyes of euery

When the serpent  
 was slain, Huon  
 kneels down and  
 thanks God for  
 His grace.

Huon is faint  
 with hunger,

and goes through  
 the castle in  
 search of man or  
 woman.

The hall is  
 constructed of  
 precious metal  
 and rich stones.

Inscriptions  
 over the doors of  
 the chambers  
 leading from the  
 hall tell Huon  
 where the keyes of  
 each may be  
 found.

<sup>1</sup> for.      <sup>2</sup> behelde.      <sup>3-3</sup> before to rest him.

<sup>4</sup> as desirous.      <sup>5</sup> Fol. lxxxii. back. col. 2.      <sup>6 6</sup> omittet.

<sup>7</sup> and.      <sup>8</sup> pavement.

He enters one of  
them,  
and wonders at  
its rich furniture.

He opens the  
door of another  
chamber,

and finds great  
quantity of  
jewels and gold.

A third chamber  
is still more  
richly equipped,

and in it are  
presses filled with  
gowns of fine  
gold and rich  
mantles of sable.

chambre, all of fyne gold; he toke one of the keyes  
and opened one of the chambres<sup>1</sup> / and enteryd into  
<sup>2</sup>it.<sup>2</sup> Then he lokyd all abouthte the chambre / and  
sawe it garnysshed and hangyd with the moste ryche<sup>3</sup>ste 4  
clothes that euer were sene / the benches & bedstedes  
were all of whyght Iuory, so rychely entraylyd &  
wrought and garnysshed with presyous stonys / that no  
mannes tonge coude dyscryue the beaute and rychesse 8  
therof / all was made by enchaument. This palays  
was<sup>3</sup> great and large, and well garnysshyd with  
chambres. ¶ When Huon had well regardyd<sup>4</sup> this  
chambre he was<sup>5</sup> abasshed that he coude nother se man 12  
nor woman. Then he lokid ouer <sup>6</sup>the dore of another  
chambre,<sup>6</sup> where there was also <sup>7</sup>wryten in letters of  
golde<sup>8</sup> as there<sup>9</sup> was<sup>10</sup> ouer the fyrst dore. Then Huon  
toke the key and openyd the<sup>11</sup> dore, and enteryd in to 16  
that chambre<sup>12</sup> / and there he founde great quantyte of  
gold & rychesse and<sup>13</sup> iouelles, with<sup>14</sup> precyous stones,  
*that* great beaute it was<sup>15</sup> to beholde / 'a, good lord,' *quod*  
Huon, 'I wolde<sup>16</sup> haue hyleuyd that in all the world 20  
there had <sup>17</sup>not<sup>17</sup> bene so moch ryches as I se here' <sup>18</sup> /  
then anone he sawe a nother chambre, and toke the  
key & enteryd,<sup>19</sup> & for all the ryches that he <sup>20</sup>had sene<sup>20</sup>  
before, there he found moch more / there were presses 24  
made of fyne Iuory<sup>21</sup> rychely wrought & entayled, so  
that there was no beast nor byrd but there it was<sup>22</sup>  
wrought; in the whiche presses were gownes and robes  
of <sup>23</sup>fyne golde, and <sup>23</sup>ryche mantelles furryd with 28  
sabyls, and all other thynges<sup>24</sup> apartaynyng to the aparel  
of mankynde / and the beddys so rychly coueryd *that*

<sup>1</sup> doores.      <sup>2-2</sup> the chamber.      <sup>3</sup> exceeding.

<sup>4</sup> beheld.      <sup>5</sup> greatly.      <sup>6-6</sup> another chamber doore.

<sup>7</sup> Fol. lxxxxiii. col. 1.      <sup>8</sup> according.      <sup>9</sup> it.      <sup>10</sup> written.

<sup>11</sup> another.      <sup>12</sup> also.      <sup>13</sup> rich.      <sup>14</sup> other most.

<sup>15</sup> for.      <sup>16</sup> neuer.      <sup>17-17</sup> omitted.

<sup>18</sup> present before me.      <sup>19</sup> therin.      <sup>20-20</sup> sawe.      <sup>21</sup> very.

<sup>22</sup> most cunningly.      <sup>23</sup> most.      <sup>24</sup> the which were.



- it <sup>1</sup>coude not<sup>1</sup> be dyscryuyd<sup>2</sup> / thys chambre was so  
 fayre and ryeh that Huon coude not<sup>3</sup> be satysfied  
 with regardyng<sup>4</sup> therof / ther were wyndows<sup>5</sup> ryehely  
 4 glasyd openyng vpon a gardeyne side, the whiche<sup>6</sup> Glass windows  
 was so fayre and so well garnysshyd with flowres<sup>7</sup> from it open vpon  
 a garden filled  
 with fair flowers,  
 swete smellynge, and<sup>8</sup> al maner of trees chargyd with and trees,  
 frewtis so good & so delysious to ete / <sup>9</sup>so<sup>9</sup> that the and fruits.  
 8 smelle of them wold haue satysfied a mannes apetyte.  
 Huon, who sawe this fayre gardyn, desyred greatly to  
 enter into it to gather some of the<sup>10</sup> frute / he lokyd  
 ouer the dore and founde the <sup>11</sup>key, and went to the  
 12 purse and toke the key, and<sup>11</sup> openyd the dore, and  
 enteryd<sup>12</sup> into y<sup>e</sup> gardeyne and gatheryd of the frute at  
 his pleasure, & dyd ete therof, for he had<sup>13</sup> great Huon enters the  
 garden, and eats  
 the fruit.  
 apetyte<sup>14</sup> to ete / he thought the frute maruaylous  
 16 good. yf I wolde shew or dyscryue the beaute of this The beauty of the  
 spot cannot be  
 described.  
 gardayn, <sup>15</sup>it shuld<sup>16</sup> be ouer long to resyte, there wer so  
 many sondry frutys so fayre and so swete of smellyng,  
 that a syke man of any infyrmyte shuld<sup>16</sup> sone  
 20 <sup>17</sup>reouer<sup>17</sup> helth. Also there were herbys and flowres so  
 swete<sup>18</sup> that all the gardayne semyd<sup>19</sup> full of balme /  
 when Huon had bene there a good space and had well  
 eten of the frute at his pleasure / he returnyd in to the  
 24 chambre that he came fro, and then<sup>20</sup> vnarmyd hym  
 and dyd<sup>21</sup> of all his clothes, & toke out of y<sup>e</sup> presse  
 a fyne shyrt and dobelet / hosyd and shone / gowne /  
 cote and cappe / such as he wold chose / for there was  
 28 no man to saye hym naye / when he was thus newly  
 areyed,<sup>22</sup> there coude not be founde a more goodlyer  
 man / acordyng as the cronycle saythe / I byleue he

<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> was impossible to. <sup>2</sup> by anie mortall man.  
<sup>3</sup> neuer. <sup>4</sup> beholding and viewing. <sup>5</sup> very. <sup>6</sup> garden.  
<sup>7</sup> most precious. <sup>8</sup> of. <sup>9-9</sup> omitted. <sup>10</sup> that.  
<sup>11-11</sup> purse with the key therin, and then he. <sup>12</sup> went.  
<sup>13</sup> a. <sup>14</sup> desire. <sup>15</sup> Fol. lxxxxiii, col. 2. <sup>16</sup> would.  
<sup>17-17</sup> haue recouered his. <sup>18</sup> and delightfvll. <sup>19</sup> to be.  
<sup>20</sup> he. <sup>21</sup> putte. <sup>22</sup> arriued.

But he seeks in  
vain for any  
human being.

Eight days he  
tarries in the  
castle, eating of  
the fruits alone,  
and he grows  
feeble and faint.

He prays to God  
to have mercy on  
his wife and  
child.

was borne by the fayrey / as then there coude not be  
founde so goodly a man leuyng / when he was thus  
apareylyd he went fro chambre to chambre / alwayes  
harkenenge yf<sup>1</sup> he myght<sup>2</sup> here the woyse other of man <sup>4</sup>  
or woman / but as long as he was<sup>3</sup> there he coud here  
no thyng, wherof he was <sup>4</sup>sory<sup>4</sup>; there he was<sup>5</sup> viii.  
dayes without etyng of any thyng sauynge of y<sup>e</sup> frutis  
of the gardayne / wherby he waxed febyll and faynt, <sup>8</sup>  
the which was no meruayle, for he had bene there .viii.  
dayes without etyng other brede or flesshe / he was so  
febyll *that* he thought he coude not longe endure there  
without dethe. Then he prayed<sup>6</sup> our lorde god to <sup>12</sup>  
comforte<sup>7</sup> hym out of that daunger; <sup>8</sup>petyously he  
complaynyd for his wyfe and chylde, saynge: 'A, my  
dere wyfe, god<sup>9</sup> socoure you in all your affayres / for ye  
shall neuer haue<sup>10</sup> socoure<sup>11</sup> of me<sup>12</sup> / for I tary but for <sup>16</sup>  
the oure of<sup>13</sup> dethe, the whyche is<sup>14</sup> nere<sup>15</sup> aprochyng  
to me / for I am so sore<sup>16</sup> beten with famyne *that*  
I haue moche<sup>17</sup> payne to sustayne myselfe.' Thus Huon  
was .viii. dayes in the castell of the Adamant / euery <sup>20</sup>  
day etyng of the frutys of the gardayne / and at  
nyght he lay euer in the best bed in the chambre.  
Nowe let vs leue spekyng of hym, and let vs retourne<sup>18</sup>  
to the duchesse Esclaramonde, who was besegyde within <sup>24</sup>  
y<sup>e</sup> citey of Burdeaux, where as she was in great  
dyspleasure, and not without a cause / for she sufferyd  
moche payne and trobyll.

<sup>1</sup> whether.      <sup>2</sup> coud.      <sup>3</sup> continued.

<sup>4-4</sup> right sorowfull.      <sup>5</sup> continued.      <sup>6</sup> vnto.

<sup>7</sup> and strengthen.      <sup>8</sup> most.      <sup>9</sup> ayde and.      <sup>10</sup> any.

<sup>11</sup> and ayde.      <sup>12</sup> more.      <sup>13</sup> my.      <sup>14</sup> nowe.

<sup>15</sup> at hand.      <sup>16</sup> and grievously.

<sup>17</sup> Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 1.      <sup>18</sup> turne.

¶ How after that Huon was departyd fro  
 Burdeaux the Emperour made dyuers  
 assaultys to the cety / but he coude not  
 4 wyn yt for the defence of the good cheualry  
 that was in<sup>1</sup> yt / and of the busschement<sup>2</sup>  
 that was layd by the counsell of duke  
 Sauary, wherby the citey was taken &  
 8 wonne. Ca. .cxii.



12 e haue harde before howe duke Huon  
 departyd from his citey of Burdeux,  
 where as he lefte the duches his wyfe /  
 who was in great displeasure when she  
 sawe the departynge of her husbond.

Esclaramonde  
 was sorely  
 grieved by her  
 husband's  
 departure.

She greatly complaynid and sayd : 'a, my ryght dere  
 lord, your departynge ought greatly to greue me. I  
 16 fere ye shall not come in tyme to socour and to bryng  
 me out of<sup>3</sup> daunger that I am in / for it is impossible  
 for vs long to endure agaynst this emperour. Alas ! I  
 haue more sorowe for my doughter then for my selfe :  
 20 and I am sorowful for my lordis and knyghtis who for  
 the loue of you and me are in parell of theyr lyues. It  
 had bene better for vs to haue taryed <sup>4</sup>styll in Babylon  
 then to come hether to suffer all this tourmentis /  
 24 paynes / and pouertyes / and at laste paynfull dethe' /  
 with sayenge of these wordes y<sup>e</sup> duches she<sup>5</sup> fell in a  
 traunce amonge her lordys. Then Gerames releuyd her  
 and sayd / 'lady,<sup>5</sup> dyscomforte you nothyng<sup>6</sup>, but take  
 28 good corage and comforte your men, who hathe great  
 desyre to defende this citey for the sauegarde of their  
 owne bodyes and lyues / thus to make sorow ye can  
 wyn no thyng therby, but lese more to more : haue  
 32 no dought that Huon your husbonde wyll leue you at

She regrets that  
 she ever left  
 Babylon.

Gerames  
 endeavours to  
 console her.

<sup>1</sup> with in.    <sup>2</sup> ambushment.    <sup>3</sup> the.  
<sup>4</sup> Fol. lxxxxiii. back, col. 2.    <sup>5</sup> omitted.    <sup>6</sup> not.

On hearing of  
Huon's setting  
out for succour,  
the Emperor  
addresses his  
barons, in  
council  
assembled;

he does not  
know whither  
Huon has gone.

Although  
Charlemagne is  
dead, and Lewis,  
who is young,  
reigns in his  
stead,  
Huon cannot  
hope for aid from  
that quarter.

It is clear, says  
the Emperor, that  
the knight has  
gone on a long  
journey for  
succour, and that  
it is their part  
to assail and  
take the city  
before his return.

All his host is of  
his opinion.

this poynte. he is gone to your brother for socoure /  
he wyll not long tary / and he wyll brynge you suche  
socoure that y<sup>e</sup> emperour nor the Almayns shall haue  
no leysour to graunt hym the vycory.' Thus Gerames 4  
comfortyd the duches, who was glade<sup>1</sup> to here Gerames.  
Thus as they deuysed to gether, the Emperoure, who  
was aduerteynsyd of Huons departyng and howe he was  
gone for socoure / he assembelyd his counseyle in to 8  
his tent, and there he shewyd and declaryd the great  
losses that he had sufferyd as wel of the dethe of his  
nepheus as of other of his frendis and kynne / and the  
great damage that by Huon he had sufferyd, and sayde / 12  
'syrs, all this ye knowe well / his aquayntaunce hathe  
cost vs derely. Ye haue all harde how he is departyd  
to seke for socours / but I can not tell to what parte he  
is gone. As for the realme of fraunce, I know well he 16  
shall haue no socoure there / for as it hathe bene  
shewyd me of late / that the ryght noble and vycory-  
ous prynce Charlemayne is dede / who louyd Huon but  
lytell by cause of his sone Charlot whome Huon slewe / 20  
and Charlemayne hathe lefte be <sup>2</sup>hynde hym but one  
sone namyd Lowis, who is but of a yonge age:<sup>3</sup> I  
beleue yf he were of full age that he wolde rather come  
to socour me then Huon, who slewe Charlote his bro- 24  
ther / therfore it canne be none other wyse but that he  
is gone in to some far countre for socours; therefore I  
thynke it best that in the mene tyme, or<sup>4</sup> he retourne /  
that on all sides let vs contynually assayle the citey / 28  
and let euery man do theyr payne to be reuengyd for  
the dethe of theyr frendys whiche are<sup>5</sup> slayne by them  
within the citey.' ¶ when the lordis harde the emper-  
oure, all with one woyse answeyrd and sayd, 'Syr, the 32  
reason that<sup>6</sup> ye haue shewyd vnto vs is to be keppe and  
done / and we shall go arme vs and make vs redy, to

<sup>1</sup> for.

<sup>2</sup> Fol. lxxxxiiii. col. 1.

<sup>3</sup> and.

<sup>4</sup> ere.

<sup>5</sup> heere.

<sup>6</sup> which.

the entente to come to your entencyon, the whiche is<sup>1</sup>  
 reasonable.' Then they sownyd theyr hornes and  
 busyns, and euery man<sup>2</sup> armyd hym<sup>3</sup> / and came with  
 4 <sup>4</sup>standarde<sup>4</sup> dysplayed to assayle the citey, and they  
 that were within as well as they coude they defendyd  
 the citey: they<sup>5</sup> without reryd vp ladders agaynste the  
 wallys <sup>6</sup>by great<sup>6</sup> strengthe / but they<sup>5</sup> withe in dyd  
 8 bette them downe into the dykis, and then they cast  
 vpon them hote lede and boylynge oyle / and quykke  
 Lyme / and great stonis, & fagottis brynnynge,<sup>7</sup> so  
 that they that<sup>8</sup> were downe in the dykes had no powre<sup>9</sup>  
 12 to releue<sup>10</sup> agayne; but there myserably dyed vnder the  
 ladders. There was on bothe partyes<sup>11</sup> great shotynge  
 with crosebowes and slyngynge of stonys, so thycke  
 that it semyd<sup>12</sup> snowe fleynge in the ayre / marueyle it  
 16 was to regarde<sup>13</sup> the olde Gerames / how he exortyd his  
 company to do wel / and also the duches Esclaramonde,  
 with her doughter in her armes, cryeng to<sup>14</sup> her men and  
<sup>15</sup>said, ' ye, my dere lordys and knyghtys, fyght lustely :  
 20 put<sup>16</sup> to your payne<sup>9</sup> to defend your bodyes and your  
 lyues / your wyues and<sup>17</sup> chyl dren / to the entente that  
 the Almayns make not theyr <sup>18</sup>auaunte of the<sup>18</sup> wynn-  
 ynge of this<sup>19</sup> noble citey by <sup>20</sup>assaulte / the whyche is  
 24 so goodly and ryche / for, syrs, I knowe well ye shall  
 not <sup>21</sup>be in this payne<sup>21</sup> no longe season / for duke Huon,  
 your ryghtfull lorde, shall<sup>22</sup> shortely<sup>23</sup> sucoure vs all.'  
 Then<sup>24</sup> the noble barons, knyghtis, and burgesses /  
 28 herynge the<sup>25</sup> comferte of the noble<sup>26</sup> lady the duches  
 Esclaramonde, with a maruaylous<sup>27</sup> corage<sup>28</sup> they came to

A fierce assault  
 upon Bordeaux is  
 forthwith  
 prepared,  
 but the defenders  
 of the city make  
 a fierce resistance.

Gerames and  
 Esclaramonde  
 exhort Huon's  
 men to fight  
 lustily.

Very valiant is  
 their defence,

<sup>1</sup> verie good and. <sup>2</sup> speedily. <sup>3</sup> selfe.

4-4 Ensigne displayde. <sup>5</sup> which were. <sup>6-6</sup> with mighte.

<sup>7</sup> burning. <sup>8</sup> which. <sup>9</sup> for. <sup>10</sup> themselves.

<sup>11</sup> exceeding. <sup>12</sup> like vnto. <sup>13</sup> beholde. <sup>14</sup> vnto.

<sup>15</sup> Fol. lxxxiii. col. 2. <sup>16</sup> but. <sup>17</sup> your.

<sup>18-18</sup> bragges and vauntes of theyr. <sup>19</sup> most. <sup>20</sup> theyr.

<sup>21-21</sup> abide this trouble for. <sup>22</sup> will. <sup>23</sup> ayde and.

<sup>24</sup> all. <sup>25</sup> exceeding great. <sup>26</sup> and vertuous.

<sup>27</sup> great. <sup>28</sup> and valour.



and the Germans  
are forced to  
retire.

the<sup>1</sup> defences / and dyd<sup>2</sup> so valyauntly that theyr  
enemyes were fayne<sup>3</sup> to recule<sup>4</sup> backe with great losse  
& damage / wherof the emperour and his lordys were  
ryghte sorowfull / and they within the citey ryght 4  
ioyous<sup>5</sup> of the<sup>6</sup> victory that god had geuen them that  
day. Then euery man <sup>7</sup>drew to theyr<sup>7</sup> logyng and  
made great ioy / and the emperoure and his men with-  
drew<sup>8</sup> in great dysp[l]easeure for theyr<sup>9</sup> losse. ¶ when 8  
y<sup>e</sup> emperour was vnarmyd, and had refreshed hymself,<sup>10</sup>  
Then he sayd to his lordis / ‘syrs, we haue ben a longe  
season before this citey and haue had<sup>11</sup> many losses :  
therefore, syrs, I requyre you to counseyle me what is 12  
best to do / this citey, is stronge & wel furnysshed with  
knyghtis and men to defende it / by vs it wyl neuer be  
wone, without vytaylis fayle them / but I thinke they  
haue but small store of vytayle : therefore I desyre you 16  
to shewe me your aduyses whether we shall departe fro  
this citey without more doynge, or elles abyde here vpon  
suche fortune as god wyl send vs’ / when y<sup>e</sup> emperour  
had sayd as moch as<sup>12</sup> pleasyd him,<sup>13</sup> then the duke 20  
Sauary, his brother, rose vp & said / ‘syr, me thynke yf  
I may be byleuyd, <sup>14</sup>that this citey can not long endure :  
and y<sup>e</sup> cause why I shall shew you / ye know well that  
Huon theyr lorde is gone to seke for socours / on the 24  
other syde, they with in the citey haue but fewe men  
and but yll furnysshyd of vytayles / within the citey  
there is an olde knyghte who is a valyant and a hardy  
knyght / and therefore it were profytable to study howe 28  
he myghte be taken, or elles slayne / this shulde greatly  
aunaunce your enterpryse / of the whyche ye can not  
fayle yf ye wyll byleue my counseyle, as I shal shew  
you. Trewe it is this day we haue had grete losse and 32

The Emperour  
invites his men to  
give him advice  
as to whether he  
shall continue the  
siege longer.

The Emperour's  
brother, duke  
Sauary, urges the  
Germans to  
persist in their  
endeavour,

but declares it  
necessary to  
capture Gerames.

<sup>1</sup> theyr.

<sup>2</sup> behaued themselves.

<sup>3</sup> forced.

<sup>4</sup> retyre.

<sup>5</sup> ioyfull.

<sup>6</sup> great.

<sup>7-7</sup> went vnto his.

<sup>8</sup> themselues.

<sup>9</sup> his.

<sup>10</sup> selfe.

<sup>11</sup> sustained.

<sup>12</sup> he.

<sup>13</sup> omitted.

<sup>14</sup> Fol. lxxxiii. back, col. 1.

receyuyd great damage, wherof they within ar Ioyfull /  
 wherefore it were good to sende sartayne motouns and  
 beestys in the nyght tyme *with* a fewe kepars: sende  
 4 them into the medowe nere to<sup>1</sup> the citey / and I am  
 sure<sup>2</sup> when the olde knyght knowe therof, the whiche  
 he shall knowe by the wachmen on the toures and  
 walles / then incontynent he wyll issue out with suche  
 8 power as he hath to take the bestes & to bryng them  
 into the citey. And to the entente that they shall  
 neuer retourne agayne into the citey incontynente or<sup>3</sup>  
 the mone <sup>4</sup>dothe<sup>4</sup> aryse, sende a goo[d] nombre of  
 12 befes / and motons to the medowe. Then haue redy  
 armyd .x. thousande men, and send them to the lytell  
 mountayne, where as the galowes were<sup>5</sup> reysyd / and  
 when they parseyue that they within the citey be  
 16 issuyd out to feche the praye / then let the .x. thou-  
 sande men drawe nere to the gate of the citey / to the  
 entent that they without shall not enter agayne, but  
 to theyrgreat losse. And yf ye wyll thus do, I put no  
 20 dought but that or<sup>6</sup> it be mydnyght they shall be all  
 taken or slayne / and the mater may so come to pas  
 that<sup>7</sup> ye shall enter into the citey at your pleasure.  
 ¶ Thus I haue shewed you as I thynke best / yf any man  
 24 knowe any better waye, let hym speke / Then euery  
 man regardyd the Emperoure and seyde, 'syr, the  
 counsayle that duke Sauary your brother <sup>4</sup>hathe geuyn  
 you we thynke all<sup>4</sup> that a more noble counsayle coude<sup>8</sup>  
 28 not be geuyn to any prynce.' when the emperoure  
 vnderstode the counsayle of his brother duke Sauary,  
 and that all his lordys dyd alowe y<sup>e</sup> same / he was  
 ryght Ioyfull, and sayde<sup>2</sup> it shuld so be<sup>9</sup> done. Then  
 32 he callyd his marshall and commaundyd that it shulde  
 be done<sup>10</sup> as his brother had deuysid it before / the

He suggests a  
 device to induce  
 Gerames to put  
 himself in peril.  
 Herds of cattle  
 should be sent  
 under the city's  
 wall,

and when  
 Gerames and his  
 men issue out to  
 seize them, a  
 large force of  
 Germans should  
 be set in ambush  
 to seize or slay  
 them.

All the Germans  
 approve duke  
 Savary's counsel,

and the Emperor  
 gives directions  
 for putting it  
 into effect.

<sup>1</sup> vnto.      <sup>2</sup> that.      <sup>3</sup> ere.      <sup>4-4</sup> omitted.      <sup>5</sup> is.

<sup>6</sup> before.      <sup>7</sup> Fol. lxxxxiiii. back. col. 2.      <sup>8</sup> can.

<sup>9</sup> bee so.      <sup>10</sup> according.

The night is dark, and the men of Bordeaux are in great danger.

whiche was done<sup>1</sup> dilygently, and sente<sup>2</sup> .xl.<sup>3</sup> men with .vi. hondred motons and two hondred beestes nere to<sup>4</sup> the citey / and<sup>5</sup> layde theyr enbusschement of .x. thousande men by the lytell mountayne. It was<sup>4</sup> darke nyght, & the mone was not rysyn / wherby they within coude not parsayue them / the whiche turnyd to theyr great losse and damage / for all those that issuyd out of the citey of Burdeaux were slayn and 8 taken, as ye shall here after.<sup>6</sup>

¶ Of the dethe of the olde Gerames and of the takynge of the citey of Burdeaux, and of commonynge<sup>7</sup> of the duches with the 12 Emperoure, & of the delyuerynge<sup>8</sup> of the Castell to the Emperoure. Ca. .cxiii.



After their success over the Germans, Gerames called his men together, and thanked God for their victory.

<sup>9</sup> e haue hard here before how the Emperoure assayld the citey of Burdeaux, 16 and of the great losse that he receyuyd<sup>10</sup> / wherof Gerames and they within the citey were ryght ioyous,<sup>11</sup> and made great feast, and thonkyd our lord god. Then 20 after sopper Gerames callyd all the knyghtes and other together and sayde, 'Syr, ye haue sene this daye the great assaulte that the Emperoure and his men hathe made to this cytye / but, thonkid be god, the losse is 24 retorned to them / for there are dede and woundyd a great nombre of them / and many of them are sore weryed<sup>12</sup> of traauylynge,<sup>12</sup> & thynkethe now to reste themselfe / and now is theyr owre that they be sette 28 at supper, and custumably they sytte euer longe at theyr table / far lenger then frenche men dothe / wherfore I wold thynke beste that incontynente without de-

He advised another night attack upon the enemy,

<sup>1</sup> verie.      <sup>2</sup> with him.      <sup>3</sup> fiftie.      <sup>4</sup> vnto.      <sup>5</sup> then.

<sup>6</sup> hereafter.      <sup>7</sup> the comming.      <sup>8</sup> vp.

<sup>9</sup> Fol, lxxxxv. col. 1.      <sup>10</sup> sustained.      <sup>11</sup> ioyfull.

<sup>12-12</sup> with trauaile.

- laye <sup>1</sup>to arme vs all<sup>1</sup> and to<sup>2</sup> issue out of the cite and  
 go to theyr tentys and arayse them / and then let vs do  
 there as good <sup>3</sup>knyghtys ought to do, to the entente  
 4 that good songes maye be made of vs. And that the  
 Almaynes haue no cause to say but that we be as  
 good men as they be.' 'Syr,' quod Othon and Bar-  
 narde, 'we be redy thus to do.' 'Syr,' quod Gerames,  
 8 'let vs make hast, that we may retourne agayne or<sup>4</sup>  
 the mone rysethe.' Then they armyd themselfe. Alas,  
 what an yll aduenture came to them that<sup>5</sup> nyght / for  
 y<sup>e</sup> moste parte of tho that issuyd out were taken and  
 12 slayne. A, good lorde, what a losse fell to the good<sup>2</sup>  
 citey of Burdeaux. A, noble lady Esclaramonde / ye  
 may wel wepe and complayne. <sup>6</sup>your dayes of <sup>7</sup>sorowe  
 and<sup>2</sup> payne and doloure aprocheth nere, wherby ye ar  
 16 lyke to bere such dyseases and pouertye that no man  
 lyuynge canne recounte it / nor ye shall neuer issue out  
 of that daunger and sorowe<sup>8</sup> tyll ye be delyueryd by  
 the good duke Huon your husbnde / when Gerames  
 20 and his companye were redy, they mountyd on theyr  
 horses / they<sup>9</sup> issuyd out at the gate as preuely as they  
 coude / so *that* they were not parseuyd by them that  
 were set to watche for them, nor they hard not when  
 24 they were in the felde / they rode a fawse galope to  
 the tentys, y<sup>e</sup> which they myght well se clerely by the  
 lyghte that were in the tentys / when they came nere,  
 they dassed theyr sporys to theyr horses and cryed  
 28 'Burdeaux' / and strake and cut asonder the cordys  
 and stayes so *that* many tentis fell to the erth / & suche  
 as came out were slayne / great noyse & cry began to  
 ryse in the host, & euery man ran to theyr harnase<sup>10</sup> /  
 32 and Gerames & his companye slew many of theyr  
 enemyes, and made them to fle before them / it was

so that their  
valiant deeds  
might be  
remembered in  
song.

All agree with  
Gerames,

and preparations  
are made, but  
ill fortune is  
awaiting their  
sortie.

Huon's men  
approach the  
German tents,

and dash upon  
them.

1-1 we should arme ourselues.

<sup>2</sup> omitted.

<sup>3</sup> Fol. lxxxv. col. 2.

<sup>4</sup> ere.

<sup>5</sup> at. <sup>6</sup> all.

<sup>7</sup> for.

<sup>8</sup> trouble.

<sup>9</sup> and.

<sup>10</sup> armour.

But the Emperour  
and his host are  
ready to meet  
them,

and Gerames  
advise a retreat.

The Germans  
overtake them  
in vast numbers.

Gerames works  
mighty havoc  
among them,

but his forces are  
surrounded on  
every side.

Gerames calls  
upon Jesus Christ  
for aid,

dreful to beholde the damage that they dyd there. But  
fynally the losse fell <sup>1</sup>vpon them / for the Emperoure  
and all his men were redy / when Gerames sawe howe  
all the hoost was mouyd / then he sayd to his com- 4  
panye, 'Syr, it is tyme to recule<sup>2</sup> backe / for we maye  
tary here to longe / yonder cometh the emperoure with  
a <sup>3</sup>great pusaunce<sup>3</sup> to close vs in / it is nede<sup>4</sup> for vs to  
make hast that we may go<sup>5</sup> in sauetye.' Then all to 8  
gether in one company<sup>6</sup> retournyd, and went the way  
towards Burdeaux. But they had not gone fare or<sup>7</sup>  
that they were ouertaken by the almaynes / and they  
layde on on all partyes with theyr speris and swordys.<sup>8</sup> 12  
Then Gerames turnyd hym to an almayne / and with  
his spere ranne hym clene thugh / and in drawynge  
out his spere he fell downe dede to the erth / and then<sup>9</sup>  
strake another, whome also he slew. He dyd such 16  
dedes of armys that or<sup>7</sup> his spere brake he slewe .v. of  
his enemyes / wherof the Almayns were sore abasshid.  
He brake the prese in suche wyse *that* none durst  
aproche nere<sup>10</sup> hym / ryght wel dyd Othon and Bar- 20  
narde and such as was<sup>11</sup> with them.<sup>12</sup> But then the duke  
Sauary, who with .x. thousande men laye in the busshe-  
mente nere to<sup>10</sup> the citey / when he<sup>13</sup> hard the<sup>14</sup> noyse  
and crye, he <sup>15</sup>thought wel<sup>15</sup> that they within the citey 24  
were Issuyd out / when Gerames and his companye  
sawe how they were enclosyd bothe before and behynde,  
they were sore abasshed. ¶ when Gerames saw that  
theyr forse and proues<sup>16</sup> coud not auayle them, but *that* 28  
other they must be taken or slayn, Then swetely<sup>17</sup> he  
callyd vpon our lorde Iesu chryste / requyrynge hym  
to saue<sup>18</sup> his good lorde, duke Huon of Burdeux, and the  
duches Esclaramond his wyfe. Then he cryed to his 32

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxxxxv. back, col. 1.    <sup>2</sup> retire.    <sup>3-3</sup> mightie armie.

<sup>4</sup> needfull.    <sup>5</sup> away.    <sup>6</sup> they.    <sup>7</sup> ere.

<sup>8</sup> swords & spears.    <sup>9</sup> he.    <sup>10</sup> vnto.    <sup>11</sup> were.

<sup>12</sup> him.    <sup>13</sup> had heard.    <sup>14</sup> great.    <sup>15-15</sup> supposed.

<sup>16</sup> powers.    <sup>17</sup> earnestly.    <sup>18</sup> and defend.



companye, & sayd, 'Syr, I pray you hartely at this  
 tyme<sup>1</sup> shewe forth the your prouesses, and <sup>2</sup>do so<sup>2</sup> that  
 this emperoure & Almaynes haue no cause to make  
 4 theyr auauntes that they haue founde vs as men dys-  
 mayde,<sup>3</sup> and<sup>4</sup> let vs shew them how our swordys can  
 cut.' Then all together <sup>5</sup>set on<sup>5</sup> theyr enemyes in suche  
 wyse that at the fyrste brounte the Almaynes were  
 8 constrayned to recule<sup>6</sup> abacke. Gerames dyd such  
 dedys that none durste aproche nere hym. Then the  
 duke Sauary weth .x. thousande men came vpon them  
 sodaynely / the whiche was none egall partye / and  
 12 also the emperoure with his great batayle came also  
 vpon<sup>7</sup> Gerames and his company, who had goten them-  
 selues in to the subbarbes of the cyte and a great<sup>8</sup> wall  
 behynde them at theyr backes, where as they stode<sup>9</sup> at  
 16 a baye agaynste the almaynes / <sup>10</sup>for as the wyld bore  
 doth kepe a baye agaynst the mastyues and bayynge  
 houndes, so dyd they of Burdeaux agaynst the almayns.<sup>10</sup>  
 Gerames was in the myddys of them, and vnder<sup>11</sup> his  
 20 helme aperyd his long whyght berde / and y<sup>e</sup> emperour  
 who had great shame that so fewe men in nombre shuld  
 kepe a baye <sup>10</sup>in that moner<sup>10</sup> agaynste his pusaunce<sup>12</sup>  
 & do to<sup>13</sup> his men so great damage / he parseyuyd where  
 24 the olde Gerames was / who had often tymys slayne  
 manye of his men and done hym suche damagys *that*  
 he thought he coud neuer <sup>14</sup>have amendys<sup>14</sup> therof suffy-  
 cyent / and thought that yf he shuld haue scapyd *them*  
 28 a lyue / that he wolde do hym moch more hurte and  
 dyspleasure<sup>15</sup> after / and sayd to hymselfe that he had  
 rather dye incontinent then he shulde not as then be  
 reuengyd vpon hym / & therwith incontinently he

and urges on his  
 men to show all  
 their prowess.

At their first  
 charge, the  
 Germans recoil;

and Gerames'  
 men set them-  
 selves before the  
 walls of the city  
 and fight like  
 wild boars at  
 bay.

The Emperor  
 vows that  
 Gerames shall  
 die,

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxxxxv. back, col. 2.

<sup>2-2</sup> behaue your selues so valiantly.

<sup>3</sup> amazed. <sup>4</sup> but.

<sup>5-5</sup> they assayed.

<sup>6</sup> retyre.

<sup>7</sup> old.

<sup>8</sup> mightie.

<sup>9</sup> did stand.

<sup>10-10</sup> omitted.

<sup>11</sup> vnderneath.

<sup>12</sup> hignesse.

<sup>13</sup> vnto.

<sup>14-14</sup> be reuenged.

<sup>15</sup> damage.

and running upon  
him, kills him.

The men of  
Bordeaux had  
good cause to  
weep for the loss  
of their leader,

and soon all  
his companions  
except one knight,  
Barnard, are  
slain.

Barnard was  
nearly as brave  
as Huon,  
and he is mounted  
on the swift horse  
Amphage.

He alone returns  
to Bordeaux,

and tells the  
burgesses the evil  
fate of all his  
company.

couchyd his spere / and ranne at<sup>1</sup> Gerames on the one  
syde or<sup>2</sup> he was ware, so that <sup>3</sup>the emperour ran hym  
clene thorowe y<sup>e</sup> body / so <sup>4</sup>this<sup>4</sup> ientyll knyght Gerames  
fell to the erthe and dyed incontynente. great damage 4  
fell that daye to Huon of Burdeaux / for he loste the  
treweste and best frynde that he had. Alas, for that  
petuous iourney that fell that daye to them of Bur-  
deaux. They had good cause<sup>5</sup> to wepe / alas, good 8  
duches Esclaramond, what losse haue ye receyuyd to  
lese hym who was your chefe comforte and refuge /  
ye myght haue called hym more then father. A, ryght  
noble lady / there neuer came to you a greater mys- 12  
chefe than ye haue by the dethe of Gerames / who  
lyeth dede<sup>6</sup> among his enemyes / when the Almaynes  
sawe that Gerames was dede / then they fought so *that*  
within a short space all they<sup>7</sup> of Burdeaux were slayne 16  
and not one scapyd alyue / excepte Barnarde, who was  
on y<sup>e</sup> pusaunt hors Amphage: for the gambaudes and  
worke *that* he made, none<sup>8</sup> Almayne durste aproche  
nere hym / for Barnard nexte<sup>9</sup> Huon was the moste 20  
valyaunt knyght of his body that was as then leuyng /  
for when the almaynes sawe hym on<sup>10</sup> that horse / they  
chasyd hym no further, then<sup>11</sup> they wente to theyr  
tentes, and Barnarde seysyd not tyll he came to<sup>9</sup> the 24  
gate of the citey / the whiche was openyd / when he  
was enteryd and the gate agayne closyd<sup>12</sup> / the burgesses  
and comunaltie sawe how Barnarde came in all alone /  
they demaundyd of hym and sayd / 'syr, where is 28  
your capetayne, the olde Gerames?' Then sore  
wepyng he shewyd them at length the petuous and  
dolorous aduenture, y<sup>e</sup> whiche, when they hard that,<sup>13</sup>  
they made suche cryes and wepyng that petye it was<sup>5</sup> 32  
to here and to se them / the brute and noyse was so

<sup>1</sup> old.      <sup>2</sup> ere.      <sup>3</sup> Fol. lxxxxvi. col. 1.      <sup>4-4</sup> that the.  
<sup>5</sup> for.      <sup>6</sup> euen now.      <sup>7</sup> them.      <sup>8</sup> not an.      <sup>9</sup> vnto.  
<sup>10</sup> vpon.      <sup>11</sup> but.      <sup>12</sup> closed againe.      <sup>13</sup> omitted.

greate and lowde, that the <sup>1</sup>lady Esclaramond harde it /  
 wherof<sup>2</sup> she <sup>3</sup>had maruayle<sup>3</sup> and was<sup>4</sup> in great fere /  
 Therwith syr Barnarde enteryd in to<sup>5</sup> the castel gate  
 4 and so mountyd into the hall, where as he founde the  
 duches Esclaramonde / who was sore abasshyde when  
 she sawe syr Barnarde come alone / who shewyd her  
 the great losse that she had receyuid<sup>6</sup> that day / wher  
 8 with for inward sorow she fell downe in a swoone, and  
 so lay a longe space as thoughe she had bene dede.  
 Then the ladyes and damoysselles sore wepyng releuyd  
 her / then she cast out a great crye, wryngyng her  
 12 handes and teryng her here, and sayde, 'A, Huon, my  
 ryght dere lorde, this day ye haue loste your moste  
 sorowfull and dolorous wyfe and welbelouyd doughter.'  
 ¶ Then<sup>7</sup> ladyes and damoysselles & other wyues who  
 16 had loste theyr husbandys / fathers / and bretherne  
 came in to the castell and made suche cryes and sorowes  
 that the noyse therof was harde into the emperours  
 hoste without / and it was shewed the emperour that  
 20 y<sup>e</sup> noyse and brute that was made within the citye and  
 castell was for the losse they had receyuyd that daye.  
 And then they sayde it shulde be good that the nexte  
 mornynge euery man shulde be redy to go and assayle  
 24 the citye, and sayde that yf euer they shulde<sup>8</sup> wynne  
 it the owre then was comen. ¶ when the emperour<sup>9</sup>  
 harde that reason, he sayde that the aduyce was very  
 good / and<sup>10</sup> he wolde it shuld so be done / he gaue the  
 28 charg ther of to his constable and marshalles. thus<sup>11</sup>  
 the nexte mornynge the<sup>12</sup> host was redy, & the emper-  
 oure commaundyd to set forward / and so<sup>13</sup> they came  
 before the citye garnysshed with all thynges nedefull  
 32 and necessarye for assawlte / then<sup>14</sup> they <sup>15</sup>marched

Esclaramonde is  
sore distressed at  
his sad news,

and swoons as  
though she were  
dead.

Loud are the  
lamentations of  
the women  
throughout the  
city.

The Emperor  
resolves to enter  
Bordeaux on the  
following day.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. lxxxxvi. col. 2.    <sup>2</sup> whereat.    <sup>3-3</sup> maruailed.

<sup>4</sup> stood.    <sup>5</sup> at.    <sup>6</sup> sustained.    <sup>7</sup> the.    <sup>8</sup> would.

<sup>9</sup> had.    <sup>10</sup> that.    <sup>11</sup> & so.    <sup>12</sup> his.    <sup>13</sup> then.

<sup>14</sup> and.    <sup>15</sup> Fol. lxxxxvi. back, col. 1.

Only merchants  
and burgesses  
remained to  
defend the city,

and Bordeaux  
falls before its  
assailants.

The Emperor  
and all his men  
make entry  
within the walls,

but he forbids  
his men to  
violate the  
women, or the  
churches.

Little injury is  
done to the noble  
city.

forwarde and aproched the cytye / and when they came  
there they gaue a great crye, and enteryd into the dykys  
and reryd vp theyr ladders to the walles in dyuers  
places / so that they that were within were sore 4  
abasshyde<sup>1</sup> / For within were but burgesses and mar-  
chauntys, who coude lytel skylle of <sup>2</sup>the<sup>2</sup> warre / how be  
it, they mountyd vpon the walles to <sup>3</sup>defend<sup>3</sup> their  
citye. But the citye was so sore assayld on all partyes / 8  
that the defendauntys wyste not where to make resyst-  
ence / the shot of them without flewe so thycke that  
none within durste appere vpon the walles, wherby  
they enterid perforce into the citye and slewe as many 12  
as they met withall in theyr enteryng. And then they  
went to<sup>4</sup> the gate and openyd it / so that the emperour  
and all his lordys enteryd into the citye. Then euery  
man wente abroad in the stretis to take presoners and 16  
to spoyle mennes houses. ¶ when the emperour sawe  
how he was lorde of the citye / he <sup>5</sup>made it to be  
cryed<sup>5</sup> in euere strete that no man <sup>2</sup>shulde be so hardy<sup>2</sup>  
on payne of dethe / <sup>6</sup>to vyolat<sup>6</sup> any woman, or deflowre 20  
any mayd / nor to breke any church, nor to set any  
hous a fyre / and also all suche as were in any church  
for sauegarde / that they shulde go at theyr pleasure  
without any trouble or daunger<sup>7</sup> of body or goodys / 24  
<sup>8</sup>the emperour, who was a wyse prince, thought in hym  
selfe that great damage and petye it shulde<sup>9</sup> be to dys-  
troy and put to ruyne such a noble<sup>10</sup> citye / so stronge  
and so<sup>2</sup> well furnysshed with burgesses & marchauntes. 28  
When suche as were fled vnto strong places for refuge  
vnderstode y<sup>e</sup> emperours commaundement, euery man &  
woman retourned to theyr owne houses, so that there  
was but lytell damage <sup>11</sup>done / and that was by them 32

<sup>1</sup> afraid.      <sup>2-2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3-3</sup> and defended.      <sup>4</sup> vnto.

<sup>5-5</sup> caused it to be proclaimed.      <sup>6-6</sup> should wronge.

<sup>7</sup> either.      <sup>8</sup> for.      <sup>9</sup> would.      <sup>10</sup> famous.

<sup>11</sup> Fol. lxxxxvi, back, col. 2.

- that enteryd fyrst. ¶ when the lady Esclaramond  
 sawe howe the citey was taken / ye may be sure she  
<sup>1</sup>had great dolour,<sup>1</sup> for fyrste she sawe her citey taken  
 4 by <sup>2</sup>her enemyes,<sup>2</sup> and her selfe closed within the castel  
 yll furnysshed with wytayles / and moche people with  
 her / wher by she sawe clerely without god dyd ayde  
 her that her dethe aprochyd nere. Then peteously she  
 8 complayned to god and sayd, 'Very god, on whome I  
 beleue fermely, and for whos sake I haue lefte my fyrste  
 mysbeleue & forsake my parentis and frendys to take  
 to my husbonde a chrysten man / to y<sup>e</sup> entent to reseyue  
 12 thy law / syr,<sup>3</sup> I requyre the of thy grace to haue petye  
 of me, pouer, desolate creature / and to kepe & defende  
 my dere chyde<sup>4</sup> from all yll encomberaunce / for yf it  
 be thy pleasure to saue my chylde I am content to abyde  
 16 such<sup>5</sup> fortune as<sup>6</sup> it shall please the to send me, and  
 besyde that, I requyre thy grace to saue and kepe Huon  
 my dere lorde and husbonde.' Then all wepynge, she  
 called to<sup>7</sup> her syr Barnard, and sayd, 'ryght dere frend,  
 20 I can take no counsayle now but of you / ye se well  
 how our dethes aprocheth / and how<sup>8</sup> it is impossyble  
 for vs to kepe and defende this castell agaynste the  
 emperoure, who hathe won the citey, and I doubt yf  
 24 he enter into this castell parforce, we shall be the fyrste  
 that shall receyue dethe / and by cause I see wel I  
 cannot scape from hense, I require you, my dere  
 frende, and by the trouthe that ye bere to<sup>7</sup> Huon, my  
 28 lord and yours, *that* incontynent ye take my dere  
 doughter Claryet, whome I holde here in myne armes /  
 and fynde some meanes that ye maye departe out of  
 this citey, and bere hyr strayght to the abbey of Clune,  
 32 the <sup>9</sup>which is in Borgoyne / and delyuer her into the  
 keepynge of the abbot there. and recommaunde me to<sup>7</sup>

Esclaramonde  
 fears that, unless  
 God aid her, she  
 will surely die.

Piteously she  
 prays to Heaven  
 for help.

She petitions for  
 the life of her  
 child.

Calling Barnard  
 to her, she begs  
 him protect  
 Clariet,

and bear her to a  
 neighbouring  
 abbey.

<sup>1-1</sup> was ryght sorrowfull.    <sup>2-2</sup> the enemye.    <sup>3</sup> O God.  
<sup>4</sup> children.    <sup>5</sup> what.    <sup>6</sup> omitted.    <sup>7</sup> vnto.    <sup>8</sup> that.  
<sup>9</sup> Fol. lxxxxvii. col. 1.



Barnard sees that  
his strength is  
now of no avail,

and promises  
to fulfil  
Esclaramonde's  
bidding.

The Emperor  
and his army  
come before the  
castle.  
Esclaramonde  
desires to speak  
with the  
Emperor,

and urges him to  
have mercy upon  
her.

hym. he is vnclē to my husbāde Huon, great vnclē  
to my chyld.' 'Lady,' quod Barnard, 'I know well yf  
I be taken here I shall be<sup>1</sup> slayn. Howe be it, yf I  
coude se or knowe that my abydyngē here coude ayde <sup>4</sup>  
or socour you, bothe for myne honour and for the loue  
of my<sup>2</sup> lorde<sup>3</sup> Huon, I wolde neuer depart hense fro  
you / but my resystence and force is but of small  
valeue / and by cause I wolde serue you as I am bound <sup>8</sup>  
to do / I am redy aparayled<sup>4</sup> to take on<sup>5</sup> me that  
aduenture as to bere your chyld awaye and to set her  
in sauegard by the grace of <sup>6</sup>god.<sup>6</sup> when the duches  
vnderstode Barnarde, she was well comfortyd / and as <sup>12</sup>  
for her selfe, she regardyd nother her lyf nor dethe /  
when she knewe that her chylde shulde be sauyd.  
Then she delyueryd her chylde to<sup>7</sup> Barnarde / to the  
entent that in the nyght time he shuld issu out. Then <sup>16</sup>  
the emperour and his lordis came before the castel.  
when the duches knewe that / she came to the gate,  
and at a wyndowe she desyryd to speke with y<sup>e</sup>  
emperoure / who was there redy present, and sayde / <sup>20</sup>  
'dame,<sup>8</sup> say what ye wyll to me at your pleasure' /  
<sup>9</sup>when she sawe the emperour, she sayd / 'syr, I knowe  
well ye are the hede and chefe<sup>10</sup> of all crystendome,<sup>11</sup> &  
noblest / wherby ye ar bounde to defend and kepe from <sup>24</sup>  
yll all noble men & women / I that am the doughter of  
an hye and myghty emperoure / and that for y<sup>e</sup> loue  
of<sup>12</sup> Iesu chryst haue forsaken myne owne false byleue /  
to byleue on<sup>5</sup> y<sup>e</sup> christen faythe / syr, I requyre <sup>13</sup>you<sup>13</sup> <sup>28</sup>  
haue pety<sup>14</sup> of me and of all thos that be here with me,  
as<sup>9</sup> to respyte our lyues / and to put fro<sup>15</sup> all rancoure,  
& malyce, and pardon them <sup>16</sup>that no thyng had to do

<sup>1</sup> vtterly.      <sup>2</sup> good.      <sup>3</sup> and Maister.      <sup>4</sup> furnished.

<sup>5</sup> vpon.      <sup>6-6</sup> our Lord and Sauour Iesus Christ.

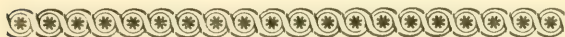
<sup>7</sup> vnto.      <sup>8</sup> Madame.      <sup>9</sup> and.      <sup>10</sup> cheefest.

<sup>11</sup> the christened.      <sup>12</sup> my good Lord and Sauoure.

<sup>13-13</sup> (for his sake that made and created you) to.

<sup>14</sup> and compassion.      <sup>15</sup> you.      <sup>16</sup> Fol. lxxxxvii. col. 2.

with the begynnynge of this warre' / when the emperour<sup>1</sup> harde the resonable request of this lady, he cast fro hym all the mortall hate that he had to<sup>2</sup> her and to  
4 them that were within with her. Then he, mouyd with pety and compassyon of the noble lady, answerid and sayd / 'dame,<sup>3</sup> for the loue of our lord Iesu chryst I repele fro me all my dyspleasure / so that ye render  
8 to<sup>2</sup> me this castell and to put it vnder myne obeysance to vse it at my pleasure / & to yelde your body as my presoner, and all tho that be within, and thus ye shall haue all your lyues sauyd.' 'Syr,' quod the duches,  
12 'laude and prayes be<sup>4</sup> to our lorde god<sup>5</sup> for this grace that ye shewe vnto me and to my companye.' Then the emperour wente backe, and made expresse commaundement thurgh the out the citey / that no man  
16 shulde be so hardy as to do any hurte or iniury to any maner of parson within the citey; but to suffer euery man to abyde in theyr owne howses peasybly without pyllynge<sup>6</sup> / wherof the burgesses and comunalte of the  
20 citey were ryght ioyefull. Thus, as ye haue harde, the citey of Burdeaux was taken by the emperour who was chosyn in Almayne, & comyttyd by the emperour Charlemayn tyll<sup>7</sup> his sone Loys shulde be of full age  
24 and able to kepe<sup>8</sup> the empyre.



¶ How the duches Esclaramond deliueyrd  
her doughter Clariet to Barnarde to bere  
to<sup>2</sup> the abbot of Cluny / of whome the  
28 abbot was ioyfull. Ca. C.xxiiii [= Cxiv].

<sup>1</sup> had,      <sup>2</sup> vnto,      <sup>3</sup> Madame.      <sup>4</sup> giuen.  
<sup>5</sup> Iesus Christ,      <sup>6</sup> killinge,      <sup>7</sup> vntill,      <sup>8</sup> rule.  
 CHARL. ROM. VIII. D D

1



Esclaramonde  
tells her com-  
panions of the  
conditions of the  
surrender of the  
town.

Her daughter she  
entrusts to  
Barnard;

who promises to  
deliver her to the  
abbot of Cluny,  
her great uncle.

All night Barnard  
rides to fulfil his  
promise.

He was not  
mounted on  
Huon's swift  
horse, Amphage,

e haue harde the peteous<sup>2</sup> taking of the  
citye of Burdeaux, and of y<sup>e</sup> trete and  
apoyntment that the duches Esclara-  
monde had made with the emperour / 4  
<sup>3</sup> when she had made her apointment /  
she went to<sup>4</sup> her company peteously wepyng / and  
shewyd them all the maner of her tretye, wherof euery  
parson was glad that theyr lyues shulde be sauyd / 8  
but they made grat sorow for that the duches shuld be  
come a presoner / <sup>3</sup> then she callyd Barnard, and sayd,  
'Syr, when it is nyght issue out by the posterne with  
my doughter Claryet, and bere her to<sup>4</sup> y<sup>e</sup> abbot of 12  
Cluney, who is her great vncl.' 'Dame,'<sup>5</sup> quod he,  
'be <sup>6</sup> in suerty that<sup>6</sup> I shall not reste .ii. nyghtis in one  
place tyll<sup>7</sup> I haue delyueryd your doughter to<sup>4</sup> y<sup>e</sup><sup>8</sup>  
abbot of Cluney her great vncl.' Then Barnarde toke 16  
leue of the duches, who kyste her doughter at her  
departyng<sup>9</sup> / There was a posterne that openyd into  
the feldis; <sup>3</sup> it was so small that Barnarde was fayne to  
lede his horse in his hande / the nyght was darke,<sup>10</sup> and 20  
Barnarde<sup>10</sup> knew <sup>11</sup> well the wayes<sup>12</sup> / mountyd on his  
horse / and<sup>13</sup> the chylde in his armys / and so rod  
forthe and passyd the laundes of Burdeaux, and was  
neuer sene by any<sup>14</sup> man tyll<sup>7</sup> the nexte day / he rode 24  
so all y<sup>e</sup> nyght that his horse was wery. And when he  
sawe that he was past al daungers, and scapyd all  
perelles / then he rode at hys ease for loue of the  
chylde / and he complaynyd greatly for the good horse 28  
Amphage that Huon had lefte in his kepyng;<sup>15</sup> but he  
durste not take that horse with hym for fere that

1 Fol. lxxxxvii. back, col. 1. 2 pitifull. 3 &.

4 vnto. 5 Madame.

6-6 of good cheere and by the grace of our Lord and  
Sauour Jesus Christ. 7 vntill. 8 good.

9 sore weeping and pitifully complaynyng. 10-10 but he.

11 Fol. lxxxxvii. back, col. 2. 12 & afterwards he.

13 with. 14 mortall. 15 vntill his returne.

- he shulde haue delt the worse with the lady Esclaramonde / y<sup>e</sup> which had bene trewe / for the emperour  
 lound so wel the horse,<sup>1</sup> that he desyryd more to haue  
 4 agayne the horse<sup>2</sup> then<sup>3</sup> to win the citey / and therefore  
 Barnarde durste not take the horse with hym. So  
 longe Barnarde rode that he ariuyd at Monglew, the  
 which is callyd Lyon, on the ryuer of Rone / and fro  
 8 thens he rode to Mascon, and fro thence he restyd not  
 tyll he cam to the abbey of Cluney. <sup>4</sup>Then he alyghtyd,  
 and desyryd to speke with the abbot.<sup>5</sup> when the abbot  
 sawe Barnarde with a chylde in his armes, he had<sup>6</sup>  
 12 maruayle therof / <sup>5</sup>when Barnard saw the abbot al  
 wepynge,<sup>7</sup> salutyd hym, and sayd / ‘syr, the ryght  
 desolat duches of Burdeux / your nese, wyfe to<sup>8</sup> the  
 duke Huon of Burdeux your nephue, hathe sent here  
 16 to<sup>8</sup> you her doughter Claryet.’ Then the good abbot  
 embracyd hym, and toke the chylde and kyssed it mo  
 then .xx. timys / and demaundyd why he brought the  
 chylde to<sup>8</sup> hym / ‘syr,’ quod Barnarde, ‘the citey of  
 20 Burdeaux hathe bene besegyed by y<sup>e</sup> emperoure of  
 Almayne / and so straitly kepte that it was nere hand  
 famysshed / manye knyghtis that were within ar  
 slayne / so that Huon your nephue, by the counsayll  
 24 <sup>9</sup>of the duches his wyfe, & consent of all his company,  
 is departyd out of Burdeaux to seke socoure of the  
 kynge of Amphamie, brother to<sup>8</sup> Esclaramond, Huons  
 wyfe / and so it is a longe tyme syn he departyd, & we  
 28 neuer coule here any<sup>10</sup> word of hym / and thus he lefte  
 vs in Burdeaux, and our chefe capytayne was y<sup>e</sup> old  
 Gerames, your cosyn, who was brother to the good  
 prouost Guyer / & so it was<sup>11</sup> on<sup>11</sup> a nyght we issuyd out  
 32 and rode to y<sup>e</sup> emperours tentys and slew many of our

for the Emperor  
longed to have  
him again for  
himself.

He reaches  
Cluny, and  
visiting the  
abbot, delivers  
Esclaramonde's  
message.

Barnard relates  
the disasters that  
have befallen  
Bordeaux and its  
duke.

<sup>1</sup> the horse so well.    <sup>2</sup> agayne *after horse*.    <sup>3</sup> for.

<sup>4</sup> &.    <sup>5</sup> and.    <sup>6</sup> great.    <sup>7</sup> hee.    <sup>8</sup> vnto.

<sup>9</sup> Fol. lxxxviii. col. 1.    <sup>10</sup> any *omitted*.

<sup>11-11</sup> that vpon.

enemyes, and when we sawe<sup>1</sup> tyme, we returnyd towardis  
 our citey / but by some spye we were parseyuyd when  
 we issuid out, wherby the emperoure, knowynge therof,  
 sende duke Sauary his brother with .x.M. men to lye 4  
 in a busment nere to y<sup>e</sup> citey / so that when we had  
 thought to haue enteryd into the cytye, duke Sauary  
 was before vs with .x.M. men / ther we fought a long  
 space / but fynally the olde Gerames and his companye 8  
 were all slayne, none scapyd but my selfe, and that was  
 by reason of my horse / so I enteryd into the citey,  
 where as there was made great sorowe / and the nexte  
 daye the emperour with great assaulte van y<sup>e</sup> citey and 12  
 cam to the castel, where as the duches was, who saw  
 well she coul not longe holde the castell ; she made her  
 tretye to saue her body and her companye, and so they  
 ar all presoners / or<sup>2</sup> she delyueryd vp y<sup>e</sup> castell she 16  
 delyueryd me her doughter, and so I issuyd out at a  
 posterne preuely and was not parsayuyd / therfore, syr,  
 your nephue<sup>3</sup> hathe sent you her doughter to the  
 entente that for the loue of her father and of her ye 20  
 wold kepe and norryshe her tyll her father, duke Huon,  
 be<sup>4</sup> retournyd.' when the abbot vnderstode Barnarde  
 he began to wepe, & <sup>5</sup>toke the chyld in his arms, and  
 kyssyd her oftentimes, and sayde, 'my dere chyld, yf 24  
 it please our lorde god I shall be to you bothe father  
 and mother, and shall norryshe you tyll<sup>6</sup> ye be great /  
 and then mary you to<sup>7</sup> some pusaunte<sup>8</sup> prynce / in  
 whome it shall lye to conquere agayne<sup>9</sup> your herytage / 28  
 londys / and sygnoryes / for I haue here in this<sup>10</sup> house  
 suche treasure that it is sufficyent to conquere y<sup>e</sup><sup>11</sup> hole  
 empyre.' Then the abbot sente for a noble lady of the  
 countre, and a nouryse, and delyueryd<sup>7</sup> them the chylde<sup>12</sup> 32

The abbot takes  
the child in his  
arms,

and promises to  
nourish and tend  
her carefully.

She is given to a  
noble lady of the  
country to nurse  
her.


<sup>1</sup> our.      <sup>2</sup> before.      <sup>3</sup> neece.      <sup>4</sup> were.  
<sup>5</sup> Fol. lxxxxviii. col 2.      <sup>6</sup> vntill.      <sup>7</sup> vnto.  
<sup>8</sup> mightie.      <sup>9</sup> omitted.      <sup>10</sup> my.  
<sup>11</sup> a.      <sup>12</sup> for.



to kepe and to nourysshe / for a fayred <sup>1</sup>nor better  
furnysshyd<sup>1</sup> of her age was neuer sene. Then the  
abbot sayd to Barnarde / 'syr, ye shall abyde here styll  
4 with me tyll<sup>2</sup> this chylde be of age, or elles her father<sup>3</sup>  
retournyd.' Now let vs leue to speke of this yonge  
chylde Claryet, and of the abbot / and retourne to  
speke of the dolerours company that were in the castell  
8 of the noble citey of Burdeaux.

Barnard is  
invited to remain  
with the abbot.

¶ How the duches Esclaramond yeldyd vp  
the castell to the emperour / and how she  
and her companye were <sup>4</sup>led to pryson<sup>4</sup> in  
12 the citey of Magence. Ca. Cxv.

 e haue wel hard here before that after  
the departynge of Barnard fro the  
castell in Burdeaux with Claryet, Huons  
doughter / how the emperour had made  
a trefye with the duches Esclaramonde  
for the delyueraunce of the castell / the whyche passyd ;  
and on the next mornynge the duches spake with the  
20 emperour, who with all his men were<sup>5</sup> there redy before  
the place abydyng to haue the delyueraunce of the  
castell. And <sup>6</sup>when he sawe the duches at a wyndowe  
ouer the gate, he sayd, 'dame,<sup>7</sup> I wyll that the promys  
24 that ye made me yester day ye vpholde,<sup>8</sup> or elles I wyl  
do<sup>9</sup> as I thynke best.' 'Syr,' quod the duches, 'I am  
redy to fulfyll my promys, so that y<sup>e</sup> promes me agayne  
that my body, and al ladyes and damoysselles and other  
28 to<sup>10</sup> be sauyd, & not towchyd by no vyllayny, nor  
none<sup>11</sup> yll done to<sup>12</sup> our bodyes.' 'Dame,'<sup>7</sup> quod the  
emperour, 'all this that ye <sup>13</sup>saye<sup>13</sup> I promyse to  
vpholde;<sup>8</sup> but you and all suche as be with you shall be

The Emperour's  
men assemble  
before the castle,  
awaiting its  
deliverance.

Esclaramonde,  
speaking from a  
window, promises  
to uphold the  
treaty she has  
made with the  
conquerors,

1-1 creature. 2 vntill. 3 he. 4-4 prisoners.

<sup>5</sup> was. <sup>6</sup> Fol. lxxxxviii. back, col. 1. <sup>7</sup> Madame.

<sup>8</sup> performe. <sup>9</sup> according. <sup>10</sup> shall. <sup>11</sup> no.

<sup>12</sup> vnto. <sup>13-13</sup> require heere.

and offers herself  
a prisoner.

The castle-gate is  
opened,  
and the Emperor  
and his lords  
enter within it.

Esclaramonde  
and all within the  
castle are sent as  
prisoners to  
Mayence,

and she herself  
is thrown into a  
deep dungeon.

The Emperor  
orders all the  
men of Bordeaux  
to do homage to  
him.

Thirteen days  
later he seizes  
some neighbour-  
ing provinces.

my prysoners.' 'Syr,' quod the duchess, 'my lyfe and  
my body and all suche as be here with me, I put them  
into<sup>1</sup> the sauegarde of god and of you.' Then she  
descendyd downe & come into the hall, where as she 4  
founde her petuous<sup>2</sup> company makynge great sorow eche  
to other, for they knewe not yf<sup>3</sup> euer they shulde mete  
agayne.<sup>4</sup> Then the duches commaundyd to open the  
gate, the whiche was done.<sup>5</sup> Then the emperoure and 8  
all his lordys enteryd into the castell / but he wolde  
not go in to the hall tyl he had all the ladies and other  
brought out / to the entent that they shulde make no  
request to hym, & he ordayned a .M. knyghtes of the 12  
most aunsyentys men of his hoste / <sup>6</sup>then he delyueryd  
the duches and vi. ladyes with her, and all the other  
prysoners, as well they that were within the castell as  
other that had ben taken before at dyuers skyrmysshes / 16  
he<sup>6</sup> sent them straye to the citeye of Magence / and set  
them all in pryson in towres and other places / but y<sup>e</sup>  
duches was put all alone in a stronge towre, within the  
whiche there was a depe dongeon / and therin she was 20  
set, out of the whiche she neuer issued tyll<sup>7</sup> she was  
delyueryd by Huon her husbonde. Then the emperour,  
<sup>8</sup>beynge in the castell of Burdeaux, sente ouer all y<sup>e</sup>  
countrie that all such as were alyue shuld come and do 24  
theyr homage to<sup>9</sup> hym and take theyr londys of hym /  
y<sup>e</sup> whiche they dyd.<sup>10</sup> Then he made his prouostis and  
offycers to do iustyce both in the citeye and countrie ;  
and after that the emperour had bene there .viii. dayes 28  
he went out of the citeye and rode and toke possessyon  
of Blames and of Gerounde, and set there his offycers /  
<sup>6</sup>when he had full possessyon of all the countrie he lefte  
kepers in the countrie / and so retournyd to the citeye of 32

<sup>1</sup> in.      <sup>2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> where.      <sup>4</sup> or not.

<sup>5</sup> immediately.      <sup>6</sup> and.      <sup>7</sup> vntill.


<sup>8</sup> Fol. lxxxxviii. back, col. 2.      <sup>9</sup> vnto.

<sup>10</sup> according to his commaundement.

Magens, where as he was receyuyd with great ioye.<sup>1</sup>  
 Now let vs leue to speak of y<sup>e</sup> emperour Thyrry / and  
 speke of duke Huon of Burdeaux, beyng in the castell  
 4 of the Adamante in great pouerte and famine.

¶ How there aryud at the castell of the  
 adamant a shyp full of sarasyns, wherein  
 was the byssshop of Melayne / and how  
 8 Huon causyd them to be chrystenyd; and  
 then he brought them into the castell,  
 where as they founde great plente of vytayle.

Ca. C.xvii [= Cxvi].

12  E haue hard here before how Huon was  
 in the castell of the Adamant in great  
 pouerte and famyne, where as he had  
 been .X. dayes without mete and  
 16 drynke excepte Appelles / and frute  
 that grewe in the gardayne / wher by he became so  
 febyl and <sup>2</sup>so voyde<sup>2</sup> that he had scant<sup>3</sup> powre to  
 sustayne hymselfe on<sup>4</sup> his fete / he founde there ryches  
 20 ynowe, golde and syluer, aparell & iouelles, and ryche  
 beddyng / so that he wantyd no thyng excepte vytayll /  
 and as he <sup>5</sup>walkyd in the chambre where as the trespere  
 lay, he beheld an arch vaultyd, rychly peyntyd with  
 24 gold and asure, vnder the which stode a ryche chayre,  
 and ther in a coushyn of clothe of gold borderid with  
 perlis and presyous stonys; Huon, who was very of  
 walkynge, sate downe in the chayre to reste hym.  
 28 Then he began sore to muse, castynge down his loke to  
 the erthe, and by reason that his longe mantell had  
 swepte the powder awaye fro the pauement, there  
 aperyd letters of golde wretten on the pament; <sup>6</sup>he red  
 32 then / <sup>6</sup>the tenoure of them was, who so euer rede

Huon grows  
 feeble in the  
 castle of  
 Adamant, for  
 lack of strong  
 sustenance.

He discovers a  
 rich arch, under  
 which stood a  
 chair with a  
 golden cushion,  
 and there he sits  
 down to rest.

Upon the pave-  
 ment at his feet  
 he perceives  
 letters of gold,

<sup>1</sup> and triumph.      <sup>2-2</sup> weake.      <sup>3</sup> scarce.      <sup>4</sup> vppon.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. lxxxix, col. 1.

<sup>6</sup> and.

and thence learns  
that underneath  
the pavement is a  
cellar filled with  
all kinds of food.

But only such as  
are free from sin  
shall enter the  
cellar alive.

Huon prays to  
God for aid.

On the side of the  
chair he finds a  
key of gold,  
with an inscrip-  
tion written upon  
it.

With the key he  
opens a little  
wicket leading to  
the cellar.

Within all is as  
clear as mid-day,

and Huon sees a  
great oven.

And near the  
oven are ten  
fairies—all young  
men—who were  
making bread.

thes letter shall fynd that vnder this pauement there is  
a seller with vytayle, bothe brede, flesche, and wyne /  
and of all sondry metys for man or woman to ete of /  
but the letters sayd, that who so euer<sup>1</sup> enter into this 4  
seller, without he be with out dedly synne, as sone as  
he toucheth any of the mete, sodaynly he shall dye.  
when Huon had red al the letters he had great maruayle  
and fere, and thoughte in hym selfe that when he 8  
departyd fro Burdeaux, he was confessyd or<sup>2</sup> his prest  
dyed / and syn that tyme he coude not remembre any  
thyng that he had comytted that shuld be dedely  
syn, <sup>3</sup>then he made his prayers to our lorde god 12  
deuoutly, sore wepyng / and when he had endyd his  
prayers as he knelyd on<sup>4</sup> his knees before the chayre,  
he saw hanginge on<sup>4</sup> the syde of the chayre a lytell  
keye of golde; he toke it<sup>5</sup> in his hande & began to 16  
muse on the wrytyng that sayd / 'who so euer enter  
in to this castell, thoughe they be valyaunt & wyse /  
<sup>6</sup>noble knyghtys, yet they shal not knowe well what to  
do' / then he sayd to<sup>7</sup> hym selfe / 'rather then I shulde 20  
dye for famine, it were better to dye shortely then  
longe to <sup>8</sup>langushe.'<sup>8</sup> Then Hu<sup>9</sup>on recommaundid  
hymselfe to the ayde and helpe of<sup>10</sup> god, and toke the  
key and openyd a lytell wycket and drewe the dore to<sup>7</sup> 24  
hym. Then he regardyd<sup>11</sup> into the seller, the whiche  
was as clere as thoughe the sonne in the myddes of the  
day had enterid in at .x.<sup>12</sup> wyndowes / <sup>13</sup>he went downe  
a <sup>14</sup>.vii. score grefes, then he lokyd<sup>15</sup> on the ryght syde<sup>16</sup> 28  
and sawe a great ouen with .ii. mouthes, the whiche  
caste out a great clernes / then he saw nere therto .x.  
fayre yonge men, they were all of the Fayry, .iiii. of  
them had<sup>17</sup> made the past for bred / and .ii. delyueryd 32

<sup>1</sup> should.

<sup>2</sup> before.

<sup>3</sup> and.

<sup>4</sup> vppon.

<sup>5</sup> vp.

<sup>6</sup> or.

<sup>7</sup> vnto.

<sup>8-8</sup>

endure in this hunger and thirst.

<sup>9</sup> Fol. lxxxix. col. 2.

<sup>10</sup> almightie.

<sup>11</sup> looked downe.

<sup>12</sup> the.

<sup>13</sup> and so.

<sup>14</sup> about.

<sup>15</sup> regarded.

<sup>16</sup> hand.

<sup>17</sup> omitted.

- the louys to other .ii., & they dyd set them downe on<sup>1</sup>  
 a ryche clothe of sylke / then the other .ii. men toke  
 the louys and deliuerid them to<sup>2</sup> one man by .ii. louys  
 4 atones / and he dyd set them into the ouen to bake /  
 and at the other mouthe of the ouen ther was a man  
 that drewe out the whyght lous and pastes, & before  
 hym there was a nother yonge man that reseuyd them  
 8 and put them into baskettis<sup>3</sup> rychely payntyd. when  
 Huon had aduysed them, he had great maruayle, and  
 came and salutyd them, sayenge / 'syr, I praye to<sup>4</sup> Huon accosts  
 god<sup>5</sup> saue you & all your companye' / <sup>6</sup>when they hard them,  
 12 Huon speke, they gaue<sup>7</sup> no maner of answer, but but they make no  
 beheld eche other / <sup>6</sup>when Huon saw that none of them reply.  
 wold make hym any answer / he was sore abasshyd / <sup>8</sup>  
 how be it he sayd / 'syrs, ye that be here, I coniure Huon speaks to  
 16 you in the name of the father,<sup>9</sup> sone, and<sup>9</sup> holy gost / them in the name  
 & of the <sup>10</sup>blessyd vyrgyn Mari his mother and of of all the  
 all sayntys<sup>10</sup> / angellis and arkeangellys, and of all inhabitants of  
 the courte selestyall / that ye answer me to that I do heaven.  
 20 demaunde.<sup>11</sup> Then they all sessyd<sup>12</sup> theyr laboure and  
 busynes and behelde Huon, and rubbyd of the paste  
 & mele<sup>12</sup> of theyr handis and fyngers / then<sup>6</sup> the mayster  
<sup>13</sup>of them behelde Huon, and sayd / 'frende, ye do vs  
 24 great wrong to coniure vs / we wyll that ye<sup>14</sup> knowe yf  
 ye were other Sarasyn or paynym ye shuld neuer  
 depart<sup>12</sup> hense without dethe / your trouthe and noblenes  
 hath preseruyd you / ye ought greatly to thanke god /  
 28 I knowe wel ye haue great hunger, for it is .x. dayes  
 syn ye dyd other ete or drynke any thyng excepte  
 alonely of the frute that ye haue<sup>10</sup> founde in the  
 gardayne / the which as yet is not rype and redy to ete.  
 32 Therefore, Huon, fayre syr, I knowe well<sup>15</sup> ye haue great

<sup>1</sup> vppon.    <sup>2</sup> vnto.    <sup>3</sup> which were.    <sup>4</sup> our lord.

<sup>5</sup> to.    <sup>6</sup> and.    <sup>7</sup> vnto hym.

<sup>8</sup> and greatly troubled in his mind;    <sup>9</sup> and of the.

<sup>10-10</sup> omitted.    <sup>11</sup> of you.    <sup>12</sup> from.

<sup>13</sup> Fol. lxxxix, back, col. 1.    <sup>14</sup> well.    <sup>15</sup> that.



but he offers him  
food and drink  
in an inner  
chamber, richly  
furnished.

As long as Huon  
remains in the  
castle, he shall  
have any manner  
of food and wine  
he may desire.

Huon demands  
what people they  
are that inhabit  
this place,

but the fairy is  
wrathful at the  
question.

He tells Huon,  
however, that the  
castle was built  
by Oberon's  
father, Julius  
Cæsar,

hunger / <sup>1</sup> therefore, yf ye wyl drynke or etc, enter into  
yonder ryche chambre the which ye se open / where ye  
shal fynd the table redy set,<sup>2</sup> and the pottys of syluer  
and the wessell of golde borderyd with precyous stonys <sup>4</sup>  
and perle / and the basyns of golde, with <sup>1</sup> ewers with  
water to wasshe your handys / then<sup>3</sup> syt<sup>4</sup> downe at the  
table and there ye shall fynde metis and drynkis such  
as ye wyll wysshe for, and as longe as ye wyl tary here <sup>8</sup>  
in this castell, ye shall haue euery daye lyke seruys or  
better yf ye lyste / for any mete that ye wyl wysshe for  
ye shal haue it at your desyre,<sup>5</sup> and of wyne in lyke  
wyse two tymys in<sup>6</sup> the day, without ye wyl fast. But, <sup>12</sup>  
syr, I requyre you of one thyng: that fro henseforth ye  
do not coniure me nor none of my company / and then  
ye shall haue euery thyng at your desyre.' 'syr,' quod  
Huon, 'for henseforthe I shall not speke to<sup>7</sup> you / so <sup>16</sup>  
that by the coniuracyon that I haue coniuryd you, ye  
wyll shewe me what people ye be that abyde thus<sup>8</sup> in  
this castell, and what ye call this castell, and who is  
lorde therof / and by whome al the ryches that is here <sup>20</sup>  
within is kept? I wyll go ete some mete, and then I  
praye you shewe<sup>9</sup> me.' Then they answeyrd Hu<sup>10</sup>on  
ryght fersly, and sayd / 'and,<sup>11</sup> thou false and vntrewe,<sup>12</sup>  
for to demaund any suche thyng of vs / at this tyme I <sup>24</sup>  
shall shew you / but afterwarde / by me nor by none  
other of my company ye shall neuer here worde  
spoken.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'therof <sup>13</sup> I am sorry,<sup>4</sup> and  
I hartely desyre you yet yf here after I speke to<sup>7</sup> you <sup>28</sup>  
alone that ye wyll answere me.' 'Naye, suerly,' quod  
he, 'that wyll I neuer do / but I shall shewe you that  
I haue promysyd, <sup>14</sup>syn ye wyll<sup>14</sup> knowe it. Syr, knowe  
for trouthe that Iulius Cesar, father to the<sup>15</sup> noble kyng <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> and.    <sup>2</sup> and the cloth layd.    <sup>3</sup> and there.    <sup>4</sup> you.  
<sup>5</sup> pleasure.    <sup>6</sup> of.    <sup>7</sup> vnto.    <sup>8</sup> heere.    <sup>9</sup> it vnto me.  
<sup>10</sup> Fol. lxxxix. back, col. 2.    <sup>11</sup> Ah.    <sup>12</sup> knight.  
<sup>13</sup> the request.    <sup>14-15</sup> seeing you are so desirous to.  
<sup>15</sup> good and.

- Oberon, causyd this castell to be made by crafte of the fayry / the whiche castell can not be greuyd no take parforce / so it fortuneth that<sup>1</sup> on<sup>2</sup> a daye that Iulius
- 4 Cæsar, after he had vanqueshed y<sup>e</sup> great pompey / he came into Alexandre to Tholomeus kyng of Egypt, and dyscomfytyd hym and toke fro hym all his londis to gyue it to<sup>3</sup> his syster, the fayre Cleopatre, who was
- 8 quene of that londe, and after she maryed Marcus Antonius / and after that Iulius Cæsar had this done to refresshe hym / he come hether withe the quene of the preuy Isle / and broughte her the same nyght into this
- 12 castel / and there were .iiii. kyngys of the lynage of Tholomeus, who when they knew that Cæsar was in this castell / they made an army, and with many shypmys and galyes they came, and laid sege before this
- 16 castell / and laye at the sege a longe space and coude not hurte it of the value of a<sup>4</sup> peny / so long they lay here that they were sore dyspleasyd therewith / and so they thought to depart home into theyr owne countrees /
- 20 but by reason that theyr shypmes were naylyd with Iron naylis they coude not departe<sup>5</sup> hence. For the Adamante stone, that by nature drawethe<sup>6</sup> the Iron to<sup>3</sup> hym / and so they laye here so longe that they all dyed
- 24 myserablye for famyne and rage / for no shyppe can depart<sup>5</sup> hens without it be pynnyd with nayles of woode and not of Iron. And where as ye demaunde fro whence comythe the treasure that is here within this
- 28 castell / knowe for a truthe that it was the ryches that these thre kyngys lefte in theyr shypmys when they were dede<sup>7</sup> / the which treasure, after that they were ded, Cæsar causyd it to be brought into this castell /
- 32 and or<sup>8</sup> he dyed he delyueryd vnto me the keynge of this castell and treasure. And I and .xl. other of my felawes are here condempnyd by the fayrey to abyde

and that no force can harm it. After Cæsar defeated Pompey, he came to Alexandria, and, having conquered Ptolemy, the king of Egypt, gave his lands to his sister Cleopatra, who wedded Mark Antony.

Thence he came to the castle with the lady of the secret isle. Three kings of Ptolemy's family besieged him here,

but they could do him no hurt.

And their ships were drawn to the Adamant rock, because of the iron nails, and the besiegers, being unable to depart, died of famine.

The riches in the castle were left in the Egyptian ships, and were brought within the walls after the death of all who sailed in them.

<sup>1</sup> omitted.      <sup>2</sup> vpon.      <sup>3</sup> vnto.      <sup>4</sup> one.      <sup>5</sup> from.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. c. col. 1.

<sup>7</sup> dyed.

<sup>8</sup> before.

Forty-one men  
are condemned to  
abide in the castle  
till the world's  
end.

After Cæsar's  
murder at Rome,  
Oberon swore  
never to visit the  
castle again.

The fairy  
speaker's name  
is Gloriadas,  
and the castle is  
called the  
Adamant.

After Huon had  
eaten and drank,  
he came to a  
chamber door,

and having found  
the key, he  
entered.

It is made of  
crystal painted  
with gold and  
azure.  
All the battles of  
Troy and  
Alexander's deeds  
are portrayed  
there.

The floor is  
covered with  
sweetly-scented  
flowers,  
and singing-birds  
fly about the  
room.

here to<sup>1</sup> the ende of the worlde. And<sup>2</sup> when that  
tydynges came to the knowlege of <sup>3</sup> kynge Oberon that  
his father, Iulius Cesar, was slayne and murderyd  
within the senat of Rome by them whome he trustyd <sup>4</sup>  
well / kynge Oberon toke suche dyspleasure that he  
made promyse and assurement that he wolde neuer  
come here more / & no more he hath done, for he  
thought yf he shuld haue comen hether<sup>4</sup> he shulde <sup>8</sup>  
haue dyed for sorow, for the great loue that he had  
vnto his father Iulius Cæsar. And syn ye wyll knowe  
my name, I am callyd Gloriadas, and this castell  
is callyd the Adamante. Nowe I haue shewyd you the <sup>12</sup>  
trouthe of your demaund, and one thyng I saye to<sup>1</sup> you,  
ye shall neuer departe<sup>5</sup> hens as longe as you leue,  
without ye flye in the ayre as a byrde dothe flye.<sup>6</sup>

¶ when Huon vnderstode hym he was ryght <sup>16</sup>  
sorowfull. And so after he hadde well eten and  
dronken at his owne pleasure, he toke his leue and  
departid, and <sup>7</sup>came to<sup>1</sup> a dore of a chambre, and sawe  
letters of gold wryten ouer the dore, wherby he had <sup>20</sup>  
knowlege where the key was / he toke it and openyd  
the dore and enteryd into the chambre, and saw how <sup>8</sup>  
all the chambre was made of Chrystall payntyd ryche-  
ly with gold and Asure. And there was porturyd<sup>9</sup> all the <sup>24</sup>  
bataylys of Troye and all the dedys of Alexander.  
And on<sup>10</sup> the pauement was sprede a brode Roses and <sup>11</sup>  
flowres, and herbys, swete smellynge aboue all other  
sauorys of the worlde, and in the chaumbre there were <sup>28</sup>  
dyuers byrdys flyenge about<sup>11</sup> the chaumbre,<sup>11</sup> syngynge  
so maruaylous swetely that<sup>12</sup> ioie it was to here them.  
The rychesse and<sup>13</sup> beaulty of that chaumbre can<sup>14</sup> not  
be dyscryuyd. Huon had maruaylous great pleasure to <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> vnto.      <sup>2</sup> Nowe.      <sup>3</sup> the noble.      <sup>4</sup> again, that.

<sup>5</sup> from.      <sup>6</sup> nowe I haue shewed you your desire.

<sup>7</sup> Fol. c. col. 2.      <sup>8</sup> that.      <sup>9</sup> portraiture of the.

<sup>10</sup> vppon.      <sup>11</sup> omitted.      <sup>12</sup> great.      <sup>13</sup> and melodie.

<sup>14</sup> could.

- beholde it / <sup>1</sup>there he sawe a table set full of mete / The rarest food  
is spread upon a  
table,  
 and therby stode great pottys of gold garnysshyd with  
 precyous stonys full of wyne / there was no mete in the  
 4 world but that there it was redy / Huon had good and Huon eats of  
it.  
 apetyte to ete, for he hadde eten but lytell before / by  
 reason of the talkynge that he had withe Gloriadas.  
<sup>1</sup>Then two yenge men broughte hym a basyn of golde A gold basin is  
brought him by  
two young men  
to wash his  
hands.  
 8 broderyd with perles to wasshe his handys / & a nother  
 brought hym a towell to wype his handys. Then Huon  
 sate downe at a ryche table, the whiche was broderyd  
 with prsyous stonis / the clothe that laye vpon the  
 12 table was of sylke rychely wroughte / Huon dyd ete his  
 mete, for he had good apetyte therto / a goodlye yonge  
 man caruyd vnto<sup>2</sup> hym, and another bare his cuppe /  
 Many folkes there was to <sup>3</sup>do all y<sup>e3</sup> seruyse that All the services  
he may require  
are done for him  
by youths,  
to whom he  
speaks without  
reply from them.  
 16 myghte be done<sup>4</sup> vnto any creature leuyng in y<sup>e</sup>  
 worlde / and he spake to<sup>5</sup> them, but none wold answe<sup>6</sup>  
 one word, <sup>7</sup>wherwith he <sup>8</sup>had great dyspleasure; <sup>8</sup>but  
 when he saw there was none other remedy he<sup>9</sup> let it pas  
 20 and forgat it, bycause of the swete melody that the  
 byrdys made. oftentymes he wysshyd for<sup>10</sup> Esclaramond  
 his wyfe, <sup>4</sup>and for his doughter Clariet, and for Gerames /  
 Barnard / and Rycharde, and his other companye that  
 24 he lefte at Burdeaux: thus Huon was seruyd in the  
 castell of the adamant / when he had dynyd the  
 seruauantis toke vp y<sup>e</sup> table and brought hym water & a  
 towel to wasshe his handis / then he rose<sup>11</sup> fro the table  
 28 and went<sup>12</sup> into the seller, where as he saw euery  
 thyng as he had sene before / he salutyd them in  
 passynge forby, <sup>13</sup>but they made none answe<sup>6</sup> / so he  
 cam to<sup>5</sup> the greses and mountyd vp / and then wente  
 32 and sportyd hym fro chambre to chambre / and then

<sup>1</sup> and. <sup>2</sup> for. <sup>3-3</sup> haue done. <sup>4</sup> omitted.<sup>5</sup> vnto. <sup>6</sup> him. <sup>7</sup> Fol. c. back, col. 1.<sup>8-8</sup> was angrie and sore displeased. <sup>9</sup> did.<sup>10</sup> his wife the faire. <sup>11</sup> vp. <sup>12</sup> downe. <sup>13</sup> by.

and returns to  
the garden above.  
When he is  
hungry again,  
he goes again to  
the cellar, and  
the food is ready  
for him as before.  
Although he is  
angry because  
none will speak  
with him, his  
health recovers,

and he wishes  
himself at  
Bordeaux  
battling with  
his enemies.

At length he sees  
a Spanish ship  
approaching the  
port.

into the gardayne, wherin he toke great pleasure; and  
when the tyme came<sup>1</sup> to ete he retournyd in to the  
seller, and so into the chambre wher as he found euery  
thyng redy as he had done before / but he was sore<sup>2</sup> 4  
displeasyd that they that seruyd hym wold not speke  
no word / thus he<sup>3</sup> was there a hole moneth / and toke  
suche pleasure there that he recoueryd his helth and  
strengthe and beautye / greatly he was annoyed *that* 8  
there was no man there that wold speke one worde to<sup>4</sup>  
hym / oftentimes he wysshyd hymselfe at Burdeaux  
with a .C.M. men of<sup>5</sup> armis to gyue batayle to<sup>4</sup> y<sup>e</sup>  
emperour who had done hym so moche damage. And 12  
on<sup>6</sup> a daye as Huon walkyd in the hall saynge<sup>7</sup> his  
prayers, he lokyd out at a wyndow into the see / and he  
saw a far of a<sup>8</sup> shyp with full sayle comynge<sup>9</sup> to a ryue  
at that porte / and they were .iiii. score marchauntys 16  
all of Spayne / <sup>10</sup>they knew not what port they  
aryuyd<sup>11</sup> at.

<sup>12</sup> ¶ How Huon saw a shyp aryue at the port  
of the<sup>13</sup> Adamant.

Ca. C.xvii. 20

Huon fears for  
the safety of the  
ship,



Hen Huon saw this shyppe aryue at  
the porte he greatly complaynyd for  
them, and sayd / 'a, good lord, what  
asorte of good marchauntis haue here 24  
bene lost / yf they of yonder shyppe  
knewe therof they wolde not arryue here by theyr  
wylles' / and so then he sawe the shyppe com in with  
such a force, and it dassed in so sore amonge the 28  
other olde shypys, that the shyppe was nere<sup>14</sup> perysshed.  
But the other vesselles<sup>15</sup> / were so old that they were

but it dashes in  
among the old  
rotten ships,  
and is unhurt.

<sup>1</sup> for.      <sup>2</sup> and greatly.      <sup>3</sup> Huon.      <sup>4</sup> vnto.      <sup>5</sup> at.  
<sup>6</sup> vppon.      <sup>7</sup> of.      <sup>8</sup> a a *in text.*  
<sup>9</sup> comming *before with full.*      <sup>10</sup> and.  
<sup>11</sup> did arriue.      <sup>12</sup> Fol. c. back, col. 2.      <sup>13</sup> Castle of the.  
<sup>14</sup> hande.      <sup>15</sup> shippes.



- rotten, so that ther by the new shyppe was sauýd who  
 had bene .xx. dayes in tourment in<sup>1</sup> the see / so that  
 the men that were within it were so<sup>2</sup> sore traunayld and  
 4 faynte for famyne, that they were scante<sup>3</sup> able to sus-  
 tayne themselfe on<sup>4</sup> theyr fete. ¶ When Huon sawe  
 them aryue all wepyng he complaynyd for them, for  
 he sawe well they were all lost, and that they shulde  
 8 neuer departe<sup>5</sup> thense / when the shyppe was a ryuyd,  
 the marchauntis within it callyd vpon Mahound to  
 ayde<sup>6</sup> them / and the mayster of the shyppe stode vp  
 and wente <sup>7</sup>on londe,<sup>7</sup> and lokyd towardis the castell  
 12 and sawe Huon where he stode lenyng in a wyndowe,  
 wherof they had great ioye, thynkyng that they were  
 arruyd at a good port / supposyng that he that they  
 sawe there before them had bene the lorde of the  
 16 castell / by cause he was so marueylous rychely  
 aparayld.<sup>8</sup> Then they salutyd Huon in the name of  
 Mahounde theyr god. ¶ When Huon hard that he  
 knew suerlye that they were Sarasyns, and he<sup>9</sup> coude  
 20 very wel <sup>10</sup>speke the spanyshe languag, answeyrd to the  
 mayster and said / ‘frendis, ye that be here aryuyd /  
 shewe me<sup>11</sup> the trouth fro whence ye ar come, and what  
 ye be / for be you<sup>9</sup> sure as longe as ye lyue ye shall  
 24 neuer depart<sup>5</sup> hense / and without ye haue vytayles  
 brought *with* you, ye are <sup>12</sup>here yll aryuyd.<sup>12</sup> Then the  
 mayster trymbelynge, sayd / ‘syr, know for trouthe<sup>9</sup> I am  
 of<sup>13</sup> Spayne, and of <sup>14</sup>the citey of Luysarne, and that<sup>15</sup>  
 28 that <sup>16</sup>be here<sup>16</sup> with me ar al marchauntis of Portyngale  
 and come fro the citey of Acre, and there we chargyd  
 our shyp with marchaundyse / & we had<sup>17</sup> good wynd  
 till<sup>18</sup> we were passyd the stratis of Marrocke, and that

The new vessel  
 had met with  
 rough weather,

and the men were  
 exhausted from  
 want of food.

They see Huon  
 at a window of  
 the castle,

and salute him  
 in the name of  
 Mahomet.

Huon asks  
 whence they  
 come.

The master of the  
 ship replies that  
 they are Moors of  
 Spain, travelling  
 home from Acre,

<sup>1</sup> on.      <sup>2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> scarce.      <sup>4</sup> vppon.      <sup>5</sup> from.

<sup>6</sup> and to succour.      <sup>7-7</sup> a shoare.      <sup>8</sup> and.      <sup>9</sup> that.

<sup>10</sup> Fol. ci. col. i.      <sup>11</sup> (I pray you).

<sup>12-12</sup> all arrived at an unfortunate place.

<sup>13</sup> the country.      <sup>14</sup> dwelling in.      <sup>15</sup> they.

<sup>16-16</sup> are come hether.      <sup>17</sup> a maruaylous.      <sup>18</sup> vntill.

who have been  
driven from their  
course.

In their storm-  
tossed wanderings  
they had rescued  
the bishop of  
Lisbon and his  
chaplain from  
shipwreck, who  
are on board.

The ship is  
without food,  
and all on board  
are starving.

we were nere to our owne countre / <sup>1</sup>then a tourment  
and a tempest<sup>1</sup> toke vs & draue vs of fro<sup>2</sup> our owne  
countre, <sup>3</sup>the whiche<sup>3</sup> tempest hath <sup>4</sup>enduryd this<sup>4</sup>.xx.  
dayes / <sup>5</sup>so that perforce<sup>5</sup> we were feyne<sup>6</sup> to abandon <sup>4</sup>  
our shyp to the<sup>7</sup> see and wynd,<sup>8</sup> as the shyp wold go  
at a venture, and <sup>9</sup>at last <sup>10</sup>we aryuyd<sup>10</sup> by a great rocke,  
and there we cast ancre ; and whyles <sup>11</sup>we laye there we  
founde on<sup>11</sup> the rocke<sup>12</sup> y<sup>e</sup> bysshop of Lysbone, and <sup>13</sup>his <sup>8</sup>  
chapelayne<sup>13</sup> with hym, who came thether dryuyng on<sup>14</sup>  
a mast of a shyp that had bene perysshed, and <sup>9</sup>all<sup>15</sup> his  
company were<sup>16</sup> by <sup>17</sup>the fortune of the<sup>17</sup> see. Then the  
bysshop and his chapelayne <sup>18</sup>prayed me humbly<sup>18</sup> to <sup>12</sup>  
saue theyr lyues, and to take them in to my shyp, and <sup>19</sup>  
I had <sup>20</sup>pitye of<sup>20</sup> them, and <sup>21</sup>delyueryd them fro the  
daunger,<sup>21</sup> & toke them in to my shyp, and gaue them  
mete<sup>22</sup> and other thynges suche as I had, for they had <sup>16</sup>  
bene<sup>23</sup> dede by famyne and <sup>24</sup>I had not <sup>25</sup>geuen them  
mete<sup>25</sup> / and yet I thynke<sup>26</sup> they wyll be dede for famyne  
or it be to morowe at nyght / for<sup>26</sup> I haue no more  
vytayle, nother for my selfe nor for such as be within <sup>20</sup>  
my shyp / thus, syr, I haue <sup>27</sup>answeryd to your  
demaunde / and therefore, <sup>28</sup>syr, I requyre<sup>28</sup> you, in  
the honour of god & of mahound, to shew me to  
whom this castell doth apartayne, and who is lorde <sup>24</sup>

<sup>1-1</sup> and then suddenly a great tempest arose and.

<sup>2</sup> the coast of. <sup>3-3</sup> a great distance, and this.

<sup>4-4</sup> continewed these. <sup>5-5</sup> past, so extremely that.

<sup>6</sup> perforce. <sup>7</sup> raging of the. <sup>8</sup> euen. <sup>9</sup> but.

<sup>10-10</sup> by good fortune we chaunced to.

<sup>11-11</sup> presently after the we were arriued there we went vp  
into. <sup>12</sup> and there we founde.

<sup>13-13</sup> one of his chaplaines. <sup>14</sup> vpon. <sup>15</sup> the rest of.

<sup>16</sup> drowned. <sup>17-17</sup> misfortune at.

<sup>18-18</sup> humbly prayed me to haue pite vpon them and.

<sup>19</sup> whereuppon. <sup>20-20</sup> compassion on.

<sup>21-21</sup> (as one verie glad and willing to deliuer them from  
that daunger), I. <sup>22</sup> and drinke. <sup>23</sup> almost.

<sup>24</sup> yf. <sup>25-25</sup> succoured them.

<sup>26-26</sup> that they will not liue vntill to-morrow at night, for  
truly. <sup>27</sup> Fol. ci. col. 2. <sup>28-28</sup> I desire.

therof, and what is the name therof, and of this porte  
 where as we be aryuyd.' 'Frende,' quod Huon, Huon informs  
the master that  
the castle is hated  
by Saracens  
 'know for trouthe this castell and porte is the place  
 4 in the world most hatyd and doughtyd of paynyns  
 and Sarasyns, and I shall shewe you the cause why /  
 this castell is set on a rocke of Adamante stonys, because of the  
power of the  
adamant on  
which it is  
built.  
 so *that* yf any shyp<sup>1</sup> come hether by aduenture<sup>2</sup>  
 8 can neuer departe<sup>3</sup> agayne. For the Adamant is of  
 that nature that it drawethe all wayes to<sup>4</sup> hym the  
 Iron / and therefore any shyp that is naylyd or haue in  
 it any Iron, and by hap<sup>5</sup> come nere this port, by force<sup>2</sup>  
 12 shall be constraynyd here to aryue.' when the mar-  
 chaunt hard Huon / he began sore to wepe, and<sup>6</sup> so dyd The newcomers  
are sorely  
distrressed,  
 all the other and sayd / 'syr, we are sore<sup>7</sup> abasshyd of  
 this<sup>8</sup> that ye haue sayde.' 'Frende,' quod Huon, 'all  
 16 that I have sayd is of trouth; but, syrs, yf ye wyll  
 byleue me, and to<sup>9</sup> take on<sup>10</sup> you chrystendome,  
 and byleue on the faythe of Jesu chryste, and byleue  
 farmely in hym, you and all suche as be in your  
 20 shyppe I shall brynge you into suche a place where as  
 ye shall haue mete and drynke at your pleasure / and  
 apparell as ryche as ye shall demaunde / & then  
 I shall shewe you so moche golde and rychesse  
 24 that ye shall be satysfyed with the beholdynge therof.  
 Therefore yf ye wyll byleue on<sup>11</sup> god<sup>12</sup> ye shall haue  
 all this that I haue sayd before, or elles ye shall  
 all dye of rage,<sup>13</sup> of famyne myserably.' ¶ when  
 28 the patron<sup>14</sup> harde Huon, he sayde, 'syr, knowe for  
 trouthe it is<sup>15</sup> vii yeres paste syn I<sup>16</sup> beleuyd fyrste  
 of<sup>16</sup> the faythe of our lorde<sup>17</sup> Jesu chryst, and, <sup>18</sup>syr, I  
 thanke you of the curteysy that ye <sup>19</sup>offer<sup>19</sup> me; & fro

but Huon  
promises  
to bring them  
safely out of  
danger if they  
will be converted  
to Christianity.

The master of the  
ship is willing to  
embrace the  
Christian  
religion.

<sup>1</sup> chance to.    <sup>2</sup> it.    <sup>3</sup> from hence.    <sup>4</sup> vnto.    <sup>5</sup> chaunce.

<sup>6</sup> lament and.    <sup>7</sup> dismayed and.    <sup>8</sup> these words.

<sup>9</sup> omitted.    <sup>10</sup> vpon.    <sup>11</sup> vppon.

<sup>12</sup> and of his sonne Iesus Christ.    <sup>13</sup> and.    <sup>14</sup> had well.

<sup>15</sup> about.    <sup>16-16</sup> beleued vpon.    <sup>17</sup> and Sauour.

<sup>18</sup> Fol. ci. back, col. l.    <sup>19-19</sup> haue shewed vnto.

Huon bids him  
order his  
company to  
follow his  
example.

All are ready to  
comply with  
their master's  
command.

The bishop of  
Lisbon and his  
chaplain ascend  
the steps leading  
to the castle.

hensforthe I submyt me to the sauegarde of<sup>1</sup> god and  
of his<sup>2</sup> mother, the blessyd vyrgyn Mary, & to them I  
commende my sowle.<sup>2</sup> when Huon hard that he was  
ryght ioyfull, and sayd, 'frind, go to thy shyp, and<sup>4</sup>  
moue<sup>3</sup> all thy company to byleue on<sup>4</sup> Jesu chryste /  
and shewe them what parell<sup>5</sup> they be in nowe / and  
what welthe they shall haue yf they byleue<sup>6</sup> on god<sup>6</sup> /  
and also shewe them what pleasure they shall fynde in<sup>8</sup>  
this plase / and yf they wyll not thou mayst wel say  
that they are come to theyr laste ende shortely / and  
the .ii. men that thou hast sauyd cause them to com  
hether to<sup>7</sup> me' / 'syr,' quod the patron, 'I shall sende<sup>12</sup>  
them to<sup>7</sup> you' / then he departyd and enteryd in to his  
shyp / and there he shewyd his company all *that* he  
had harde of Huon, and<sup>8</sup> was commaundyd to shewe<sup>9</sup>  
them / when the marchantis, who were<sup>10</sup> paynymys,<sup>11</sup> <sup>16</sup>  
harde theyr patron<sup>12</sup> in what case & parell they were  
in / they ansveryd all<sup>13</sup> how<sup>14</sup> they were redy all<sup>15</sup> to  
do his pleasure, and to receyue chrystendome, wherof the  
patron was ryght ioyfull.<sup>16</sup> Then the patron sent for y<sup>e</sup> <sup>20</sup>  
byssshop and his nephue, who was his chaplayn, &  
sayd / 'syrs, in the castell there is a lord who wyll<sup>17</sup>  
that ye<sup>18</sup> incontynent go<sup>19</sup> a lond, and go to speke with  
hym.' when the byssshop harde the patron he rose vp <sup>24</sup>  
with moch payne from fayntenes, by reason of famyne,  
and sayd how<sup>14</sup> he wolde gladly fulfyll his commaunde-  
ment. Then he and his chapelayne departyd out of  
the shyp, and came to the stayres, and mountyd vp to <sup>28</sup>  
the castell / but they were fayn to reste them by the  
waye dyuers tymys<sup>20</sup>; when they came to<sup>7</sup> the gate they

<sup>1</sup> almightie.      <sup>2-2</sup> sonne Iesus Christ.      <sup>3</sup> remoue.

<sup>4</sup> vppon.      <sup>5</sup> and daunger.

<sup>6-6</sup> vppon almightie god & of his sonne Iesus Christ.

<sup>7</sup> vnto.      <sup>8</sup> what he.      <sup>9</sup> say vnto.      <sup>10</sup> all.      <sup>11</sup> had.

<sup>12</sup> declare.      <sup>13</sup> all answered.      <sup>14</sup> that.      <sup>15</sup> readie.

<sup>16</sup> to heare them say so.      <sup>17</sup> prayeth you.      <sup>18</sup> omitted.

<sup>19</sup> wil come.      <sup>20</sup> and.

marueylyd greatly of the great beaute and ryche warke  
 that they sawe there<sup>1</sup> / so they <sup>2</sup>came to<sup>3</sup> Huon, who  
 taryed for them at the hall dore. when they came  
 4 nere to<sup>3</sup> hym they humbly salutyd hym. ‘Syr,’ quod  
 Huon, ‘god saue you,<sup>1</sup> I praye you shewe me the  
 trouthe of what countre be ye of.’ ‘Syr,’ quod the  
 bysshop, <sup>4</sup>‘syn it please you<sup>4</sup> to knowe I shall shew you  
 8 the trouthe / syr, I was borne in the citeye of Burdeaux,  
 and am bysshop therof, & haue bene this .xx. yere /  
 and a deuosyon toke me to go a pylgremage to the holy  
 sepulture / but god wold not suffer vs so to do; for  
 12 when we were departyd fro Lysbone, a great wynde &  
 tourment rose vpon our shyppe / the whiche was fayre  
 and ryche, and well furnysshyd with marchauntis / &  
 so by fortune our shyp ran againste a rocke, so that  
 16 our shyp brast<sup>5</sup> all to pecys / <sup>6</sup>so that<sup>6</sup> all our company  
 were there<sup>7</sup> drownyd, excepte myselfe and my chape-  
 layne, who is my nephue, and so<sup>7</sup> we .ii. sauyd our  
 selues on<sup>8</sup> y<sup>e</sup> maste of our shyp, flotyng on<sup>8</sup> the see /  
 20 and<sup>7</sup> so<sup>9</sup> by the grace of god / the shyp that is here  
 beneth aryuyd by fortune at the porte nere to<sup>3</sup> the  
 rocke, and I prayed hym in the honour of god<sup>10</sup> to saue  
 our lyues / and the patron had petye<sup>11</sup> of vs, & toke vs  
 24 in to his shyp, and dyd as<sup>12</sup> moch for vs as thoughe we  
 had bene his bretherne / syr, thus I haue shewyd you  
 owre aduenture. And, syr, I requyre ye pardon me in  
 that I so <sup>13</sup>sore regarde<sup>13</sup> you / but, syr,<sup>7</sup> I shall shewe<sup>14</sup>  
 28 the cause whye I do it / me thynke I see before me y<sup>e</sup>  
 good duke Seun of Burdeaux, who swetely nouryshed  
 me in my youthe: ye greatly resemble to<sup>3</sup> hym, and  
 he<sup>15</sup> set me to scole to<sup>16</sup> Parys, and then he sente me

Huon questions  
 them as to their  
 history.

The bishop replies  
 that he was born  
 at Bordeaux,  
 and for twenty  
 years was bishop  
 of the city.

He and his  
 chaplain left  
 Lisbon on a  
 pilgrimage,  
 and were wrecked  
 at sea.

The Saracens  
 who are in the  
 ship below  
 rescued them.

The bishop notes  
 the resemblance  
 of Huon to Duke  
 Sevin of  
 Bordeaux,  
 who was his  
 benefactor in Lis-  
 bon youth;

<sup>1</sup> and.      <sup>2</sup> Fol. ci. back, col. 2.      <sup>3</sup> vnto.

<sup>4-4</sup> seeing it is your pleasure.      <sup>5</sup> burst.      <sup>6</sup> and there.

<sup>7</sup> omitted.      <sup>8</sup> vppon.      <sup>9</sup> that.

<sup>10</sup> and of his sonne Iesus Christ.      <sup>11</sup> and compassion.

<sup>12</sup> so.      <sup>13-13</sup> stearnly behold.      <sup>14</sup> you (quoth he).

<sup>15</sup> ge in text.      <sup>16</sup> at.



through the  
duke's good  
offices he obtained  
the see of Milan.

The bishop knows  
Huon's features,  
but he does not  
recognize him to  
be his benefactor's  
son.

He relates how  
his father was  
brother to the  
abbot of Cluny,  
who brought  
Huon up.

Huon embraces  
the bishop as his  
cousin,  
and declares his  
name.

to Rome, to<sup>1</sup> our holy father the pope of Rome, to  
whome I was a kyne, and he dyd me moch good, and<sup>2</sup>  
gaue me the bysshoprych of Myllayne. duke Se<sup>3</sup>uen is  
dede / <sup>4</sup>& he had .ii. sones, the eldest callyd Huon, & <sup>4</sup>  
the other Gerrarde / Huon was sent for to paris by kyng  
Charlemayne, & by the way there fel to<sup>1</sup> hym a mar-  
ueylous adventure, for he slewe the kynges sone Charlot  
in his own defen[ce] not knowynge that it was the <sup>8</sup>  
kyngys sone, wherfore the kyng banysshed hym<sup>5</sup> the  
realme of Fraunce, and sent him to the Admerall  
Gaudys in Babylon to do his message, and afterwarde  
he returnyd into Fraunce. And syn he hath had great <sup>12</sup>  
warre with the emperoure of Almayne / more I can not  
saye, and I am<sup>6</sup> sory that I know not where he is  
becum, for my father, who was brother to y<sup>e</sup><sup>7</sup> abbote of  
Cluney, longe agone norysshed Huon vp in his youth <sup>16</sup>  
or<sup>8</sup> his father duke Seun dyed / my father dyd teche  
him, wherfore I haue great sorowe<sup>9</sup> at myne harte that  
I knowe not where he is becom synne the peas was  
made<sup>10</sup> betwene hym and the kyng of fraunce.' when <sup>20</sup>  
Huon vnderstode<sup>11</sup> the bysshop,<sup>12</sup> his blud changyd, and  
embrasyng hym swetely,<sup>13</sup> sayd / 'Syr, ye are my  
cosyn : I am Huon who passed the see and went to the  
admyrall Gaudys, and I<sup>14</sup> slew hym, and led away <sup>24</sup>  
with me his doughter, the fayre Esclaramonde / who  
was maryed to<sup>1</sup> me by<sup>15</sup> the pope / and I haue left her  
in the citey of Bourdeaux in great pouerte,<sup>16</sup> besegyde by  
the emperour of Almayne / I byleue suerly<sup>17</sup> she is <sup>28</sup>  
taken by this tyme.' when the bysshop hard Huon he  
began sore to wepe / and Huon embrasyd and kyssed  
hym, and sayd, 'cosyn, ye ar happy to fynde me  
here / <sup>18</sup>elles shortly ye had been dede' / 'syr,' quod he, <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> vnto.

<sup>2</sup> hee.

<sup>3</sup> Fol. cii. col. 1.

<sup>4</sup> God be with him.

<sup>5</sup> out of.

<sup>6</sup> right.

<sup>7</sup> good.

<sup>8</sup> before.

<sup>9</sup> and greefe.

<sup>10</sup> and concluded.

<sup>11</sup> had well heard.

<sup>12</sup> and vnderstode him.

<sup>13</sup> he.

<sup>14</sup> I omitted.

<sup>15</sup> our holy Father.

<sup>16</sup> and miserie.

<sup>17</sup> that. <sup>18</sup> or.

'I ought greatly to thanke god therof. But, syr, I  
 requyre you<sup>1</sup> gyue me som mete / for I am so sore The bishop begs  
Huon to give him  
food.  
<sup>2</sup>famysshyd *that* I can scant<sup>2</sup> sustayne my selfe on<sup>3</sup>  
 4 my fete.' <sup>4</sup>'Cosyn,' quod Huon, 'by the grace of god  
 I shall brynge you to suche a place where as ye shall  
 haue mete and drynke at your wysshe.'<sup>5</sup> Then Huon  
 toke him by the hand and brought him into the palays  
 8 and thrughe the chambres / the bysshop was<sup>6</sup> abasshed  
 to se y<sup>e</sup> great<sup>7</sup> ryches that he saw there. Then they  
 went downe into the seller / the bysshope beheld the  
 maner of euery thyng, and had<sup>8</sup> maruayle that none of  
 12 them that he saw there wolde not speke any word /  
 he passed by them with Huon, and salutyd them / then  
 he enteryd into the ryche chambre / where as the table  
 was redy, and seruantis to gyue them water, and they  
 16 all .iiii. sate downe / <sup>9</sup>then Huon sayde to the bysshop,  
 'cosyn, I coniure you by the sacramente that ye haue  
 reseuyd / that ye nor your chapelayne be so hardy<sup>10</sup> to  
 ete one morsell of mete yf any of you be in any dedly  
 20 syn / yf ye be incontynent, confesse you to your chape-  
 layne, and he to<sup>11</sup> you; for yf ye do otherwyse ye shal  
 no soner ete one morsell but incontynent ye shall dye.

Huon leads him  
 to the castle  
 cellar,

and warns him  
 and his chaplain  
 not to eat of the  
 rich food there  
 spread before  
 them unless  
 they are free from  
 deadly sin.

¶ when the bysshop<sup>12</sup> vnderstode Huon he had  
 24 great maruayle, and sayd / 'cosyn, by the grace of god I  
 fele my selfe in good estate<sup>13</sup> to abyde dethe<sup>14</sup>: when I  
 departyd fro rome, Both I and my nephu were confessed  
 and assoyled <sup>15</sup>of the pope<sup>15</sup> of all our synnes / and syn  
 28 we enteryd in to the see we haue done<sup>16</sup> no synne.'  
 Then Huon sayd, 'cosyn, syn<sup>17</sup> ye be bothe in this case  
 ye maye ete and drynke at your pleasure' / and so they

The bishop  
 declares himself  
 and his chaplain  
 free from sin.

<sup>1</sup> to.

<sup>2-2</sup> punished with hunger and thirst, that I am neere hand  
 famished and can scarce.

<sup>3</sup> vpon. <sup>4</sup> Fol. cii. col. 2.

<sup>5</sup> pleasure, and such as you will wish for.

<sup>6</sup> greatly.

<sup>7</sup> omitted.

<sup>8</sup> great.

<sup>9</sup> and.

<sup>10</sup> as.

<sup>11</sup> vnto.

<sup>12</sup> had well heard and.

<sup>13</sup> not.

<sup>14</sup> for.

<sup>15-15</sup> before and assoyled. <sup>16</sup> committed. <sup>17</sup> seeing that.

They eat and  
drink at their  
pleasure.

They marvel at  
the sumptuous  
furniture of the  
room,

and at its sweet  
odours and  
sounds.

Huon, after the  
meal, bids the  
bishop go down  
to the ship and  
baptize the crew.

Elinas, the master  
of the ship, had  
converted all the  
Saracens but ten.

dyde / <sup>1</sup>they had nede therof / they all thre were  
rychely seruyd : they had euery thyng as they wysshyd  
for / the bysshoppe and his nepheue dyd ete and drynke,  
and they were greatly <sup>2</sup>abasshyd of the great rychesse <sup>4</sup>  
that they sawe there / & they were rauysshyd with  
the swete syngynge of the byrdys, and y<sup>e</sup> herbes &  
flowres that were there spred abrode smellynge so  
swetely that they thought themselues in Paradyse / and <sup>8</sup>  
they had great maruayle to se the seruauentis to serue  
them so pesably, but they wold neuer speke one worde /  
they wold gladly a demaundyd the cause why / but  
Huon had expresly chargyd them<sup>3</sup> they shulde make <sup>12</sup>  
none inquiry. Thus passyd theyr dyner in great  
ioye / & so<sup>4</sup> wasshyd theyr handys and rose vp ; <sup>5</sup>then<sup>5</sup>  
the bysshop & his chapelayne sayd grase deuoutly.  
Then Huon toke the bysshop by y<sup>e</sup> hand, and sayde / <sup>16</sup>  
'cosyn, <sup>6</sup>go we<sup>6</sup> vp in to the palays, and then ye shal  
go downe to<sup>7</sup> your shyp / and shew them without they  
wylle dye incontynent / let them be chrystenyd, and  
dresse vp tubbes with water of the see / and halowe <sup>20</sup>  
you it, and chrysten them therin / and I shall come  
after you with my sworde and clene armyd / to the  
entent *that* yf they refuse thus to do, I shall stryke of  
theyr hedys.' 'Syr,' quod the bysshop, 'I shal do <sup>24</sup>  
your pleasure.' Then Huon armyd hym,<sup>8</sup> and wente  
after the bysshop and his nepheue downe to the shyp<sup>9</sup> ;  
when they came there they founde Elinas the mayster  
of them, who had prechyde so moche to<sup>10</sup> the Sarasyns <sup>28</sup>  
that he had conuerted them all excepte tenne. they  
bare hym in hand that they were glade to be chrystenyd /  
but theyr thoughtys was<sup>11</sup> otherwyse / for they .x. had  
concludyd in theyr corages not to renounce y<sup>e</sup> lawe of <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> for.

<sup>2</sup> Fol. cii. back, col. 1.

<sup>3</sup> that.

<sup>4</sup> then.

<sup>5-5</sup> from the Table and.

<sup>6-6</sup> we will go.

<sup>7</sup> into.

<sup>8</sup> selfe.

<sup>9</sup> and.

<sup>10</sup> vnto.

<sup>11</sup> were.

macomet<sup>1</sup> for to byleue on<sup>2</sup> Iesu Chryst / but they were content to be chrystenyd, to thentent that they wold not dye there for famyne. when Huon and the bysshop  
 4 was come to<sup>3</sup> them the bysshop<sup>4</sup> sayd, 'Syr, I requyre you all shew me your entencyon that yf with a good hart not coloured ye wyll be come chrystenid, and byleue on the lawe of<sup>5</sup> Iesu chryst, & leue the false and  
 8 detestable law of mahounde, the which is no thyng worth.' 'syr,' quod they al, 'shortely delyuer vs, for we<sup>6</sup> rage for famyne, the which so sore ouer presseth vs,<sup>6</sup> that we can no lenger endure nor suffer it' / <sup>7</sup>when  
 12 Huon<sup>8</sup> hard them he lawdyd<sup>9</sup> our lorde god, and had great ioye therof; then<sup>7</sup> the bysshoppe and his chape- layne confessyd them al and assoyld them,<sup>10</sup> and in two great vesselles he<sup>11</sup> chrystenyd them all. Then they all  
 16 cryed vpon Huon, and sayd / 'syr, for the loue of our lorde god, get<sup>12</sup> vs some mete / 'syrs,' quod Huon, 'ye shall haue incontynente ynow so that ye shall be satysfyed.' Then Huon and the bysshop & his chapeleyne  
 20 all .iii. went into the castell, and chargyd in<sup>13</sup> their neckes mete ynowe & brought it to<sup>14</sup> the shyp / and causyd all the marchauntis to syt down / then<sup>7</sup> the mete was set before them / & the wyne powryd out in  
 24 to cuppes / amonge other sate the .x. Sarasyns, who had rescuyd<sup>15</sup> chrystendome fayntly and falsely / and at y<sup>e</sup> fyrst morsell *that* they dyd put into theyr mowthes sodaynely they dyed: the other marchauntis, when they  
 28 saw that, they were greatly abasshyd, and regardyd eche other, and durst not aproche to towche y<sup>e</sup> mete, for they<sup>16</sup> went all to haue<sup>16</sup> dyed / 'syrs,' quod Huon,

Their hunger is, however, so great that they consent to baptism, without believing in Christianity.

After all are baptized they cry out for food.

Meat and wine are set before them in the castle,

but the ten who had received the rite falsely, died on tasting the first morsel.

The rest of the converts fear to eat, lest they die also,

<sup>1</sup> Mahomet. <sup>2</sup> vpon. <sup>3</sup> vnto. <sup>4</sup> Fol. cii. back, col. 2.

<sup>5</sup> God the Father, and of his Son our Lord and Sauour.

<sup>6-6</sup> be so hungrie and thirstie, that we are almost famished, the which ouerpresses vs so much.

<sup>7</sup> and. <sup>8</sup> had well. <sup>9</sup> humbly thanked.

<sup>10</sup> of all their sinnes. <sup>11</sup> omitted. <sup>12</sup> giue.

<sup>13</sup> vpon. <sup>14</sup> into. <sup>15</sup> the.

<sup>16-16</sup> had thought that they would have all.

but Huon  
reassures them.

After the meal  
the men carry  
up the merchan-  
dise in their ship  
into the castle.

They are de-  
lighted with the  
fair aspect of the  
garden and the  
rooms of the  
castle.

A happy time  
they spend in  
their new abode,

be not dismayde of<sup>1</sup> this; for these .x. men *that* are dede dyd baptyse them selues but alonely to saue theyr lyues, & to haue mete / and not with<sup>2</sup> good harte,<sup>3</sup> nor for the loue of<sup>4</sup> god / therfore be not afrayde, ete and 4 drynke at your ease / for ye shall want none<sup>5</sup> / when the other marchauntys vnderstode by Huon how *that* <sup>6</sup>they that dyed were no trew chrysten men they were<sup>7</sup> abasshyd / and so fell to theyr mete & drynke / <sup>8</sup>when 8 they had eten & dronken at theyr pleasure they rose and toke all the ryches that was<sup>9</sup> in the shyp, and caryed it vp into the castell / <sup>8</sup>when they came there they had great ioy and pleasure to beholde the halles 12 and rych chambres that were there: so moch gold and<sup>10</sup> syluer and other ryches they sawe there *that* they had therof great maruayle. Then they behelde the rych beddys and chambres aparaylyd wheras they 16 myght reste them. <sup>8</sup>Then they saw the fayre gardayne so pleasaunt and dylectable<sup>11</sup> to beholde / <sup>12</sup>the more they regardyd it the fayrer it semed to<sup>13</sup> them / the plase was of lenthe and brede a bowe shote & more. 20 And when the owre cam for sopper / *then* Huon led them down into the seller, and after into the<sup>14</sup> chambre where as there was mete and drynke plente / and after supper they went agayne into y<sup>e</sup> palays, and laye in 24 the ryche beddys that they founde there redy, and in the mornynge the bysshope and his chapelayne sange<sup>15</sup> masse before Huon and all the other that were there present / and when they wolde ete they wente to the 28 plase acustomyd, & there they founde alwayes redy euery thyng that they desyryd<sup>16</sup> / in the day tyme they wold be in y<sup>e</sup> gardayne to sporte them / oftentymes the bysshop prechyd to<sup>13</sup> to them and confessyd them.<sup>17</sup> 32

<sup>1</sup> nor abasshed at.      <sup>2</sup> a.      <sup>3</sup> conscience.      <sup>4</sup> almightie.

<sup>5</sup> nothing, but haue all thynges at your wish.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. ciii. col. 1.      <sup>7</sup> greatly.      <sup>8</sup> and.      <sup>9</sup> were.

<sup>10</sup> ayd *in text*.      <sup>11</sup> delightfull.      <sup>12</sup> that.      <sup>13</sup> vnto.


<sup>14</sup> rich.      <sup>15</sup> did sing.      <sup>16</sup> or wisht for.      <sup>17</sup> of all their sinnes.



Thus they were there<sup>1</sup> together the space of a moneth,  
 in great pleasure and solas. But who so euer had ioye  
 Huon had none, for his abydyng there greatly anoyed<sup>2</sup>  
 4 hym / <sup>3</sup>oftentymes he wolde complayne for his wyfe<sup>4</sup> but Huon  
 Esclaramonde, and for his doughter Claryet, and sayde, grieues for his  
 'Dame,<sup>5</sup> as oftentymys<sup>6</sup> as I remembre what daunger I wife and  
 7 haue lefte you in my harte nere departeth out of my daughter.  
 8 body / a cursyd emperour, thou causethe me to suffer  
 moch yll when I thynke that by this tyme thou haste  
 taken my citey / my wyfe / and my chylde, and set  
 them in thy preson / I wold yf it were the pleasure of  
 12 our lorde god that they were here with me. Then  
 I wolde neuer departe<sup>8</sup> hens : and no more I shal do  
 without it by the grace of god / A, syr,<sup>9</sup> kynge Oberon,  
 ye haue gyuen me your<sup>10</sup> realme of the fayry ; yf it  
 16 might be your pleasure now<sup>11</sup> to socoure me as to  
 delyuer me<sup>8</sup> hense, and to ayde me to dystroy this  
 emperoure who hathe done me so moche yll.' <sup>12</sup>

He prays for  
 their safety,  
 and begs Oberon  
 to aid him against  
 the German  
 emperour.

¶ How Huon was borne by a gryffon out of  
 20 the castell of the Adamant, and how he  
 slewe the gryffon and v other yonge gryf-  
 fons / and of the fountayne / of the fayre  
 gardayne / & of the frute of the tree nere  
 24 to the fountayne. Ca. C.xx.

28  Hus as ye haue harde Huon past<sup>13</sup> the  
 tyme in the castel of the Adamant, and  
 on<sup>14</sup> a daye he lenyd and lokyd out at a  
 wyndowe into the see warde / and he saw  
 a farre of a great byrde come flyyng<sup>15</sup>

Huon perceives  
 a great bird

<sup>1</sup> all.    <sup>2</sup> greened.    <sup>3</sup> for.    <sup>4</sup> the faire Ladie.  
<sup>5</sup> Madame.    <sup>6</sup> often.    <sup>7</sup> Fol. ciii. col. 2.    <sup>8</sup> from.  
<sup>9</sup> noble.    <sup>10</sup> the.    <sup>11</sup> so much.  
<sup>12</sup> for euer were I bound to your Mightiness.    <sup>13</sup> away.  
<sup>14</sup> vppon.    <sup>15</sup> feyng in text.

flying towards  
the castle,

which alights  
on a ship near  
the rock of  
adamant.

With its talons  
it seizes one of  
the ten Saracens  
who lately died,  
but who were  
still whole and  
sound.

The bird, which  
is a griffin, carries  
the man up into  
the air like a  
hawk bearing a  
pigeon.

Afar off Huon sees  
a crystal rock,  
whither the bird  
flies,  
and he longs to  
visit it.

He thinks that  
the griffin will  
return the next  
day for more  
prey, and that,  
arming himself  
securely and  
lying among the  
dead men, he  
might be carried  
away by the  
griffin.

He resolves to  
wait, however,  
to see if the bird  
returns again.

thetherwarde / this byrd or fowle was bygger then any  
hors in the worlde / wherof he had great maruayle.  
Then he saw where it cam to the same porte, and  
lyghtyd in<sup>1</sup> the maste of a great shyp, and sawe how 4  
for<sup>2</sup> the weyght of the fowle the mast had nere hand  
broke asonder. Then after he sawe the fowle a lyght  
downe into the shyp; and toke with his talantys one  
of the .x. men <sup>3</sup>that<sup>4</sup> dyed bycause they wolde not 8  
bileue fermely on<sup>1</sup> god<sup>5</sup> / they coud not putrefye, but  
lay styll in the shype all hole and sounde; then the  
fowle<sup>6</sup> lyfte hym vp into the ayre and caryed him  
awaye as lyghtly as a hauke wold carry a pegyon. 12  
Huon, who saw this, had great maruayle, and behelde  
the Gryffon whiche way he dyd flye; and as far of as  
he myght se he sawe to his semylytude a great rocke  
as whyght to the syght as Crystall / <sup>7</sup>then he sayd to 16  
hymselfe<sup>8</sup> 'wold to god <sup>9</sup>I were there, I thynke it be  
some place inhabytable<sup>7</sup>;' then he thought to<sup>10</sup> hym-  
selfe to com thether agayne the next daye to se yf the  
Gryffon wolde come agayne to fech his praye: yf he dyd 20  
he thought yf he wolde be out of that<sup>11</sup> castell, the  
gryffon myght bere hym armyd so<sup>12</sup> suerly that he  
shuld do hym no hurte with his talantis / thinkynge to  
lye downe armyd *with* his sword in his hande amonge 24  
the dede men / and when the Gryffon had brought  
him wher his yonge byrdes were / then to fyght *with*  
the Gryffon / yet he thought or<sup>13</sup> he wolde thus do he  
wolde agayne se yf the Gryffon cam and held the same 28  
way as he dyd before / for he thought suerly yf he  
retournyd to the same plase it muste nedys be some  
londe / for he thought<sup>9</sup> it<sup>14</sup> impossyble to get out of  
that castell by any other maner of wayes. Then Huon 32

<sup>1</sup> vpon.      <sup>2</sup> with.      <sup>3</sup> Fol. ciii. back, col. 1.

<sup>4</sup> that that *in text*.      <sup>5</sup> and of his sonne Iesu Christ.

<sup>6</sup> fowfe *in text*.      <sup>7</sup> and.      <sup>8</sup> I.      <sup>9</sup> that.      <sup>10</sup> within.

<sup>11</sup> the.      <sup>12</sup> as.      <sup>13</sup> before.      <sup>14</sup> were a thing.

retournyd to the gardayne to the bysshop and to<sup>1</sup> the  
 other compayne, and made no semblaunce of that he  
 had thought to do;<sup>2</sup> then he talked with them of  
 4 dyuerse maters. And when the tyme came they went  
 to ete and drynke as they had bene acostomyd to do  
 before. when nyght came and that Huon was in his  
 bedde he lay and studied of the conuayaunce of the  
 8 gryffon / desyrynge greatly for the daylight<sup>3</sup> to go and  
 se yf the Gryffon returnyd to feche his<sup>4</sup> praye / when  
 day came, Huon rose and harde mas,<sup>5</sup> then he went to  
 the wyndowe and lokyd there so longe that at the laste  
 12 he sawe a farre of where the Gryffon came flyynge fro the  
 same place as he<sup>6</sup> hadde done the day before / and came  
 and sate downe on<sup>7</sup> the same maste, beholdynge the dede  
 men that laye vnder hym,<sup>4</sup> whiche of them he<sup>6</sup> myght  
 16 take to his<sup>4</sup> pray / Huon beheld hym<sup>4</sup> and sawe howe  
 he<sup>6</sup> was a crewell fowle. His<sup>4</sup> becke<sup>8</sup> was maruayl-  
 lously greate / his<sup>4</sup> eyen as great as a basyn, and more  
 redder than the mouthe of a fornays / and his<sup>4</sup> talantis  
 20 so great and so longe that ferfull it was to beholde  
 hym<sup>4</sup> / and then at last he<sup>6</sup> alyghtyd downe into the  
 shyp and toke one of the dede men<sup>9</sup> in his<sup>4</sup> talantis,  
 and so mountyd into the ayre / and flewe the same  
 24 way as he<sup>6</sup> dyd the day before. Huon behelde hym<sup>10</sup>  
 well, and sawe howe<sup>11</sup> he<sup>6</sup> flewe to the whyght rocke.  
 This rocke was callyd the rocke of Alexander / for  
 when Alexander passyd the desertys of Inde, and  
 28 wente to speke with the trees of the sonne / and of the  
 mone / he came to<sup>1</sup> y<sup>e</sup> same rocke, and at his returne  
 he baynyd<sup>12</sup> hym in a fountayne nere to the rocke, and  
 there he taryed a sartayne space and sawe there many  
 32 thynges. Now let vs leue spekyng of this rocke and  
 retourne to<sup>1</sup> Huon / who fyxed his corage / that he

He says no word  
 of his plan to his  
 companions.

The next day the  
 griffin returns  
 and seizes another  
 corpse.

Huon notices that  
 the bird is very  
 horrible to look  
 upon.

It flies away to  
 the crystal rock,  
 which is called  
 the rock of  
 Alexander,

because Alexander  
 once stayed there.

<sup>1</sup> vnto.    <sup>2</sup> and.    <sup>3</sup> Fol. ciii. back, col. 2.    <sup>4</sup> her.

<sup>5</sup> service and.    <sup>6</sup> she.    <sup>7</sup> vppon.    <sup>8</sup> necke.

<sup>9</sup> bodies.    <sup>10</sup> the Griffen.    <sup>11</sup> that.    <sup>12</sup> bathed.

determynd to be borne thens by the Gryffon, and sayde to<sup>1</sup> hymselfe that he had rather aduenture dethe then to abyde any lenger there / for he hadde so<sup>2</sup> great desire to se his wyfe and his child that he put fro hym 4 all fere of dethe.

¶ when Huon sawe that the Gryffon was gone with his<sup>3</sup> praye, he went to the<sup>4</sup> bysshop and<sup>5</sup> his company, and shewyd<sup>5</sup> them all that he had sene and thought to 8 do.<sup>6</sup> when they<sup>7</sup> harde Huon they began greatly<sup>8</sup> to wepe, and wrange theyr handys, and<sup>9</sup> tare theyr here, makynge the greatest sorowe<sup>10</sup> of<sup>11</sup> the worlde, and cryed out and sayd / 'a, cosyn,' quod the bysshop, 12 'by y<sup>e</sup> grace of god ye shall neuer take on<sup>12</sup> you suche a folye / ye ought not to seke for<sup>13</sup> your owne dethe soner then it is the pleasure of god that your owre be come; syr, for goddes sake forsake vs not / but tary 16 here with vs.' 'Frendys,' quod Huon,<sup>14</sup> 'I remembre the daunger that I lefte my wyfe, and my chylde, and my citey, and lordis, and burgesses, and comunaltye<sup>11</sup> / my harte is so sorowfull<sup>15</sup> therof,<sup>16</sup> that that it nere 20 hande sleeth me / ye shall abyde here in the sauegarde of our lord god / and I wyll take the aduenture that god wyll sende me, and I praye you<sup>17</sup> speke no more to<sup>5</sup> me in this mater.'<sup>18</sup> when they saw<sup>19</sup> they coude not 24 tourne Huon fro his enterpryse, the sorow that they made no man can declare / that nyght they passid in great sorowe and doloure / tyl<sup>20</sup> the next mornynge that Huon arose. Then he came to the bysshope, and 28 was confessyd and receyuyd<sup>21</sup> his maker<sup>21</sup> / then he dynyd wel with his companye / <sup>6</sup>then after<sup>22</sup> he went & armyd hym<sup>23</sup> in dobyll armure and with mayle on<sup>12</sup> his

Huon reveals his plan to the bishop and his company, who are very dolorous on hearing him.

The bishop declares that Huon seeks his own death.

Huon replies that his anxious fears for his wife and daughter well-nigh kill him.

Huon is resolved to carry out his device, and is confessed by the bishop.

<sup>1</sup> within.    <sup>2</sup> a.    <sup>3</sup> her.    <sup>4</sup> Fol. C.iiii. col. 1.  
<sup>5</sup> vnto.    <sup>6</sup> and.    <sup>7</sup> all had.    <sup>8</sup> pitifully.    <sup>9</sup> did.  
<sup>10</sup> and greefe.    <sup>11</sup> in.    <sup>12</sup> vppon.    <sup>13</sup> omitted.  
<sup>14</sup> when.    <sup>15</sup> and so agreed.    <sup>16</sup> thereat.    <sup>17</sup> to.  
<sup>18</sup> for, by the grace of god I will venture it.    <sup>19</sup> that.  
<sup>20</sup> vntill.    <sup>21-21</sup> at his hand.    <sup>22</sup> dinner.    <sup>23</sup> himselfe.

leggy, and helme on<sup>1</sup> his hede, and gyrte his sword  
 about hym, and when he was redy, and sawe<sup>2</sup> it was  
 tyme to departe, he toke his leue of the bysshoppe and  
 4 of all the other, and commaundyd<sup>3</sup> them <sup>4</sup>to<sup>4</sup> god.  
 when the good bysshoppe saw his departure he made  
 great sorowe, and so dyde all the other / but none of  
 them durste speke any more to<sup>5</sup> hym / the bysshoppe  
 8 embrasyd hym at his departynge, and sayde, 'cosyn,  
 in<sup>6</sup> the <sup>7</sup>sauegarde of <sup>8</sup>our lorde<sup>8</sup> Iesu chryste I  
 commende you, and that he may of his grace preserue  
 you fro all your enemyes.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'the  
 12 great desyre that I haue to ayde and socoure her  
 whome I lefte in great pouertye and dought of her lyfe  
 constrainethe me thus to departe / for yf I go not by  
 this m[ea]nes I must euer abyde here, and then <sup>9</sup>shall  
 16 I false her my promyse / and I wyll kepe my faythe  
 and<sup>9</sup> promys. Thus I recommend you to<sup>5</sup> god.'<sup>10</sup>  
 Then he departyd fro them and passyd out of the gate,  
 and went downe the stayres and went in to the shyppe,  
 20 and then he lokyd into the see and sawe where the  
 gryffon was comynge / <sup>10</sup>when he parseyued that he laye  
 downe amonge the ded men withe his sword nakyd in  
 his hande, and helde it on<sup>11</sup> his thye by cause it shulde  
 24 not fall in<sup>6</sup> the see; and as sone as he was layd  
 grouelynge<sup>12</sup> a monge the dede men, the Gryffon came  
 and <sup>13</sup>restyd on a<sup>13</sup> shyp maste as he<sup>14</sup> was acustomyd  
 to do / and he<sup>14</sup> was so heuy<sup>15</sup> that the mast <sup>16</sup>bent nye<sup>16</sup>  
 28 asonder. when Huon saw that, he was in great fere,  
 and callyd vp on our lorde Iesu chryste for ayde and

He arms himself  
 fully in strong  
 armour,  
 and takes leaue of  
 his companions.

Huon passes out  
 of the gate of the  
 castle, and down  
 the steps, and into  
 the ship.

The griffin  
 approaches,  
 and Huon lies  
 down among the  
 dead men with  
 his sword drawn.

He trembles  
 for fear,

<sup>1</sup> vpon.    <sup>2</sup> that.    <sup>3</sup> commended.

<sup>4-4</sup> all into the sauegarde of almightie.    <sup>5</sup> vnto.

<sup>6</sup> to.    <sup>7</sup> Fol. C.iiii. col. 2.

<sup>8-8</sup> almightie god and of his Sonne our Lord and Sauour.

<sup>9-9</sup> I shall breake my promise vnto her, but by the grace  
 of god I will keape my faithfull.

<sup>10</sup> and.    <sup>11</sup> vpon.    <sup>12</sup> crewling.

<sup>13-13</sup> alighted vpon the.    <sup>14</sup> she.    <sup>15</sup> and so great.

<sup>16-16</sup> was neere hand broken.



but the griffin  
seizes him,  
and its claws  
pierce his armour.

Huon suffers great  
pain,  
and prays to God  
for help.

The griffin bears  
him to the white  
rock, and, laying  
him down, goes  
to a fountain to  
drink.

Huon rises,  
and sees a forest  
at hand.

The griffin swoops  
down upon him to  
devour him,  
and Huon pre-  
pares to defend  
himself.

socoure, and to saue hym fro y<sup>e</sup> fell<sup>1</sup> Gryffon / & the  
Gryffon, lokynge for his<sup>2</sup> pray, saw where Huon lay  
armyd / wherby he semyd more greater then any of  
the other dede men / the Gryffon desyryd to haue hym 4  
to his<sup>2</sup> nest to gyue hym to<sup>3</sup> his<sup>2</sup> yonge byrdis / <sup>4</sup>so he<sup>4</sup>  
cam downe into the shyppe and toke Huon in his<sup>2</sup>  
clees, and straynyd hym so faste by bothe sydes *that* his  
clees enteryd into the flesshe for all his harnays,<sup>5</sup> so 8  
that the blode issued out, and Huon was in that  
dystresse that all his body trymbelyd, & petuously he  
callyd vpon our lorde god for ayde<sup>6</sup> / but he durst not  
stere for any payne that he felt, <sup>7</sup>the Gryffon<sup>8</sup> bare hym 12  
so hye and so far that in lesse then thre owres he<sup>9</sup> bare  
hym to y<sup>e</sup> whyght rocke / and there layde hym downe,  
and for trauayle that the gryffon had he<sup>10</sup> flewe downe  
the rocke to a fountayne to drynke / the whiche 16  
fountayne was of such great vertue that the bountye  
therof coude not be descryuyd / and Huon, who lay  
on<sup>11</sup> the rocke was sore very for faynt, for the blude  
that he had loste / <sup>12</sup>thought in<sup>13</sup> hymselfe that yf euer 20  
he wolde scape fro that daunger it was tyme for hym<sup>14</sup>  
to shewe then<sup>15</sup> his prowes / then he rose vp and lokyd  
rounde about hym / and sawe howe<sup>16</sup> there was nere  
hym a fayre foreste / then he prayed<sup>3</sup> our lorde god to 24  
ayd<sup>6</sup> hym to depart<sup>17</sup> the<sup>ns</sup> in sauegard, and that  
he myght ones<sup>18</sup> retourne into his owne countre to se  
hys wyfe and chyld, whome he so well loid, then anone  
he sawe y<sup>e</sup> gryffon / who had sene Huon ryse vp ; then 28  
she came withe her mouthe open to haue deuowryd  
Huon, who<sup>19</sup> was repenissed with hye prowes,<sup>1</sup> came  
agaynste the Gryffon who had her pawes redy open to  
haue grypyd Huon / <sup>19</sup>who was light and quycke, gaue 32

<sup>1</sup> cruel.      <sup>2</sup> her.      <sup>3</sup> vnto.      <sup>4-4</sup> and then she.  
<sup>5</sup> armour.      <sup>6</sup> and succour.      <sup>7</sup> Fol. C.iii. back, col. 1.  
<sup>8</sup> did.      <sup>9</sup> she did.      <sup>10</sup> she.      <sup>11</sup> vpon.      <sup>12</sup> he.  
<sup>13</sup> within.      <sup>14</sup> then.      <sup>15</sup> omitted.      <sup>16</sup> that.  
<sup>17</sup> from.      <sup>18</sup> againe.      <sup>19</sup> but he.

the Gryffon suche a stroke with his sworde that he  
 strake of one of his<sup>1</sup> fete by the ioynte, and so the  
 gryffon fell to the erth and gaue suche a crye that the  
 4 yonge Gryffons, beynge in theyr neste in the foreste,  
 harde the crye and knewe wel that it was the voys of  
 theyr mother / father had they none, for he was slayne  
 but a lytell before by a kynge of perce with his  
 8 archers / bycause the Gryffon had slayne the kyngys  
 horse for mete for his yong.<sup>2</sup> Thus when they hard  
 the crye of theyr mother they rose vp in to the ayre,  
 they were .v. in noubre; they came all atons with  
 12 open wyngis vpon Huon / <sup>3</sup>when he <sup>4</sup>sawe them<sup>5</sup> all .v.  
 comynge on<sup>6</sup> hym he had great fere / he strake the  
 fyrste on<sup>6</sup> the necke<sup>7</sup> that he strake of the hede clene  
 fro the body. Then the seconde seysyd Huon by the  
 16 mayle, that yf he had not stryken of his<sup>1</sup> legge he had  
 borne hym vp into the ayre / but Huon gaue hym  
 suche a stroke that the legge hangyd styll at the lap of  
 his<sup>8</sup> mayle, then<sup>3</sup> he toke it of with his hande and  
 20 caste it to the erthe / and with another stroke he slewe  
 that Gryffon / <sup>3</sup>Then came the thyrde and gaue Huon  
 suche a buffet with his wyngis that made Huon to  
 knele downe on<sup>6</sup> one of his knees / Then Huon strake  
 24 that Gryffon suche a stroke on the wyng / that it fell  
 clene fro the body. And the fourthe he strake of his  
 legges / and with another<sup>9</sup> stroke of his hed, and also  
 then he slewe the other with the one wyng / then  
 28 came the fyfthe Gryffon, who was bygger then any of  
 the other Gryffons / <sup>3</sup>then Huon strake at hym, and  
 the Gryffon resyd<sup>10</sup> vp his fete and spredde abrode his  
 wyngis, and gaue Huon suche a recountre that the noble  
 32 knyghte was stryken to the erthe; when Huon felte  
 hymselfe hurte and laye on<sup>6</sup> the erthe, he callyd vp on

He strikes off  
 one of the  
 griffin's feet,  
 and its cry of  
 pain rouses the  
 young griffins  
 in their nest.

Five in number,  
 they attack Huon,

but he with great  
 prowess slays  
 them all one  
 after another.

<sup>1</sup> her.      <sup>2</sup> ones.      <sup>3</sup> and.      <sup>4</sup> Fol. C.iiii. back, col. 2.

<sup>5</sup> omitted.

<sup>6</sup> vpon.

<sup>9</sup> stroake.

<sup>7</sup> in such sort.

<sup>8</sup> the.

<sup>10</sup> reared.

god for ayd<sup>1</sup> / for he thought<sup>2</sup> he shuld neuer haue  
 rysen more / & wysshyd hym selfe at that tyme that he  
 had taried styl in the castell of the Adamante with his  
 company, who for sorowe that they had when Huon<sup>4</sup>  
 went into the shyppe / they durst not abyde the  
 comyng of the gryffon / but went and dyd hyde them  
 selues in the castell. And Huon, who was sore  
 woundyd withe thys fyfte gryffon, rose vp as well as<sup>8</sup>  
 he myghte / and came to the Gryffon, who was redy to  
 dystroye hym with his becke and naylys. Then Huon,  
 lyke a vertuous<sup>3</sup> hardyve knyghte<sup>4</sup> toke corage, and  
 lyft vp his sword with bothe his handys, and strake the<sup>12</sup>  
 Gryffon such a stroke on<sup>5</sup> the hede that he claue it to  
 the braynes, so the Gryffon fell downe dede to the  
 erthe.

¶ Howe Huon foughte with the great gryffon<sup>16</sup>  
 & slew her. C. cxxi.



Hen Huon saw that he had slayne the  
 .v. yonge gryffons he thonkyd oure  
 lorde god for the grase that he had<sup>20</sup>  
 sent hym as to ouercome suche .v.  
 terryble beastis.<sup>6</sup> then he sate downe  
 to reste hym, and layd his sword by hym, thynkyng  
<sup>7</sup>then to be in a suerty<sup>7</sup> / but it was not longe but that<sup>24</sup>  
 the great Gryffon, who had brought hym fro the  
 castel,<sup>8</sup> came on<sup>5</sup> hym with thre fete, and betyng  
 with his wyngis /<sup>9</sup> when she saw her yonge<sup>10</sup> slayne, she cast  
 out a great cry so that all the valey range therof / when<sup>28</sup>  
 Huon sawe her comyng he was in great fere, for he was  
 sore wery with trauayle and losse of blode that it was  
 payne to sustayne hymselfe / howbeit he sawe well<sup>11</sup> it

The old griffin,  
 who was the  
 mother of the  
 birds that Huon  
 had slain, flies  
 at the knight,  
 who is weak from  
 loss of blood and  
 the heavy strife.

<sup>1</sup> and succour.

<sup>2</sup> that.

<sup>3</sup> and a.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. C.v. col. 1.

<sup>5</sup> vpon.

<sup>6</sup> foules.

<sup>7-7</sup> that they had benee all slaine.

<sup>8</sup> of the Adamant.

<sup>9</sup> and.

<sup>10</sup> ones.

<sup>11</sup> that.

was<sup>1</sup> nede to defende hymselfe / <sup>2</sup>then he came to the  
 Gryffon to haue stryken her, but he coude not, the  
 gryffon was so nere hym betynge with her wyngis so  
<sup>4</sup>fersly that Huon fell to the erthe, and his sworde fell  
 out of his handys, wherof he had great fere / for he  
 thought hymselfe in al hys lyfe neuer<sup>3</sup> so nere dethe  
 as he was then / he callyd then ryght petuously for  
<sup>8</sup>ayde<sup>4</sup> of our lord Iesu chryste / and the Gryffon<sup>5</sup> bet  
 hym merueylusly with her beke / wyngis / and talouns /  
 but the doble<sup>6</sup> cotys of mayle that he had on were <sup>7</sup>so  
 strong that the gryffon coude not breke them / but yf  
<sup>12</sup>the gryffon had not lost before one of <sup>8</sup>his fete,<sup>8</sup> and  
 loste so moche blod as he<sup>9</sup> had done, Huon coude neuer  
 a scapyd without dethe / the Gryffon so sore defowlyd  
 and bet hym that he could not <sup>10</sup>ryse vp.<sup>11</sup> Then he  
<sup>16</sup>rememberyd hym selfe how<sup>12</sup> he had by his syde a  
 rych knyfe, the whyche he brought<sup>13</sup> fro the castell of  
 the Adamant / he drew it out and ther with strake the  
 Gryffon on<sup>14</sup> the brest .vi. great strokys, euery stroke as  
<sup>20</sup>depe as the knyfe wold go / and as his hap<sup>15</sup> was this  
 knyfe was of <sup>16</sup>two fote longe,<sup>17</sup> and therwith y<sup>e</sup> Gryffon  
 fell downe ded / then Huon arose and dyde<sup>18</sup> of his helme,  
 and lyfte vp his handis to<sup>19</sup> the<sup>17</sup> heuen & thankyd<sup>20</sup>  
<sup>24</sup>god of his vyctory / <sup>2</sup>he was<sup>21</sup> sore trauaylyd and sore<sup>17</sup>  
 chargyd with blod and swete / <sup>12</sup>he dyd<sup>18</sup> of his helme,  
 and behelde rounde aboutt hym, and coude se no  
 thyng to trowble hym; when he had taryed there a  
<sup>28</sup>sartayne tyme he rose vp & lokyd downe the rocke,  
 then<sup>2</sup> he sawe a fountayne in a fayre medowe / then he  
 went downe and came thether / then<sup>2</sup> he sawe the  
 fountayne so fayre and clere *that* he had great maruayle

Huon fears that  
 he shall be kiled  
 by the monster.

Huon draws a  
 knife that he had  
 brought with him  
 from the castle,  
 and strikes the  
 bird six times in  
 the breast, so that  
 it died.

Huon is weary  
 with the fight,

and happily finds  
 a clear fountain  
 at hand.

<sup>1</sup> great.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> neuer *after* himselfe.  
<sup>4</sup> and succour.      <sup>5</sup> did.      <sup>6</sup> noble.      <sup>7</sup> Fol. C.v. col. 2.  
<sup>8-8</sup> her Legges.      <sup>9</sup> she.      <sup>10</sup> in no wise.      <sup>11</sup> againe.  
<sup>12</sup> that.      <sup>13</sup> with him.      <sup>14</sup> vpon.      <sup>15</sup> fortune.  
<sup>16</sup> length.      <sup>17</sup> *omitted*.      <sup>18</sup> put.      <sup>19</sup> vnto.  
<sup>20</sup> our lord.      <sup>21</sup> so.

White jasper with  
flowers of fine  
gold and azure  
forms its  
masonry,

and at its bottom  
is gravel of  
precious stones.

Huon drinks the  
water.

All his wounds  
heal at the first  
draught,

for the fountain  
was the fountain  
of youth, which  
cures all  
infirmities.

Huon bathes in  
the fountain.

At its side grew  
an apple-tree,

and Huon tastes  
its fruit.

Beyond he sees an  
orchard,

therof / he sawe the masonrye<sup>1</sup> therof ryche, all of  
whight Iasper wroughte rychely with flowers of fyne  
golde and Asure / <sup>2</sup>when he sawe the water so fayre he  
hade great desyre to drynke therof / then he dyd of 4  
one of his dobyll armure to be the more lyghter, and so  
aprochyd to<sup>3</sup> the fountayne / and sawe the grauell in  
the botome all of presyous stones / <sup>2</sup>then he dyde<sup>4</sup> of  
his helme and dranke of the water his fyll, and he had 8  
no soner dronke therof but incontynent he was hole of  
all his woundys, and as fresshe and lusty as he was  
when he came fro the castell of the Ada<sup>5</sup>mant, wherof  
he<sup>6</sup> thankyd our lorde<sup>7</sup> Iesu chryste. This fountayne 12  
was callyd the fountayne of youth, the whiche was of  
suche vertue that what so euer sykenes a man or  
woman had, yf they baynyd them in the streme of that  
fountayne they shulde be hole of all infyrmytyes. 16  
Then Huon vnarmyd hym and dyd<sup>4</sup> of all his clothes,  
and bathyd hymselfe in the streme to put away the  
blode and swete that his body was colouryd with all /  
<sup>2</sup>when he was clene wasshyd, then he armyd hym<sup>8</sup> 20  
agayne with one of his harnes,<sup>9</sup> and lefte<sup>10</sup> the other /  
by this fountayne there grewe an appell tree chargyd  
with leuys and frute / the fayreste that myght be  
founde / when Huon sawe the tree chargyd with so 24  
fayre frute he rose on<sup>11</sup> his fete and aprochyd to<sup>3</sup> the  
tree,<sup>12</sup> and toke therof a fayre apple and a great, & dyd  
ete therof his fyll, for the apple was great / <sup>2</sup>he  
thoughte<sup>13</sup> he neuer dyd ete before of suche a frute / 28  
'a, good lorde,' quod he, 'I ought greatly to laude &  
prayshe the, synne<sup>14</sup> thou haste<sup>15</sup> replenysshyd me this  
day with such a fountayne and suche frute.' Then he  
lokid on<sup>11</sup> his ryght hande and sawe a great orcheyarde 32

<sup>1</sup> workemanship.

<sup>2</sup> and.

<sup>3</sup> vnto.

<sup>4</sup> put.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. C.v. back, col. 1.

<sup>6</sup> most humbly.

<sup>7</sup> and Saviour.

<sup>8</sup> selfe.

<sup>9</sup> armours.

<sup>10</sup> off.

<sup>11</sup> vpon.

<sup>12</sup> tre in text.

<sup>13</sup> that.

<sup>14</sup> seeing.


<sup>15</sup> thus.



full of trees, berynge good frute of dyuers sortys, *that*  
 great beaute it was to beholde them. This gardayne  
 was so fayre that it semyd rather a paradise then a  
 4 thyng terrestriall. For out of this gardayne there  
 issuyd suche a smell and odoure *that* Huon thought  
 that all the bawlm and spycery of <sup>1</sup> the worlde coude  
 not cast out so swete a smell. 'A, good lorde,' quod  
 8 Huon, 'what place is this that I am in / for yf the  
 Gryffon had not bene here I wold haue thought<sup>2</sup> I had  
 bene in paradyse / good lorde,<sup>3</sup> ayde and socoure me  
 4so<sup>4</sup> that I be not loste nor dede.'

which cast forth  
 so sweet an odour  
 that Huon thinks  
 that all the balm  
 and spices of the  
 world could not  
 excel its sweet-  
 ness.

12 <sup>5</sup>¶ How an aungell aperyd to<sup>6</sup> Huon and  
 commaundyd hym to gather thre apples of  
 the tree by the fountayne, and no more ;  
 and how the aungell shewyd hym tidinges  
 16 of his wyfe<sup>7</sup> Esclaramonde, and of his  
 doughter Clariet / and shewed hym the  
 waye that he shulde go<sup>8</sup> thens. Ca. C.xxii.

20  Hus as ye haue harde Huon deuysyd  
 by hymselfe at the fountayne, then he  
 went agayne to the tre, and sayd  
 howe<sup>2</sup> he wolde ete of that frute, and  
 gatheryd therof as moche as shulde  
 24 suffyce hym for .vi. dayes / and in  
 that space he trustyd to come to some place where as  
 he shulde haue mete suffycyente. Thus as he was  
 goynge to<sup>9</sup> the tre warde,<sup>10</sup> sodaynely there aperyd to<sup>6</sup>  
 28 hym a lyght shynynge, that he thought he was  
 rauysshed in the<sup>10</sup> heuen amonge the aungellys / ther-  
 with he harde a voyse angelicall, that sayde / 'Huon,

Huon declares  
 that he will  
 gather enough  
 fruit to serve him  
 for six days ;

but suddenly an  
 angel appears to  
 him,

<sup>1</sup> in.    <sup>2</sup> that.    <sup>3</sup> God, I pray thee to.

<sup>4-4</sup> in all mine affaires and enterprizes, and at this time.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. C.v. back, col 2.    <sup>6</sup> vnto.    <sup>7</sup> the faire.    <sup>8</sup> from.

<sup>9</sup> towards.    <sup>10</sup> omitted.

and bids him  
gather no more  
than three  
apples.

The fruit is the  
fruit of youth:

it can cause a  
man of eighty  
years to become  
as one of thirty.

Huon promises to  
obey the angel's  
will implicitly,

and begs for  
news of his wife  
and child.

The angel recites  
the story of the  
fall of Bordeaux.

knowe for trouthe that our lorde god commaundythe  
the not to be so hardy as to gather anye more frute of  
that tre / excepte thre apples, the which god is well  
content that thou shalte gather, and no more / here 4  
after they shal serue the wel / so that thou do kepe  
them clenely & worthely as they ought to be kepte / it  
shall not be longe or<sup>1</sup> thou shalte haue great nede of  
them / the frute of this tree is callyd the frute of 8  
youth / it hathe suche vertue that yf a man of .iiii.  
score or of a .c. yerys of age do ete therof, he shall  
become agayne as yonge as he was at the age of .xxx.  
<sup>2</sup>yeres. In yonder gardayne thou mayst go and 12  
gather of the frute there<sup>3</sup> at thy pleasure, and ete  
what thou lyste. But ete no more of this tre<sup>4</sup> that  
thou haste eten of,<sup>5</sup> therfore beware<sup>6</sup> gather no more  
therof excepte the sayde thre apples / knowe for 16  
trouthe<sup>7</sup> yf thou breke my commaundemente / the  
frute shall be derely sold to<sup>8</sup> the.' 'Syr,' quod Huon,  
'lawde and prayse be<sup>9</sup> to our lorde god my creature,  
when he shewethe his grace to<sup>8</sup> me that am so pouer a 20  
synner, and that he wyll thus vyset me / I shall neuer  
consent to breke his commaundemente, I had rather  
dye.<sup>10</sup> My body and my sowle I recomende to<sup>8</sup> his  
good grace. But thou, the frende<sup>11</sup> of god, I requyre 24  
the shewe me howe dothe my wyfe Esclaramonde and  
Claryet my doughter, whome I haue lefte in my cyte  
of Burdeux, besegyed by the Emperoure Therry of  
Almayne; I haue great fere *that* they be famysshid 28  
within the cyte, and my lordis and companye that  
I lefte there with her slayne and dede.' 'Frynde,'  
quod the voyse, 'know for sartayne that the cyte of  
Burdeux is taken, and all thy men dede or taken, and 32  
thy wyfe in pryson in the great toure of Magence,

<sup>1</sup> ere.      <sup>2</sup> Fol. C.vi. col. 1.      <sup>3</sup> there *after* gather.

<sup>4</sup> *omitted*.      <sup>5</sup> and.      <sup>6</sup> I charge thee.      <sup>7</sup> that.

<sup>8</sup> vnto.      <sup>9</sup> giuen.      <sup>10</sup> then so to doe.      <sup>11</sup> Messenger.

where as the emperoure Therry kepeth her straitly, &  
thy doughter Claryet is at Cluny in y<sup>e</sup> abbey, wher as  
she is wel seruyd / and the abbot, who hathe alwayes  
4 louyd the, he hathe her in his keypyng / and she is as  
well cherysyd there<sup>1</sup> as she were his proper<sup>2</sup> doughter.  
‘Syr,’ quod Huon, ‘and whye was she brought thether?’  
‘Huon,’ quod the voice, ‘knowe well that Barnarde thy  
8 cosyne garmayne brought her thether.’ ‘Frynde,’ quod  
Huon, ‘I praye you<sup>3</sup> shewe me yf Gerames / <sup>4</sup>Othon /  
& Rychard<sup>4</sup> be alyue or not?’ ‘Frend,’ quod y<sup>e</sup> voyce,  
‘at y<sup>e</sup> takyng of y<sup>e</sup> <sup>5</sup>citye they were slayne by the  
12 Emperour.’ when Huon<sup>6</sup> harde those petyfull tydyngis  
he began tenderly to wepe, complaynyng for<sup>7</sup> Esclara-  
monde his wyfe and for the dethe of<sup>8</sup> olde Gerames, and  
sayd, ‘frynde, I requyre you<sup>3</sup> shewe me yf euer I shall  
16 scape, consydyryng that I am here closyd in with the  
see, the which goethe rounde a boughte this rocke / and  
I se no waye to go out there of / Gladly I wolde knowe  
yf euer I shall retourne into my countre to se my wyfe  
20 & doughter, who ar in great<sup>9</sup> daunger.’ ‘Huon,’ quod  
the voyce / ‘comforte thy selfe / then<sup>10</sup> shalt thou<sup>11</sup> see<sup>12</sup>  
ageyne thy wyfe esclaramond, and thy chylde<sup>13</sup> Claryet,  
and thy good citye of Burdeaux / but or<sup>14</sup> thou<sup>15</sup> come  
24 there thou shalte suffer moche payne and be in great  
fere<sup>16</sup> / the emperour Tharry hathe conqueryd all thy  
countre and Geronnell is vnder his obeysaunce with the  
citye of Burdeaux.’ Then Huon sware and made  
28 promyse that yf our lorde Iesu chryst wyll<sup>17</sup> gyue hym  
that<sup>8</sup> grace that he maye<sup>18</sup> retourne into his<sup>2</sup> countre,  
that suerly he wolde sle the emperoure Tharry, what so  
euer ende come therof. ‘Messenger of god, I requyre  
32 you<sup>3</sup> shewe me by what maner of waye I maye passe

Huon weeps over  
the death of  
Gerames,

and asks whether  
he may escape  
from the rock  
whereon he  
stands.

The angel replies  
that he shall only  
rejoin his wife  
and child after  
he has suffered  
more ill fortune.

<sup>1</sup> euen.    <sup>2</sup> owne.    <sup>3</sup> to.    <sup>4-4</sup> Richard and Othon.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. C.vi. col. 2.    <sup>6</sup> had well.    <sup>7</sup> the faire.    <sup>8</sup> the.

<sup>9</sup> feare and.    <sup>10</sup> thou.    <sup>11</sup> omitted.    <sup>12</sup> them.

<sup>13</sup> Daughter.    <sup>14</sup> ere.    <sup>15</sup> shalt.    <sup>16</sup> and danger.

<sup>17</sup> would.    <sup>18</sup> might.

The angel bids  
Huon gather  
three apples,

and follow a path  
leading to some  
clear water,

where a ship  
awaits him.

He is to let the  
ship go what  
course it will.

The angel  
departs,  
bidding Huon  
be faithful to  
Jesus Christ.

out of this rocke?' 'Huon,' quod the voyse, 'go to the sayde tree and gather the thre apples as I haue sayde to<sup>1</sup> the before, and kepe them well and clenly / for thou shalte hereafter haue so moche profyghte by 4 them that at the ende thou shalte come to<sup>1</sup> thy desyre and wyll, and shalte be out of thy great payne, troubyll, & thoughte. Take this lytell pathe that thou seeste here vpon thy ryghte hande, and so go thou 8 downe to<sup>1</sup> the fote of the rocke, and then<sup>2</sup> thou shalte fynde a fayre clere water, & theron<sup>3</sup> a fayre shyppe, enter in to it;<sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup> fyrst go into the gardayne and gather frute to serue the as long as thou shalt be in the shype / 12 then lose<sup>6</sup> the shyppe fro the chayne that it is tyed by / and let the shyppe go whether as it wyll tyll<sup>7</sup> it come to the porte where as thou shalte aryue. But be thou sure or<sup>8</sup> thou come there thou shalt be in as great fere 16 as euer thou wert in all <sup>9</sup>thy lyfe dayes,<sup>9</sup> nor thou wert neuer in so great parell / I commaunde the<sup>10</sup> to the sauegarde of our lorde Iesu chryste, I go my waye and leue the here.' Then Huon knelyd downe and held vp his 20 handis, and sayd, 'a, the<sup>11</sup> very messenger of god, I requyre the haue me recommaundyd to<sup>1</sup> my creature' / 'Huon,' quod the voyce, 'be of good comferte, for as long as thou arte trewe and faythefull thou shalt haue 24 ayde and socoure of our lorde<sup>12</sup> Iesu Chryst, and shalt attayne to thy desyres / but or<sup>13</sup> thou come therto thou shalt suffer moche payne and fere. But after, as I haue sayde, thou shalte haue welthe ynoughe and 28 exalte all thy fryndys.' Huon was glad of that the voyce had sayd to<sup>1</sup> hym / but he was in great dyspleasur in that his wyfe<sup>14</sup> Esclaramond was prysoner in the citey of Magence, and of the dethe of Gerames and of 32

<sup>1</sup> vnto.      <sup>2</sup> there.      <sup>3</sup> therevpon.      <sup>4</sup> but.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. C.vi. back, col. 1.      <sup>6</sup> vnloose.      <sup>7</sup> vntill.

<sup>8</sup> before.      <sup>9-9</sup> the dayes of thy life.      <sup>10</sup> in.      <sup>11</sup> thou.

<sup>12</sup> and Sauour.      <sup>13</sup> ere.      <sup>14</sup> the faire.

other his lordis and seruautys / and sayd to hymselfe,  
 'yf he<sup>1</sup> maye the emperoure shall derely abyte that  
 bargayne.' Then Huon went to the gardayne and  
 4 gatheryd frute to bere into the shyppe. <sup>2</sup>Then he wente  
 to the fountayne, where as the tree of youthe was therby /  
 and then<sup>3</sup> by the commaundement of the Aungell he  
 gatheryd thre apples / and trussyd them sauely ; and  
 8 then he dranke of the fountayne at his pleasure. Then  
 he departyd and toke the litell pathe, the whiche was  
 betwene the gardayne and the streme that <sup>4</sup>issuyd out  
 of the fountayne / the whyche streme ran and fell into  
 12 the great ryuer where as the shyppe laye ; and when he  
 was enteryd into this streme he sawe y<sup>e</sup> goodlyest  
 presyous stonys that euer he sawe, they were so fayre  
 and so ryche that the value<sup>5</sup> coude not be estemyd, the  
 16 grauell of the streme that issuyd out of the fountayne  
 were all precyous stonys, and they cast such lyght that  
 al the mountayne and rocke dyd shyne therof, wherof  
 Huon had great maruayle. Also he sawe the shyppe  
 20 so fayre that he was therof <sup>6</sup>abasshyd / the ryuer ioynyd  
 to the ryche gardayne where as Huon had gatheryd  
 fryte of .xiiii. sortys, the which he put into the  
 shyppe / <sup>2</sup>then recommaundyng hymselfe to our lord<sup>7</sup>  
 24 Iesu chryst he enteryd in to the shyppe, and vntyed  
 the shyppe fro the chayne, then the shyp departyd fro  
 that porte / this ryuer was callyd Dyplayre. Thus the  
 shyp went as faste as thoughe a byrde had flowen.  
 28 <sup>2</sup>Thus as ye haue harde Huon sayld al alonge in this  
 shyp on<sup>8</sup> the ryuer of Dyplayre / ryght desyrous to  
 brynge out of danger his wyfe the fayre<sup>9</sup> Esclaramond.

Huon gathers the  
three apples.

He follows the  
path, which runs  
by a stream full of  
precious stones.

At the end of it  
he sees a richly-  
garnished ship,

and enters  
within it.

The ship passes  
very rapidly  
down a great  
river, called  
Dyplare.

<sup>1</sup> I.    <sup>2</sup> and.    <sup>3</sup> there.    <sup>4</sup> Fol. C.vi. back, col. 2.  
<sup>5</sup> of them.    <sup>6</sup> greatly dismayed and.    <sup>7</sup> and Sauour.  
<sup>8</sup> vppon.    <sup>9</sup> Ladie.



¶ Howe Huon of Burdeaux saylyd in a ryche shyp, and of the perelous goulfe that he passed by, and how he aryued at the porte of the great cite of Thauris in<sup>1</sup> Perse. 4

Ca. Cxxiii.

Huon's ship  
was richly  
bedecked with  
gold and ivory.



A cabin within it  
was roofed with  
gold and  
precious stones,  
which shone  
brightly through  
the night.

Huon sailed alone  
between rocks,

and saw no town  
nor human being.

After three days'  
journeying,  
the rocks ahead  
appear to close  
above him and  
form a dark  
passage.

Huon enters the  
passage, where all  
is black.  
The wind rises,  
and the air  
grows cold.

Hus as ye haue hard was Huon<sup>2</sup> on this ryche ryuer in his shyp, the whiche was broderyd with whyght<sup>3</sup> Iuory & naylyd with nayles of fyne gold / & the fore castell of whyght crystal medelyd with ryche cassydony, & therin a chambre, the selynge<sup>3</sup> with sterres of gold<sup>12</sup> & presyous<sup>4</sup> stones / the whiche gaue suche clerenesse in the darke nyght as thoughe it hadde bene fayre day / and the bed that Huon laye on<sup>2</sup> / there is no humayne tonge can esteme the valewe therof / therin lay Huon<sup>16</sup> euery nyghte, and in the daye<sup>5</sup> abrode in the shyppe / it was noyfull<sup>6</sup> to hym for that he was alone without company / & saylyd euery daye betwene two rockys without syght of any towne or vyllage, or<sup>7</sup> man or<sup>20</sup> woman / when he had bene in this shyppe thre dayes and thre nyghtis he behelde before hym and sawe howe y<sup>e</sup> two rockis began to draw together and to<sup>7</sup> couer the ryuer, and it semyd to<sup>8</sup> his syght that the shyppe<sup>24</sup> shulde enter into a darkenes; howbeit, the ryuer euer styll kepte his brede / but the nerer he came y<sup>e</sup> darker the passage semyd; and when the shyppe came nere<sup>8</sup> it she went so fast that Huon thoughte<sup>9</sup> no byrde in the<sup>28</sup> worlde coud flye so fast / <sup>10</sup>then it began to be sore blacke and darke, and y<sup>e</sup> wynde rose, and<sup>11</sup> haylyd so extremely that he thought the shyppe shulde<sup>12</sup> perysshe<sup>12</sup> / and Huon was so colde that he wist not how to get<sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> of.      <sup>2</sup> vpon.      <sup>3</sup> wrought.      <sup>4</sup> Fol. cvii. col. 1.  
<sup>5</sup> came.      <sup>6</sup> yrkesome.      <sup>7</sup> omitted.      <sup>8</sup> vnto.      <sup>9</sup> that.  
<sup>10</sup> and.      <sup>11</sup> it.      <sup>12-12</sup> haue perished.

- any hete. Then he hard petuous<sup>1</sup> voyces spekyng  
 dyuers languages, cursynge the tyme that euer they  
 were borne. Then he harde thonder and saw lyghtenyng  
 4 so often / that certaynely he thoughte to<sup>2</sup> be perysshed  
 and <sup>3</sup>lost.<sup>3</sup> Thus Huon was in this shyppe in great  
 fere of lesynge of his lyfe / <sup>4</sup>when he was hungerid  
 then he dyd ete of the frute that he had brought  
 8 thether / then agayne he was comfortyd in that the  
 aungel had sayd to<sup>5</sup> hym that he shuld se againe his  
 wyfe<sup>6</sup> & his doughter Claryet. when he had bene in  
 this case the space of thre dayes he sate downe on<sup>7</sup> the  
 12 see bourde of the shyppe / <sup>4</sup>then he harde suche a brute  
 so great and so hor<sup>8</sup>ryble that yf the thonder had fallen  
 fro the heuen, and that all the ryuers of<sup>9</sup> the world had  
 fallen downe fro the rockes / <sup>10</sup>coud not haue made so  
 16 hydeouse anyoyse / as the tempest made<sup>11</sup> of the Goulfe  
 the whiche is betwene the see of perse and y<sup>e</sup> great  
 see occyan: it was neuer hard that euer any shyp or  
 galey scapyd that way without perysshynge / when  
 20 Huon saw hymselfe in that daunger deuoutely he  
 callyd to<sup>7</sup> our lorde god, and sayde / 'a, <sup>12</sup>very god,<sup>12</sup>  
 nowe I see and parseyue that without <sup>13</sup>recoer<sup>13</sup> I am  
 loste and come to my end / but syn<sup>14</sup> it is your pleasure  
 24 and wyl that I shall perysshe, here I requyre<sup>15</sup> your  
 benyuolent grace to accept my sowle in to your<sup>16</sup>  
 handys.' Huon had no soner spoken those wordys  
 but a wynde arose with so great a tempest that <sup>17</sup>Huon  
 28 went<sup>17</sup> then suerly to haue bene <sup>18</sup>lost.<sup>18</sup> Then he sawe  
 comynge agaynst hym great barres of Iron red hote, that  
 fell downe fro <sup>19</sup>aloft<sup>19</sup> in to the ryuer before Huon,  
 in suche wyse<sup>20</sup> that when they fell into the water, by

Voices are heard  
 cursing their  
 ill fortune,

and Huon despairs  
 of his life.

For three days  
 all is unchanged,

but at length a  
 thunderous noise  
 is heard of  
 falling waters.

Huon believes  
 his end to be  
 near,  
 and prays to God  
 for aid.

A great tempest  
 arises,

and great bars of  
 red-hot iron  
 approach the  
 ship,

<sup>1</sup> pitifull.      <sup>2</sup> haue bene.

<sup>3-3</sup> and neuer to haue escaped out of that danger.      <sup>4</sup> and.

<sup>5</sup> vnto.      <sup>6</sup> Escleremond.      <sup>7</sup> vpon.      <sup>8</sup> Fol. cvii. col. 2.

<sup>9</sup> in.      <sup>10</sup> they.      <sup>11</sup> made after Goulfe.

<sup>12-12</sup> good lord.      <sup>13-13</sup> thy ayd and succour.      <sup>14</sup> seeing.

<sup>15</sup> beseech.      <sup>16</sup> fauourable.      <sup>17</sup> hee thought.

<sup>18-18</sup> cast away.      <sup>19-19</sup> on high.      <sup>20</sup> sorte.

but they fall  
hissing into the  
river, and do not  
touch the vessel.

reason of the hete of the barres, trowbelyd so the water  
that ferfull it was to beholde.<sup>1</sup> Thus was<sup>2</sup> Huon a  
great space / or<sup>3</sup> he coude passe the Goulfe, the whiche  
was so perelous / and the shyppe wente so sore by force <sup>4</sup>  
of the wynde / so that the shyppe wente out of the  
myddes of the streme, and so<sup>4</sup> was nere to the lond so  
that the shyppe<sup>5</sup> coude go no further.

The ship runs  
aground in five  
feet of water.

¶ when Huon sawe and parsayuyd that the shyppe <sup>8</sup>  
was vpon the grounde, he thought then suerly to haue  
bene drownyd. Then he toke an ancre and put it into  
the water to knowe how manye fote the water was of  
deppenesse. Then<sup>6</sup> <sup>7</sup>he founde it but v. fote. Then <sup>12</sup>  
he toke one of his ancrs and caste it a londe<sup>8</sup> & then  
drewe by the corde tyll<sup>9</sup> the shyppe came nere to the  
banke syde / then he Issued out of the shyppe and  
lepte a londe / <sup>6</sup>then he saw sodaynely a bought hym a <sup>16</sup>  
great clerenes wherof he was<sup>10</sup> abasshed, and wyst not  
what to thynke / then he sawe before hym<sup>11</sup> all the  
grauell in the water were medelyd<sup>12</sup> with presyous  
stones / <sup>6</sup>when Huon sawe that / he toke a scope and <sup>20</sup>  
cast into the shyppe so moche of those presyous stonys  
that it gaue as great a light as thoughe .x. torchys hade  
bene brynnynge / so moch of this grauell Huon dyd  
cast into the shyppe that he was wery of laboure / and <sup>24</sup>  
when he saw the shyp suffycyently chargyd / then he  
enteryd agayne and drewe vp the ancre, and traueyld  
so sore that he broughte agayne the shyppe into the  
myddis of the streme, then the shyppe went so faste <sup>28</sup>  
that a byrd could not haue folowid it. Thus he was .x.  
dayes or<sup>13</sup> he coude passe that Goulfe / <sup>6</sup>thus day and  
nyght he saylid, and<sup>14</sup> great fere and sore opressyd for  
<sup>15</sup>famyne,<sup>15</sup> for he had no thyng to ete<sup>16</sup> but frewte, so <sup>32</sup>

Huon draws the  
ship to land,  
and leaps out.

He finds the  
gravel to be of  
precious stones,  
and casts some of  
them into his  
ship;

they shine as  
brightly as ten  
torches.

Huon launches  
his vessel again,

and travels on in  
mid stream as  
quickly as a  
bird.

He has no food

<sup>1</sup> it.      <sup>2</sup> was *after* Huon.      <sup>3</sup> before.      <sup>4</sup> omitted.  
<sup>5</sup> was grounded and.      <sup>6</sup> And.      <sup>7</sup> Fol. cvii. back, col. 1.  
<sup>8</sup> shoare.      <sup>9</sup> vntill.      <sup>10</sup> greatly dismayed and.      <sup>11</sup> that.  
<sup>12</sup> mingled.      <sup>13</sup> before.      <sup>14</sup> with.  
<sup>15-15</sup> through hunger and thirst.      <sup>16</sup> nor drinke.

that therby he was waxed so feble *that* he coud scant<sup>1</sup>  
 sustayne hymselfe on<sup>2</sup> his fete / and on<sup>2</sup> the .xi. daye  
 at the sonne rysynge he sawe apere the clerenes of the  
 4 day lyght, and then he was out of the darkenes  
 & enteryd into the see of perse, the whiche was so  
 plesaunt and peasable that great pleasure it was to  
 beholde it / <sup>3</sup>then y<sup>e</sup> son rose and spred abrode his  
 8 stremis<sup>4</sup> vpon the see, wherof Huon was so ioyfull / as  
 though he had neuer felt payne nor fere. Then a fare  
 of before hym<sup>5</sup> he sawe apere a<sup>6</sup> great citye / and in  
 the hauen ther of there were so many shyppes and  
 12 galyes *that* theyr mastys semyd to be a great<sup>7</sup> forest,  
 wherof Huon had such ioy at his harte that he knelid  
 downe lyfitynge vp his handis to<sup>8</sup> the<sup>9</sup> heuen,<sup>10</sup> thank-  
 ynge our lorde god that he hadde sauyd hym fro this  
 16 perelous Goulfe. This citye was called y<sup>e</sup> great citye  
 of Thauris in Perse / and<sup>11</sup> lorde therof was a pusaunte  
 admyrall / who had made to be cryed<sup>12</sup> and puplysshed /  
 that all maner of marchauntys by londe or by see that  
 20 wolde come to his citye shulde haue free goynge and  
 free comynge without let or disturbaunce other in the<sup>13</sup>  
 bodyes or goodys, whether they were chrysten men or  
 Sarasyns / so that yf they lost the worthe of a peny  
 24 they shuld haue agayne .iiii. <sup>14</sup>for it<sup>14</sup> / and the same  
 tyme that Huon came and aryuyd at that porte was the  
 daye of theyr free feaste / wherfore there was so  
 moche people of dyuers landys that they coude not  
 28 well be nomberyd / when Huon was come into the  
 porte he caste his ancre nere to<sup>8</sup> the land<sup>15</sup> syde, and  
 was ryght ioyfull when he saw<sup>16</sup> that he was on<sup>2</sup> the  
 ferme londe. <sup>3</sup>Then he had great desyre to know in

but the fruit he  
 had gathered at  
 the angel's  
 behest.

At length the  
 perilous gulf is  
 passed and the  
 sea of Persia  
 entered.

A great city comes  
 into sight afar off,  
 with a large  
 harbour full of  
 ships.

It was the city  
 of Thauris in  
 Persia,

and the admiral  
 of the city  
 allowed ships of  
 all countries to  
 tarry in his port.

Huon casts  
 anchor, and  
 lands.

<sup>1</sup> scarce.    <sup>2</sup> vpon.    <sup>3</sup> and.    <sup>4</sup> and spheares.

<sup>5</sup> appear before him *after* sawe.    <sup>6</sup> faire.

<sup>7</sup> Fol. cvii. back, col. 2.    <sup>8</sup> vnto.    <sup>9</sup> omitted.

<sup>10</sup> and humbly.    <sup>11</sup> the.    <sup>12</sup> proclaimed.    <sup>13</sup> their.

<sup>14-15</sup> times the value thereof.    <sup>15</sup> banke.

<sup>16</sup> himself.

what plase he was aryued in.<sup>1</sup> Now <sup>2</sup>leue we<sup>2</sup> speking  
of <sup>3</sup>Huon tyll tyme shall be to retourne therto<sup>3</sup> agayne.

¶ Howe syr Barnarde departyd fro the abbey  
of Cluny and went to seke for Huon his <sup>4</sup>  
cosyn, whom he founde at the porte of the  
great citey of Thauris. Ca. C.xxiiii.

Barnard de-  
livered Huon's  
daughter Clariet  
to the good abbot  
of Cluny,

and tarried with  
him eight days.

The faithful  
knight laments  
the misfortunes  
of his lord and  
his lord's wife.



<sup>4</sup> e haue hard here before how after the  
takyng of Burdeaux, Barnard, who was <sup>8</sup>  
cosyn to<sup>5</sup> Huon, had borne Clariet,  
Huons chylde, in to Burgoyne, and  
delyueryd her to be kepte with y<sup>e</sup>  
good abbot of Cluny. After that Barnarde had taryed <sup>12</sup>  
there the space of .viii. dayes he was wery<sup>6</sup> there, and  
on<sup>7</sup> a daye he sayd to<sup>5</sup> the abbot, 'A, Syr, I wold at  
the takynge of Burdeaux I had bene slayne with my  
cosyn Gerames, for when I remembre my good lord <sup>16</sup>  
Huon, my hart fayleth me in suche wyse that it is  
great payne for me to bere the sorowe that I endure /  
and after<sup>8</sup> when I remembre the duches Esclaramonde  
his wyfe, who endurethe suche mesery that it is petye <sup>20</sup>  
to thynke therof, dowbeleth <sup>9</sup>my sorowe.<sup>9</sup> Alas, what  
shall Huon say yf he retourne and fynd his citey  
taken, his men taken and dystroyed / and his wyfe in  
prysone in great <sup>10</sup>myserye and pouertye;<sup>10</sup> I fere me<sup>11</sup> <sup>24</sup>  
he shall<sup>12</sup> dye for sorowe. Alas, I se all that I haue  
is loste for the loue of Hu<sup>13</sup>on my lorde / for the whiche  
I care lytel for, yf he be in sauetye alyue, and that he  
may retourne agayne / & I am in great dyspleasure <sup>28</sup>

<sup>1</sup> and whether he was arriued at a good Port or no.

<sup>2-2</sup> now lette vs leaue.

<sup>3-3</sup> the good duke Huon vntill wee haue occasion to  
retourne vnto him.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. cviii. col. 1.

<sup>5</sup> vnto.

<sup>6</sup> with being.

<sup>7</sup> vpon.

<sup>8</sup> afterward.

<sup>9-9</sup> the sorowe and grefe that I haue at my heart.

<sup>10-10</sup> pouertie and miserie.

<sup>11</sup> that.

<sup>12</sup> wyll.

<sup>13</sup> Fol. cviii. col. 2.



- that we can here no newes of hym neuer<sup>1</sup> syn he departyd fro Burdeaux / I shall neuer rest as longe as I lyue tyll<sup>2</sup> I haue founde hym, or harde som sartayne  
 4 newes of him' / 'cosyn,' quod the abbot / 'yf ye wyll enter into this enquest ye shuld do me great pleasure, and for the great desyre that I haue had that ye shuld do<sup>3</sup> this vyage, I wyll gyue you a thousande florences  
 8 towardes youre Iorneye.' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde, 'I thanke you.' Then the abbot delyueryd hym the money, and Barnarde made hym redy to departe the nexte daye / and so he dyd, and toke leue of the abbot  
 12 and departyd, & rested not tyll<sup>2</sup> he came to Venys / wher as he founde Galeyes redy to go to the holy sepulture, wherof he was<sup>4</sup> ioyful; and so sayld forth tyll<sup>2</sup> they came to porte Iaffe, where as he wente a  
 16 londe<sup>5</sup> with other pylgremes / and euer as he passyd by the other portis he euer demaundyd for Huon / but he coude neuer fynde any man that coude shewe to<sup>6</sup> hym any maner of newes of hym. <sup>7</sup>Then he departyd  
 20 fro<sup>8</sup> porte Iaffe and wente to<sup>6</sup> Ierusalem, where as he taryed .viii. dayes. Then when he had done his pylgrymage he toke forthe his iourney vnto Kayre in Babylone / and when he came to Gasere, whiche  
 24 standethe at the enterynge of the desartys, he met with many merchauntes who were goynge to the fre feast which was holden in the great citye of Thauris. Then he thought to demaunde of them whether so moche  
 28 people were goyng, and al in one companye / and he spake to<sup>6</sup> a marchaunt of Geanes, & demandid of hym whether <sup>9</sup>so moche people wente together in one companye / for they were to the nombre of .vi. score  
 32 marchantis chrysten<sup>10</sup> and hethen. <sup>11</sup>Then the marchante sayde / 'syr, as me thynke by you ye are of the

He longs to know  
the fate of Huon.

The abbot  
encourages  
Barnard to seek  
out his lord.

Barnard sets out  
and reaches Jaffa,

and travelling  
to other ports,  
makes inquiry of  
Huon in vain.

At Jerusalem he  
tarries eight days,

and visits Cairo  
in Babylon.

At Gazir he finds  
many merchants  
setting out for  
Tauris.

<sup>1</sup> omitted.    <sup>2</sup> vntill.    <sup>3</sup> goe.    <sup>4</sup> right.    <sup>5</sup> shoare.

<sup>6</sup> vnto.    <sup>7</sup> and.    <sup>8</sup> the.    <sup>9</sup> Fol. cviii. back, col. 1.

<sup>10</sup> men.    <sup>11</sup> hee.

A free feast,  
Barnard learns  
from a Genoese  
merchant, is to  
be given at Tauris  
to all comers by  
land or sea,  
Christian or  
Saracen.

Barnard is  
induced to set out  
for Tauris.

For eight days  
Barnard makes  
fruitless search  
for Huon in the  
city of Tauris.

One day, how-  
ever, a very rich  
ship in the  
harbour attracts  
his attention.

countre of Fraunce, I shall shewe you whether we go ;  
syr, within this .viii. dayes the fre feste shalbe at the  
great citey of Thauris, wher as ther shall come a great  
nombre of marchantys as well chrysten<sup>1</sup> as Sarasyns, **4**  
as well by londe as by see / & there is no thyng  
in this mortal world but there ye shall fynde it / and  
here of al maner of newes / fro all the partyes of y<sup>e</sup>  
worlde. Now I haue shewyd you whether we are **8**  
goynge, I praye you shewe me whether ye wolde go  
and whome ye do seke for?' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde,  
'know for trouthe I am of the realme of Fraunce, and  
I do seke for a knyghte who is lorde of Burdeaux, who<sup>2</sup> **12**  
is callyd Huon, and it is long syn I departyd out of my  
countre, & I coude neuer here any thyng of his lyfe  
nor dethe.' 'Syr,' quod the Genouoys, 'yf euer ye  
shall here of hym / yf ye wyll beleue me ye shall go **16**  
with vs in to the realme of Perce to the fre feste at the  
citey of Thaurys.' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde, 'in a good  
owre I haue met with you / I shall not leue your  
company tyll<sup>3</sup> ye come there, to se yf god wyll send **20**  
me so good a<sup>4</sup> fortune to fynde hym that I seke for.'  
Then the marchauntis depart<sup>5</sup> and rode<sup>6</sup> to gether  
tyll<sup>3</sup> they came to<sup>7</sup> the<sup>8</sup> citey of Thauris / and  
when they were logyd / they went a boughte theyr **24**  
marchandyse where as they lyste / thus Barnarde was  
.viii. dayes in the citey goyng here & there, euer  
enquyryng newes for that he sought for; and on<sup>9</sup> a  
daye he went downe to the porte to<sup>7</sup> the see syde **28**  
where as many shyppes<sup>10</sup> laye at ancre, & <sup>11</sup>as he lokyd  
about he saw nere to the see-syde a lytell proper  
vessell marueylusly fayre / and the nerer he came<sup>12</sup> the  
fayrer and rycher it semid / for he saw great clerenes **32**  
and shynyng within it by reason of the ryche stonys

<sup>1</sup> men.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> vntill.      <sup>4</sup> omitted.      <sup>5</sup> departed.  
<sup>6</sup> all.      <sup>7</sup> vnto.      <sup>8</sup> great.      <sup>9</sup> vpon.  
<sup>10</sup> and Galleys.      <sup>11</sup> Fol. cviii, back, col. 2.      <sup>12</sup> vnto it.

that were there,<sup>1</sup> wherof he had great maruayle, and specially bycause he saw within the shyppe but one man clene armyd / he wyste not what to thynke / but  
 4 he thought<sup>2</sup> he was chrystenyd; then he aprochyd<sup>3</sup> to the shyp and saluted Huon, and sayd / 'syr, god gyue you good aduenture, for me thynke ye be a chrysten man' / 'frend,' quod Huon, 'god saue the.  
 8 Me thynke by thy speche that thou werthe borne in the good countre of Fraunce, by reason<sup>2</sup> thou spekest frenche, for I haue great ioy when I here that language spoken / and frynde I requyre the<sup>4</sup> shew me where  
 12 thou wert borne and what thou sekyste for here?' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde, 'syn<sup>5</sup> ye wyll knowe of my busynes, I shall shew you as he *that* is ryght sorowefull and heuy, and lytell shall ye wyn therby when ye do  
 16 know it; but syn<sup>5</sup> it is your pleasure, I shall shew you the trouthe. Syr, I was borne in the good citeye of Burdeaux / where as I haue left my howse and herytage / to seke for my good lorde, sumtyme lorde of  
 20 the same citeye / and he was callyd duke Huon, who went fro Burdeaux to seke for some socours whylles the citeye was besegyed / & so it is my lord Huon retournyd not, nor it can not be knowen where he is becom, and  
 24 bycause the citeye at his departynge was besegyed by the emperour of ahmayne, and the citeye but yll furnysshyd with vitayle to mayntayne it longe; and also it was so sore beten with engyns that y<sup>e</sup> emperour wan the  
 28 citeye parforce / & slew all those that my lorde Huon had lefte <sup>6</sup>there excepte .iii.c., the whiche were taken presoners by the emperoure and led into the citeye of Magence, with the noble duchesse Esclaramonde,  
 32 wyfe to<sup>7</sup> my<sup>8</sup> lorde Huon, and she is kepte in a straye prison, where as she vseth<sup>9</sup> her dayes myserably, wherof

Within it is one knight, whom he salutes, although he knows him not to be Huon himself.

Huon at once recognizes the speaker to be a Frenchman, but does not perceive who he is.

Barnard, at Huon's request, relates the causes of his journeying.

He recites the fall of Bordeaux.

<sup>1</sup> therein.    <sup>2</sup> that.    <sup>3</sup> neere.    <sup>4</sup> to.    <sup>5</sup> seeing.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. cix. col. 1.

<sup>7</sup> vnto.

<sup>8</sup> good.

<sup>9</sup> spendeth.

Huon recognizes Barnard, but sorrow overwhelms him so that he cannot speak to him.

He weeps as he thinks of Barnard's faithful service.

Barnard, still failing to recognize Huon, asks him if he has heard news of his lord,

my harte is in suche sorowe<sup>1</sup> that when I remembre<sup>2</sup> it  
 my hart fayleth me<sup>3</sup> / when Huon had well harde<sup>3</sup>  
 Barnarde he knewe hym wel; but he had no powre to  
 speke any word to<sup>4</sup> hym, his harte was so full of 4  
 sorowe<sup>1</sup> for that his cosyn Barnarde had shewyd hym,  
 and y<sup>e</sup> chefe<sup>5</sup>. sorowe was for the trowbyl of his wyfe<sup>6</sup>  
 Esclaramonde, who was in<sup>7</sup> parell of deth. Thus Huon  
 was a great space and coude speke no word for sorow,<sup>1</sup> 8  
 and wyste not what to do. <sup>8</sup>Also he sawe hys cosy[n]<sup>9</sup>  
 Barnarde, who had taken great payne to serche for  
 hym / wherby<sup>10</sup> he had suche petye that the terys fell  
 fro his eyen. ¶ when Barnarde behelde<sup>11</sup> that the 12  
 knyght gaue hym none answeere / & saw vnder the  
 ventayle of his helme the terys of water fell downe fro  
 his eyen, he was therof so<sup>12</sup> abasshid that he wyst not  
 what to saye. Then he sayd, 'syr, me thyn[k]e<sup>13</sup> ye ar 16  
 a chrysten man / and bycause I se and parseyue in you  
 that ye ar a man that hathe bene in many placys and  
 cuntrees, therefore I desyre you to shewe me yf ye harde  
 euer any maner of spekinge of my<sup>14</sup> lorde Huon duke of 20  
 Burdeaux / whome I haue sought for in many cuntres,  
 bothe by londe and by se, & I could neuer here any  
 sartayne tydynges of him, wherof I am ryght sorry /  
 for yf I canne here no worde of hym by you I wyll 24  
 neuer hope more to haue any knowlege of hym / for<sup>15</sup>  
 I thynke I shulde<sup>16</sup> haue some knowlege by you yf he  
 be aliuie / for yf I knowe no thyng by you I wyll  
 neuer <sup>17</sup>seke hym further / but I wyll go into som<sup>18</sup> 28  
 deserte to<sup>4</sup> some solytary place, and there to do penaunce  
 and to praye to<sup>4</sup> god for my good lorde Huon, and to  
 pardon me of all my<sup>19</sup> offences / and I requyre you in

<sup>1</sup> and greefe. <sup>2-2</sup> them, it neere hand slayeth my heart.

<sup>3</sup> and vnderstood. <sup>4</sup> vnto. <sup>5</sup> cheefest of his.

<sup>6</sup> the faire Lady. <sup>7</sup> great. <sup>8</sup> and. <sup>9</sup> cosyd in text.

<sup>10</sup> whereof. <sup>11</sup> saw. <sup>12</sup> dismayed and.

<sup>13</sup> thynde in text. <sup>14</sup> good. <sup>15</sup> omitted. <sup>16</sup> shall.

<sup>17</sup> Fol. cix. col. 2. <sup>18</sup> a. <sup>19</sup> sinnes and.

- the name of our lorde<sup>1</sup> Iesu chryst<sup>2</sup> shew me what ye be, and where ye were borne, and fro whence ye come, *that* hath brought in your shyppe so great rychesse /
- 4 for I knowe sartaynly that in all Fraunce can not be founde the value of so great a<sup>3</sup> ryches. Nor the pusaunte Charlemagne coude neuer assemble together suche a<sup>3</sup> ryches as ye haue in your shyppe.' when
- 8 Huon harde Barnarde, he sayde / 'frend, I haue great maruayle of that I here you saye / for in my shyppe I know nother golde nor syluer nor none other thyng but my body and myne armure.' 'Syr,' quod Barnarde,
- 12 'beware what ye saye / for y<sup>e</sup> riches that I see in your shyp, yf ye wyll selle it ye maye fyll agayne your shyppe with money ; if ye wyll byleue me the treasure and ryches that ye haue brought in your shyppe, the
- 16 valur therof can not be estemyd' / when Huon harde that he had great maruayle, and was ryght ioyful / then he lokyd downe into the botome of the shyppe and sawe the ryche stonys there llynge amonge y<sup>e</sup>
- 20 grauell, the whiche he neuer toke hede therof<sup>4</sup> before / for when he dyd caste it in to hys shyp he thought all had bene but grauell to balayse his shyp withal that it myght sayle the more suerlyer. Then Barnarde sayde,
- 24 'syr, I pray you hyde it not fro me / wher haue ye had this great treasure, and in what countre ? all the stonys that be there I knowe the vertue of them all / for syn I came out of my cuntre I was a hole yere with y<sup>e</sup>
- 28 beste lapidary and knower of stones that was in all the<sup>5</sup> world / and he taught me his scyens ; syr, suerly the place wheras ye had them in is of great dygnite.' Frend,' quod Huon, 'I shall shew you the trouthe /
- 32 fortune brought me by the goulfe of Perse, where as I sufferyd moche payne & troubyll / but thankyd be god / I scapyd fro that hard aduenture, the force of the

and what is his own name, and whence he came to Tauris.

He marvels at the riches in Huon's ship.

Huon had not before perceived that the gravel he had cast into his ship for ballast was all of precious stones.

Barnard anxiously inquires the place where they were obtained.

Huon relates his recent wanderings.

<sup>1</sup> and sauour.    <sup>2</sup> to.    <sup>3</sup> omitted.    <sup>4</sup> of.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. cix. back, col. 1.



wynd that cam out of the Goulfe draue my shyppe out of the streme / to the lande / and when I sawe I was so nere the londe I went out of the shyp, and toke a scopet & ther with<sup>1</sup> dyd cast in of the grauell<sup>2</sup> by the 4 see syde to balayse ther-with<sup>3</sup> my shyppe / not knowinge that any presyous stonys had bene amonge the grauell; and when I thought I had caste in suffycient I enteryd agayne into my shyppe, and so sayld forthe more 8 suerlyer then I dyd before / there I had these stonys that be in this shyp, the whiche ye say be of so great value.' 'Syr,' quod Barnard, 'I pray you wherfore serueth yonder fote of a great fowle or beast that I se 12 hang yonder in your shyp, I can not tel whether it be of a fowle or of a dragon / for it is a ferfull thyng to beholde.' 'Frynde,' quod Huon, 'anone I shall shewe you / but fyrste I praye you shewe me what vertue & 16 bounte ar in these stonys the whiche ye haue so moche praysyd / and also to shewe me to<sup>4</sup> whome this noble citey partaynethe?' 'Syr,' quod Barnard, 'this citey is callyd Thauris, wherof is lorde a ryche admyrall, who 20 is lord of all Perce and of Mede, who when he shall be aduerteysyd of your comynge hether, he wyll haue of you trybute as he hathe of other marchauntis / and as for your stonys, two of them that I se yonder, and yf ye 24 gyue them for your trybute he shall be well contente / and, syr, I shall ayde you in youre mar<sup>5</sup>chandyse to the best of my powre / the admyrall is a noble man in his lawe, and of great credence.' 'Frend,' quod Huon, 28 'I thanke you for the curtesy that ye shew me / but, syr, I praye you shew me the stones that be of<sup>6</sup> moche vertue, I wold haue the best layde aparte fro the other.' when Barnard harde howe Huon desyryd hym 32 to shewe the vertue of the stonys / then specyally he shewyd Huon .vi. stonys, and he drewe them out

Barnard perceives in the ship the foot of a great beast, and asks how it came there.

And he replies to Huon's questions as to the name and government of the city wherat they tarry.

Barnard points out to Huon the precious stones of

<sup>1</sup> I.      <sup>2</sup> that lay.      <sup>3</sup> therwith *after* shyppe.


<sup>4</sup> vnto.      <sup>5</sup> Fol. cix. back, col. 2.      <sup>6</sup> so.

fro the reste and layd them vpon Huons shyld, and so  
 chase out .xxx. other / and shewyd them all to<sup>1</sup> Huon,  
 and sayd, 'syr, these .xxx. stonys that I haue layd on<sup>2</sup>  
 4 your shyld ar of so great value that there is nother  
 kynge nor emperoure that can paye the value of them,  
 and specyally of .v. of them.'<sup>3</sup> when Huon harde that  
 he was ioyful. Then he wold no lenger hyde hymselfe  
 8 fro Barnarde, and also bycause of the great hete that he  
 was in he dyd<sup>4</sup> of his helme / the whiche he kepte on  
 all that season bycause he wold fyrst know of Barnarde  
 some tydyngs or he wold be knowen to<sup>1</sup> hym / for he  
 12 knewe<sup>5</sup> Barnard well ynoughe at his fyrste comynge  
 to<sup>1</sup> hym.

greatest value in  
 his ship.

After Barnard  
 had sorted the  
 stones, Huon  
 takes off his  
 helmet,  
 and reveals  
 himself.

¶ How Huon of Burdeaux and Barnarde his  
 cosyne knowlegyd themselues eche to other  
 16 & shewyd<sup>6</sup> theyr aduenture. Ca. C.xxv.

20  Hen Barnarde sawe Huon do<sup>4</sup> of his  
 helme he becam as ruddy as a rose,  
 and was so rauysshyd that be wiste  
 not what to saye or thynke, and sayde,  
 'syr, I can not say trewly what ye  
 be / <sup>7</sup>but ye resemble so<sup>8</sup> lyke Huon, whom I seke for  
 that I can not tel whether ye be he or not.' 'Cosyn,'  
 24 quod Huon, 'come hether to<sup>1</sup> me and embrace me. I  
 am he whome ye do seke for, / so they embracyd eche  
 other in suche wyse that of a longe space they coude  
 not speke one to another / at laste Huon sayd, 'my  
 28 ryght dere cosyn, I praye you shewe<sup>1</sup> me all the newes  
 that ye knowe of Burdeaux syn my departynge.' 'Syr,'  
 quod Barnard, 'I shall shew you that I wolde fayne  
 knowe my selfe, but fyrst, syr, I praye you shew<sup>1</sup> me  
 32 the aduentures that ye haue had syn my<sup>9</sup> departynge

Barnard recog-  
 nizes Huon when  
 he removes his  
 helmet.

Huon inquires  
 anxiously for  
 news from  
 Burdeaux.

Barnard begs  
 first to know

<sup>1</sup> vnto.

<sup>2</sup> vppon.

<sup>3</sup> and.

<sup>4</sup> put.

<sup>5</sup> his coozen.

<sup>6</sup> the discourse of.

<sup>7</sup> Fol. cx. col. 1.

<sup>8</sup> much.

<sup>9</sup> your.

Huon's adventures in the East,

and the knight relates them.

fro Burdeaux.' 'Cosyn,' quod Huon, 'yf I wolde<sup>1</sup> shewe you all the aduentures and fortunes that I haue had syn my departynge fro you, it shulde<sup>2</sup> be ouer long to shew<sup>3</sup> it / but breuely I shal declare it<sup>4</sup> / when 4 I was in<sup>5</sup> the see a<sup>6</sup> tempest rose vpon vs, the whiche enduryd<sup>7</sup> y<sup>e</sup> space of .x. dayes with out sease<sup>8</sup> / and then Huon shewed hym howe he was in the Goulfe / and what perel he was in there, & how he spake withe 8 Iudas; and howe he aryuyd at the castell of the Adamant, and how his company there dyed for<sup>9</sup> famyne; and howe he enteryd into the castell and slewe the serpente, and shewyd hym of the beaute and 12 aduentures that were in the castell / and howe he was borne to<sup>10</sup> a rocke by a gryffon / and how he slew the .v. yonge gryffons, and after<sup>11</sup> y<sup>e</sup> great gryffon whose fote was in the shyp, the whiche he shewyd to<sup>10</sup> syr 16 Barnarde, and declaryd<sup>12</sup> of the fountayne and gardayne, and tree of youth; and of the shyppe, the whiche they were in / and howe he founde it by the ryuer / and how by the voyce of the aungell he enteryd into the 20 shyppe / and after<sup>11</sup> he shewyd what<sup>6</sup> payn and parell he sufferyd in passynge the <sup>13</sup>gulfe of Perse, and how he was parforce dreuyn a londe,<sup>14</sup> and there he cast in y<sup>e</sup> stonys, thynkyng it had bene but<sup>15</sup> grauell / and 24 how he was as then come and aryued at the great citee of Tauris in Perce.

Barnard declares his joy at Huon's safety after all his perils.

¶ when Barnarde had well harde<sup>16</sup> Huon, he enbracyd hym and sayd, 'a ryght<sup>17</sup> vertuous knyght to 28 whome in prowes and hardynes none can be comparyd / of your comynge I ought to be ioyfull, &<sup>18</sup> thanke<sup>19</sup> god of the grace that he hathe sent you' / 'cosyn,<sup>20</sup> quod

<sup>1</sup> should.    <sup>2</sup> would.    <sup>3</sup> rehearse.    <sup>4</sup> vnto you  
<sup>5</sup> vpon.    <sup>6</sup> great.    <sup>7</sup> continued.    <sup>8</sup> ceasing.    <sup>9</sup> by.  
<sup>10</sup> vnto.    <sup>11</sup> afterward.    <sup>12</sup> discoursyd.  
<sup>13</sup> Fol. cx. col. 2.    <sup>14</sup> shoare.    <sup>15</sup> omitted.  
<sup>16</sup> and vnderstood.    <sup>17</sup> deare and.    <sup>18</sup> I.    <sup>19</sup> oure lord.  
<sup>20</sup> syr.

Huon, 'I ought greatly to thanke our lorde Iesu  
 Chryst, in *that* I se you in<sup>1</sup> helthe; and nowe I praye  
 you<sup>2</sup> shew me wat hathe fallen in the countre of  
 4 Burdeaux syn I departyd<sup>3</sup> thence.' Then Barnarde, all  
 wepyng, shewyd hym euery thyng as it had fallen, and  
 shewed to<sup>4</sup> Huon the maner how y<sup>e</sup> good citeye of  
 Burdeaux was taken, and of the dethe of<sup>5</sup> Gerames  
 8 and his company / and of the takynge of the<sup>6</sup> duches<sup>7</sup>  
 Esclaramond,<sup>8</sup> how the emperour held her in pryson  
 in the cytye of Magence in great pouerty and  
 mysery; and of his doughter Claryet, how he had  
 12 brought her to<sup>4</sup> the abbey of Cluny, and set her in  
 keypyng there with the abbot her cosyn. ¶ when  
 Huon<sup>9</sup> vnderstode barnarde, he made great sorowe,<sup>10</sup> &  
 sayd, yf god wold ayde<sup>11</sup> hym he wolde cause the  
 16 emperour to dye an yll<sup>12</sup> dethe / 'syr,' quod Barnarde,  
 'wyll you apease yourselfe; yf ye haue trust in our  
 lorde god, desyre his<sup>13</sup> ayde and socoure, and let the  
 whele of fortune ryn / and yf ye do thus, and take it  
 20 a<sup>14</sup> worth anythyng that is fallen vnto you ye shall  
 not fayle, but ye shall com to<sup>4</sup> your desyre, / thus with  
 such wordys Barnard apaysyd Huon his cosyn / <sup>8</sup>thus  
<sup>15</sup>they deuysyd together of dyuers thyngis / 'cosyn,'  
 24 quod Huon, 'I praye you shew me the vertue of thes  
 presyous stonys that ye haue layde aparte<sup>16</sup>' / 'syr,'  
 quod Barnarde, 'the .v. that lyethe<sup>17</sup> by themself  
 hathe great vertu / this stone is of suche<sup>18</sup> vertue that  
 28 he that bereth it vpon hym can not be poysonyd /  
 also it is of suche dygnyte<sup>19</sup> that who so euer do bere  
 it may go & come thurgh the fyre without felyng of any  
 hete thoughe he were in a <sup>20</sup>brennyng<sup>20</sup> ouen / also yf

Barnard tells the  
 story of the fall of  
 Bordeaux.

Huon grieues  
 over his wife's  
 disasters.

Barnard consoles  
 him with assur-  
 ances that the  
 Lord will help  
 him.

Barnard tells of  
 the virtues of the  
 precious stones  
 in the boat,  
 and how one  
 renders its owner  
 invulnerable.

<sup>1</sup> good.    <sup>2</sup> to.    <sup>3</sup> from.    <sup>4</sup> vnto.    <sup>5</sup> the old.

<sup>6</sup> noble.    <sup>7</sup> the faire.    <sup>8</sup> and.    <sup>9</sup> had well.

<sup>10</sup> in his heart.    <sup>11</sup> and helpe.    <sup>12</sup> euill.    <sup>13</sup> of him.

<sup>14</sup> in.    <sup>15</sup> Fol. cx. back, col. 1.    <sup>16</sup> aside from the other.

<sup>17</sup> there.    <sup>18</sup> great.    <sup>19</sup> and woorth.

<sup>20</sup>—<sup>20</sup> hot burning.

This one Huon  
takes for himself.

Barnard tells  
of the virtue of  
another that  
preserves its  
owner from all  
discomfort and  
from old age.

The second stone  
Huon also takes.

Barnard tells of  
the virtue of a  
third stone,  
possessing other  
marvellous  
powers,

and of a fourth  
which has, among  
its many virtues,  
that of making  
him who holds it  
invisible.

a man fell in<sup>1</sup> the water hauynge this stone about  
hym<sup>2</sup> can not synke nor drowne / syr, this is y<sup>e</sup> vertue  
of this fyrst stone.' Then Huon toke it and kepte it  
for hym selfe.<sup>3</sup> Then Barnard toke vp a nother & 4  
sayde / 'syr, here is a nother stone of suche vertue /  
that a man berynge it about hym can haue no<sup>4</sup>  
hunger / no<sup>5</sup> thruste / nor cold, nor shal not wax elder  
by semynge nother in body nor vysage / but he shal 8  
euer apere<sup>6</sup> of the age of .xxx. yerys, nor fastynge  
shall not enpayre hym' / then Huon toke that stone  
and put it in<sup>1</sup> his bagge, and sayde<sup>7</sup> he wolde kepe y<sup>e</sup><sup>7</sup>  
stone for hymselfe / 'well,' quod Barnard, 'syr, here 12  
is another of suche bounte and vertue that he that  
bereth it can not be hurte in armys, nor vanquesshyd  
by his enemyes, and yf any of his kyn were blynde  
and touche<sup>8</sup> his eyen with this stone incontynente he 16  
shall se agayne / and yf the stone be shewyd to<sup>9</sup> a  
mans eyen he shall incontynent be blynd, and yf a  
man be woundyd<sup>10</sup> tourne this stone in the wounde,  
and incontynent he shol be hole' / when Huon hard 20  
that he was<sup>11</sup> ioyfull, and sayd that he wolde kepe wel  
that stone / 'syr,' quod Barnarde, 'here is a nother, the  
whiche hathe so great vertue, that yf a man or woman be  
neuer so syke, shewe them<sup>8</sup> this stone, and incontin<sup>12</sup>ent 24  
they shall be hole of any maner of maladye / and  
also yf a man were closyd in pryson in chaynes and  
feters, handys and fete,<sup>10</sup> touch them with this stone  
and the chaynis shal breke / and also yf a<sup>13</sup> man haue 28  
any cause to be pledyd in any court before any Iuge,  
be his mater ryghtful or wrongfull, he shal wyn his  
cause, whether it be for londis or goodys, and also yf a  
man haue this stone in his hande and close it, he shall 32  
be inuysyble, and may go wher as he lyst, and shal not

<sup>1</sup> to.    <sup>2</sup> he.    <sup>3</sup> and.    <sup>4</sup> neither.    <sup>5</sup> omitted.  
<sup>6</sup> seeme to be.    <sup>7</sup> that.    <sup>8</sup> but.    <sup>9</sup> vnto.    <sup>10</sup> doe but.  
<sup>11</sup> right.    <sup>12</sup> Fol. ex. back, col. 2.    <sup>13</sup> any.



be sene. As ye shal se the profe' / for as he had the  
stone in his hande he cloyd it, and incontynent he  
was inuysyble so that Huon coude not se hym, wherof  
4 he was not content, for he feryd lest<sup>1</sup> he had lost his  
cosyn Barnard for euer, and sayd / 'a, good lord, thou  
hast geuyn me the grace to fynde my cosyn Barnarde /  
who shulde haue kept me company tyll<sup>2</sup> I had retournyd  
8 into myne owne countre, and nowe I se well<sup>1</sup> I haue  
lost hym' / when Barnarde harde Huon, he laughed,  
and Huon who hard hym / gropyd all about with  
his armes abrode / tyll<sup>2</sup> at laste he embrasyd hym, and  
12 helde hym fast / and when Barnard felte that he openyd  
his hand, and then Huon sawe hym agayne, wherof he  
was<sup>3</sup> ioyfull / and blyssyd hym at the vertue of that  
stone, and toke it and layd it vp amonge the other in  
16 his bagge, and sayde how he wolde kepe that stone<sup>4</sup> for  
specyallye.<sup>4</sup> Thus Barnarde dyd chose out the stonys  
one fro another / & there were so many good stonys  
that the value of them coud not be estemyd / then he  
20 tournyd vp the botom of the grauell to seke out the  
best / and<sup>5</sup> there<sup>5</sup> amonge other he dyd chose out a  
carbuncle / the whiche cast out suche a lyght as  
thoughe two torches had bene lyght / Barnarde toke  
24<sup>6</sup> it and delyueryd it to<sup>7</sup> Huon, and sayde / 'syr, be<sup>8</sup>  
sure<sup>9</sup> who so euer bere this stone vpon hym / may go  
dry fotyde vpon the water as sure as thoughe he were in  
a vessell / and also yf a man go in the darke nyght he  
28 shall see as well as thoughe he had the lyght of. vi.  
torches / and yf a man be in batayle, haugynge this  
stone on<sup>10</sup> hym,<sup>11</sup> can not be ouer come nor hurte, nor  
his horse very nor faynte, nor hurte, nor woundyd, /  
32 when Huon hard that he smylyd, and toke the stone

To prove its power, Barnard renders himself invisible to Huon.

Huon thinks he has lost Barnard for ever,

but to Huon's joy, Barnard becomes visible once more, and Huon keeps the wondrous stone.

There are so many more stones, that Barnard finds it no easy matter to value them rightly. He chooses out a carbuncle that shines with the light of six torches, and gives it to Huon.

<sup>1</sup> that. <sup>2</sup> vntill. <sup>3</sup> right.

<sup>4-4</sup> especially, because it was of such a woonderfull great vertue.

<sup>5-5</sup> omitted.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. cxi. col. 1.

<sup>7</sup> vnto.

<sup>8</sup> you.

<sup>9</sup> that.

<sup>10</sup> about.

<sup>11</sup> he.

Saracen merchants come to them, and marvel greatly at their rich ship.

They ask to be allowed to buy some of the precious stones,

but Huon will sell none till the next day.

The news of the ship's arrival is spread through the city, and the admiral comes to behold it.

He salutes Huon and Barnard, and demands the customary tribute,

and put it<sup>1</sup> amonge the other. Thus as they were deuysynge together there came to<sup>2</sup> them dyuers marchauntys, Sarasyns, who with great maruayle behelde this lytell shyp<sup>3</sup> they sawe it so fayre and rych, and so<sup>4</sup> wel garnysshed with precyous stonys / that they thought al the marchaundyse that was there in the hauen was not<sup>4</sup> to the<sup>4</sup> halfe<sup>5</sup> valewe<sup>6</sup> of that they saw there; then<sup>7</sup> they aprochyd to<sup>2</sup> the shyp and salutid Huon, and<sup>8</sup> sayd / 'syrs, is it your pleasure to sell vs any of your stonys / we are here dyuers marchauntys that wyl be glad to bye of them<sup>8</sup>' / 'syrs,' quod Huon, 'as for me as this day I wyll sell none tyll<sup>9</sup> to morowe in the<sup>12</sup> mornynge,<sup>10</sup> / therwith the marchauntys helde theyr peas and spake no more; but there cam so many Sarasyns and paynmys to beholde the shyppe, that maruayle it was to be hold them; so that y<sup>e</sup> newes<sup>16</sup> therof spred abrode in the citey / & the admyrall was aduertysed therof / who incontynente, accompanyed with his lordys, came to the porte syde wher as this shyppe laye at<sup>4</sup> an<sup>4</sup> ancre. 20

¶ when he<sup>11</sup> was come thether he behelde the shyppe, the whiche he thought fayre<sup>12</sup> and ryche; and how that there was neuer kynge nor emperour that euer sawe<sup>13</sup> any such, and it shone so clere by reason of the<sup>24</sup> stonys, that the Admyrall and all such as were with hym thought it had bene the sonne shynynge in the myddys of the day / then he aprochyd to<sup>2</sup> the shyp and founde there Huon and Barnarde: the admyrall<sup>28</sup> salutyd them, and sayde / 'syrs, it aperethe wel<sup>14</sup> ye be chrysten men / it is conuenyent that ye paye me the trybute that is coustomyd to be payed in this citey' /

<sup>1</sup> into his bagge amonge the other. <sup>2</sup> vnto. <sup>3</sup> and.

<sup>4-4</sup> omitted. <sup>5</sup> the. <sup>6</sup> and woorth.

<sup>7</sup> then then *in text*. <sup>8</sup> if yee please. <sup>9</sup> vntill.

<sup>10</sup> and then if it plase yee, you shall haue of them.

<sup>11</sup> the Admirall. <sup>12</sup> Fol. cxi. col. 2. <sup>13</sup> behelde.

<sup>14</sup> that.

'syr,' quod Huon, 'it is<sup>1</sup> reason and ryght that we  
 paye you as we ought to do / syr, here be<sup>2</sup> two stonys  
 the whiche I gyue you, and I desyre you to take them  
 4 a<sup>3</sup> worthe' / the Admyrall toke the stonys and behelde  
 them well, and sayd / 'frynde, nowe ye maye go and  
 come into this citey to make your marchaundise at  
 your pleasure to your most profyght<sup>4</sup> / for the gyfte  
 8 that ye haue geuen me is to me more agreable<sup>5</sup> then yf  
 ye had geuen me y<sup>e</sup> value of .iiii. of the beste citeyes of<sup>6</sup>  
 this countre' / ryght ioyfull was the admyral for he  
 knewe well the vertue of the stones : one was of suche  
 12 valure<sup>7</sup> that the berer therof coude not be poysonyd  
 nor no<sup>3</sup> treason coude not be done nor purpensyd,<sup>8</sup>  
 comynge in the presence of hym that berethe this stone  
 but incontynente the doer shuld fall<sup>10</sup> dede / and the  
 16 second<sup>11</sup> stone had that vertue and dygnyte that the  
 berer therof coud neuer be perysshid by fyre nor  
 water / nor dystroyed by Iron, for thoughe he were all a  
 daye<sup>12</sup> in a brynnynge<sup>12</sup> furnays he shuld not lese one  
 20 here of his hede / nor perysshe in the see. 'frende,'  
 quod the admyrall, 'the courtesye that ye haue done to<sup>13</sup>  
 me<sup>14</sup> shall be<sup>15</sup> rewardyd, I wyll<sup>16</sup> that throughe out  
 my realme, as well of Perse as of Mede,<sup>17</sup> ye shall<sup>18</sup> go  
 24 at your pleasure to sell your marchandyse ; and no man  
 shall lette nor trouble you / but one thyng I wolde  
 desyre of you to shewe me what aduenture hathe  
 brought you hether / and of whens ye be, and of what  
 28 countre / and in what place ye haue found thes stones  
 wherof ye haue so great plente / howe be it I vnder-  
 stonde your language, wherby I knowe<sup>17</sup> ye be frenche-  
 men / longe agoe I was in fraunce, and dwelte there,

Huon gives him  
 two of the  
 precious stones.

The admiral is  
 much pleased,  
 as he knows the  
 virtues of the  
 stones, which can  
 preserve their  
 owner from many  
 perils;  
 he gives the  
 travellers per-  
 mission to enter  
 the city.

He promises to  
 protect them in  
 his own realm  
 as well as in that  
 of Persia and  
 Media,

and asks what  
 strange adventure  
 brought them  
 hither.

The admiral  
 knows their  
 language,

<sup>1</sup> good.    <sup>2</sup> is.    <sup>3</sup> in.    <sup>4</sup> and gaine.    <sup>5</sup> acceptable.

<sup>6</sup> in all.    <sup>7</sup> bountie and dignitie.    <sup>8</sup> no no *in text*.

<sup>9</sup> purposed.    <sup>10</sup> downe.    <sup>11</sup> other.

<sup>12-12</sup> burning in a hot oven or.    <sup>13</sup> vnto.    <sup>14</sup> this day.

<sup>15</sup> well.    <sup>16</sup> and commaund.    <sup>17</sup> that.

<sup>18</sup> Fol. cxi. back, col. 1.

for he has served  
in Charlemagne's  
court.

and seruyd in the courte of kynge Charlemayne / &  
was neuer knowen / I<sup>1</sup> haue<sup>2</sup> maruayle where ye haue  
founde so many goodly stoness / it is nere<sup>3</sup> a .C. yerys  
syn I was gyrte with a sworde ; but I neuer saw so 4  
ryche stoness here before.

¶ How the admerall of Perce dyd great  
honoure to<sup>4</sup> Huon of Burdeaux, and led  
hym into his palays, where as he was 8  
receuyd withe great ioye and myrth.<sup>5</sup>

Ca. C.xxvi.



As the admiral  
seemed to be a  
man of nobleness,  
truth, and  
freedom, Huon  
tells him at  
length all his  
adventures.

He tells him his  
name and the  
place of his  
birth,  
how he departed  
thence two years  
back, and how  
since that time  
he has suffered  
much pain and  
poverty,  
and how he set  
out with seven  
knights, his  
chaplain, and a  
clerk.

Contrary winds  
came upon them  
in their journey-  
ing on the high  
seas,

Hen Huon of Burdeaux<sup>7</sup> vnderstode  
the Admerall, he regardyd hym moch / 12  
bycause he was a fayre old man, and  
semyd to be a noble man, <sup>1</sup>said, ' syr,  
bycause I knowe and se aparaunte in  
you great noblenes, trouthe, and fredome, I shall shewe 16  
you at lengthe all myne aduentures without hydyng of  
ony thyng fro you. Syr, know for trouthe my name is  
Huon, and I am<sup>8</sup> borne of<sup>9</sup> the countre of Fraunce in a  
city namyd Burdeaux ; and I departed<sup>10</sup> thence about 20  
two yerys past, synne the whiche tyme I haue sufferyd  
moche payne and pouerte. ¶ when I departyd<sup>10</sup> thens,  
I hadde with me .vii. knyghtys and my chapelayne and  
a clarke to serue hym, and we toke our shyppe at 24  
Burdeaux, and we sayld downe the ryuer tyll<sup>11</sup> we  
come in the mayne see / then the wynde rose <sup>12</sup>con-  
trarye to<sup>12</sup> vs, and so contynuyd a longe space, so that  
our patron knew not where he was / <sup>1</sup>so at the last we 28  
came to a porte, where<sup>13</sup> we founde many shyppes of  
stran[ge] countres / and there we gote vs a newe  
patron ; and as shortely as we myghte, we wente forthe

<sup>1</sup> and.    <sup>2</sup> great.    <sup>3</sup> hand.    <sup>4</sup> vnto.    <sup>5</sup> triumph.  
<sup>6</sup> Fol. cxi. back, col. 2.    <sup>7</sup> had well heard and.    <sup>8</sup> was.  
<sup>9</sup> in.    <sup>10</sup> from.    <sup>11</sup> vntill.    <sup>12-12</sup> against.    <sup>13</sup> as.

on our Iourney. But when we were comyn agayne  
 into the hye see, a<sup>1</sup> tempest arose so great<sup>2</sup> that we<sup>3</sup>  
 nere hand all perysshyd / this tempeste enduryd .x.  
 4 dayes, so that we were fayne to abandone oure shyppe  
 to the wynde. And on<sup>4</sup> the .xi. daye, we aryuyd on<sup>5</sup>  
 the perelous Gulfe, wher as we founde Iudas, who  
 betrayed our lorde<sup>6</sup> Iesu christ: we were then in suche  
 8 fere that we lokid for nothyng but when we shulde  
 perysshe and end our lyfe. But god alwayes his  
 seruauntis and suche at<sup>7</sup> byleueth in [h]is<sup>8</sup> holy lawe<sup>9</sup>  
 wyll euer kepe and preserue them / he sent vs a wynde y<sup>e</sup>  
 12 which<sup>10</sup> draue vs fro that perelous Goulfe, and brought  
 vs to<sup>11</sup> the castell of the Adamant / and there he shewyd  
 the admyrall at lenthe the beautye of that castell, and  
 howe there aryuyd a shyppe with Sarasyns, who were  
 16 robbers<sup>12</sup> of the see, and howe they fought together, and  
 also he shew[ed] hym all y<sup>e</sup> aduentures of the castell  
 that he had there, as well of his men that dyed for<sup>13</sup>  
 famyn as of them that be lefte there, & also he shewyd<sup>14</sup>  
 20 how he came by vetayles. And also he shewed howe  
 he departyd<sup>15</sup> thence, and was borne awaye by the  
 Gryffon, and howe he strake of one of his<sup>16</sup> legges when  
 he fought with hym,<sup>16</sup> after the gryffon had set hym  
 24 on<sup>4</sup> the rocke, the whiche legge he shewyd to<sup>11</sup> the  
 admyrad[ll] wherof he had<sup>17</sup> great maruayle.<sup>18</sup> Then  
 also he shewyd hym howe he fought with the .v. yong  
 Gryffons, and slewe them / and also of the olde  
 28 Gryffon / and also of the fountayne wherin he baynyd  
 himselfe, and of the fayre gardayn, and of the tree of  
 youth that stode by the fountayne: and of the vertu of  
 the frute therof / and howe he dyd gather therof,<sup>19</sup> and

and a storm arose  
 lasting for ten  
 days.

On the eleventh  
 day they arrived  
 in the perilous  
 Gulf, where they  
 saw Judas,  
 and were like  
 to end their  
 lives;

then God in his  
 goodness sent a  
 fair wind, which  
 drove them  
 thence to the  
 castle of  
 Adamant.  
 Huon describes  
 to the admiral  
 the beauty of the  
 castle,  
 and shows all  
 the adventures  
 that he and his  
 men met there.

Then he tells how  
 he departed, and  
 was borne away  
 by the griffin  
 to a rock,  
 and how in  
 fighting with the  
 beast he struck  
 off one of its legs,  
 and this leg he  
 showed to the  
 admiral.  
 He then tells how  
 he fought with  
 the five young  
 griffins and slew  
 them,  
 and of the  
 fountain and the  
 fair garden,  
 and of the tree  
 of youth by the  
 fountain.  
 He, knowing its  
 virtue, gathered  
 some of the fruit,

<sup>1</sup> great.      <sup>2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> were.      <sup>4</sup> vpon.      <sup>5</sup> at.

<sup>6</sup> and sauour.      <sup>7</sup> as.      <sup>8</sup> *gis in text.*

<sup>9</sup> and keepe his commaundements.      <sup>10</sup> Fol. cxii. col. 1.

<sup>11</sup> vnto.      <sup>12</sup> Pirats.      <sup>13</sup> by.      <sup>14</sup> discoursed.

<sup>15</sup> from.      <sup>16</sup> her.      <sup>17</sup> wonderfull.      <sup>18</sup> and.

<sup>19</sup> of the same.



but was forbidden  
to take more by  
an angel sent  
from God.

However, what  
he had already  
eaten and drunk,  
healed the  
wounds given  
him by the  
griffin.

The angel com-  
manded him to  
gather three of  
the apples,  
and showed him  
the way from the  
rock.

In a fair river  
under the side of  
the rock, he  
found the ship  
they were now in,  
and a wind drove  
his ship faster  
than a bird.

He passed by the  
Persian Gulf,  
and suffered  
torments there  
for ten days,  
and was thence  
driven to the  
land where he  
found the  
precious stones.  
He did not then  
know their value,  
but took them  
to balance his  
ship.

The admiral  
marvels greatly  
at Huon's  
adventures;  
he has never  
heard the like  
before.

more wolde haue done but that he was defendyd<sup>1</sup> so  
to do by an aungell sent fro god / but before I was  
commaundyd<sup>2</sup> the contrary, I dyd ete<sup>3</sup> both of the  
frute and dranke of ye water of the fountayne, wherby 4  
I was<sup>4</sup> incontynente<sup>5</sup> all<sup>6</sup> hole of<sup>6</sup> the great woundes  
that the Gryffon had geuen me.<sup>7</sup> And, syr,' quod  
Huon, 'knowe for trouthe that of this tree I gatheryd  
.iii. apples, by the commaundemente of the aungell, and 8  
haue kept them suerly / then the aungell shewyd me  
the waye howe I shulde go fro that rocke, and vnder  
y<sup>e</sup> rocke syde I founde a<sup>8</sup> fayre ryuer, and there I  
founde this shyppe that we be nowe in, and enteryd 12  
into it. Then there<sup>9</sup> came a wynde<sup>10</sup> and draue my  
shyppe so faste that a byrde coude not ouertake<sup>11</sup> it.  
Then he shewyd<sup>12</sup> vnto the Admyrall how he passyd  
by the goulfe of Perse, & what tourmentis he sufferyd 16  
there, and howe he was there .x. dayes, and how he was  
dreuen to the londe,<sup>13</sup> wher as he founde those precyous  
stones,<sup>14</sup> wenyng to hym it were<sup>14</sup> nothyng but grauell,  
and<sup>15</sup> he purposyd nothyng elles but to balays<sup>16</sup> therwith 20  
his shyppe, that y<sup>e</sup> shyp myyht sayle the more suerlyer /  
and he sayd, 'syr, god, on<sup>17</sup> hom I<sup>18</sup> byleue, so aydyd<sup>19</sup>  
me that I am scaped<sup>20</sup> thence in sauegarde.'

¶ when the admerall<sup>21</sup> vnderstode Huon / he 24  
22 maruaylyd greatly,<sup>22</sup> for he neuer hard before of so  
great<sup>23</sup> maruayles,<sup>23</sup> and was sore<sup>24</sup> abasshyd, and sayd,  
'Frynde, I haue great maruayle of *that* I haue harde you  
say, for it is nere hand .vi. score yere syn I came fyrst 28  
in to this worlde / and I neuer harde that euer any man

<sup>1</sup> forbidden.    <sup>2</sup> to.    <sup>3</sup> ete *after* both.    <sup>4</sup> whole.

<sup>5</sup> of.    <sup>6-6</sup> omitted.    <sup>7</sup> when I slewe them.    <sup>8</sup> great.

<sup>9</sup> Fol. cxii. col. 2.    <sup>10</sup> [quoth he].    <sup>11</sup> haue ouertaken.

<sup>12</sup> discoursed.    <sup>13</sup> shoare.

<sup>14-14</sup> and he thought it had bene.    <sup>15</sup> that.

<sup>16</sup> ther therwith *in text*.    <sup>17</sup> vppon.    <sup>18</sup> stedfastly.

<sup>19</sup> and socoured.    <sup>20</sup> from.    <sup>21</sup> had well heard and.

<sup>22-22</sup> had great maruaille.    <sup>23-23</sup> and wonderfull aduentures.

<sup>24</sup> dismayed and.

- scaped alyue out of the Goulfe of Perse / therfore ye  
 maye well saye that the god on<sup>1</sup> whome ye do<sup>2</sup> byleue  
 hathe shewyd that he louis you well, when he hathe  
 4 sauyd you out of that perelous Goulfe, your god is  
 pusaunt, and louethe <sup>3</sup>moche them that byleueth  
 on hym,<sup>3</sup> he is false<sup>4</sup> that byleueth not on<sup>5</sup> his law /<sup>6</sup>  
 when he hath sauyd<sup>7</sup> you out of .ii. suche Gulfes, and  
 8 also fro the castell of the Adamant, fro whence none  
 can departe, nor neuer dyd, nor I thynke neuer shall :  
 and also hathe sufferyd you to slee the Gryffons /  
 suerly ye ought to loue hym that hath geuen you that  
 12 grace / & fro<sup>8</sup> the great maruayles that he hathe done  
 to<sup>9</sup> you, I wyll be chrystenyd & receyue your lawe /  
 but I fere me yf my lordis and men knewe therof they  
 wold sle me shortelye, for agaynste them all /<sup>10</sup> I can not  
 16 resyste' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'to the entent that ye  
 shuld haue the fermer byleue in our lorde <sup>11</sup>god<sup>11</sup> Iesu  
 chryste, I haue .iii. apples, the whiche hathe such  
 vertue in them that yf ye wyl byleue in our lorde  
 20 <sup>11</sup>god<sup>11</sup> Iesu chryste, I shall gyue you one of them, the  
 whiche ye shall ete, and incontynent after ye haue  
 eten it, ye shal become yonge agayne of the age of .xxx.  
 yerys, and ye shall be as fayre & as lusty as ye were  
 24 when ye were of *that* age / there is not so olde a man  
 nor so crokyd, yf he ete of this frute<sup>12</sup> and byleue  
 farmely<sup>13</sup> in our lorde Iesu chryst / but he shall  
 become<sup>14</sup> as lusty as he was of .xxx. yerys.<sup>15</sup> 'Frend,'  
 28 quod the admyrall, 'yf it be so that by the<sup>12</sup> etynge of  
 this apple, I shal becom <sup>16</sup>yong agayne<sup>16</sup> as I was  
<sup>17</sup>of y<sup>e</sup> age of <sup>17</sup>.xxx. yerys,<sup>15</sup> what so euer come of me

Huon's escape  
 proves his trust  
 in God, and God's  
 love for him.

In awe of this  
 testimony of  
 God's love and  
 power, the  
 admiral wishes to  
 be christened,  
 but fears his  
 lords and men  
 would slay him  
 if they knew of it.  
 Huon answers  
 that he will give  
 him one of his  
 three apples,  
 and if he eats it  
 believing firmly  
 in our Lord God  
 Jesus, he will  
 straightway  
 become young  
 again—of the age  
 of thirty years.

<sup>1</sup> vpon.      <sup>2</sup> stedfastly.

<sup>3-3</sup> all men that stedfastly and vnfainedly beleue in his  
 holy lawes, and keepe his commaundements and.

<sup>4</sup> and vntrue.      <sup>5</sup> in.      <sup>6</sup> but hee loueth you well.

<sup>7</sup> deliuered.      <sup>8</sup> for.      <sup>9</sup> vnto.

<sup>10</sup> Fol. cxii. back, col. I.      <sup>11-11</sup> and sauour.

<sup>12</sup> omitted.      <sup>13</sup> and vnfainedly.      <sup>14</sup> yong and as.

<sup>15</sup> of age.      <sup>16-10</sup> as yong and as lusty.      <sup>17-17</sup> at.

The admiral  
consents,  
and hopes to  
persuade all his  
realm to believe  
the same.

To this end Huon  
bids him eat  
the apple in the  
presence of his  
lords and men.

The admiral takes  
Huon's advice,  
and hand in hand  
they go out of the  
ship.

Barnard was left  
to keep the ship,  
which was visited  
by many people.

The admiral led  
Huon to his  
palace.  
In their walk  
through the city  
they were  
regarded with  
great interest by  
men of all  
nations.  
The admiral  
made a great  
feast in Huon's  
honour.

I wyll be chrystenyd and byleue in y<sup>e</sup> law of Iesu  
chryst, the fere of dethe shall not let me to do it, for to  
longe I haue byleuyd in this false lawe<sup>1</sup> and detestable  
of Macomet / for yf I had<sup>2</sup> sene nor harde no more 4  
then ye haue shewyd,<sup>3</sup> I ought yet<sup>4</sup> to byleue in your  
lawe / and I shall do so moche that I truste I shall  
cause all my realme to byleue in the same' / 'syr,'  
quod Huon, 'and ye do as ye saye, ye shall be sauyd, 8  
and I shall geue you the apple / the whiche ye shal ete  
in the presence of al your lordis & men. And when  
they shall se you wax agayne yonge,<sup>5</sup> knowe for trouthe  
y<sup>e</sup> maruayle therof shall cause them to byleue of<sup>6</sup> Iesu 12  
chryst, and to renounce theyr false <sup>7</sup>macomettis<sup>7</sup>  
lawe'<sup>8</sup> / 'frend,' quod the admyrall, 'I byleue well  
as<sup>9</sup> ye saye / and I shall vse my selfe after your  
aduyse' / then the admyrall toke Huon by the hande 16  
& wente together out of the shyp; and Huon lefte  
Barnard there to kepe it / moch<sup>10</sup> people was come  
thether to se the shyp, and <sup>11</sup>also for the great maruayles  
that they had harde fallen to<sup>12</sup> Huon; <sup>13</sup>they behelde 20  
Huon and had great maruayle of y<sup>e</sup> honour that y<sup>e</sup>  
admyrall made to<sup>12</sup> hym / for he led hym styll by  
the hand tyll<sup>14</sup> he came to his palays; as they passed  
thruh the citey they were greatly regarded of men of 24  
sondry nasyons / for Huon was so fayre<sup>15</sup> a knyght<sup>16</sup>  
that none coude be founde as then *that* myght <sup>17</sup>com-  
pare with hym in beaute<sup>17</sup>; when Huon was come to  
the palays<sup>18</sup> the admyrall made huon<sup>19</sup> great fest and 28  
chere, and the tables were set vp, & they sate downe to

<sup>1</sup> lawe *after* detestable.      <sup>2</sup> neither.      <sup>3</sup> vnto me.

<sup>4</sup> yet *after* byleue.      <sup>5</sup> yonge *before* againe.

<sup>6</sup> in our Lord.      <sup>7-7</sup> and detestable.      <sup>8</sup> of Mahomet.

<sup>9</sup> that which.      <sup>10</sup> many.      <sup>11</sup> Fol. cxii. back, col. 2.

<sup>12</sup> vnto.      <sup>13</sup> and.      <sup>14</sup> vntill.

<sup>15</sup> in his visage, and so valiaunt.      <sup>16</sup> in stature.

<sup>17-17</sup> bee compared vnto him.

<sup>18</sup> whereas hee was honourably receiued with great ioy.

<sup>19</sup> him.

diner; of theyr seruyse and metis I wyll make no longe rehersayle. <sup>1</sup>when diner was done, the admyrall commaundyd carpenters to make a great scaffold of  
 4 tymber before y<sup>e</sup> palays / y<sup>e</sup> which was coueryd with ryche clothes of gold and sylke, & thether was brought a ryche standarde of golde with other thyngys;<sup>2</sup> then he commaundid throughout the citey that all hys<sup>3</sup> barons  
 8 of his realme that were come thether to<sup>4</sup> his fre feste, that they shulde all come to<sup>4</sup> hym at an owre apointyd, the which they dyd; there cam so many straungers and other that there were no assemblyd together then  
 12 a .C. & .l.M. men. when they were all there together, then y<sup>e</sup> admyrall, holdyng Huon by the hand, mounted vpon y<sup>e</sup> ryche stage, & dyuers other great lordis with hym;<sup>2</sup> when they were there the admyrall stode vp  
 16 and sayde with a hye voyce to<sup>4</sup> the lordys and to the people / 'syrs, ye that be com hether by my commaundement, know for trouthe / the great loue that I haue had to<sup>4</sup> you and haue / moueth me to saye and  
 20 to shew you the waye how that I and all you may come to eternal saluacyon, for yf we dye in this case that we be in, we shall all<sup>5</sup> be dampnyd and loste by the false and detestable<sup>6</sup> way that you and I do hold /  
 24 therfore I counsayle and praye you for the loue that ye haue longe borne vnto me, that ye wyl leue<sup>7</sup> the lawe of Maconynte and byleue in<sup>8</sup> our sauour and redemer, Iesu chryst, who is worthy and holly, as ye maye se by  
 28 the euydente myracles that he hathe shewyd for his pouer knyght that ye se here by me.' then the admyrall shewyd to<sup>4</sup> the people all the maruaylous aduentures that had fallen to<sup>4</sup> Huon / that is to saye, how he had  
 32 bene at the castel of the Adamante, and how the Gryffon bare<sup>9</sup> hym<sup>10</sup> thence, whome he slewe, and

Carpenters were commanded to make a scaffold of timber in front of the palace, and to decorate it with cloth of gold and silk. By command, at the hour appointed, all the admiral's barons came there, and many strangers and others besides.

The admiral, holding Huon by the hand, mounted upon the stage, and tells the lords and people in a loud voice that he is going to show them how they may come to eternal salvation,

by leaving the law of Mahomet and believing in Jesus Christ, whose worthiness and holiness is proved by the miracles he has worked for Huon.

The admiral then shows the people all the marvellous adventures of Huon,

<sup>1</sup> but.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> Lordes and.      <sup>4</sup> vnto.

<sup>5</sup> all after be.      <sup>6</sup> Fol. cxiii. col. 1.      <sup>7</sup> with me.

<sup>8</sup> the Law of.      <sup>9</sup> did beare.      <sup>10</sup> from.

and how  
such things could  
not have been  
without the aid  
of Jesus Christ.

He then tells how  
if he firmly  
believe in Christ,  
the apple of  
Huon's gift will  
make him young  
again.

The people  
answer that if  
they see proof of  
this, they also  
will be christened,

but that of such a  
miracle they had  
never heard.

.v. of y<sup>e</sup> yonge Gryffons; and also of the fountayne  
and gardayne, and of the freute of the tree of youthe,  
and howe he had passyd the two Gulfes where as he  
had taken y<sup>e</sup> ryche stonys that he had brou[g]ht<sup>1</sup> 4  
thether / the whiche thyngis coude not haue bene  
without the ayde<sup>2</sup> of our lorde<sup>3</sup> Iesu chryste, and also  
he shall shewe before you euydente myracles that Iesu  
chryst shall do for me yf I wyll take his lawe / for he 8  
seyth to<sup>4</sup> me that if I wyll byleue on<sup>5</sup> his god, he wyll  
make me to ete of such a holy frute, by the which I  
shall become agayne but of the age of .xxx. yerys, and  
as lusty as I was then<sup>6</sup> / & therfore, syrs, yf Iesu 12  
chryst wyll do this for me I wyll be chrystenyd' /  
then all the people answeyrd and sayd / 'syr, yf this  
that ye haue sayd come to profe, we<sup>7</sup> al be<sup>8</sup> content to  
be chrystenyd, and to byleue on<sup>9</sup> y<sup>e</sup> lawe of Iesu 16  
chryst, and to leue the law that we haue long kept /  
but we ar hard of byleue that this shall be / for  
yf it be so, there was neuer harde of suche a<sup>10</sup> myracle.'

¶ How the emperour, by reason of the apple 20  
that Huon gaue hym<sup>11</sup> to eete, he became  
of the age of .xxx. yerys / wherby he and  
all the people of perce and Mede were  
chrystenyd, and of the great honoure that 24  
the admyrall made to<sup>4</sup> Huon. Ca. C.xxvii.

Huon, right  
joyful to learn  
that all the lords  
and people were  
willing to believe  
in Jesus Christ,



Hen Huon<sup>12</sup> vnderstode y<sup>e</sup> lordis &<sup>13</sup>  
people how they were al<sup>14</sup> content to  
leue tneyr law and to byleue of<sup>9</sup> Iesu 28  
chryst, he was ryght ioyfull, & thankyd  
god with all his harte / then Huon

<sup>1</sup> brought in text.

<sup>2</sup> vnto. <sup>5</sup> in.

<sup>6</sup> all after be.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. cxiii. col. 2.

<sup>2</sup> and helpe.

<sup>6</sup> at that time.

<sup>9</sup> yppon.

<sup>12</sup> hadde well heard and.

<sup>14</sup> omitted.

<sup>3</sup> and Sauour.

<sup>7</sup> shall.

<sup>10</sup> wonderfull.

<sup>13</sup> the.



- sayde to<sup>1</sup> the admyrall / 'syr, ete of the appyll that I  
 haue geuyn<sup>1</sup> you / and then y<sup>e</sup> people that be here  
 assemblyd shall see what grace our lord god shall  
 4 send you.' The admyrall toke the apple and began to  
 ete therof / and as he dyd ete he began to chaung  
 coloure / his here and his berde, y<sup>e</sup> which were whyght,  
 began to chaunge and waxed yelow<sup>e</sup> / or<sup>2</sup> the apple was  
 8 clene eten, he was clene chaungyd, & his beautye and  
 strenthe as he was when he was but of .xxx. yerys of  
 age. Then generally all the people that were there  
 with one voyce cryed & requyryd to be chrystenyd,  
 12 wherof the admyrall and Huon were ryght ioyfull,  
 bycause they saw the good wyll of the people was to  
 receyue chrystendome / when the admyrall felte hym-  
 selfe agayne yonge<sup>3</sup> the ioye that he had at his harte  
 16 can<sup>4</sup> not be declaryd, the people also were ryghte  
 ioyfull / the admyrall, who was a goodly prynce, toke  
 Huon by the hande and sayde / 'my ryght dere freynde,  
 blyssyd be the owre *that* ye came hether for me and  
 20 my people, ye haue brought vs into the way of  
 saluasyon and delyueryd vs out of darkenes, therefore I  
 wyl fro hensforth *that* in all my realme ye shall haue  
 your *parte* as wel as <sup>5</sup>my selfe, and I wyll<sup>6</sup> ye be so  
 24 obeyed' / then he enbracyd and kyssed Huon mo then  
 .x. tymys, seyenge / 'frynde, blessyd be the our that  
 euer ye were borne, and happy was that woman that  
 bare you in her body' / the paynyns and Sarasyns that  
 28 were there, seyng the great beaute that the admyrall  
 was of / and also the<sup>7</sup> great myracle that they had  
 sene, sayde one to another, how they neuer had hard of  
 suche a myracle, and how that fro thenceforth they  
 32 that wold byleue on<sup>8</sup> mahound were acursyd &  
 vnhappy / for they sayde<sup>9</sup> his byleue / his lawe /<sup>10</sup> his

tells the admiral  
to eat the apple.

As he ate, his  
white hair and  
beard waxed  
yellow, and when  
he had finished,  
he was in beauty  
and strength as a  
man of thirty  
years.

Then all the  
people cried out  
that they wished  
to be christened,  
whereof the  
admiral and Huon  
were right joyful.

The admiral  
offers Huon a  
share of his  
realm,

and embraces him  
ten times.

Having seen the  
miracle,

the people declare  
that all who  
believe in  
Mahomet are  
accursed and

<sup>1</sup> vnto.    <sup>2</sup> before.    <sup>3</sup> and lusty.    <sup>4</sup> could.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. cxiii. back, col. 1.    <sup>6</sup> and commaund.

<sup>7</sup> woonderfull.    <sup>8</sup> vppon.    <sup>9</sup> that.    <sup>10</sup> and.

unhappy,  
and they desire  
to embrace the  
religion of  
Christendom.

A bishop of  
Greece, who was  
in the city as  
Ambassador from  
Constantine the  
Noble, offered to  
christen the  
admiral and his  
people.

Forty great  
vessels of clear  
water were  
brought,  
the bishop hal-  
lowed them,  
and baptized the  
admiral and  
named him Huon.  
Afterwards all the  
lords and people  
were christened,  
and then, the  
admiral leading  
Huon, returned to  
his palace.  
There was great  
joy and feasting  
in the city that  
day,  
especially among  
the Christian  
merchants there,  
and fifteen priests  
with them, who  
had helped the  
bishop to christen  
the people.

The admiral tells  
Huon he ought to  
render thanks to  
our lord Jesus  
Christ, that  
through him  
Persia and Media  
have been  
brought to the  
Christian faith,

doctryne / was of no valour / then they cryed with a  
hye voyce, 'O ryght noble and pusant admyrall /  
desyre that noble man that is there with you, that he  
wyll cause vs to haue<sup>1</sup> chrystendome.' And as then in 4  
the citey there was a bysshop of Grece who was come  
thether in bassade<sup>2</sup> to the admyrall fro the emperour of  
<sup>3</sup>constantyne the noble,<sup>3</sup> who, herynge the wyll<sup>4</sup> of the  
people, was ryght ioyfull / and he cam to<sup>5</sup> the admyrall 8  
and to Huon, and sayde / 'syr, it shal be no daunger for  
you to be chrystenyd / for, syr, I am here redy to do  
it.' Then incontynent there was brought forthe .xl  
great vesselles full of clere water / the bysshop dyd 12  
halow them, and crystenyd the admyrall and gaue<sup>6</sup>  
hym <sup>7</sup>to name<sup>7</sup> Huon, bycause Huon was his godfather.  
Then after<sup>8</sup> all the lordis & people were chrystenyd and  
receyuyd the law of our <sup>9</sup>lorde<sup>9</sup> Iesu Chryste. when 16  
they were all chrystenyd, the admyrall with great  
tryhumphe<sup>10</sup> retournyd to<sup>5</sup> his palays ledyng Huon by  
the hande.<sup>11</sup> great ioye and feast<sup>12</sup> was made that day  
in the citey / and spesyally of the chrysten marchauntis 20  
that were there, amonge the which there <sup>13</sup>was a<sup>13</sup> .xv.  
prestes, and they all aydyd the bys<sup>14</sup>shop to chrysten  
the people / the nombre can<sup>15</sup> not be declaryd of the  
men, women and, chyl dren that reseuyd that daye 24  
chrystendome / the admyrall beynge in his palays  
makyng great ioy and fest<sup>12</sup> to<sup>16</sup> y<sup>e</sup> noble duke Huon  
of burdeaux, sayd to<sup>5</sup> hym / 'frynde, well ye ought to  
render thankynges to our lorde Iesu chryste, syn<sup>17</sup> by 28  
you these two realmes, that is to saye, Perce and Mede,  
are reducyd and brought to<sup>5</sup> the chrysten faythe and  
law, and I wyll<sup>18</sup> ye knowe that ye maye well saye that

<sup>1</sup> receiue.      <sup>2</sup> ambassage.      <sup>3-3</sup> Constantinople.

<sup>4</sup> and desire.      <sup>5</sup> vnto.      <sup>6</sup> named.      <sup>7-7</sup> omitted.

<sup>8</sup> afterward.      <sup>9-9</sup> Sauour and Redeemer.      <sup>10</sup> and ioy.

<sup>11</sup> and.      <sup>12</sup> feasting.      <sup>13-13</sup> were about.

<sup>14</sup> Fol. cxiii. back, col. 2.      <sup>15</sup> could.      <sup>16</sup> with.

<sup>17</sup> seeing.      <sup>18</sup> that.


in these two realmes ye maye commaunde<sup>1</sup> at your  
 pleasure without fyndynge any parson to do or say to  
 y<sup>e</sup> contrary of your wyl and pleasure / and to the  
 4 entent that ye shall suerly byleue what great loue<sup>2</sup> I  
 bere vnto you, I wyl that myne all only doughter  
 ye shall haue to your wyfe, so that ye be not bound to<sup>3</sup>  
 none other; syr, know for trouthe the great desyre  
 8 that I haue to haue you tary styll here with me  
 mouethe me thus to do / I haue none other eyre but  
 my doughter / wherby after my deth ye shal be lord  
 and heyre of the realmes<sup>4</sup> that I holde / and in the  
 12 meane season I wyll that the moyte of the reuenewe of  
 thes realmes<sup>4</sup> shall be yours, for your company pleaseth  
 me so well<sup>5</sup> that I wolde neuer haue you to departe<sup>6</sup>  
 hens.'

and that he may  
 demand aught  
 that he pleases;

to prove the  
 great love he  
 bears him, the  
 admiral offers  
 Huon his  
 daughter in  
 marriage, pro-  
 vided he has not  
 already a wife.

The lady is the  
 admiral's only  
 child, and on his  
 death the mar-  
 riage would make  
 Huon lord of the  
 realms;  
 meanwhile, the  
 admiral offers  
 him half the  
 revenues of his  
 kingdom.

16 ¶ Of the complayntis that Huon made to<sup>3</sup>  
 the admerall of Perse on<sup>7</sup> the emperour of  
 almayne / and of the socours that the  
 admyrall promysyd to<sup>3</sup> Huon. Ca. C.xxviii.

20  Hen Huon<sup>8</sup> vnderstode y<sup>e</sup> admyral, he  
 sayd, 'syr, knowe for trouthe *that* it  
 is .iiii. yerys past syn I was maryed  
 to<sup>3</sup> a noble lady who passeth in beaute  
 24 al other *that* be alyue in thes dayes,  
 & when<sup>9</sup> I remember her all my body and harte  
 trymbelethe for sorowe / when I thynke of the trowble /  
 dyspleasure / and pouerte that she is in / & therfore,  
 28 syr, I thanke you of the great honoure and curtesye  
 that of youre bountye ye do<sup>10</sup> offer me.' 'I praye to<sup>3</sup>  
 god that he may rewarde you, Huon,' quod the  
 admyrall; 'syn<sup>11</sup> it is so *that* ye haue a wyfe, I hold

Huon replies, that  
 four years past  
 he was married  
 to a noble lady  
 of surpassing  
 beauty,  
 that when he  
 remembers her  
 it is with great  
 sorrow, for she is  
 now in trouble  
 and poverty,

and thanks the  
 admiral for the  
 great honour he  
 offers him.

<sup>1</sup> anything. <sup>2</sup> and affection. <sup>3</sup> vnto.  
<sup>4</sup> and Dominions. <sup>5</sup> entirely. <sup>6</sup> from. <sup>7</sup> vppon.  
<sup>8</sup> had well. <sup>9</sup> Fol. cxiii. col. 1. <sup>10</sup> omitted.  
<sup>11</sup> seeing.

The admiral  
demands of Huon  
why his wife is in  
such distress,  
and what  
Christian prince  
is so bold as to  
trouble him.  
Huon tells how  
he left his city of  
Bordeaux be-  
sieged by the  
Emperor of  
Germany,  
who had taken  
the city,  
and cast his wife  
into prison.

The admiral bids  
Huon take  
comfort;

he will come to  
his aid, and make  
war on the  
Emperor with all  
his forces,

and oblige him  
to make full  
restitution.

But Huon desires  
not to shed  
Christian blood,

but to visit the  
holy sepulchre,  
and then, on  
returning to his  
own country, to  
rescue his wife  
from danger.

His wife was the  
daughter of  
Gaudys, the  
admiral of  
Babylon and  
Egypt.

you well excusyd. But I praye you shew<sup>1</sup> me for what  
cause youre wyfe is in suche case / or what chrysten  
prynce is so hardy<sup>2</sup> to troubyll you or<sup>3</sup> do you any  
dyspleasure?' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'when I came out of 4  
my countree I lefte my citey of Burdeaux besegyde by  
the emperour of Almayne / who hath taken my citey  
and slayne my men, and some<sup>4</sup> kepethe in saruage, and  
my wyfe set<sup>5</sup> in pryson, and there kept in great 8  
pouertye and mysery / the whiche when I remembre,  
sorowe<sup>6</sup> so<sup>7</sup> grypethe my harte, that all my membres<sup>8</sup>  
trymbelythe for<sup>9</sup> dyspleasure' / 'Huon,' quod the  
admyral, 'I praye you<sup>3</sup> leue your sorowe and dys- 12  
pleasure and cast it fro you, and take Ioye and comforte /  
for by the holy lawe that I haue reseyuyd, I shall so  
ayde and socoure you, that the emperoure who hath  
done<sup>1</sup> you so many dyspleasures, I shall make hym 16  
suche warre, that whether he wyl or not,<sup>10</sup> the damage  
and losse that ye haue had,<sup>11</sup> I shall constrayne hym to  
make full restytucyon / for I shal lede with me in your  
company such nombre of people, that all the valeys and 20  
mountaynes shall be coueryd withe people.'<sup>12</sup> 'Syr,'  
quod Huon, 'of the curtesye & socours that ye offer me  
I humblye thanke you / but yf it please our lorde<sup>13</sup>  
Iesu Chryste, who hathe aydyd me out of many 24  
pelles / I hope he wyll so ayde me that I shall not  
nede to make<sup>14</sup> warre and<sup>15</sup> to dystroye<sup>16</sup> the chrysten  
blode / but, syr, fyrste I wyll<sup>17</sup> go to the holy sepulture /  
& then I wyll retourne into my countre / and do what 28  
I can to get my wyfe out of daunger and of<sup>15</sup> the  
payne that she is in / syr, the wyfe that I haue  
weddyd was doughter to the admyrall Gaudys who  
helde as then Babylon and all the realme of Egypte.' 32  
Then Huon shewyd hym all the mater howe he came

<sup>1</sup> vnto.    <sup>2</sup> as.    <sup>3</sup> to.    <sup>4</sup> bee.    <sup>5</sup> put.

<sup>6</sup> and greefe.    <sup>7</sup> sore.    <sup>8</sup> and ioynts.    <sup>9</sup> with.

<sup>10</sup> for.    <sup>11</sup> and receiued.    <sup>12</sup> them.    <sup>13</sup> and Sauour.

<sup>14</sup> any.    <sup>15</sup> omitted.    <sup>16</sup> Fol. cxiii. col. 2.    <sup>17</sup> shall.

by the fayre Esclaramonde / wherof the admyrall was  
sore abasshydde for the great maruaylles that he<sup>1</sup> hard  
Huon declare, and so were al other that harde it,  
4 and sayde one to another, that without that<sup>2</sup> Huon  
had bene welbelouyd with<sup>3</sup> our lord Iesu chryst, he  
coud neuer haue scapyd the deth with one of the lefte  
aduentures that he had shewyd vnto the admerall.  
8 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'the Emperoure of almayne hath  
taken my citey and my wyfe, and destroyed my men /  
and hathe taken in to his handys all my lordys and  
sygnoryes / but by the grace of god I shall do so  
12 moche to get them agayne / and yf I can not attayne  
therto, then I shall retourne agayne to<sup>4</sup> you to haue  
your socoure and ayde.' 'Huon,' quod the admerall,  
'put all melancoly fro you / for yf ye gyue me know-  
16 lege that ye canne not haue your wyl of this Emperour /  
I shall brynge you people innumerable / that all  
chrystendome shal trymble for fere of you / and I<sup>2</sup>  
shall render to<sup>4</sup> you your wyfe and all your londis,<sup>5</sup>  
20 and your men that be in pryson or in saruage, &  
I shall put the Emperour into your handis to do with  
hym youre pleasure, elles I shall not leue in all his  
lande neyther citey nor towne standynge vpon the  
24 erthe.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'of this I thanke you  
hartely / but, syr, I muste worke another waye fyrste /  
for <sup>6</sup>when I scapyd fro the goulfe of Perce I promysyd  
to<sup>4</sup> god, that or<sup>7</sup> I went into m[y]ne<sup>8</sup> owne countre to  
28 go and vyset the holy sepulture in Ierusalem, and to  
make warre vpon the sarasyns, or<sup>7</sup> I made any warre  
vpon any chrysten men / but, syr, yf I may get of the  
emperour by fayre speche my londe and my wyfe,  
32 I shall serue hym with good<sup>9</sup> harte; for as long as I  
leue, I shall make no war against any chrysten man yf

Huon relates how  
he came by  
the fair  
Esclaramonde,  
and all who heard  
it marvelled  
greatly.

If Huon cannot  
regain his city,  
wife, lords and  
seignories taken  
by the Emperor  
of Germany, he  
will ask succour  
of the admiral.

Then will the  
admiral make all  
Christendom  
tremble for fear  
of Huon; he will  
regain for him  
his wife, and  
lands, and men,  
and deliver the  
Emperor into his  
hands, or he will  
leave neither city  
nor town stand-  
ing in the  
Emperor's land.

Huon has  
promised God  
before returning  
home, to visit the  
holy sepulchre,  
and to make war  
upon the  
Saracens.

He hopes to  
recover his land  
and wife from the  
Emperor by fair  
speech,

<sup>1</sup> hadde.      <sup>2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> of.      <sup>4</sup> vnto.

<sup>5</sup> and Signiories.      <sup>6</sup> Fol. cxliii. back, col. 1.      <sup>7</sup> before.

<sup>8</sup> mone in text.      <sup>9</sup> all my.



for if right can be shown him he desires to make no war against Christian man. The admiral will go with Huon to the holy sepulchre, and take with him 50,000 men to make war on the Saracens.

Huon tells the admiral how this good deed will cause him to be crowned in the empire of heaven.

I may haue ryght and reason shewyd to<sup>1</sup> me' / 'syr,' quod the admerall, 'of this that ye say I can<sup>2</sup> you good thanke / but by the grace of god I shall go with you the vyage to the holy sepulture, and take with me 4 l.M. men to make warre agaynst the paynims and sarasyns suche as byleuethe not in god, and I shall put to my payne with all my powre to exalte and encrease the law of Iesu chryste.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'ye haue 8 sayd nobeyle; yf ye do thus<sup>3</sup> great grace and glory parpetuall ye shall deserue / wherby ye shalbe crownyd aboute in the imperyall heueyn.' Now leue we to speke of this mater. 12

¶ How the admerall of Perse assemblyd moche people, and he & Huon, with all his armye, toke the see and came to the port before the citey of Angory, whereas they 16 founde a great nombre of paynims & sarasyns redy to defende the porte.

Ca. C.xxix.

The admiral sends orders through Fersia for the men of war to make ready, and appoints the day on which they are to embark for the Holy Land.

All come at the time assigned. Meanwhile, Huon and Barnard oftentimes visit the city of Tauris,



After that the admerall and Huon had 20 deuysid to gether of many thyngys / the admerall sent out his letters and brefes commaundyngethrough<sup>4 5</sup> Perse, <sup>6</sup>and made<sup>6</sup> men of warre to be redy; 24 and gaue them a day to be redy to go with hym, sertefyenge them that his nauy of shyppes shulde be redy for the transportynge of hym and of<sup>7</sup> them / the whiche was done, and euery man 28 came at the day that was assyngnyd. in the mean season Huon and Barnard wente often tymys together and vysytyd the citey of Thauris, where as moche

<sup>1</sup> vnto.

<sup>2</sup> giue.

<sup>3</sup> thus do.

<sup>4</sup> out.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. cxiii. back, col. 2.

<sup>6-6</sup> and Media.

<sup>7</sup> omitted.

honoure was made to<sup>1</sup> them / wherof Huon and  
 Barnard oftentymys thankyd god of the good ad-  
 uenture that he had sente them. Thus as ye haue  
 4 harde the admeral of Perce assemblyd<sup>2</sup> great nombre  
 of people, and made hym redy & enteryd into his  
 shyp, and all other in to dyuers shypys, and shypyd  
 theyr armure and horsys;<sup>3</sup> Huon, who desyryd to ples  
 8 the admyrall, toke hys owne lytell shyp and dys-  
 chargyd it, and toke all the presyous stonys & dyd put  
 them into another shyp, the whiche y<sup>e</sup> admyrall had  
 delyueryd to serue hym.<sup>3</sup> then he sayd to<sup>1</sup> the admyrall,  
 12 'syr, I know well<sup>4</sup> the lytell shyppe that I came in  
 hether is not to serue in the warre, & therfore, syr, as  
 it is, I do gyue it<sup>1</sup> you' / wherof the admyrall had  
 great ioye, for in al the worlde ther was none such  
 16 of beautye nor of ryches. Then Huon gaue the  
 admyrall a bussell of the stonys, and to<sup>1</sup> the lordys  
 together, and they thankyd Huon of his curtesye and  
 larges / of all the stonys he kepte to his owne vse but  
 20 .iii.C., and gaue awaye all the resydewe. Then he  
 enterid into the shyp that was apoyntyd for hym / and  
 then euery man enteryd in to theyr shypys, the  
 whiche were well furnysshyd and vytayld<sup>5</sup> / then y<sup>e</sup>  
 24 admyrall toke<sup>6</sup> leue of his doughter, <sup>7</sup>& <sup>7</sup> <sup>8</sup>weyed vp  
 aneres and lyft<sup>9</sup> vp the saylys, and they had suche  
 good wynde that a <sup>10</sup>none they were far fro the porte;  
 a goodly syght it was to behold the nauy / for at theyr  
 28 departyng, they made such noyse with trompettis <sup>11</sup>and  
 tabours<sup>11</sup> & hornes that all the see range<sup>12</sup> therof /  
 great ioye<sup>13</sup> had Huon & Barnarde of the grace that god  
 hadde sent them / so longe they sayld with<sup>14</sup> wynde  
 32 and sayle, that they enteryd in to the great see or

where much  
honour is shown  
them.

Huon, to please  
the admiral, dis-  
charged his own  
little ship, took  
out of it all the  
precious stones,  
and put them into  
another ship,  
which the admiral  
gave him.

To the great joy  
of the admiral,  
Huon gives him  
his beautiful boat.  
To the admiral  
and the lords  
Huon gives a  
bushel of the  
precious stones,  
keeping for his  
own use but  
three hundred.  
He entered the  
ship appointed for  
him;  
all the rest like-  
wise embark.

The admiral takes  
leave of his  
daughter;  
the anchors are  
weighed, the sails  
spread, and a fair  
wind drives them  
quickly from the  
port.  
The departure of  
the ships was a  
goodly sight.

<sup>1</sup> vnto.    <sup>2</sup> a.    <sup>3</sup> and.    <sup>4</sup> that.    <sup>5</sup> for the wars.

<sup>6</sup> his.    <sup>7-7</sup> who pitifully wept at her Father's departing.

<sup>8</sup> then they.    <sup>9</sup> hoysed.    <sup>10</sup> Fol. cxv. col. 1.

<sup>11-11</sup> Drummes.    <sup>12</sup> did ring.    <sup>13</sup> and gladnesse.

<sup>14</sup> good.

They enter the Caspian Sea, and see afar off the city of Angore. Its admiral was powerful and rich, and, seeing from one of the towers of his palace, so vast a navy advancing, wondered greatly. He knew the Persian ships by their banners, but he saw in the forecastles banners of white with red crosses.

He gives orders that every man in the city should arm and prevent the Christians from landing. The noise and confusion in the city was so great that the admiral of Persia and Huon, and all with them, could hear it.

The admiral sees they will meet great resistance at their landing. Huon enquires what people possess the city.

Caspys, & then they saw a fare of a<sup>1</sup> cetye stondyng by the see syd, callyd the citey of Angore, wherin there was<sup>2</sup> an admyral ryght pusaunt and ryche / and the same tyme he was in one of the<sup>3</sup> towres of his palays, 4<sup>4</sup> when he sawe<sup>5</sup> so<sup>5</sup> pusaunt a<sup>6</sup> nauey come saylynge<sup>7</sup> towardis his citey / he had great maruayle /<sup>8</sup> for he knewe well the shyppis were of Perce by the penons and baners that he sawe wayunge in<sup>9</sup> the shyppys, and 8 on<sup>9</sup> the other parte he saw in y<sup>e</sup> toppes and fore-castelles baners stondynge, all of whyght, and therin red crosses / then he sayd to<sup>10</sup> his lordis that were abought hym / ‘syrs, I am greatly<sup>11</sup> abasshyd what 12 meanethe yonder great flete: syn<sup>12</sup> this citey was won by Reyngnalte of Mountaban / there came neuer chrysten man here / and I haue more maruayle to se the baners and arme of Perce y<sup>e</sup> which thes chrysten men 16 do bere in<sup>9</sup> theyr shyppis’ / then he<sup>13</sup> went downe and puplysshyd in the citey that euery man shuld arme them and go to the port to defend<sup>14</sup> that the chrysten men shulde not londe there / then the crye and larum 20 began in the citey so great and orryble, withe the noyse of <sup>15</sup>hornes and busyns, trompettis and tabours<sup>15</sup> / so that the noyse of them range vpon the see, so that the Admyral of Perse, and Huon, and such as were on<sup>9</sup> 24 the see myght well here them / Then the admyrall sayd to<sup>10</sup> Huon / ‘syr, I se<sup>16</sup> well<sup>17</sup> at <sup>18</sup>our londynge we shall haue great batayle and resystence’ / ‘syr,’ quod Huon, ‘I pray you what people be they that haue that 28 citey in gydynge, and who is lorde therof?’ ‘Syr,’ quod the admyrall, ‘knowe for trouthe<sup>17</sup> this citey is

<sup>1</sup> faire.      <sup>2</sup> dwelt.      <sup>3</sup> his.      <sup>4</sup> and.

<sup>5-5</sup> and perceiued such a.      <sup>6</sup> omitted.      <sup>7</sup> so fast.

<sup>8</sup> and was sore dismayed and abashed.      <sup>9</sup> vpon.

<sup>10</sup> vnto.      <sup>11</sup> dismayed and.      <sup>12</sup> seeing.

<sup>13</sup> the Admirall.      <sup>14</sup> it.

<sup>15-15</sup> Trumpets and Drummes, Hornes, and Basons.

<sup>16</sup> and perceiue.      <sup>17</sup> that.      <sup>18</sup> Fol. cxv. col. 2.

great and well peopled / they byleue not in god / and  
 a<sup>1</sup>.xx. yeris passyd, this cite was wonne by a lorde  
 Fraunce callyd Reyngnalte of Mountaban, and he  
 4 made it to be chr[y]stenyd; and then at<sup>1</sup>.viii. yeris  
 after, it was wonne agayne vpon the<sup>2</sup> chrysten men by  
 the admyrallis son: the which admyral was lord  
 therof when it was won. And nowe agayne they be all  
 8 paynymys and Sarasyns as ye maye se vpon the see  
 syde, they ar redy to abyde for vs and to defende theyr  
 porte.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'we ought greatly to thanke  
 our lorde Iesu chryst of this fayre aduenture / when we  
 12 se before vs the enemyes of our chrysten faythe / & by  
 the grace of<sup>3</sup> Iesu<sup>4</sup> this daye we shall do so moche that  
 the cite and the inhabytauntis therin shal be in our  
 handys to vse them at our pleasure' / 'syr,' quod the  
 16 admyral /<sup>5</sup> 'god<sup>6</sup> gyue<sup>7</sup> grace that it may so be<sup>8</sup> / great  
 grace our lorde god shall do to<sup>9</sup> vs, yf we maye wyne  
 this cite.' Then the admyrall causyd his men to be  
 armyd /<sup>10</sup> then they sawe halfe a lege fro the cite a  
 20 porte or hauyn / the which was not kept nor defendyd,  
 bycause the admyral of Angory wold not Issue out  
 farof fro his cite, tyll<sup>11</sup> he sawe what countenaunce  
 the chrysten men wolde make. Then the admyrall of  
 24 Perce and Huon auausyd them selfe so forwarde, *that*  
 they caste out they[r] aneres and launcyd out theyr  
 botys well garnysshyd with men, archars and crosbowes,  
 so that they lonyd at this porte<sup>12</sup> without any daunger.  
 28 Then the shypys drewe to the londe & <sup>13</sup>vnschyppyd  
 theyr armure and horses, & so euery man lonyd  
 excepte suche as were sygnd<sup>14</sup> to kepe the shyppes /  
<sup>10</sup> then euery man leyt<sup>15</sup> on<sup>16</sup> theyr horses and ordaynyd  
 32 .iii. batayles / the fyrste was led by duke<sup>2</sup> Huon, and

The city, says the  
 admiral of Persia,  
 is great and  
 inhabited by  
 unbelievers;  
 twenty years past  
 it was taken by a  
 lord of France  
 and made  
 Christian,  
 but eight years  
 after it was again  
 won by Saracens.

The admiral and  
 Huon determine  
 to take the city  
 and use it at  
 their pleasure.

The men are  
 armed,  
 and half a league  
 from the city they  
 see a haven  
 undefended.

Here they land  
 without danger,

leaving some to  
 guard the ships.  
 They are arranged  
 in three divisions,  
 the first led by  
 duke Huon with  
 20,000 men;

<sup>1</sup> about.      <sup>2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> our Lord and Sauour.

<sup>4</sup> Christ.      <sup>5</sup> I beseech almighty.      <sup>6</sup> to.      <sup>7</sup> vs the.

<sup>8</sup> be so.      <sup>9</sup> vnto.      <sup>10</sup> and.      <sup>11</sup> vntill.

<sup>12</sup> in sauegard &.      <sup>13</sup> Fol. cxv. back, col. 1.      <sup>14</sup> assigned.

<sup>15</sup> mounted.      <sup>16</sup> vpon.

the second by a  
great lord of  
Persia, marshal  
of the host ;  
the third by the  
admiral of Persia  
himself,  
who rode from  
rank to rank,  
admonishing his  
men to do their  
duty valiantly.

with hym. xx.M. men of hault and hye corage ; the second was led by a great lorde of Perce, who was marshall of the hoste / the thyrd, gydyd the admyrall of Perce / who rode fro ranke to ranke, admonesshyng 4 his men to do theyr deuours<sup>1</sup> valyauntly ; then a soft pase they drew in batayle towards the citey.

¶ How the admerall & Huon toke the porte and fought with the admyrall of Angorie, 8 and discomfytyd hym, and toke the citey / and how after<sup>2</sup> Huon went in to the desertys of Abillant to serche aduentures.

Ca. C.xxx. 12

When the admiral  
of Angore saw  
that the  
Christians had  
landed,



Hen the admyrall of Angore saw and parsayuyd that the chrysten men had taken londe, and were re<sup>3</sup>dy to geue bataile, and were comynge towardys 16 the citey, he ordaynyd and rengyd

he divided his  
men into four  
parties.

his bataylis, & deuydyd them in<sup>4</sup> .iiii. partys, and set them to be led and gydid by such as he thought best ; then he auauuncyd forwarde and was to the nombre of 20 l.M. men / when these .ii. hostis saw eche other, there was none of them but that feryd the dethe / the day was fayre & clere, & so they aprochyd, and al at a frusshe<sup>5</sup> of<sup>6</sup> both partyes dassed together in suche 24 wyse, that by reason of the powder & dust that rose<sup>7</sup> by theyr horses, the sonne that was fayre and bright waxed darke, and the shote of<sup>6</sup> bothe partyes flew so faste and as thicke as thoughe it had snowed / at theyr 28 fyrste metynge, many sperys were broken, and many a knyght borne to the erthe, so that they coud neuer releue<sup>8</sup> after, but laye on the ground amonge the horse fete, and there dyed in doloure / there were manye 32

The two hosts  
met together with  
such force that  
the bright sun  
waxed dark,

and many a  
knight was killed  
under the horses'  
feet.

<sup>1</sup> endeauours.

<sup>2</sup> afterward.

<sup>3</sup> Fol. cxv. back, col. 2.

<sup>4</sup> to.

<sup>5</sup> rush.

<sup>6</sup> on.

<sup>7</sup> did rise.

<sup>8</sup> be releued.



horses rynnynge abrode traylynge theyr brydels after  
 them, and theyr maysters lyeng<sup>1</sup> in the blude & <sup>2</sup> myre /  
 great slaughter there was made on<sup>3</sup> bothe partyes / and  
 4 Huon, who went brekinge y<sup>e</sup> great presses, where as he  
 slewe so many paynims that euery man feryd hym, he  
 sawe where the admyrall of Angoryes nephue was who  
 had slayne a christen knyghte / <sup>4</sup> they ran eche at other  
 8 so freslye,<sup>5</sup> that the paynym brake his spere vpon  
 Huon; and Huon faylyd hym not, but gaue hym so  
 marueylous<sup>6</sup> a stroke that his spere passed thurgh his  
 body, and so<sup>7</sup> fell<sup>8</sup> to the erth and dyed / then Huon  
 12 ran at another and gaue hym suche a<sup>9</sup> stroke that  
<sup>10</sup> he persyd<sup>10</sup> thurgh his shyld and body / and with  
 drawynge out of the spere, he fell to the erth, and neuer  
 relyuyd after / and so the .iii. and .iiii.<sup>11</sup> he saruyd in  
 16 lyke maner, and <sup>12</sup> dyd so<sup>13</sup> that he slew .viii. or <sup>14</sup> his  
 spere brake,<sup>4</sup> then he drewe out his good<sup>15</sup> sword / &  
 therwith he dyd suche dedes that it was ferefull to  
 beholde hym / he cutte legges and armes, and rassyd of  
 20 helmes so that none of his enemyes durste aproche  
 nere<sup>16</sup> hym / but they fledde before hym. as y<sup>e</sup> byrde  
 dothe before the hauke, he brake asonder the thyke  
 presses; he dyd so to be feryde that his enymyes left  
 24 hym / for he neuer stroke<sup>17</sup> man with a full stroke but  
 he<sup>18</sup> was slayne. Also with hym was Barnarde his  
 cosyn, who euer folowyd hym & dyd merueylous in  
 armes, for he was a sharp and an eger knyght. <sup>19</sup> Also  
 28 the admyrall of Angory enforsyd hym selfe to do  
 damage to<sup>16</sup> y<sup>e</sup> christen men / he sawe were the admyrall  
 of perce was sleynge of his men / and came and ranne  
 at hym; and the admyrall of perce sawe hym &

Huon encounters  
 the nephew of the  
 admiral of  
 Angore,

and slays him.

After Huon had  
 slain eight of the  
 paynims, his spear  
 broke,  
 but he did  
 fearful deeds  
 with his good  
 sword.

Barnard followed  
 Huon, and  
 worked marvels  
 in the fight.

The admiral of  
 Angore attacked  
 the admiral of  
 Persia;

<sup>1</sup> dead vpon the erthe.    <sup>2</sup> in the.    <sup>3</sup> vpon.    <sup>4</sup> and.

<sup>5</sup> so fiercely *after* ran.    <sup>6</sup> and so great.    <sup>7</sup> he.

<sup>8</sup> downe.    <sup>9</sup> maruailous.    <sup>10-10</sup> it passed.    <sup>11</sup> more.

<sup>12</sup> Fol. cxvi. col. 1.    <sup>13</sup> valiantly behaue himselfe.

<sup>14</sup> before.    <sup>15</sup> omitted.    <sup>16</sup> vnto.    <sup>17</sup> any.

<sup>18</sup> that receiued it.    <sup>19</sup> And.

each bore the  
other to earth,

but they were  
separated by their  
men.

The force of the  
Saracens was so  
great that the  
admiral of Persia  
could not re-  
mount, and was  
obliged to fight  
on foot.

He was rescued  
by Huon and  
Barnard.

Huon kills the  
admiral of  
Angore,

encounteryd with hym by such force<sup>1</sup> that eche of  
them bare<sup>2</sup> oder to the erth / then q[u]yely they  
releuyd them<sup>3</sup> with theyr swerdes in there handes,  
wyllynge eche<sup>4</sup> of them to slee<sup>5</sup> other / y<sup>e</sup> whiche had<sup>4</sup>  
bene done in dede, &<sup>6</sup> there men had not come and  
socouryd them / but theder came so many of<sup>7</sup> bothe  
partyes that the .ii. admyralles had no power on<sup>8</sup> them  
to towche<sup>2</sup> other ; weth great force came theder Paynymys<sup>8</sup>  
and Sarasyns so *that* the cristen men coude not  
remount vp agayne the admyral of Perce / but was  
fayne to fyght a fote / and had bene in great iopardy<sup>9</sup>  
and<sup>6</sup> Huon and Barnarde had not come and rescuyd<sup>12</sup>  
hym ; they came theder hastely when they harde the  
showtynge and cryenge that was made aboute the  
admyral of Perce / and they brake a brode<sup>10</sup> the great  
prese of the paynymys. And when they sawe Huon<sup>16</sup>  
aproche nere<sup>11</sup> them they were sore afayde / <sup>12</sup>they  
knewe hym <sup>13</sup>well, and departyd,<sup>14</sup> and sperclyd<sup>15</sup> a  
brode, and durste not abyde / and Huon, seynge y<sup>e</sup>  
admyrall of Perce a fote amonge his enymyes with his<sup>20</sup>  
swerde valyauntly defendynge hymselfe, whiche shulde  
but lytyl auaylyd yf he had not bene quickly socowryd /  
<sup>12</sup>when Huon sawe hym he sayd : ‘O ryght pusaunte  
Admyral, haue no doute’ / then Huon toke a spere out<sup>24</sup>  
of the handes of a paynyme whome he had slayne / and  
there with he ranne at y<sup>e</sup> admyral of Angory, and gaue<sup>16</sup>  
so horryble<sup>17</sup> a stroke *that* the spere passyd thorowe his  
body more then a fote / and so<sup>18</sup> fell downe dedde<sup>28</sup>  
amonge his men / wher of y<sup>e</sup> Paynymys were sore<sup>19</sup>  
abasshyde when they sawe theyr lorde lye dedde on<sup>20</sup>  
the erth ; <sup>12</sup>then Huon quickly toke the admyralles

<sup>1</sup> and puissance.    <sup>2</sup> the.    <sup>3</sup> selues.    <sup>4</sup> both.  
<sup>5</sup> each.    <sup>6</sup> if.    <sup>7</sup> on.    <sup>8</sup> one of.    <sup>9</sup> and danger.  
<sup>10</sup> asunder.    <sup>11</sup> vnto.    <sup>12</sup> and.    <sup>13</sup> Fol. cxvi. col. 2.  
<sup>14</sup> parted.    <sup>15</sup> spread.    <sup>16</sup> him.    <sup>17</sup> and so vehement.  
<sup>18</sup> hee.    <sup>19</sup> dismayed and.    <sup>20</sup> vpon.

horse by the rayne<sup>1</sup> and came to<sup>2</sup> the admyral of Perce, and mounts the  
 where as he was fyghtyng a fote / and sayd, 'syr, admiral of Persia  
<sup>3</sup>lepe on<sup>3</sup> this horse, for the paynymys and Sarasyns ar on his riderless  
 4 desconfyed' / 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, 'blyssed be horse.  
 the oure that<sup>4</sup> ye were borne / for by your excellente  
 prowes I am sawyde and all myn hoste, and haue<sup>5</sup> ouer  
 come myn enemyes, / then the Admyrall mountyde on<sup>6</sup>  
 8 y<sup>e</sup> good horse, wherof he was ioyful; and so he and  
 Huon and Barnarde delte suche strokes among the  
 Sarasyns / *that* they were constrayned to fle and turne The Saracens  
 there backes / <sup>7</sup>then they were chassyd by such force were forced to  
 12 *that* they enteryd in to the citey one with a noder / they re-entered  
 then the christen men slewe the paynymes and Sarasyns, the city with the  
 men, women, and chyl drene, that<sup>8</sup> pyte it was to se Christians in  
 them lye dedde on<sup>6</sup> heppes in y<sup>e</sup> stretes / so that the pursuit,  
 16 bloode of them that were slayne, ranne in the strettes to and the Saracen  
 the horse pastours; fynally by the hey prowes of Huon men, women, and  
 and by the pusaunce of the admyrall of Perce, the children were  
 the paynymys and Sara<sup>9</sup>syns were discomfyted in the citey killed by the  
 20 of Angory. when the sleynge was sessyd, and that the Christians.  
 admyrall and Huon sawe how they had ouercome theyr  
 enemyes / they sessyd sleynge of the pepyll / <sup>7</sup>they  
 wente in to the temples, tours, & palysses, where in  
 24 many paynymys & Sarasyns were withdrawen / they Those who had  
 were take to vertue,<sup>10</sup> promysynge to saue theyr lyues hidden in the  
 yf they wolde leue the<sup>11</sup> law of Macomyte and byleue temples and  
 in<sup>12</sup> Iesu chryst / and so many were chrystenyd, and palaces, Huon and  
 28 such as wold not were slayne / when the admyrall and Barnard saved  
 Huon sawe that the citey was become chrystenyd / if they consented  
 then th[e]y sette theyr offecyers, prouostis, and baylyes to be christened,  
 to gouerne the citey, and with them .ii.M. persons to  
 32 kepe y<sup>e</sup> citey. Thus they taryed ther<sup>13</sup> .viii. dayes, but if they  
 refused, they  
 were slain.  
 The victors set  
 officers over  
 the city, and,  
 having tarried  
 there eight days,

<sup>1</sup> of the bridle.    <sup>2</sup> vnto.    <sup>3-3</sup> mount vpon.    <sup>4</sup> euer.

<sup>5</sup> vanquished and.    <sup>6</sup> vpon.    <sup>7</sup> and.    <sup>8</sup> great.

<sup>9</sup> Fol. cxvi. back, col. 1.    <sup>10</sup> mercie.

<sup>11</sup> false and detestable.    <sup>12</sup> our Sauour and Redeemer.

<sup>13</sup> by the space of.

made ready to  
depart.

They set forth,  
leave the Caspian  
Sea,  
enter the  
Euphrates river,  
and thence pass  
into the great sea.

They coast the  
desert of Aby-  
lante in bright  
weather and a  
fresh wind.

Huon and the  
admiral talk over  
their adventures,  
and praise God  
for their success.

The admiral has  
great desire to see  
the Holy City.

Huon hopes to  
reach it,  
but the chief  
object of his  
voyage is the  
destruction of all  
unbelievers.

The travellers  
meet with no  
adventure for  
eight days.

Huon laments the  
fate of  
Esclaramonde.

<sup>1</sup> then they made redy to depart, and trussyd & newe  
wyttelyd theyr shyppes / <sup>1</sup> then they enteryd in to  
theyr shyppes, <sup>2</sup> trompetes, and <sup>3</sup> busyns, & tabours  
made <sup>4</sup> noyes, <sup>1</sup> the mareners weyed vp theyr ancrs and <sup>4</sup>  
hyssed vp theyr sayles, & sayled so longe that <sup>5</sup> they  
were out of <sup>6</sup> great see of caspus, and enteryd in to the  
great floude of eufrates / the whiche dissendeth in to  
the great see / when they were passed the ryuer / they <sup>8</sup>  
costydde the desertis of abylande / the sesone was  
fayr and clere, and the wynde freshe. Thus <sup>7</sup> they  
sayled by this great see, the admyrall and Huon stode  
at the borde syde of theyr shyppe and deuysed <sup>8</sup> of <sup>12</sup>  
theyr aduentures, & laudyde <sup>9</sup> god of his grace <sup>10</sup> that he  
had done to <sup>11</sup> them. 'Huon,' quod the admyrall,  
'great desyre I haue <sup>12</sup> to se the holy citey wher our  
lord god was crucifyede and layed in sepulture.' 'syr,' <sup>16</sup>  
quod Huon, 'by y<sup>e</sup> grace of god we shall ryght well <sup>13</sup>  
come theder, & I hope he shall do <sup>11</sup> vs <sup>14</sup> greater grace <sup>15</sup>  
as to ayede vs to conquere and to <sup>16</sup> dystroye them <sup>17</sup> in  
our way that byleueth not on our holy law / for *that* is <sup>20</sup>  
the chef <sup>18</sup> entent of our vyage.' Thus they deuysed  
togydder the space of .viii. dayes *withoute* fyndynge of  
any aduenture ; <sup>1</sup> so on <sup>19</sup> an euennynge Huon all alone  
stode lenynge ouer the shyppe bord / beholding the <sup>24</sup>  
see, y<sup>e</sup> which was playne and peasable, then he remem-  
brede y<sup>e</sup> duches Esclaramonde his wyfe / therewith the  
teres fel <sup>20</sup> downe his vysage, & sayd, 'a, ryght noble  
lady, when I remembre in <sup>21</sup> what <sup>22</sup> danger I left you in, <sup>28</sup>  
and in what pouerte & mysery ye be in, <sup>23</sup> I haue no <sup>24</sup>  
membre but *that* trymblyth for the dysplesure that I

<sup>1</sup> and. <sup>2</sup> and the. <sup>3</sup> omitted. <sup>4</sup> great. <sup>5</sup> vntill.

<sup>6</sup> the. <sup>7</sup> as. <sup>8</sup> demysed in text. <sup>9</sup> prayed.

<sup>10</sup> for. <sup>11</sup> vnto. <sup>12</sup> I haue after admyrall.

<sup>13</sup> and shortly. <sup>14</sup> farre. <sup>15</sup> yet.

<sup>16</sup> Fol. cxvi. back, col. 2. <sup>17</sup> all those. <sup>18</sup> cheefest.

<sup>19</sup> vppon. <sup>20</sup> ran tenderly. <sup>21</sup> omitted. <sup>22</sup> peril and.

<sup>23</sup> nowe. <sup>24</sup> ioynnt nor.

am in, and for fere left y<sup>e</sup> false emperoure cause you to  
 dye or<sup>1</sup> my retoure,' then he begane to make great  
 sorwe<sup>2</sup> / then<sup>3</sup> Barnarde, who was not farre fro hym,  
 4 sayd / 'A, syr, ye know well that in all the fortunes  
 and aduentures that hath come to<sup>4</sup> you god hathe  
 ayeded you and sende<sup>5</sup> you fro the peryll of deth /  
 therfore take<sup>6</sup> comfort to yourself, and laude and pryse  
 8 god for that he sendeth<sup>4</sup> you / and doute not yf ye  
 haue perfyte hope and trust in hym he wyll ayed and  
 confort you / <sup>7</sup>he neuer forgeteth them *that* with good  
 harte serueth hym.' Thus with suche wordes Barnard  
 12 comforted Huon / <sup>7</sup>then the admyral came and lent  
 downe by Huon / and deuysede togyder of<sup>8</sup> dyuers<sup>9</sup>  
 thynges / the same tyme there rose vp a wynd and a<sup>10</sup>  
 tempeste so great and so horryble that the sayles were  
 16 broke in dyuers places, & some mastes brake and flewe  
 ouer the bordes of the shyppe / the see begane to be  
 wode<sup>11</sup> and furyous / so that euery man though[t] to  
 haue bene peresshyde: the fortune of this tempest was  
 20 so horryble /<sup>12</sup> euery man / deuoutly called vpon our  
 lorde god to saue them fro that<sup>13</sup> perryll.<sup>14</sup> 'syr,' quod  
 Huon, 'I pray <sup>15</sup>you shewe me what countre is yonder  
*that* I se before me, we were happy and<sup>16</sup> we myght  
 24 aryue there and cast our ancrs vnder the rocke that I  
 se ther' / 'syr,' quod y<sup>e</sup> Admyrall, 'we be aryued at an  
 yll<sup>17</sup> port, for we be nere to the deserts of abylande;  
 on<sup>18</sup> yonder mountayne that ye se is conuersant an  
 28 enemy, who hath causyd many a shyppe and vesseyll  
 to be drowned in this see, wherby we be all in great  
 aduenture<sup>19</sup> to be lost / for none can aproche to this  
 rocke / but *that* he is slayne & stranglyd<sup>20</sup> by the

Barnard consoles  
him.

There suddenly  
rose up a great  
tempest;  
the sails and  
masts were  
broken in diuers  
places.

Huon demands  
the name of the  
country he sees  
before him.

It is an evil port,  
inhabited by an  
enemy who slays  
and strangles all  
who approach.

<sup>1</sup> ere.      <sup>2</sup> and greefe.      <sup>3</sup> but.      <sup>4</sup> vnto.      <sup>5</sup> saued.

<sup>6</sup> good.      <sup>7</sup> and.      <sup>8</sup> about.      <sup>9</sup> and sundrie.

<sup>10</sup> omitted.      <sup>11</sup> rough.      <sup>12</sup> as.      <sup>13</sup> the.

<sup>14</sup> and danger that they were in.      <sup>15</sup> Fol. cxvii. col. 1.

<sup>16</sup> fortunate if.      <sup>17</sup> euil.      <sup>18</sup> vpon.      <sup>19</sup> daunger.

<sup>20</sup> slayne *after* strangled.



Every man is  
much afraid,  
and the admiral is  
anxious to  
withdraw from  
the place.

Huon must have  
speech of this  
enemy;  
if he displeases  
him he will strike  
off his head.  
The admiral  
declares that  
500 Huons could  
not resist him.

Huon is  
determined to  
visit him;

the admiral tries  
to dissuade him,  
but in vain.

Barnard wishes to  
go with Huon;

enemy that ys there, / then euery man was in great  
fere, and the Admyrall sayd to<sup>1</sup> y<sup>e</sup> mareners / 'syr, I  
pray you if it may be let vs draw out of this quarter' /  
'Syr,' quod Huon, 'me thynke ye are to sore<sup>2</sup> abasshyd / 4  
for by that lorde that made me to his semblaunce,  
I shall neuer haue ioye in<sup>3</sup> my harte tyll<sup>4</sup> I know why  
that enemy causethe them to perysshe<sup>5</sup> *that* pas<sup>5</sup> this  
waye / I shall neuer rest tyll<sup>4</sup> I haue spoken with 8  
hym, and yf he do any thyng contrary to my pleasure,  
I shall stryke of his hede.' 'Huon,' quod the admyral,  
'I haue great maruayle of that ye do saye / for yf there  
were .v.C. suche as ye be / within an owre ye shulde 12  
all be dede and strangelyd.' 'Syr,' quod Huon,  
'dought not<sup>6</sup> that / for thoughe I shuld dye in the  
quarrell, I wyll go se hym and know the cause why he  
letteth or troubelethe this passage / or<sup>7</sup> it be .iii. dayes 16  
to an ende I shall go and speke with hym<sup>8</sup> what  
soeuer fortune.'<sup>8</sup> 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, 'in you it  
is to do your owne wyll: <sup>9</sup>syn it pleseth you I must  
be content / but yf ye wold beleue me ye shuld not 20  
take on<sup>10</sup> you that vyage.'<sup>11</sup> 'Syr,' quod Huon, all  
smylynge, 'I haue my hope<sup>12</sup> in<sup>13</sup> god<sup>14</sup> and in y<sup>e</sup> vyrgyn  
Mary his mother,<sup>14</sup> who hathe<sup>15</sup> hether vnto<sup>15</sup> sauyd  
me,<sup>16</sup> and so I hope they<sup>17</sup> wyll do<sup>18</sup> yette / for it is a 24  
comune prouerbe sayde,<sup>17</sup> whome that<sup>14</sup> god wyll ayde<sup>19</sup>  
no man can hurte.' 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, 'I praye  
to<sup>1</sup> our lorde god to defende you fro all yll / and<sup>20</sup>  
gyue you<sup>21</sup> grace to retourne agayne in sauegarde' / 28  
'syr,' quod Huon, 'I thanke you.'<sup>22</sup> Then Barnarde  
rose vp & sayd, 'dere cosyn, I requyre you<sup>20</sup> let me go

<sup>1</sup> vnto.      <sup>2</sup> dismayed and.      <sup>3</sup> at.      <sup>4</sup> vntill.

<sup>5-5</sup> so fast.      <sup>6</sup> you.      <sup>7</sup> before.

<sup>8-8</sup> what fortune soeuer commeth therof.      <sup>9</sup> for.

<sup>10</sup> vppon.      <sup>11</sup> and enterprize.      <sup>12</sup> and trust.

<sup>13</sup> almightie.      <sup>14-14</sup> omitted.      <sup>15-15</sup> heretofore.

<sup>16</sup> from death.      <sup>17</sup> he.      <sup>18</sup> Fol. cxvii. col. 2.

<sup>19</sup> and succour.      <sup>20</sup> to.      <sup>21</sup> the.      <sup>22</sup> heartily.

- with you' / <sup>1</sup>then the admyrall sayd / 'syr, I desyre  
 you<sup>2</sup> be contente that I and Barnarde maye keep  
 you company, and we shall haue with vs for y<sup>e</sup> more  
 4 sauegard of our parsones .CCCC. hardy knyghtys' /  
 'syr,' quod Huon, 'by goddys grace I wyll go alone,  
 none shall go with me but my selfe and Iesu Chryste,  
 and his blyssyd mother, in whose sauegard I commyt  
 8 my selfe' / when Barnard hard that he had great  
 sorowe at his harte, and so had the admyrall, when  
 they sawe<sup>3</sup> they coude not tourne hym<sup>4</sup> fro his<sup>5</sup>  
 vyage.<sup>6</sup> Then Huon armyd hym<sup>7</sup> and toke leue of the  
 12 admyrall and of the other lordys, and of Barnard, who  
 made great sorow for his cosyn Huon, who all alone  
 wold go in to the desertes<sup>8</sup>; when Huon had taken his  
 leue, he was sette a londe,<sup>9</sup> and made the synyne of  
 16 the<sup>10</sup> crosse on<sup>11</sup> his breste. Then he mountyd vpon the  
 mountayne, but or<sup>12</sup> he was the halfe waye / a great  
 wynde arose on<sup>11</sup> the see / so that the tempeste was  
 great and orryble / <sup>13</sup>so that<sup>13</sup> the cordys and cables  
 20 of the shypys with the admyrall brast asonder / <sup>14</sup>so  
 that<sup>14</sup> parforce they were fayne to take the see and sayle  
 at aduenture as wynde and wether wolde serue them /  
<sup>15</sup>so that parforce<sup>15</sup> they were cast out of that great  
 24 se, wherof the admyrall and Barnarde, and all the other  
 lordys had great fere, and greatly complayned for  
 Huon, who alone without company was mountid on<sup>11</sup>  
 the moun<sup>16</sup>teyne; and as he was goynge he lokyd  
 28 downe into the see / and saw the marucylous tempest  
 that was in the see, so that of .CC. shypes that he  
 had lefte there with the admyral, he coude then se no  
 more but .ii. together, for al the rest were separate one  
 32 fro another in great peryll<sup>17</sup> / then he began<sup>18</sup> to wepe

the admiral will  
 also accompany  
 him with 400  
 brave knights.

But Huon desires  
 to go alone;

Barnard and the  
 admiral are much  
 grieved.

Huon arms  
 himself,  
 takes leave of his  
 comrades,  
 and is set ashore.

When he was  
 half way up the  
 mountain, a storm  
 arose, which  
 forced the  
 admiral to sail as  
 the wind would.

The ships are  
 cast about on the  
 great sea, and  
 all have great  
 fear for Huon.

Huon sees the  
 storm, and how  
 all the ships were  
 scattered.

<sup>1</sup> and. <sup>2</sup> to. <sup>3</sup> that. <sup>4</sup> Huon. <sup>5</sup> dangerous.

<sup>6</sup> and enterprize. <sup>7</sup> self. <sup>8</sup> to seke aduentures.

<sup>9</sup> shoare. <sup>10</sup> a. <sup>11</sup> vppon. <sup>12</sup> ere. <sup>13-13</sup> whereby.

<sup>14</sup> omitted. <sup>15-15</sup> whereuppon.

<sup>16</sup> Fol. cxvii. back, col. 1.

<sup>17</sup> and danger.

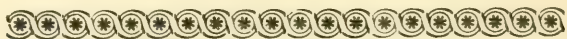
<sup>18</sup> pitifully.

He began to weep  
for his wife  
Esclaramonde,  
whom he thought  
never more to  
see.

He prayed to God  
to aid him in his  
need,

to cause Barnard  
to reach a haven  
in safety,  
and to allow  
Huon to see his  
friends again.

and *complayne* for his wyfe<sup>1</sup> Esclaramonde, whome he  
thought then neuer more<sup>2</sup> to se, bycause he was in that  
deserte, and saw the shyppes dreuyn fro the londe in  
great fere of lesyng. Then he knelyd downe and held 4  
vp his handys to<sup>3</sup> y<sup>e4</sup> heuen, requyryng our lorde god  
of his petye and grace to ayde and to gyue hym  
comforte so<sup>4</sup> that he myght scape<sup>5</sup> thence alyue / and  
to saue the shyppes and to bringe them agayne in 8  
saueward to the place fro whence they departyd. Then  
petuously<sup>6</sup> he *complaynyd* for his wyfe and doughter,  
& sayde, 'a, ryght noble lady Esclaramonde, when I  
remembre the paynes, and dolours, and pouerties, that 12  
by my cause ye suffer and haue sufferyd / all my body  
sweteth for<sup>7</sup> payne & doloure / Alas, I had thought in  
short space to haue ayded and socuryd you / but now I  
se well<sup>8</sup> our departynge is come for euermore / in yonder 16  
perelous see, I se my cosyn Barnard and dyuers other  
lordys, that by my cause are in the way of pardyssyon  
without god to<sup>9</sup> ayde<sup>10</sup> them, whom I humbly requyre  
to sende them that grace that they may aryue at 20  
some<sup>11</sup> porte, and that I may ones<sup>12</sup> see them agayne to  
the entente that I may fyght agaynste the paynyns  
and sarasyns in exaltynge the law of Iesu chryst.'  
Thus Huon of Burdeaux made his prayers to our lorde 24  
Iesu chryste.



13 ¶ How Huon wente so long in this deserte  
that he founde Cayine and spake with hym  
a longe season, and howe he begyld 28  
Cayne and departid. Ca. cxxxi.

<sup>1</sup> the faire.    <sup>2</sup> more *after* se.    <sup>3</sup> vnto.    <sup>4</sup> omitted.  
<sup>5</sup> from.    <sup>6</sup> greenously.    <sup>7</sup> by.    <sup>8</sup> that.    <sup>9</sup> doe.  
<sup>10</sup> and succour.    <sup>11</sup> good.    <sup>12</sup> once *after* them.

<sup>13</sup> Fol. cxvii. back, col. 2.



4 **A**fter *that* Huon had thus made his  
 prayers to<sup>1</sup> our lorde god, he rose vp  
 & blyssyd him with y<sup>e</sup> synyne of y<sup>e</sup>  
 crosse recommaundyng hym selfe  
 to<sup>1</sup> our lorde god, & so<sup>2</sup> came to the  
 heyght<sup>3</sup> of the mountayne; <sup>4</sup>when  
 he was there al his body trymbelyd with traueyle, so  
 8 *that* he was<sup>5</sup> faynte, and feble. Then he lokyd all<sup>6</sup>  
 about,<sup>7</sup> and sawe in a fayre medow a clere fountayne,  
 thether he went to refresshe and to reste hym / then he  
 layde hym down on<sup>8</sup> the gras to refresshe hym or<sup>9</sup> he  
 12 wolde drynke, he was so hote / and when he was well  
 colyd he came to the fountayne and dranke<sup>10</sup> a lytyll  
 and wasshyd his handys and fase / <sup>11</sup>then he went  
 further into the foreste and coude fynde nother towne  
 16 nor castell, gardayne, nor trees with frute, wherof he  
 was<sup>12</sup> sorowfull,<sup>13</sup> and so serchyd all day to fynde som  
 man or woman, but all was in vayne / & when he saw  
 that the sonne went to rest and coude fynd no creature,  
 20 he was sore anoyed<sup>14</sup> / he chose out a tree & there<sup>15</sup> layd  
 hy[m]<sup>16</sup> downe & slepte; & in the mornyng when he  
 saw the sonne ryse, and that his beamys spred abrode  
 on<sup>8</sup> the erthe / then<sup>2</sup> he arose and blessyd hym / and so  
 24 wente forth in to the deserte and found nother man  
 nor woman / beste nor byrde, wherwith <sup>17</sup>he was sore  
 dyspleaunt<sup>17</sup> / deuoutly he callyd vpon our lorde god  
<sup>18</sup>Iesu chryst, and on his blessyd mother the vyrgyn  
 28 Mary,<sup>18</sup> prayenge them<sup>19</sup> to haue in theyr<sup>20</sup> <sup>21</sup>tuissyon<sup>22</sup>  
 his body and sowle / and that he myght yet ones see  
 his wyfe<sup>23</sup> and <sup>24</sup>chylde.<sup>24</sup> He went so long in this

On reaching the top of the mountain, Huon was faint, and fell down.

He refreshed himself at a clear fountain, and,

going further into the forest, could find neither town, castle, gardens, neither were there men nor women.

He was sore annoyed, and laid him down to sleep under a tree.

At sunrise he arose and went into the desert, but met neither man nor woman, beast nor bird. He called on our Lord Jesus Christ and the Virgin Mary to let him see once again his wife and child.

<sup>1</sup> vnto.    <sup>2</sup> omitted.    <sup>3</sup> toppe.    <sup>4</sup> but.    <sup>5</sup> verie.  
<sup>6</sup> round.    <sup>7</sup> him.    <sup>8</sup> vpon.    <sup>9</sup> before.    <sup>10</sup> thereof.  
<sup>11</sup> and.    <sup>12</sup> right.    <sup>13</sup> and sore displeased.  
<sup>14</sup> discomforted.    <sup>15</sup> vnder.    <sup>16</sup> hyd in text.  
<sup>17-17</sup> being sorowfull and angrie.    <sup>18-18</sup> omitted.  
<sup>19</sup> him.    <sup>20</sup> his.    <sup>21</sup> Fol. cxviii. col. l.    <sup>22</sup> and keeping.  
<sup>23</sup> the faire Escleremond.    <sup>24-24</sup> Clariet his Daughter.

At last he reached  
a plain, where he  
saw a tun of oak  
bound with iron,  
which rolled  
about in the  
circuit of the  
plain,

and beside it,  
lying on the  
ground, a great  
mallet of iron.

As the tun passed  
by him, he heard  
a piteous voice  
within com-  
plaining.

He approaches  
near,  
and asks who lies  
within it.

No answer comes  
forth.

Huon conjures  
the voice to reply  
to him.

He who is in the  
tun replies that  
Cain is there who  
slew his brother,

deserte that at last he cam to a playne of a<sup>1</sup> .iii. bowe  
shote large, and in y<sup>e</sup> myddes therof he sawe a tonne  
made of the hart of oke, bound all abought with  
bandys of Iron / and it euer<sup>1</sup> tournyd and rollyd in the 4  
playne, and neuer passyd out of the cyrcuyte of the  
playne / and besyde the tonne he saw where there lay  
on<sup>2</sup> the grounde a great mall of Iron / great maruayle  
Huon had<sup>3</sup> when he saw this tonne thus<sup>4</sup> rolle abought 8  
without sease lyke a tempeste, and as it passyd by  
hym<sup>5</sup> he hard a petuous<sup>6</sup> woice within the tonne sore  
complaynynge, and when he had hard it .ii. or .iii.  
tymys he aprochyd nere to the toune, and sayd, 'thou 12  
that art in this tonne / speke to<sup>7</sup> me & shew me what  
thou art or what thyng thou nedyst<sup>8</sup> of, and why thou  
art put there' / Then when he that was in this<sup>9</sup> tonne  
harde Huon,<sup>10</sup> restyd styl & spake no word.<sup>11</sup> when 16  
Huon sawe that it wold not speke,<sup>10</sup> sayd / 'what so  
euer thou art, I coniure y<sup>e</sup> by hym that creatyd all the  
worlde, and by his sone our lorde Iesu chryst, whom he  
sent downe to suffer dethe and passy[on] on the tre of 20  
the crosse to redeme his frendys, who by the synne of  
Adam and Eue were in lymbo, and by his glorious  
resurreccyon, and by his aungels and archangels,  
Cherubyns and Seraphyns, and by all his holy sayntys, 24  
I coniure thee to shewe me what thou arte, & why<sup>12</sup>  
thou art set here in this tonne?' when he that was  
within the tonne hard how sore he was coniuryd,  
he answeryd and sayde / 'thou that hast coniuryd me, 28  
thou doeste great yll<sup>13</sup> to cause me to shew the y<sup>e</sup>  
trouthe / knowe suerly that I haue to name Cayme,  
and sone I was to<sup>7</sup> Adam & Eue,<sup>14</sup> and am he that  
slew my brother Abel by false and cursid enuy that I 32

<sup>1</sup> omitted.    <sup>2</sup> vpon.    <sup>3</sup> had after maruayle.

<sup>4</sup> thus after abought.    <sup>5</sup> Huon.    <sup>6</sup> pitifull.    <sup>7</sup> vnto.

<sup>8</sup> hast neede.    <sup>9</sup> the.    <sup>10</sup> he.    <sup>11</sup> and.

<sup>12</sup> and for what cause.    <sup>13</sup> euill.    <sup>14</sup> Fol. cxviii. col. 2.



had to<sup>1</sup> hym, bycause his oblacyons and dymes that he  
made to<sup>1</sup> god were exaltyd, and the fume therof went  
vpwarde to heuyn / and tho<sup>2</sup> that I made the fume  
4 wente downe warde / and when I sawe that, I slewe &  
mourderyd my brother Abell, wherfore, and for the  
great syn that I haue commytted, I am dampnyd to  
be and to suffer this merterdome with in this tonne  
8 wherin I am closyd brynnynge<sup>3</sup> and with serpentys,  
and todys here within deuouryth<sup>4</sup> me, and yet I can  
not dye / and here I shall be vnto<sup>5</sup> the day of Iuge-  
mente, and then my payne shall be doubelyd / Nowe  
12 haue I shewyd the thy demaund, wherfore I repute the  
but a fole / when thou art so hardy<sup>6</sup> to enter into this  
deserte where as neuer man enteryd and departyd  
without dethe / for knowe for trouthe<sup>7</sup> hether repayreth  
16 .ii. enemyes, fendys of hel, who shall sle the and bere  
thy sowle into heil without thou wylt do as I shall  
shewe the' / 'frende,' quod Huon, 'I pray the shewe  
me what it is that thou spekest of, or what thyng  
20 thou wylte that I shulde do, and I shall<sup>8</sup> do it to the  
entent that I may departe<sup>9</sup> hense / there is no thyng  
in the worlde but I shall do it for the, so thou shewe  
me the way how I maye departe<sup>9</sup> hens' / 'frende,' quod  
24 Cayme, 'I shall shew the what thou shalt do: thou  
shalte take this malle of iron that thou seest there  
& stryke therwith so long vpon this tonne tyl<sup>5</sup> thou  
breke<sup>10</sup> it, to the entent that I myght<sup>11</sup> issue out / &  
28 when I am delyueryd I shall set y<sup>e</sup> in sauegard in  
Ierusalem or in fraunce, or in what contre<sup>12</sup> thou wylte  
wysshe / yf thou do this that I haue sayd, & delyuer  
me fro this tourment, I shal set y<sup>e</sup> whersoever thou  
32 wylt be, in any lond <sup>13</sup>chrysten or hethen / and yf thou

and is therefore  
condemned to  
suffer this  
martyrdom until  
the day of  
Judgment.

None depart from  
this desert alive,

for it is inhabited  
by two fiends of  
hell, who will slay  
Huon unless he  
does as Cain  
shows him.

Huon will do  
whatever Cain  
asks him, if  
only he will show  
him how to  
depart thence.

Cain tells Huon  
to take the iron  
mallet and strike  
upon the tun till  
he break it.

Cain will then be  
delivered,  
and will set Huon  
in whatever  
country he may  
wish.

<sup>1</sup> vnto.      <sup>2</sup> those.      <sup>3</sup> burning.      <sup>4</sup> deuouring.

<sup>5</sup> vntill.      <sup>6</sup> as.      <sup>7</sup> that.      <sup>8</sup> will.      <sup>9</sup> from.

<sup>10</sup> hast broken.      <sup>11</sup> may.      <sup>12</sup> soeuer.

<sup>13</sup> Fol. cxviii. back, col. 1.

Huon refuses to  
set Cain free  
until he has told  
him the way  
hence;  
then he promises  
so to do.

Cain tells Huon  
to descend  
the mountain, to  
enter a ship, and  
pretend to the  
one man he will  
find in it that he  
is Cain himself,  
ready to destroy  
Christian men;

do not this that I haue sayd, or<sup>1</sup> it be nyght I shall  
cause the to dye with great tormentes, for anone thou  
shalt se come heder .ii. deuyls of hell, fowyll and  
howdeous to behold, and they shall strangle the & bere 4  
thy sowle into hell.' 2'O, verye god,'<sup>2</sup> quod Huon,  
'humbely I requyre<sup>3</sup> the to saue me fro this tourmente /  
Cayme,' quod Huon, 'thou spekyste<sup>4</sup> fayre and sayeste  
as thou lyste, but I wyll not delyuer the out of this 8  
tonne tyll<sup>5</sup> fyrst thou shewe me how I may departe  
hence' / then Cayme sayd, 'yf thou wylt promyse me  
by thy faythe and by thy parte of paradyse to delyuer  
me out of this tonne / I shall shewe the the maner 12  
howe thou shalte scape fro hense.' 'Cayme,' quod  
Huon, 'haue no dought, and that I promyse the  
to kepe my faythe / so thou shew me the maner how I  
may depart out of this deserte, I shal delyuer the out 16  
of thy tourmente.' Then Cayme sayd / 'thou shalte go  
by this lytyll pathe that thou seest here by on<sup>6</sup> thy  
ryghte hande / the whiche shall brynge the straye to  
the see syde, the whiche is not far<sup>6</sup> hense / <sup>8</sup>then go 20  
downe the mountayne where as thou shalt fynde a  
shyp, and therin but one man / but or thou<sup>9</sup> enter into  
the shyppe, blysse the thre tymys, for he that thou  
shalte fynde there is a fende of hell / and shewe<sup>10</sup> hym 24  
howe thou art Cayme scapyd out of the rollynge  
tonne, and byd hym to pas the ouer; and saye howe<sup>11</sup>  
thou wylte go and dystroye<sup>12</sup> the chrysten men that be  
in the worlde & brynge theyr sowlys into hell / and 28  
when he hereth the say thus, he wyll pas the ouer in  
sauetye / for it is longe synne that he hathe taryed for  
me / by cause he thynkethe I shulde scape out of this  
tonne. But thou must take with the this mall <sup>13</sup>of 32

<sup>1</sup> before.      <sup>2-2</sup> Ah, good Lorde.      <sup>3</sup> and beseech.  
<sup>4</sup> mee.      <sup>5</sup> vntill.      <sup>6</sup> from.      <sup>7</sup> vpon.      <sup>8</sup> and.  
<sup>9</sup> doest.      <sup>10</sup> vnto.      <sup>11</sup> that.      <sup>12</sup> slay all.  
<sup>13</sup> Fol. cxviii. back, col. 2.

- Iron on<sup>1</sup> thy necke to the entente that he shall the better byleue the.<sup>2</sup> ¶ ‘Cayme,’ quod Huon, ‘I pray the is this of trouth that thou hast sayd?’ / ‘frend,’  
 4 quod Cayme, ‘I lye neuer a worde. Nowe I praye the synne<sup>3</sup> I haue shewed the maner howe thou mayst scape / take this mall of Iron and breke asonder this tonne that I am in / that I maye be delyueryd<sup>4</sup> /  
 8 ‘Cayme,’ quod Huon, ‘I praye the<sup>5</sup> shewe me who is he that dyd put the into this tonne, & what is his name?’ / ‘syr,’ quod Cayme, ‘knowe for trouth that god of heuen set me here bycause I had dyspleasyd  
 12 hym for sleyng of my brother Abell, wherfore I haue sufferyd so moche payne and sorowe that more I can not endure / and therfore yet agayne I praye the<sup>5</sup> delyuer me<sup>6</sup> hense’ / ‘Cayme,’ quod Huon, ‘god  
 16 forbode that I shulye delyuer the syn<sup>3</sup> our lorde god haue set the there / know for trouth thou shalte neuer departe<sup>6</sup> thense without<sup>7</sup> it be by his commaundemente / for there shalte thou be euer for me / I had  
 20 rather be pariuryd then to fordo<sup>8</sup> that thyng that<sup>9</sup> god wyll haue done to punysse the for the ylls<sup>10</sup> that thou haste done / I knowe well as for the yll<sup>11</sup> that I haue done as in brekinge of my promyse to the,  
 24 god wyll lyghtly pardone me for it / abyde thou there with thy cursyd synnes / for as<sup>12</sup> by me thou shalte haue none other ayde.’

he is to fasten the iron mallet on his neck, that the man shall the better believe him. Huon is doubtful if this is true; but Cain never lies.

Huon enquires who put Cain into the tun,

and learns that God of Heaven set him there.

Therefore Huon will not release him;

Cain shall not depart thence except by the commandment of the Lord.

Huon feels sure he will be pardoned for thus breaking his promise.

- ¶ How Huon departid fro Caym and passed  
 28 the see in a veseyle gydyd by the deuyll, who byleuid it had bene Cayme / and Huon aryuyd at a citey callid Colanders, where as he found the admiral of perse

<sup>1</sup> vpon.

<sup>2</sup> and surely he will then passe the ouer.

<sup>3</sup> seeing.

<sup>4</sup> out of this paine and torment.

<sup>5</sup> to.

<sup>6</sup> from.

<sup>7</sup> excepte.

<sup>8</sup> vndoe.

<sup>9</sup> which.

<sup>10</sup> euils.

<sup>11</sup> euil.

<sup>12</sup> sure.

<sup>1</sup>and Barnarde his cosyn, who had layd  
sege to the citeye. Ca. Cxxxii.

Cain calls Huon  
traitor and liar.



Huon retorts;

Cain has well  
deserved his  
suffering, and  
shall shortly have  
more pain and  
sorrow.

Cain complains  
that Huon has  
subtly deceived  
him,

but owns that had  
Huon delivered  
him, he would  
have strangled  
the knight.

Hen Cayme<sup>2</sup> vnderstode Huon, he sayd,  
'A, thou false traytoure, by whome I <sup>4</sup>  
am begyld and mockyd / thou arte  
not worthy to be byleuyd in any  
thyng that thou sayeste, thou lvest  
worse than a dogge.' 'O thou false pariuryd traytoure, 8  
thou hast yll kept thy promys, thou art not worthy to  
be byleuyd, Cayme,' quod Huon, 'other good getteste  
thou none of me / for thou arte not worthy to be harde,  
when thou haste slayne thy dere brother by false enuy 12  
and cursyd treason wherof thou arte ful / go thy waye,  
traytoure, to moche yll<sup>3</sup> can not be done to<sup>4</sup> the / be  
contente with the tonne that thou arte in / thou  
nedyste not fere of any fresshyng nor of more 16  
fourtheryng for me, well hast thou deseruyd it, but  
within short tyme thou shalte haue worse payne and  
sorowe.' 'A, traytoure,' quod Cayme, 'and false lyer,  
thou hast loste thy parte of paradyse.' 'Thou lveste,' 20  
quod Huon / 'to<sup>4</sup> the, ought to be kepte nother faythe  
nor promys, bycause thou haste slayne Abell thy  
brother, wherfore thou arte nowe ponysshid, and well  
hast thou deseruyd it' / 'A, false lyer,' quod Cayme, 24  
'suptylly thou haste deseuyd<sup>5</sup> me by thy false wordys  
and subtyltyes / I see well thou shalte<sup>6</sup> go<sup>7</sup> hense and  
leue me styll in this payne.' 'sartaynely,' quod Huon,  
'that I promysed the was but to begyle the / for as by 28  
me thou shalt not come out without he commaunde it  
that set the here' / 'well, Huon,' quod cayme, 'knowe  
for sertayne that in all thy lyfe thou were neuer better  
counseyld, for yf thou haddest delyuerde me out in 32  
contynente I <sup>8</sup>wolde haue strangled the.' 'A, false

<sup>1</sup> Fol. cxix. col. 1.

<sup>2</sup> had well.

<sup>3</sup> euill.

<sup>4</sup> vnto.

<sup>5</sup> and mocked.

<sup>6</sup> wilt.

<sup>7</sup> from.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. cxix. col. 2.

fende,' quod Huon, 'yet thou hast no repentaunce of thyne yll<sup>1</sup> that thou hast done / I wyll go my waye, and thou shalt abyde here styll<sup>2</sup> for euer in<sup>3</sup> payne & 4 tormente' / there with Huon departyd and toke the mall on<sup>4</sup> his neke and enteryd in to the letyll waye that Cayme had shewyd<sup>5</sup> hym.

Huon departed the way Cain had shewn him.

¶ Now we wyll leue spekyng of Huon and speke 8 of the admyrall of Perce and of his armye on<sup>4</sup> the see. On<sup>4</sup> the seconde day the tempest sessyd and the see<sup>6</sup> calme and fayre / then the shyppes drew agayne togyder as it pleysede god, and aryuyd at a noble citey, 12 the whiche was as then in armanye called colanders, a great and a fayre citey / but after it was dystroyd by the noble duke ogyer y<sup>e</sup> danoyse, he went in to ynde / the admyrall<sup>7</sup> greatly compleyned for Huon 16 whom they had so lost / they though neuer to se hym more, and Barnarde his cosyn made suche sorowe that<sup>3</sup> pyte it was to se hym; y<sup>e</sup> Admyrall and all his lordes wepte<sup>8</sup> sore<sup>9</sup> for Huon, they thought ne[u]er<sup>10</sup> to se hym 20 agayne. But he that oure lorde Iesu chryste wyll haue sauyl can not peryse, for Huon the same tyme came downe the mountayne to come to<sup>5</sup> the porte where as the vesseyll laye and the deuyll with in it / when Huon 24 sawe the vesseyll and the fende with in it, who was so howdeous and horryble to regarde<sup>11</sup> that it was maruayle to se; he semyde well to be the deuyll of hell, his hede was as great as an oxe hede / his eyne more 28 redder then .ii. brynyng<sup>12</sup> coles, his tethe greate and longe, and as rought as a beyre, he caste fyre and smoke oute of his gorge lyke a forneyse, <sup>13</sup>it was no meruayl though Huon doutyd hym / for when he saw 32 him so fowle, he had great fere / and so lent hymselfe

To return to the Admiral of Persia, the tempest ceased on the second day, when the ships arrived at a city called Colanders.

The admiral laments the loss of Huon greatly: he and Barnard fear never to see him again.

But at that very time Huon was coming down to the ship with the devil in it, of which Cain had warned him; the fiend was hideous to look upon.

Huon had great fear,

<sup>1</sup> euill. <sup>2</sup> for euer after tormente. <sup>3</sup> great.

<sup>4</sup> vpon. <sup>5</sup> vnto. <sup>6</sup> waxed. <sup>7</sup> and his companye.

<sup>8</sup> and pitifully compleyned. <sup>9</sup> sore before wepte.

<sup>10</sup> nener in test. <sup>11</sup> beholde. <sup>12</sup> burning.

<sup>13</sup> Fol. cxix. back, col. 1.



and made the sign  
of the cross.

The enemy did  
not perceive the  
sign.  
Huon entreats  
God to counsel  
him how to deal  
with the fiend;

if he remains in  
the ship Huon  
will surely be  
slain.

If Huon escapes  
from this ad-  
venture, he will go  
to the Holy  
Sepulchre and  
make war on the  
Saracens.

Then Huon takes  
heart,

and calls on the  
fiend to give him  
passage over the  
sea.

The fiend refuses  
to let him go  
farther, and will  
certainly slay  
him and bear his  
soul to hell.

Huon, in no way  
abashed, says he  
is Cain;

to a roke the better to beholde hym / <sup>1</sup>then he blyssed  
hym with the synge of the crosse, recommaundyng  
hymselfe to the saue garde of our lord <sup>2</sup>Iesu chryst<sup>2</sup> /  
it fortun-ed so the same teme that y<sup>e</sup> enemy sawe hym 4  
not. ‘A, <sup>3</sup>very god,’<sup>3</sup> quod Huon, ‘I praye and  
requyre the humbly to conseyll me in what maner  
I shuld trust in this fowle fende who is fereful to  
beholde, I haue merueyll how I myght be aquentyd 8  
with hym, wheder I myght trust to be in the shyppe  
with hym / sertaynly I haue great dought that he wyll  
cast me in to the see or elles slee me on the other syde  
of, y<sup>e</sup> se I wote not what to do / for I most be fayne to 12  
trust hym, or elles<sup>4</sup> retourne in to the deserte, where  
as I shall dey <sup>5</sup>for rage,<sup>5</sup> and neuer to<sup>6</sup> se wyfe nor  
chylde. But syn<sup>7</sup> it is thus I shal aduenture myselfe  
with hym / and yf I may escape fro this aduenture, 16  
I shall go to the holy sepulture wher as our lorde Iesu  
chryst was quycke and dedde / and then I shal make  
warre vpon the Sarasyns’ / then duke Huon toke on<sup>8</sup>  
hym herte and corage, and with y<sup>e</sup> mal on<sup>8</sup> his neke he 20  
marchyd forth fersly / then he callyd the enemy and  
sayd / ‘O thou that kepest this wessell and passage,  
passe me in contynente ouer this see and sette me  
a londe on<sup>8</sup> the other syde’ / when the deuyll sawe 24  
Huon with the mal on<sup>8</sup> his neke and spekyng so  
fersly, he sayd, ‘what arte thou, wheder wylt thou go,  
or what dost thou seke for here, or how art *thou* so  
bolde to come heder, thou shalt neuer go ferther. But 28  
I shal cast the in the see or strangell the, and then  
bere thy soule in to hell.’

<sup>9</sup>¶ when Huon hard hym, he began to trymble, but  
he was no thinge abasshyd / for yf he had fayntyed or 32  
taryed to haue made answe-re he had incontynent be<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> and.      <sup>2-2</sup> god, but.      <sup>3-3</sup> good Lord.      <sup>4</sup> to.  
<sup>5-5</sup> with famine.      <sup>6</sup> more.      <sup>7</sup> seeing.      <sup>8</sup> vppon.  
<sup>9</sup> Fol. cxix. back, col. 2.      <sup>10</sup> beene.

dystroyed and slayne / but lyke a hardy knyght ful of  
 great prowes, & ferme in the fayth of Iesu chryst, sayd /  
 'hold thy pence, thou fole / for I am Cayme for whome  
 4 thou hast taryed here so longe / I came ryght<sup>1</sup> now out  
 of the rollynge tonne vpon the mountayne: hast the  
 and passe me ouer this arme of the see / for I shall  
 fynd nother man nor woman / that byleueth on<sup>2</sup> Iesu  
 8 chryst but I shall sle hym to the entent that hell maye  
 be fyllyd with theyr sowles' / when the fende harde  
 Huon say so he had great ioye, and sayde / 'Cayme,  
 whye haste thou made me tary here so longe as I haue  
 12 done, I am ioyfull of thy comynge / for I coulde neuer  
 haue departyd out of this place without thou haddest  
 bene deliuerid out of the tonne, therefore, Cayme, come  
 on thy waye, enter into this shyppe<sup>3</sup> / and I shal  
 16 brynge the where as thou wylte be / gladly I wyll passe  
 the ouer the see to the entente that thou shuldest sle  
 chrysten men and Sarasyns / to haue theyr sowles into  
 hell' / Then Huon enteryd into the shyppe com-  
 20 maundyng<sup>4</sup> hymselfe to our lorde Iesu chryste: and  
 sayd, 'quyckly passe me ouer' / or<sup>5</sup> Huon thought  
 that he had bene gone but .ii. legys, he was ouer on the  
 other syde, wherof Huon had great maruayle that he  
 24 was so sone ouer, and thankyd our lorde god that he  
 was out of that danger: then he toke leue of the  
 enemy, and sayd, 'farewell, I wyll retourne agayn  
 shortely, within these thre dayes thou shalte here  
 28 tydynge of me' / <sup>6</sup>then the fende answeryd shortely  
 and sayde, 'Cayme, go thy waye quyckely, & hast the  
 7 to the entent that when thou retournyst into hell, thou  
 shalte haue good chere of our maysters, who greatly  
 32 desyreth thy comynge' / then Huon departyd quyckely /  
 he thought euer the deuyll had folowed hym / <sup>8</sup>then  
 Huon<sup>9</sup> went so longe that he aprochyd to a citee

the fiend must  
 give him passage,  
 and then will  
 Cain slay all  
 Christians.

The fiend joyfully  
 invites Cain to  
 enter the ship.

he will gladly  
 take him over  
 the sea.

Very quickly the  
 ship arrives at  
 the land on the  
 other side of the  
 sea,  
 and Huon thanks  
 God for his  
 deliverance.  
 He takes leave of  
 the fiend,  
 promising to  
 return in three  
 days.

Huon departed  
 quickly, and  
 approached the  
 city of Colanders,

<sup>1</sup> euen.      <sup>2</sup> in.      <sup>3</sup> presently.      <sup>4</sup> recommending.

<sup>5</sup> Before.      <sup>6</sup> and.      <sup>7</sup> Fol. cxx. col. l.      <sup>8-9</sup> and he.

and in the even-  
ing entered it  
with the mallet  
on his neck.

The Saracens  
marvelled to see  
him come alone  
on foot, and  
armed,

and demanded of  
him who he was.

He is Cain, come  
to destroy all who  
believe in the law  
of Jesus Christ.

That night the  
paynims feasted  
Huon and  
welcomed him  
joyfully,

because the day  
before the admiral  
of Persia had laid  
siege to the city.

callyd Colanders / glad was Huon when he had loste  
the syghte of the <sup>1</sup>spryghte<sup>1</sup> / and in the euyunnyng he  
enteryd into the citey of colanders with the mall on<sup>2</sup>  
his necke / the paynims and Sarasyns<sup>3</sup> within the 4  
citey had great maruayle when he cam alone afote  
clene armyd into the citey / and amonge other there  
was one demaundid of hym what he was and why  
he wente so alone armyd / then Huon answeyrd hym 8  
fersly to abasshe hym therwith, and sayd, 'I am  
Cayme who by myne ylnes slew Abell my brother,  
wherwith god was angry with me / but or<sup>4</sup> it be longe  
tyme I shall take suche vengauunce that as many men, 12  
or women, or chyl dren, as I fynd byleuyng in the  
lawe of Iesu chryst, I shall dystroy them all in such  
wyse that the paynims and Sarasyns shal haue no  
dought for any yll<sup>5</sup> that they shall do to<sup>6</sup> them / for I 16  
shall dystroye and sle them all, nother sparynge olde  
nor yong' / when the paynims harde that they were  
<sup>7</sup>ioyfull / and that nyght saruyd well<sup>8</sup> Huon and made  
hym great feste, bycause they trustyd that he shulde 20  
dystroye all chrystendome, and sayd amonge them  
selues that he was as then<sup>9</sup> welcom thether bycause the  
citey was besegyed the day before by the admyrall  
of Perce / thus Huon had great ioie & feaste made to<sup>6</sup> 24  
hym ; and after supper he was broughte to<sup>10</sup> a<sup>11</sup> ryche  
chambre wherin he laye and slept<sup>12</sup> tyll<sup>13</sup> the nexte  
mornyng.

¶ <sup>14</sup>How Huon<sup>15</sup> had great ioie when he sawe 28  
the admyrall of Perce before Colanders  
where he foughte with the Sarasyns.

Ca. C.xxxiii.

<sup>1-1</sup> euill Spirit.    <sup>2</sup> vpon.    <sup>3</sup> that were.    <sup>4</sup> before.  
<sup>5</sup> euill.    <sup>6</sup> vnto.    <sup>7</sup> right.    <sup>8</sup> well after Huon.  
<sup>9</sup> as then after that.    <sup>10</sup> into.    <sup>11</sup> faire and.  
<sup>12</sup> soundly.    <sup>13</sup> vntill.    <sup>14</sup> Fol. cxx. col. 2.  
<sup>15</sup> of Bourdeaux.



After that y<sup>e</sup> admyral of Perce had  
 lefte Huon in the deserte of abylaunt  
 & how he had a great storme on<sup>1</sup> y<sup>e</sup>  
 see, & at y<sup>e2</sup> last there shyppes  
 assemblyd togyder & aryued at the  
 porte before the ceyte of colanders,  
 in the whiche cyete huon was<sup>3</sup> in / who was ryght  
 8 ioyous when he knewe that y<sup>e</sup> admyrall was come  
 theder to laye sege to the cete, and the admerall<sup>4</sup> was  
 sorowfull bycause they had lost huon, and speseyally  
 barnard hys cosyn, for he though neuer to haue seen  
 12 hym agayne. But he had shortly tydynges of hym as  
 ye shal here after / when the admerall was aryuyd at  
 y<sup>e</sup> porte, they armyd them<sup>5</sup> and ordeyned there men  
 as well as they myght to assayll the ceyte of colanders.  
 16 They issuyd out of there shyppys & came marchyng  
 towards the ceyte, and made a great assault / <sup>6</sup>then y<sup>e</sup>  
 paynymys<sup>7</sup> armyd them on all sydes and went to the  
 defences / then the chatelyne<sup>8</sup> of y<sup>e</sup> toune came to  
 20 huon, and sayd, 'come on forth, cayme, it is tyme for  
 you to shewe what ye can do / for here *with* out ar the<sup>2</sup>  
 cristene men assaylynge the ceyte / I pray you spare  
 them not,<sup>9</sup> we haue great trust in you' / 'syrs,' quod  
 24 huon, 'syn<sup>10</sup> I am in this ceyte ye nedde not to fere  
 any parson, anone ye shall se what I can do' / 'cayme,'  
 quod the capetayne, 'I pray you go on before, and we  
 shall folowe you' / 'well,' quod huon, 'with this mall  
 28 I shall astone them all' / the paynymes had great ioy  
 of his wordes, wenyng surely it had bene cayme /  
 then huon <sup>11</sup>armyd hym / and he hadde a good horse  
 brought to<sup>12</sup> hym, where vpon he mountyd / then he  
 32 and the paynymys Issuyd out of the citey and found as  
 then the admyrall of Perse and all his company redy

The admiral of  
 Persia had ar-  
 rived at the city  
 of Colanders  
 where Huon was,

although the  
 admiral and  
 Barnard were  
 lamenting that  
 never again  
 would they see  
 him.

The admiral  
 orders his men  
 to assault the  
 city.

The paynims,  
 fully armed, went  
 to the defences,

and the captain  
 calls on Huon to  
 show what he can  
 do.

Huon is to go  
 before, and the  
 rest will follow;  
 Huon will destroy  
 the enemy with  
 his mallet.

Huon, armed and  
 well mounted,  
 went out of the  
 city, and found  
 the men of the  
 Admiral of Persia  
 ranged in order of  
 battle.

<sup>1</sup> vppon. <sup>2</sup> omitted. <sup>3</sup> now. <sup>4</sup> and his companie.

<sup>5</sup> themselves. <sup>6</sup> and. <sup>7</sup> and Sarazins. <sup>8</sup> Captaine.

<sup>9</sup> for. <sup>10</sup> seeing. <sup>11</sup> Fol. cxx. back, col. 1. <sup>12</sup> vnto.

Huon takes no part in the fight, because he had been so kindly welcomed in the city.

He thanks God that once again he beholds the admiral and Barnard, and hopes, with the Lord's aid, to see his wife and child.

rengyd<sup>1</sup> in batayle. And when he sawe *that* the Sarasyngs were issuyd out, he set on<sup>2</sup> them fersly, and Huon, who was ioyfull of the aduenture that was fallen to him, he stepte out aparte to behold the batayle, and <sup>4</sup> wolde not medyll bycause he had bene so well reseuyd and feastyd in the cite by them of the towne. And he well parsayuid that the assaultes were of the realme of Perce, and how the admyrall & his cosyn Barnard <sup>8</sup> were there / wherof he hadde suche ioye that he wepte for gladnes, and thankyd god of y<sup>e</sup> good fortune that he had sent hym, and sayd: <sup>3</sup> 'O very god, ye ought<sup>3</sup> greatly to be laudyd,<sup>4</sup> for ye<sup>5</sup> neuer fayle<sup>6</sup> them at <sup>12</sup> tyme of nede *that* serueth you<sup>7</sup> / now I may well saye that with your grasyous ayde yet I shall ones<sup>8</sup> se my wyfe & my chylde' / thus Huon sayd to *himsel*fe beholdynge bothe batayles fyghtynge. 16

¶ Howe the cite of Colanders was taken by the admyrall of perce after he had wonne the batayle, and of the great ioye that was made to<sup>9</sup> Huon when he was knowen by <sup>20</sup> the admeral of Perse and by his cosyn Barnarde. Ca. C.xxxiiii.

The admiral set on his enemies; the slaughter on both sides was great. The men of the city were worsted, and were forced to grant the victory to their enemies.

10



Hen the admyrall of Perce sawe and parseuyuyd *that* they of the towne <sup>24</sup> were issuyd out, he marched forthe his batayles and set on<sup>11</sup> his enemyes / there was great slauter<sup>12</sup> on both partyes. But at the last they of the cite had the <sup>28</sup> worse, for the chrysten men were of a greater nombre then the paynymys<sup>13</sup> that were issuyd out, wherfore

<sup>1</sup> arriued.<sup>2</sup> vppon.<sup>3-3</sup> Ah, good Lord, thou oughtest.<sup>4</sup> prayd.<sup>5</sup> thou.<sup>6</sup> faylest.<sup>7</sup> thee.<sup>8</sup> more.<sup>9</sup> vnto.<sup>10</sup> Fol. cxx. back, col. 2.<sup>11</sup> vpon.<sup>12</sup> made.<sup>13</sup> and Sarazins.



- they were constraynyd to graunt the vycory to theyr  
 enemyes / the paynymes <sup>1</sup>tourned theyr backes<sup>1</sup> and  
 fled towardes theyr citey / & the admyrall and Barnarde  
 4 with theyr company chasyd them <sup>2</sup>and slew them,<sup>2</sup>  
*that* it was pety to se it / fynally the admyrall opressyd  
 them so sore, that he enteryd in to the citey with  
 them, and Barnarde & his company / and slewe and bet  
 8 downe the Sarasyns, that maruayle it was to see / the  
 blud that ran in<sup>3</sup> the stretys / when the admyrall sawe  
 how<sup>4</sup> he had the vycory / then he commaundyd to  
 seece the<sup>2</sup> sleyng / and that all suche as wold byleue  
 12 <sup>5</sup>on god Iesu chryst,<sup>6</sup> theyr lyues shuld be sauyd and  
 theyr goodes / and so all such as wold not be christenid  
 shuld be slayn incontynent and none sparyd, the  
 which was done / many<sup>7</sup> receyuyd chrystendome, and  
 16 such<sup>8</sup> as wold not were<sup>9</sup> slayne / thus as this citey was  
 taken; then Huon, who<sup>10</sup> enterid into the citey with  
 the admyralles men, came to the palays, where as  
 he sawe the admyrall and all the barons, & Barnarde  
 20 his cosyn / Huon had styl his malle in<sup>11</sup> his necke /  
<sup>12</sup>when he came into the hal he dyd<sup>13</sup> of his helme and  
 salutyd the admyrall & all the other that were there;  
 when the admyrall and his lordys sawe Huon, the<sup>14</sup> ioye  
 24 that they had no man<sup>15</sup> can tel. ‘O ryght<sup>16</sup> vertuous  
 knyght,’ quod the admyrall, ‘your comynge doth so  
 reioys me that I can not tell whether I dreme or not,  
 ye ar moche bounde to<sup>17</sup> god that he hathe geuen you  
 28 y<sup>e</sup> grace to saue you fro perell /, then the admyrall /  
 enbracyd Huon; and ye may well knowe that Barnarde,  
 his cosyn, had great ioye, & so had all the other /  
<sup>12</sup>then the admyrall sayd to<sup>17</sup> Huon, ‘syr, I pray you  
 32 shew me what aduentures ye have had syn ye departyd

The paynims fled  
to the city,  
pursued by the  
admiral and  
Barnard, who at  
length enter the  
city.

Seeing he had the  
victory, the  
admiral orders  
the slaughter to  
cease,  
and promises to  
spare all who will  
be baptized.

Many accepted  
Christianity,  
those who would  
not were slain,  
and thus was the  
city taken.

Huon comes to  
the palace, and  
salutes the  
admiral and all  
the others;  
their great joy  
no man can  
describe.

The admiral  
cannot tell if it be  
a dream or not;

he embraces  
Huon.

The admiral asks  
of Huon his  
adventures,

<sup>1-1</sup> retired.      <sup>2-2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> through.      <sup>4</sup> that.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. cxxi. col. 1.      <sup>6-6</sup> in our Lorde God.      <sup>7</sup> of them.

<sup>8</sup> as many.      <sup>9</sup> receiue were all.      <sup>10</sup> was.      <sup>11</sup> vpon.

<sup>12</sup> and.      <sup>13</sup> put.      <sup>14</sup> great.      <sup>15</sup> tongue.

<sup>16</sup> deere and.      <sup>17</sup> vnto

which he relates,  
to their great  
wonder.

All, and especially  
Barnard, are glad  
of Huon's coming.

The captain of the  
city, who was  
newly converted,  
desires the  
admiral to be his  
good lord.

Huon asks the  
admiral to give  
the keeping of the  
city to this noble  
man.

The admiral  
grants this for  
love of Huon.

The captain  
thanked them,  
and did homage  
to the admiral.

The captain  
promises to guard  
the city against  
all men,

and thus was  
Colanders taken.

fro vs' / then Huon shewyd them all as ye haue harde  
here before, and how he scapyd / when the admyrall  
and other vnderstode Huon they were neuer so<sup>1</sup> abasshyd  
in all theyr lyfe / of that he was so scapyd fro the 4  
handys of the deuyll, and sayd how<sup>2</sup> he was moche  
bounde to<sup>3</sup> god ; they were al glad<sup>4</sup> of the comynge of  
Huon, and specyally Barnarde / then the capetayne of  
the citey, who had newly receyuyd chrystendome, came 8  
to<sup>3</sup> Huon, and sayd / 'syr, I requyre you<sup>5</sup> desyre the  
admyrall to be my goode lorde<sup>6</sup> / for I promyse<sup>7</sup>  
faythefully to abyde here in this toun as his good and  
trew seruauant, kepyng <sup>8</sup>firmely the chrysten faythe, 12  
the whiche I haue newly receyuyd' / when Huon saw  
the capetayne who had receyuid hym in to his house at  
his fyrste comynge in to the citey, he wente to<sup>3</sup> the  
admyrall, and sayd / 'syr, I requyre you to geue the 16  
kepyng of this citey to<sup>3</sup> this noble man &<sup>9</sup> to holde it  
as his owne, and to do homage to<sup>3</sup> you for it' / 'syr,'  
quod the admyral, 'al *that* ye wyll I am agreable vnto ;  
I graunt it hym for the loue of you' / Then Huon 20  
thankyd the admyrall / the capetayne, seynge the great  
and ryche gyfte that the admyral had geuen<sup>3</sup> hym for  
the loue of Huon, he had great maruayle of y<sup>e</sup> great  
larges and courtesy that was done to<sup>3</sup> hym by meanes 24  
of Huon / <sup>10</sup>then he knelyd downe before them and  
thankyd them, and dyd homage to<sup>3</sup> the admyrall in  
the presence of all the lordys,<sup>11</sup> and promysid trewly to  
kype the citey agaynst all men that wold do any 28  
domage therunto, nor neuer to yeld it vp to<sup>3</sup> any  
parsone but alonly to the admyrall or to<sup>3</sup> hym *that*  
shall haue his comyssyon / thus<sup>12</sup> y<sup>e</sup> citey of Colanders  
was taken.

32

<sup>1</sup> amazed and.      <sup>2</sup> that.      <sup>3</sup> vnto.      <sup>4</sup> and right ioyfull.


<sup>5</sup> to.      <sup>6</sup> and Maister.      <sup>7</sup> promised.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. cxxi. col. 2.      <sup>9</sup> he.      <sup>10</sup> and.      <sup>11</sup> and barons.

<sup>12</sup> as yee haue heard.

¶ How the admyral of Perce and Huon of  
Burdeaux, and all theyr hoste, passyd by  
Antyoche and by Damas & came to the  
4 citey of Ierusalem to the holy sepulture,  
& was nobly receyuid be the kynge of  
Ierusalem / and how the Soudans messenger  
came and defied the admyrall of perce.

8 Ca. C. xxxv.

1  12 Then the admyrall and Huon sawe this  
citey thus<sup>2</sup> wonne and brought vnder  
their obeysaunce, and had stablysshed  
there a newe lorde and capetayne, and  
set prouostis, and baylyffes, and other

officers / then they toke aduyse together and deter-  
mynyd, syn they were alonde, to send backe agayne  
16 theyr nauy of shyppes into Perce / & they to go by  
londe to the citey of Ierusalem / for they had fro  
thence as they were but .x. <sup>3</sup>iouneys<sup>3</sup> vnto antyoche /  
and so to pas by that citey, and then to<sup>4</sup> Damas,  
20 & then<sup>5</sup> to Ierusalem, and there to do theyr offerynge;  
and yf by aduenture they founde in theyr waye other  
kyngis or admyrallis that wolde let or trouble them in  
theyr passyng, they sayd<sup>6</sup> they were of pusans suffycient  
24 to resyste agaynste them / and then they sayde how<sup>6</sup> fro  
Ierusalem the admyrall myght retourne by lond into  
Perce / vnto the ryuer Eufates / and there his nauy to  
mete hym, & so to conuey hym to<sup>4</sup> his citey of Thauris /  
28 & Huon to retourne to<sup>4</sup> Iaffe, and fro thence by water  
to retourne into fraunce: thus they concludyd to do /  
the which aduyce was laudyd<sup>7</sup> of all the lordys<sup>8</sup> of the  
hoste; af<sup>9</sup>ter this conclusyon thus taken / the admyrall

The admiral and Huon determine to send back their ships to Persia, and to go by land to Jerusalem through Antioch and Damascus.

They themselves were of sufficient might to resist any kings or admirals who should trouble them in their way. From Jerusalem the admiral could return by land to Persia; his navy could meet him at the river Euphrates and convey him to Tauris, and Huon could return to France by water from Jaffa.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. cxxi. back, col. 1.

<sup>4</sup> vnto. <sup>5</sup> so.

<sup>8</sup> and Barons.

<sup>2</sup> omitted. <sup>3-3</sup> dayes iourney.

<sup>6</sup> that. <sup>7</sup> and praised.

<sup>9</sup> Fol. cxxi. back, col. 2.

The ships, after  
setting ashore the  
things necessary  
for the journey by  
land, are  
discharged,

and their masters  
commanded to  
await the admiral  
in the river  
Euphrates.

The admiral  
ordered that  
merchants and  
others should  
send after his host  
supplies of food,  
and gave this  
charge to the new  
admiral of  
Colanders.

Every man was  
to be ready in the  
morning to go  
where it pleased  
the admiral,

and with great  
noise the admiral,  
Huon, and all the  
host entered the  
fields on their way  
to Antioch;

they reached the  
city on a Monday,

commaundyd his shyppis to be dyschargyd of all  
thyngis necessary to be caried by londe / the whiche  
was done dylygently<sup>1</sup> / theyr horses were sette a londe,  
and theyr tentys and paulyons trussyd vpon mulys, & 4  
Camelles, and Dromedaryes / the which caryag semyd  
a great host, there were so many together / the noyse  
and brute that they made semyd to be a newe worlde /  
<sup>2</sup>when al the shyppis were dyschargyd, the patrouns 8  
and maysters of the shyppis toke theyr leue of the  
admyrall, who commaundyd them expresly to abide  
for hym in the ryuer of Euphrates / and so they dyd.<sup>3</sup>  
Nowe let vs leue spekyng of them and turne to<sup>4</sup> ou[r]<sup>5</sup> 12  
fyrste<sup>6</sup> mater. ¶ when these shyppis were departyd &  
euery thyng trussyd / then y<sup>e</sup> admyral commaundyd  
thrughe<sup>7</sup> all the countre that all marchantis and other  
able to do it shulde sende after his host brede, wyne, 16  
and flesshe, and bysket to vytell his host / and the  
charge to se this done was geuyn to the newe admyrall  
of<sup>8</sup> Colanders / the whiche he dyd dylygently / when  
the admyrall of Perce saw<sup>9</sup> tyme to departe, he made it 20  
to be cryed<sup>10</sup> thrughe<sup>7</sup> the city by a trompet<sup>11</sup> euery  
man to<sup>12</sup> make hym redy to depart y<sup>e</sup> next mornyng to  
go whether it pleasid y<sup>e</sup> admyral; this was done, so  
that<sup>13</sup> an owre before the next day there was great 24  
brute & noyse made in the remouynge; then y<sup>e</sup> admyrall  
& Huon made them redy, & mountid on<sup>14</sup> theyr horsis  
& issued out of the citey and enterid into the feldis /  
then the hole hoste toke y<sup>e</sup> way towardis Antioche; 28  
of theyr iourneys I make no rehersaile: they<sup>15</sup> did<sup>15</sup>  
so that they passyd by low Armanye & by the hye  
<sup>16</sup>ermyne, and so on<sup>14</sup> a mondaye they came before  
Antyoche / where as they logyd that nyghte a longe<sup>17</sup> 32

<sup>1</sup> according to his commaundement. <sup>2</sup> and.

<sup>3</sup> accordingly. <sup>4</sup> vnto. <sup>5</sup> out in text. <sup>6</sup> former.

<sup>7</sup> out. <sup>8</sup> the cite of. <sup>9</sup> his. <sup>10</sup> proclaimed.

<sup>11</sup> that. <sup>12</sup> should. <sup>13</sup> at. <sup>14</sup> vppon.

<sup>15-15</sup> road forth. <sup>16</sup> Fol. cxxii. col. 1. <sup>17</sup> by.

- the ryuer<sup>1</sup> without that any parsone of the citey made any semblaunt to trouble or to let them / but they brought out of the citey into y<sup>e</sup> host brede, flesshe,<sup>2</sup> and wyne, and othe[r]<sup>3</sup> thyngys necessary for theyr meny<sup>4</sup> / wherof the admyrall and Huon were ryght ioyous,<sup>5</sup> and coude<sup>6</sup> them great thanke / and for that courtoyse the admyral wolde not suffer that any of his hoste shulde do any hurte or damage to<sup>7</sup> any parsone of the citey / then the nexte daye when they had dynyd, they toke theyr waye toward the citey of Damas / and as they wente thetherwarde they toke sartayne townes and castelles, and brought them vnder theyr obey-saunce / and such as were taken parforce and wolde not byleue in our <sup>8</sup>lorde god<sup>8</sup> Iesu chryste incontynent<sup>9</sup> were<sup>10</sup> slayne.<sup>11</sup> Thus wastynge and dystroyenge the countre in theyr waye, at laste they came before the citey of Damas; when they came thether they logyd abought the citey in the gardaines and subbarbes, and constraynyd them within the citey to brynge them vytayles / y<sup>e</sup> whiche they dyd for dought of the dystroyenge of theyr gardayns and frutys there; they laye one nyght, and the nexte daye they toke the way to Ierusalem, and had dyuers batayles by the waye / but they were of so great a pusaunce that none coude resyst<sup>12</sup> them; so longe rode this chrysten host that they came and logyd before Napelous, and there lefte theyr hoste, then the next mornynge the admyrall and Huon, and dyuers of the great lordys<sup>13</sup> of Perce,<sup>14</sup> departyd fro Napelous, to the nombre of foure thousande<sup>15</sup> knyghtis to accompany<sup>16</sup> them into the ci<sup>17</sup>tye of Ierusalem / thether they came abought none, where

and encamped by the river, supplied with food by the men of the city.

In gratitude for this, no man harmed any person of the city.

The next day they went towards Damascus,

and on their way took possession of certain towns and castles.

At Damascus they lodged in the gardens and suburbs, and obliged those within the city to furnish supplies.

The next day they set out for Jerusalem, fighting many battles by the way, but none could resist their power. They next lodged before Nablous, and Huon, the admiral, and about 4000 of the great lords of Persia, reached Jerusalem at noon on the next day.

<sup>1</sup> side.      <sup>2</sup> flesshe *after* wyne.      <sup>3</sup> othem *in text*.

<sup>4</sup> companie.      <sup>5</sup> ioyfull.      <sup>6</sup> gaue.      <sup>7</sup> vnto.

<sup>8-8</sup> Sauour and Redeemer.      <sup>9</sup> they.      <sup>10</sup> all.

<sup>11</sup> and brought to vtter ruine and destroyed.      <sup>12</sup> against.

<sup>13</sup> and barons.      <sup>14</sup> accompanied with them.      <sup>15</sup> valiant.

<sup>16</sup> guard.      <sup>17</sup> Fol. cxxii. col. 2.



They were  
joyfully received  
by the king, and  
the patriarch, and  
the arch-priest.

They made their  
offerings to the  
Holy Sepulchre,

and when they  
had accomplished  
their holy pil-  
grimage, all were  
splendidly feasted  
at the palace.

As they sat at  
dinner, a Saracen  
entered;

he was a  
messenger sent  
by the sultan  
to challenge the  
admiral to battle  
between Rame  
and Jaffa.

as they were receyuyd with great ioy of kyng Thybault  
and of the patryarke & arche pryst, who as then were  
in<sup>1</sup> Ierusalem / whom y<sup>e</sup> emperour Constantyne had  
lefte there and orderyd for the kepyng of the citey; 4  
when the admyrall of Perce, and duke Huon, &  
Barnarde, and other went and offeryd to the holy  
sepulture / then they went to the temple of Salamon  
and to<sup>2</sup> the holy temple of Symeon, where as they 8  
made theyr offerynges / and the next <sup>3</sup>day they dyd  
theyr other<sup>3</sup> pylgremages to<sup>2</sup> all the holy plases in the  
citey with great deuosyon and reuerence; when they  
had acomplysshyd theyr holey pylgremages, they 12  
retournyd to the paleyse of the kyng of Ierusalem,  
where as they were greatly festyd and honerably  
receyuyd, of theyr seruyce I wyll make none acounte /  
but one thyng I dare well saye, that there was neuer 16  
admyrall<sup>4</sup> nor kyng better seruyd / and as they sate at  
dynner / there enteryd a sarasyn fowle and blacke,  
callyd Trampoynngnyfle, the whiche is as moch to say  
as Balaach. Then he sayd ahye before the table / 'the 20  
same god that made the fyrmament, and that downe to  
vs he<sup>3</sup> sent his holy profyt Mahomet to teche vs his  
holy law / he saue and kepe Saphadin y<sup>e</sup><sup>3</sup> sowdan of  
Babylon and of Egypte, & may confound them *that* 24  
be his enemyes / to the admyrall of Perce & of Mede;  
the sowdan sendethe the<sup>3</sup> worde by me / that wro[n]g-  
fully and without cause *thou* goest & dystroyest his  
countre & his people without<sup>5</sup> geuyng hym any 28  
knowlege why *thou* dost soo / & therfore by me he  
sendeth y<sup>e</sup> word <sup>3</sup>by me<sup>3</sup> *that* am his secrete messenger,  
*that* he wyl assyng to<sup>2</sup> y<sup>e</sup> day of batayle, that is a<sup>6</sup>  
thursday nexte comyng, <sup>7</sup>betwene Rame and Iaffe / 32  
wheras there is a playne countre / and he wyl<sup>8</sup> thou

<sup>1</sup> the Citie of.      <sup>2</sup> vnto.      <sup>3-3</sup> omitted.


<sup>4</sup> Admyrall *after* kyng.      <sup>5</sup> not.      <sup>6</sup> vpon.

<sup>7</sup> Fol. cxxii, back, col. 1.      <sup>8</sup> that.

knowyst for sartayne that yf he take the, thou shalte be hangyd & flayne all quyeke,<sup>1</sup> and all other that I se here settinge at this table.'

- 4 ¶ Of the answere that the admyral of Perce made to<sup>2</sup> the sowdans messenger / and of the report that he made to<sup>2</sup> his mayst[er].

Ca. C.xxxxvi.

- 8  Hen the admyrall had well harde<sup>3</sup> the sowdans messenger, he begane to smyle, and sayd <sup>4</sup>to the messenger, 'go and say to<sup>4</sup> thy mayster *that* I sette no thyng by his thretenyng nor by no thyng that he can do, nor I wyll not leue for all his sayenge to distroye, and to take his townes and castelles, and to sle all them that wyll not byleue in Iesu Chryst, and saye vnto hym fro me that I am not in mynd to recule<sup>5</sup> backe / but by the ayde of god my creature, I shall go<sup>6</sup> and mete with hym so that he shall not need to tary for me, and I shall fyght *with* hym my pusaunce agaynst his to shewe <sup>7</sup>hym how they can do *that* bileueth in Iesu chryst / go thy waye & saye to<sup>2</sup> thy mayster that he shall not fynde me fleyng for any fere *that* I haue of any man byleuyng in the false & detestable faythe of mahomet.' Then the admyrall commaundyd to gyue to the messenger mete & drynke, and .xl. florencis; the messenger refusyd it not, but toke it, and thankyd the admyrall / & when he had dynyd he taryed not nyght nor day tyll<sup>8</sup> he came to the citeye of Gasere, where as he founde the soudan & all his army, the whiche was a great nombre, for they were <sup>9</sup>mo then<sup>9</sup> a .C.M. men, and all they thretenyd the

The admiral sets no value on the sultan's threats, and is ready to fight with him.

The admiral gives the messenger food and twelue florins;

he returned to Gaza, where was the sultan with 100,000 men.

<sup>1</sup> and neuer see faire day more. <sup>2</sup> vnto.

<sup>3</sup> and vnderstood. <sup>4-4</sup> Tell. <sup>5</sup> retire. <sup>6</sup> come.

<sup>7</sup> Fol. cxxii. back, col. 2. <sup>8</sup> vntill. <sup>9-9</sup> omitted.

The sultan was  
astonished at the  
admiral's reply,

and swore he  
would kill him  
quickly.

He orders his  
host to march  
towards Escalon.

deth of y<sup>e</sup> admyral of Perce / but it is a comune saying  
that many thingis lackethe of folysshe thoughtis, & so  
dyd they / when y<sup>e</sup> messenger was ariuyd at Gasere, he  
came before the soudan & made his reporte what <sup>4</sup>  
answere the admyral had made hym / & when the sou-  
dan<sup>1</sup> vnderstode the messenger, he had great maruayle  
of the great outrage *that* he thought to be in the  
admyral of Perce in *that* he durste abyde hym, & <sup>8</sup>  
sware by his lawe *that* yf he myght haue the vper  
hand of the admyral that he wolde flee hym quicke.  
Then he commaundyd his hoste to dysloge & to take  
the way towardis Escalonne / y<sup>e</sup> whiche they dyn. <sup>12</sup>

¶ How the admyrall of perce sent his men  
that laye at Napelous & causyd them to  
drawe<sup>2</sup> towardes Rames, and how they  
departyd fro Ierusalem; and how he wente <sup>16</sup>  
to fyght with his enemyes.

Capitulum .C.xxxvii.



<sup>3</sup> After that Trampounnifle, the mes-  
sanger, was departyd fro Ierusalem <sup>20</sup>  
and retournyd to his mayster the  
sowdan / then the admyrall of Perce  
and Huon of Burdeaux, who were in  
the palays with the kynge of Ieru- <sup>24</sup>  
salem / thether they callyd all theyr counsaile; and  
when they were al assembelyd, the admyrall sayd /  
'syrs, I pray you counsaile me what maner I shall vse  
myselfe to go and mete with the enemyes of the chrysten <sup>28</sup>  
faythe, the whiche are come agaynst vs, therefore  
I desyre eche<sup>4</sup> of you to shew me your opynyons  
what<sup>5</sup> is best to be done.' Then Thybaulte, kynge of

The admiral asks  
the king of  
Jerusalem to  
counsel him how  
best to meet  
these enemies of  
the Christian  
faith.

<sup>1</sup> had well heard and. <sup>2</sup> with drawe.

<sup>3</sup> Fol. cxxiii. col. 1. <sup>4</sup> everyone. <sup>5</sup> in this case.

Ierusalem, arose<sup>1</sup> and sayd, 'syr admyrall of Perce and Mede, we thynke ye shuld not abyde them here / but rather ye ought to departe and to go agaynst your  
 4 enemyes / for yf ye abyde for them in this citey ye shal do great damage to this countre, for we haue truse with the Sowdan for .v. yerys, the which with our honour we can not breke / for yf we wolde haue made  
 8 warre agaynst hym, we coude not a<sup>2</sup> resystid agaynst hym / and also we ar far of fro Fraunce to seke for socoure & ayde there.' Then<sup>3</sup> the kyng spake no more. Then duke Huon of Burdeaux sayde / 'syr  
 12 admyrall, y<sup>e</sup> kyng of Ierusalem hathe shewyd you the trouthe / for yf we shuld abyde here, it shulde be alwayes to our reproche<sup>4</sup> yf this holy citey shulde be lost, the which was wonne by two noble emperours  
 16 as of Rome and of Grece, for the kyng that is here his honoure sau'd and the suertye of his countre, maye not breke the truse that he hath taken with the Sowdan of Babylon / and therfore myne aduyse it<sup>5</sup> that as sone as  
 20 we may commaunde your men that be at Na<sup>6</sup>pelous hastely to dysloge and to mete with you at Rames / and then when ye haue somewhat refresshyd your hoste, then set forwarde towardys your enemyes / as the  
 24 kyng of Ierusalem hathe sayd / for it were folly to gyue them leyser to come to far forward / fyrst let them know how the swordys and sperys of the Percyens and Medyens can stryke / who somtyme dyd maruayles  
 28 in armes, wherfore it is reason that they folowe nowe theyr predecessours' / when Huon had fynnysshyd his reason / the admyrall and all the<sup>7</sup> lordys that were there laudyd,<sup>8</sup> and helde that counsayle good that was  
 32 purposyd by the kyng of Ierusalem and of Huon / and then they departyd and retournyd to theyr<sup>9</sup>

King Thybault advises them to go and meet the enemy,

since he has a five years' truce with the Sultan, and cannot in honour break it.

Huon advises that the men left at Nablous be commanded to break up their camp and meet them at Rames, and then altogether set forward against the enemy.

<sup>1</sup> vp.    <sup>2</sup> haue.    <sup>3</sup> thus.    <sup>4</sup> and shame.    <sup>5</sup> is.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. cxxiii. col. 2.    <sup>7</sup> other.    <sup>8</sup> praised.

<sup>9</sup> Chambers and.

The admiral  
follows this  
counsel,

takes leave of  
the king of  
Jerusalem;  
Huon and  
Barnard do  
likewise.

On arriving at  
Rames they found  
the host ready  
lodged,  
and the next day  
the host sets out  
for Escalon, to  
the great joy of  
Huon.

The admiral  
arranged his  
army thus:  
the first division  
under Huon and  
Barnard; the  
second led by the  
marshal of  
Persia; and the  
third by the  
admiral himself.

He exhorts all  
to do their duty  
valiantly,  
and specially puts  
his hope in the  
strength and  
prowess of Huon.

logyng. Then the admyral commaundyd hastely his  
hoste to drawe towards rames, where as he wolde tary  
for them / the whiche thyng was done dylygently /  
<sup>1</sup>the host restyd not tyll they came to<sup>2</sup> Ramys, where <sup>4</sup>  
as they founde redy y<sup>e</sup> admyralles herbygers, who had  
redy<sup>3</sup> apoyntyd theyr logynges. Thus after that y<sup>e</sup>  
almyrall had wryten to his marshalles of his hoste, he  
toke then<sup>4</sup> his leue of the kynge of Ierusalem, and in <sup>8</sup>  
lyke wyse so dyd Huon and Barnarde his cosyn, with-  
out knowlegyng of hymselfe to the kynge of Ierusalem.  
Then they departyd fro y<sup>e</sup> holy citey, and rode so longe  
that they came to the towne of Rames, whereas they <sup>12</sup>  
founde theyr host redy<sup>5</sup> lodgyd. Then they restyd  
them there vnto<sup>6</sup> the nexte daye / <sup>1</sup>then the admyrall  
commaundyd<sup>7</sup> to dysloge and<sup>8</sup> thake the waye towardys  
Escaloune. A goodlye syght it was to se the hoste <sup>16</sup>  
dysloge / Huon had therof great ioye / for he desyryd  
rather to slee the paynymes then to be in chaumbres  
with ladies & damosellis; <sup>9</sup>when they were all in the  
feldys the admyrall ordayned his batayles / the fyrst <sup>20</sup>  
gydyd Huon of Burdeaux and Barnard his cosyn, he  
had with hym .xx. M. Persyans ferse and hardy / the  
seconde batayle led the marshall of Perce with .xx. M.  
men<sup>5</sup> of good men of warre / the thryd batayle led the <sup>24</sup>  
admyrall of Perce and of Mede, and with him .xxx. M.  
men<sup>5</sup> of the most valyantys men of his hoste / <sup>1</sup>when  
euery thyng was ordayned as it aparteyned, he went  
and vysyted,<sup>7</sup> exortynge them to do well theyr <sup>28</sup>  
deuoyre<sup>10</sup> / then he came to<sup>2</sup> Huon and sayde. 'O,  
ryght<sup>11</sup> vertuous knyght, garnysshed and replete with  
all prowes / all my hope I put in your strenthe and  
vertue of your armis and body / therfore I desyre you <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> and.      <sup>2</sup> vnto.      <sup>3</sup> alreadie.      <sup>4</sup> then *after* haste.

<sup>5</sup> omitted.      <sup>6</sup> vntill.      <sup>7</sup> them.

<sup>8</sup> to make them ready to.      <sup>9</sup> Fol. cxxiii. back, col. 1.

<sup>10</sup> and prayinge them to quit themselves valiantly.

<sup>11</sup> deare and.



this day to shew out your great vertues wherof<sup>1</sup> ye  
 be<sup>2</sup> garnysshed / for specyally for y<sup>e</sup> loue of you and  
 for your bountye I haue taken & receyuyd the holy  
 4 bapty<sup>m</sup>, wherof I laud<sup>3</sup> our lord god of his grace *that*  
 he hathe done to<sup>4</sup> me / therfore I desyre you this day  
 to shewe to<sup>4</sup> the sarasyns that your sworde is to be  
 feryd' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'god gyue me grace to be  
 8 such<sup>5</sup> one as ye saye, and to parfourme in me that<sup>6</sup>  
 lackethe / and, syr, I truste in me it shall not be let but  
*that* this daye our enemyes shall haue no cause to praise  
 nor to make<sup>7</sup> bost; <sup>8</sup>therfore, syr, let vs ryde forth  
 12 suerly / for by the grace of god I haue hope *that* this  
 daye we shall gyue<sup>9</sup> our enemyes so moch a do that  
 they shall haue scante<sup>10</sup> <sup>11</sup>leyser to graunte<sup>4</sup> vs the  
 victory' / and<sup>12</sup> as y<sup>e</sup> admyrall and Huon was<sup>13</sup> thus  
 16 deuysyng together, they sawe before them a fare of the  
 ayre waxe thycke, and that the sonne lost his clerenes,  
 wherof they had great maruayle, bycause they sawe<sup>14</sup>  
 the sonne shyne so fayre & clere there; as they were  
 20 <sup>15</sup>anone they parseyuid that the darkenes rose by reason  
 of the dust rysynge of the horses of theyr enemies, who  
 were hastely comynge towards them to haue taken  
 them in theyr logynge, wherby they came all out  
 24 of order / trustynge all in theyr great nombre of men,  
 for they were mo then a .C.M. ; ferfull it was to se  
 them comynge / so faste they rode, that the one hoste  
 myght well se the other / when Huon had well parseyuid  
 28 them and sawe theyr demenoure and dysorder,<sup>16</sup> sayde  
 to<sup>4</sup> y<sup>e</sup> admyrall / 'syr, well ye ought to prayse our  
 lord <sup>17</sup>Iesu chryst,<sup>17</sup> for this day he shal brynge your  
 enemyes into your handis to sle them at your pleasure ;  
 32 therfore, syr, I counsayle<sup>18</sup> that incontynente <sup>19</sup>in

Huon trusts the  
 enemy shall have  
 no cause to boast,  
 and is anxious to  
 ride forward.

As they talked,  
 they saw the sun  
 lose his clearness,  
 and marvelled  
 much ;

it was by reason  
 of the dust from  
 the horses of their  
 enemies,

who, trusting  
 to their vast  
 numbers, were  
 advancing with-  
 out any order.

<sup>1</sup> wherwith.    <sup>2</sup> are.    <sup>3</sup> and praise.    <sup>4</sup> vnto.    <sup>5</sup> a.

<sup>6</sup> which.    <sup>7</sup> their.    <sup>8</sup> and.    <sup>9</sup> make.    <sup>10</sup> scarce.

<sup>11</sup> time and.    <sup>12</sup> now.    <sup>13</sup> were.    <sup>14</sup> a little before.

<sup>15</sup> Fol. cxxiii. back, col. 2.    <sup>16</sup> hee.    <sup>17-17</sup> god.

<sup>18</sup> you.    <sup>19-19</sup> we hasten and.

Huon advises  
an immediate  
attack upon the  
enemy;

it is easy to  
discomfort them  
while they are in  
such confusion.

The admiral gives  
the word to  
advance.

When the sultan  
sees the host of  
the Persians  
advancing,

he desires to set  
his armies in  
order.

Then steps forth  
the admiral of  
Dorbrye, great  
and horrible to  
behold.

He rode a mare  
with a horn in  
her forehead.

The admiral  
seemed rather a  
fiend of hell,  
and all made way  
as he came to the  
sultan.

The admiral  
advises to meet  
the enemy at  
once,  
he boasts he can  
slay them all.

haste<sup>1</sup> sette vpon them to the entente that they shal  
haue no<sup>1</sup> leyser to assemble together to brynge themse-  
lfe in good order / yf we do thus it is no dought, but by  
the grace of god, we shall shortly dyscomfyte them or<sup>2</sup> 4  
they be assembledid.' 'Syr,' quod the admyrall, 'your  
opynyon is good and resonable / let it be done as  
ye haue deuysid' / then the admyrall commaundyd y<sup>e</sup>  
marshalles & capetayns of his hoste to marche forwarde 8  
his batayles agaynste his enemyes / <sup>3</sup>then trompettys  
and tabours<sup>4</sup> began to sown, that it was maruayle to  
here them / <sup>3</sup>then they set on towardis theyr enemyes /  
when the Sowdan and they of his hoste sawe the 12  
Persyans comyng agaynst them redy rengyd in batayle /  
then<sup>5</sup> he callyd to<sup>6</sup> hym his kyngis and admyrallys,  
who were .xv. in nombre, and said to<sup>6</sup> them / 'syrs, it  
were good that our men restyd styll a season, that we 16  
myght order and reнге our batayles / for yonder we  
maye se<sup>7</sup> our enemyes comynge' / Then stepte forthe  
the admyral of Dorbrye, who was orryble & great to  
behold, <sup>8</sup>he was .xv. fote of heyghte, and rode on<sup>9</sup> a 20  
goodly splayed mare, the most fayrest and greatest that  
euer was sene, she had a great horne in her forhede / yf  
she were anythyng chafyd none durste aproche nere<sup>6</sup>  
her but alonly her kepar / this admyral was fowle and 24  
great, he rather semyd a fende of hell then any humayne  
creature / <sup>3</sup>when he came to<sup>6</sup> the Sowdan euery man  
made hym way / then he said to<sup>6</sup> the Soudan, 'syr, I  
haue great maruaile of the that thou art so affrayed for 28  
a small nombre of men / who are comynge towardys  
theyr dethe / syr, knowe for trouth that or<sup>2</sup> ye can  
order your men in <sup>10</sup>to good<sup>10</sup> araye, I shall dyscomfyte  
your enemyes and delyuer to<sup>6</sup> you the admyrall of 32

<sup>1</sup> time nor.      <sup>2</sup> before.      <sup>3</sup> and.

<sup>4</sup> Drummes.      <sup>5</sup> omitted.      <sup>6</sup> vnto.      <sup>7</sup> well.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. cxxiii. col. 1.      <sup>9</sup> vppon.


<sup>10-10</sup> bataille.

Perce other quycke or dede' / when the Sowdan<sup>1</sup>  
 vnderstode the admyrall of Dorbrey, he sayd / 'syr  
 4 your handys / I haue great affyaunce in the vertue that  
 is in you, and in the strenthe of your armys / the  
 whiche ar greatly to be feryd' / then the Sowdan  
 commaundyd all his host to set on<sup>2</sup> theyr enemyes, and  
 8 sayd / 'syn<sup>3</sup> the admyrall of Dorbrey is with me I fere  
 no man of Perse nor<sup>4</sup> Mede,' & so sporyd his horse  
 without makyng of any good order.

The sultan  
 therefore puts the  
 conduct of his  
 host into the  
 hands of the  
 admiral of  
 Dorbrye.

¶ Now speke we of the great batayle that  
 12 was in the playnes of Raines betwene the  
 Sowdon of Babilon and the admyrall of  
 Perce / the whiche was discomfited by  
 the prowes of Huon of Burdeaux.

16 Ca. C.xxxviii.

5  Hen Huon, who led the fyrst batayle of  
 the Perseans, beheld and sawe how  
 the Sarasyns came on without any  
 20 good ordre or conducte, he sownyd his  
 trompettes, exortynge his men to do

Seeing the  
 Saracens advance  
 in disorder,

Huon sounds his  
 trumpets, and  
 hastens forward,

well,<sup>6</sup> and commaunded his constables and marshalles to  
 hast<sup>7</sup> forward, and so dyd the Admyrall; <sup>8</sup>his company  
 24 and they ioyned nere one to a nother to the entente  
 eche of them to socoure other; when Huon saw his  
 enemyes aproche, and that it was tyme to set on<sup>9</sup> / he  
 commaundyd his archers and crousbowes to shote, <sup>8</sup>so  
 28 they dyd, that by reasone of y<sup>e</sup> shotynge of bothe  
 perteyse it semyd lyke a clowde, so<sup>10</sup> that there by and  
 with<sup>11</sup> duste togyther it darked the lyght of y<sup>e</sup> sonne;  
<sup>8</sup>then Huon couchyd his spere and ranne at hym that

joined by the  
 admiral's  
 company.

Huon commands  
 the archers and  
 crossbowmen to  
 shoot,  
 and so they do  
 till the light of  
 the sun was made  
 dark by their  
 arrows.

<sup>1</sup> had well heard and.

<sup>2</sup> vpon.

<sup>3</sup> seeing.

<sup>4</sup> of.

<sup>5</sup> Fel. cxxxiii. col. 2.

<sup>6</sup> and valiantly.

<sup>7</sup> march.

<sup>8</sup> and.

<sup>9</sup> vpon them.

<sup>10</sup> omitted.

<sup>11</sup> the.

Huon runs at the  
sultan's standard-  
bearer with his  
spear,

throws him,

and kills so many  
Saracens that  
they doubt if  
Huon be mortal.

He slew five kings  
and two admirals;  
and he and  
Barnard are so  
greatly feared  
that the Saracens  
hardly dare  
approach him,

and so fierce is  
the battle that its  
like has not been  
seen for 100 years.

When the sultan  
saw his men so  
slain, he curses  
the time that he  
put faith in the  
admiral of  
Dorbrey.

bare the soudans standder, who was comynge before all  
the other to cause his compayne to folowe the faster ;  
Huon gaue hym suche a stroke with his spere that  
he persyde hym<sup>1</sup> thorowe the body so that he fell fro<sup>4</sup>  
his horse<sup>2</sup> with y<sup>e</sup> standard, wherof the Sarasyns were  
abasshyd and sore<sup>3</sup> dyspleasyd / then they aprochyd to  
reyse vp agayne theyr baner / but Huon and the  
Perseans encounteryd them fersly so<sup>4</sup> that many were<sup>8</sup>  
slayne on both parties / he that had sene Huon howe  
he slewe and bet downe the Sarasyns and paynymes,<sup>5</sup>  
wolde haue sayde that he was no mortall man / but  
rather a man of the fayrey, for the great prowes and<sup>12</sup>  
maruayles that he dyd / for he causyd the paynmys,  
whether they wolde or not, to recule backe and to  
forsake the baner<sup>6</sup> lyenge on<sup>6</sup> the erth / for or<sup>7</sup> he  
departyd<sup>8</sup> thense he slewe .v. kyngis & .ii. admyrallis /<sup>16</sup>  
Huon was so feryd that there was none so hardy<sup>9</sup> durst  
aproche nere to hym /<sup>10</sup> also<sup>11</sup> Barnarde his cosyn<sup>11</sup> was  
greatly to be feryd, and he euer folowed Huon as nere  
as he coude / then there ioynyd y<sup>e</sup> batayles of the<sup>20</sup>  
marshallys / and the admyrall of Perce set vpon the  
sowdans batayle / then<sup>10</sup> the batayle began so orryble  
and great<sup>12</sup> that a .C. yerys before was<sup>13</sup> sene none  
suche ;<sup>14</sup> valyantly dyd the admyrall of Perce and<sup>24</sup>  
suche as were in his company / when the Soudan sawe  
his men so slayne, he was<sup>15</sup> sorowfull,<sup>16</sup> & sayd to<sup>17</sup> the  
admyrall of Dorbrey, 'I may well curse the daye  
& tyme that I beleuyd you / for by you I haue lost my<sup>28</sup>  
baner, and I se my men slayne / for and<sup>18</sup> I had  
orderyd my batayle before / this myschefe had not  
happyd / nor that<sup>19</sup> is aparant to fall /<sup>10</sup> then the

<sup>1</sup> cleane. <sup>2</sup> Fol. cxxiiii. back, col. 1.

<sup>3</sup> sore *before* abasshed. <sup>4</sup> so *before* fersly.

<sup>5</sup> Paynmys and Sarasyns. <sup>6-8</sup> that laye vpon. <sup>7</sup> before.

<sup>8</sup> from. <sup>9</sup> that. <sup>10</sup> and. <sup>11-11</sup> his Cozen Barnard.

<sup>12</sup> great *before* horrible. <sup>13</sup> were. <sup>14</sup> so. <sup>15</sup> right.

<sup>16</sup> and sore displeased. <sup>17</sup> vnto. <sup>18</sup> yf. <sup>19</sup> which.

Soudan couchyd his spere and strake therwith a knyght  
 who was great mayster of the howse of Perce, in suche  
 wyse that the sowdan ran hym clene thurghle, and so  
 4 he seruyd the second, thyrde, and fourth, and when his  
 spere was broken, he drewe out his sworde and dyd  
 therwith great <sup>1</sup>damage; great cry and noyse was  
 made when the batayles ioynyd / there myght a<sup>2</sup> bene  
 8 sene many horse rynnynge abrode in the felde traylynge  
 theyr brydellis after them, and theyr maysters lyeng in  
 the felde a monge the horse fete, and<sup>3</sup> orryble thyng  
 it was to se and to here y<sup>e</sup> playntys<sup>4</sup> and cryes that the  
 12 woundyd men made amonge y<sup>e</sup> horse fete, hauyng  
 no power to releue themselfe, but there dyed and  
 fynysshed theyr dayes miserably; great cry made the  
 sarasyns and Persyans that fought together, and  
 16 speccially where as Huon fought & serchyd the rankes,  
 and brake the great presys, he bet downe and con-  
 foundyd all that came before hym / so that none  
 durste abyde before hym / for by that tym he had  
 20 slayne vi of the kyngys and .v. admyrallis, besyde  
 many other / so *that* the noyse and crye cam to the  
 herynge of the admyrall of Dorbrey, who dyd great  
 dystruccyon amonge the Persyans, so that it was an  
 24 orryble thyng to se<sup>5</sup> / and when he harde how that  
 there was a knyghte that dyd great damage,<sup>6</sup> and had  
 slayne dyuers kyngis and admyralles / he said to<sup>7</sup> a  
 paynyme who had broughte<sup>8</sup> those<sup>9</sup> newes / 'go thy  
 28 waye and shewe me<sup>10</sup> hym<sup>11</sup> that hathe done vs so great  
 damage' / 'syr,' quod the paynym, 'I shall shewe<sup>12</sup> you  
 hym<sup>10</sup> / but I wyll aproche to hym no nerer then I am  
 now; ye may se hym<sup>10</sup> yonder how he fyghtethe / and  
 32 makethe our men to recule<sup>13</sup> backe,<sup>14</sup> for there is none so

The sultan does  
great damage,

and when the  
armies are joined,  
there is much  
noise,

and many perish  
under the horses'  
feet.

The admiral of  
Dorbrye, hearing  
of Huon's pro-  
gress, desires to  
meet him,

and a Saracen  
points him out to  
the admiral.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. cxliiii. back, col. 2.      <sup>2</sup> haue.      <sup>3</sup> a.

<sup>4</sup> complaints.      <sup>5</sup> and behold.      <sup>6</sup> and hurt among them.

<sup>7</sup> vnto.      <sup>8</sup> vnto him.      <sup>9</sup> tidings and.      <sup>10</sup> omitted.

<sup>11</sup> vnto me.      <sup>12</sup> him vnto.      <sup>13</sup> retire.

<sup>14</sup> from him.



When the admiral  
beheld Huon, he  
spurs on his mare.

Huon does not  
refuse to meet  
him.

The admiral kills  
Huon's horse,

and lifts Huon  
by his armour  
on to the neck  
of his mare,  
and the admiral,  
carrying Huon  
in one hand,  
fights with the  
other.  
Huon, fearing he  
is lost, asks God  
to have pity on  
his wife.

The admiral  
desires to present  
Huon to the  
sultan,

but the mare,  
running among  
the spears and  
men that lay on  
the ground,  
stumbles, and the  
giant falls.

hardy that dare aproche nere<sup>1</sup> hym ' / then the gyaunt  
behelde Huon and saw how he made the paynymes to  
recule<sup>2</sup> backe / then he stroke his mare with the<sup>3</sup>  
sporys. <sup>4</sup>Huon, who well parsayuyd<sup>5</sup> hym comynge, <sup>4</sup>  
feryd hym ; howbeit, he refusyd hym not / but cam  
with his sword in his hand<sup>6</sup> <sup>7</sup>agaynst <sup>8</sup>then the paynym,  
then<sup>8</sup> the sarasyn, who bare a great hache in<sup>9</sup> his  
necke, sawe Huon comynge / <sup>4</sup>strake at hym, but as 8  
god wold,<sup>10</sup> he myst hym, for yf the stroke had lyght  
vpon hym he had bene slayne / the stroke lyght vpon  
the crope of his horse, so that the horse fell downe dede  
and Huon on<sup>9</sup> his backe ; and he was not so sone <sup>12</sup>  
releuyd but that the gyant toke hym by the harneys<sup>11</sup>  
& caste hym before his sadell as lyghtly as thoughe  
it<sup>12</sup> had bene but a fether, and so he helde and caryed  
Huon *with* y<sup>e</sup> one hand and fought with the other <sup>16</sup>  
hande / when Huon felte hymselfe so taken he cryed<sup>13</sup>  
vpon our lord god & prayed hym to haue petye<sup>14</sup>  
of Esclaramond his wyfe, for he saw well his lyfe was  
determined / the gyaunte who was<sup>15</sup> ioyfull in that he <sup>20</sup>  
had taken Huon who had done the sarasyns so moche  
damage / he desyryd to fynde the Sowdan to make  
hym a present of Huon / so that with the hast that he  
made he strake his mare, and she began to lepe and <sup>24</sup>  
gaumbaulde, and began to rynne ; and, as fortune was,  
she ran amonge the broken sperys and dede men that  
lay on the ground so that she stombelyd, <sup>16</sup>so that  
she<sup>16</sup> knelyd to the erthe / and the gyante thought to <sup>28</sup>  
haue releuyd her / but he coude not by reason of the  
weyghte that laye vpon her necke / <sup>17</sup>so that<sup>17</sup> she was

<sup>1</sup> vnto.      <sup>2</sup> retire.      <sup>3</sup> his.      <sup>4</sup> and.

<sup>5</sup> and saw.

<sup>6</sup> then.      <sup>7</sup> Fol. cxxv. col. 1.      <sup>8-8</sup> the Sarazin, and the.

<sup>9</sup> vppon.      <sup>10</sup> haue it.      <sup>11</sup> armour.      <sup>12</sup> he.

<sup>13</sup> and called.      <sup>14</sup> and compassion.      <sup>15</sup> right.

<sup>16-16</sup> and thereby.

<sup>17-17</sup> and by the great swiftnesse of her running.

- fayne to fal downe to the erthe / when Huon saw<sup>1</sup> that,  
 he was lyght and quyeke, and rose vp on his fete / and  
 when he sawe the gyaunte fallen downe & began  
 4 to releue / he hastyd hym and lyfte vp his sworde  
 with bothe his handys and gaue the gyaunt such a  
 stroke on<sup>2</sup> the helme that he claue his hede to the  
 brayne so<sup>3</sup> therwith he fel<sup>4</sup> dede to the erthe / and  
 8 then Huon sesyd<sup>2</sup> the mare by the rayne<sup>5</sup> and lepte  
 vp<sup>6</sup> vp<sup>7</sup> on her and had great ioy, and so had the  
 Persyans / and the admyrall had great ioye, for it had  
 bene shewyd hym how y<sup>e</sup> gyaunt had taken Huon / and  
 12 was scapyd and had slayne the gyaunte / when Huon  
 felt hymselfe on<sup>2</sup> the stronge mare, he dasshyd in  
 among the paynymys<sup>8</sup> and met with the kynge of  
 Olyfarne, whom he gaue suche a stroke that he claue  
 16 his hede asonder; then he ran at the admyral of  
 Orcaney, who was brother germain to<sup>9</sup> y<sup>e</sup> sowdan, he  
 gaue hym suche a stroke on the sholder that he strake  
 of his arm, so that it fell<sup>4</sup> to the erthe shyld and all; <sup>10</sup>  
 20 when the admyrall felte hymselfe hurte,<sup>11</sup> wolde haue  
 fled a waye / but Huon, syttyng on<sup>2</sup> the mare who  
 was the swyftest <sup>12</sup>horse of <sup>12</sup>the world, ran after him,  
 & when Huon had ouertaken y<sup>e</sup> paynym,<sup>13</sup> he gaue  
 24 hym suche a stroke on<sup>2</sup> the hede that he claue it to his  
 tethe, & so<sup>14</sup> fell downe dede to the erthe / wherby the  
 paynymys<sup>15</sup> were so afrayed that after that they durst  
 not assemble together; this was shewyd to y<sup>e</sup> sowdan  
 28 how the gyant was slayne and .v. other kyngis and  
 admyralles, and his brother also slayne / and all by the  
 handis of one knyght / and also he sawe his batayle  
 sore broken and how they began to fle, wherfore he  
 32 saw well that yf he taryed there longe he shuld be

Huon quickly  
rises to his feet,

fells the giant  
to the earth with  
his sword,

and leaps on his  
mare.

Great is the joy of  
all the Persians.

On the strong  
mare Huon  
dashes in among  
the paynims,  
and meets and  
kills the king of  
Olyfarne.

He fells the  
admiral of  
Orcaney to the  
ground.

As he tries to flee,  
Huon overtakes  
and kills him.

When the sultan  
saw how many  
bold knights were  
slain by the hands  
of one man, and  
how his men  
began to flee,  
he feared he  
would be either  
slain or taken.

<sup>1</sup> and well perceiued.    <sup>2</sup> vpon.    <sup>3</sup> that.    <sup>4</sup> downe.

<sup>5</sup> of the bridle.    <sup>6</sup> omitted.    <sup>7</sup> Fol. cxxv. col. 2.

<sup>8</sup> and Sarazins.    <sup>9</sup> vnto.    <sup>10</sup> and.

<sup>11</sup> and wounded, he.    <sup>12-12</sup> of pase in all.    <sup>13</sup> Sarazin.

<sup>14</sup> hee.    <sup>15</sup> and Sarazins.

The king of  
Antiophene, a  
near relative,  
counsels him to  
flee;

and the sultan,  
with twenty men,  
departs towards  
Acre, which  
belongs to the  
Saracens.  
Huon, mounted  
on the powerful  
mare, beats down  
his enemies,  
and none can  
abide his strokes.

The admiral  
wishes that Huon  
could always stay  
with him.

The admiral and  
Barnard follow  
Huon,  
but by reason of  
his good horse, he  
outstrips them.  
Huon's desire is  
to overtake the  
sultan.

other slayn or taken / then the kyng of Antiophene,  
who was nere parent to y<sup>e</sup> sowdan, came to<sup>1</sup> hym and  
sayd / 'syr, thynke<sup>2</sup> to saue thy lyfe, for yf thou tary  
longe here there is none can saue the / for yf the 4  
knyght that is with the admyrall of Perce hap to com  
hether thy lyfe is lost, therefore I counsayle the to  
departe and saue thy selfe / elles thou art but dede.'  
then the sowdan <sup>3</sup>with a<sup>3</sup> .xx. with hym departyd and 8  
toke the waye by the se syde to go towardys <sup>4</sup>Acre,  
the whiche as then partaynyd to<sup>1</sup> y<sup>e</sup> sarasyns, and  
Huon, who was mountyd on<sup>5</sup> the pusaunt mare, betyng  
downe his enemyes so that none durste abyde his 12  
strokys; and the admyrall of Perce folowyng him,  
regardynge that by y<sup>e</sup> hye prowes of Huon his enemyes  
were confoundyd<sup>6</sup>, and sawe well howe<sup>7</sup> there was no  
humayne body that had any powre to resyst agaynst 16  
hym<sup>8</sup> without deth / then he sayd to<sup>1</sup> his lordys and to  
Barnarde / 'syr,' quod y<sup>e</sup> admyral, 'yonder before you  
ye may se maruayles and thyngis incredeble to be  
declaryd / for ye may se there is none so pusaunt<sup>9</sup> that 20  
can resyst agaynst my frende Huon / <sup>10</sup>wolde to god<sup>7</sup>  
he were vnmaryed / then he shulde neuer departe fro  
me, for I wolde then gyue hym my doughter;<sup>11</sup> I shall  
be so<sup>12</sup> sore dyspleasyd<sup>13</sup> when he shall depart from me' / 24  
thus as ye haue herd the admyrall of Perce<sup>14</sup> sayd to<sup>1</sup>  
his company, and so sleynge and betynge downe the<sup>15</sup>  
sarasyns that fled / the admyrall and Barnard folowyd  
Huon, but by reason of his good hors he was so 28  
far before them that they coude not ouertake hym, for  
he desyryd nothyng so moche as<sup>16</sup> to ouertake the  
sowdan, who was fleyng as fast as he myght towardys  
the citey of Acre / when the admyral sawe that he 32

<sup>1</sup> vnto.<sup>2</sup> how.<sup>3-3</sup> and about.<sup>4</sup> Fol. cxxv. back, col. 1.<sup>5</sup> vppon.<sup>6</sup> and discomfited.<sup>7</sup> that.<sup>8</sup> and escaped.<sup>9</sup> and strong.<sup>10</sup> I.<sup>11</sup> in mariage.<sup>12</sup> verie.<sup>13</sup> and discomfited.<sup>14</sup> and Media.<sup>15</sup> Paynims and.<sup>16</sup> he did,

coude not ouertake Huon, then he and Barnard enteryd  
in amonge the sarasyns who were fleyng away; the  
admyrall and Barnarde slewe & bet them downe that<sup>1</sup>  
4 petye it was to se<sup>2</sup> / for with the blode of y<sup>e</sup> dede  
<sup>3</sup>sarasyns theyr swordys were all<sup>4</sup> tayntyd red; yf I  
shuld shewe all the hye prowes<sup>5</sup> that was<sup>5</sup> done there  
that daye, it shuld<sup>6</sup> be ouer longe to reherse / but  
8 I dare well saye that by the great prowes of Huon the  
batayle was vanquesshyd and clene dyscomfityd / the  
<sup>7</sup>Percyans chasyd the sarasyns and paynims<sup>8</sup> and  
slew an[d]<sup>9</sup><sup>10</sup> bet them downe, the chase enduryd more  
12 then .iiii. legis / and the admyrall had great maruayle  
that he coude not ouertake nor here no<sup>11</sup> thyng of Huon /  
who chasyd styll the sowdan & folowid hym so longe  
that Huon found the sowdan<sup>12</sup> alone / for his men coude  
16 not folowe hym so fast for<sup>13</sup> theyr horses wer so wery  
that they coude<sup>14</sup> go no<sup>15</sup> further / y<sup>e</sup> sowdan rode on<sup>16</sup>  
a pusaunt<sup>17</sup> horse / and Huon, who folowed hym on<sup>16</sup>  
the pusaunt mare, anone ouertoke hym /<sup>18</sup> when he came  
20 nere to the sowdan / he sayd, 'O thou<sup>19</sup> sowdan, great  
shame<sup>20</sup> thou maiest haue when thou fleest thus<sup>21</sup> away  
all alone without<sup>11</sup> company, tourne thy shyld agaynst  
me or elles I shall sle the fleyng.' when the sowdan<sup>22</sup>  
24 harde Huon he had great<sup>23</sup> fere<sup>23</sup> / for he knew well it  
was he by whome he had<sup>24</sup> so great losse,<sup>25</sup> and by  
whome so<sup>15</sup> many kyngis & admyrallis had bene slayn,  
and thought to hymselfe yf he tournyd<sup>26</sup> not<sup>27</sup> he  
28 shulde be slayne, wherfore he toke corage to hymselfe,  
seyng that Huon was alone as well as he, and also he

The admiral and  
Barnard slay the  
fleeing Saracens,

and, owing to the  
great prowess of  
Huon, the enemy  
is vanquished.

At last Huon  
comes up with the  
sultan;  
he is alone, his  
men being unable  
to keep up with  
him.

Huon challenges  
the sultan to  
fight.

The sultan takes  
courage, seeing  
Huon is alone  
also.

<sup>1</sup> great. <sup>2</sup> and behold them. <sup>3</sup> Paynims and.

<sup>4</sup> all after taynted. <sup>5-5</sup> and maruailous deedes that were.

<sup>6</sup> would. <sup>7</sup> Fol. cxxv. back, col. 2.

<sup>8</sup> Paynims before Sarasyms. <sup>9</sup> add in text. <sup>10</sup> did.

<sup>11</sup> any. <sup>12</sup> all. <sup>13</sup> because. <sup>14</sup> not. <sup>15</sup> omitted.

<sup>16</sup> yppon. <sup>17</sup> and a goodly. <sup>18</sup> and. <sup>19</sup> traiterous.

<sup>20</sup> and reproach. <sup>21</sup> thus after away. <sup>22</sup> had well.

<sup>23-23</sup> maruaile and was greatly feared. <sup>24</sup> received.

<sup>25</sup> and damage. <sup>26</sup> returned. <sup>27</sup> that.

They run fiercely together, and had not the sultan been rescued by his men, he would have perished.

Huon, sore abashed, will not flee, and deals his strokes among them;

great slaughter follows.

The sultan tells his men to slay Huon's mare, for then he will be overcome.

If they let Huon escape them, never more ought they to be seen in prince's court.

thought that it shulde not be longe or<sup>1</sup> he were socourid with some of his men that folowyd hym, & therfore, lyke a hardy knyght, he tournyd his horse hede towardis Huon / who fersly ran together<sup>2</sup> & gaue 4 eche other great strokys, but it had bene<sup>3</sup> but a<sup>4</sup> small profyght<sup>5</sup> to the sowdan and<sup>5</sup> he had not bene rescued by his men, for<sup>6</sup> Huon had elles<sup>4</sup> slayne hym / but thether came a<sup>7</sup> .xl. knyghtys sarasyns, and they al ran 8 at Huon / who was sore<sup>8</sup> abasshyd when he saw hym selfe so enclosyd with his enemyes; how beit he myght haue sauyd hymselfe welynowe yf he had lyst to ha[ue] fled awaye / but for any fere of them he wolde 12 not fle, but<sup>9</sup> he delte suche strokys<sup>10</sup> amonge them *that* there was none so hardy that durste aproche nere<sup>11</sup> hym, so sore they feryd hym / for he strake none with a full stroke but that his hede was clouen to the brayne<sup>12</sup> / 16 when they sawe<sup>13</sup> they coude not take nor sle hym, they were<sup>14</sup> sorowful<sup>15</sup>; then the sowdan cryed and sayd, 'syrs, on<sup>4</sup> vpon hym, great shame it is to<sup>11</sup> you all when by the body of one man ye are so put backe, and 20 ye se wel<sup>13</sup> he hathe no socoure / go and sle the mare that he rydethe on<sup>16</sup> with sperys and dartis / then he shall be sone ouercome / and ye know well<sup>13</sup> it is he by<sup>4</sup> whome I haue sufferyd al my great<sup>17</sup> damage / it is 24 he that hathe slayne my men, and by hym I haue lost the batayle / yf he scape<sup>18</sup> you ye ought neuer to be sene in any prynces court' / when the paynyns<sup>19</sup> vnderstode theyr sowdan, they then<sup>20</sup> sore opressyd Huon, who 28 dyd<sup>21</sup> merueyles<sup>22</sup>, but his pusaunce and vertu shulde<sup>23</sup>

<sup>1</sup> before.      <sup>2</sup> one at another.      <sup>3</sup> vnto the sowdan.

<sup>4</sup> omitted.      <sup>5-5</sup> if.      <sup>6</sup> if they had not come when they did.

<sup>7</sup> about.      <sup>8</sup> dismayed and.      <sup>9</sup> and.

<sup>10</sup> Fol. cxxvi, col. 1.      <sup>11</sup> vnto.

<sup>12</sup> or to the teeth, so that they needed after no Surgeon.

<sup>13</sup> that.      <sup>14</sup> right.      <sup>15</sup> and angrie.      <sup>16</sup> vppon.

<sup>17</sup> losse and.      <sup>18</sup> from.      <sup>19</sup> and Sarazins had well.

<sup>20</sup> then *after* they.      <sup>21</sup> great.      <sup>22</sup> in armes.

<sup>23</sup> but.



- lytell auayle<sup>1</sup> hym yf he had not bene shortely<sup>2</sup> socoryd / and also by reason of the riche stonys and perles that were on<sup>3</sup> hym / then the<sup>4</sup> Sarasyns, who of 4 .xl. were lefte alyue but .xxviii., they saw well<sup>5</sup> they could not haue<sup>6</sup> Huon without fyrst<sup>7</sup> they slewe the mare that he rode on<sup>3</sup>; therfore they cast at her dartys & iauelyns in suche wyse that fynally they slew her 8 vnder hym, wherof Huon was<sup>8</sup> sorowful<sup>9</sup>, and was<sup>10</sup> then in<sup>11</sup> fere of his lyfe / then he callyd vpon our lorde Iesu chryst to haue petye<sup>12</sup> of his sowle, for he saw *that* his lyfe was at an ende, & sayd, 'dere 12 lord Iesu chryst, I pray the by thy swete marcy to haue<sup>13</sup> compassyon of my wyfe<sup>14</sup> who is in great parel and pouertye for the loue of me without any deserte of her part, and also I recomende into thy sauegarde my 16 lytell doughter Claryet.' After that Huon had made his prayer to<sup>15</sup> our lorde <sup>16</sup>god, he toke his shyld and his sworde in his hande afote, and he saw where there grewe a busshe, he went thether and set his backe 20 therto that the sarasyns<sup>17</sup> shuld not come behynde hym,<sup>18</sup> so he stode at a baye lyke a wylde bore baytyd with houndis, there was not so hardy a paynyme<sup>19</sup> that aurst assayle hym / they cast at hym sperys and dartis, 24 but they coude neuer hurte his flesshe, he coueryd hymselfe so well<sup>20</sup> with his shyld that nothyng coude touche<sup>21</sup> hym. The sowdan, seyng that no thyng coude hurte hym / he sayd to his men, 'a, ye false<sup>13</sup> 28 vntrewe cowardis, of mahomet be ye cursyd, when ye can not slee nor take one man alone' / <sup>18</sup>then the sowdan approchyd<sup>15</sup> Huon and gaue hym a great stroke

Huon did marvels, but his power would have availed little, had he not been succoured by the precious stones he had on him.

The Saracens cast their darts at Huon's mare, and finally slew her under him.

Huon, in fear of his life, calls on our Lord Jesus Christ to have pity on him,

and recommends his wife and little daughter Claryet into God's safe keeping.

Huon sets his back against a bush, and so stands at bay, but not a paynim can hurt his flesh.

Then the sultan himself approached Huon,

<sup>1</sup> haue auailed.      <sup>2</sup> aided &.      <sup>3</sup> vpon.  
<sup>4</sup> Paynims and.      <sup>5</sup> that.      <sup>6</sup> ouercome.  
<sup>7</sup> first after mare.      <sup>8</sup> right.      <sup>9</sup> and sore displeased.  
<sup>10</sup> as.      <sup>11</sup> great.      <sup>12</sup> and compassion.      <sup>13</sup> pitie and.  
<sup>14</sup> Escleremond.      <sup>15</sup> vnto.      <sup>16</sup> Fol. cxxvi. col. 2.  
<sup>17</sup> and Paynims.      <sup>18</sup> and.      <sup>19</sup> or Sarazin.  
<sup>20</sup> and so surely.      <sup>21</sup> pierce.

and broke his shield into two pieces.

Looking behind him, the sultan perceives the admiral of Persia with 20,000 men coming to Huon's aid.

The sultan then decides to leave this enemy, who cannot be vanquished by force of arms. Near them was the sea, about a league from Jaffa, towards Surrey, a galley was there, sent from Escalon, and thither rode the sultan.

Huon, right weary, could not have borne up so long save for the precious stones about him.

The sultan and his men enter the galley, and leave their horses on the sea shore.

so that he brake his shyld in two peces, wherof Huon then was in<sup>1</sup> fere of dethe / then the sowdan drew backe and lokyd behynde hym into the playnes of Rames wheras the great batayle had bene / and then he<sup>4</sup> sawe comynge the admyrall of Perce with .xx. thousande men, and they came to seke for Huon / <sup>2</sup>when the sowdan sawe that socours were comynge to<sup>3</sup> Huon / the whiche he knew by reason of the great baner 8 of Perce / then the sowdan sayd to<sup>3</sup> his men / 'syrs, let vs leue this enemye, who by force of armys can not be<sup>4</sup> vanquesshid / let vs saue our lyues, for yonder I se comynge the admyral of Perce / for<sup>2</sup> yf we tary longe 12 here we <sup>5</sup>are all dede<sup>5</sup> & dystroyed.' Nere to<sup>3</sup> them was y<sup>e</sup> see syde about a lege fro Iaffe, the way towardis Surrey / there was redy a galey the which the sowdan had sent thether fro the citey of Escaloun / 16 the sowdan rode thether; and his men lefte and forsoke<sup>6</sup> Huon, who was ryght wery and coud not longe haue enduryd, nor had not enduryd so longe but for the <sup>7</sup>vertue that was in the rych stones<sup>8</sup> that 20 were about hym. The sowdan to saue his lyfe he and his men dyd so moch that they came to the place where as the galey was / and enteryd in to it in<sup>2</sup> great haste<sup>10</sup> for<sup>11</sup> sauegarde of theyr lyues, &<sup>12</sup> forsoke<sup>6</sup> 24 theyr horses on<sup>13</sup> the see syde.

¶ How the admyral of Perce<sup>14</sup> found Huon, where as he hadde foughte with .xl. men sarasyns, and howe the sowdan fled to 28 acre / and how the admyral of Perce<sup>14</sup>

<sup>1</sup> great.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> vnto.      <sup>4</sup> ouercome nor.

<sup>5-5</sup> shalbe all slaine.      <sup>6</sup> did forsake.

<sup>7</sup> Fol. cxxvi. back, col. 1.      <sup>8</sup> and pearles.      <sup>9</sup> as.

<sup>10</sup> as they could by any meanes.      <sup>11</sup> the.      <sup>12</sup> they.

<sup>13</sup> vppon.      <sup>14</sup> and Media.

besegid hym there; and of the<sup>1</sup> vysyon  
that Huon had in a<sup>2</sup> nyght. Ca. C.xxxix.

4 **A**fter that the Sowdan was thus fled  
and departyd, the admyrall of Perce<sup>3</sup>  
came to the place where as Huon  
was sore wery of trauayle, and saw<sup>4</sup>  
8 aboutt hym <sup>5</sup>laye dede<sup>5</sup> a great  
nombre of men slayne, wherof they  
had<sup>6</sup> maruayle; the admyrall, seyng Huon alone,  
began<sup>7</sup> to wepe for petye and for ioy that he had, and  
sayd, 'O ryght noble<sup>8</sup> knyght, moste excellente of all  
12 other leuyng in this world, to whome in prowes and  
valure none can compare<sup>9</sup> / ye are the myrour of all  
knyghtis / the temple of trouthe / the resort<sup>10</sup> of wedowes  
and of<sup>5</sup> orphelyns / to whome god hathe geuyn so  
16 great<sup>11</sup> grace that none can saye<sup>12</sup> the bountye that is  
in you / by whome the honure of the Percyans and  
Medyens this day is sauyn and kepte / I desyre  
you ryght cordeally,<sup>13</sup> my dere frynd,<sup>14</sup> shewe me yf ye  
20 haue any hurt wherby ye shulde be in any parell<sup>15</sup> /  
'syr,' quod Huon, 'it apartayneth<sup>16</sup> not to<sup>17</sup> me to  
haue suche hye wordys or prayes to be geuen / I  
oughte to haue none other prayse but as one of your  
24 other knyghtis, wherof ye haue so many noble and  
valyaunte that they can not be nomberyd / but, syr,  
know for trouthe, this grace and glory cometh of our  
lord god, who hathe aydyd and socoryd you, reportynge  
28 how<sup>18</sup> ye haue in hym parfite affyaunce' / <sup>19</sup>then the  
admyrall alyghtyd, and came and embracyd Huon,  
and after<sup>20</sup> came Barnarde, sore wepyng for petye<sup>21</sup>

The admiral of  
Persia comes to  
where Huon is,  
sore weary;

the admiral  
marvels at the  
number of men  
lying dead  
around.

He weeps for joy  
at seeing Huon,  
and sings his  
praises;

then the admiral  
asks if Huon has  
received any hurt.

Huon disclaims  
any merit in  
himself;

the success came  
from God alone.

1 strange. 2 the. 3 and Media. 4 lying.  
5-6 omitted. 6 great. 7 sore. 8 and valiant.  
9 be compared. 10 comfort. 11 vertue and.  
12 report. 13 hartely. 14 to. 15 or daunger.  
16 Fol. cxxvi. back. col. 2. 17 vnto. 18 that.  
19 and. 20 him. 21 compassion.

Barnard, weeping  
for joy, kisses his  
cousin Huon,  
who ought to  
thank God and  
the Virgin for  
having thus saved  
him.

Huon is feasted  
by all the barons.

A horse is  
brought Huon,  
who mounts,  
and they come to  
the place where  
the battle had  
been fought.

The Persians were  
made rich by the  
booty.

The admiral and  
Huon leave the  
plains of Rames  
and lodge in the  
town, where they  
determine to  
remain three days  
to refresh  
themselves.

and<sup>1</sup> ioye that he had founde his cosyn Huon in  
sauegarde, and came and kyste hym<sup>2</sup> .x. tymes, and  
sayd / ' my ryght dere lorde,<sup>3</sup> well ye<sup>4</sup> ought to<sup>4</sup> thanke  
<sup>5</sup>god<sup>6</sup> and the blessyd vyrgyn Mary his mother<sup>6</sup> who<sup>4</sup>  
hathe sauyd you fro so many parellous<sup>7</sup> aduentures,  
wherof I thanke our lorde Iesu chryst that hathe geuen  
you such grace' / <sup>8</sup>then he was of all the barons greatly  
stadyd, and they had<sup>9</sup> maruayle of the parelles and<sup>8</sup>  
adventure that Huon had scapyd, wherfore they sayd  
they ought greatly to lawde<sup>10</sup> god in that Huon was  
aryuyd in theyr countre, by whome they were reducyd  
<sup>11</sup>to<sup>11</sup> the fayth of Iesu chryst. Thus deuysyd the<sup>12</sup>  
lordis<sup>12</sup> amonge themselfe / and behelde the dede men  
that lay about Huon / <sup>8</sup>when they had bene there  
<sup>13</sup>a season and sawe that y<sup>e</sup> sowdan was fled, then a  
horse was brought to<sup>14</sup> Huon, and he mountyd<sup>15</sup> / then<sup>16</sup>  
they departyd<sup>16</sup> thence and came to<sup>14</sup> y<sup>e</sup> place wher  
as y<sup>e</sup> batayle had bene, wheras they founde .lxxiiii.  
thousande men dede,<sup>17</sup> besyde them that were slayne in  
the fleyng in y<sup>e</sup> chase, wheras there were slayne<sup>20</sup>  
.xii.M.,<sup>18</sup> besyde the presoners great goodes<sup>19</sup> wan ther<sup>19</sup>  
the Parsyans,<sup>20</sup> the whiche was departed<sup>21</sup> to such as it  
apartained, so that they were all made ryche / then the  
admyrall<sup>22</sup> and Huon departed fro the playns of Rames, <sup>24</sup>  
<sup>23</sup>then they went and logyd in the towne / and in the  
mornynge they determynyd to tary there thre dayes to  
refresshe them / and on<sup>24</sup> the fourthe daye they  
departed bycause it was shewed them how<sup>25</sup> y<sup>e</sup> sowdan<sup>28</sup>  
was departed fro Sayre and gone by see with a small

<sup>1</sup> for.      <sup>2</sup> more then.      <sup>3</sup> and Maister.      <sup>4</sup> may.

<sup>5</sup> our lord.      <sup>6-6</sup> for his goodnesse alwayes towards you.

<sup>7</sup> and dangerous.      <sup>8</sup> and.      <sup>9</sup> al great.      <sup>10</sup> and praise.

<sup>11-11</sup> and brought to beleue in.      <sup>12</sup> and Barons.      <sup>13</sup> for.

<sup>14</sup> vnto.      <sup>15</sup> vpon him and.      <sup>16</sup> from.

<sup>17</sup> vpon the earth.      <sup>18</sup> men.

<sup>19-19</sup> wan ther after Medians.      <sup>20</sup> and Medians.

<sup>21</sup> and diuided.      <sup>22</sup> Fol. cxxvii. col. 1.      <sup>23</sup> and.

<sup>24</sup> vpon.      <sup>25</sup> that.

- companye to the citey of Acre. Then the admyrall  
and Huon drew theyr host towardis Napelous, and  
there taryed two dayes / <sup>1</sup>fro thence they wente to  
4 Iene and so to the citey of Nasareth, and visyted that  
holy place, whereas the aungell brought the salutacion  
angelyke to the vyrgyn mary. Then fro thence they  
went to the castell of Iaffet and toke it with assaulte,  
8 and slewe all them that were within<sup>2</sup> excepte suche as  
wolde byleue in our lord Iesu chryst. <sup>1</sup>Then fro  
thence they went and logyd within halfe a lege of  
Acre, & there pyght<sup>3</sup> vp theyr tentis and paulyons /  
12 and when they were all logyd / ther foragers ran  
abrode and brought to the hoste great plente of  
vytayles / oftentymys they skyrmysshed before the  
cete of acre / But they kowde neuer<sup>4</sup> fynde man nor  
16 woman that durst issu out to do any dede of armes;  
there they lay .viii. dayes and no man dyd them any  
domag, for the<sup>5</sup> sarasyns wer so affrayed for the great  
los<sup>6</sup> that they had sufferyde, that they durste not  
20 stere<sup>7</sup> / And the sowdan, who was w<sup>i</sup>th<sup>i</sup>n, wrote letters  
into al his countres, as wel in to Arrabey / Egypt /  
and<sup>8</sup> Barbarye / & Europe, and<sup>9</sup> to al<sup>10</sup> hys frendys,  
that they wolde come and socoure hym in<sup>11</sup> his nede;  
24 he sent dyuers messengers bothe by londe and by see,  
also he sent in to anthyoche & in to Damas, & to  
al other places where as he thought to haue any<sup>12</sup>  
socoure / and on<sup>13</sup> a day two foragers of the admirallis  
28 <sup>14</sup>went forthe on<sup>13</sup> the see seid, and they found by the  
way trampoignifle the sowdans messenger / they toke  
and brought hym in <sup>8</sup>to the hoste<sup>8</sup> to the Admyrals  
tent, and ther he was examynyde and hys letters taken  
32 fro hym, the which were sene and red befor the

On the fourth day  
the admiral and  
Huon draw their  
host towards  
Nablous, where  
they tarry two  
days.

Thence they go to  
Jene and the city  
of Nazareth.

They assaulted  
and took the  
castle of Jaffet.

They put up their  
tents and pa-  
vilions half a  
league from Acre;  
foragers brought  
food to the host.

They skirmish  
before the city,  
but the Saracens  
are too frightened  
to venture out for  
deeds of arms.

The sultan wrote  
letters to all his  
countries, as well  
as to Arabia,  
Egypt, Barbary  
and Europe, for  
aid.

Messengers are  
sent by land and  
sea, even to  
Antioch and  
Damascus.

Two foragers of  
the admiral find  
the sultan's  
messenger by the  
sea-side,  
and bring him to  
the admiral's  
tent.

<sup>1</sup> and. <sup>2</sup> it. <sup>3</sup> pitcht. <sup>4</sup> neither. <sup>5</sup> paynims and.

<sup>6</sup> and damage. <sup>7</sup> nor make any semblance.

<sup>8</sup> omitted. <sup>9</sup> as. <sup>10</sup> other. <sup>11</sup> at. <sup>12</sup> any ayd or.

<sup>13</sup> vpon.

<sup>14</sup> Fol. cxxvii. col. 2.



His letters are read, and thus the admiral and Huon learn the sultan's plans.

They hang the messenger on a gallows in sight of the sultan.

The admiral summons the barons to his tent, and bid them take counsel together as to the manner of continuing the war.

They are to give their answer on the morrow.

At night all go to rest except those who have charge of the watch.

Huon spent the night in the admiral's tent, and in his sleep a vision came to him. He thought he was at Mayence in person, and saw the Emperor of Germany take Esclaramonde out of prison, and

admyrall and huon / the whiche when they herde yt and the content therof, ther by they knew sumwhat of y<sup>e</sup> sowdans counsaile / then they toke the messanger and brought hym before the citeye of Acre, and made there 4 a payre of galowes, and hangyd vp the messanger in<sup>1</sup> the syght of the sowdan and of them<sup>2</sup> within the citeye / the same day the admyrall assemblyd his<sup>3</sup> barons in his tente, & sayde to<sup>4</sup> them / 'syrs, all ye that be 8 here assemblyd, knowe that I haue great desyre to knowe what thyng is<sup>5</sup> to be done, and how we shall vse our selfe in this warre that we haue begonne / ye knowe wel the victory that, by the grace of <sup>6</sup>god<sup>6</sup> and 12 by the<sup>7</sup> prowes of Huon, that<sup>8</sup> we haue<sup>9</sup> obtayned and haue here our enemye enclosyd, who can not fle without<sup>10</sup> it be by the see / therfore I desyre you all that eche<sup>11</sup> of you wyll shewe your aduyse what is to 16 be done / and that to morowe at<sup>12</sup> this owre<sup>13</sup> to geue me an answee /, then al the lordis<sup>14</sup> aduysyd together, and so among them was dyuers opinyons and reasons, howbeit they departyd eueryman to his<sup>15</sup> owne logynge, 20 bycause they had daye of answee;<sup>16</sup> the nexte day folowyng / thus y<sup>e</sup> daye passyd without any thyng done, and at nyght euery man wente to reste / excepte suche as had the charge of the wache that nyght / who 24 went not to bed, as is the<sup>17</sup> custume of the warre. Huon taryed all that nyghte in the admyralles tente, and aboughte the owre of mydnyght Huon dremid in his slepe, & thought <sup>18</sup>that he was at Maience in 28 presone, and saw the emperoure of Almayne take Esclaramonde his wyfe out of presone / and she semyd to<sup>4</sup> hym pale and lene and yl coloryd / and how she was in her kyrtyl, and her heyr hangynge aboute her 32

<sup>1</sup> within.

<sup>2</sup> there.

<sup>3</sup> Lordes and.

<sup>4</sup> vnto.

<sup>5</sup> best.

<sup>6-6</sup> our Lord Iesus Christ.

<sup>7</sup> hye.

<sup>8</sup> omitted.

<sup>9</sup> now.

<sup>10</sup> except.

<sup>11</sup> euerie one.

<sup>12</sup> about.

<sup>13</sup> time.

<sup>14</sup> and Barons.

<sup>15</sup> their.

<sup>16</sup> and.

<sup>17</sup> order and.

<sup>18</sup> Fol. cxxvii, back, col. 1.

- shulders / and .x. men ledyng her out of the towne to  
 be brente<sup>1</sup> / and he thought<sup>2</sup> she made petuous com-  
 playntes for Huon her husbaynd and for claryet her  
 4 daughter. <sup>3</sup>Also he thought he saw passe thurgh y<sup>e</sup>  
 stretes .ccc. gentyll men who had bene takyn at  
 Burdeaux when the cytye was takyn / and he thought<sup>2</sup>  
 he sawe dyuers galowes made, and how the Emperoure  
 8 had sworne to hange them all / so *that* he thought he  
 was<sup>4</sup> sorowful<sup>5</sup> to se that company ledde to<sup>6</sup> the<sup>7</sup>  
 deth warde<sup>8</sup> / for in his slepe he thought verely all this  
 had bene trewe, and that he coude not helpe it. Thus  
 12 as Huon was in this payne slepyng, he gaue an horryble  
 crye / so *that* y<sup>e</sup> Admyrall and Barnarde awoke ther-  
 with in hast / thynkyng it had bene theyr enemyes<sup>2</sup>  
 had enteryd to haue slayne them / then they herde  
 16 Huon say, 'O good lord, I pray the<sup>9</sup> by thy pyte and  
 grace to socoure & comforte my good wyfe / for sertenly  
 I can not tell, but my harte Iuggyth<sup>10</sup> / that the false  
 emperoure wyll cause her to dye and all y<sup>e</sup> other  
 20 presoners.' Then the Admyrall and Barnard rose  
 vp and came to<sup>11</sup> Huon, and had well harde his  
 complayntes, and sayd / 'A, syr, dyscomfort not  
 your self nor gyue no fayth nor credence to dremes /  
 24 for the emperoure wyll neuer do suche a velany as to  
 put to deth so noble a lady / it is nothyng but your  
 thought and remembrance that ye haue dayly, the  
 whiche in the nyght representyth before you slepyng' /  
 28 'A, syr,' quod Huon, 'I can not beleue<sup>12</sup> but that my  
 wyfe hath sumwhat to do / Alas, to longe<sup>13</sup> I tary<sup>13</sup>  
 here / but yf your warre were at an ende I wolde  
 gladly go my way / for I shall neuer haue ioye at my  
 32 harte tyll<sup>14</sup> I maye knowe the tought.' Then they

cause ten of his  
 men to lead her  
 out of the town  
 to be burnt;

and a gallows  
 prepared on which  
 to hang 300  
 gentlemen taken  
 at Bordeaux.

Huon awoke with  
 a great cry;  
 the admiral and  
 Barnard wake  
 hastily, deeming  
 the enemy had  
 come.

They hear Huon  
 pray to the Lord  
 to succour his  
 wife.

When they hear  
 the cause of  
 Huon's distress,  
 they assure him  
 that it is but a  
 dream, to which  
 no credence must  
 be given.

Huon is troubled,  
 and were the war  
 only at an end  
 gladly would he  
 go his way.

<sup>1</sup> burnt.    <sup>2</sup> that.    <sup>3</sup> And.    <sup>4</sup> right.

<sup>5</sup> and sore greeued in his mind.    <sup>6</sup> towards.    <sup>7</sup> their.

<sup>8</sup> omitted.    <sup>9</sup> euen for thy Sons sake and.    <sup>10</sup> thinketh.

<sup>11</sup> vnto.    <sup>12</sup> Fol. cxxvii. back, col. 2.

<sup>13-13</sup> haue I taried.    <sup>14</sup> vntill.

The council  
assembles in the  
admiral's tent.

The marshal  
announces they  
will say not a  
word until Huon  
shall have given  
his opinion.

The admiral begs  
Huon to show  
what he thinks  
it best to be done.

arose, for it was day, <sup>1</sup>and then eueryman arose / and  
the oure come that all the <sup>2</sup>counseyll assembled <sup>3</sup>  
together in the admyralles tente / And euery man sat  
downe on <sup>4</sup>benches well coueryd with cloth of golde <sup>4</sup>  
and other ryche clothes of sylke / <sup>5</sup>when they were  
there assembled / the marshall rose vp, <sup>6</sup>he was a ryght  
sage and a <sup>7</sup>wyse man, and sayd / 'Syr Admyrall, we  
haue comonyd together and debatyd y<sup>e</sup> mater at lenth, <sup>8</sup>  
and we haue had dyuers opynyones, but we be all  
concludyd to say nothyng tyll <sup>8</sup>that Huon, who is  
therby you, hath fyrst <sup>9</sup>shewyd his opynione what he  
thynkethe <sup>10</sup>to be done / for it is <sup>11</sup>resone that he be <sup>12</sup>  
harde fyrst <sup>12</sup>to speke' / <sup>5</sup>then the Admyrall beheld  
Huon, and sayd / 'my dere frende, ye here what my  
lordes <sup>13</sup>hath concludyd together / and how they all  
resteth vpon you *that* fyrst ye shall say your aduyce, <sup>16</sup>  
wherfore I requyre you for the loue of <sup>14</sup>god / <sup>15</sup>shew  
me what I ought to do as ye thinke best.'

¶ How Huon of Burdeaux counseyld y<sup>e</sup>  
admyrall of Perce to reyse vp his sege <sup>20</sup>  
before acre, for dyuers resones, and to  
retorne in to Perce. Ca. C.xl.



Huon gives his  
advice.

¶ Hen Huon had well vnderstond the  
Admyrall, and that he had <sup>16</sup>hard the <sup>24</sup>  
lordes <sup>13</sup>that they opynyons was *that*  
they wolde not speke till <sup>8</sup>he had  
fyrst shewyd his <sup>17</sup>opynyon, then he  
sayd <sup>18</sup>to <sup>19</sup>the Admyrall, 'syr, yf it be youre plesure <sup>28</sup>  
I owght not to be gyn fyrst, this reason for ye haue

<sup>1</sup> and the appointed houre was come *before* & euerie man.

<sup>2</sup> Lords of the. <sup>3</sup> should assemble. <sup>4</sup> vpon. <sup>5</sup> and.

<sup>6</sup> for. <sup>7</sup> omitted. <sup>8</sup> vntill. <sup>9</sup> first *after* shewed.

<sup>10</sup> is best. <sup>11</sup> good. <sup>12</sup> first *after* to speke.

<sup>13</sup> and Barons. <sup>14</sup> our Lord. <sup>15</sup> to. <sup>16</sup> well.

<sup>17</sup> aduise and. <sup>18</sup> Fol. cxxviii. col. 1. <sup>19</sup> vnto.

many lordis can better speke in this matter then I, but  
 syne<sup>1</sup> it is youre plesure and theres, I shall shewe<sup>2</sup>  
 yow shortly myn aduys, and as I wold do if I where  
 4 as yowe be;'<sup>3</sup> then<sup>4</sup> Huon of Burdeaux sayd / 'syr  
 admyrall of perce & of mede, it is a longe season sin ye  
 departed fro youre contre londys and syngnoryes, and  
 not without great trauaile and great<sup>5</sup> payne, and that  
 8 god haue done you that grace that with<sup>6</sup> an armeri<sup>6</sup> al  
 ye haue passed, & taken castels, & haue slayne and  
 dystroyed the cou[n]treys & men of the sowdans of  
 babylone and<sup>7</sup> egyp / and haue bene at the holy cetye  
 12 of Ierusalem, the whiche is in the myddes of his  
 countre / and after that the sowdan hath fought with  
 you with people innumerable, whom ye haue dys-  
 counfyted, and slayn<sup>8</sup> all they that were with hym.  
 16 And also god hath gyuen you grace that ye ar sauely  
 skapyd with lytyll losse<sup>9</sup> / and none ye haue in this  
 cytye before vs besegyde and inclosyd in y<sup>e</sup> sowdan  
 your enymy / who nyght and day doth emagen how he  
 20 may recouer his losse, as ye may well knowe by his  
 letters sent by his messyngers / y<sup>e</sup> whiche ye haue  
 sene and red the contynue<sup>10</sup> of y<sup>e</sup> same. And, syr, ye  
 may well thynke that he hathe sente dyuers other  
 24 messengyr as well by londe as by see to his frendys to  
 seke for socoure and<sup>11</sup> ayeyd, in the entencyon to be  
 reuengyde of you, wherfore I counseyll you, syn<sup>12</sup> ye  
 be so farre of fro your countre, as shortly as ye can  
 28 to departe fro thence<sup>13</sup> and to reyse your sege and  
 retorne in to your owne countre / your men be very  
 and sore trauelyd / <sup>14</sup>the Sowdan is in his owne countre /  
 and<sup>15</sup> he wyll alwayes assemble <sup>16</sup>great nombre of  
 32 peopell / and alwayes he may haue socoure and vyteylls,

Since they have  
 been so long away  
 from Persia, and

have so far ben  
 successful, and

have escaped with  
 little loss,

they had better  
 raise the siege of  
 Acre, and return  
 into their own  
 country as quickly  
 as possible.  
 The sultan can  
 command succour  
 both of men and  
 food,

<sup>1</sup> seeing that.    <sup>2</sup> vnto.    <sup>3</sup> are.    <sup>4</sup> Duke.    <sup>5</sup> much.  
<sup>6-6</sup> one armie.    <sup>7</sup> of.    <sup>8</sup> almost.    <sup>9</sup> or dammage.  
<sup>10</sup> contents.    <sup>11</sup> for.    <sup>12</sup> seeing.    <sup>13</sup> hence.  
<sup>14</sup> and.    <sup>15</sup> omitted.    <sup>16</sup> Fol. cxxviii. col. 2.

whereas the  
Persians can have  
neither.

They can return  
in the spring  
if they wish.

As long as they  
stay in these  
parts, Huon will  
not forsake them,

though he greatly  
desires to return  
to France.

the whiche ye can not do nor haue / for here with<sup>1</sup>  
great payne ye shall <sup>2</sup>fynde any<sup>2</sup> vyteyll / for the  
countrie is sore fowlyd and opressyd / & ye can haue no  
socoure fro any parte, wherfore of necessitye ye most <sup>4</sup>  
departe / the whiche ye may do without any losse.  
For ye may passe y<sup>e</sup> ryuer of eufrates or<sup>3</sup> his pepill be  
assembled to do you any damage / & when the  
sprynge<sup>4</sup> tyme of y<sup>e</sup> yere cometh, yf it be your <sup>8</sup>  
plesure, ye may retorne with such nombre of men as ye  
shall thynke best / for ye are of pusaunce so to do.  
Syr, this that I say is for nothyng that I wold forsak or  
leue you as longe as ye be in this parts; I had rather <sup>12</sup>  
dye / though it be so as ye well knowe / that the  
thyng that I ought most to desyre is to departe to go  
in to <sup>5</sup>france,<sup>5</sup> where as I haue left my wyffe, my  
doughter, and my countrie in great pouerte and danger <sup>16</sup>  
of deth and dystruccyon.'

¶ How the admyrall of Perce agreed well to  
the counseyll of Huon of Burdeaux, and  
pryessed his saynge; & of y<sup>e</sup> fayr offer that <sup>20</sup>  
y<sup>e</sup> admyrall of Perce mad to<sup>6</sup> Huon of  
Burdeaux. Ca. C.xli.



Hen the Admyrall had<sup>7</sup> hard<sup>6</sup> Huon, he  
behelde his lordes, and all wepyng, <sup>24</sup>  
sayd, 'syr, all ye that be my men, ye  
haue<sup>9</sup> well herd Duke Huon, who hath  
shewyd his aduyce,<sup>10</sup> and therfore I  
<sup>11</sup>commaunde and desyre you all to shew me what ye <sup>28</sup>  
thinke by the sayenge of Huon' / then they all with  
one voyce sayd / 'syr, a more noble nor<sup>12</sup> profytable

<sup>1</sup> without.      <sup>2-2</sup> haue no.      <sup>3</sup> before.      <sup>4</sup> spring.

<sup>5-5</sup> my owne countre.      <sup>6</sup> vnto.      <sup>7</sup> well.

<sup>8</sup> and vnderstood.      <sup>9</sup> all.      <sup>10</sup> and opinion.

<sup>11</sup> Fol. cxxviii. back, col. 1.      <sup>12</sup> or.



counsaille can<sup>1</sup> no mortal man geue for your welth and  
 suertye of your parsons and of vs all / there was neuer  
 man spake better, & therefore all we pray and counsaile  
 4 you to vpholde the counsaile that he hathe geuen  
 you' / then the admyrall, seynge<sup>2</sup> al his lordis agreed  
 to the counsaile that Huon had geuyn hym / he sayd /  
 'syrs, as for me, syn ye are agreed therto, I am redy to  
 8 byleue all good counsaile / there was neuer a heygher  
 counsaile geuyn to<sup>3</sup> any kynge or prynce' / <sup>4</sup>when the  
 admyrall had sayd how<sup>2</sup> he wolde byleue the counsaile  
 that Huon had geuen hym / he callyd then Huon to<sup>3</sup>  
 12 hym, and sayde / 'syr Duke of Burdeaux, the pyller /  
 shyld, and sworde of the chrysten faythe, and the  
 defender of the Perseans / and Medyens / we<sup>5</sup> knowe  
 well that by ryght I oughte not to kepe you / for<sup>6</sup>  
 16 reason is<sup>7</sup> that ye retourne thether where as ye were  
 borne, and to ayde & comferte your trew spowse and  
 wyfe / for whom ye be in great anoyauce,<sup>8</sup> and not  
 without cause / and therefore for y<sup>e</sup> goodnes and honoure  
 20 that we haue founde in you, we offer to go with you in  
 our owne proper parsons with al our armye, and mo to  
 the nombre inestymable, and to ayde to reuenge you of  
 the false emperoure of almayne who hathe done you so  
 24 moche yll and damage, or elles yf ye wyll retourne to<sup>3</sup>  
 vs in to Perce at this nexte spryngyng<sup>9</sup> tyme we shall  
 delyuer<sup>3</sup> you suche pusaunce, and my selfe to go with  
 them in to almayne, so that y<sup>e</sup> valeyes and mountaynes  
 28 shall be full of people / and we shall do so moche by  
 the grace of our lorde god that we shall de<sup>10</sup>liuer the  
 emperour in to your handis to do with hym<sup>11</sup> your  
 pleasure.' when Huon<sup>12</sup> vnderstode the admyrall<sup>13</sup> who  
 32 offeryd him so great an offer,<sup>14</sup> sayde / 'Syr, of the

The lords of  
 Persia pray the  
 admiral to follow  
 Huon's advice;

the admiral  
 agrees to do so.

The admiral  
 offers, accom-  
 panied by his  
 whole army, to  
 go with Huon,  
 and aid him to  
 revenge himself  
 on the Emperor.

<sup>1</sup> can *after* man.    <sup>2</sup> that.    <sup>3</sup> vnto.    <sup>4</sup> and.    <sup>5</sup> I.

<sup>6</sup> it is good.    <sup>7</sup> omitted.    <sup>8</sup> discomfort.    <sup>9</sup> spring.

<sup>10</sup> Fol. cxxviii. back, col. 2.    <sup>11</sup> at.

<sup>12</sup> had well heard and.    <sup>13</sup> Persia and of Media.

<sup>14</sup> hee.

Huon thanks the  
admiral for his  
great offer,

but first intends  
to try peaceful  
means with the  
Emperor.

If he is un-  
successful, then  
Huon will ask the  
admiral's aid and  
that of all his  
friends.

curtoyse that ye offer me I thanke you with <sup>1</sup>a good <sup>1</sup>  
harte: god forbede that I shulde be the causer of  
dystruccyon of chrysten blode / fyrst I wyll assaye  
with all swetenes and reasonable offers as moche as in <sup>4</sup>  
me is possyble to do to present & offer <sup>2</sup>the emperour /  
to y<sup>e</sup> entent that I myght <sup>3</sup>ateyne to his loue and to  
haue pease, the whych thyng I <sup>4</sup>desyre, and wyll <sup>4</sup>do  
with all my harte; And yf it be so that he wyll not <sup>8</sup>  
inclyne nother to ryghte nor resone, then H. <sup>5</sup>will come  
to you and to <sup>2</sup>all other that I knowe or thynke <sup>6</sup>to  
be <sup>7</sup>my frendis, and then desyre you al of <sup>8</sup>ayed &  
comforte. <sup>9</sup>

12

¶ howe <sup>10</sup>huon <sup>11</sup>toke <sup>12</sup>leue of the admyral  
and of <sup>13</sup>the <sup>14</sup>lordys of Perce & wente and  
toke shyppeinge at the porte of thesayre,  
and how he ariuyd at marsell without <sup>16</sup>  
fyndyng of any strange aduenture.

Ca. C.xlii.



If there is need,  
the admiral will  
stand by the offer  
he has made,

¶ Hen the admyrall <sup>16</sup>vnderstode Huon,  
he sayde, 'my ryght dere <sup>17</sup>frend, I <sup>20</sup>  
can <sup>18</sup>you <sup>19</sup>thanke of that you saye /  
ye maye be sure <sup>20</sup>yf ye haue any nede  
& that ye can make none apoynt-  
ment with y<sup>e</sup> emperoure, the offers *that* I haue made <sup>2</sup>  
you, I shall vpholde and socoure you in myne owne  
parsone' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I <sup>21</sup>thanke you, for I am  
moche bounde to <sup>2</sup>you, wherfore I am yours' / then  
the admyrall toke Huon by the hande, & sayde, 'syr, <sup>28</sup>  
I se well we two muste departe, the which greueth me

<sup>1-1</sup> all my.    <sup>2</sup> vnto.    <sup>3</sup> may.    <sup>4-4</sup> will and desire to.

<sup>5</sup> Huon.    <sup>6</sup> thinke *before* knowe.    <sup>7</sup> of.

<sup>8</sup> of your courtesies for.    <sup>9</sup> succour.    <sup>10</sup> Duke.

<sup>11</sup> of Bourdeaux.    <sup>12</sup> his.    <sup>13</sup> all.    <sup>14</sup> other.

<sup>15</sup> Fol. cxxix. col. 1.    <sup>16</sup> had well.    <sup>17</sup> and wel-beloused.

<sup>18</sup> giue.    <sup>19</sup> good.    <sup>20</sup> that.    <sup>21</sup> most hartely.

- sore / but synne it is thus I must suffer it, <sup>1</sup>I knowe  
 well<sup>2</sup> ye thynke longe tyll<sup>3</sup> ye be gone / the seruys  
 that ye haue done<sup>4</sup> me, I can not recompence it / for our  
 4 two wayes ar contrary, yours is by water and myne is  
 by lond ; And, therfore, at y<sup>e</sup> porte of the sare<sup>5</sup> there is  
 a ryche shyp / the whiche was wonne vpon the sowdans  
 men, I gyue her to you, enter into her at your pleasure,  
 8 and therwith I gyue you .x. somers chargyd with  
 golde, & other chargyd with clothes of golde and  
 sylke / and ye maye take with you all the Frensshe  
 men that be in this host, such as folowed vs when we  
 12 departyd fro Ierusalem / let them go with you in to  
 theyr countre / and after that ye be<sup>6</sup> departyd I shall  
 rayse my sege and retourne into Perce' / 'syr,' quod  
 Huon, 'of your gyfte and of your courtoysy I thanke  
 16 you.' Then the admyrall sente these somers to the  
 porte of the sare,<sup>5</sup> and there al that<sup>7</sup> rychesse was<sup>8</sup> put  
 into the shyppe *that* was<sup>8</sup> geuen<sup>4</sup> Huon / <sup>1</sup>then he  
 delyueryd vnto Huon to serue hym al the pylgremes  
 20 that were there of Fraunce ; and the admyrall gaue  
 them ryche gyftys, wherof they were<sup>9</sup> ioyful<sup>1</sup> of the  
 fayre aduenture that was fallen to<sup>4</sup> them / for they  
 hadde <sup>10</sup>more moneye at theyr departynge then they  
 24 hadde when they came out of theyr ow[n]e countre,  
 wherof they thankyd the admyrall / and promysyd to  
 do trew seruyce to<sup>4</sup> Huon, and not to leue hym tyll<sup>3</sup>  
 he had achewed all his busynes / Then Huon made  
 28 hym redy, & toke with hym the great Gryffons fote /  
<sup>1</sup>the admyrall, & his constables and marshallys, and  
 the other lordis of the hoste, lepte on<sup>11</sup> theyr horses and  
 conuaied huon and his compagne to the porte of the  
 32 sare,<sup>5</sup> where as his shyppe was redy furnysshyd with  
 vyteyle and other thyngys parteynyng therto / then

Huon will find at  
 the port a rich  
 ship won from the  
 sultan ;  
 this the admiral  
 gives to Huon,

and he may take  
 with him all the  
 Frenchmen that  
 are in the host.

Huon thanks the  
 admiral for his  
 gift.

The admiral gives  
 the pilgrims of  
 France rich gifts ;

they thank the  
 admiral,  
 and promise not  
 to leave Huon till  
 he has accom-  
 plished his desire.  
 Huon makes  
 ready to depart,  
 taking with him  
 the griffin's foot.

All the Persians  
 accompany Huon  
 to the port,

<sup>1</sup> and.      <sup>2</sup> that.      <sup>3</sup> vntill.      <sup>4</sup> vnto.      <sup>5</sup> Thesayre.

<sup>6</sup> are.      <sup>7</sup> the.      <sup>8</sup> were.      <sup>9</sup> right.

<sup>10</sup> Fol. cxxix. col. 2.      <sup>11</sup> vppon.

and there he  
takes leave of the  
admiral and the  
other barons.

Huon,<sup>1</sup> wepyng, toke<sup>2</sup> leue of the admyrall and of the  
other<sup>3</sup> barouns / for whose departynge they were<sup>4</sup>  
sorowfull, and so retournyd to theyr hoste before Acre /  
deuysynge of the great valure, prowes, and courtoysye<sup>4</sup>  
that was in Huon. Then the admyrall commaundyd  
preuely the nexte mornynge to dysloge and to<sup>5</sup> departe /  
the whiche was done.

The admiral left  
Acre, found his  
fleet in the river  
Euphrates, and  
sailed into his  
own country.

Huon and  
Barnard, when  
aboard their ship,  
weighed anchor,  
and sailed  
without danger  
to Marseilles.

Then Huon gave  
the ship to the  
master who had  
brought them  
thither.

They rest at  
Marseilles for  
eight days.

¶ Thus the admyrall departid fro the citeye of 8  
Acre and toke his waye towardis Perce / and he founde  
on<sup>6</sup> the ryuer of Eufrates all his shyppis, and so with  
them he sayld into his owne countre / And Huon and  
barnarde his cosyn, and dyuers<sup>7</sup> knyghtis and squyers<sup>12</sup>  
of Fraunce, <sup>8</sup>when they were in theyr shyppe / they  
wayed vp theyr ancens and made sayle. Then they  
passyd the Goulfe of Sathale / and then passyd by the  
rodes and by sardayne / and so longe they saylid<sup>16</sup>  
without daunger or let that they came and aryuyd at  
the porte of Marseyle / <sup>8</sup>there they <sup>9</sup>toke londe<sup>9</sup> with  
great ioye / and dischargyd the shyp, and then he<sup>10</sup>  
gaue the shyp to the patron *that* had brought them<sup>20</sup>  
thether, wherby y<sup>e</sup> patron was rych & thankyd Huon /  
when they were al a lond, they<sup>11</sup> conueyed all theyr  
baggage in to theyr lodgyng in the towne, wheras they  
restyd an<sup>12</sup> .viii. dayes. Nowe let vs leue to speke of <sup>24</sup>  
Huon and of them that were *with* hym, and let vs  
speke of the abbot of cluney.

¶ How the<sup>13</sup> abbot of Cluny layde a busshe-  
ment of men of armys betwene Mascon<sup>28</sup>  
and Tournous agaynste the Emperours<sup>14</sup> <sup>29</sup>  
nephue, who was there slayne, and all his  
men / wherof the emperoure was so sore

<sup>1</sup> all.    <sup>2</sup> his.    <sup>3</sup> Lords and.    <sup>4</sup> right.    <sup>5</sup> omitted.

<sup>6</sup> vppon.    <sup>7</sup> other.    <sup>8</sup> and.    <sup>9-9</sup> went a shoare.

<sup>10</sup> Huon.    <sup>11</sup> Fol. cxxix. back, col. 1.    <sup>12</sup> about.

<sup>13</sup> good.    <sup>14</sup> of Almaines.

<sup>1</sup>troubelyd that he toke the duches esclaramond out of prison to haue brent<sup>2</sup> her, & the .iii.c. prysoners of Burdeaux to haue  
4 hangyd them all. Ca. C.xliii.



8 e haue well harde in this hystory / how Barnarde departyd fro y<sup>e</sup> abbey of Cluny to go<sup>3</sup> serche for his nephue Huon / and the abbot, seyng that he coude here no newes of Huon nor of Barnarde his cosyn, who was gone to seke for hym / he was<sup>4</sup> sore<sup>5</sup> displeasyd that he coude haue none other  
12 knowlege; but the thyng that causyd hym to pas y<sup>e</sup> mater the more esyer, was by cause of Claryet, Huons doughter, whome he kepte, and she was all his comforte / she was so fayre and so swete that none was  
16 lyke her in beauty nor<sup>3</sup> in good vertues, and agayne when he rememberyd the duches her mother, Esclaramond, whome he knewe was in great pouerte and mysery, he was therwith so sore dyspleasyd that al his  
20 membres trymbelid. So on<sup>6</sup> a day it was reportyd to<sup>7</sup> hym by a notable man that as he cam fro saynt Iames and by Burdeaux, howe that a nephue of the emperours shoulde go fro Burdeaux to the citey of Mayence, to  
24 his vncl Tharry the emperoure of Almayne / & howe he shuld haue with hym a great nombre of the burgesses of y<sup>e</sup> citey of Burdeaux as presoners, bycause  
on<sup>6</sup> a daye they spake of Huon theyr naturall lorde /  
28 and also how<sup>8</sup> he shuld cary with hym the trybute and money of the rentys and reuenewes of the countre of Burdeloys, and suche moneye as euery man was bounde to pay to<sup>7</sup> the emperour: when the good abbot of  
32 Cluney was aduerteysyd of the comynge of the

The abbot of Cluny was sore grieved that he could hear no newes of Huon of Barnard his cousin.

The abbot's grief was easier to bear since he kept with him Huon's daughter Clariet;

none was like her in beauty and virtue.

But the remembrance of the distress in which her mother was troubled the abbot.

It was reported how a nephew of the Emperor was going from Bordeaux to Mayence, with a number of the citizens of Bordeaux as prisoners,

and how he would cary with him certain moneyes.

<sup>1</sup> vexed and.

<sup>2</sup> burnt.

<sup>3</sup> and.

<sup>4</sup> right sorrowfull and.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. cxxix. back. col. 2.

<sup>6</sup> vppon.

<sup>7</sup> vnto.

<sup>8</sup> that.



Thereupon the  
abbot assembles a  
number of men,

and chooses the  
lord of Vergier to  
be captain.

He learns through  
spies which road  
the Emperor's  
nephew will take,

and commands  
the lord of  
Vergier to lie in  
ambush.

When the  
Germans pass, the  
lord of Vergier's  
company issues  
from the ambush,

and in a short  
space slay or take  
prisoner all their  
enemies.

emperours nephue, whom he reputyd as his enemy / he  
assembledid a great nombre of noble men, the most part  
parteynyng to<sup>1</sup> the duke of Burgoyne, who as then  
was father to Gyrard of Rousayllon, <sup>2</sup>who as then was<sup>2</sup> <sup>4</sup>  
but .iii. yere of age / <sup>3</sup>when y<sup>e</sup> abbot had assemblyd a  
good<sup>4</sup> nombre of men / he chose the lorde of Vergier to  
be capetayne and leder of that company / & then he  
sent out his spyes to knowe <sup>5</sup>the sartayne<sup>5</sup> which waye <sup>8</sup>  
the emperours nephue shulde come ; <sup>3</sup>at<sup>6</sup> last he had  
sartayne knowlege that he was logid at mas<sup>7</sup>cou, and  
that<sup>8</sup> the nexte daye he shulde departe to Tournous /  
<sup>3</sup>then the lorde of vergier and dyuers other by the <sup>12</sup>  
commaundement of the abbot of Cluny went and layd  
theyr busshement betwene mascou and Tournous, in a  
vale / so *that* by their spye, who laye on<sup>9</sup> a mountayne,  
<sup>10</sup>saw the Almayns comynge, abought the nombre of <sup>16</sup>  
.ii. M. horses / and the lorde of vergier had in his  
company aboute .iii. M. horses defensably aparayld /  
they were<sup>11</sup> ioyfull when they harde by theyr spye  
*that* theyr enemyes were comynge ; then they aparelyd <sup>20</sup>  
themselfe to abyde theyr enemyes / who were come so  
forwarde that they were past theyr fyrst enbusshement  
and were enteryd into the vale / when they of the  
fyrst enbusshement and they of the seconde enbusse- <sup>24</sup>  
ment sawe theyr tyme, they issuyd out & brake vpon  
theyr enemyes, and made a great crye, so that in<sup>12</sup> a  
shorte space theyr enemyes and the most parte of them  
were slayne, not one that scapyd, but other he was <sup>28</sup>  
slayne or taken / they coude not saue themselfe by  
cause on<sup>9</sup> the one syde was the mountayne, & on<sup>9</sup> the  
other syde the ryuer of some, and before and behynde  
theyr enemyes were they them selfe / the same tyme <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> vnto.      <sup>2-2</sup> being at that time.      <sup>3</sup> and.      <sup>4</sup> great.

<sup>5-5</sup> certainly.      <sup>6</sup> the.      <sup>7</sup> Fol. cxxx. col. 1.

<sup>8</sup> omitted.      <sup>9</sup> vppon.      <sup>10</sup> they.      <sup>11</sup> right.

<sup>12</sup> within.

- the emperours nephue was slaine, who was a goodly knyghte / and y<sup>e</sup> emperour had before sent hym to Burdeaux to gouerne the londe and countre of Burdeloys, 4 and had bene there the space of .iiii. yeris / of whose dethe the lorde of Vergier was sory, for he had rather <sup>1</sup>he had bene taken presoner / then they toke his body and buryed hym in the chefe church of Tournous, 8 where as they lay all nyght with theyr presoners, who were to y<sup>e</sup> nombre of .viii. c. ; they of Burdeaux *that* were taken as presoners were <sup>2</sup> Ioyfull, when <sup>3</sup>they were <sup>4</sup>scapyd the handys of the almayns.
- 12 ¶ After this discomfiture they retournid<sup>5</sup> Cluny, where as they were receyuid with great ioye of the abbot and of the couente / then the lorde of Vergier shewyd the <sup>6</sup>maner of the <sup>6</sup>dyscomfytur / and then 16 the botye was <sup>7</sup>departyd to<sup>7</sup> them *that* had wonne it<sup>8</sup> / then <sup>9</sup>all the men of warre departyd excepte a .M. men whome the abbot retaynyd styll<sup>8</sup> for the sauegarde of the towne of Cluny / who made many 20 scyrmysshis with the emperours men. <sup>9</sup>After this dyscomfytur the newes therof were<sup>10</sup> broughte to the citey of Magence to y<sup>e</sup> emperoure Therry, who was ryght sorowful for y<sup>e</sup> dethe of his nephue, who was his 24 systers sone / by reason of the sorowe &<sup>11</sup> dyspleysure that he had,<sup>12</sup> he was thre dayes after or<sup>13</sup> he wold come out<sup>14</sup> of his chambre / and on the fourthe day he sent for all his lordys and counsayle / & to the[m]<sup>15</sup> 28 he made his complayntis, how by the occasyon of duke Huon of Burdeaux, he had loste .iiii. of his nephues, & his bastarde sone / & sayd, 'I ought greatly to be anyoyed<sup>16</sup> when I can not be reuengyd of Huon / I 32 thynke he shal neuer retourne agayne / but syn<sup>17</sup> it is

The Emperor's nephew, a goodly knight, was himself slain,

and buried in the chief church of Tournous.

The men of Burdeaux that were prisoners were glad to have escaped the hands of the Germans. They returned to Cluny, and were joyfully received by the abbot.

All the men of war departed except a thousand retained to guard the town of Cluny.

The news of this defeat was brought to the Emperor Thierry at Mayence; he was right sorrowful for his nephew's death.

<sup>1</sup> that. <sup>2</sup> right. <sup>3</sup> Fol. cxxx. col. 2. <sup>4</sup> thus.

<sup>5</sup> to the abbey of. <sup>6-6</sup> whole discourse of their.

<sup>7-7</sup> deuided amongst. <sup>8</sup> omitted. <sup>9</sup> and.

<sup>10</sup> was presently. <sup>11</sup> great. <sup>12</sup> for. <sup>13</sup> before.

<sup>14</sup> forth. <sup>15</sup> then *in text*. <sup>16</sup> greeued. <sup>17</sup> seeing.

As he could not  
be revenged on  
Huon himself,

the Emperor  
determines to  
burn Esclara-  
monde and hang  
the 300 prisoners  
brought from  
Bordeaux.

Thorns were  
carried out of the  
city to burn the  
noble lady  
Esclaramonde,  
and four hangmen  
bring her and the  
prisoners out of  
the city,  
and beat them by  
the way.

Weeping and  
lamenting, the  
lady calls on our  
Lord Jesus Christ  
to bring her soul  
into Paradise.

so that I can take of hym<sup>1</sup> no vengauce, I shall take  
it vpon his wyfe Esclaramonde and vpon the .CCC.  
presoners that I brought out of Burdeaux / but by the  
same lorde that made and fourmyd me to his semblaunce, 4  
I shall neuer haue ioye in<sup>2</sup> my harte, nor drynke<sup>3</sup> nor  
ete tyll<sup>4</sup> I haue sene Esclaramonde brente<sup>5</sup> in a fyre,  
and y<sup>e</sup> .CCC. presoners hangyd and strangelyd, and I  
wyll that eche of you knowe that he that speketh 8  
to me fyrst to the contrary I shall hate hym euer  
after' / when the <sup>6</sup>lordis<sup>7</sup> harde the emperoure make  
that promyse, there was none so hardy that durst speke  
one worde / then the emperoure in hast<sup>8</sup> commaundid 12  
great plentye of thornes to be caryed out of the citey  
vnto a lytell mountayne there besyde / and therby  
to be rerid vp sartayne galous to hang theron .iii.  
C. presoners; all this was done as he commaundyd / 16  
for mo then .x. lode of thornes were caryed out to  
brenne<sup>9</sup> the noble lady Esclaramonde / and she was  
sent for out of pryson by .iiii. hangmen, and the  
presoners with her were brought into y<sup>e</sup> citey, and all 20  
to<sup>10</sup> beten by the waye / when the noble lady sawe how  
she was delte with all,<sup>11</sup> petuously she complaynyd for  
her good husbande Huon, and for her doughter claryet,  
and sayd / 'a, my ryght swete lorde & husband Huon / 24  
at this tyme shal be the departure of vs two'; <sup>12</sup>then  
she callyd vpon our lorde god<sup>13</sup> Iesu chryst, prayenge  
hym by his grace and petye to brynge her sowle into  
paradyse / thus cryenge and complaynynge the noble 28  
lady was led thughe the towne / <sup>12</sup>then ladyes, and  
burgesses, and maydens of the citey ran to theyr  
wyndowes and dorys / and behelde the dolorous and  
petuous<sup>14</sup> company ledynge towards theyr dethes; then 32

<sup>1</sup> of hym *after* vengeance.      <sup>2</sup> at.      <sup>3</sup> drinke *after* ete.

<sup>4</sup> vntill.      <sup>5</sup> burnt.      <sup>6</sup> Fol. cxxx. back, col. 1.

<sup>7</sup> had well.      <sup>8</sup> in hast *after* commaundid.      <sup>9</sup> burne.

<sup>10</sup> bee.      <sup>11</sup> shew *before* petuously.      <sup>12</sup> and.      <sup>13</sup> omitted.

<sup>14</sup> pitiful.

they sayde ahyghe / 'A, ryght noble lady, where is  
 become the great beautye that ye were wonte to be of /  
 for now your vysage is pale and dyscolouryd that was  
 4 wonte to be so fayre, and now so lothely<sup>1</sup> and dis-  
 figuryd / where is become your fayre herys, that now  
 be so blake and ruggyd for the great pouerty that  
 ye haue enduryd / Alas, noble lady, great pety<sup>2</sup> we  
 8 haue to se you in this estate yf we coud a mende it' /  
 thus as this lady was led thurgh y<sup>e</sup> towne she was  
 bemonyd<sup>3</sup> of them that sawe her / the .iii. C. ientylmen  
 also<sup>4</sup> were led forthe / and the emperour Thyrry and  
 12 his lordis rode after them / for his desyre was to se the  
 lady brente<sup>5</sup> & the<sup>6</sup> presoners hangid / he made haste  
 because of the sorowe that he had for y<sup>e</sup> dethe of his  
 nephue and of his men, who were newly slayne by the  
 16 purches<sup>7</sup> of the abbot of Cluney / when they were  
 issued out of the citye of Magence / duke Hyldebert, a  
 nere kynsman of the emperours, was comynge into the  
 citye the same tyme that the lady was led fourth, and  
 20 sawe how rudely they delte with the lady / <sup>8</sup>when he  
 sawe her he knew wel<sup>9</sup> it was<sup>10</sup> Esclaramond / <sup>11</sup>when  
 he sawe her at that poynt, the water was in his eyen,  
 and<sup>12</sup> sayd to<sup>13</sup> them that ledde her / 'Syr, go not  
 24 so faste tyll<sup>14</sup> I haue spoken with the emperoure' / the  
 whiche they dyd gladly ; when the noble lady Esclara-  
 monde<sup>15</sup> vnderstode the duke / she had a<sup>16</sup> lytell hope,  
 she tournid her eyen towardis hym, and sayd / 'A,  
 28 ryght noble prynce, haue petye and compassyon of me,  
 for I haue done no thyng wherby I shulde deserue to  
 dye' / when the duke <sup>17</sup>harde<sup>17</sup> her he had suche petye  
 that he coude speke no worde, his harte was so full of  
 32 sorowe / <sup>8</sup>then he rode as fast as he myght to mete with

All who behold  
 her ask what has  
 become of her  
 great beauty.

As the procession  
 went out of the  
 city. duke  
 Hildebert, a  
 kinsman of the  
 Emperor, was  
 coming in, and  
 seeing how  
 roughly they  
 dealt with  
 Esclaramonde,

he bid them  
 desist till he had  
 spoken with the  
 Emperor.

Esclaramonde  
 begs Hildebert  
 have pity on her.

<sup>1</sup> loathed.      <sup>2</sup> and compassion.      <sup>3</sup> Fol. cxxx. back, col. 2.

<sup>4</sup> were also.      <sup>5</sup> burnt.      <sup>6</sup> other.      <sup>7</sup> meanes.

<sup>8</sup> and.      <sup>9</sup> that.      <sup>10</sup> the faire Ladie.      <sup>11</sup> but.      <sup>12</sup> he.

<sup>13</sup> vnto.      <sup>14</sup> vntill.      <sup>15</sup> had well heard and.

<sup>16</sup> some.      <sup>17-17</sup> had well vnderstood.

He entreats the  
Emperour to  
respice their lives  
till after Easter.

Surely it is  
sufficient to have  
chased her from  
her country and  
signories, and to  
have taken her  
revenues for  
himself;

but if all the men  
in his empire  
and all the priests  
preached to him  
for a year, the  
Emperour will not  
give way, neither  
will he eat nor  
drink till  
Esclaramonde be  
burnt, and the  
other persons  
hanged.

ye<sup>e</sup> emperoure, and passyd by the .CCC. presoners, and  
had great pety<sup>1</sup> of them / and so he came to<sup>2</sup> the  
emperour all wepyng, he<sup>3</sup> sayd / ‘A, ryght noble  
emperoure, I requyre you in the honoure of the passyon 4  
of our lorde Iesu chryst, haue petye and compassyon of  
this dolorous company that ar lykely to dye this daye /  
remembre howe<sup>4</sup> it is nowe in the holy tyme of lente,  
wherefore I requyre you<sup>5</sup> respyght theyr lyues vnto<sup>6</sup> it 8  
be past Ester / and, syr, humbely I requyre you for all  
the ser<sup>7</sup>uyce that I and myn haue done<sup>2</sup> you, grante  
me<sup>8</sup> this request for my rewarde, the whiche is<sup>9</sup> reson-  
able and iust / great wronge ye do to reuenge your 12  
iyre<sup>10</sup> vpon this noble lady / ye haue chasyd her out of  
her countre<sup>11</sup> and synnoryes, the whiche you hold in  
your handes, and take the reuenys & profyghtes  
therof / yf ye be not suffyced with this, I dought me<sup>12</sup> 16  
that our lorde Iesu chryst wyll be sore dysplesyd with  
you’ / when the emperoure had<sup>13</sup> herde the duke his  
cosyn, he stode styll and spake hastely, and sayd,  
‘fayr cosyn, I haue well herde you, & therfore I 20  
answere you in breue wordys / how that yf al the men  
that be in myn empere, and all the preestes and freers  
were here, and dyd preche to<sup>2</sup> me an hole yere desy-  
rynge me to respyght this ladyes deth and the other 24  
that be with hyr, I wolde do nothyng for all them /  
and therefore speke to me<sup>14</sup> no more in that mater / for  
by the berd that hangeth at<sup>15</sup> my chynne, syn I can not  
haue Huon hyr husbande at my wyll, I shal neuer eete 28  
nor drynke tyll<sup>6</sup> I haue seen hyr brente<sup>16</sup> and the other  
persones hangyde. For when I remembre the deth of  
myn nephues and of my dere sone, the whiche hath  
bene slayne by Huon, there is no membre in my body 32  
but that trymbleth for sorowe and dyspleasure.

<sup>1</sup> and compassion.    <sup>2</sup> vnto.    <sup>3</sup> and.    that.

<sup>5</sup> to.    <sup>6</sup> vntill.    <sup>7</sup> Fol. cxxxi. col. 1.    <sup>8</sup> but.

<sup>9</sup> both.    <sup>10</sup> anger.    <sup>11</sup> landes.    <sup>12</sup> omitted.

<sup>13</sup> well.    <sup>14</sup> to me after more.    <sup>15</sup> vnder.    <sup>16</sup> burnt.



¶ when the good duke hyldeberte vnderstode the  
 emperoure, he had great sorowe,<sup>1</sup> and departed without  
 any worde spekyng and without any leue takyng.  
 4 But retornyd fro thence<sup>2</sup> he came<sup>3</sup> full of iyre and  
 dyspleasure / then the emperoure thyrry cryed with a  
 hye voyce, and sayd how<sup>4</sup> he wolde shortly dispatche  
 the mater to se the lady brente,<sup>5</sup> and led to y<sup>e</sup> hyll  
 8 where as the fyre was redy / when the lady perseyued  
 y<sup>e</sup> place where as she <sup>6</sup>shulde dye in / she cast out a  
 great crye & made a petuose<sup>7</sup> complaynte to our  
 lord Iesu chryst, and sayd / 'A, ryght swete lorde  
 12 Iesu chryst, thou knouest that for the loue of the  
 I am chrystened to byleue in thy law, wherin I wyll  
 lyue and dye / I se well my dayes ar but shorte / and  
 thou knowest well<sup>4</sup> there is no cause wherin that  
 16 I haue deseruyd deth / therfore I requyre the hombly  
 to haue pyte<sup>8</sup> of my soule and<sup>9</sup> to kepe and preserue  
 my husbände Huon and my doughter claryet.' Thus  
 as ye haue herd the noble duches Esclaramonde made  
 20 hyr complayntes, hyr handes fast<sup>10</sup> bound, and knelyng  
 on<sup>11</sup> hyr kneys before the stakes, abydyng y<sup>e</sup> our  
 of hyr deth / Now <sup>12</sup>leue we<sup>12</sup> to speke of this noble  
 lady tyll<sup>13</sup> we retorne agayn, and speke of the noble  
 24 kyng Oberone and<sup>14</sup> his compayne.

He commands  
 the despatch of  
 the business :

when the lady  
 saw the place  
 where she should  
 die, she implored  
 our Lord Jesus  
 Christ to have  
 pity on her soul,

and to keep and  
 preserve her  
 husband Huon  
 and her daughter  
 Clariet.

With her hands  
 bound and kneel-  
 ing before the  
 stake Esclara-  
 monde awaits the  
 hour of her death.

¶ How<sup>15</sup> Oberon sent .ii. of his knyghtes  
 of the fayery, that is to saye, Malabron  
 and Gloryande, to delyuer the duches  
 28 Esclaramond, who shulde haue bene brente,<sup>5</sup>  
 and<sup>16</sup> .ccc. presoners<sup>17</sup> who were<sup>18</sup> delyueryd  
 by the sayd knyghthes. Ca. C.xliiii.

<sup>1</sup> at his heart.    <sup>2</sup> and.    <sup>3</sup> became.    <sup>4</sup> that.

<sup>5</sup> burnt.    <sup>6</sup> Fol. cxxxi. col. 2.    <sup>7</sup> pitifull.

<sup>8</sup> and compassion.    <sup>9</sup> that thou wilt vouchsafe.

<sup>10</sup> omitted.    <sup>11</sup> vpon.    <sup>12-12</sup> let us leaue.    <sup>13</sup> untill.

<sup>14</sup> of.    <sup>15</sup> King.    <sup>16</sup> the.

<sup>17</sup> that should haue bene hanged.    <sup>18</sup> all.

On the same day  
as Esclaramonde  
should have been  
burnt, Oberon  
was holding a  
great court in  
his palace.



The noble queen  
Morgan was  
there, with her  
niece and many  
other ladies and  
knights of fairy-  
land, making  
great joy.

Oberon began to  
weep,

and Gloryand, the  
good knight of  
Fairyland, asks  
him the cause of  
his grief.

It is that  
Esclaramonde,  
wife of Oberon's  
friend Huon, is  
to be burnt, and  
the prisoners  
hanged.

Oberon may not  
succour them.

Ow seweth the story<sup>1</sup> that y<sup>e</sup> same  
daye that the duches, y<sup>e</sup> fayre  
Esclaramonde, shuld haue bene  
brent,<sup>2</sup> kynge Oberone of the fayery<sup>4</sup>  
was in his pales of mummur,  
wheras he had holden a great courte and a sumptuous  
for his mother; the lady of the pryue Isle was there /  
and also the noble quene Morgan<sup>3</sup> le faye / & the 8  
dameysell Transcelyne hyr nese, with dyuers other  
ladyes of the fayery, and dyuers knyghtes<sup>4</sup> of the  
same, makynge great ioie; kynge Oberon was syttyng  
in a ryche trone garnysched & borderyd with fyne 12  
golde and precyous stones / and as he satte he fell in a  
great study / and therwith the dropes of water fell out  
of his eyene, &<sup>5</sup> began to wepe<sup>6</sup> so sore as though he  
shulde haue drowned in<sup>7</sup> dropes of water / when these 16  
quenys, ladyes, and damysels sawe hym make suche  
sorowe, they had great merueyll /<sup>8</sup> there was Gloryande,  
the good knyght of the Fayery, and Malabron, who  
were ryght preuy and wel-belouyd with kyng Oberon / 20  
<sup>8</sup> when they sawe the kynge make such sorowe they  
were<sup>9</sup> abashed, and syr Gloryand sayd / 'Syr, what  
man is lyuyng in this world that hathe dyspleased  
you or done any thyng agaynst you?' / 'Gloryand,' 24  
quod y<sup>e</sup> kyng / 'the dysplesure that I haue is for the  
fayre<sup>10</sup> Esclaramonde, wyffe to<sup>11</sup> Huon of Burdeaux /  
my<sup>12</sup> frende / she is as now led out of the cytye of  
Maience & brought to<sup>13</sup> a<sup>14</sup> fyre, wherin y<sup>e</sup> Emperoure 28  
therry wyll byrne her / & other .CCC. poore presoners  
to be hanged / and I maye not<sup>15</sup> socoure them / and I  
am sory therof for the loue of Huon / who is as now  
passyd the see, and is in the waye retournynge home- 32

<sup>1</sup> Historie.      <sup>2</sup> burnt.      <sup>3</sup> Morgne.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. cxxxi. back, col. 1.      <sup>5</sup> he.      <sup>6</sup> and complaine.

<sup>7</sup> with.      <sup>8</sup> and.      <sup>9</sup> sore dismayed and.      <sup>10</sup> Ladie.

<sup>11</sup> vnto Duke.      <sup>12</sup> verie good.      <sup>13</sup> vnto.      <sup>14</sup> great.

<sup>15</sup> ayd nor.

- warde / and he hath had suche aduenturs that there is  
 no humayne body coude suffre nor bere the payns and  
 trauelles *that* he hath endeured, nor the meruelous  
 4 aduentures that he hath borne; <sup>1</sup>he hathe had so  
 many bateylls that it were <sup>2</sup>meruyll <sup>3</sup>to here them  
 rehersyd, and nowe where as he thought to haue had  
 rest & to haue founde his wyfe, the fayr <sup>4</sup>Esclara-  
 8 monde a lyue, who shall now be brent <sup>5</sup>without <sup>6</sup>she  
 be shortly <sup>7</sup>socoured, <sup>8</sup>& then <sup>8</sup>I am sure <sup>9</sup>he shall <sup>10</sup>  
 dye for sorowe. <sup>11</sup>when Gloryand and malabrone <sup>12</sup>  
 herde <sup>13</sup> <sup>14</sup>kynge Oberone / they kneled downe before  
 12 this kyng and sayd / 'syr, we desyre you to socoure  
 this noble lady for the loue of her good husbond,  
 your <sup>15</sup>frend Huon' / 'Gloryand,' quod the noble kyng  
 Oberon / 'that wyll I not do, but I am well contente  
 16 that hastily ye go and delyuer the good lady and the  
 other presoners that be with her / and saye on <sup>16</sup>my  
 behalfe to the Emperoure therry, that he be not soo  
 hardy <sup>17</sup>to do any yll to the lady or to any of her  
 20 compayne / but saye *that* I wyll <sup>18</sup>*that* he respyght  
 theyr lyues tyll <sup>19</sup>the holy feeste of Eester be passyd /  
 and *that* the lady & all <sup>8</sup>y<sup>e</sup> other presoners he cause to  
 be retourned agayne <sup>16</sup>to the citey of Maience, and *that*  
 24 y<sup>e</sup> lady be set in a chambre at her lyberte and pleasure,  
 & let her be bayngned <sup>20</sup>and wesshyde and new arrayed,  
 and let her haue .iiii. noble ladyes to serue and  
 acompaynye her, & that she haue meet and drynk  
 28 as good & as plenteous <sup>21</sup>as though she were his owne  
 propre doughter / in lyke wyse let <sup>22</sup>the other presoners  
 be seruyd / & saye that I wyll <sup>23</sup>he <sup>24</sup>do this vnto <sup>24</sup>the

Huon, after  
 enduring many  
 pains, is return-  
 ing to his own  
 land,

and if he  
 finds Esclara-  
 monde burnt will  
 die of sorrow.

Gloryand and  
 Malabron ask  
 Oberon, for love  
 of Huon, to  
 succour the noble  
 lady.

Oberon desires  
 his two knights  
 to go and deliver  
 her,

to request the  
 Emperor to  
 respite their lives  
 till after Easter,

to place the lady  
 in a chamber  
 with four noble  
 ladies,  
 to serve her  
 and to treat her  
 exactly as if she  
 were his own  
 daughter.

He is to do  
 likewise with the  
 other prisoners.

<sup>1</sup> and. <sup>2</sup> great. <sup>3</sup> and wonderful. <sup>4</sup> Ladie.

<sup>5</sup> burnt. <sup>6</sup> except. <sup>7</sup> aided and. <sup>8-8</sup> omitted.

<sup>9</sup> that. <sup>10</sup> will.

<sup>11</sup> and grieve that he will haue at his heart. <sup>12</sup> had well.

<sup>13</sup> and vnderstode. <sup>14</sup> Fol. cxxi. back, col. 2. <sup>15</sup> deare.

<sup>16</sup> in. <sup>17</sup> as. <sup>18</sup> and commaund. <sup>19</sup> vntill.

<sup>20</sup> bathed. <sup>21</sup> plentiful. <sup>22</sup> all.

<sup>23</sup> and commaund that. <sup>24-24</sup> doth thus vntill.

Then Gloryand  
and Malabron  
wish themselves  
in the place where  
the lady was,

and they come  
through the air  
with a noise as of  
thunder, but  
invisible to all but  
the lady,

and cast into the  
fire the men who  
would have burnt  
the lady.

The knights  
release the lady,  
tell her who they  
are, and bid her  
be of good  
comfort.

It is not the  
first time Oberon  
has aided  
Esclaramonde  
and Huon.

In a short time  
Esclaramonde  
shall see Huon  
again.  
Esclaramonde  
rejoices greatly  
at the good  
tidings.

tyme that Eester be passyd / and shew him that he be  
not soo hardy to breke or trespas<sup>1</sup> my commaunde-  
ment' / then Gloryand & Malabron toke leue of the  
Kyng and of all other *that* were there / <sup>2</sup>then they 4  
wysshyd them selfe in the place wher as the lady and  
the other presoners where; <sup>3</sup>the lady as then was on<sup>4</sup>  
her kneys before the fyre sore wepynge,<sup>5</sup> abydyng the  
oure of her deth / the which had bene nere to<sup>6</sup> her yf 8  
she had not shortly bene<sup>7</sup> socouryd for they were  
about to haue bounde her to the stake / when Gloryand  
& Malabron came braynge in the ayre lyke thonther /  
and they were not seyne of no person but alonely of the 12  
lady / <sup>2</sup>when they were come & saw y<sup>e</sup> fyre akyndlyng,  
<sup>8</sup>they toke y<sup>e</sup> .x. rybawdis<sup>9</sup> that wold haue cast the  
lady in<sup>10</sup> y<sup>e</sup> fyre, they toke them & dyd<sup>11</sup> cast them all  
.x. in to y<sup>e</sup> flamyng fyer, wheras they wher shortly 16  
brent;<sup>12</sup> and besyde them there wher dyuers other  
brent,<sup>12</sup> whereof suche as were there had<sup>13</sup> greate feer  
that none durst a byd there / then y<sup>e</sup> .ii. knyghtis cam  
to the lady and lousid hyr, and sayd, 'dame,<sup>14</sup> be 20  
of good comfort, we ar .ii. knyghtis sent hether fro  
kinge oberon to socour and to brynge you out of the<sup>15</sup>  
daunger that ye be in' / 'syrs,' quod the lady, 'yt ys  
not the fyrste tyme that the noble kyng Oberon hathe 24  
socuryd vs, bothe me and my husbonde / god of hys  
grace rewarde hym' / 'dame,'<sup>14</sup> quod gloryand, 'be  
mery and make ioye, for your good husbonde Huon is  
come on this syde the se, whome ye shall see in<sup>16</sup> 28  
shorte tyme' / when y<sup>e</sup> good lady<sup>17</sup> vnderstode gloriand  
she had suche ioye *that* of a great spase she coude  
speke no word, she was so rauysshyd; <sup>18</sup>at laste she  
sayde, 'syr, I ought greatly to loue you <sup>19</sup>to brynge<sup>19</sup> 32

<sup>1</sup> against.    <sup>2</sup> and.    <sup>3</sup> where.    <sup>4</sup> vpon.

<sup>5</sup> and complayning and.    <sup>6</sup> vnto.    <sup>7</sup> been shortly.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. cxxxii. col. 1.    <sup>9</sup> villaines.    <sup>10</sup> to.    <sup>11</sup> omitted.

<sup>12</sup> burnt.    <sup>13</sup> so.    <sup>14</sup> Madame.    <sup>15</sup> perill and.

<sup>16</sup> within.    <sup>17</sup> had well.    <sup>18</sup> but.    <sup>19-19</sup> for bringing.

me suche tydynges' / <sup>1</sup> then they sayd to <sup>2</sup> hyr, 'Dame,<sup>3</sup>  
 rest you here a seson tyll<sup>4</sup> we haue delyueryd the other  
 prysoners, whom we see yonder ledyng to <sup>5</sup> the dethe  
<sup>4</sup> warde,<sup>5</sup> and shortely we shal retourne to <sup>6</sup> you.' there  
 with they departyd fro the lady, and lefte hyr on<sup>7</sup>  
 hyr knees holdyng vp hyr handys <sup>2</sup> to the<sup>2</sup> heuen,  
<sup>1</sup> deuoutely re[n]dering thankis to our lord Iesu chryste  
<sup>8</sup> of<sup>8</sup> the socoure and ayed *that* he had sent hyr. then  
 gloryand and malabron came to y<sup>e</sup> galous, & there  
 lowsyd y<sup>e</sup> CCC. prysoners, and slew dyuers of *them*  
*that* were sent thether to do excucyon, wherof all  
<sup>12</sup> they that were ther<sup>9</sup>, had great merueyl<sup>10</sup> when they  
 saw there compeny slayn & coude not se them that dyd  
 it / but they thought there were a thousande knyghtes  
 by reason of y<sup>e</sup><sup>11</sup> brute & noyse *that* <sup>12</sup> y<sup>e</sup>.ii. knyghtes  
<sup>16</sup> of y<sup>e</sup> fayry made / wherof they had suche fere that  
 they fled away and ran to the emperoure, who was sore  
<sup>13</sup> abasshed of that auenture / for it was also shewyd<sup>12</sup>  
 hym / that the lady was reskewyd, and they coude not  
<sup>20</sup> tell by whom; But *that* they sayd they herde<sup>14</sup> great  
 brute & tempest<sup>15</sup> / then also the emperoure saw how  
 the people came rynnynge toward hym, fleyng fro the  
 galous, and they shewyd<sup>16</sup> hym all that they had sene  
<sup>24</sup> and hard, wherof y<sup>e</sup> emperoure & all his lordes had  
 great fere & were sore abasshed. 'A, syr,' quod the  
 duke of Austrych, 'it had bene better for you to haue  
 beleuyd duke Hyldberty, your cosyn / know suerly<sup>17</sup> ye  
<sup>28</sup> haue greatly displeased our lord Iesu chryst syn<sup>17</sup> ye  
 wolde do suche cruell Iustyce in the holy tyme of  
 lente' / thus after these .ii. knyghtes of the fayry had  
 reskewyd the good lady and y<sup>e</sup> other presoners, he<sup>18</sup>  
<sup>32</sup> toke them and the lady & brought them to<sup>2</sup> the

She devoutly  
renders thanks to  
our Lord Jesus  
Christ.

The knights  
deliver the 300  
prisoners,  
and slay their  
executioners.

All the spectators  
marvel greatly,  
thinking there  
must be a  
thousand knights,  
so great is the  
confusion.

They flee to the  
Emperor,  
and describe to  
him what has  
taken place.

It would have  
been better for  
the Emperor to  
have given heed  
to Hildebert's  
request.

<sup>1</sup> and.      <sup>2</sup> vnto.      <sup>3</sup> Madame.      <sup>4</sup> vntill.  
<sup>5-6</sup> toward their deaths.      <sup>6</sup> again vnto.      <sup>7</sup> vpon.  
<sup>8</sup> for.      <sup>9</sup> present.      <sup>10</sup> and did woonder thereat.  
<sup>11</sup> great.      <sup>12</sup> Fol. cxxxii. col. 2.      <sup>13</sup> dismayed and.  
<sup>14</sup> a.      <sup>15</sup> noyse.      <sup>16</sup> to.      <sup>17</sup> that.      <sup>18</sup> they.



Then the two  
knights brought  
the lady and  
prisoners to the  
Emperor,  
and made them-  
selves visible to  
all.

The Emperor,  
seeing only two  
knights armed  
on horseback,  
sets little account  
by them,  
and asks what  
they mean by  
such boldness,

and declares he  
will hang them  
also.

Gloryand repeats  
to the Emperor  
the things Oberon  
has commanded  
him to do.

emperoure, and shewyd them selues openly / <sup>1</sup>when  
they were in the presence of the emperoure, and y<sup>e</sup>  
presoners *with* them / <sup>1</sup>the emperoure saw that there  
were but .ii. knyghtes armyd on<sup>2</sup> horse back, he set <sup>4</sup>  
lytyll by them, and sayd / 'how are you so bold and so  
hardy to delyuer and to take out of my mens handes  
they<sup>3</sup> that are condemned to dye by Iustyce, and  
beseyd, that ye haue slayne<sup>4</sup> of my men / and<sup>5</sup> brynge <sup>8</sup>  
them in to my presence whome I haue condemned  
to dye / wherfore I wyll<sup>6</sup> ye<sup>7</sup> knowe that or<sup>8</sup> I eete or  
drynke you and all they shal be hanged, and the lady  
Esclaramonde brente,<sup>9</sup> nor I shall not departe<sup>10</sup> hence <sup>12</sup>  
tyll<sup>11</sup> I haue sene you all dye<sup>12</sup> / then Gloryand and  
Malabrone lyft vp theyr wessers and shewyd their  
faces / and they semyd to<sup>13</sup> all them that sawe them  
*that* they neuer saw before .ii. so <sup>14</sup>fayre knyghtis in all <sup>16</sup>  
theyr lyues. Then Gloryand sayde to<sup>13</sup> the emperour /  
'syr, of you nor of your thretenynges we make ther of<sup>15</sup>  
lytell acounte. But, syr, know for trouthe / that the  
noble kyng Oberon commaundeth you by vs in as <sup>20</sup>  
moche as ye fere your lyfe / that ye be not so hardy  
any forther to do any yl or iniury nor commaunde to be  
done to<sup>13</sup> this noble lady *that* is here present, nor to  
these other prysoners / vntyll Eester day be past. <sup>24</sup>  
And also kyng Oberon commaundeth you that ye<sup>16</sup>  
kepe this lady in your house clothyd and apareyld  
and as well gouernyd, & to be acompanyed with ladyes  
and damoselles to serue her honorably as well as<sup>17</sup> she <sup>28</sup>  
were your owne proper doughter, and that in lyke wyse  
these presoners to be newly apareyld<sup>18</sup> and orderyd as  
well as other knyghtis of your house / &, syr, we  
warne<sup>19</sup> that in all<sup>20</sup> this that we haue sayd that ye do <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> and.

<sup>2</sup> vppon.

<sup>3</sup> those.

<sup>4</sup> many.

<sup>5</sup> nowe.

<sup>6</sup> that.

<sup>7</sup> well.

<sup>8</sup> before.

<sup>9</sup> burned.

<sup>10</sup> from.

<sup>11</sup> vntill.

<sup>12</sup> the death.

<sup>13</sup> vnto.

<sup>14</sup> Fol. cxxxii. back, col. 1.

<sup>15</sup> but.

<sup>16</sup> doe.

<sup>17</sup> if.

<sup>18</sup> arrayed.

<sup>19</sup> and charge you.

<sup>20</sup> omitted.

not the contrary for any thyng that maye fall / for yf  
ye do other wyse / there is no mortall man shal saue  
your lyfe: thus commaundeth you<sup>1</sup> to do the<sup>2</sup> noble  
4 kynge Oberon, who is souerayne lorde<sup>3</sup> of the fayry' /  
when the emperour Therry<sup>4</sup> harde these knyghtes of y<sup>e</sup>  
fayry thus speke to<sup>5</sup> hym / and saw how they were  
armyd with theyr swordis in theyr handys tayntyd  
8 with the blode of his almayns, he had great fere,  
& beheld his barons, and sayde / 'syr, I praye you  
gyue me som good counseyle in this<sup>6</sup> besynes / ye<sup>7</sup>  
haue well hard moch spekyng of kynge Oberon and of  
12 his great actis and dedys, wherfore I fere hym moche /  
ye may se what .ii. of his knyghtis haue done / they  
haue rescued them that I had condempnyd to dye /  
and slayne dyuers of my men. Also ye here what  
16 worde he sendeth me by his two knyghtis, that I  
<sup>8</sup>shulde kepe this lady and the other presoners  
honorably / and that I shuld not be so hardy to put  
them to any daunger tyll<sup>9</sup> Eester were<sup>10</sup> passyd.' Then  
20 an aunsyent knyght sayd / 'syr, knowe for trouthe  
that kyng Oberon is pusant and wyse / for there is  
nothyng in the world but *that* he knoweth it, and  
also as often as he lyst, he can be where as he wyll  
24 wysshe hym selfe, <sup>11</sup>with as great nombre of people as  
he lyst / <sup>11</sup>therefore, syr, byleue suerly yf ye do other-  
wyse then he hathe commaundyd you to do these two  
knyghtis of his that be here present hathe sufficyent<sup>12</sup>  
28 pusaunce to dystroye you, and kynge Oberon to syt  
styl at home / therfore, syr, myn aduyse is that ye  
answere these .ii. knyghtes, that all that kynge Oberon  
hath commaunded you to do by them, that ye wyll do  
32 it suerly' / <sup>11</sup>then all the other lordis gaue the emperour

The Emperor  
was sore afraid,  
and asks his  
barons to counsel  
him what to do.

An ancient  
knight describes  
Oberon's great  
power,

and advises the  
Emperor to do as  
the two fairy  
knights  
command.

<sup>1</sup> commaundeth you *after* Oberon. <sup>2</sup> right.

<sup>3</sup> and Gouvernor of all the Realme. <sup>4</sup> had well. <sup>5</sup> vnto.

<sup>6</sup> serious. <sup>7</sup> we. <sup>8</sup> Fol. cxxxii. back, col. 2.

<sup>9</sup> vntill. <sup>10</sup> be. <sup>11</sup> and. <sup>12</sup> *after* puissance.

The other lords  
gave the same  
counsel.

The Emperor  
promises to do  
what Oberon  
commands.

Gloryand says  
Oberon will then  
take the Emperor  
for his friend,  
and to the marvel  
of all, the two  
knights vanish.

They return to  
Oberon, and  
relate what they  
have done.

Oberon declares  
when Easter is  
past, the Emperor  
will carry out his  
intention of  
burning Esclara-  
monde, and of  
hanging the  
prisoners.

Gloryand cannot  
believe the  
Emperor will  
dare to do it.

His great hatred  
will force him  
so to do.

the same counsaile / when the emperour had<sup>1</sup> hard<sup>2</sup>  
his lordys<sup>3</sup> he retournyd<sup>4</sup> hym to<sup>5</sup> the .ii. knygtys of  
the fayry, and sayde / 'syr, ye shall salute me to  
kyng Oberon, and say that as for me I shall do euery 4  
thyng as he hathe commaunded me to do to the best  
of my power' / 'syr Emperour,' quod Gloryand, 'yf  
ye<sup>6</sup> do as ye saye the kynge wyl take you for his  
frende / and therupon we commaunde you to god' / 8  
thus the .ii. knygtis departyd, so that the emperoure  
nor none other parson <sup>7</sup>coude tell<sup>7</sup> where they were  
become, wherof euery man hadde great maruayle and  
were sore abasshyd. <sup>8</sup> Thus Gloryand and Malabron 12  
within a whyle came to<sup>9</sup> Mommure, where as they  
founde kynge Oberon, to whome they shewed all that  
they had done. 'wel,' quod kynge Oberon, 'as now  
the lady Esclaramonde and the other presoners ar 16  
at theyr ease and well seruyd / but or<sup>10</sup> a <sup>11</sup>moneth  
be passyd they shall derely aby the ease that they be  
in nowe / for the emperoure hateth them so sore  
bycause of the maleys that he berethe to<sup>5</sup> Huon<sup>12</sup> / he 20  
wyll set them all agayne into preson in great<sup>13</sup> mysery /  
and when Eester is past / he wyll brenne<sup>14</sup> the lady<sup>15</sup>  
and hange vp<sup>16</sup> the presoners without they be rescued<sup>17</sup> /  
'syr,' quod Gloryand, 'I can not byleue that the 24  
emperour dare do it or thinke to do so.'<sup>18</sup> 'Gloryand,'  
quod the<sup>19</sup> kyng, 'know suerly that the great hate that  
is rootyd in the hart of the emperoure shal constreyn<sup>20</sup>  
him thus to do.' now let vs leue spekyng of<sup>21</sup> kyng 28  
Oberon, and speke of the Emperoure.<sup>22</sup>

<sup>1</sup> well.      <sup>2</sup> and vnderstood.      <sup>3</sup> and Barons.

<sup>4</sup> turned.      <sup>5</sup> vnto.      <sup>6</sup> will.      <sup>7-7</sup> knew not.      <sup>8</sup> and.


<sup>9</sup> the City of.      <sup>10</sup> before.      <sup>11</sup> Fol. cxxxiii. col. 1.

<sup>12</sup> of Bourdeaux that.      <sup>13</sup> pouertie and.      <sup>14</sup> burne.

<sup>15</sup> Escleremond.      <sup>16</sup> all.      <sup>17</sup> agayne.      <sup>18</sup> so to doe.

<sup>19</sup> noble.      <sup>20</sup> and vrge.      <sup>21</sup> the noble.      <sup>22</sup> Tirrey.

¶ Howe the emperoure<sup>1</sup> made the<sup>2</sup> lady  
 esclaramonde to be well seruyd and apar-  
 aylyd, and all the other presoners / but  
 4 a<sup>3</sup> .iii. wekys after he made the noble lady  
 & the sayd presoners to be put agayne in  
 to pryson, where as they were in great  
 mysery. Ca. C.xlv.

8  Ow sheweth the hystory *that* after  
 these<sup>4</sup> .ii. knyghtis of y<sup>e</sup> fayry were  
 departid and varysshid away out of  
 the presence of the emperoure, and  
 12 that the emperoure was retourned into  
 the citey of Magence with the lady  
 Esclaramond and with the other presoners, wherof the  
 burgesses, ladyes, and damosels of y<sup>e</sup> citey<sup>5</sup> were  
 16 ioyfull<sup>5</sup> of theyr good aduenture / <sup>6</sup>the emperoure had  
 them into his palays and delyuerid to<sup>7</sup> them chambers  
 well drest and hangyd, as it aparteynyd,<sup>8</sup> and the<sup>9</sup> lady<sup>9</sup>  
 had .iiii. ladyes to serue her / and she was baynyd<sup>10</sup>  
 20 and stuyd,<sup>11</sup> and new aparaylyd as wel and<sup>12</sup> rychely  
 as thoughe she had bene the empe<sup>13</sup>rouers<sup>14</sup> proper  
 doughter, so that within a shorte space she came agayne  
 to her beautye,<sup>15</sup> and in lyke wyse so dyd all the other  
 24 presoners who were kepte <sup>16</sup>in<sup>16</sup> chambers and new  
 aparayled, and had theyr ease<sup>17</sup> as other knyghtis of y<sup>e</sup>  
 emperours courte had / but as sone as thre wekys was  
 passyd / the great hate that the emperour had to<sup>7</sup>  
 28 the<sup>2</sup> lady and to the<sup>18</sup> presoners constrayned hym to  
 take fro them theyr<sup>4</sup> ioy and ease that they were in,

The Emperor  
 returned to  
 Mayence with the  
 lady Esclara-  
 monde and the  
 other prisoners.  
 All reioice to see  
 them.

The lady is  
 treated just as  
 though she was  
 the Emperor's  
 own daughter,

so that she  
 regained her  
 beauty.

The other  
 prisoners were  
 treated as knights  
 of the court.

At the end of  
 three weeks the  
 Emperor's hate  
 returned,

<sup>1</sup> Tirrey. <sup>2</sup> noble. <sup>3</sup> about. <sup>4</sup> the.

<sup>5-5</sup> had great ioy. <sup>6</sup> and. <sup>7</sup> vnto. <sup>8</sup> thereunto.

<sup>9-9</sup> noble duches Escleremond. <sup>10</sup> bathed. <sup>11</sup> washed.

<sup>12</sup> as. <sup>13</sup> Fol. cxxxiii. col. 2. <sup>14</sup> owne.

<sup>15</sup> and to be as faire and well faouered as euer she was.

<sup>16-16</sup> also in faire and rich. <sup>17</sup> and pleasures.

<sup>18</sup> other.

and he swore that  
after Easter the  
lady should be  
burnt, and the  
prisoners hanged.

Esclaramonde  
and the others  
were again  
imprisoned.

The lady weeps  
for her husband  
Huon.

He tarries so  
long, and will not  
come in time to  
save her.

They suffer great  
hunger;

and tournyd the same <sup>1</sup>to wepynges and sorowe.<sup>1</sup>  
And the emperour sware that for all kynge Oberon or  
for any thyng that he coude do / he wolde neuer be  
in peas in his harte tyll<sup>2</sup> he had set all that<sup>3</sup> company <sup>4</sup>  
agayne into pryson / and besyde *that*, he sware that  
Eester shulde no soner be past but *that* y<sup>e</sup> lady  
Esclaramond shuld be brent<sup>4</sup> and all the other presoners  
hangyd / and on<sup>5</sup> them to take vengauce in the spyte <sup>8</sup>  
of Huon of Burdeaux, who had done hym so moch  
trouble that he coud not forget it / then he com-  
maundyd to take agayne the duches Esclaramonde and  
to put her and all the other presoners in to the preson <sup>12</sup>  
agayne / y<sup>e</sup> which was done<sup>6</sup> / Then the duches  
Esclaramonde and al the other presoners were ryghte  
sorowful, and were in great fere, and sayd eche to  
other, ‘Alas, now our dethe aprocheth.’ and when<sup>7</sup> <sup>16</sup>  
the lady saw that she was set agayne in pryson, she  
began sore to wepe and complayne for the duke Huon  
her husband, <sup>8</sup>and sayd / ‘a, dere lorde and husbonde<sup>8</sup> /  
to longe<sup>9</sup> ye tary, for I se none other owre<sup>10</sup> but that <sup>20</sup>  
my dethe aprocheth / for ye shall not come in tyme /  
well may I curse the owre that<sup>11</sup> I was borne / for in all  
my lyfe I haue had but sorow, and heynes, and dolours  
<sup>12</sup>in portables<sup>12</sup> / better it had bene for me to haue <sup>24</sup>  
ben ded then <sup>13</sup>to vse<sup>14</sup> my lyfe in this derke presone’ /  
ryght deuoutly she called on<sup>5</sup> our lord Iesu chryste  
to haue pyte<sup>15</sup> of her / thus was this noble duches set  
agayn in presone, and also the .CCC. presoners, where <sup>28</sup>  
as they sufferyd great fayme<sup>16</sup> and pouerte / for other  
thyng had they not to lyue by but barly brede &

<sup>1-1</sup> into pitiful weepings and great lamentations.

<sup>2</sup> vntill. <sup>3</sup> the. <sup>4</sup> burnt. <sup>5</sup> vppon.

<sup>6</sup> according to his commandement. <sup>7</sup> that.

<sup>8-8</sup> omitted. <sup>9</sup> quoth she. <sup>10</sup> way. <sup>11</sup> euer.

<sup>12-12</sup> insupportable. <sup>13</sup> Fol. cxxxiii. back, col. 1.

<sup>14</sup> spend. <sup>15</sup> and compassion.

<sup>16</sup> famine.



clere water. Now we wyll leue to speke of them and  
speke of <sup>1</sup> Huon, who was aryued at Marcyll.<sup>2</sup>

their only food is  
barley bread and  
clear water.

¶ How Huon departed fro Marcyll<sup>2</sup> and  
came to his vnclē, the<sup>3</sup> abbot of cluny, in  
habyte dysgysed / & to<sup>4</sup> hym dyscouered  
hymselfe, wherof the abbot had great ioy,  
& so had Claryte his doughter. Ca. C.xlvi.

8 **A**S ye haue harde here before, how Huon  
was at Marcyll,<sup>2</sup> and after that he  
had soioerned<sup>5</sup> .iiii. dayes, he made  
hym redy to departe, and brought  
12 mules and horse for hym<sup>6</sup> & for  
barnard,<sup>7</sup> and for his company / and  
then he chargyd his summers / and vpon one of them  
he trussyd the greffons fot, y<sup>e</sup> which was great and  
16 horryble, & coueryd it bycause euery man shulde not se  
it / when he was redy and euery thyng trussyd, he  
departed fro Marcyll<sup>2</sup> / and rode so by his iornynges that  
he passyd by Prouence and came to<sup>4</sup> Masconoys, and  
20 on<sup>8</sup> a thursday at nyght, he aryuyd at the towne of  
Tornous. And when they had supplyd, he callyd  
Barnard his cosyn, and sayd / 'cosy[n],<sup>9</sup> I praye you  
10 abyde me<sup>10</sup> here / for I wyll go<sup>11</sup> se myne vnclē the<sup>3</sup>  
24 abbot of Cluny and Claryet my doughter, whome  
I sore desyre to se, & shortely I shall retourne agayne  
to<sup>4</sup> you, I wyll go preuely dysgysed to y<sup>e</sup> entent that I  
wyll not be knowen' / 'syr,' quod Barnard, 'syn<sup>12</sup> it  
28 is your plesure we must be content' / then they went  
to bed, & in the mornynge Huon rose vp and aparelyd  
hymselfe lyke a pylgryme, with a stafe, and a bage  
abought his necke / <sup>13</sup> with great botis on<sup>8</sup> his legis;

Huon leaves  
Marselles, passes  
by Provence and  
Masconoys, and  
on a Thursday at  
night reaches  
Tournai.

After supper,  
Huon announces  
his intention of  
going to see the  
Abbot of Cluny  
and Clariet his  
daughter, in  
disguise.

In the morning  
Huon dressed  
himself as a  
pilgrim, with staff  
and bag, great

<sup>1</sup> Duke.

<sup>2</sup> Marsellis.

<sup>3</sup> good.

<sup>4</sup> vnto.

<sup>5</sup> iourned there.

<sup>6</sup> selfe.

<sup>7</sup> Fol. cxxxiii. back, col. 2.

<sup>8</sup> vppon.

<sup>9</sup> cosyd in text.

<sup>10-10</sup> to stay.

<sup>11</sup> to.

<sup>12</sup> seeing that.

<sup>13</sup> and.

boots, a beard,  
and long hair.

Barnard and his  
company laugh  
at the disguise ;

Huon looks like  
a beggar indeed.

He reaches  
Cluny,  
and demands  
entrance.

This being  
granted, he asks  
to see the abbot.

The porter gives  
him leave to go  
into the house ;

the abbot is in his  
hall, communing  
with his brethren.

he had a great berd and long here, wherfore he semyd  
well a pylgrime <sup>1</sup>come<sup>1</sup> fro a far countre, & so he had  
done in dede / when Barnard & his company saw hym  
so aparaylyd, they laughed & said / ‘syr, it apereth <sup>4</sup>  
well by your maner that ye ar scapyd out of some  
good place / it semeth to vs / *that* yf ye wyll shake  
your stafe ye wyll make the money to a voyde out of  
mens purses, ye ar so bold a begger’ / when Huon hard <sup>8</sup>  
hym <sup>2</sup>he laughed, & toke leue of them and departid  
al alone with his bage aboute his necke / so a fote he  
went tyll<sup>3</sup> he came to<sup>4</sup> Cluny / <sup>5</sup>then he came to<sup>4</sup> the  
abbey gate & callyd y<sup>e</sup> porter,<sup>6</sup> & sayd / ‘frend, I pray <sup>12</sup>  
you<sup>7</sup> let me enter.’ <sup>8</sup>he openyd the weket & beheld  
Huon, who semyd to hym to be a tall & a goodly man,  
& sayd / ‘pylgryme, enter when you plesse’ / <sup>9</sup>Then  
Huon enterid in at the weket, and sayd to<sup>4</sup> y<sup>e</sup> porter / <sup>16</sup>  
frend, ‘I com strayt fro beyonde the great see, and  
haue kyssed the holy sepulture, & I<sup>10</sup> haue sufferyd  
moche payne and pouerte / and bycause or<sup>11</sup> this tyme  
I haue bene here with y<sup>e</sup> abbot of this place, therefore I <sup>20</sup>  
thought<sup>12</sup> I wolde not pas by without spekyng with  
hym ; I pray you<sup>7</sup> shewe me that courtoyse *that* I may  
speke with hym / for he wyll sone know me.’ ‘Syr,’  
quod y<sup>e</sup> porter, ‘it semeth<sup>13</sup> by your maner<sup>12</sup> ye seme to <sup>24</sup>  
be a man of a good plase : therefore I gyue you leue<sup>7</sup> go  
into the house at youre pleasure / and ye shall fynde  
our good abbot in his halle, where as he is comonyng  
with his bretherne / serteynely I knowe well<sup>12</sup> ye shall <sup>28</sup>  
be welcome to<sup>4</sup> hym yf he haue of you any knowlege,  
for a more noble man cortoyse and large<sup>14</sup> ye shal not  
fynd on<sup>15</sup> this syde<sup>16</sup> the see.’ ‘Frend,’ quod Huon,  
‘your curtoyse may auayle you.’ Then Huon went <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1-1</sup> that came out.    <sup>2</sup> them.    <sup>3</sup> vntill.    <sup>4</sup> vnto.

<sup>5</sup> and.    <sup>6</sup> vnto him.    <sup>7</sup> to.    <sup>8</sup> then.

<sup>9</sup> Fol. cxxxiiii. col. 1.    <sup>10</sup> omitted.    <sup>11</sup> before.

<sup>12</sup> that.    <sup>13</sup> vnto me.    <sup>14</sup> liberall.    <sup>15</sup> vppon.

<sup>16</sup> of.

- into the hall, wheras he found the abbot with his  
 bretherne / <sup>1</sup>then he saluted the abbot and all his  
 couente. 'Frende,' quod y<sup>e</sup> abbot, 'ye are welcome; I  
 4 pray you<sup>2</sup> shew me fro whence ye come?' / 'Syr,'  
 quod Huon, 'I shall shewe you the trouthe / I come  
 now fro beyonde the see fro the holy citey of Ierusalem,  
 where as I haue kyssed y<sup>e</sup> holy sepulture<sup>1</sup> where as<sup>3</sup>  
 8 our lord<sup>4</sup> was quycke and dede; I haue bene in those  
 partyes more then these<sup>3</sup>.vii. yerys / and the cause<sup>5</sup> I  
 am com hether to se you is this, I found there a  
 yonge knyght of myne age namyd Huon of Burdeaux,  
 12 and he <sup>6</sup>saythe<sup>6</sup> he is your nephue / and when he saw  
 that I wold depart<sup>7</sup> thence to come into this<sup>8</sup> countre,  
 he humbly prayed me to recommaunde hym to<sup>9</sup> you /  
 and therfore, syr,<sup>3</sup> I am com to<sup>9</sup> you to do this<sup>8</sup>  
 16 message / for he and I haue bene together in <sup>10</sup>dyuers  
 bataylis / & great amyte<sup>11</sup> betwen vs' / when the good  
 abbot<sup>12</sup> harde<sup>13</sup> the pylgryme, <sup>14</sup>great dropis<sup>14</sup> fell fro  
 his eyen<sup>15</sup> when he harde his nephue Huon namyd /  
 20 and sayd, 'frend, I pray you yf it be trewe as ye saye,  
 to shew me the trouth yf ye haue sene my nephue  
 Huon / for it is he that I loue best in all this worlde, and  
 desyre moste to se hym / <sup>1</sup>I pray you shewe<sup>9</sup> me what  
 24 is his mynd, other to retourne hether or elles to abyde  
 styll<sup>16</sup> there; <sup>17</sup>wold to god<sup>18</sup> I were in det to pay a  
 .M. marke of golde so *that* he were as nowe here in this  
 hall.' 'Syr,' quod Huon, 'of youre nephue whome ye  
 28 desyre so moche to se, <sup>19</sup>or it be past a moneth<sup>19</sup>  
 he wyll<sup>20</sup> be here with you, and, syr, he shewyd me at  
 my departyng fro hym that he hath a doughter whom

Huon found the  
 abbot,  
 saluted him,

and in answer to  
 his inquiry Huon  
 describes himself  
 as a pilgrim from  
 Jerusalem,

who had met with  
 a young knight  
 named Huon of  
 Bordeaux.

Huon prayed the  
 pilgrim, since he  
 was coming into  
 this country,  
 to deliver a  
 message to the  
 abbot.

In a month Huon  
 will arrive here,

<sup>1</sup> and.    <sup>2</sup> to.    <sup>3</sup> omitted.    <sup>4</sup> Iesus chryst.  
<sup>5</sup> why.    <sup>6-6</sup> said that.    <sup>7</sup> from.    <sup>8</sup> his.    <sup>9</sup> vnto.  
<sup>10</sup> Fol. cxxxiii. col. 2.    <sup>11</sup> haue bene.    <sup>12</sup> had well.  
<sup>13</sup> and vnderstood.    <sup>14-14</sup> many teares.  
<sup>15</sup> and trickled downe his cheeks.    <sup>16</sup> there stil.    <sup>17</sup> I.  
<sup>18</sup> that.    <sup>19-19</sup> before a moneth be past.  
<sup>20</sup> (by the grace of God).

and also he charged the pilgrim to see Clariet, for Huon knows not if she is alive or dead.

The abbot will summon Clariet into the hall.

Huon is most joyful.

The abbot sends a noble knight, Sir Emery, to fetch Clariet.

Sir Emery salutes her;

she returns his salutation, and demands his news.

A pilgrim has come from beyond the sea with tidings of Huon, her father; the abbot desires her to come and speak with him.

Clariet and her damsels enter the hall.

ye haue norysshed and brought vp / and he charged me greatly that I shuld desyre of you to se her or<sup>1</sup> I departyd fro you, he knoweth not whether she be a lyue or dede / I wolde gladely se her yf it were your 4 pleasure.' 'Frende,' quod the abbote, 'ryght gladly ye shall se her. I shal cause her to come hether, and then ye maye se her at your ease / and I dare well saye to<sup>2</sup> you that in all the world ye shall not<sup>3</sup> fynd no 8 fayrer nor a sweter creature, nor more wyser of her age nor better lernyd, & yet she is but .x. yerys of age.

¶ When Huon vnderstode the abbot, ye maye well 12 know that he had great ioye at his harte peuely, & thankyd our lord Iesu chryste. Then the abbot callyd to<sup>2</sup> hym a ryght notable knyght, namyd syr Emery, and commaundyd hym to go & feche thether 16 his nece Claryet. y<sup>e</sup> knyght went into the chaumbre wheras the fayre lady was with other .iiii. noble ladyes, who <sup>4</sup>had brought her vp / then Syr Emery saluted the lady and the other that were with her / 20 when the yonge lady parseyued syr Emery, she rose vp and renderyd to hym his salutacyon, & ryght humbly saing, 'syr knyght, I am ioyous<sup>5</sup> of your comynge, I pray you<sup>6</sup> shew<sup>7</sup> sum<sup>3</sup> of your newes'<sup>8</sup> / 'sertaynly, 24 fayre lady,' quod y<sup>e</sup> knyght / 'hether is come a pylgryme, who is come fro beyond the see / and he hath shewyd<sup>2</sup> the abbot your vncle tydynges of your father, duke Huon, therefore your vncle desyareth you to 28 come and speke with hym.' when the lady harde spekyng of her father, with all her harte she desyred to know sum sertayne tydynges / <sup>9</sup>she and her damesels departed out of y<sup>e</sup> chambre and came in to the hall to 32 the abbot her vncle, accompanied with .ii. notable

<sup>1</sup> before.      <sup>2</sup> vnto.      <sup>3</sup> omitted.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. cxxxi. back, col. 1.      <sup>5</sup> ioyfull.      <sup>6</sup> to.      <sup>7</sup> mee.

<sup>8</sup> and tidinges.      <sup>9</sup> and then.

knyghtes; when<sup>1</sup> she enteryd into the hall rychely  
 aparyld / no man could dyscryue her beaute,<sup>2</sup> she was Her beauty is so  
great; nature can  
do no more;  
 so well formyd *that* <sup>3</sup>god and<sup>3</sup> nature<sup>4</sup> coude not  
 4 amende her / her skynne was as whyte as y<sup>e</sup> floure in  
 the mede<sup>5</sup> / & colouryd lyke the red rose / her hanches  
 low and her pappys sunwhat resynge, her throte smoth  
 and clere / her chyne vaunted / her mouth as vermeyl  
 8 as a rose / her tethe small & well rengyde, and whyte /  
 her face whyte and well colouryd, meddelyd<sup>6</sup> whyte &  
 red / her eyene smylynge, her chere amorous to behold,  
 her nose strethe / her forched whyte / her here yelow /  
 12 her eeres gentyll and close, I can not deuysse the  
 .x. parte of her excellent beaute / none coude regarde all who see her  
praise and love  
her.  
 her<sup>7</sup> but that praysed and louyd her / all her beaute  
 and her swete demenor, and great humelyte that was  
 16 in her / yf I shulde<sup>8</sup> dyscryue it / it shulde<sup>9</sup> be ouer  
 long to rehers; when Huon had<sup>10</sup> sene his doughter<sup>11</sup>,  
 who was so fayre / he gladly beheld her with / <sup>12</sup>out  
 makyng of any knowlage / then y<sup>e</sup> abbot toke his nese  
 20 by the hande & led her to<sup>13</sup> Huon, and sayd / ‘pylgryme,  
 howe say you by <sup>3</sup>this damysell / ye maye well parsayue The abbot tells  
the pilgrim of  
her beauty and  
wit,  
 by<sup>3</sup> her she hathe not bene sore trauelyd nor moche  
 come in the sonne / I haue kept her a long space<sup>14</sup> /  
 24 and yf she be garnysshed with beaute / in lyke wyse  
 so she is withe wytte and bounte / she is daughter to<sup>15</sup>  
<sup>15</sup> Huon of Burdeaux / the man in the worlde that I  
 moost loue / *that*<sup>16</sup> wold to god<sup>17</sup> I dyd so hym as I do  
 28 you<sup>18</sup> / but yf god send me lyf<sup>19</sup>, this lady shall be  
 rychely maryed, I shall<sup>20</sup> gyue her <sup>3</sup>of my<sup>3</sup> goodes that and how he  
intends to dower  
her richly.  
 she shall be ryche and pusaunte.’ ‘syr,’ quod Huon,  
 ‘I pray to our lorde Iesu chryst to gyue her good

<sup>1</sup> then.<sup>2</sup> for.<sup>3-3</sup> omitted.<sup>4</sup> herself.<sup>5</sup> meadow.<sup>6</sup> mingled.<sup>7</sup> nor looke vpon her.<sup>8</sup> heere.<sup>9</sup> would.<sup>10</sup> well.<sup>11</sup> clariet.<sup>12</sup> Fol. cxxxiii. back, col. 2.<sup>13</sup> vnto.<sup>14</sup> time.<sup>15</sup> Duke.<sup>16</sup> I.<sup>17</sup> that.<sup>18</sup> nowe.<sup>19</sup> and helth.<sup>20</sup> will.



Clariet asks for tidings of her father.

The pilgrim relates how he and Huon have been companions for a long space,

and the adventures they have had together.

Huon will return before two months are past.

Clariet hopes he will deliver her mother out of prison.

Huon then declares who he really is,

and that he is going to make war on the Emperor Thierry.

fortune / & *that* she may be so maryed that her blod may therby be lyft vp and exalted' / then the fayre lady Claryte sayd to<sup>1</sup> Huon / 'syr pylgryme, I pray you<sup>2</sup> shew me yf ye know any tydynges of my father, 4 duke Huon of Burdeaux?' / 'fayre lady,' quod Huon, 'he and I togyther haue bene a longe space<sup>3</sup> beyonde the see / and companyons together / and we fought the sowdan of babylon *that* now is / it is not he that was 8 set there by Huon after *that* he had slayn ye great Admyrall gaudes, it is a nother who syn *that* tyme conqueryd<sup>4</sup> y<sup>e</sup> cytye & y<sup>e</sup> cowntre of Egypt / many aduentures Huon and I<sup>5</sup> sufferyd, but at the end 12 we dyscumfyted the sowdan and his men<sup>6</sup> slayne'<sup>7</sup> / 'pylgrym,' quod<sup>8</sup> Claryte, 'I requyre you<sup>2</sup> shewe me yf ye know that<sup>9</sup> my dere father wyll retorne hether agayn<sup>10</sup> / the whiche is the thyng in the world that I 16 most desyre' / 'fayre lady,' quod he, 'I answere you or<sup>11</sup> .ii. monethes be past ye shall se hym here in good helth' / 'I praye <sup>12</sup>to<sup>12</sup> god <sup>13</sup>it may be so,' quod the lady<sup>13</sup> / 'that he maye delyuer my mother out of 20 prysone, where as she <sup>14</sup>is in great pouerte and mysery.'

¶ When Huon<sup>15</sup> harde<sup>16</sup> his doughter, he wold no lenger hyde hymselfe / but sayd, 'my ryght dere doughter, or<sup>17</sup> august be past I shall delyuer her or 24 dye in y<sup>e</sup> payn, for I shall moue<sup>18</sup> suche warre agaynst y<sup>e</sup> emperoure Therry, that yet or<sup>17</sup> I dye I shall stryke of his hede<sup>19</sup> what so euer fall therof' / when the lady harde Huon how he sayd that he was her father, she 28 changed coloure and blussyd as rudy as a rose, and thought to herself by the wordes that he spake *that* he was her father, where of she was<sup>20</sup> ioyfull, & sayd /

<sup>1</sup> vnto.      <sup>2</sup> to.      <sup>3</sup> time.      <sup>4</sup> bothe.      <sup>5</sup> haue.

<sup>6</sup> are.      <sup>7</sup> and destroyed.      <sup>8</sup> the faire Ladie.

<sup>9</sup> whether.      <sup>10</sup> or no.      <sup>11</sup> that before.

<sup>12-12</sup> vnto our lord.      <sup>13-13</sup> gouth the Ladie, it may be so.

<sup>14</sup> Fol. cxxxv. col. 1.      <sup>15</sup> had well.      <sup>16</sup> and vnderstood.

<sup>17</sup> before.      <sup>18</sup> make.      <sup>19</sup> from his bodie.      <sup>20</sup> right.

- 'A, syr, I praye you yf ye be duke Huon of Burdeaux,  
 my father,<sup>1</sup> shewe me.' / 'my ryght dere doughter,  
 byleue it suerly, for I wyll no lenger hyde it' / when  
 4 the lady hard that he was her father she cleppyd hym, Clariet, right joyful, embraces her father.  
 and .xx. tymes kyssed hym. Then the abbote came  
 and embrassed hym, and sayd / 'my ryght dere  
 nephew, the ioy that my harte desyreth<sup>2</sup> your comynge  
 8 is to me so agreable<sup>3</sup> that I can not tell whether I  
 drewe or not *that* I se you'<sup>4</sup> / then agayn<sup>5</sup> embrassed  
 hym, makyng the greatest ioy in the worlde. Also  
 there was Claryet his doughter, who embrassed and  
 12 kyssed hym / then all that were in y<sup>e</sup> howse came  
 thether to make<sup>6</sup> chere and feest<sup>7</sup> / 'fayre nephew,'  
 quod the abbot, 'I am sore abasshed that ye be retorned  
 with so small a company.' 'fayr<sup>8</sup> vncle,' quod Huon /  
 16 'it coude be none other wyse; I haue had suche  
 fortunes on<sup>9</sup> the see *that* the moost parte of my men ar  
 dede and peryshed, and sum by malady, and sum ar  
 retorned to theyr owne countrees / and specyaly they  
 20 that went with me ar abydyng at the rocke of the  
 Adamant, and there al be dede for<sup>10</sup> fayme, and they  
 that were my gydes to haue brought me to<sup>11</sup> enphame  
 ar in lyke wyse dede there' / then<sup>12</sup> <sup>13</sup> Huon began to  
 24 shewe<sup>11</sup> the abbot all the aduentures that he had syn he  
 departed fro the noble cytye of Burdeaux / there were  
 sum that hard it *that* toke it for a mock, & al ye he  
 shewyd of so many great meruaylles / they thoughe<sup>14</sup> the  
 28 moost part of them were lyes / <sup>15</sup> one sayd to an other,  
 'great auantage hath these vacaboundes to lye, bycause  
 they fynde no man to say them naye / & yf any man  
 say nay, theyr answeere is rudy to saye go and se' /  
 32 then the abbote sayd, 'fayre nephew, yf I were of y<sup>e</sup>

Clariet, right joyful, embraces her father.

The abbot expresses his joy at Huon's return; he can hardly believe it true.

All in the house make a feast.

The abbot cannot understand why Huon has so small a company;

but he learns that of his companions, some are dead, and others have returned to their own country.

Huon relates all the adventures he has had since he left Bordeaux.

Some think he is mocking.

<sup>1</sup> to.      <sup>2</sup> hathe of.      <sup>3</sup> acceptable.      <sup>4</sup> heere and.  
<sup>5</sup> hee.      <sup>6</sup> great.      <sup>7</sup> feasting.      <sup>8</sup> good.      <sup>9</sup> vpon.  
<sup>10</sup> by.      <sup>11</sup> vnto.      <sup>12</sup> Duke.      <sup>13</sup> Foi. cxxxv. col. 2.  
<sup>14</sup> that.      <sup>15</sup> and.

If the abbot were younger, gladly would he go with Huon to destroy the Emperor, but he will pay with his own treasure a number of men of war who shall aid Huon.

As the abbot is one hundred and fourteen years old, he will abandon all his treasure to Huon, who can take as much as he pleases.

age to bere harneys,<sup>1</sup> gladly I wold go with you<sup>2</sup> to destroy this Emperoure who hath done you so myche yll; I shall sende for suche a nombre of men of warre and pay them with my tresoure, the whiche I haue <sup>4</sup> longe tyme gatheryd togyther, and shal ayed you to make such warre *that* it shall <sup>3</sup> be euer<sup>3</sup> had in remembraunce / or elles I wyll dye in the payne, and all they that shulde go with me / and to cause hym to <sup>8</sup> make you amendes of al the ylles and damages that he hath done to<sup>4</sup> you / yet sumwhat I haue done all redy / for it is not long<sup>5</sup> that one of the Emperours nephewes was slayn by my men, and all they that <sup>12</sup> were with hym slayn or taken / for, nephew, I haue gatheryd togyther as<sup>6</sup> great treasure *that* I may therewith wel<sup>7</sup> entertayn a .C. M. men for .ii. yere without sellynge or laynge to plegge any fote of londe pertenyng <sup>16</sup> to my churche / but as nowe I am so olde that I can not ryde out, for I am a .C. & xiiii. yere of age / and therefore syn<sup>8</sup> I can not go with you / I shal abandone to<sup>4</sup> you all my treasure; <sup>9</sup> take therof as moche as <sup>20</sup> it shall please you / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'ye make me so great an offere that ones or I dye I truste to rendere to<sup>4</sup> you the doble<sup>10</sup> by the grace of god.'

¶ <sup>11</sup>How duke Huon of Burdeaux shewyd to <sup>24</sup> his vncle, the abbote of Cluny, all the aduentures that he had syn he departed fro the<sup>12</sup> cytye of Burdeaux / & how he gaue y<sup>e</sup> abbot y<sup>e</sup> appyll of yought, wherby <sup>28</sup> y<sup>e</sup> good abbot became agayn to his beaute that he had when he was of .xxx. yere of age.

Ca. C.xlvii.

<sup>1</sup> armour.

<sup>2</sup> to ayde you.

<sup>3-3</sup> alwayes be.

<sup>4</sup> vnto.

<sup>5</sup> since.

<sup>6</sup> a.

<sup>7</sup> omitted.

<sup>8</sup> seeing that.

<sup>9</sup> and.

<sup>10</sup> value.

<sup>11</sup> Fol. cxxxv. back, col. 1.

<sup>12</sup> noble.

When<sup>1</sup> Huon of Burdeaux<sup>2</sup> vnderstod  
the<sup>3</sup> abbot his vncle, and sawe the  
fayr offere and seruyce that he had  
offeryde<sup>4</sup> hym, &<sup>5</sup> sayd / 'syr, of your  
curtesie and largesse, and all the good  
that ye haue done to<sup>4</sup> me and to my doughter claryet,  
god rewarde you for it / trewe it is after *that* I had fought  
with the gryffons; I came to<sup>4</sup> a fayr fountayn, & there  
by was a tree growynge charged full of fayr fruyte, the  
tree was called the tre of yought, of y<sup>e</sup> which I gaderyd  
.iii. appys, wherof ye shall haue one and shall eete it,  
and as sone as ye haue eten thereof wherby ye shal  
become as yonge, and as stronge and lusty as ye were  
when ye were of the age of .xxx. yere.' Then there  
was a monke in the howse callyd dan Johan salmet,<sup>6</sup>  
who began to laugh, and hasted hym to speke, &  
sayd / 'A, syr, what is it that ye saye / thys .ii.M. yere  
there was neuer man at the tree of yought, therfore this  
tale is not to be byleuyd' / <sup>7</sup>when Huon harde the  
monke he waxyde rede for angre, & lyft vp his staffe  
and wolde haue stryken therwith the monke, and <sup>8</sup>  
he had not skept backe, and sayd / 'A, thou false  
monke, *thou* lyest falsly / I haue bene there, and that  
*thou* shalt se the profe there <sup>9</sup>of whether I say trewe or  
not' / then the abbot came bytwene them and stoppyd  
the stroke / and sayd to<sup>4</sup> Huon / 'A, my ryght dere  
nephew, apayse yourself' / and then he sayd to the  
monke / 'A, thou <sup>10</sup>gloutone,<sup>10</sup> by the faythe *that* I owe  
to<sup>4</sup> my lorde saynt bennet,<sup>11</sup> thy wordes <sup>12</sup>shall<sup>12</sup> be  
sore punysshyd' / then he causyd the monke to be set  
in presone / and then the abbote sayd to<sup>4</sup> Huon / 'syr,  
I pray you be no lenger dyspleasyd' / then Huon toke

Huon tells how  
he gathered the  
fruit of the tree of  
youth,  
and offers one of  
the apples to the  
abbot in order  
that he may  
become once  
again a young  
man.

Thereupon a  
monk, Johan  
Salmet, laughs  
and cries that the  
tale is false.

Huon waxes  
furious.

and the abbot  
sends the monk  
to prison.

<sup>1</sup> Duke.      <sup>2</sup> had well.      <sup>3</sup> good.      <sup>4</sup> vnto.      <sup>5</sup> he.  
<sup>6</sup> Saliuet.      <sup>7</sup> and.      <sup>8</sup> if.      <sup>9</sup> Fol. cxxxv. back, col. 2.  
<sup>10-10</sup> rude groome.      <sup>11</sup> for.  
<sup>12-12</sup> thou shalt.

Huon tells how the Admiral of Persia ate one of the apples, and straightway became fair and strong as a man of thirty years, and how, on account of this miracle, all the men of his realm became Christians.

Then the abbot, making the sign of the cross, took the apple and ate it,

and at once became as a man of thirty years.

In great joy he embraces Huon.

one of his appyls and toke<sup>1</sup> it to his<sup>2</sup> vncle the abbote, and sayd / ' syr, take this appyll, y<sup>e</sup> whiche I gaderyd of the tree of yought ; I gaderyd<sup>3</sup> .iii., and one I gaue to the admyrall of Perce, and a nother I kept for<sup>4</sup> myself, the which I gyue you / <sup>4</sup>I wolde haue gaderyd mo but I was defended<sup>5</sup> by an aungell sent fro our lorde Iesu chryst / &, syr, knowe for trought that the admyrall of perce or<sup>6</sup> I gaue hym y<sup>e</sup> appyll he was of 8 the age of .vi. score yere & more / but as soone as he had eeten therof / he became as fayr and as stronge as when he was .xxx. yere of age, & he is as nowe one of the fayrest pryneys of<sup>7</sup> the worlde ; By the whiche<sup>12</sup> myracle he and all his people of his realme forsoke<sup>8</sup> the<sup>9</sup> law of macomete and toke on<sup>10</sup> them the byleue of our lorde Iesu chryst, and were chrystenyd / & they that wold not were hewen al to peses / and after that for<sup>16</sup> the loue that he bare<sup>11</sup> me, he passed the see with me with great pusaunce, and we enteryd in to y<sup>e</sup> sowdans land / where as we dyscumfyted hym in playne batayll' / when the<sup>2</sup> abbote<sup>12</sup> harde<sup>13</sup> his nephew he had great<sup>20</sup> ioy, and toke the appyll / & made therof<sup>14</sup> the synge of y<sup>e</sup> crosse, and dyd eete it vp euery dele,<sup>15</sup> wherby incontynent in<sup>16</sup> syght of all them that were there present, he became in to his fyrst youth as he was<sup>24</sup> when he was<sup>17</sup> but of y<sup>e</sup> age of .xxx. yeres, his whyte berd fell away & a new berd come / his iowes that were lene & pale, y<sup>e</sup> flesse grew again new quykke flesse, so that he became a fayre<sup>18</sup> man & wel fornyshyd of<sup>28</sup> body and membres / a farer man can<sup>19</sup> no man se, nor lyghter, nor lustyer / wherof he had suche ioye at his harte that he ran and enbrasyd Huon, and kyssed hym

<sup>1</sup> gaue.      <sup>2</sup> good.

<sup>3</sup> therof.      <sup>4</sup> and.      <sup>5</sup> forbidden.

<sup>6</sup> before.      <sup>7</sup> in.      <sup>8</sup> did forsake.      <sup>9</sup> false and detestable.

<sup>10</sup> vpon.      <sup>11</sup> vnto mee.      <sup>12</sup> had well.

<sup>13</sup> and vnderstood.      <sup>14</sup> thereon.      <sup>15</sup> whit.      <sup>16</sup> the.

<sup>17</sup> Fol. cxxxvi. col. 1.      <sup>18</sup> young.      <sup>19</sup> could.



- more then x. tymes / when they *that* were<sup>1</sup> present  
 saw the<sup>2</sup> great merueyll, they were greatly abasshed, &  
 sayd one to a nother / that Huon was worthy to be  
 4 byleued / for out of suche a prynces mouthe<sup>3</sup> neuer  
 Issuyd a ley / there was moche ioy made / the tabels  
 were set & they went to dynen / there sat the abbote  
 and Huon, and claryet his doughter / of there seruyce  
 8 and meetes I wyll make no rehersall, for they were  
 rychely seruyd ; after<sup>2</sup> they had dyned & grace sayd /  
 all y<sup>e</sup> monkes of the couent came & knelyd downe  
 before Huon, and humbly requyred hym of pardone for  
 12 dan Johan salmet,<sup>4</sup> who was to hasty to speke, & all  
 was but<sup>5</sup> throghe nyclygence of yought and yll  
 aduysed / when Huon saw all the monkes before hym  
 on<sup>6</sup> theyr kneys desyryng hym to pardon the monke of  
 16 his folly. He sayd to<sup>7</sup> them, 'syr, I am content to  
 fulfyll your desyers / for I am not come hether to  
 troble any man' / when the<sup>8</sup> abbote<sup>9</sup> harde Huon<sup>10</sup>  
 pardon his monke, he thanked hym, and sayd / 'syr,  
 20 by saynte bennet, yf ye had not pardonyd hym, he  
 shuld not haue come out of presone this yere' / then  
 the monkes went to the pryson, and they shewyd<sup>7</sup> the  
 monke that was in prysone what meruaylles was done  
 24 in his absence / and how theyr abbote, who was a  
 .C. and .xiiii. yere of age, was<sup>11</sup> become of the age of  
 .xxx. yeres / 'syr,' quod he, 'I am glad of my  
 delyuerance, but I can<sup>12</sup> not byleue it be so as ye say,  
 28 nor I wyll not byleue it tyll<sup>13</sup> I se it' / then he went in  
 to the hall whereas the abbote and Huon was<sup>14</sup> togyther /  
 and when he sawe the abbote yonge agayne / then he  
 knelyd downe and cryed Huon mercy / and requyrd  
 32 hym of pardon / y<sup>e</sup> whiche Huon granted. Then there
- They dine, and  
are well feasted.
- After dinner, the  
monks of the  
convent humbly  
ask Huon to  
pardon John  
Salmes.
- Huon grants their  
request ;
- the abbot thanks  
him.
- They show the  
monk what  
marvels have  
taken place in his  
absence.
- He will not  
believe them until  
he sees them,
- but when he saw  
the abbot young  
again, he cries  
Huon mercy, and  
asks his pardon,

<sup>1</sup> there.      <sup>2</sup> that.      <sup>3</sup> (quoth they).<sup>4</sup> Saliuet.      <sup>5</sup> omitted.      <sup>6</sup> vpon.      <sup>7</sup> vnto.      <sup>8</sup> good.<sup>9</sup> had well.      <sup>10</sup> his Nephew.      <sup>11</sup> now.<sup>12</sup> Fol. cxxxvi. col. 2.      <sup>13</sup> vntill.      <sup>14</sup> were.

which Huon  
grants.

Huon is to send  
for 20,000 men of  
war, to fight the  
Emperor.

Huon desires to  
lead the Emperor  
by peaceful  
means to yield  
him his lands and  
seignories,

and Huon would  
even become his  
liege man.

That night would  
Huon study the  
matter.

was great ioy / then the abbote sayd / 'nephew, send  
for men of warre on all sydes / & I shall pay theyr  
wages to the nombre of .xx.M. men / for I haue golde  
& seluer inought / and let vs send for all our frendes, 4  
and we shall be a great nombre of men able to fyght with  
y<sup>e</sup> Emperoure, who hath wrongfully,<sup>1</sup> without cause,  
dyssheryte you, & kepyth your wyfe in prysone, wherof  
my hart is so sorowfull that I can no lenger endure it' / 8  
'syr,' quod Huon, 'yf I may fynde any other way to  
come to passe with the Emperoure / then by spere  
and sheylde and no man slayne / then<sup>2</sup> I wold thynke<sup>3</sup>  
I had well spede / for yf I myght do so moch with the 12  
Emperoure that he wolde render to<sup>4</sup> me my londes  
and synnoryes, & my wyf & men / and that therby I  
myght become his lege man / I<sup>5</sup> thynge I had made  
then<sup>6</sup> an honorable ende / for I haue done him great 16  
damage' / 'fayr nephew,' quod the abbote, 'I wolde  
fayne knowe by what maner ye coude bringe this  
mater aboute' / 'vnclé,' quod Huon, 'this nyght I wyl  
study on<sup>7</sup> y<sup>e</sup> mater, y<sup>e</sup> which I trust to<sup>8</sup> our lord 20  
god<sup>9</sup> to brynge to a good<sup>10</sup> end.'

¶ How Huon of Burdeaux departed fro  
Cluny & went to y<sup>e</sup> noble cytye of Maience  
vpon a fryday, & how he came nere to<sup>4</sup> the 24  
Emperoures oratory. Ca. C.xl.viii.

Huon wrote a  
letter summoning  
his men lying at  
Tournous to  
come to the abbey  
of Cluny.



11 After that Huon and the<sup>12</sup> abbot had  
deuysed togyther of dyuers thynges /  
Huon wrote a letter to<sup>4</sup> his men 28  
beynge at tornus, that they shulde  
come to<sup>4</sup> hym to the abey of Cluny;  
he sent a gentyلمان of the abey to

<sup>1</sup> and.      <sup>2</sup> then *after* thinke.      <sup>3</sup> that.      <sup>4</sup> vnto.

<sup>5</sup> would then.      <sup>6</sup> then *before* thinke.      <sup>7</sup> vppon.

<sup>8</sup> in.      <sup>9</sup> Iesu chryst.      <sup>10</sup> and prosperous.

<sup>11</sup> Fol. cxxxvi. back, col. 1.      <sup>12</sup> good.

- fêche them / <sup>1</sup>when he was come to tornus and had  
 delyueryd his letters to <sup>2</sup>Barnarde / they made them  
 redy, and trussyd theyr sumners and departed <sup>3</sup>thence /  
<sup>4</sup>and they rode so longe that they came in at the gates  
 of the abey of Cluny / y<sup>e</sup> same tyme Huon and the  
 abbot were lenyng out at a wyndowe / the abbot sawe  
 .xv. sumners charygd, & .vii. mules and mulettes /  
<sup>8</sup>wherof he had great merueyll of whence they were,  
 and sayd to Huon, 'fayre nephew, can ye tell to <sup>2</sup>  
 whom parteneth <sup>4</sup>thes sumners, or what be they *that*  
 bryngeth them?' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'know for  
<sup>12</sup>trouthe <sup>5</sup>I haue conqueryd them and they ar myn,  
 and yonder is Barnarde that doth conducte them / who  
 hathe had moche payne and trouble or <sup>6</sup>he coude fynde  
 me' / 'fayre nephew,' quod y<sup>e</sup> abbot, 'great ioy I haue  
<sup>16</sup>at my harte that he hathe soughe you so longe to fynde  
 you at <sup>7</sup>last / nor I coude not haue sent a more noble  
 man / ye ough greatly to loue hym / and also he  
 is our kynsman / and alwayes he hath bene to <sup>2</sup>you  
<sup>20</sup>good <sup>8</sup>and trewe' <sup>9</sup> / 'syr,' <sup>8</sup>quod Huon, <sup>8</sup>'in hym  
 I haue founde all that ye say / and, syr, the great  
 summer that ye se yonder with the .iii. great coffers  
 well bandyd / they be full of presyous stones and  
<sup>24</sup>iowelles, more worthe then .iiii. good cytyes; I wyll  
 leue them here with you to kepe for the maryage of my  
 doughter,' and with those wordes he kyst her / 'dere  
 nephewe,' quod the <sup>10</sup>abbot / 'and besyde that ye wyll  
<sup>28</sup>gyue her I shall departe with her large <sup>11</sup>ly of my  
 treasure' / therwith <sup>12</sup>thether came <sup>12</sup>Barnarde and all  
 the other of his company / <sup>1</sup>when ye abbot perseyuyd  
 Barnard he came to <sup>2</sup>hym <sup>13</sup>with his armes abrode and  
<sup>32</sup>cleppyd and kyssed hym / and made <sup>2</sup>hym great feest

Led by Barnard,  
they reach the  
abbey, with all  
the sumpter-  
horses.

The abbot sees  
them from a  
window, and  
 marvels to whom  
they can belong.

Huon has  
conquered them;  
they are his, and  
Barnard is  
conducting them.

The biggest  
sumpter-horse  
bears two coffers  
full of precious  
stones and jewels.

Huon leaves them  
in the abbot's  
keeping for his  
daughter's dowry.

<sup>1</sup> and. <sup>2</sup> vnto. <sup>3</sup> from. <sup>4</sup> appertaine.

<sup>5</sup> that. <sup>6</sup> before. <sup>7</sup> the. <sup>8-8</sup> omitted.

<sup>9</sup> and faithfull. <sup>10</sup> good. <sup>11</sup> Fol. cxxxvi. back, col. 2.

<sup>12</sup> <sup>12</sup> after Barnarde. <sup>13</sup> right ioyfully.

The abbot made a great feast in Barnard's honour.

The sumpter-horses are discharged, and all the coffers opened.

The abbot thinks Huon has riches enough to buy the whole realm of France.

Huon gives Clariet a rich necklace of gold and precious stones.

She humbly thanks her father.

Huon apparels himself as a prince of high degree, and was fair to look upon.

On the ninth day Huon secretly departs, accompanied by Barnard.

Only the abbot knows of their going.

and chere <sup>1</sup>to hym<sup>1</sup> and to all his company / then duke Huon and y<sup>e</sup> <sup>2</sup>abbot<sup>3</sup> and<sup>4</sup> Claryte his daughter went in to theyr chambre and dyscharged the summers and openyd euery coffer / when the abbot had sene the <sup>4</sup>ryches that was in them / he was neuer so abasshed, and sayd / 'A, Huon, fayr nephew, I thynke ye haue broughe hether ryches to bye therwith the hole realme of france /, then<sup>5</sup> Huon toke a color of golde full of <sup>8</sup>precious stones, that the clerenes of them illumyned all the howse / <sup>6</sup>Huon dyd put the coler about his daughters neke, & kyst her <sup>1</sup>in the<sup>1</sup> mouth, & sayd / 'my dere<sup>7</sup> daughter, I gyue you this ryche<sup>1</sup> coler, <sup>12</sup>I neuer gaue you any thyng before / it is so rych that the stones therin ar worth a realme or a duchy' / when the lady sawe the rych coler, she was<sup>8</sup> ioyfull, and knelyd downe before her father and thanked hym <sup>16</sup>humbly<sup>9</sup> / then Huon shewed all his treasure to<sup>10</sup> his<sup>2</sup> vncl the abbot / <sup>6</sup>when all had bene sene and aweuyd, y<sup>e</sup> abbot dyd put them in to coffers / then Huon aparalyd hymselfe with a<sup>1</sup> rych aparyll / then<sup>6</sup> he <sup>20</sup>semyd<sup>11</sup> to be a prynce of hye degre, he was so fayre to behold that all such as sawe hym had<sup>12</sup> pleasur to behold hym / there he made good chere<sup>13</sup> the space of .viii. dayes / & on<sup>14</sup> the .ix. daye in the mornynge <sup>24</sup>he departed thence pryuely, and toke Barnard with hym, without<sup>15</sup> knowlage of any parson except the abbot, to<sup>10</sup> whom he sayd / ' <sup>16</sup>vncl, I and Barnarde wyll departe, and I requyre you<sup>17</sup> lat no man lyuyng <sup>28</sup>know of my departynge as long as ye can kepe <sup>18</sup>it secrete tyll<sup>19</sup> ye here fro me sum newes' <sup>20</sup>/ 'syr, it shall be done,' quod the abbot / 'and I commend you

1—1 omitted.    <sup>2</sup> good.    <sup>3</sup> his vncl.    <sup>4</sup> the faire Ladie.

<sup>5</sup> Duke.    <sup>6</sup> and.    <sup>7</sup> and louing.    <sup>8</sup> right.

<sup>9</sup> humbly before thanked.    <sup>10</sup> vnto.    <sup>11</sup> then.

<sup>12</sup> great.    <sup>13</sup> and feasting for.    <sup>14</sup> vppon.    <sup>15</sup> the.

<sup>16</sup> Faire.    <sup>17</sup> to.    <sup>18</sup> Fol. cxxxvii. col. 1.    <sup>19</sup> vntill.

<sup>20</sup> tidings.

- to the sauegard of our lorde Iesu chryst <sup>1</sup> / then Huon  
 and Barnarde departed or <sup>2</sup> any man were resyn / and  
 they toke theyr waye <sup>3</sup> to <sup>3</sup> Maience & restyd not tyll <sup>4</sup>  
 4 they came to Coloyne, & the nexte mornynge they  
 rode tyll <sup>4</sup> they came within a lege of <sup>5</sup> Maience / <sup>6</sup> then  
 they enteryd in to a wode, & there they lyghted / then  
 Huon aparaled hym[s] lyke a pylgrym in babyte,  
 8 hose & shoes / and he toke an herbe and rubbed ther-  
 with his vysage, so <sup>7</sup> that he semyde that he had bene  
 in the sonne .x. yere, so that he was vnknowyn, <sup>6</sup> so  
 that <sup>6</sup> Barnard that was with hym coude not knowe  
 12 hym by the face / <sup>6</sup> then Barnarde lawghyde / then he  
 toke hys stafe and skryp, and sayd to <sup>8</sup> Barnarde, ‘syr,  
 go ye <sup>9</sup> your waye before in to the cete with our  
 horses, and take none aquentance of me thoughe ye se  
 16 me, and take vp sum smal loggyng’ / so Barnarde  
 wente / on before / and Huon fayre & easly went  
 after, <sup>10</sup> and so enteryd in to the cytye; And he had  
 with hym the .xxx. ryche stones in his bosume / when  
 20 he was enterid in to the cytye, he restyd not tyll <sup>4</sup> he  
 came to the palyes / and as he went vp the stayres,  
 he mette the stewarde of the Emperou[r]s howse, to <sup>8</sup>  
 whom he sayd / ‘syr, I praye you in y<sup>e</sup> honoure of our  
 24 lorde Iesu chryst, <sup>9</sup> and of the blessed vyrgyn mary  
 his mother, <sup>9</sup> to gyue me sum meet, for I am soo hungry  
 that I can skant <sup>11</sup> go on <sup>12</sup> my leges, nor I haue no  
 mony to bye me a morsell of brede’ / when the  
 28 steward <sup>13</sup> hard <sup>14</sup> the pylgryme, he behelde hym well  
 and saw how he stafe shakyd in his hande / the which  
 he thought had bene for <sup>15</sup> feblenes and pouerte / and  
 had of hym great pyte, <sup>16</sup> and demaunded <sup>17</sup> fro whens

Huon and  
Barnard take  
their way to  
Mayence,  
and rest not till  
they come to  
Cologne.

When within  
a league of  
Mayence, Huon  
disguises himself  
as a pilgrim,

and stains his  
face brown.

Barnard hardly  
knew him.

Barnard is to go  
and lodge in the  
city, but to take  
no notice of  
Huon.

Huon, with thirty  
precious stones in  
his bosom, comes  
to the Emperor's  
palace.

He meets there  
the steward,

and asks him for  
food.

<sup>1</sup> and I beseech him humbly that you may haue peace with  
the Emperour Tirrey.

<sup>2</sup> before. <sup>3-3</sup> towards the Citie of. <sup>4</sup> vntill.

<sup>5</sup> the Citie of. <sup>6</sup> and. <sup>7</sup> in such sort. <sup>8</sup> vnto.

<sup>9</sup> omitted. <sup>10</sup> him. <sup>11</sup> scarce. <sup>12</sup> vppon.

<sup>13</sup> had well. <sup>14</sup> and vnderstood. <sup>15</sup> with.

<sup>16</sup> and compassion. <sup>17</sup> of him.



The steward bids Huon tarry until he has carried some food to the duchess Esclaramonde and the other prisoners.

They are to be killed five days hence.

Huon sorely weeps at this bad news,

and returns into the town, where he is well lodged by a notable burgesse.

To-morrow is Good Friday, and Huon asks his host if the Emperor does not give alms on that day.

he came / 'syr,' <sup>1</sup>quod Huon, 'I come streght fro the holy sepulture, and I haue enduryd moch pouerte' <sup>2</sup> / 'frende,' quod the stewarde, 'I pray you' <sup>3</sup> tary' <sup>4</sup> me here a lytell seaseone / tyll' <sup>5</sup> I haue bene in y<sup>e</sup> presone <sup>6</sup> 4 to bere' <sup>6</sup> meet to' <sup>7</sup> y<sup>e</sup> duchess Esclaramond and to' <sup>8</sup> other presoners, who cryeth out <sup>9</sup>for fayme' <sup>9</sup> that they ben in / for yf they be longe in this cayse that they be in, <sup>10</sup> they can not long' <sup>11</sup> endure' <sup>12</sup> / for the Emperoure hath <sup>8</sup> takynge suche an inwarde hate to' <sup>13</sup> her and to' <sup>13</sup> them that be' <sup>14</sup> in presone with her / that he hathe made promyse that as soone as Ester be' <sup>15</sup> past, the lady shall be brente' <sup>16</sup> and the other' <sup>17</sup> al hangyd / and <sup>12</sup> this day is sher' <sup>18</sup> thursdaye, so' <sup>19</sup> they haue to lyue but .v. dayes / and I am ryght sorry for y<sup>e</sup> noble lady that our Emperoure wyll put her to dethe without' <sup>20</sup> cause' / when Huon' <sup>21</sup> hard that / he had no membre' <sup>22</sup> but that <sup>16</sup> trymbelyd, and he cast downe his vysage and began sore' <sup>23</sup> to wepe, & sufferyd the stewarde to passe and spake no worde' <sup>24</sup> / but retorned in to the towne and went & logyd in y<sup>e</sup> towne ryght heuy and sorowfull ; <sup>20</sup> how be it he was ryght ioyfull / <sup>25</sup>that his wyfe was alyue, for he' <sup>26</sup> feryd' <sup>19</sup> she had bene dede ; he logyd in a notable burgesse howse, who receyued hym well for the loue of god, but what so euer he had there he coude <sup>24</sup> nother eete nor drynke for sorowe' <sup>27</sup> that he had at his hart / then he sayd to' <sup>7</sup> his host, 'syr, to morowe is good fryday, the which day I thynk the Emperoure wyll gyue great almys' / 'frende,' quod his hoost / <sup>28</sup> 'ye may suerly byleue that the Emperoure wyl gyue as to morowe great almes, he wyll gyue of his goodes so

<sup>1</sup> Fol. cxxxvii. col. 2.      <sup>2</sup> and miserie.      <sup>3</sup> to.      <sup>4</sup> for.

<sup>5</sup> vntill.      <sup>6</sup> carie.      <sup>7</sup> vnto.      <sup>8</sup> the.

<sup>9-9</sup> through famine and rage.      <sup>10</sup> now.      <sup>11</sup> omitted.

<sup>12</sup> it.      <sup>13</sup> against.      <sup>14</sup> are.      <sup>15</sup> is.      <sup>16</sup> burnt.

<sup>17</sup> Prisoners.      <sup>18</sup> Shroue.      <sup>19</sup> that.      <sup>20</sup> a iust.

<sup>21</sup> had well.      <sup>22</sup> nor ioynt.      <sup>23</sup> pitifully.      <sup>24</sup> vnto him.

<sup>25</sup> in.      <sup>26</sup> greatly.      <sup>27</sup> and greefe.

- largely to<sup>1</sup> al poure men *that* <sup>2</sup>commeth to<sup>2</sup> hym that  
 day<sup>3</sup> shall be<sup>4</sup> satysfied / ye shall not fynde a prynee  
<sup>5</sup>of<sup>5</sup> greater almes / & of one thyng I aduertise you /  
 4 the Emperoure hathe <sup>6</sup>one coustume, that the fyrst  
 pouer pylgryme that comethe to<sup>1</sup> hym to morowe shall  
 be happy / for there is no thyng in y<sup>e</sup> world, be  
 yt neuer so dere, <sup>7</sup>yf he demaund it of the emperoure  
 8 it shall not be denyed hym: it must be at the same  
 owre that the emperour goeth to<sup>1</sup> his chapel to say his  
 orysones / when Huon<sup>8</sup> vnderstode his hoste / he began  
 to reioyce, and thought in<sup>9</sup> hymselfe<sup>10</sup> yf he coude  
 12 in any wyse he wolde be the fyrst that shulde demaund  
 almes<sup>11</sup> / but that shulde be nother golde nor syluer, it  
 shulde be his wyfe and his men that he hathe in  
 pryson; and also yf he may he wyll axe therwith  
 16 his londe<sup>12</sup> / Then the hoste went to his reste / &  
 Huon abode in his chambre alone and slepte not of al  
 the nyght, but thought how he myght delyuer his  
 wyfe / and the presoners that be<sup>13</sup> with her; and all  
 20 nyghte he was in<sup>14</sup> his prayers<sup>15</sup> desyrynge<sup>16</sup> god to  
 cunsaile and ayde hym to recouer his wyfe.<sup>17</sup> Erly  
 in the mornynge he rose and made hym redy, and  
 toke his scrippe and stafe and wente straye to the  
 24 palays, and sat on<sup>18</sup> y<sup>e</sup> greses wheras the emperour  
 shuld pas / at whiche tyme the emperour was<sup>19</sup> rysen  
 vp / <sup>20</sup>there were many other pylgrymes that were there  
 abydyng for y<sup>e</sup> emperours comynge, and euery man  
 28 couetyd to haue the fyrste gyfte / but Huon dyd so  
 moch by his subtylte that he was the fyrste that  
 enteryd into the chapell, and none other parseyuyd  
 hym / and he dyd hyde hymselfe<sup>21</sup> in a corner nere to<sup>1</sup>

The Emperor will  
give largely,

and to the first  
pilgrim that  
cometh to him  
he will deny  
nothing that he  
demands.

Huon determines  
to be the first,  
and demand his  
wife and the  
prisoners.

Huon passed a  
sleepless night  
considering how  
he might best  
deliver his wife.

In the morning  
he goes straight  
to the Emperor's  
palace,

and finds there  
many other  
pilgrims who  
coveted the first  
gift.

Huon, by his  
subtlety, entered  
the chapel first,

<sup>1</sup> vnto. <sup>2-2</sup> if they come vnto. <sup>3</sup> they. <sup>4</sup> all.

<sup>5-5</sup> that doth giue. <sup>6</sup> Fol. cxxxvii. back, col. 1. <sup>7</sup> but.

<sup>8</sup> had well. <sup>9</sup> within. <sup>10</sup> that. <sup>11</sup> of the Emperour.

<sup>12</sup> and Signiores. <sup>13</sup> were. <sup>14</sup> at. <sup>15</sup> humbly.

<sup>16</sup> our Lord. <sup>17</sup> Escleremond. <sup>18</sup> upon. <sup>19</sup> newe.

<sup>20</sup> and. <sup>21</sup> closely.

and in a corner  
awaits the  
Emperor's  
coming.

the emperours oratory, and there he sate styлле without any worde spekyng, abydyng<sup>1</sup> the comynge of the emperour.

<sup>2</sup>¶ How Huon dyd so moche with the em- 4  
perour Therry, that he had peas<sup>3</sup> / & his  
wyfe renderyd to<sup>4</sup> hym and all his londys<sup>5</sup> /  
and howe the emperour brought hym to<sup>4</sup>  
the Abbey of Cluny, where as they found 8  
the good abbotte in harnays,<sup>6</sup> not know-  
ynge<sup>7</sup> of the peas that was made.

Ca. C.xlix.

The Emperor  
came into the  
chapel,  
and made his  
prayers before the  
altar.



ow shewethe the story<sup>8</sup> that anone 12  
after that Huon was enteryd into the  
chapell / the emperoure came in and  
knelyd downe before the aulter and  
made his prayers; <sup>9</sup>many pouer men 16  
were there abydyng y<sup>e</sup> ende of his

When he was  
ready to go into  
the oratory, Huon  
drew out a rich  
stone of such  
virtue, that its  
owner could not  
be overcome by  
his enemy, or  
drowned, or  
burnt.

prayers, and no man sawe Huon wheras he was hedyn<sup>10</sup>  
in a corner harde by the emperours oratory / when y<sup>e</sup>  
emperour had made his prayers, he rose and tornyd him 20  
to have gone into his oratory / and Huon who had great  
desyre to be the fyrst & <sup>11</sup>to haue the fyrst gyfte of the  
emperoure; he drewe out of his bage a rych stone / y<sup>e</sup>  
whiche was of suche vertue that who so euer dyd bere 24  
it hym coude not be ouer come with his enemye, nor  
coud not be drownyd nor brent<sup>12</sup>; the stone <sup>13</sup>was so  
vertuous<sup>13</sup> that none coude esteme the valure therof. And  
besyde that, it cast such a<sup>14</sup> clerenes in the chapell that 28  
the emperoure was abashid therof,<sup>15</sup> nor he knew not

The stone cast  
such a brightness  
in the chapel that

<sup>1</sup> there for.      <sup>2</sup> Fol. cxxxvii. back, col. 2.      <sup>3</sup> with him.  
<sup>4</sup> vnto.      <sup>5</sup> and Signories.      <sup>6</sup> armour.      <sup>7</sup> any thing.  
<sup>8</sup> Historie.      <sup>9</sup> and.      <sup>10</sup> closely.      <sup>11</sup> Fol. cxxxviii. col. 1.  
<sup>12</sup> burnt.      <sup>13-15</sup> had such great virtue.      <sup>14</sup> omitted.  
<sup>15</sup> therat.

- fro whence that lyght shulde come / then he behelde  
 Huon and Huon helde<sup>1</sup> the stone in his hande, and  
 shewyd it to<sup>2</sup> the emperour / and when the emperoure  
 4 saw the riche stone he greatly<sup>3</sup> dyd couet<sup>3</sup> it / and  
 auunsyd hymselfe and toke it<sup>4</sup> of the pylgrymes  
 hande / who presentyd it to<sup>2</sup> hym / when the emperour  
 had the stone in his hand, he had great ioy at his hart,  
 8 for he was cunnyng in the discryuyng of stones, and  
 sware to hymselfe that the pylgryme shulde neuer haue  
 it agayne for any thyng that he coude do / but he  
 thought<sup>5</sup> if he wold sell it, he wolde gyue hym as  
 12 moche golde & syluer as he coud resonably demaunde /  
 or elles be thought to kepe it styll what so euer fell  
 therof / <sup>6</sup>then the emperoure sayd to<sup>2</sup> Huon, 'pyl-  
 gryme, I pray the<sup>7</sup> shewe<sup>2</sup> me where <sup>8</sup>hast thou get<sup>8</sup>  
 16 this ryche<sup>9</sup> stone' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I haue brought  
 it fro beyonde y<sup>e</sup> see' / 'frend,' quod the emperour,  
 'wylt thou sel it, and I shall gyue the for it what so euer  
 thou wylt haue; and to be in<sup>10</sup> suertye to bere awaye  
 20 my gyfte that I wyll gyue thee for it, I shall cause the  
 to be conductyd into thyne owne countre wheresoeuer  
 it be' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I wyll gyue it<sup>2</sup> you with a  
 good hart: so it be trew that myne host hathe shewed<sup>2</sup>  
 24 me this daye / for he hathe shewed<sup>2</sup> me that your  
 costume is that y<sup>e</sup> fyrst parsone pylgryme that comethe  
 to<sup>2</sup> <sup>11</sup>you on<sup>12</sup> this day,<sup>13</sup> good friday, should haue of  
 you a gyfte such as he wolde demaund after that ye haue  
 28 made your praiers to our lorde god' / 'pylgryme,' quod  
 the emperoure, 'he that shewed the that said <sup>14</sup>trouth<sup>14</sup>  
 and therefore what so euer thou demaundeste other  
 boroughe towne or citey, or what thyng so euer it  
 32 be / I promyse to gyue the who so euer be dyspleasyd

the Emperor  
knew not whence  
the light came.

Huon showed the  
Emperor the  
stone,

and the Emperor,  
who was cunning  
in precious  
stones, desires to  
buy it of the  
pilgrim for gold  
and silver,

or even to keep it  
happen what  
might;

he asks Huon  
how he came  
by it.

Huon will give  
the stone to the  
Emperor if,  
according to his  
custom, he will  
grant the first  
pilgrim any  
request he may  
prefer.

This the Emperor  
agrees to do.

<sup>1</sup> did holde.    <sup>2</sup> vnto.    <sup>3-3</sup> desired to haue.    <sup>4</sup> out.

<sup>5</sup> within himself that.    <sup>6</sup> and.    <sup>7</sup> to.

<sup>8-8</sup> thou hast gotten.    <sup>9</sup> and bountifull.    <sup>10</sup> the more.

<sup>11</sup> Fol. cxxxviii. col. 2.    <sup>12</sup> vppon.    <sup>13</sup> being.

<sup>14-14</sup> that which is true.

Huon wants  
neither gold nor  
silver.

Whatever it be,  
the Emperor will  
hold by his  
promise.

Huon then  
demands pardon  
for the trespasses  
and ill deeds that  
he or his men  
have done against  
the Emperor;  
and that all men  
and women  
belonging to him  
shall be delivered  
to him;  
that all his towns,  
boroughs, and  
castles shall be  
rendered him.

therwith I graunt it<sup>1</sup> the / therfore demaund what<sup>2</sup>  
thou wylt' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'of your grace and  
fayre gyfte I<sup>3</sup> thanke you / therfore, syr, with a good  
hart, I do<sup>4</sup> gyue you that stone that I delyuerid to<sup>5</sup> 4  
you<sup>6</sup> right<sup>6</sup> now in the recompence of the courtoysy and  
gyfte that ye haue grauntid<sup>5</sup> me, the whiche shall be  
nother golde nor syluer, and, syr, bycause I know sar-  
tainly that the renome is ouer al the world that ye be<sup>7</sup> 8  
a iust and a trewe noble man, and that<sup>8</sup> ye promyse ye  
wyll vpholde and<sup>9</sup> neuer swarue fro your promys / and  
by cause<sup>10</sup> I knowe suerly that the promys that ye haue  
made<sup>5</sup> me, ye wyll vpholde of what so euer gyfte I 12  
desyre to have' / 'frende,' quod the emperour, 'I wyll<sup>10</sup>  
you<sup>11</sup> know that yf ye demaund .iiii. of my best cityes,  
I shall gyue you them syn<sup>12</sup> I haue made<sup>10</sup> promys, and<sup>13</sup>  
god be pleasyd I shal not go fro<sup>14</sup> my promyse / for I 16  
had rather<sup>10</sup> one of my handys were cut of then I shulde  
be found false of my wordys / & therfore demaunde  
and suerly ye shall haue your demaund withe out any  
refuse.'<sup>15</sup> 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I<sup>16</sup> thanke you' / and 20  
wolde haue kyssyd his feete / but the emperour wolde not  
suffer hym, but toke hym vp / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'fyrste,  
before all other thynges, I desyre of you pardon / of all  
the yll dedis and trespasses that I or my men haue 24  
done agaynst you; and yf ye haue in your preson other  
men or women partaynyng to<sup>5</sup> me or of<sup>17</sup> my lynage  
that ye wyll delyuer them all to<sup>5</sup> me; and also yf ye  
haue any thyng of myne other towne<sup>18</sup> / borowe / or 28  
castell / I requyre you by y<sup>e</sup> promyse that ye haue  
made<sup>5</sup> me to render them to<sup>5</sup> me quyte / syr, any  
other thyng I demaunde not.' / 'pylgrym,' quod the  
emperour, 'make no dought to haue that<sup>8</sup> I haue 32

<sup>1</sup> to.      <sup>2</sup> so euer.      <sup>3</sup> most hartely.      <sup>4</sup> omitted.

<sup>5</sup> vnto.      <sup>6-6</sup> but euen.      <sup>7</sup> are.      <sup>8</sup> which.

<sup>9</sup> kepe and.      <sup>10</sup> that.      <sup>11</sup> well.      <sup>12</sup> seeing.      <sup>13</sup> if.

<sup>14</sup> for *in text*.      <sup>15</sup> deniall.      <sup>16</sup> hartely.

<sup>17</sup> Fol. cxxxviii. back, col. 1.      <sup>18</sup> or Citie.



promysyd<sup>1</sup> / therfore I graunt al your desyre / but I  
 requyre you humbly<sup>2</sup> shew<sup>3</sup> me what man ye be, & of  
 what countre, and of what lynage, syn<sup>4</sup> ye haue desyred  
 4 of me suche a gyfte' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I am he that  
 sumtyme was duke of Burdeaux, whome ye haue so  
 moche hated, I come nowe fro beyonde the se, wheras  
 I haue endurid moche payne and pouerte. I thanke  
 8 our lorde Iesu Chryst that I haue done so moch that I  
 am nowe agreyd with you, and I shall haue agayne the  
 duches Esclaramonde, my<sup>5</sup> wyfe and my men and<sup>6</sup>  
 landes<sup>7</sup> yf ye wyll<sup>8</sup> holde<sup>8</sup> your promyse' / when the  
 12 Emperoure<sup>9</sup> vnderstode Huon / all his blode began to  
 change and<sup>10</sup> was a great space or<sup>11</sup> he spake any worde,  
 he was so<sup>12</sup> abashed,<sup>13</sup> at<sup>14</sup> laste he sayde, 'A, Huon,  
 ar you he by whome I haue sufferyd so many yllys and  
 16 domages, and haue slayne so many of my nephues and  
 other of my men / I wolde not haue thought that ye  
 wolde haue ben so hardy to haue shewed your selfe  
 before me, nor to haue com into my presence, ye haue  
 20 well ouercome me and enchaunted me; I had rather  
 haue lost .iiii. of my best cityes, ye and all my countre  
 brent<sup>15</sup> and destroyed / ye<sup>16</sup> and my selfe banysshyd out  
 of myn owne countre for .iii. yere rather than ye shuld  
 24 haue thus come to my presence / but syn<sup>4</sup> it is thus  
 knowe for trouthe that<sup>17</sup> I haue promysyd<sup>3</sup> you I shall  
 vpholde<sup>18</sup> / and fro hence forthe in the honoure of the  
 passyon of<sup>19</sup> our lorde Iesu Chryst, and of this good  
 28 daye on the whiche he was cruefyed & put to dethe.  
 I pardon you all myne yll wyll and good wyll, I shall  
 not be pariurid, your wyfe and your londis,<sup>7</sup> & your  
 men; I shall render them into your handes / speke

The Emperor  
 then asks what  
 man this pilgrim  
 is.

The pilgrim is  
 none other than  
 the Duke of  
 Bordeaux,

who thanks our  
 Lord that he will  
 haue again his  
 wife, and his men,  
 and his lands.

The Emperor is  
 abashed, and

wonders at  
 Huon's boldness  
 in thus coming  
 into his presence.

The Emperor  
 must, however,  
 abide by his  
 word,

and will render  
 Huon those who  
 belong to him.

<sup>1</sup> vnto you.    <sup>2</sup> to.    <sup>3</sup> vnto.    <sup>4</sup> seeing.    <sup>5</sup> louing.

<sup>6</sup> my.    <sup>7</sup> and Signiories.

<sup>8-8</sup> be as good as your word and vphold.

<sup>9</sup> had well heard and.    <sup>10</sup> hee.    <sup>11</sup> before.    <sup>12</sup> sore.

<sup>13</sup> but.    <sup>14</sup> the.    <sup>15</sup> burnt.    <sup>16</sup> omitted.    <sup>17</sup> which.

<sup>18</sup> and keepe.    <sup>19</sup> Fol. cxxxviii. back, col. 2.

Huon thanks  
him, and desires  
to be forgiven.

The Emperor  
kissed Huon  
in token of  
peace.

The Emperor  
shall have a  
double reward.

He asks of Huon  
his adventures.

Huon will relate  
them after the  
divine service has  
been read.

The Emperor  
led Huon with  
him into the  
oratory,

and all the lords  
marvel who the  
pilgrim can be  
to whom the  
Emperor does so  
much honour.

The Emperor and  
Huon dine  
together,

and afterwards  
Huon relates his  
adventures:

how he had  
spoken with  
Judas;

therof who lyste / otherwyse shall it not be, nor I wyl  
neuer do the contrary' / then Huon knelyd downe  
before the emperour and<sup>1</sup> thanked hym, and desyred  
hym to forgeue hym all his trespasses / 'Huon,' quod 4  
the emperoure, 'god forgeue you,<sup>2</sup> and as for me, with a  
good harte, I do pardon you' / then the emperoure toke  
Huon by the hande and toke hym vp and kyste hym  
<sup>3</sup>on the mouth<sup>3</sup> in token of good peas and amyte / 'syr,' 8  
quod Houn, 'great grace haue I found in you synne<sup>4</sup>  
ye kepe<sup>5</sup> your promyse / but, syr, if it maye please our  
lorde god / your guerdon shall be double' / 'Huon,'  
quod y<sup>e</sup> emperour, 'I requyre you<sup>6</sup> shewe me of your 12  
newes and aduentures that ye haue had'<sup>7</sup> / 'syr,' quod  
Huon with a good wyll, 'after that your deuyne ser-  
uyce be<sup>8</sup> done, and the passyon of our lorde Iesu  
Chryste red' / 'Huon,' quod the emperour, 'I <sup>9</sup>can 16  
you thanke<sup>9</sup> for that you saye' / then the emperour /  
toke Huon by the hand and led hym into his oratory  
with him / wheras they harde the deuyne seruyce  
wherof many lordes and knyghtes<sup>10</sup> were sore abashed, 20  
and hade<sup>11</sup> maruayle what pylgreme it was *that* y<sup>e</sup>  
emperoure dyd so moche honoure vnto. After that the  
deuine seruyce was done, the emperour retourned into  
his paleis holdyng Huon by the hande / the dyner 24  
was made redy,<sup>12</sup> they wasshed theyr handes and sate  
downe to dyner / and when dyner was done and the  
tables taken up, then in the emperours presence and  
in<sup>13</sup> all the<sup>14</sup> lordes there, Huon shewed all his 28  
<sup>15</sup>adventures.

¶ Fyrste he shewed howe he had passed the Goulfe  
and spoken with Iudas / and after<sup>16</sup> howe by fortune

<sup>1</sup> right humbly.      <sup>2</sup> thee.      <sup>3-3</sup> verie kindly.

<sup>4</sup> seeing.      <sup>5</sup> and vpholde.      <sup>6</sup> to.

<sup>7</sup> since you departed from the Citie of Bordeaux.      <sup>8</sup> is.

<sup>9-9</sup> giue you good thanks.      <sup>10</sup> and Lordes.      <sup>11</sup> great.

<sup>12</sup> and.      <sup>13</sup> of.      <sup>14</sup> other.      <sup>15</sup> Fol. cxxxix. col. 1.

<sup>16</sup> afterward.

- of the se he aryued at the castell of the Adamante,  
 and howe his company dyed there for<sup>1</sup> famyne: and  
 shewed<sup>2</sup> of the beaute of that<sup>3</sup> castell and of the great  
 4 ryches therin / and after<sup>4</sup> how he was borne<sup>5</sup> thence  
 by a gryffon to a great rocke, and howe he slewe .v.  
 yonge Gryffons and the olde Gryffon *that* brought hym  
 thether, wherof he hathe left at Cluny the fote of the  
 8 same / then he shewed of the fountayne and of the  
 tree of youth, and how he gathered therof three fayre  
 apples, and more he wolde naue gathered but that our  
 lord god commaunded hym by his aungel *that* he shuld  
 12 not be so hardy<sup>6</sup> to gatlier any more, and after that he  
 shewed how<sup>7</sup> he had passed the Goulfe of perse in  
 great parell<sup>8</sup> / and sayd, furthermore, 'syr, when I was  
 passed that Goulfe I gathered many precious stones;  
 16 that<sup>9</sup> I haue geuen you was one of them, the whiche  
 stone is of great vertue / <sup>10</sup>then I came to the great  
 city of Thauris in Perse, whereas I founde a noble  
 admirall, an olde auncyent knyght; and he shewed<sup>11</sup>  
 20 me great courtoyses, and I gaue him one of myne apples  
 to ete; and as sone as he had eten therof he became<sup>12</sup>  
 as yong as he was when he was but of .xxx. yere of age /  
 and I thynke<sup>7</sup> fro thens hether can not be founde a  
 24 fayrer prynce; and he was before of a<sup>13</sup> .vi. score and  
 .vii. yeres of age / and, syr, because I desyre withe all  
 my harte to haue youre good grace, and that good peas  
 and ferme maye be had betwene you and me, I wyll  
 28 gyue you the thyrde apple y<sup>e</sup> which <sup>14</sup>I kepte for my  
 selfe, by the whiche yf ye do ete it ye shall become  
 agayn as yong and as lusty<sup>15</sup> as ye were when ye were<sup>16</sup>  
 of the age of .xxx. yerys.' The emperoure when he  
 harde that the apple that Huon wolde geue hym to eate

how he had  
visited the rich  
and beautiful  
castle of  
Adamant;

how he had slain  
the griffins,

and brought to  
Cluny the foot  
of the old griffin;

how he gathered  
three apples of  
the tree of youth;

how he passed  
the Persian Gulf,  
and gathered  
there many  
precious stones;

how the admiral  
of Persia became  
young again by  
eating of one of  
the apples.

Huon will give  
the third apple  
to the Emperor.

<sup>1</sup> by.    <sup>2</sup> declared.    <sup>3</sup> the.    <sup>4</sup> afterward.

<sup>5</sup> caried from.    <sup>6</sup> as.    <sup>7</sup> that.    <sup>8</sup> and daunger.

<sup>9</sup> which.    <sup>10</sup> and.    <sup>11</sup> to.    <sup>12</sup> to be.    <sup>13</sup> omitted.

<sup>14</sup> Fol. cxxxix. col. 2.    <sup>15</sup> and as stronge.

<sup>16</sup> but.

The Emperor is  
joyful at the  
thought he will  
be young once  
more,

and offers Huon  
two good cities  
and 60,000 men to  
aid him in war.

The Emperor  
eats the apple,

and becomes at  
once as ruddy and  
strong as a man  
of thirty years.

All present  
marvel greatly,

and tell the  
Emperor he  
should praise God,  
that he ever was  
acquainted with  
duke Huon.

shulde cause hym to retourne to his yonge age agayne /  
he was so ioyful that he neuer made suche chere before  
in all his lyfe to any man as he dyd then to<sup>1</sup> Huon /  
and sayde howe<sup>2</sup> he wolde be his frend for euer, and 4  
neuer fayle hym, and sayd, ' frend, I abandon my body  
and my<sup>3</sup> goodes at your pleasure / and I geue you two  
good cities to encrease your synngorye / and besyde that  
I promyse you if ye haue any busynes to do, I shall 8  
socoure you with .lx.<sup>4</sup> thousande men, and shall ayde  
you as y<sup>e</sup> father shulde do the sone. Therwith Huon  
wolde haue kneled downe to haue thanked the emperour,  
but he wolde not suffer hym : <sup>5</sup>then Huon toke the apple 12  
out of his bage and delyuered it to<sup>1</sup> the emperoure, the  
emperoure who was sore desyrous to knowe yf he shuld  
waxe yorg agayne by reason of etinge of the apple ; he  
callyd to<sup>1</sup> hym his lordes<sup>6</sup> to the entent<sup>2</sup> they shulde 16  
se that maruayle / <sup>5</sup>when the emperour had the apple  
in his hand he put it<sup>7</sup> to his mouthe and dyd eat it  
euery dele,<sup>8</sup> and as he was etynge therof his age  
chaunged in to youthe, and by that tyme he had eten 20  
all the apple / his whyght berde fell of and the skynne  
chaungyd lyke a man of .xxx. yeres of age / and also  
his face and all his body that before was all ryuyled<sup>9</sup>  
and rugged and pale, became then as whyght and<sup>10</sup> 24  
ruddy, and felte hymselfe as lyght and fresshe & as  
quycke to do any thyng, and as stronge as he was  
when he was of the age of .xxx. yeres / wherof all that  
were<sup>11</sup> present had <sup>12</sup>great maruayle and were<sup>13</sup> ioyful of 28  
that aduenture that was fallen to<sup>1</sup> the emperoure whom  
they louyd / then they sayd, ' a,<sup>3</sup> syr, suche a gyfte was  
neuer geuen to any emperoure or kynge / well ye ought  
to praise our lord god, what so euer losse y[e]<sup>14</sup> haue 32  
had / that euer ye were aquaynted with duke Huon.'

<sup>1</sup> vnto.    <sup>2</sup> that.    <sup>3</sup> omitted.    <sup>4</sup> fortie.    <sup>5</sup> and.  
<sup>6</sup> and Barons.    <sup>7</sup> in.    <sup>8</sup> whit.    <sup>9</sup> wrinkled.    <sup>10</sup> as.    <sup>11</sup> there.  
<sup>12</sup> Fol. cxxxix. back, col. 1.    <sup>13</sup> right.    <sup>14</sup> yt in text.

¶ How the emperour made good cher to<sup>1</sup>  
<sup>2</sup>Huon of Burdeaux. Ca. C.xl[= cl.]



Hen the emperour saw hymselfe waxe  
 yonge agayne, he was so ioyfull that he  
 wyste not what to do; then he clyppyd  
 and kyssed huon more then .x. tymes,  
 sayenge, 'my ryghte dere frende, I

In great joy,  
 the Emperor  
 embraces Huon,

8 praye you<sup>3</sup> forgeue me all the ylles<sup>4</sup> that I haue done<sup>1</sup>  
 you, and for the sorowe and payne<sup>5</sup> that I haue caused  
 your noble wyfe and men to suffer' / then the emperoure  
 called to<sup>1</sup> hym two of his lordes, and sayd / 'syr, I

and asks him to  
 forgive the ills  
 he has done him.

12 wyll that all the pouer people that be in my chapell  
 this day be newly aparayled, and to haue mete and  
 drynke suffycient, for the loue of the passyon of our  
 lorde Iesu chryst, who this day hath done me that grace

All the poor are  
 to be clothed and  
 fed by the  
 Emperor's  
 bounty.

16 that I am retourned fro age to youthe.' 'syr,' quod they,  
 'your commaundement shall be done' / <sup>6</sup>they went  
 & executed his pleasure. Then Duke Huon aprochyd  
 to<sup>1</sup> the emperoure, and sayd, 'syr, I desyre humbly

Two lords  
 execute the  
 command.

20 your grace to delyuer my wyfe<sup>7</sup> and my men out of  
 preson.' 'syr,' quod the emperoure, 'it is good reason  
 that I do it' / then he sente for the gayler who had the  
 lady and the other presoners in his kepynge, and com-

Huon humbly  
 desires that his  
 wife and men be  
 delivered out of  
 prison.

24 maunded hym that the lady Esclaramond & the other  
 presoners shuld be brought into the hall / the gayler  
 went to the pre<sup>8</sup>son, & Huon with hym / <sup>9</sup>when they  
 came thether / Huon wente to the dore & cryed out

Huon goes with  
 the gaoler to the  
 prison door,

28 aloude, and sayd, 'A, my ryght swete syster, I byleue  
 ye<sup>10</sup> haue bene here<sup>11</sup> but yl loged; I haue great fere that  
 by reason of y<sup>e</sup> paynes that ye haue endurid ye can not  
 long contynue / sartaynely yf ye dye I shal neuer haue

and cries aloud  
 his fear that the  
 lady cannot  
 endure her  
 sufferings much  
 longer.

<sup>1</sup> vnto. <sup>2</sup> Duke. <sup>3</sup> to. <sup>4</sup> and dammages.

<sup>5</sup> paine before sorowe. <sup>6</sup> then. <sup>7</sup> Escleremond.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. cxxxix. back, col. 2. <sup>9</sup> and. <sup>10</sup> that.

<sup>11</sup> here after lodged.



The lady Esclaramonde thought she had heard that voice before, and when she recognized it as Huon's, she fainted for very joy.

When she revived she cried out that she had been so long left alone in pain and misery.

Huon's sorrow at hearing these words was so great that he could only weep.

The gaoler brought up Esclaramonde.

Huon and she embrace each other, and fall down in a trance;

the lords revive them,

ioy.<sup>1</sup> when the lady<sup>2</sup> Esclaramond<sup>3</sup> hard the voice of hym that spake at the dore / she stode styl and studyed what voyce it myght be: for she thought<sup>4</sup> she had hard *that* voyce before<sup>5</sup> / & when she had mused a 4 lytell,<sup>6</sup> she thought it shulde be the voyce of Huon her husbond: wherof she had suche ioi & myrth at her hart, *that* of a great season she coude not speke, but fell in a swoune in the preson: & when she reuyued & 8 came agayne to herselfe, she cryed out & said, 'a, my<sup>7</sup> dere lorde and husband, long haue you lefte me in payne & mysery all a lone in this stynkyng & horrible preson, in the handes of them that loue you nothyng / 12 and haue sufferyd moche payne, colde, and hunger; and<sup>8</sup> great pouerte and in great fere of dethe.'<sup>9</sup> ¶ when Huon<sup>10</sup> harde<sup>11</sup> his dere wyfe<sup>12</sup> speke<sup>12</sup> so petuouly / sorow<sup>13</sup> so closid his hart that he had no power 16 to speke one word, and the teres fell<sup>14</sup> in his eyen<sup>15</sup> for<sup>16</sup> petye *that* he had of his<sup>17</sup> wyfe<sup>18</sup> / also y<sup>e</sup> gayler for very petye<sup>19</sup> was constrayned to wepe / and so went downe into y<sup>e</sup> preson & brought the lady vp / and 20 then Huon and she beheld eche other, and coude speke no worde of a great season: <sup>20</sup> but ran and embraced and kyssed eche other / & so fell downe<sup>21</sup> bothe in a traunce / and so<sup>22</sup> laye tyll<sup>23</sup> other knyghtes came thether <sup>24</sup>& <sup>24</sup>ferid<sup>24</sup> that they had bene ded; there was none but *that* wepte for petye / then the emperour cam thether hymselfe, and sore wepte and repented hym selfe of the ylles that he had <sup>25</sup>caused<sup>26</sup> the lady<sup>27</sup> to suffer: <sup>28</sup>then <sup>28</sup>the<sup>29</sup> lordes reuyued them / then they clyppyd & kyssyd

<sup>1</sup> at my heart.

<sup>2</sup> Duchesse.

<sup>3</sup> had well.

<sup>4</sup> within herself that.

<sup>5</sup> that time.

<sup>6</sup> while.

<sup>7</sup> right.

<sup>8</sup> haue endured.

<sup>9</sup> and desperation.

<sup>10</sup> had well.

<sup>11</sup> and vnderstood.

<sup>12</sup> who spake.

<sup>13</sup> and greefe.

<sup>14</sup> from.

<sup>15</sup> and trickled downe his cheekes.

<sup>16</sup> the.

<sup>17</sup> louing.

<sup>18</sup> Escleremond and.

<sup>19</sup> that he had.

<sup>20</sup> space.

<sup>21</sup> to the ground.

<sup>22</sup> they.

<sup>23</sup> vntill.

<sup>24-24</sup> fearing.

<sup>25</sup> Fol. clx. (xl.) col. 1.

<sup>26</sup> done to.

<sup>27</sup> and made her.

<sup>28</sup> and.

<sup>29</sup> knyghtes and.

together / and Huon sayd / 'fayre lady, I requyre you<sup>1</sup> and Huon asks  
pardon me<sup>2</sup> that I haue taryed so longe fro you, & his wife's pardon  
haue lefte you in suche pouerte / payne / & parell<sup>3</sup> of for having tarried  
4 deth. I<sup>4</sup> haue scapyd,<sup>5</sup> the which I<sup>6</sup> thanke<sup>7</sup> god so long from her.  
of his grace' / 'syr,' quod she, 'we ought greatly to  
thanke<sup>8</sup> god, when he hathe sente vs that grace to se  
eche other & to come together<sup>9</sup> / and that y<sup>e</sup> haue  
8 peas with y<sup>e</sup> emperour' / then the gayler went to all y<sup>e</sup> The gaoler  
presons, and toke out al Huons men, and brought them releases all  
to<sup>10</sup> hym, who had great ioye when they saw theyr Huon's men,  
lorde and mayster in sauegarde, and thankyd our lord who reioice  
12 god, and humblye saluted Huon, and sayd / 'a,<sup>11</sup> syr, greatly to see  
blessed be the oure of your comynge, wherby we ar him.  
delyuered fro the paynes, trauayles / and pouertes /  
that we haue bene in.' 'My ryght dere frendes,' quod  
16 Huon / 'thus goeth the worlde ; you and I ar bound to  
thanke<sup>7</sup> god of that he sendeth to<sup>10</sup> vs' / then the em-  
perour toke Huon by the one hande and Esclaramond  
by the other, and led them into his palays, where as  
20 the tables were sette / and there sate downe to gether The Emperor sits  
the emperour and Huon and the duches / and al the down to table  
presoners at another table / and were all rychly seruyd / with Huon and  
of theyr metys and seruyces & ioye that they made, I the duchess ;  
24 wyll make therof but small rehersayle. And when the prisoners are  
they had al dyned, the emperour ordayned ladyes & at another table,  
damoysselles to serue the duches Esclaramond, and and all are richly  
ordayned chaumbers for y<sup>e</sup> duke and for<sup>11</sup> her, & for all served.  
28 the other / they were<sup>12</sup> sarued of all thynges *that* they Chambers are  
desyred / and they had newe aparayle acordynge to theyr prepared for them  
desgres / anone y<sup>e</sup> newes<sup>13</sup> was knowen in the citey of all,  
the peas<sup>14</sup> betwene Huon and the emperour, & how<sup>15</sup> he and the news of  
32 had his wyfe<sup>16</sup> renderyd to<sup>10</sup> hym, & his men delyuered the peace between  
the Emperor and  
Huon is spread  
through the city.

<sup>1</sup> to.    <sup>2</sup> in.    <sup>3</sup> daunger.    <sup>4</sup> and.    <sup>5</sup> for.  
<sup>6</sup> humbly.    <sup>7</sup> our Lord.    <sup>8</sup> almightie.    <sup>9</sup> againe.  
<sup>10</sup> vnto.    <sup>11</sup> omitted.    <sup>12</sup> there.    <sup>13</sup> and tidinges.  
<sup>14</sup> made.    <sup>15</sup> Fol. clx. (xl). col. 2.  
<sup>16</sup> the Duchess Escleremond.

Barnard hastens  
to the palace.

The lady knew  
him at once.  
She owes him  
great love that he  
has sought her  
lord and brought  
him hither.

Barnard tells of  
Huon's sufferings.

At the end of  
eight days, the  
Emperor an-  
nounces his  
intention of  
conducting duke  
Huon and the  
duchess to  
Bordeaux to set  
them in posses-  
sion of their  
lands.  
Ten thousand  
men are to  
accompany him.

They depart from  
Mayence, and  
reach Cluny.

The abbot, having  
heard no news of  
Huon, had

out of preson / wherof Barnard, as he was in y<sup>e</sup> towne  
harkenynge for newes, was ryght ioyfull / & wente in  
hast to<sup>1</sup> the palays, wheras he found Huon in his  
chambre, with his wyfe y<sup>e</sup> fayre Esclaramond / <sup>2</sup>as sone 4  
as he saw the duches, the water fell fro his eyen for ioy ;  
then he saluted Huon and the duches / <sup>2</sup>y<sup>e</sup> lady knew  
hym incontynent, and sayde / 'a, syr Barnard, wel I  
ought to loue and to cherysshe you / that ye haue so 8  
sought for my lorde and husbonde as <sup>3</sup>to bryng<sup>3</sup> hym  
hether.' 'Madame,' quod he, 'I haue done no thyng  
but that<sup>4</sup> I was bounde<sup>5</sup> to do / <sup>6</sup>great payne &  
trauayle<sup>7</sup> my lorde hath suffered' / <sup>2</sup>then he shewed 12  
suche newes as he knewe, wherof many great lordes  
and knyghtes had great ioy to here hym for the mer-  
uaylles that he shewed<sup>8</sup> / Thus,<sup>9</sup> when they had bene  
there the space of .viii. dayes, and that theyr men were 16  
well refreshed / then<sup>10</sup> the emperour assembelyd<sup>11</sup> his  
lordes, and sayd / 'syr, it is my wyll to lede and con-  
ducte duke Huon & the duches to Burdeaux, to set  
them in possessyon of theyr londes and sygnoryes. <sup>2</sup>I 20  
wyl haue .x. M. men to go with me and them, and to  
brynge me agayne hether to Magence: acordynge to  
his commaundement the men were made redy / & when  
the emperour had ordeyned for Huons estate as it 24  
aparteyned for hym & his wyfe & his men, & when  
euery thyng was redy, they<sup>11</sup> mounted on<sup>12</sup> theyr horses,  
& the duches had a ryche lytter / then<sup>13</sup> they departed  
fro<sup>14</sup> Magence / & secyd not tyll they came within .ii. 28  
leges of the abbey of Cluny / the good abbot, who knew  
nothyng of the agrement betwene the emperour & Huon,  
had gathered together of men of warre a<sup>15</sup> .xx. M., &

<sup>1</sup> vnto.      <sup>2</sup> and.

<sup>3-3</sup> that now at last through your tedious trauaile you haue  
found him, and brought.

<sup>4</sup> what.      <sup>5</sup> in duty.      <sup>6</sup> I am sorry for the.      <sup>7</sup> that.

<sup>8</sup> discoursed vnto them.      <sup>9</sup> Then.      <sup>10</sup> omitted.

<sup>11</sup> all.      <sup>12</sup> vpon.      <sup>13</sup> so.      <sup>14</sup> the Citie of.      <sup>15</sup> about.


they were logyd in <sup>1</sup>the toune of Cluny; and the abbot was aduertysed of the emperours comynge into those partyes, and he hard no newes of Huon, wherof he  
 4 was <sup>2</sup>sorowfull <sup>3</sup>/ & thought that the emperoure had taken Huon presoner: then he issued out of the towne, and renged his men in good order of batayle without the town in a fayre playne, there abydyng for y<sup>e</sup>  
 8 emperoure, whome he sawe comynge.

gathered 20,000 men of war, who are lodged in the town of Cluny.

When he saw the Emperor coming, the abbot ranged his men in order of battle, and awaited the Emperor.

¶ How the emperour aryuyde at Cluny, and how the abbot set on <sup>4</sup>hym / and of y<sup>e</sup> pease that was ther made, and how the  
 12 emperour conueyed Huon to Burdeaux, & renderyd to hym al his londys, and of the partynge of <sup>5</sup>the emperour, and how Huon made his prouysion to go to kyng oberon.

16 Ca. cli.

 Hen the emperour saw the town of Cluny, he demaunded of Huon <sup>6</sup>to whome partayned that towne / 'syr,'  
 20 quod he, 'it <sup>7</sup>is belonginge <sup>7</sup>to an vncl of myne, who is abbot there, <sup>8</sup>& we must pas that waye, and also I must nedes speke with hym or <sup>9</sup>I go to Burdeaux' / the same tyme the  
 24 abbot, who was <sup>10</sup>on a pusaunte <sup>11</sup>courser well armed at all peeces, <sup>12</sup>sawe the emperoure comynge towardes Cluny / <sup>13</sup>then he sayd to his men, 'syrs, thynke this day to do wel <sup>14</sup>/ for yonder before vs we may se y<sup>e</sup>  
 28 emperoure our enemye comynge, wherfore we cannot scape without batayle; I am sure he hath taken Huon

The Emperor demands of Huon, to whom belongs the town of Cluny.

It belongs to Huon's uncle, who is abbot there.

The abbot saw the Emperor coming,

and exhorts his men to do well.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. clx. (xl.) back, col. 1.      <sup>2</sup> right.

<sup>3</sup> and sore displeased.      <sup>4</sup> vpon.      <sup>5</sup> them and.

<sup>6</sup> if he could tell him.      <sup>7-7</sup> belongeth.      <sup>8</sup> of.

<sup>9</sup> before.      <sup>10</sup> then mounted.      <sup>11</sup> and strong.

<sup>12</sup> points.      <sup>13</sup> and.      <sup>14</sup> and valiantly.

The Emperor  
demands what is  
the meaning of  
the approach of  
these men of war.

Huon explains  
that the abbot  
does not know of  
the peace between  
the Emperor and  
Huon.

The abbot dashes  
in among the  
Emperor's men,  
and slays many  
of the Germans.

The Emperor, in  
a great rage,  
blamed Huon for  
these ill deeds.

Huon is sorry,  
and ready to  
make amends.

Huon rides to the  
abbot his uncle in  
great displeasure.

my nephue, but by the faythe that I owe to my lord<sup>1</sup>  
<sup>2</sup>saynte Benet, my patron / that takynge shalbe derely  
bought.' then they couched theyr speres and sporyd  
theyr horses, & com rynnynge towards the emperour; <sup>4</sup>  
and when the emperour saw them, he called Huon,  
and sayd / 'syr, yonder ye maye se men of warre  
all armed come rynnynge agaynst vs / I wote not what  
they thynke<sup>3</sup> to do / but they seme to be oure enemyes <sup>8</sup>  
as far as I can parseyue / <sup>4</sup>they be a great nombre,<sup>5</sup>  
they are to be doughted and feryd' / 'syr,' quod Huon,  
'it is myne vncle the abbot of Cluny, who hath reysed  
vp his men to socoure me / for he is not aduerteysed of <sup>12</sup>  
the peas made betwene you and me, <sup>6</sup>he thynkethe<sup>7</sup>  
ye haue taken me presoner.' <sup>4</sup>therwith the abbot  
dasshed in among the emperours company, and the  
fyrst that he mette he ran hym clene thrughe with his <sup>16</sup>  
spere / and so he seruid the second, thyrd, and  
fourth / and when his spere was broken, he drewe out  
his sworde / wherwith he bet downe the Almaynes,  
that it was maruayle to behold hym / and then came in <sup>20</sup>  
his men / and they dyd suche dedys of armes that  
parforce the almayns were fayne to recule,<sup>8</sup> & many  
were slayne<sup>9</sup> and cast<sup>10</sup> to the erthe. when y<sup>e</sup> emperour  
saw that he was in a <sup>11</sup>great rage, and sayd to <sup>12</sup>Huon / <sup>24</sup>  
'syr, ye are greatly to blame to suffer your vncles men  
to sle myne' / 'syr,' quod Huon, 'I am ryght sory  
of <sup>13</sup>that they haue done / I am redy to make you  
amendes in what <sup>14</sup>wyse<sup>14</sup> it shall please you': ther- <sup>28</sup>  
with duke Huon rode to <sup>12</sup>the<sup>15</sup> abbot his vncle / and  
in great dyspleasure sayd, 'vncle, ye haue done <sup>16</sup>ryght  
yll.'<sup>16</sup> when the abbot<sup>17</sup> parseyued Huon, he was ryght  
ioyous<sup>18</sup> / and he enbrasid hym and sayd / 'fayre <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> and to.      <sup>2</sup> Fol. clx. (xl.) back, col. 2.      <sup>3</sup> meane.

<sup>4</sup> and.      <sup>5</sup> and therefore.      <sup>6</sup> surely.      <sup>7</sup> that.

<sup>8</sup> retire backe.      <sup>9</sup> and destroyed.      <sup>10</sup> downe.

<sup>11</sup> omitted.      <sup>12</sup> vnto.      <sup>13</sup> for.      <sup>14-14</sup> so euer.

<sup>15</sup> good.      <sup>16-16</sup> great euill and      <sup>17</sup> saw &.      <sup>18</sup> ioyfull.



nephue, I thought<sup>1</sup> the emperour had taken you  
 presoner, & wold haue put you to deth / I knew not  
*that* ye had peas with <sup>2</sup>hym.' then he made his men  
 4 to retraye<sup>3</sup> backe fro the almayns; <sup>4</sup>then he and Huon  
 together come to<sup>5</sup> the emperour; then<sup>4</sup> the abbot  
 saluted hym, and sayde / 'syr, I pray you<sup>6</sup> pardon me  
 in that I haue thus come agaynst you / for sartaynly I  
 8 had thought ye wolde haue hanged & slayne my  
 nephue, duke Huon of Burdeaux, nor I knew not that  
 there was any peas betwene you / therefore, syr, I  
 requyre you pardon me / and I offer myselfe to make  
 12 to you a mendes at the deuyce<sup>7</sup> of your cunsayle' /  
 syr,' quod the emperour, 'I pardon you for the loue of<sup>8</sup>  
 luke Huon,<sup>9</sup> whom I take as<sup>10</sup> my<sup>11</sup> specyall frende.'  
 Thus as ye haue hard the peas was made betwene the  
 16 emperoure and the abbot of Cluny / Then they rode  
 together tyl<sup>12</sup> they came to<sup>5</sup> Cluny, where y<sup>e</sup> emperour  
 was receyuyd with great ioye / when the good abbot  
 had receyuyd the emperour and logyd hym in the  
 20 abbey, then he came to<sup>5</sup> y<sup>e</sup> duches Esclaramond,  
 and enbracid and kyssed her, and sayd, 'my ryght  
 dere nese, your comynge<sup>13</sup> hether is <sup>14</sup>to me greatly  
 agreeable,<sup>14</sup> well I am pleasid to se you hole and in good  
 24 poynt,<sup>15</sup> & I am sore dyspleased for the great ylles<sup>16</sup> and  
 pouertyes *that* ye haue endured, yf I myght a mended  
 it / but syn it is the wyll and pleasure of our lorde Iesu  
 chryst, bothe you and we all ought to be content,  
 28 blessed be his name' / 'fayre<sup>17</sup> vncle,' quod the duches /  
 'greatly we ought to thanke and to cherysshe you / for  
 ye haue bene father and refuge of my doughter Claryet,  
 whome I desyre greatly to se' / then y<sup>e</sup><sup>17</sup> abbot led the  
 32 duches<sup>18</sup> into the chambre wheras her doughter Claryet

The abbot  
 thought the  
 Emperor had  
 taken Huon  
 prisoner, and  
 seeing him alive  
 and safe,  
 the abbot with-  
 draws his men,  
 and he and Huon  
 go and salute the  
 Emperor.  
 The abbot asks  
 the Emperor to  
 pardon him,

and for love of  
 Huon the  
 Emperor does so.

The abbot  
 received the  
 Emperor with  
 much joy at  
 Cluny,

and welcomes  
 most joyfully  
 the duchess  
 Esclaramonde.

The duchess  
 greatly desires to  
 see her daughter,

<sup>1</sup> that.    <sup>2</sup> Fol. clxi. (xli.) col. 1.    <sup>3</sup> retire.    <sup>4</sup> and.

<sup>5</sup> vnto.    <sup>6</sup> to.    <sup>7</sup> aduice.    <sup>8</sup> that I beare vnto.

<sup>9</sup> of Bourdeaux.    <sup>10</sup> for.    <sup>11</sup> faithfull and.    <sup>12</sup> vntill.

<sup>13</sup> vnto me.    <sup>14-14</sup> greatly acceptable.    <sup>15</sup> health.

<sup>16</sup> euils.    <sup>17</sup> good.    <sup>18</sup> Escleremond.

and is indeed  
joyful to find her  
so beautiful and  
good.

They dine all  
together;

the duchess  
cannot take her  
eyes off Clariet.

Huon tells the  
duchess the  
Emperor desires  
to see Clariet.

The Emperor  
embraces her,  
and praises her  
beauty.

was, who came and knelyd led<sup>1</sup> downe before her  
mother / <sup>2</sup>when y<sup>e</sup> duches<sup>3</sup> saw her / it was no  
maruayle thoughe she was ioyfull at her harte, for  
when<sup>4</sup> she sawe her so fayre and so well endroctryned<sup>5</sup> / <sup>4</sup>  
ye may well thynke that her ioy excedyd all other /  
she enbraced and kyssid her more then .xx. tymis, and  
said, 'my dere doughter, synne I saw you laste, I haue  
endured great<sup>6</sup> myserie / but thankes be geuen to our <sup>8</sup>  
lorde Iesu chryst and to his swete mother / your father  
and I ar come together,<sup>7</sup> and haue peas withe the  
emperour' / then they went into the chambre wheras  
there dyner was aparayled<sup>8</sup> redy for them, and there <sup>12</sup>  
dyned together with great consolacyon, and all that  
dyner tyme the duches coude not cast her eyen fro y<sup>e</sup>  
regardynge of her doughter Claryet / for the great  
beauty that she saw<sup>9</sup> in her / and when they had <sup>16</sup>  
dyned, the lordes and knyghtes and squyers cam to se  
the ladyes as they were acustomed to do; and as they  
were there deuysynge,<sup>10</sup> Huon enteryd into the chambre,  
and <sup>11</sup>his vncl the abbot<sup>11</sup> with hym, and they said to<sup>12</sup> <sup>20</sup>  
the duches, <sup>13</sup>'lady, ye muste come to<sup>12</sup> the emperoure  
and brynge your doughter with you, for he desyrethe  
greatly to se her.' then the lady, who was redy to do  
her husbondes commaundement, whente into y<sup>e</sup> hall, <sup>24</sup>  
and her doughter with her, where as they founde  
the emperour, who receyuyd them with great ioye / and  
toke the young lady Claryet in his armes & kyssed her  
swetely, and sayd / 'my ryght dere doughter, your <sup>28</sup>  
comyng hether is to me ryght agreable<sup>14</sup> / god parforme  
in you that<sup>15</sup> fayleth;<sup>15</sup> as for beaulte ye fayle<sup>16</sup> not' /  
'Huon,' quod the emperoure, 'great graces<sup>17</sup> ye ought

<sup>1</sup> so in text.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> her mother.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. clxi. (xli.) col. 2.      <sup>5</sup> educated.      <sup>6</sup> pouertie and.

<sup>7</sup> in sauegard.      <sup>8</sup> prepared.      <sup>9</sup> and perceiued.

<sup>10</sup> together.      <sup>11-11</sup> the good abbot his vncl.      <sup>12</sup> vnto.

<sup>13</sup> Faire.      <sup>14</sup> acceptable.      <sup>15-15</sup> which wanteth.

<sup>16</sup> want.      <sup>17</sup> thanks.

to render to<sup>1</sup> our lorde Iesu chryst, that he is so  
 fryndely to<sup>1</sup> you as to sende you such a chyld as  
 this lady is here before me, for I thynke that of beauty  
 4 this day there is no lady nor damosel<sup>2</sup> leuing in this  
 world that may<sup>3</sup> compare with your<sup>4</sup> doughter' / 'syr,  
 quod Huon, 'I pray to<sup>5</sup> god to parfourme<sup>6</sup> that<sup>7</sup>  
 she wantethe' / great pleasure had the emperoure to  
 8 regarde<sup>8</sup> the damoyzell, and so had all other<sup>9</sup> that were  
 there present / thus as ye haue hard, the emperoure was  
 reseyued at Cluny / & was greatly feasted by y<sup>e</sup> abbote  
 there, for as sone as the emperoure was come thether,  
 12 the<sup>10</sup> abbot sente ouer all the cuntre for ladyes and  
 damosels to feste the emperoure / <sup>11</sup> there they were a<sup>12</sup>  
 .iii. dayes with great iustis and sportes / <sup>11</sup> when they  
 departed there was nother lady nor damoyssel but that  
 16 the emperoure gaue her some gyfte / the fourthe daye  
 after that the emperour had hard mas,<sup>13</sup> and his<sup>14</sup>  
 caryage redy, then he and duke Huon, and the duches  
 Esclaramonde and Claryet her doughter, departed fro  
 20 Cluny, & with them the good abbot who brought them  
 to<sup>15</sup> Burdeaux / for he louyd so moche<sup>16</sup> Huon and the  
 Duches and Claryet whome he had brought vp, that he  
 wolde not abandon them so sone; Huon sent barnard  
 24 before to<sup>17</sup> Burdeaux, syngnyfyenge<sup>1</sup> them of the city  
 of the emperours commyng and his, and of the peas  
 made betwene the emperour and hym / Barnard  
 departed and was wel receyuyd at Burdeaux; then he  
 28 assembelyd together all the burgesses of the citey, and  
 shewed<sup>1</sup> them of y<sup>e</sup> emperours comynge thether, and  
 withe hym duke Huon and the duches Esclaramond  
 and claryet theyr doughter, and of the peas that

The Emperor tells  
 Huon that he  
 ought to render  
 great graces to  
 our Lord Iesus  
 Christ for all his  
 goodness to him.

The abbot sends  
 all over the  
 country for ladies  
 and damsels to  
 entertain the  
 Emperor.  
 For three days  
 they have iousts  
 and sports,  
 and when they  
 depart the  
 Emperor gave  
 each lady some  
 gift.  
 On the fourth day  
 the Emperor and  
 Huon, Esclara-  
 monde and her  
 daughter, and the  
 good abbot set out  
 for Bordeaux.  
 Huon sends  
 Barnard on first  
 to warn the city  
 of their coming.

He is well  
 received, and  
 when he has told  
 his news to the  
 burgesses,

<sup>1</sup> vnto.<sup>2</sup> that is.<sup>3</sup> is able to.<sup>4</sup> Fol. clxi. (xli.) back, col. 1.<sup>5</sup> vnto our Lord.<sup>6</sup> in her.<sup>7</sup> which.<sup>8</sup> behold.<sup>9</sup> Lords, Ladies, and Damsels.<sup>10</sup> good.<sup>11</sup> and.<sup>12</sup> omitted.<sup>13</sup> Service.<sup>14</sup> baggage and.<sup>15</sup> vnto the Citie of.<sup>16</sup> well.<sup>17</sup> the citie of.

they send  
immediately to  
Blaye and  
Geronell, and over  
all the country of  
Burdelys;  
all the noblemen  
and burgesses  
hasten to  
Bordeaux to  
receive their  
Duke.  
They ride out on  
horseback to meet  
him;

they salute the  
Emperor,

who delivers to  
them their  
rightful lord,  
quit of fealties  
and homages.

They praise the  
Emperor for his  
justice to them  
while they were  
under him.

The Emperor is  
joyful to be so  
praised before  
Huon.

They all ride in  
state through the  
streets to the  
palace.

The streets are  
well adorn<sup>1</sup>,  
and in the  
windows are  
ladies and  
maidens singing  
melodiously.

was made betwene the emperour and<sup>1</sup> Huon / thes  
newes were sent incontynent to Blaye and Geronyll-  
and ouer all the countre of Burdeloys / <sup>2</sup> then all noble,  
men as well as burgesses came hastely to<sup>3</sup> Burdeaux for 4  
to receyue theyr ryghtfull lorde, duke Huon. <sup>2</sup> when  
they were there assemblid, they mun<sup>4</sup>ted on<sup>5</sup> theyr  
horses and rode forth to mete the emperour and duke  
Huon theyr naturall lorde / they were together a<sup>6</sup>.vi. 8  
thousande horses / when they aproched nere to<sup>3</sup> the  
emperoure, they saluted hym, to<sup>3</sup> whome the emperour  
sayd openly / 'al ye syrs, noble men & burgesses that  
hathe before this time made to<sup>3</sup> me feaulte and 12  
homage / I delyuer you quyte in to the handes of your  
ryght naturall lorde, as ye haue bene before tyme /  
and I quyte clerely your homages & feaulties done to<sup>3</sup>  
me' / then they all thanked the emperour of his good 16  
iustyce and reason that haue alwayes done to<sup>3</sup> them in  
the seson whyles they were vnder hym / the emperour  
was<sup>7</sup> ioyfull that they so praysed him before duke  
Huon; <sup>2</sup> then they cam to<sup>3</sup> duke Huon and to the 20  
duches<sup>8</sup> and to Claryet,<sup>9</sup> & dyd to<sup>3</sup> them theyr  
reuerence acordyng; thus they cam to<sup>3</sup> the citye of  
Burdeaux, wheras they were ioyfully receyued, & a  
clothe of estate was borne ouer<sup>10</sup> the emperour, vnder 24  
the which he rode, styl holdyng Huon by the hand,  
tyll<sup>11</sup> they came to<sup>3</sup> the paleys / the stretes were  
strawed with grene herbes and russhes, and hangyd  
rychely / the wyndowes garnyssed with ladyes and 28  
damoyseles, burgesses / and maydens, melodyously  
syngyng / wherof the emperoure was<sup>7</sup> ioyfull / the  
children rynnynge in the stretes<sup>2</sup> cryenge nowell<sup>12</sup>  
for<sup>13</sup> ioye<sup>14</sup> that they had of the comynge of theyr 32

<sup>1</sup> Duke. <sup>2</sup> and. <sup>3</sup> vnto.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. clxi. (xli.) back, col. 2. <sup>5</sup> vppon. <sup>6</sup> about.  
<sup>7</sup> right. <sup>8</sup> Escleremond his wife. <sup>9</sup> their Daughter.  
<sup>10</sup> before. <sup>11</sup> vntill. <sup>12</sup> noel, noel. <sup>13</sup> the great.

<sup>14</sup> and mirth.

- lorde & lady; when they were come to<sup>1</sup> the palays /  
 they alyghted and wente to theyr chaumbers redy  
 apoynted for them / yf I wolde reherse y<sup>e</sup> ioyes and  
 4 sportes and solemynytes that was made at<sup>2</sup> Burdeaux  
 it shulde be noyfull<sup>3</sup> and ouer longe to declare it / for  
 the feaste<sup>4</sup> was suche that no man as then leuyng had  
 sene any suche, the<sup>5</sup> which endured<sup>6</sup> .viii. dayes /  
 8 duringe the whiche tyme the emperoure declared to<sup>1</sup>  
 them of that countre the peas that was made betwene  
 hym and duke Huon, and howe he wolde delyuer  
 all his londes<sup>7</sup> in to his handes, and clerely aquyte  
 12 euery man of theyr feaulte & homage to hym made,  
 whereof euery man was ioyfull / & on<sup>8</sup> the .ix. daye  
 that the emperour shuld depart, he called duke Huon  
 to<sup>1</sup> hym, and sayd, 'my ryght dere frend, he that  
 16 I loue best in this worlde, if any warre or busynes  
 hap to fal to<sup>1</sup> you / let me haue knowlege therof /  
 and I shall send you .xl.M. men of armes and myselfe  
 in parson to come and<sup>9</sup> ayde<sup>10</sup> you' / 'syr,' quod Huon,  
 20 'of y<sup>e</sup> courtoyse that ye offer me, I<sup>11</sup> thanke you, and  
 alwayes I shal repute myselfe as your trewe seruant  
 & feythfull frend.' Then the emperour went to the  
 duches<sup>12</sup> and toke his leue of her, and of<sup>13</sup> Claryet her  
 24 doughter, and<sup>14</sup> kyssed them at his departyng, and so  
 he dyd all<sup>15</sup> other ladys and damoyssellis, and gaue  
 eche<sup>16</sup> of them some gyfte; he gaue ryche gyftes to<sup>1</sup>  
 the duches and to her doughter / <sup>17</sup>then he toke his  
 28 leue and mounted on<sup>8</sup> his horse, and so issued out of  
 the towne<sup>18</sup> / duke Huon & the<sup>19</sup> abbot of Cluny  
 conueyed hym a<sup>20</sup> .ii. leges, then they toke ther leue<sup>21</sup>

On reaching the  
palace they go to  
the chambers  
ready for them,

and for eight days  
there is such  
rejoicing as no  
man living had  
ever seen before.

On the ninth day  
the Emperor  
takes leave of  
Huon,

and promises to  
aid him in person  
with men of arms  
if ever Huon shall  
need him.

Huon thanks  
him, and will  
ever be his true  
servant and  
faithful friend.

The Emperor  
takes leave of the  
duchess and her  
daughter, and  
gives them rich  
gifts;  
to each of the  
other ladies he  
gives some gift.

Duke Huon and  
the abbot accom-  
pany him for two

<sup>1</sup> vnto.      <sup>2</sup> the noble Citie of.      <sup>3</sup> too tedious.

<sup>4</sup> and cheere.      <sup>5</sup> Fol. cxliii. (*should be cxlii.*) col. 1.

<sup>6</sup> for the space of.      <sup>7</sup> and Signiories.      <sup>8</sup> vppon,      <sup>9</sup> to.

<sup>10</sup> and succour.      <sup>11</sup> hartely.      <sup>12</sup> Escleremond.

<sup>13</sup> the faire Ladie.      <sup>14</sup> embraced and.      <sup>15</sup> the.

<sup>16</sup> euerie one.      <sup>17</sup> and.      <sup>18</sup> citie of Bourdeaux and.

<sup>19</sup> good.      <sup>20</sup> about.

<sup>21</sup> of the Emperour and of his Lords and Knightes.



leagues, and then  
return to  
Bordeaux.  
When he had  
sojourned there  
eight days, Huon  
visited all his  
towns and castles;  
he returned to  
Bordeaux, and  
remained there a  
month.

Huon reminds his  
wife how Oberon  
has given him  
all the realm of  
Fairyland, and  
made him promise  
after four years  
had passed to go  
to him, to be put  
in possession of  
the realm.

If Huon fail to  
go Oberon will  
utterly destroy  
him, and now,  
therefore, it is  
necessary for  
Huon to go.  
He leaves his  
wife in Barnard's  
care,  
and his daughter  
in that of the  
abbot.

Huon leaves with  
the abbot his  
riches and  
precious stones  
as dowry for his  
daughter.

and returned to<sup>1</sup> Burdeaux / then after that duke<sup>2</sup>  
Huon had sojourned there an<sup>3</sup> .viii. dayes, he rode to<sup>1</sup>  
Geronyl and to Blames, and to<sup>1</sup> all other townes and  
castelles, where he was receyuyd with great ioy,<sup>4</sup> and <sup>4</sup>  
set offycers in them / then he retourned agayne to<sup>5</sup>  
Burdeaux to the duches<sup>6</sup> his wyfe / & after that he  
taryed there<sup>3</sup> a monethe / duke Huon deuysed with his  
wyfe in the presence of the<sup>7</sup> abbot his vnclé, & of <sup>8</sup>  
Bernarde,<sup>8</sup> & sayd, 'my ryght dere wyfe, he that  
rememberethe not the goodnes<sup>9</sup> done to<sup>1</sup> hym, may be  
reputed as vncourtoys ;<sup>10</sup> I say it bycause ye know well  
that kyng Oberon hath done<sup>1</sup> vs great good, & hath <sup>12</sup>  
delyueryd vs out of many great parelles of deth, and as  
ye sawe but late by the .ii. knyghtes that rescued you  
fro the dethe and fro the parell<sup>11</sup> that ye were in / and  
ye knowe well<sup>12</sup> the last tyme that kyng Oberon <sup>16</sup>  
went<sup>13</sup> fro Burdeaux, he gaue me all his realme of the  
Fayry / & the pusaunce that he hath there / and he  
made me to promyse<sup>14</sup> that after that .iiii. yeres were  
passed that I shulde come to<sup>1</sup> hym, and *that* he wolde <sup>20</sup>  
then put me in pocessyon of his realme / and he sayd  
that yf I fayled my day he wolde vterly dystroy me /  
ye know<sup>15</sup> what hath fallen to<sup>1</sup> me or<sup>16</sup> this by brekyng  
of his commaundement / and therfore, dere lady and <sup>24</sup>  
wyf, it is necessary that I go to<sup>1</sup> hym ; <sup>17</sup> I shall leue  
you with Barnarde, who shall haue the kepynge of my  
londes & of you / and as for my doughter, I wyl leue  
her with the abbot here, myn vnclé, / who I desyre <sup>28</sup>  
here before you / that he wyll kepe & gouerne my  
doughter Claryte / and with hym I wyll leue all my  
ryches and precyous stones that I brough with me / to  
the entent to mary her so<sup>12</sup> it be to a man of great <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> vnto.      <sup>2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> about.      <sup>4</sup> and mirth.

<sup>5</sup> vnto the Citie of.      <sup>6</sup> Escleremound.      <sup>7</sup> good.

<sup>8</sup> his Coozen.      <sup>9</sup> Fol. cxliii[ii]. col. 2.      <sup>10</sup> vngratefull.

<sup>11</sup> daunger.      <sup>12</sup> that.      <sup>13</sup> departed.      <sup>14</sup> hym.


<sup>15</sup> well.      <sup>16</sup> before.      <sup>17</sup> and.

valure / but I wyll not that she be married to<sup>1</sup> any  
 parsonne for riches, but a parsonne that is worthy<sup>2</sup> I  
 wolde shuld haue her / for she hath and shall haue  
 4 ryches ynoughe for her selfe and for a man of great  
 auctoryte' / 'fayre nephue,' quod y<sup>e</sup> abbot, 'your  
 goynge shal be to<sup>3</sup> me dysplesant<sup>4</sup> yf I myght amende  
 it / yf god wyll no man leuyng shall haue your  
 8 doughter my nece in maryage, without<sup>5</sup> he be a man of  
 hye parentage and garnyssed with vertues and good  
 maners; and as for your ryches<sup>6</sup> she shall not nede to  
 haue any therof, for I haue treasure<sup>8</sup> ynoughe to mary  
 12 her noblye.

She is not to  
 marry a man for  
 his wealth, but for  
 his worthiness.

The abbot has  
 enough treasure  
 himself to dower  
 Clariet richly,  
 and does not  
 therefore need  
 Huon's riches.

¶ How Duke Huon deuysed with the duches  
 his wyfe of his departynge / and how she  
 sayd she wold go with hym, and how he  
 16 lefte his doughter and lond<sup>9</sup> in the kepyng  
 of his vncl, the<sup>10</sup> abbot of Cluny, & of  
 Barnarde his cosyn. Ca. C.lii.

20  Hen the duches<sup>11</sup> hard her husbonde  
 the duke make his deuyses to go to<sup>1</sup>  
 kyng Oberon, ye maye well byleue<sup>12</sup>  
 she had great dolour<sup>13</sup> at her hart, and  
 then all wepyng she kneled downe  
 24 before her husbonde, and sayd, 'my ryght dere lorde,  
 and<sup>14</sup> god wyll ye shall not go one fote but that I wyll  
 go with you / yf ye take any yll or anoyauce I wyll  
 haue<sup>15</sup> my part / <sup>16</sup>yf ye haue any good aduenture I  
 28 wyll<sup>17</sup> part with you; <sup>18</sup>for without me ye shall not

The duchess was  
 sore grieved to  
 think of Huon's  
 departure,  
 and begs him to  
 take her with  
 him.

She will share  
 with him both  
 fair adventure  
 and ill fortune.

<sup>1</sup> vnto. <sup>2</sup> and valiant. <sup>3</sup> vnto after displeasing.

<sup>4</sup> displeasing. <sup>5</sup> except. <sup>6</sup> pearles and Ieweles.

<sup>7</sup> Fol. cxliii[ii]. back, col. 1. <sup>8</sup> and ryches.

<sup>9</sup> and Signiories. <sup>10</sup> good. <sup>11</sup> Escleremond had well.

<sup>12</sup> that. <sup>13</sup> and greefe. <sup>14</sup> if.

<sup>15</sup> Fol. cxliii[ii]. back, col. 2. <sup>16</sup> and. <sup>17</sup> haue my.

<sup>18</sup>—<sup>18</sup> omitted.

The voyage will  
be a hard one,

but the duchess  
would rather  
endure anything  
than abide with-  
out Huon.

As she is so  
determined, Huon  
allows her to  
accompany him.

The abbot and  
Barnard are  
displeased,  
and try to dis-  
suade him from  
this, but in vain.

Huon recom-  
mends his  
daughter and  
lands into the  
keeping of his  
uncle and of  
Barnard.

departe<sup>18</sup> / for your longe absence hathe ben ryght harde  
for me to endure.' 'fayer lady,' quod Huon, 'I pray  
you<sup>1</sup> for bere your goynge, and abyde here with your  
doughter, for y<sup>e</sup> vyage shal be sore for you to do; here <sup>4</sup>  
I shal leue Barnard<sup>2</sup> and myn vncl, the<sup>3</sup> abbot, and  
they shal be to<sup>4</sup> you as faders.' 'syr,' quod she, 'I  
shall haue meny ylles<sup>5</sup> to abyde here without you / I  
had rather to indure what so euer god do<sup>6</sup> send vs to <sup>8</sup>  
gether then to abyde here without you.'<sup>7</sup> thus, as<sup>8</sup> ye  
haue hard,<sup>9</sup> for eny excusasyon<sup>10</sup> or shewynge<sup>11</sup> that  
Huon kowde shew to<sup>4</sup> the duchess,<sup>12</sup> he kowde not torne  
her fro hyr opynyon, But that she wold in eny wyse <sup>12</sup>  
go with him. when Huon sawe that, he sayde, 'my  
ryghte dere lady, syn it<sup>13</sup> plesse you<sup>13</sup> to go with me and  
to be contente what so euer god do sende vs, other good  
or yll,<sup>14</sup> your companye plesyth me,<sup>15</sup> and I am ryghte <sup>16</sup>  
ioyous<sup>16</sup> therof' / when the good abbot and Barnard<sup>17</sup>  
hard<sup>18</sup> the wyll<sup>19</sup> of <sup>20</sup> Huon and of the duchess Esclara-  
monde his wyfe, they were sore displeasyd therwith, yf  
they coude in any wyse haue let it<sup>21</sup> / but they coude <sup>20</sup>  
not turne hym for any thyng<sup>22</sup> they coude do / Then  
Huon sayd to<sup>4</sup> the<sup>3</sup> Abbot, 'syr,<sup>23</sup> I leue with you my  
londes<sup>24</sup> and my doughter tyll<sup>25</sup> I retourne agayne /  
the which shall be as shortely as I maye / But of force <sup>24</sup>  
nowe I am dreuen to go to<sup>26</sup> take possessyon of the  
realme that kynge Oberon hathe geuen<sup>1</sup> me / therfore,  
fayre vncl & cosyn Barnarde, to<sup>4</sup> you I recomende  
my doughter, whom I loue enterly, and all my londis <sup>28</sup>  
and syngnoryes, I leue all in your kepyng tyll<sup>25</sup> my  
retourne / and with you, myne vncl, I leue<sup>27</sup> my trea-

<sup>1</sup> to. <sup>2</sup> my Coozen. <sup>3</sup> good. <sup>4</sup> vnto.

<sup>5</sup> sorowes. <sup>6</sup> shall. <sup>7</sup> your company. <sup>8</sup> omitted.

<sup>9</sup> heere before that. <sup>10</sup> excuse. <sup>11</sup> reason.

<sup>12</sup> his wyfe. <sup>13-13</sup> your pleasure. <sup>14</sup> euill. <sup>15</sup> well.

<sup>16</sup> ioyfull. <sup>17</sup> had well. <sup>18</sup> and vnderstood.

<sup>19</sup> and pleasure. <sup>20</sup> Duke. <sup>21</sup> them. <sup>22</sup> that.

<sup>23</sup> Faire vncl. <sup>24</sup> Signiories. <sup>25</sup> vntill. <sup>26</sup> and.


<sup>27</sup> all.

sure<sup>1</sup> and precious stones for the maryage<sup>2</sup> of my  
 doughter, whome I leue in youre kepynge' / 'fayre  
 nephue,' quod the<sup>3</sup> abbot, 'syn<sup>4</sup> it is your pleasure, I  
 4 shall kepe her as well as thoughe she were myne owne  
 chylde.' 'Fayre<sup>3</sup> vncle,' quod Huon, 'I pray you that  
 the Gryffons fote *that* I brought with me, <sup>5</sup>send it fro  
 me to <sup>5</sup>y<sup>e</sup> yonge kynge Loys of Fraunce, and salute  
 8 hym fro me and present it to <sup>6</sup>hym to do therwith his  
 pleasure' / 'syr,' quod the<sup>3</sup> abbot, 'or<sup>7</sup> Ester be come  
 your message shall be done' / and <sup>8</sup>y<sup>e</sup> whiche was<sup>8</sup> done,  
 and<sup>9</sup> the yonge kynge was ioyfull therof / and caused  
 12 it to be hanged in his paleys: and after<sup>10</sup> by kynge  
 Phelyp it was hanged in the holy chappell, where as it  
 is <sup>11</sup>as yette.<sup>11</sup> Now let vs leue spekyng of the Gryffons  
 fote and retourne to our<sup>12</sup> mater.

Huon requests  
 the abbot to send  
 the griffin's foot  
 to the young king  
 Louis of France  
 as a present.

This was done,  
 and the young  
 king, much  
 delighted at the  
 gift, hung it up  
 in his palace.  
 King Philip after  
 caused it to be  
 hung in the holy  
 palace, where it is  
 to this day.

16 ¶ How Huon toke leue of his doughter and  
 of the<sup>3</sup> Abbot his vncle, and of Barnard his  
 cosyn, and enteryd into the ryuer of geroune,  
 and the duches with hym, and of the strange  
 20 fortunes that they hade. Ca. C.liii.

24  Hen the<sup>3</sup> abbot and Barnard had well  
 vnderstonde Huon and had hard his  
 wyll<sup>13</sup> / they answered, that as for his  
 londes<sup>14</sup> and for his doughter he shulde  
 not nede to care / but they sayd it  
 greatly dyspleased them, the vyage that they were in  
 mynd to do / but syn it was his pleasure so to do it  
 28 was reason that they shuld be content / <sup>15</sup>then Huon<sup>16</sup>  
 ordeyned that Barnarde shulde make redy a lytel  
 shyppe, aparayled and garynysshed with vytayles and

The abbot and  
 Barnard promise  
 to take good care  
 of Huon's lands  
 and daughter,

but are sorry that  
 he must under-  
 take this voyage.

Huon ordered  
 Barnard to pre-  
 pare a little boat  
 to take them  
 down the river  
 Garonne,

<sup>1</sup> treasure *after* precious stones. <sup>2</sup> Fol. cxliii. col. 1.

<sup>3</sup> good. <sup>4</sup> seeing. <sup>5-5</sup> may be sent vnto. <sup>6</sup> vnto.

<sup>7</sup> before. <sup>8</sup> that being. <sup>9</sup> omitted. <sup>10</sup> afterwards.

<sup>11-11</sup> untill this day. <sup>12</sup> former. <sup>13</sup> and pleasure.

<sup>14</sup> and Signiories. <sup>15</sup> and. <sup>16</sup> he.

and a great ship  
to be ready at its  
mouth.

Huon takes with  
him six knights  
and a dozen  
servants.

He and Esclara-  
monde embrace  
Clariet,

and can speak no  
word, so great is  
their grief at  
leaving her.

Clariet herself  
makes pitiful  
complaint.

The abbot gives  
Huon a hallowed  
stool for a parting  
gift.

They sail down  
the Garonne in  
the little boat,  
and at the mouth  
embark in the big  
ship.

other thynges neces<sup>1</sup>sary, and that another great shyp  
shuld<sup>2</sup> be made redy at the mouthe of the see to enter<sup>3</sup>  
it when they were out of the ryuer of Geroune / the  
whiche thyng was done / then he toke .vi. knyghtes <sup>4</sup>  
of his owne<sup>4</sup> and a dozen saruauntes / and when Huon  
sawe euery thyng redy and had shewed his enterpryse  
to<sup>5</sup> his noble<sup>6</sup> men and to the men of his countre, and  
that euery thyng was redy,<sup>7</sup> then he toke his doughter <sup>8</sup>  
in his armes and kyssed her more then .x. tymes, and  
in lyke wyse so dyd Esclaramond her mother, and her  
hart was so closed with sorowe<sup>8</sup> that she coude speke  
no word / for the departyng fro her doughter / ye may <sup>12</sup>  
well thynke *that* great was the sorowe there at theyr  
departyng, for he that had bene there and sene the  
doloure and petefull complayntes that the lady Clariet  
made for the departyng of her father and mother *with* <sup>16</sup>  
whome she had not bene no longe season, there is not  
so harde a harte but that nedys<sup>9</sup> must haue taken parte  
of her sorowe / for there was neuer sene so heuy a  
departyng. Then Huon, all wepyng, enbrased y<sup>e10</sup> <sup>20</sup>  
abbot, his vncl / who gaue Huon at his departyng a  
halowed stoole, the which after dyd good saruyce to<sup>5</sup>  
Huon and to Esclaramond. Also Huon toke leue of  
Barnard<sup>11</sup> / then y<sup>e</sup> duches sayd to<sup>5</sup> the abbot & to <sup>24</sup>  
Barnarde / ‘syrs, to<sup>5</sup> you two I do recommede my  
doughter’ / thus Huon departed / <sup>12</sup>they went to the  
posterne, and there they founde redy theyr lytell shyp  
and entered into it / & so made sayle downe alonge the <sup>28</sup>  
ryuer of Gerund, and when they came to the mouthe  
of y<sup>e</sup> see they toke theyr great shyppe and so made  
sayle and had good wynd, so that shortely they were  
far of fro any lond, & were in the hye se<sup>13</sup> the space of <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Fol. cxliii. col. 2.      <sup>2</sup> to.      <sup>3</sup> into.

<sup>4</sup> of his owne *after* seruaunts.      <sup>5</sup> vnto.      <sup>6</sup> omitted.

<sup>7</sup> furnished.      <sup>8</sup> and greefe.      <sup>9</sup> he.      <sup>10</sup> good.

<sup>11</sup> his Coozen.      <sup>12</sup> and.      <sup>13</sup> for.




.vi. dayes,<sup>1</sup> and on<sup>2</sup> the .vii. daye a wynde arose with  
 suche an orryble tempest that they were dreuen into  
 the great spanyssh see, and were so far fro any  
 4 londe that they wyst not where they were / and euer  
 the tempeste encreasyd in such wyse that there was  
 neuer none suche sene nor hard<sup>3</sup> before / the waues  
 were lyke mountaynes, and lyke to a swallowed in<sup>4</sup> the  
 8 shyp / so that som tyme there entered into the shyppe  
 a tonne of water at ones.

With a fair wind  
 they sail for six  
 days.

On the seventh  
 a great storm  
 drives them into  
 the Spanish sea;  
 they are so far  
 from land, they  
 know not where  
 they are.

¶ How Huon lost all his men, and the shyp  
 braste,<sup>5</sup> and howe he & the duches sauyd  
 12 themselfe on<sup>2</sup> a borde, and came<sup>6</sup> and  
 aryued at the castel of the monkes.

Ca. Cliiii.

16  Hen<sup>7</sup> Huon<sup>8</sup> and the duches<sup>9</sup> his wyfe  
 sawe<sup>10</sup> this tourment so great & so  
 horryble,<sup>10</sup> they were in great fere of  
 dethe / <sup>11</sup>they complayned greatly<sup>12</sup>  
 theyr doughter Claryet whom they  
 20 had lefte at Burdeaux. Then Huon, who had with  
 hym in his bag .ix. of his good<sup>13</sup> precyous stones, he  
 drewe out two of them, and knewe the vertue and  
 bounte of them, <sup>14</sup>he toke<sup>14</sup> his wyfe one of them  
 24 and sayde, 'my dere<sup>15</sup> wyfe, holde this stone in your  
 hand and haue no fere / for the vertue of the stone wyl  
 not let you perysshe, nor me nother' / he that had hard  
 the cry and lamentacyons that the maryners made  
 28 wolde haue had petye<sup>16</sup> of them, for they sawe well  
<sup>17</sup>they must be perysshed<sup>17</sup> / Huon and Esclaramonde

Huon and his wife  
 are in great fear  
 of death :

but the knight  
 remembers that  
 the virtue of the  
 precious stones in  
 his hand will  
 preserve them.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. cxliiii. back, col. 1.

<sup>2</sup> vpon.

<sup>3</sup> of.

<sup>4</sup> vp.

<sup>5</sup> brake.

<sup>6</sup> rame *in text*.

<sup>7</sup> Duke.

<sup>8</sup> of Bourdeaux.

<sup>9</sup> Escleremond.

<sup>10-10</sup> these great and suddaine tempests.

<sup>11</sup> and.

<sup>12</sup> for.

<sup>13</sup> deere.

<sup>14-14</sup> and gaue.

<sup>15</sup> and louing.

<sup>16</sup> and compassion.

<sup>17-17</sup> that they should all perish and.

The ship's sides  
burst and the  
waves enter.

All are drowned  
but Huon and  
Esclaramonde.

They float safely  
on a table.

Huon grieves for  
the loss of his  
companions.

were on<sup>1</sup> ther knees sore wepynge, holdyng ech other  
<sup>2</sup>by the hand, humbly praynge to our lorde Iesu  
cryst to haue pete and compassyon of them, and to  
brynge them to<sup>3</sup> sum port in saue garde of ther lyues. <sup>4</sup>  
great & horryble was the tempest, & long enduryde /  
so that the helme, mast, and saylles <sup>4</sup>all to brast<sup>4</sup> /  
and when the shyp was without a sterne to gyd yt, the  
great vaues enteryd in<sup>5</sup> so that the shype was full of <sup>8</sup>  
water, wherby it was constrayned to synke into the  
see, so<sup>6</sup> that it was all couered with water, & all that  
were within<sup>7</sup> drowned and perysshed excepte Huon  
and Esclaramonde, who sate together on<sup>1</sup> a table <sup>12</sup>  
flotyng vpon the see / so that by the grace of<sup>8</sup> god  
and<sup>9</sup> bounte<sup>10</sup> of the presyous stones that was<sup>7</sup> on<sup>1</sup>  
them they were saued / and when they sawe theyr  
shyp all to peces and theyr men drowned,<sup>11</sup> and them <sup>16</sup>  
selfe flotyng on<sup>1</sup> the see / wherof Huon had suche  
sorowe<sup>12</sup> that<sup>13</sup> petye it was to se hym, and sayde / 'a,  
<sup>14</sup>very god,<sup>14</sup> why was I euer borne into this world /  
when I am so enfortunat that I can haue no man <sup>20</sup>  
to serue me but at last they ende theyr lyues in my  
seruyce myserably. A, <sup>15</sup>good lorde,<sup>15</sup> why doste thou  
suffer me so longe to leue ' / then the duches comforted  
hym as moche as she coude, and sayde / 'a syr, leue <sup>24</sup>  
your sorowe / and pray<sup>16</sup> to god and to y<sup>e</sup> vyrgyn Mary  
his mother<sup>16</sup> that we myght aryue at some good porte ' /  
thus the<sup>17</sup> duches<sup>18</sup> comforted<sup>19</sup> Huon her husbond ;  
how be it she was in as great fere, & not without<sup>20</sup> <sup>28</sup>  
cause / <sup>21</sup>thus they floted on<sup>1</sup> y<sup>e</sup> see greatly bewaylynge

<sup>1</sup> vpon.    <sup>2</sup> Fol. cxliii. back, col. 2.    <sup>3</sup> vnto.

<sup>4-4</sup> burst all to pieces.    <sup>5</sup> to it.    <sup>6</sup> in such sort.

<sup>7</sup> were.    <sup>8</sup> our Lord.    <sup>9</sup> by the great.    <sup>10</sup> and vertue.

<sup>11</sup> and perished.    <sup>12</sup> and greefe at his heart.

<sup>13</sup> great.    <sup>14-14</sup> good Lord.    <sup>15-15</sup> my God.

<sup>16-16</sup> vnto our Lord God for his mercie and his grace, and  
to haue pittie and compassion of vs.

<sup>17</sup> noble.    <sup>18</sup> Escleremond.    <sup>19</sup> Duke.    <sup>20</sup> a.

<sup>21</sup> and.

the dethe of theyr men whome they saw perysshe before  
 theyr eyen. Then Huon, as fare of as he myght se, he  
 sawe a castell stondynge on<sup>1</sup> a rocke, the which semyd  
 4 darke & blacke; <sup>2</sup>then he lauded<sup>3</sup> god, prayenge hym  
 deuoutly<sup>4</sup> to brynge hym<sup>5</sup> thether in saue <sup>6</sup>gard.  
 then the see was peasyble / and the tempest sessed /  
 and the wynd fresshe, the whiche draue them in a  
 8 short space to<sup>7</sup> y<sup>e</sup> porte vnder the rocke: and when  
 they were nere to the londe Huon and the duches  
 waded to<sup>7</sup> the londe, holdynge eche other by the  
 hand: when they were on<sup>1</sup> the drye londe they knelyd  
 12 downe and lyfte vp theyr eyen to<sup>7</sup> the<sup>8</sup> heuen, and  
 made theyr deuout prayers to<sup>7</sup> our lord Iesu chryst,  
 desyrynge hym to haue petye and compassion of the  
 sowles of his<sup>9</sup> men that he<sup>10</sup> sawe drowned<sup>11</sup> / then they  
 16 rose vp & sawe a lytell pathe <sup>12</sup>to the castell warde<sup>12</sup> ;  
 they entered into <sup>13</sup>the waye<sup>13</sup> / <sup>2</sup>when they came nere<sup>7</sup>  
 the castell they sawe a great ryuer goynge<sup>14</sup> rounde  
 a bought <sup>13</sup>the castel<sup>13</sup> / and saw<sup>15</sup> the castel<sup>16</sup> of a<sup>8</sup>  
 20 marueylous<sup>17</sup> beautye, thynkyng<sup>15</sup> they neuer sawe no  
 suche before / the towres were couered with gleteryng  
 golde, shynynge so bryghte as thoughe the sonne <sup>18</sup>had  
 shone<sup>18</sup> thereon: also they sawe an auneyent church  
 24 ioynnyng to the castell with a goodly steple full of  
 belles / the whiche began to sowne, wherof Huon had  
 great maruayle / for he saw nother man nor woman  
 comynge nor goynge / and when he had well regarded  
 28 y<sup>e</sup> castell he came to<sup>7</sup> the gate and saw how<sup>15</sup> there were  
 .iii. breges to pas or<sup>19</sup> he coude enter: when Huon sawe  
 that he sayd, ‘ O <sup>20</sup>very god,<sup>20</sup> in all my lyfe I neuer  
 sawe so fayre a castell, he that is lorde therof semeth to

He sees afar off a  
 dark and black  
 castle on a rock.

He and his wife  
 reach land,

and thank Christ  
 for their preserva-  
 tion.

The castle is very  
 beautiful: a great  
 river goes round  
 about it:

the towers are  
 couered with  
 glittering gold.

A church is hard  
 by, bells ring out  
 from the steeple.

Three bridges are  
 to be passed  
 before the castle  
 is entered.

<sup>1</sup> vpon.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> and praised our Lord.

<sup>4</sup> humbly.      <sup>5</sup> them.      <sup>6</sup> Fol. exliiii. col. 1.      <sup>7</sup> vnto.

<sup>8</sup> omitted.      <sup>9</sup> their.      <sup>10</sup> they.      <sup>11</sup> and perished.

<sup>12-12</sup> way lying straight towards the castle and.      <sup>13-13</sup> it.

<sup>14</sup> running.      <sup>15</sup> that.      <sup>16</sup> was.      <sup>17</sup> great.

<sup>18-18</sup> did shine.      <sup>19</sup> before.      <sup>20-20</sup> good Lord.

Huon thinks it  
must be the castle  
of Momur,  
belonging to  
Oberon.

Esclaramonde  
doubts this.

Three monks in  
white apparel  
salute Huon by  
name.

They own the  
castle,

and invite him to  
enter.

be a great<sup>1</sup> man / for yf there were within it<sup>2</sup> .xl. men  
to kepe it and garnysshed with vytailes, it wold neuer  
be wonne for any man leuyng<sup>3</sup> / so long Huon behelde  
this castell that he forgate<sup>3</sup> his sorow, the castell 4  
pleasyd hym so well / and sayd to<sup>4</sup> the duches<sup>5</sup> /  
'dame,<sup>6</sup> I byleue suerly this is the castell of Momur  
partaynyng<sup>4</sup> to kynge Oberon, we maye well <sup>7</sup>thanke<sup>8</sup>  
god that he hath brought vs hether / we shall 8  
se hym; ye knowe well<sup>9</sup> he hathe promysed to geue  
me his realme and all his dyngnyte / 'syr,' quod the  
duches, 'I haue hard saye or<sup>10</sup> this that Momure is a  
great and<sup>11</sup> noble citye, & full of people of all sortes / 12  
wherfore ye may well parsayue that this is not that  
citye, it may well be that this castell is his' / 'Dame,'<sup>12</sup>  
quod Huon, 'the kynge hath that pusaunce that he  
may make citye or castell at his pleasure' / 'syr,' quod 16  
she, 'I byleue it well' / then Huon toke his way to y<sup>e</sup>  
gate / and as he wente deuysynge with<sup>13</sup> Esclaramonde  
his wyfe, he sawe before hym .iiii. monkes in whyghte  
aparell / & when they came to<sup>4</sup> hym they sayd / 20  
'Syr duke of Burdeaux, of your comynge we are ryght  
ioyfull, for a more noble man came not here of a long  
season, god bles you and y<sup>e</sup> duches your wyfe' / 'syr,'  
quod Huon, 'god saue you; I pray you<sup>14</sup> shewe me 24  
what ye be and howe<sup>15</sup> hathe shewed you my name,  
and who is lorde and gournour of this castell' / 'syr,'  
quod one of the monkes, 'this castell is ours, and here  
is no gournour but I and my bretherne / we make 28  
none answer to<sup>4</sup> any lorde leuyng<sup>3</sup> / therfore, yf it  
please you to enter, we shall make you as good<sup>16</sup> chere  
as we can, <sup>17</sup>and<sup>17</sup> yf it please you to tary <sup>17</sup>here a <sup>17</sup>viii.  
or xv. dayes, ye shalbe welcome, & when ye departe we 32

<sup>1</sup> and a noble.    <sup>2</sup> but.    <sup>3</sup> had forgotten.    <sup>4</sup> vnto.

<sup>5</sup> his Wife.    <sup>6</sup> Madame.    <sup>7</sup> Fol. cxliiii. col. 2.

<sup>8</sup> our Lord.    <sup>9</sup> well.    <sup>10</sup> before.    <sup>11</sup> a.    <sup>12</sup> Madame.

<sup>13</sup> the Duchesse.    <sup>14</sup> to.    <sup>15</sup> who.    <sup>16</sup> feast and.

<sup>17-17</sup> omitted.

shal gyue you to cary with you mete and drynke suffy-  
 eyent to serue you and your wyfe for xv dayes, & ye  
 shall haue nede therof or<sup>1</sup> ye fynd out kynge Oberon' /  
 4 'syrs,' quod<sup>2</sup> Huon, 'of your courtoysy I<sup>3</sup> thanke  
 you' / then Huon entered into the castell with them,  
 and came into a great hall well garnysshed<sup>4</sup> with ryche  
 pyllers of wyghte marble vaulted aboue, and rychly  
 8 paynted with<sup>5</sup> golde and asure, and set full of rych  
 precyous stones, y<sup>e</sup> which cast a great lyght, for by  
 reason of the<sup>6</sup> stonis at mydnyght it was as bryght as  
 at none dayes / Huon and Esclaramond thought<sup>7</sup> they  
 12 neuer sawe so ryche a thyng / 'dame,'<sup>8</sup> quod Huon,  
 'this place is delectable' / then they were brought into  
 a rych chaumbre wheras the tables were set,<sup>9</sup> garnysshed  
 withe any<sup>10</sup> thyng that a man wold<sup>11</sup> wysse for.  
 16 Then came in many seruantes, some brought in the  
 basyns of golde garnysshed<sup>12</sup> with precyous stones, and  
 some brought in<sup>13</sup> towell and water / and they gaue the  
 water to<sup>14</sup> Huon and to<sup>15</sup> Esclaramonde to wasshe theyr  
 20 handes ; then they sate downe at the table, and dyd eate  
 & drynke at theyr pleasure / for they had there mete  
 and drynke at theyr wysse / when they had eten<sup>16</sup> and  
 the clothes taken vp, then there was spyces broughte /<sup>9</sup>  
 24 Huon dyd eate therof, but Esclaramond wold not<sup>17</sup>  
 taste therof ; then they were brought in to a gardayne  
 to sporte them / <sup>9</sup>when they were there they thought<sup>7</sup>  
 they had bene in paradyse, for the swetnes of the  
 28 flowers and frutes vpon euery tre / and they harde  
 dyuers<sup>18</sup> byrdes synge melodyously / 'syrs,' quod Huon  
 to<sup>14</sup> the monkys, 'well ye ought to thanke oure lorde  
 Iesu chryst that he hathe geuen you suche a place to  
 32 serue hym in / and, syrs, I praye you when it is

Huon and his wife  
 are led into a hall  
 of wondrous  
 grandeur.

Servants wait on  
 them with basins  
 of gold.

A rich banquet is  
 served :

afterwards Huon  
 and Esclaramonde  
 are brought into a  
 beautiful garden.

<sup>1</sup> before.      <sup>2</sup> Duke.      <sup>3</sup> most hartely.      <sup>4</sup> and adorned.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. exliiii. back, col. 1.      <sup>6</sup> precious.      <sup>7</sup> that.

<sup>8</sup> Madame.      <sup>9</sup> and.      <sup>10</sup> euerie.      <sup>11</sup> could.

<sup>12</sup> adorned.      <sup>13</sup> the.      <sup>14</sup> vnto.      <sup>15</sup> omitted.

<sup>16</sup> at their pleasure.      <sup>17</sup> so much as.      <sup>18</sup> kind of.



mydnyght awake me, to the entent that I may ryse to  
 go & here your mataynes<sup>1</sup> when ye syng<sup>2</sup> it' / 'syr,'  
 quod one of them, 'I shall awake you when<sup>3</sup> tyme is  
 that ye may come and here vs.' 'syr,' quod Huon, <sup>4</sup>  
 'therin shall ye do me great pleasure' / then<sup>4</sup> Huon  
 and Esclaramond were brought<sup>5</sup> to a ryche chaumbre  
 well aparayled<sup>6</sup> with clothes of golde & sylke, wherin  
 was a ryche<sup>7</sup> bed, wherin Huon &<sup>8</sup> <sup>9</sup>his wyfe laye in<sup>10</sup> <sup>8</sup>  
 together: the chaumbre was<sup>11</sup> ryche, for all the nyghte  
 it was as clere as thoughe the chaumbre had ben full of  
 torches, by reason of<sup>3</sup> shynynge of the precyous stones /  
 for there was no banke<sup>12</sup> nor poste but that were set ful <sup>12</sup>  
 of ryche stones / the ryches of that chaumbre can<sup>13</sup> not  
 be dyscryued / and therin was paynted with gold and  
 asure all the batayles of Troye / <sup>14</sup>In this ryche chaumbre  
 and bed they slepte tyll<sup>15</sup> the oure of mydnyght was <sup>16</sup>  
 come, <sup>14</sup>then all the monkes rose, and the bellis <sup>16</sup>range  
 to matens; <sup>16</sup>then there came a monke to <sup>17</sup> Huon and  
 waked hym, and said / 'syr, it is<sup>18</sup> tyme that ye ryse,  
<sup>19</sup>it is past mydnyght, make you redy to come and <sup>20</sup>  
 here <sup>20</sup>matens'<sup>20</sup> / then Huon rose and called vp<sup>21</sup> his  
 wyfe / <sup>22</sup>she arose, & thus they made them redy, and  
 wente to<sup>17</sup> the church, the whiche was paued with a  
 whight marble powdered with flowre delyses of golde <sup>24</sup>  
 entermedelyd with red roses / and the vault was  
 checkered with Ambre and Chrystall, & at euery poynt  
 a ryche stone / wherby there was such clerenes that  
 there neded no candelight; when<sup>4</sup> Huon and<sup>8</sup> Esclara- <sup>28</sup>  
 monde <sup>23</sup>saw the<sup>23</sup> beautye and ryches of the church  
 they were sore abashed, and made the syngne of the

A rich chamber is  
 prepared for them.

All the furniture  
 was adorned with  
 precious stone,  
 shining like the  
 sun.

At midnight  
 Huon and his wife  
 attend matins.

The church is  
 resplendent with  
 marble and amber  
 and crystal.

<sup>1</sup> Service.    <sup>2</sup> doe.    <sup>3</sup> the.    <sup>4</sup> Duke.    <sup>5</sup> in.  
<sup>6</sup> furnished.    <sup>7</sup> and sumptuous.    <sup>8</sup> the Duchesse.  
<sup>9</sup> Fol. cxliiii. back, col. 2.    <sup>10</sup> omitted.    <sup>11</sup> faire and.  
<sup>12</sup> bench.    <sup>13</sup> coulde.    <sup>14</sup> and.    <sup>15</sup> vntill.  
<sup>16-16</sup> began to ringe to Service.    <sup>17</sup> vnto.    <sup>18</sup> nowe.  
<sup>19</sup> for.    <sup>20-20</sup> our Service.  
<sup>21</sup> the Duchesse Escleremond.    <sup>22</sup> then.  
<sup>23-23</sup> had well seene and beheld the great.

crosse on<sup>1</sup> theyr forhed for the marueyles that they saw  
 there / <sup>2</sup>they entered into the quere and kneled downe  
 before the hye aulter and made theyr prayers to<sup>3</sup> god,  
 4 desyrynge hym to be theyr sauegarde and to brynge<sup>4</sup>  
 them <sup>5</sup>in suertye to<sup>5</sup> kynge Oberon / then the abbot  
 began <sup>6</sup>ye matens,<sup>6</sup> and red the fyrst lesson; and when  
 he was in the halfe therof he helde his peas, and  
 8 departed clene out of the churche / then the pryour  
 began another lesson, and in lyke wyse lefte it in the  
 myddes and departed out of y<sup>e</sup> churche / thus <sup>7</sup>dyd<sup>8</sup>  
 euery monke one after another, and there were .xxxii.  
 12 monkes, and in y<sup>e</sup> myddes of euery lesson and salme  
 they departed out of the churche one after another.  
 when Huon sawe and hard that he was sore<sup>9</sup> abasshed,  
 and sware that or<sup>10</sup> the last monke departed he wold  
 16 knowe the cause why they dyd so / <sup>11</sup>then he went to<sup>12</sup>  
 the last monke, who wolde haue gone out of the  
 churche / and Huon toke the halowed stole that he  
 had in his bosum, & dyd cast it aboute the monkes  
 20 necke, & helde it fast with bothe his handes / when  
 the monke saw how he was holden he was sorowfull  
 and angry, and dyd what he coude to haue scaped,  
 but he coude not / <sup>11</sup>when he saw that he coude not  
 24 scape, he embraced Huon, and prayed hym humbly  
 to let hym go after his bretherne: 'sartaynely,' quod  
 Huon, 'out of my handes ye shall not scape tyll<sup>13</sup>  
 ye haue shewed me why ye synge your <sup>6</sup>matens<sup>6</sup> after  
 28 the maner that ye do, & euer to leue the one half  
 vnsonge, and why the abbot and the other monkes do  
 departe one after a nother without any word spekyng  
 to<sup>12</sup> me, and without<sup>14</sup> ye shew me the truth, with my  
 32 sworde I shall stryke your<sup>15</sup> hede to y<sup>e</sup> braynes' / then

Huon and Escla-  
 ramonde pray to  
 Go! to be their  
 safeguard, and  
 bring them to  
 Oberon.

Thirty-two monkes  
 take part in the  
 service: each  
 reads a lesson,  
 and departs with  
 the matins half  
 unsaid.

Huon stops the  
 last monk left in  
 the church, and  
 demands why all  
 the others have  
 left.

<sup>1</sup> vpon.    <sup>2</sup> then.    <sup>3</sup> vnto our Lord.    <sup>4</sup> conduct.  
<sup>5-5</sup> surely vnto.    <sup>6-6</sup> Seruice.    <sup>7</sup> Fol. cxlv. col. i.  
<sup>8</sup> did after monke.    <sup>9</sup> dismayed and.    <sup>10</sup> before.  
<sup>11</sup> and.    <sup>12</sup> vnto.    <sup>13</sup> vntill.  
<sup>14</sup> except.    <sup>15</sup> thy.

The monk refuses  
to reply, and  
Huon threatens  
to slay him.

sympely the monke fayned to wepe, and prayed Huon  
to suffer hym to departe, and sayde, 'syr, I am he *that*  
yesternyght brought you to your chaumbre, and made  
your bed' / then Huon, who had his sword in the one 4  
hande and the stole in the other hande, sayde, 'without  
<sup>1</sup>y<sup>e</sup> show<sup>1</sup> me my demaunde, shortely I shal stryke of  
thy hede' / when the monke hard that he was in great  
fere / and stode styll as thoughe he wold geue none 8  
answere; <sup>2</sup>when Huon sawe that, he lyfte vp his sword  
to haue stryken hym / but then incontynente the  
monke ioyned his han<sup>3</sup>des and cryed for marcy,  
and promysed hym to shewe hym the trouthe of his 12  
demaunde.

In fear, the monk  
yields to Huon's  
request.

¶ How<sup>4</sup> Huon made semblant to haue slayne  
the monke, holdyng hym faste with the  
stole, to the entente he shulde shewe to<sup>5</sup> 16  
hym the trouthe. Ca. C.lv.

All the monks are  
evil angels chased  
with Lucifer from  
paradise.



Hen Huon put vp his sworde, and the  
monke began to speke, and sayde /  
'syr, know for trouthe that al we that 20  
be here ar of the yll<sup>6</sup> aungelles that  
were chasyd out of paradyse with  
lucyfer, who by his pryde wolde con-

pare to<sup>7</sup> god / he made vs beleue *that* we shuld be as 24  
good as god,<sup>8</sup> & we byleued him / but as for vs that be  
here in this howse god was with vs displeasyd, and  
therby we were condempned to be conuersante abroad  
in the worlde amonge men and women when we lyst / 28  
and some be in lykenes of beres:<sup>2</sup> some lyke ware-  
wolves, and thus we shall be vnto<sup>9</sup> the day of iudg-  
ment, and some other ther be that be tempters of men  
& women, desyryng to brynge them to dampnacyon / 32

God has con-  
demned them to  
various shapes  
and hateful  
offices.

<sup>1-1</sup> thou shewest vnto.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> Fol. cxlv. col. 2.

<sup>4</sup> Duke.      <sup>5</sup> vnto.      <sup>6</sup> euill.      <sup>7</sup> with.

<sup>8</sup> himselfe.      <sup>9</sup> vntill.

& som ther be in the ayre and foloweth the thonder-  
ynges and tempestes / and some be on<sup>1</sup> the se and  
drowne many a man and perysshe the shyppes wherof,  
4 but late ye were in iopardye / for yf it had not bene  
for the great vertue<sup>2</sup> that is in the precyous stones that  
ye and your wyfe bereth vpon<sup>3</sup> you both ye & your  
wyfe had bene perished for euer / and other ther be  
8 *that* ar <sup>4</sup>in the botome of hell, wheras they tourment  
the pouer sowles, and there is Lucifer and they that be  
most yll<sup>5</sup> with hym, and thoughe they were ones fayre  
now they be fowle and <sup>6</sup>yll fygured,<sup>6</sup> and they shall  
12 neuer departe<sup>7</sup> thense / but we that be here yet we hope  
to come to<sup>8</sup> saluacyon. <sup>9</sup>Thus we shall be as longe as  
it please god / then Huon demaunded the cause why  
they began the lessons in theyr matens<sup>10</sup> and to leue it  
16 in the myddes, and euery monke to depart<sup>11</sup> one after  
another. ‘Syr,’ quod y<sup>e</sup> monke, ‘our lorde Iesu chryst  
hathe not as yet geuen vs that dyngnyte nor power to  
make an ende of our deuyne seruyce / but we haue  
20 that grace in this world that we haue all our desyres,  
and to be conuersant amonge the people, &<sup>12</sup> as well as  
they of the fayrey / there is nothyng but by wyssh-  
yng we can haue it incontynent / <sup>13</sup>when we wyll it  
24 is in oure power to make towne or castell set vpon hye  
rockes closyd with ryuers berynge shyppes / and we  
haue mynsterels, halles, and chaumbers garnysshed and  
ordeyned as ye haue sene herewith-in. Also we haue  
28 wyne and vytayle, and fysshe and flesshe at our plea-  
sure; this castell *that* ye se and church<sup>14</sup> was yester-  
nyght made by the fayrey / but one owre before<sup>15</sup> ye  
came hether / before<sup>12</sup> here was nother towre nor wall  
32 nor water nor rocke, and nothyng but a fayre grene<sup>16</sup>

Huon and his wife  
were in great  
danger from them  
lately, but the  
precious stones  
preserved them.

They still possess  
many of the  
marvel-working  
powers of fables.

The castle and  
church in which  
they now stand,  
were built in an  
hour on the  
previous day.

<sup>1</sup> vpon.      <sup>2</sup> and bounte.      <sup>3</sup> about.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. cxlv. back, col. 1.      <sup>5</sup> euill.      <sup>6-6</sup> misfigured.

<sup>7</sup> from.      <sup>8</sup> vnto.      <sup>9</sup> but.      <sup>10</sup> seruice.      <sup>11</sup> so.

<sup>12</sup> omitted.      <sup>13</sup> and.      <sup>14</sup> and church *after* castell.

<sup>15</sup> that.      <sup>16</sup> great.

The monk fears the abbot will punish him for thus revealing all to Huon.

Huon asks the road to Oberon's land.

When daylight comes, castle and church have vanished, but the monk was still with Huon and Escalaramonde.

The monk will show them the road to Momur, although he longs to escape from them.


medow, the whiche ye shall sone parseyue / and, syr, we be tho that hathe the conducte of al the fayrey of <sup>1</sup> the world. Now, syr, I haue shewed<sup>2</sup> you that we be and all oure secretes the whiche was neuer shewed be- <sup>4</sup> fore to<sup>2</sup> any mortall man / wherby I shal suffer of our abbot soche ponysshement that there was neuer so yll aduenture *that* fell to<sup>2</sup> me before / therfor, syr, now I ha<sup>3</sup>ue shewed<sup>2</sup> you euery thyng, suffer me to departe <sup>8</sup> to<sup>2</sup> my company.' 'Monke,' quod Huon, 'I wyl not let the go tyll<sup>4</sup> thou hast shewed vnto me by what maner of way I may go tyll<sup>4</sup> I haue founde kynge Oberon;' thus Huon and the monke talked together <sup>12</sup> tyll<sup>4</sup> it was fayre daylyght / then Huon loked about hym and sawe nother castell nor churche, rocke nor ryuer, but he sawe<sup>5</sup> they were in a fayre medow, wherof Huon and Escalaramonde were sore abasshed <sup>16</sup> and blesshed them, hauynge great maruayle of *that* they had sene; then the monke desyred Huon to let hym go, 'monke,' quod Huon, 'to drawe or to strogell can not auayle the / for thou shalte not scape out of <sup>20</sup> my handes tyll<sup>4</sup> thou hast shewed me y<sup>e</sup> citeye of Momure, wheras kynge Oberon is' / 'Huon,' quod the monke, 'I am content to do it, but fyrst I pray the take fro my necke the stole.' 'Monke,' quod Huon, 'thy <sup>24</sup> resonyng can not awayle the / for thou shalte not scape fro me tyll<sup>4</sup> thou hast set bothe me and my wyfe nere to<sup>2</sup> the citeye of Momure, for *thou* shalt go with vs fote by fote' / 'well,' quod y<sup>e</sup> monke, 'syn it is thus, <sup>28</sup> I am content to fulfyll your pleasure / but one thyng I say to<sup>2</sup> you, ye neuer dyd a wyser dede then that ye wolde not let me go awaye / for yf the stole were not wherwith ye do holde me and the presious stones that <sup>32</sup> ye haue on<sup>6</sup> you / elles<sup>7</sup> ye shuld neuer haue departed fro hence / I thoughte to haue begyled you so that ye

<sup>1</sup> in.<sup>2</sup> vnto.<sup>3</sup> Fol. cxlv. back, col. 2.<sup>4</sup> vntill.<sup>5</sup> that.<sup>6</sup> about.<sup>7</sup> omitted.



myghte haue let me gone my wayes whether I wolde  
go.' 'Monke,' quod Huon, 'yf I can ye shall not  
departe fro me tyll<sup>1</sup> ye haue fyrste set me & my wyfe  
4 within the citey of Momure' / 'syr,' quod the monke,  
'that wyll I not do, nor I can not do it thoughe I  
wolde, but I shall set you both on<sup>2</sup> y<sup>e</sup> mount of  
yrcany,<sup>3</sup> and fro thence ye may well se<sup>5</sup> the citey of  
8 Momure and all the countre of the fayrey, and then I  
wyll retourne to<sup>5</sup> my company, who by this tyme are  
passe the great see of Tartary' / 'monke,' quod Huon,  
'I am contente so<sup>6</sup> thou<sup>7</sup> set me<sup>8</sup> in that plase, wheras  
12 I<sup>9</sup> may se the citey of Momure.

¶ How the monke bare Huon and Esclaramond ouer hylles & valeyes in the ayer  
tyl<sup>1</sup> he came in to the countrye of kyng  
16 Oberon. Ca. C.lvi

20  Hen the monke toke Huon<sup>10</sup> on his<sup>10</sup> one  
arme and Esclaramond on<sup>2</sup> the other,  
but al wayes Huon helde styll the stole  
a bought the monkes necke to y<sup>e</sup> entente  
that the monke shuld not begyle hym,<sup>11</sup>  
thus by the fayrey and enchauntement the monke  
bare huon & Esclaramonde to<sup>5</sup> a hye rocke to rest  
24 them, and fro thence he bare them as fast as y<sup>e</sup> byrde  
flyethe in the ayre / at last they alighted in a fayre  
medowe / then the monke sayd / 'syr, in yll<sup>12</sup> oure I  
mette with you, for ye shall cause me to suffer great  
28 payne / and now, syr, I can go no further for ye be<sup>13</sup>  
nowe in the londe of kyng Oberon, wheras we haue  
no pusaunce / but fyrst I wyll brynge you to<sup>5</sup> your  
logyng, wheras ye shall reste' / then before them they

The monk takes  
Huon and Escla-  
ramonde in his  
arms and carries  
them to a high  
rock through the  
air.

They reach the  
land of king  
Oberon,

<sup>1</sup> vntill.      <sup>2</sup> vppon.      <sup>3</sup> Hircania.      <sup>4</sup> Fol. cxlvi. col. 1.  
<sup>5</sup> vnto.      <sup>6</sup> that.      <sup>7</sup> wilt.      <sup>8</sup> vs.      <sup>9</sup> we.  
<sup>10-10</sup> vppon the.      <sup>11</sup> and.      <sup>12</sup> euill.      <sup>13</sup> are.

and enter a rich  
castle.

The monk  
vanishes.

No man is in the  
castle: after they  
have refreshed  
themselves in it,  
it disappears.

Huon and his wife  
wander to the foot  
of a mountain,  
and ascend it.

A great city lies  
on the other side,  
and a rich palace.

sawe a castell newly made, the whiche was so fayre  
and<sup>1</sup> ryche and stronge that yf I shulde dyscryue it  
to the vtter most it were ouer longe to reherse / then  
the monke toke<sup>2</sup> leue of huon<sup>3</sup> and lefte hym<sup>4</sup> in the 4  
castell that he had made / Huon sufferid hym to go and  
thanked hym of his<sup>5</sup> courtoysye, the monke sodeynely  
vanissed away they wyst not whether / <sup>6</sup>then huon  
and his<sup>7</sup> wyfe entered into the castel and came into a 8  
ryche chaumbre wel apareiled,<sup>8</sup> and there they founde  
a table set with dyuers metes and drynkes, but there  
was no man to speke vnto / then they sate downe at  
the table and dyd ete and drynke at theyr pleasure / 12  
<sup>6</sup>then they went<sup>9</sup> thens, and when they were<sup>10</sup> a lytell  
paste<sup>11</sup> they loked behynde them and saw nother towne  
nor castel, wherof they were<sup>12</sup> abasshed & recommaunded  
themselve to<sup>13</sup> our lorde <sup>14</sup>Iesu chryste,<sup>14</sup> then they went 16  
forth in<sup>15</sup> y<sup>e</sup> medowe and coude se nother towne nor  
castell, house nor village / nor man to demaunde the  
way of : <sup>6</sup>they went so longe that they came to the fote  
of a mountayne, wheron they mounted with great payn 20  
and trauayle ; <sup>6</sup>when they were on<sup>16</sup> y<sup>e</sup> heyght<sup>17</sup> of the  
hyll they rested them / and then within a lytell season  
huon sawe before hym apere a great citey, and on<sup>16</sup> the  
one syde thereof a fayre and a<sup>1</sup> ryche palleys / the 24  
walles and towers of the citey & paleys were<sup>18</sup> of  
whyghte marble polysshed, the whiche stone<sup>19</sup> so bryght  
agaynst the sonne as thoughe it had bene al of christall /  
then Huon sayde to<sup>13</sup> his wyfe, ‘dame,<sup>20</sup> yonder, before 28  
vs, we may se the<sup>21</sup> citey of Momure, wheras kynge  
Oberon is’ / ‘syr,’ quod Esclaramond, ‘our lorde god  
hath done<sup>13</sup> vs a great grace<sup>22</sup> that he hathe brought

<sup>1</sup> omitted.      <sup>2</sup> his.

<sup>3</sup> and of the Duchesse Escleremond his wyfe.

<sup>4</sup> them.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. cxlvi. col. 2.

<sup>6</sup> and.

<sup>7</sup> louing.

<sup>8</sup> furnished.

<sup>9</sup> from.

<sup>10</sup> gone.

<sup>11</sup> way.

<sup>12</sup> sore.

<sup>13</sup> vnto.

<sup>14</sup>—<sup>11</sup> god.

<sup>15</sup> to.

<sup>16</sup> vppon.

<sup>17</sup> toppe.

<sup>18</sup> all.

<sup>19</sup> did shine.

<sup>20</sup> Madame.

<sup>21</sup> noble

<sup>22</sup> in.

vs hether in sauegarde of our parsons / then they went  
 forth tyll<sup>1</sup> they cam nere to<sup>2</sup> the city of Momure / and  
 before the citye they sawe a marueylous great ryuer  
 4 and<sup>3</sup> depe, and two bowe shote in largnes, and<sup>4</sup> was  
 maruaylous plesant to behold / & when they cam to  
 thee ryuer syde they founde there a man with a lytell  
 wessell awaytynge vpon all them<sup>5</sup> that wold come to<sup>2</sup>  
 8 the citye to pas them ouer / then Huon and<sup>6</sup> his wyfe  
 entered into the lytel shyppe and saluted the gyder  
 therof, but he wold geue<sup>7</sup> none answee / but merueyl-  
 ously behelde them, & when they wer ouer / the pas-  
 12 sanger,<sup>8</sup> who was named Clarimodes, and he was sone  
 to a damoyse of the fayrey / then he demaunded of  
 Huon what he and his wyfe were / and sayde, 'Me  
 thynke ye be none of the fayrey / wherfore I am not  
 16 contente that I haue passed you ouer' / then Huon  
 gaue hym none answee, but went forthe and entered  
 into the citye, and as they passid they were greatly  
 regardid of them within y<sup>e</sup> citye, and sayde one to a  
 20 nother it is<sup>9</sup> maruayle to se these two parsones to<sup>10</sup>  
 enter into this citye / for kynge Oberon, who lyethe  
 seke in his bed, gaue great charge to<sup>2</sup> Clarimodes that  
 no straunger shuld pas the reuer to enter in to this  
 24 citye / Huon harde them and was therof ryght sorow-  
 full when he harde that the kynge laye syke in his  
 bed / so he passed forth and came to<sup>2</sup> the paleys / euery  
 man there beheld hym and his wyfe and had great  
 28 marueyle to se any mortal parsons to enter into that  
 palays, <sup>11</sup> they were therof abasshed & wyste not what to  
 thynke, and<sup>12</sup> the same season Malabron and Gloryand  
 were walkynge together in y<sup>e</sup> hal they behelde<sup>13</sup> Huon  
 32 and Esclaramonde enterynge into the hal and incon-

A marvellous  
 river runs before  
 the entrance to  
 the city;

but a little boat  
 awaits them and  
 they cross over.

The boatman was  
 Clarimodes, son  
 of a fairy damsel.

He asks Huon  
 who he is.

The people of the  
 town wonder to  
 see Huon and  
 Esclaramonde  
 walk through the  
 streets.

Oberon is sick.

They enter the  
 royal palace.

<sup>1</sup> vntill.    <sup>2</sup> vnto.    <sup>3</sup> verie.    <sup>4</sup> it.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. cxlvi. back, col. 1.    <sup>6</sup> Escleremond.    <sup>7</sup> them.

<sup>8</sup> Marriner.    <sup>9</sup> great.    <sup>10</sup> omitted.    <sup>11</sup> and.    <sup>12</sup> at.

<sup>13</sup> saw.

Malabron and  
Gloriand recog-  
nize them.

Oberon hears of  
their arrival,

and rises from his  
bed.

He welcomes  
Huon and Escla-  
ramonde warmly.

He will make  
Huon king of  
fairyland and  
Esclaramonde  
queen.

Oberon takes his  
bow and shoots  
an arrow.

At once the  
palace is filled  
with fairy knights  
and ladies.

Oberon is borne  
on a couch into  
the great hall.

tynent they knew them / and came to<sup>1</sup> them and  
enbraced them / and sayde, 'A, noble duke Huon and  
duches Esclaramonde, ye ar welcome of your comynge,  
we are ryght ioyfull' / then Malabron wente fro them 4  
and wente into the chaumbre, wheras y<sup>e</sup> kynge laye  
seke and said / 'ryght dere syr, your good frend Huon  
& Esclaramond his wyfe are come into your hall' / when  
<sup>2</sup>the kynge harde that Huon and Esclaramonde were 8  
come, for the great ioye *that* he had, he quyckely rose  
out of his bed. Therwith Gloryand / Huon and Esclara-  
mond entered into the chaumbre where kynge Oberon  
was. <sup>3</sup>when kynge Oberon saw them he came to<sup>1</sup> 12  
them, and sayd, 'My ryght dere frend Huon, and you,  
my dere louer Esclaramond, of your comyng I am  
ryght ioyfull' / then he enbraced & kyssed them bothe  
more then .x. tymes, and sayd, 'Huon, my<sup>4</sup> dere frend, 16  
for the great trouthe & noblenes that I fynde in you I  
shall make you kyng of all the fayrey, and your wyfe  
Esclaramonde shall be lady and quene of the same, and  
besyde that I wyll geue<sup>1</sup> you<sup>5</sup> my dyngnyte.' 20

¶ when the kynge had well saluted them then he  
sate downe on<sup>6</sup> a couche & made huon and Esclaramond  
to sytte downe before hym,<sup>3</sup> then he commaunded  
Gloryand that incontynent he shulde feche to<sup>1</sup> hym 24  
his bowe, and when he had it in his hand he toke an  
arow and shot therwith / then incontynente it semed  
that al the world had aryued in the towne and palays /  
ther came thetherward<sup>7</sup> so many knyghtes and ladyes 28  
of the fayrey that all the towne and paleys was full /  
when they were all assembeled together in the paleys  
kynge Oberon commaunded to cary hym into the great  
hall in his rych couche / then he commaunded scylence 32  
to be kepte among them all, and then he sayde / 'lordes  
and ladyes who be here assembeled all, ye knowe

<sup>1</sup> vnto.

<sup>2</sup> Fol. cxlvi. back, col. 2.

<sup>3</sup> and.

<sup>4</sup> right.

<sup>5</sup> all.

<sup>6</sup> vppon.

<sup>7</sup> thether.

- that euery mortall thyng cannot alwayes<sup>1</sup> endure / I  
 speke it for my owne selfe <sup>2</sup>who<sup>2</sup> am sone to a mortall  
 man, and was engendered on<sup>3</sup> the ladye of the preuye  
 4 He who can <sup>4</sup>neuer dye, bycause she is one of the fairy  
 engendered of a man of the fayrey and doughter to a  
 woman of the fayrey, and where <sup>5</sup>it was<sup>5</sup> so that Iulius  
 Sesar was a mortall man, therefore it behouethe me to  
 8 pas out of this worlde by the commandement of our He announces his  
approaching  
death;  
 lorde god, who hathe ordeined that it shulde so be.  
 And bycause<sup>6</sup> duryng the tyme that I haue bene here  
 conuersaunt with you / therefore I wyll not leue you  
 12 without a lorde / but fyrst in my lyfe dayes I wyll puruey  
 you of one, who shall be duke Huon, whome I loue Huon will succeed  
him on his  
throne.  
 well and derely, & also I wyll that his wife, the duches  
 Esclaramond, shall abyde with hym / for in no wyse I  
 16 wyll separate them asonder: therefore I ordeyne that  
 Huon who is here presente be your kynge and lorde,  
 & Esclaramond<sup>7</sup> quene and lady / and fro hensforthe I  
 put my realme and dyngnyte into his handes / and I  
 20 wyll he vse it as I haue done in my lyfe tyme / howe  
 be it kynge Arthur hath sore pressed on<sup>3</sup> me to haue King Arthur has  
pressed Oberon  
in vain to bestow  
the kingdom on  
him.  
 my dignyte<sup>8</sup> & realme, but I wyll that none shal haue  
 it but alonly Huon of Burdeaux, who is here present,  
 24 whom I wyl crowne kynge in all your presences.

- ¶ How<sup>9</sup> kynge Oberon crowned Huon and  
 Esclaramonde and gaue them his realme  
 and dyngnite that he had in the<sup>10</sup> fayrey,  
 28 and made the peas betwene Huon & king  
 Arthur.

Ca. Clvi[*a*].

<sup>1</sup> long.      <sup>2-2</sup> because I.      <sup>3</sup> vpon.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. cxlvii. col. 1.      <sup>5-5</sup> as it is.      <sup>6</sup> of my loue.

<sup>7</sup> your.      <sup>8</sup> after realme.      <sup>9</sup> the noble.

<sup>10</sup> land of the.





The subjects of  
Oberon sorrow-  
fully assent.

Oberon places  
crowns on the  
heads of Huon  
and Esclara-  
monde, and  
delivers to Huon  
his horn, napkin,  
cup, and armour.

On a mountain  
hard by a great  
number of men  
and tents is seen.

King Arthur and  
his men are there:  
they have come  
too late to receive  
Oberon's king-  
dom.

Hen all<sup>1</sup> the people of the fayrey,  
<sup>2</sup>knyghtes and ladyes, had well harde  
 and vnderstonde kyng Oberon, they  
 were right syrowfull<sup>3</sup> that he <sup>4</sup>shulde  
 leue them, and sayde / 'syr, syn it  
 is your pleasure and that it is your wyll / of reason we  
 must be content to receyue Huon of Burdeaux for oure  
 kyng, and dame<sup>5</sup> Esclaramonde his wyfe for oure 8  
 quene' / when the kyng vnderstode hys lordes and  
 people, then he caused to be brought thether .ii.  
 crownes / y<sup>e</sup> one was set on<sup>6</sup> Huons hede and the  
 other on<sup>6</sup> Esclaramondes hede / then Oberon sent for 12  
 his horne / his<sup>1</sup> napkyn and cup / and the good  
 harnays: <sup>7</sup>he delyuered them to<sup>8</sup> Huon to do with  
 them his pleasure / great ioie and feast<sup>9</sup> was made in  
 the palays of <sup>10</sup>the knyghtes and ladyes of the fayry; 16  
 then kyng Huon loked out at a wyndowe and sawe on<sup>8</sup>  
 a mountayne that he past ouer at his comynge thether,  
<sup>11</sup>great nombre of tentes and paulyions. then<sup>12</sup> he sayd  
 to<sup>8</sup> kyng Oberon, 'syr, on<sup>6</sup> yonder mountayne I se<sup>11</sup> 20  
 great nombre of men assemblyd, and many tentes and  
 paulyions pyghte vp' / 'Huon,' quod kyng Oberon,  
 'know for trouthe<sup>13</sup> it is kyng Arthur, who wenethe to  
 haue my realme and dyngnyte, but he comethe to late / 24  
 for the promyse that ye made<sup>8</sup> me ye haue kept,  
 therfore he faylethe and comethe to late / for yf ye had  
 not com I had geuen hym my realme and dyngnyte /  
 I knowe well<sup>13</sup> he wyll be here sone to se me / <sup>12</sup>he wyll 28  
 be sorowfull and angry of your comynge hether / but  
 yf I canne I shall do so moche that ye shall be bothe  
 in peas and reste, for<sup>14</sup> reason<sup>15</sup> is that he do obey you.'  
 Therwith kyng Arthure and all his cheualrey entered 32

<sup>1</sup> omitted.

<sup>2</sup> both.

<sup>3</sup> in.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. cxlvii. col. 2.

<sup>5</sup> Madame.

<sup>6</sup> vpon.

<sup>7</sup> Armour and.

<sup>8</sup> vnto.

<sup>9</sup> feasting.

<sup>10</sup> by.

<sup>11</sup> a.

<sup>12</sup> and.

<sup>13</sup> that.

<sup>14</sup> good.

<sup>15</sup> it.

in to<sup>1</sup> Momure, & cam & alyghted at y<sup>e</sup> palays, and  
 with hym his syster, quene Morgan le feye, and Tran-  
 selyne theyr nese / they came and saluted kynge  
 4 Oberon, who receyued them with great Ioye, and  
 sayde / 'syr<sup>2</sup> kynge Arthure ye <sup>3</sup>ar welcome, and  
 Morgan your syster, and Transelyne your nese / and  
 syr, I praye you<sup>4</sup> shewe me what fayre chylde is that  
 8 I se there before your syster Morgan' / 'syr,' quod  
 Arthur, 'he is called Marlyn, & is sone to Ogger  
 y<sup>e</sup> dane / who hath wedded my syster Morgan, and I  
 haue lefte hym in my countre to rule it tyll<sup>5</sup> I  
 12 retourne' / 'syr,' quod kynge Oberon / 'y<sup>e</sup> chylde shall  
 haue good fortune, he shalbe in his tyme feryd &  
 doughted / for Ogger his father is a good and a  
 valyant knyght: And syr<sup>6</sup> kynge Arthur, ye ar  
 16 welcome, & of your comynge I am <sup>7</sup>ioyous / I haue  
 sent for you to shew you the pleasure of our lorde  
<sup>8</sup>Iesu Chryst<sup>8</sup> that I shall departe out of this worlde,  
 and to the entente that ye shulde be contente with<sup>9</sup>  
 20 that I haue geuen you<sup>10</sup> in the fayry so moche dyngnyte  
 and pusaunce, wherwith I desyre you to be content /  
 syr<sup>11</sup> beholde here duke Huon of Burdeaux and his  
 wyte y<sup>e</sup> duches Esclaramonde, to<sup>12</sup> whome I haue geuen  
 24 my realme and my dingnyte, to vse it as I haue done  
<sup>10</sup>here before: <sup>10</sup> and therfore I praye and commaunde  
 you that ye wyl obey hym as kynge and souerayne of  
 al the fayry, and you to loue<sup>13</sup> together with good lone  
 28 and peas' / when kynge Arthur hard kynge Oberon,  
 he answered fersly, and sayd / 'syr, I haue well hard  
 you; and ye knowe well that your realme & dyngnyte  
 ye <sup>14</sup>haue geuen<sup>14</sup> me after your deces, and now I se<sup>15</sup>  
 32 ye haue geuen it to duke Huon / syr, let hym go into his

King Arthur  
comes to Oberon's  
palace with all his  
company.

Oberon welcomes  
them.

Merlin is with  
the new-comers:  
he is son of Ogier  
the Dane, and  
Arthur's sister  
Morgan.

Oberon tells  
Arthur how his  
realm has been  
bestowed.

Arthur is angry  
at Huon's future.

<sup>1</sup> the Citie of.    <sup>2</sup> great.    <sup>3</sup> Fol. cxlvii. back, col. 1.  
<sup>4</sup> to.    <sup>5</sup> vntill.    <sup>6</sup> noble.    <sup>7-7</sup> right ioyfull.  
<sup>8-8</sup> God.    <sup>9</sup> in.    <sup>10</sup> heretofore.    <sup>11</sup> for.    <sup>12</sup> vnto.  
<sup>13</sup> liue.    <sup>14-14</sup> gaue.    <sup>15</sup> well.

He will not obey  
the new fairy  
king.

Huon tells Arthur  
that he will force  
obedience from  
him.

Oberon keeps  
peace between  
them : if Arthur  
prove disobe-  
dient, he shall be  
transformed into  
a werwolf.

Arthur yields to  
Oberon, and begs  
forgiveness.

owne countre and <sup>1</sup>to the<sup>1</sup> citey of Burdeaux wheras  
he hathe lefte his doughter Claryet, and let hym go  
and marry her, for as here he hath no thyng to do ;  
I had rather be clene exyled for euer and chased out of 4  
my realme / then I shulde obeye hym or do<sup>2</sup> hym<sup>3</sup>  
homage / for he shall haue no <sup>4</sup>thyng to do ouer me  
without he wyn it with the poynte of the sworde' /  
when duke<sup>5</sup> Huon<sup>6</sup> harde kyng Arthur of Bretayne, 8  
he answered fersly and said / ' kyng Arthur, knowe for  
trouthe for all your wordes and thretenynges, I wyll not  
spare to say to<sup>2</sup> you that whether ye wyl or not  
it must behoue you to obey and to be vnder me, syn it 12  
is the pleasure of my lorde, kynge Oberon, here present,  
or elles ye may departe and go and dwell in your  
countre of Bretayne' / then kynge Oberon, seynge  
apparence of great warre to be moued betwene these 16  
two kynges, he spake and sayd<sup>7</sup> he wolde haue theyr  
yll<sup>8</sup> wyll layd downe & neuer to haue warre betwene  
them ; <sup>9</sup>then he<sup>9</sup> sayd to<sup>2</sup> kynge Arthur / ' syr, I wyll<sup>7</sup>  
ye holde your peas, for if ye speke one worde more 20  
agaynst Huon the souerayne kyng of the fayry, that he  
wolde condempne hym parpetually to be a warwolfe in  
<sup>10</sup>the se,<sup>10</sup> and there to end his dayes in payne and  
mysery / but yf he wyll beleue hym he wolde agre 24  
them together' / then kynge Arthur stode styll and  
wolde speke no word / then Morgan and Transelyne  
fell down on theyr knees and desyred kynge Oberon to  
haue petye of kynge Arthure, and to pardon hym<sup>11</sup> his 28  
yll wyll : <sup>9</sup>after that Morgan had spoken, then kynge  
Arthur kneled downe, and sayd, ' ryght dere syr, I pray  
you pardon me in that I haue spoken so moche agaynst  
your pleasure' / ' Arthur,' quod <sup>5</sup> Oberon, ' I wyll well 32

<sup>1-1</sup> vnto his.

<sup>2</sup> vnto.

<sup>3</sup> any.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. cxlvii. back, col. 2.

<sup>5</sup> Kinge.

<sup>6</sup> had well.

<sup>7</sup> that.

<sup>8</sup> euill.


<sup>9-9</sup> and.

<sup>10-10</sup> those parts.

<sup>11</sup> of all.

that ye know<sup>1</sup> yf it were not for the loue of your  
 syster who hath desyred me to pardon you / elles<sup>2</sup>  
 I wold haue shewed you the power that I haue in the  
 4 fayry / the whiche fro hens forthe I do geue to<sup>3</sup> duke  
 Huon of Burdeaux, & all the dyngnyte & pusaunce that  
 I haue vsed<sup>4</sup> all my lyfe.' Then duke Huon ryght  
 5 humblye<sup>6</sup> thankid kynge Oberon of his curtoysye.

8 ¶ Of the ordynaunces that<sup>7</sup> kyng Oberon  
 made before he dyed. Ca. C.lvii.

12  Hen<sup>8</sup> Oberon had deposed hymselfe of  
 his realme and dyngnyte, and that he  
 had put al his pusaunce into the  
 handes of Huon, then he sayde to<sup>3</sup>  
 kynge Arthure / 'syr, bycause I desyre  
 with all my heart that after my dysces Huon and you  
 16 shulde leue together in good peas and loue, I geue you  
 all my realme of Boulquant and all the realme that  
 Syble holdethe of me, to do therwith at your pleasure,  
 and of all the fayryes that be in the playne of Tartare /  
 20 and I wyll<sup>9</sup> ye haue as moche pusaunce there as Huon  
 hath here. Prouyded that here before me ye make  
 homage to<sup>3</sup> hym & <sup>2</sup>to<sup>2</sup> that good peas and loue maye  
 be betwene you' / then Arthur, Morgan, and Tran-  
 24 selyne, and all<sup>10</sup> other lordes<sup>11</sup> that were there thanked  
 kyng Oberon, and sayd how they neuer hard nor saw  
 so ryche a gyfte geuen before as that kynge Oberon had  
 geuen to<sup>12</sup> Arthur. Then kynge Arthure, in the  
 28 presence of<sup>8</sup> Oberon, came and made homage & kyssed  
 duke Huon <sup>2</sup>on the mouth / <sup>2</sup>then<sup>8</sup> Oberon and all  
 other had therof great ioye bycause of the peas made  
 betwene thos two kynges, <sup>13</sup>great feaste<sup>14</sup> and ioye was

Oberon promises  
 to give Arthur  
 his land of  
 Boulquant,

and all the fairies  
 of Tartary are to  
 be under his  
 control.

Arthur makes  
 peace with Huon.

<sup>1</sup> well after ye. <sup>2</sup> omitted. <sup>3</sup> vnto. <sup>4</sup> in.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. cxlviii. col. 1. <sup>6</sup> ryght humblye after Oberon.

<sup>7</sup> the noble. <sup>8</sup> King. <sup>9</sup> that. <sup>10</sup> the.

<sup>11</sup> and Ladies. <sup>12</sup> vnto kynge. <sup>13</sup> and. <sup>14</sup> feasting.

Oberon's end  
approaches.

He calls Huon,  
Arthur, Gloryand,  
and Malabron  
before him.

He tells Huon  
how all his  
powers devolve  
on him,

and bids him  
establish a new  
abbey where he  
himself shall be  
buried.

Huon thanks  
Oberon humbly.

made in the paleys, for all the moste noble lordes and  
ladyes of the fayry were there assembelyd, there was  
great solempnyte made / Thus as they were in this  
great ioye kyng Oberon, felynge that <sup>1</sup>this last ende <sup>4</sup>  
aproched, <sup>2</sup>he knewe y<sup>e</sup> oure and day<sup>3</sup> / then seyng  
*that* in his lefe dayes<sup>4</sup> he had prouyded a kyng for his  
realme, he<sup>5</sup> thankyd our lorde <sup>6</sup>Iesu chryst<sup>6</sup> of the  
graces that he had geuen hym in this worlde / then <sup>8</sup>  
he callid before hym Huon of Burdeaux, and kyng  
Arthur, & Gloryand, and Malabron, and sayd / 'syr, I  
aduertyse that longe I shall not abyde among you /  
therfore Huon, for your bountye and noblenes wher- <sup>12</sup>  
with alwayes<sup>7</sup> ye haue bene endowed, I haue chosen  
you amonge other to haue the kepyng and syngnary /  
and the mynystracyon of al y<sup>e</sup> fayrey as well of  
the countre of the<sup>8</sup> warwolfes as of other thynges <sup>16</sup>  
secrete, reserued<sup>9</sup> to be shewed to any<sup>10</sup> men / and also  
I haue geuen you my dyngnyte and pusauce to do<sup>11</sup>  
as I haue done in my tyme; & <sup>12</sup>therfore, syn<sup>12</sup> I haue  
thus chosyn you / therfore I wyl that<sup>13</sup> I depart out of <sup>20</sup>  
this world / that ye do make a newe abbey of monkes,  
the which I wyll be set here in this<sup>14</sup> medow<sup>15</sup> before  
this citey, bycause al my dayes I haue loued this citey /  
and I wyll that in the church of the same abbey ye do <sup>24</sup>  
bury my body as rychly as ye shall thynke conuenient /  
and I recommaunde to<sup>16</sup> you all suche as hathe well  
serued me, and I wyll<sup>17</sup> ye retayne them into your  
seruyce' / when<sup>18</sup> Oberon had said as moch as plesed <sup>28</sup>  
hym, Huon answerid and sayd / 'dere syr, of the great  
goodnes and honours that ye haue done to<sup>16</sup> me, I  
thanke you / and all that ye haue ordeyned or wyll do  
by the grace of <sup>6</sup>our lorde Iesu chryst<sup>6</sup> it shal be done <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Fol. cxlviii. col. 2.      <sup>2</sup> for.      <sup>3</sup> day before houre.  
<sup>4</sup> tyme.      <sup>5</sup> humbly.      <sup>6-6</sup> god.      <sup>7</sup> always after bene.  
<sup>8</sup> omitted.      <sup>9</sup> and not.      <sup>10</sup> mortall.      <sup>11</sup> therewith.  
<sup>12-12</sup> because.      <sup>13</sup> when.      <sup>14</sup> the.      <sup>15</sup> heere.  
<sup>16</sup> vnto.      <sup>17</sup> that.      <sup>18</sup> King.



in suche wyse that my sowle shal bere no charge for it  
 at the day of Iugment.' when the lordes and ladyes  
 that were there assembeled hard the wordes of kynge  
 4 Oberon / and sawe <sup>1</sup>clerely how <sup>1</sup>his last ende aproched  
<sup>2</sup>nere / y<sup>e</sup> cryes and clamours *that* was <sup>3</sup>there made  
 was <sup>4</sup>maruel to here, and spesyally ther was suche  
 wepynge and cryeng<sup>5</sup> in the cete that <sup>4</sup>pete it was  
 8 to here,<sup>6</sup> for they wer aduerteysid how<sup>7</sup> king Oberon  
 drewe faste<sup>8</sup> to his laste end, who lay in a ryche Oberon dies.  
 cowche in the myddes of his palayes makynge his  
 prayers to<sup>9</sup> our lorde <sup>10</sup>Iesu cryste,<sup>10</sup> and holdynge Huon  
 12 by the hande, and at<sup>11</sup> laste<sup>12</sup> sayde, ' my<sup>13</sup> dere frende  
 Huon, pray for me ' / & then he made the synge of y<sup>e</sup>  
 cros <sup>14</sup>recommendynge his sowle to<sup>9</sup> god, the which His soul is borne  
at once to para-  
dise by a great  
multitude of  
angels.  
 incontynent was borne in to paradyce by a greate  
 16 multytude of angelles sent fro <sup>10</sup>our lord Iesu chryst,<sup>10</sup>  
 who at ther depertynge made such shynyng and  
 clerenes in y<sup>e</sup> palays that ther was neuer none suche  
 sene before / and there with there was so swete a smell  
 20 *that* every man thought<sup>7</sup> they had bene rauysshed in  
 to paradyse, wherby they knewe suerly that kynge  
 Oberons sowle was saued / when kynge Huon, & kyng  
 Arthur, & quene Esclaramonde / Morgan le faye and  
 24 Transelyne / and kynge Carahew / Gloryand and  
 Malabron / and all other knyghtes and ladyes, <sup>15</sup>when  
 they<sup>15</sup> knewe that kynge Oberon was dede / there is  
 no humayne tonge can tell the cryes, wepynges, and  
 28 complayntes that was <sup>3</sup>made there for the dethe of  
 kynge Oberon / then his body was taken and borne to  
 the plase where his sepulture was deuysed / the whiche Oberon is buried  
in the new abbey  
as he willed  
before his death.  
 kynge Huon caused to be made ryght rychely / &  
 32 founde there an abbey as kyng Oberon had deuysed.

<sup>1-1</sup> well that.<sup>2</sup> Fol. cxlviii. back. col. 1.<sup>3</sup> were.<sup>4</sup> great.<sup>5</sup> lamentations.<sup>6</sup> it.<sup>7</sup> that.<sup>8</sup> neere unto.<sup>9</sup> unto.<sup>10-10</sup> god.<sup>11</sup> the.<sup>12</sup> hee.<sup>13</sup> right.<sup>14</sup> and.<sup>15-15</sup> omitted.

At the funeral  
banquet are three  
crowned kings,  
and two beautiful  
queens.

At length kings  
Arthur and  
Carahew take  
their leave,

and king Huon  
and queen  
Esclaramonde  
rule over fairy-  
land.

After the buryall / they retourned to y<sup>e</sup> palays, wher as  
the tables were set, and there sate .iii. crowned kynges  
& two excellent quenes ful of great beauty; at the  
hede<sup>1</sup> of the table sate kynge Huon, and nexte<sup>2</sup> hym 4  
kynge Arthure, and then <sup>3</sup>kynge Carahew and the two  
quenes / & the other ladyes departid and went and  
dyned in ther chambers / <sup>4</sup>they were all serued of  
euery thyng that was nessessary. And after dyner 8  
and grace sayd / kynge Arthure and kynge Carahew  
toke theyr leue of kynge Huon and of quene Esclara-  
monde / and so departid euery man in to his owne  
coun tre / and Morgan and Transelyne taryed a sertayne 12  
space with quene Esclaramond in great ioy and solas.  
Now let vs leue spekyng of kynge Huon and of quene  
Esclaramonde, who taryed styll in the fayrey, and shal  
do vnto<sup>5</sup> the day of Iugemente / and let vs retourn to 16  
our<sup>6</sup> mater and speke of y<sup>e</sup> fayre Claryet, doughter to<sup>2</sup>  
kynge Huon, who was at the<sup>7</sup> citey of Burdeaux.



¶ Howe the kynge of Hongary & the kynge  
of Engelond and Florence, sone to<sup>2</sup> the 20  
kynge of Aragon, desyred to haue in  
maryage the fayre lady Claryet / and how  
she was betrayed by Broharte / and how  
syr Barnarde was drowned, & of the ylles<sup>8</sup> 24  
that the traytoure Brohart dyd to<sup>2</sup> the<sup>9</sup>  
lady Claryet / and how he dyed at the  
laste. Ca. C.lviii.

<sup>1</sup> vpper end. <sup>2</sup> vnto. <sup>3</sup> Fol. cxlviii. back, col. 2.

<sup>4</sup> and. <sup>5</sup> vntill. <sup>6</sup> former. <sup>7</sup> noble. <sup>8</sup> euils.

<sup>9</sup> faire.



4 E haue harde here before how kynge  
 Huon & quene Esclaramonde, when  
 they departid fro<sup>1</sup> Burdeaux they lefte  
 theyr doughter in the kepyng of the  
 good abbot of Cluny, her vncl / who  
 grew and dayly amended in suche a wyse<sup>2</sup> that when she  
 came to the <sup>3</sup>age of .xv. yere, for her excellent beauty  
 8 her renome was so great in euery countre that there  
 was nother kynge nor duke but <sup>4</sup>that<sup>4</sup> desyred to haue  
 her in maryage / so that the abbot and Barnard her  
 cosyn had great busines to giue eche of them theyr  
 12 answeere to be contente / one was the kynge of  
 Englonde, another the kynge of Hungarye, and the  
 thyrde<sup>5</sup> was Florence, sone to<sup>6</sup> the kynge of Aragon /  
 But specyally the kynge of Hungarye wold haue had  
 16 her / the<sup>7</sup> abbot answered the kynge of hungaryes  
 enbassadours and<sup>8</sup> to all the other, that vntyll he had  
 harde some worde<sup>9</sup> fro<sup>10</sup> duke huon her father, he coulde  
 not agre to no<sup>11</sup> mariage for her / but yf they wolde  
 20 retourne agayne by the feast of saynt Iohn nexte  
 folowinge, then he wolde be contente to holde a daye  
 of communycacyon of maryage in the towne of Blaye /  
 wherto the kynge of Hungarye was contente, and  
 24 so were all the other enbassadours / and when the day  
 came the good abbot toke his way to<sup>6</sup> Blaye to be  
 there agaynst the comyng of the kynges of Englonde  
<sup>4</sup>and of <sup>4</sup>hungarye / and Florence, sone to the kynge of  
 28 Aragon / the<sup>7</sup> abbot lefte the lady Claryet in the  
 kepyng of Barnard her cosyn, who enterly<sup>12</sup> loued  
 her / <sup>13</sup>when the abbot was come to<sup>6</sup> Blaye, <sup>14</sup>the abbot<sup>14</sup>  
 made the towne to be hanged ryche for the comyng  
 32 of the sayd kynges. And y<sup>e</sup>. iiii. daye after the abbot

Clariet was left at  
Bordeaux in the  
care of the abbot  
of Cluny.

When she was  
fifteen years old  
she had every  
king and duke in  
Europe for her  
suitor.

There were the  
kings of England  
and Hungary,  
and Florence, son  
of the king of  
Aragon.  
The king of  
Hungary was  
especially  
importunate.  
The abbot wants  
to consult Huon,  
and defers his  
answer to the  
Hungarian and  
other envoys till  
St. John's day.

He invites the  
suitors to Blaye  
to hear his  
decision.

<sup>1</sup> the Citie of. <sup>2</sup> sort.

<sup>3</sup> Fol. cxlviii. col. 1 (*should be* xlix.). <sup>4-4</sup> omitted.

<sup>5</sup> other.

<sup>6</sup> unto.

<sup>7</sup> good.

<sup>8</sup> so.

<sup>9</sup> newes.

<sup>10</sup> for in text.

<sup>11</sup> any.

<sup>12</sup> entirely *after* loued her.

<sup>13</sup> and.

<sup>14-14</sup> hee.

The king of  
England comes  
first, and goes  
away hunting :

next arrives the  
king of Hungary :

and lastly  
Florence.

A traitor of  
Bordeaux, named  
Brohart, knew  
that the abbot  
had decided that  
Clariet should  
choose a husband  
for herself.

Brohart wants  
Clariet for  
himself,  
and returns from  
Blaye to  
Bordeaux.

came thether / fyrst came to the towne the kynge of  
Engelonge, who anone after *that* he was alyghted and  
somewhat rested, he lepte on<sup>1</sup> his horse agayne and  
wente a huntynge into the laundes / then after came the <sup>4</sup>  
kyng of hungarye in goodly araye ; he alyghted at the  
paleys, whereas the abbot receyued hym with great  
ioye / then after<sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>entered Florence with a noble  
company. The abbot did salute them all one after <sup>8</sup>  
another, sayenge howe<sup>4</sup> he and the hole towne were at  
theyr commaundemente, & they thanked hym. There  
was a false traytoure borne in Burdeaux, who had  
harde all the conclusyon that the abbot had taken with <sup>12</sup>  
these prynces / and that was that they shulde se the  
lady / and he that pleased her best shulde haue her in  
maryage / this traytoure that harde that conclusyon  
thought in<sup>5</sup> hymselfe that he wolde let that mater yf he <sup>16</sup>  
coude, and haue her hymselfe / this traytours name was  
Brohart / he departed fro Blaye sore desyryng to  
atayne to his false enterpryse ; he toke a lytell shyp  
and sayled incontynent to<sup>6</sup> Burdeaux / then in haste <sup>20</sup>  
he <sup>7</sup>toke londe<sup>7</sup> and fayned hymselfe as thoughe he  
had great busynes to do ; so he came to the paleys  
wheras he founde<sup>8</sup> Barnarde <sup>9</sup>and y<sup>e</sup> lady<sup>9</sup> lenynge in  
a wyndow deuysynge together. Then Broharte saluted <sup>24</sup>  
the lady<sup>10</sup> and Barnarde al smyling. ‘Brohart,’ quod  
Barnard, ‘the mater must be good that I se you come  
smylynge / I praye you<sup>11</sup> shewe<sup>12</sup> vs<sup>13</sup> how dothe the<sup>14</sup>  
abbot of Cluny, and how hath he receyued the prynces <sup>28</sup>  
that be come to Blay’ / ‘Barnarde,’ quod the traytour,  
‘know for trouthe *that* in all your lyfe ye neuer saw  
suche noblenes as is now in y<sup>e</sup> towne of blay, and  
therefore, syr, hastily or<sup>15</sup> the mater goeth any further, <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> vpon.      <sup>2</sup> afterward.      <sup>3</sup> Fol. cxlviii[ix]. col. 2.

<sup>4</sup> that.      <sup>5</sup> within.      <sup>6</sup> vnto.      <sup>7-7</sup> went on shoare.

<sup>8</sup> the faire ladie clariet.      <sup>9-9</sup> omitted.

<sup>10</sup> after Barnard.      <sup>11</sup> to.      <sup>12</sup> vnto.      <sup>13</sup> mee.

<sup>14</sup> good.      <sup>15</sup> before.

- the<sup>1</sup> abbot of Cluny, who is vncle to my lady here  
 presente / he<sup>2</sup> sendethe you worde by me that inconty-  
 nent as sone as nyght comethe *that* preuely my lady  
 4 Claryet be made redy and apareyled and dysgysed lyke  
 a man / and you & I to brynge her to<sup>3</sup> bley to her  
 vncle the abbot of Cluny / and that tomorowe by<sup>4</sup>  
 none ye ordeyne damoysselles to come <sup>5</sup>after and to  
 8 brynge with them all her ryche robes and aparayle  
 to aray her therin when tyme shall be, and that we  
 take with vs one<sup>6</sup> of her apareyles to put on her when  
 she come there tyll<sup>7</sup> all her other aparayle comethe /  
 12 and the cause why *that* her vncle sendeth for her now  
 so preuely is that she shulde se all them that desyreth  
 her in maryage, for out of y<sup>e</sup> chaumbre wheras she shal  
 be in she shal se them all one after another <sup>8</sup>thruge a  
 16 lateyse<sup>8</sup> wyndowe' / when Barnarde hard the vnhappy  
 traytoure / wenyng<sup>9</sup> he had sayd <sup>10</sup>trouth,<sup>10</sup> bycause he  
 was a man of credens, therefore he byleued his wordes.  
 Alas, why dyd he so, for a more<sup>11</sup> traytoure ther was not  
 20 fro thense to Rome, his father and his bretherne were  
 so all / but Barnarde byleued hym bycause he wente  
 with the abbot / then Barnarde sayde to<sup>3</sup> Claryet /  
 'lady, ye must make you redy to departe as sone  
 24 as nyght comethe / and ye muste be apareyled as  
 Broharte hathe shewed, to the entente that ye be not  
 parseyued tyll<sup>7</sup> ye come to Blaye to your vncle the  
 abbot' / 'Barnarde,' quod the lady, 'syn it is the  
 28 pleasure of myne vncle and of you it is reason that I do  
 it' / then she went into her chaumbre and aparayled  
 her with her preuy demoysselles, & they laughed at her  
 when they sawe her in a mans apareyle / and the yl<sup>12</sup>  
 32 traytoure dyd so moch that he gotte a lytell shyppe and

He tells Barnard,  
 who guards  
 Clariet, that she  
 is to go with him  
 to Blaye disguised  
 as a man,

and that her  
 maids are to  
 follow the next  
 day with all her  
 apparel.

She is secretly to  
 see her suitors at  
 Blaye.

Barnard believes  
 Brohart,

and bids Clariet  
 depart.

Clariet is  
 disguised.

<sup>1</sup> good.      <sup>2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> vnto.      <sup>4</sup> about.  
<sup>5</sup> Fol. cxlviii.[ix.] back, col. 1.      <sup>6</sup> some.      <sup>7</sup> vntill.  
<sup>8-8</sup> out at a secret.      <sup>9</sup> that all that.  
<sup>10-10</sup> had been true.      <sup>11</sup> vild.      <sup>12</sup> cruell.



With Barnard  
and Brohart she  
enters a ship.

Brohart deceives  
Barnard.

They pass down  
the Garonne.

brought it redy to the posterne of y<sup>e</sup> paleys, and he had  
gote redy a great stone and tyed therto a corde / then  
he came to<sup>1</sup> Barnarde and sayd / 'syr, it is<sup>2</sup> tyme to  
departe, that we maye be at blaye or<sup>3</sup> it be mydnyght' / 4  
then Barnarde came to the lady, whome he founde  
redy to departe, and sayd, all smyllynge, 'fayre lady, ye  
resemble well to be a gentyll squyre' / bar<sup>4</sup>narde put  
his sworde aboute hym, and toke the lady by the arme 8  
& sayde / 'come on companyon, it is tyme we go' /  
Brohart wente on before, and barnarde and the  
damoyzell<sup>5</sup> went after arme in arme, and so went<sup>6</sup>  
to the posterne so preuely *that* no man parseyued them / 12  
then Brohart entered in<sup>7</sup> fyrste and toke Claryet by  
the hand and led her to the ende of the shyp, <sup>8</sup>then  
Barnarde entered / broharte softly let the stone slyp  
into the water and held the cord styll in his hande, and 16  
sayd to<sup>1</sup> Barnard, 'syr, I do this bycause the shyp  
shall not go to faste tyll<sup>9</sup> we be paste the medyll of the  
streme' / and sayd to<sup>1</sup> Barnard, 'syr, holde you this  
cord in your hande tyll we be paste the heye streme / 20  
and then we shall drawe it vp agayne.' Barnarde, who  
thought none yll, dyd as the traytour sayd / then they  
toke the helme in theyr handes, and so departed along  
the ryuer of Gerounde. 24

¶ Howe the traytoure Broharte drowned  
Barnarde, and of theyr aduentures / and  
howe Broharte was slayne. Ca. C.lix.



Hen Brohart sawe *that* they were fare 28  
of fro y<sup>e</sup> towne, & that y<sup>e</sup> nyght was  
darke, he came to<sup>1</sup> Barnarde & sayde,  
'syr, quykely drawe vp y<sup>e</sup> stone by  
the corde out of the water' / then 32

<sup>1</sup> vnto.      <sup>2</sup> full.      <sup>3</sup> before.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. cxlviii[x]. back, col. 2.      <sup>5</sup> Ladie.      <sup>6</sup> on.

<sup>7</sup> to the shippe.      <sup>8</sup> and.      <sup>9</sup> vntill.

- Barnard stowpyd downe lowe to drawe it vp / then  
 Brohart toke barnard by <sup>1</sup>the lege or<sup>1</sup> he was ware,  
 and with all his strengthe he tombelyd <sup>2</sup>Barnarde<sup>3</sup> ouer  
<sup>4</sup>the<sup>4</sup> bourde into the water, wheras he was drowned, the  
 whiche was great petye / for a more trewer knyght  
 coude not be founde / when the<sup>5</sup> lady Claryet saw that  
 Brohart had cast barnarde ouer the<sup>5</sup> bourde she gaue  
<sup>8</sup>a great crye, and she came to<sup>6</sup> Brohart and drew hym  
 by the here / when<sup>7</sup> the traytour saw that y<sup>e</sup> lady tare  
 his here, he toke her by the armes so fersly that he  
 caste her to y<sup>e</sup> <sup>8</sup>shyp botom,<sup>8</sup> & dyd <sup>9</sup>all to<sup>9</sup> bete her,<sup>10</sup>  
<sup>12</sup>& sayde that her cryes and wepynges coude not ayde  
 her, for whether she wold or not he wolde haue his  
 pleasure of her / when y<sup>e</sup> lady harde the false traytour  
 she was in great fere, & began sore to trymble, making  
<sup>16</sup>her praiers to our lord <sup>11</sup>Iesu christ<sup>11</sup> <sup>9</sup>and to the vyrgyn  
 mary<sup>9</sup> to defende her fro dyshonour and to brynge her  
 out of the handes of that false traytour her enemy /  
 then the vnhappy traytour came to<sup>6</sup> her and sayde /  
<sup>20</sup>that it were better for her to fulfyll his pleasure with  
 good wyll and loue rather then by force, or elles to<sup>12</sup>  
 caste her into the ryuer of Geroune / 'O false traytour,'  
 quod she, 'as longe as thou leueste thou shalte neuer  
<sup>24</sup>haue ioye nor pleasure of my body' / then the false  
 morderer dyd bete the lady, that pety it was to se ; <sup>13</sup>so  
 he lefte her lyenge<sup>14</sup> in a maner ded ; when he sawe<sup>7</sup> it  
 wold be no better he was wery, and so fell on<sup>15</sup> slepe /  
<sup>28</sup>the shyp wente forthe by force of the streme, and  
 by that tyme it was fayre daye / so fare the shyp went  
 that nyght that they were nere to the ende of the  
 ryuer of Geroune / and y<sup>e</sup> lady sore wepyng behelde  
<sup>32</sup>the traytour how he slepte, and sawe<sup>16</sup> by hym a lofe of

Brohart, by a  
wicked device,  
throws Barnard  
into the river,  
and he is drowned.

Clariet cries out,  
and tears  
Brohart's hair.

Brohart flings  
her to the ship's  
bottom, and beats  
her.

He will by force  
dishonour her,  
or drown her.

Clariet resists,  
and Brohart beats  
her till she is  
nearly dead.

The traitor then  
falls asleep ;

Clariet revives ;

<sup>1-1</sup> one of his legges before. <sup>2</sup> Fol. cxlv[1]. col. 1.

<sup>3</sup> him. <sup>4</sup> ship. <sup>5</sup> faire. <sup>6</sup> vnto. <sup>7</sup> that.

<sup>8-8</sup> bottom of the shippe. <sup>9-9</sup> omitted. <sup>10</sup> cruelly.

<sup>11-11</sup> god. <sup>12</sup> he would. <sup>13</sup> and.

<sup>14</sup> lying after maner. <sup>15</sup> a. <sup>16</sup> lying.

she sees him  
sleeping with a  
loaf of bread at  
his side, of which  
she stands in  
great need.  
She weeps  
bitterly,  
and prays to God  
for aid.

The ship enters  
the sea,

and is carried to  
a little island.  
Brohart awakes,

and entreats  
Clariet to yield to  
him.

But he curses God  
when he perceives  
that they have  
reached a deserted  
island.

Clariet leaves the  
boat,  
and runs up the  
rock.  
Six thieves lie hid  
there.

brede / the famyne that she was in constrayned her to  
take and to eat it, for she had suche famyne that  
she coude bere<sup>1</sup> it no lenger / then she made her  
prayers al<sup>2</sup> wepyng to our lorde god, requyrynge hym <sup>4</sup>  
to kepe and defende her virgynyte and to preserue her  
fro that false tyrant who had betrayed her / so fare  
wente the shyp *that* it enterid into the see / the wynde  
was great, and they had nother helme nor sayle to ayde <sup>8</sup>  
them selues with all / then the wynd toke them and  
draue them to a lytell port vnder a hye rocke in a  
lytell Isle / then Brohart awoke and was glad when he  
saw they were aryued nere to the londe / for he knew <sup>12</sup>  
ryght well the countre; <sup>3</sup>then he sayde to the ladye /  
'thou seest well<sup>4</sup> thou haste no pusaunce to go agaynste  
my wyll / the whiche thou must nedes fulfyll / for thou  
canste not haue any socoure of any man or woman <sup>16</sup>  
leuyng, nor al thy defence cannot auayle the, thou  
seest well we be in an Isle wheras the see goeth  
rounde about it / wherfore I haue great dought that  
we shall neuer depart<sup>5</sup> hens: therfore dysmay you not, <sup>20</sup>  
for as nowe I wyll do the no hurte.' This thefe, when  
he saw that he was in this Isle, he began to curse god  
<sup>6</sup>and his mother,<sup>6</sup> and the owre that euer he sawe  
Clariet / for the false traytour saw well that he muste <sup>24</sup>  
dye there <sup>7</sup>for hunger<sup>7</sup> and rage / for there was no shyp  
to enter into the see, therfore he had then no wyl to do  
any yll to the lady / the which was by the grace  
of god, who wold not that the lady shuld be dys- <sup>28</sup>  
honored / <sup>3</sup>when she sawe that they were so nere the  
londe, sore wepyng she issued out of the bote, and ran  
vp the rocke. Now god defende her, <sup>8</sup>the same tyme  
there was on<sup>9</sup> the mountayne .vi. theues who laye <sup>32</sup>  
to spy the marchauntes / and they had a lytell galey

<sup>1</sup> forbear.

<sup>5</sup> from.

<sup>2</sup> Fol. cxlv[1]. col. 2.

<sup>6-6</sup> omitted.

<sup>3</sup> and.

<sup>7-7</sup> by famine.

<sup>4</sup> that.

<sup>8</sup> for.

<sup>9</sup> vpon.

- lyynge in a lytell corner of the rocke nere to them, and had couered it with boues and grene leues; when Brohart saw the <sup>1</sup>damoyzell ryn awaye he cryed as  
 4 loude as he coude, and said, 'by god, dame,<sup>2</sup> your fleynge shall not awaye,<sup>3</sup> for whether *thou* wylte or not this nyght I wyll haue my wyll<sup>4</sup> of the' / the .vi. theues who were on<sup>5</sup> the mountayne etynge of ther  
 8 mete, when they harde Broharte cryenge after the damoyzell, they were sore abasshed, and were in great fere *that* they had bene spied. Then the damoyzell, who ran vpon the mountayne, when she sawe them she  
 12 sayd, 'A, syrs, I pray you haue petye of me and ayde and socoure me agaynst this false traytoure, this nyght passyd he stole<sup>6</sup> me awaye out of the cetye of Burdeaux, <sup>7</sup>I am doughter to noble duke Huon' / when these  
 16 theues harde the damoyzell they rose vp all and thought <sup>8</sup>it had bene some feyned mater to haue begyled them, but when they sawe Broharte folowe after the lady / then the mayster of the theues stepte forth and said,  
 20 'how is it that thou arte so hardy to come vpon vs / thou arte come hether to spye vs, but we shall neuer be acused by y<sup>e</sup> / *thou* arte but yll come to this brydale' / when the traytour broharte sawe the .vi. theues he was  
 24 sore abasshed, and sawe well how<sup>8</sup> he shulde be fayne to defend hym selfe / then he drew out his sworde and strake the mayster thefe <sup>9</sup>so on<sup>9</sup> the hed that he claue hym to the tethe / <sup>7</sup>when the other .v. theues sawe  
 28 theyr maister slayne they were<sup>10</sup> sorowful,<sup>11</sup> then they assembeled<sup>12</sup> Brohart on all sydes / and he defended hymselfe so well *that* or<sup>13</sup> he was stryken to the erthe he slewe .iiii. of them, and in the meane tyme whyles  
 32 they fought / the lady Claryet came to the place

Brohart threatens her from the boat,

and his voice rouses the thieves.

Clariet sees them, and begs them to have pity on her.

They stop Brohart in his pursuit of Clariet.

Brohart draws his sword, and kills the master thief.

The other thieves attack the traitor, but before they struck him down, he killed four of them in all.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. cxlv[1]. back, col. 1.      <sup>2</sup> madame.      <sup>3</sup> you.  
<sup>4</sup> pleasure.      <sup>5</sup> vppon.      <sup>6</sup> did steale.      <sup>7</sup> and.      <sup>8</sup> that.  
<sup>9-9</sup> such a blow vppon.      <sup>10</sup> right.      <sup>11</sup> and angrie.  
<sup>12</sup> assailed.      <sup>13</sup> before.

Clariet finds  
food and drink in  
the thieves' place,  
and eats and  
drinks.

The thieves make  
Brohart confess  
his evil inten-  
tions.

Then they bind  
his feet, and  
hang him by  
his feet to a tree:  
under his head  
they light a fire,  
and thus he ends  
his life.

The two thieves  
who are left alive  
learn from Clariet  
all her story.

They give Clariet  
rich apparel,  
and admire her  
beauty.

wheras the theues had bene, & there she founde mete  
and drynke plente / <sup>1</sup>when she sawe the mete she was<sup>2</sup>  
ioyfull, and thankyd god therof, & dyd eate <sup>3</sup>and  
drynke at her pleasure / and she saw how the theues <sup>4</sup>  
had cast Brohart to the erth, wherof she was ioyful,  
howbeit she knewe not what company she was com<sup>4</sup> to  
no[r]<sup>5</sup> in whose handes she was aryued in; when the  
theues had cast Brohart to the erth / they made hym <sup>8</sup>  
to shew where he had taken y<sup>e</sup> damoyzell / and he  
shewed them all the mater, and howe he had taken her  
to the entente to haue dyshonored her & to haue had  
her to his wyfe, and to haue caryed her into some <sup>12</sup>  
straunge place vnknownen / when y<sup>e</sup> theues hard what  
Brohart had sayde / they sayde, 'O thou vntrewe and  
false traytoure, there is no tourmente in the worlde so  
crewel but that *thou* haste deserued a worse payne, and <sup>16</sup>  
therfore by vs thy deserte shalbe rewarded' / then they  
toke and bounde fast his fete, and hanged hym vp by  
the fete on<sup>6</sup> a tre / then they made a fyer, and vnder  
his hede they made a great smoke, & so made hym to <sup>20</sup>  
dye in great doloure<sup>7</sup> / thus ended the traytoure  
Broharte myserably his dayes / then the two theues  
came to the place wheras Claryet was, and they de-  
maunded of her estate / and she shewed them all the <sup>24</sup>  
maner, and how she was taken by y<sup>e</sup> traytour Broharte,  
and she shewed<sup>8</sup> them what she was / then the theues  
caused her to put of her clothes that she was in, and  
dyd<sup>9</sup> on her other ryche aparayle / <sup>1</sup>when they saw her <sup>28</sup>  
so aparayled they thoughte<sup>10</sup> no lady nor damoyzell in  
the worlde coude pas her in beaute, for she was come  
agayne to her beaute, for<sup>1</sup> she thoughte herselfe well  
assured bycause she was delyuered fro<sup>11</sup> Brohart / <sup>32</sup>  
when one of these two theues sawe the great beaute

<sup>1</sup> and.      <sup>2</sup> right.

<sup>3</sup> Fol. cxlv[1]. back, col. 2.      <sup>4</sup> in.

<sup>5</sup> not in text.

<sup>6</sup> vpon.

<sup>7</sup> and paine.

<sup>8</sup> vnto.

<sup>9</sup> to put.

<sup>10</sup> that.

<sup>11</sup> the false Traitour.



of this damoyssel, he sayd to<sup>1</sup> his felawe / 'this nyght I  
 wyl haue my pleasure of her' / the other sayd<sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>he  
 wolde not suffer that / and sayd howe he was y<sup>e</sup> fyrste  
 4 that ouerthruw Brohart who had stollen her awaye;  
 then y<sup>e</sup> other drewe out his dager and strake his felawe  
 into the body to the ha[r]te<sup>4</sup> / & when he felte  
 hymselfe streken to the dethe / he toke corage on hym  
 8 and drew his sworde and stroke the other on the hed to  
 the braynes, and so he fell downe dede / and the other  
 that was wounded to the deth fel downe in lyke wyse  
 by his felaw ded, and so therby the <sup>5</sup>mayde<sup>5</sup> Claryet was  
 12 <sup>6</sup>there all alone / when she sawe herselfe so all alone in  
 the Isle wheras was<sup>7</sup> non habytacyon / she began then  
 petuously to<sup>8</sup> complayne, sayeng, 'O <sup>9</sup>very god,<sup>9</sup> I pray  
 the by thy grace to haue of me pety,<sup>10</sup> and I requyre  
 16 the humbely where so euer I go to saue and defende my  
 vyrgynyte & ayde me <sup>11</sup>to<sup>11</sup> come to sauegard.' Nowe  
 let vs leue spekyng of the fayre Claryet & retourne to  
 speke of the kynges & prynces that were at blaye  
 20 abydyng the comyng thether of the<sup>12</sup> lady Claryet.

One of them longs  
 to haue his  
 pleasure of her:  
 but the other will  
 not allow that, as  
 he was the first to  
 kill Brohart.

They fight, and  
 both are slain.

Claryet, finding  
 herself all alone,  
 prays to God to  
 pity her.

¶ Of the great sorowe that was made at  
 Blaye by the abbot of Cluny and by the  
 prynces of the noble citey of Burdeaux for  
 24 the fayre<sup>13</sup> Claryet that was stollen away,  
 & of the sorow that was made when they  
 sawe Barnarde brought in dede by .vi.  
 men. And of y<sup>e</sup> ponysshement that was  
 28 done to y<sup>e</sup> lynage of<sup>14</sup> Broharte. Ca. C.lx.

<sup>1</sup> vnto.      <sup>2</sup> that.      <sup>3</sup> Fol. cli. col. 1.      <sup>4</sup> hatte *in text*.

<sup>5-5</sup> faire Ladie.      <sup>6</sup> left.      <sup>7</sup> no *after* habytacyon.

<sup>8</sup> weepe and.      <sup>9-9</sup> good Lord.      <sup>10</sup> of me *after* pety.

<sup>11-11</sup> that I may.      <sup>12</sup> faire.      <sup>13</sup> Ladie.

<sup>14</sup> the Traytour.

The abbot of Cluny and Clariet's royal suitors at Blaye resolve to send for her from Bordeaux.



The abbot admires the kings, and especially Florence.

The maids and knights whom Brohart had bidden follow Clariet to Blaye, arrive there.

The abbot thinks Clariet is with them;

but when he learns their story, how Brohart took Clariet from them, he swoons.

Hen these kynges and prynces were  
aryued at Blaye, & had spoken with  
the<sup>1</sup> abbot of Cluny / they concludyd  
betwene them .iii. *that* the lady should 4  
be sent for, & he that she wold frely  
chose shulde be her husband / for eche of them thought  
themselfe moste fayre / & thought<sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>there coude not  
be founde .iii. goodlyer yonge princes then they were / 8  
but specyally Florence, sone to the kynge of Aragon,  
was most fayrest. And y<sup>e</sup> same tyme that they were  
determynd to sende to y<sup>e</sup> citeye of Burdeaux for the  
lady Claryet,<sup>4</sup> came thetether the knyghtes, squyers / 12  
ladyes and damoysselles apoynted by Broharte, thynk-  
ynge to haue found there y<sup>e</sup> fayre Claryet, and they  
brought her robes and iowelles to aparaile her withal,  
as Brohart had deuysed / they cam and lyghted at the 16  
palays. the abbot of Cluny beyng at the gate, &  
seyng ladyes and damoysselles comynge, thought<sup>2</sup>  
it had bene his nece, the fayre<sup>5</sup> Claryet; he wente  
incontynent to<sup>6</sup> them / and demaunded where his nece 20  
Claryet was / 'syr,' quod the knyghtes / 'we thynke to  
fynd her here with you / for yesternyghte late the lady  
departed fro the citeye of Burdeaux to come to you /  
and Brohart came for her, who with syr Barnarde 24  
wente with her, and they commaunded vs that we  
shulde not fayle to be here *with* you at this oure' /  
then they shewed all the maner how Brohart came  
and<sup>7</sup> had sayde to<sup>6</sup> them / and when the<sup>1</sup> abbot of 28  
Cluny hard them / he fell sodaynely to the erth in a  
swoune, so that all that were there present thought<sup>2</sup> he  
had bene dede / then at last he reuyued and cast vp<sup>8</sup> a  
great crye, and sayd, 'A, my ryght dere nese, I ough<sup>2</sup> 32  
to be sorowful thus to lese you in suche<sup>9</sup> maner, *that*<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> good.

<sup>2</sup> that.

<sup>3</sup> Fol. cli. col. 2.

<sup>4</sup> there.

<sup>5</sup> Ladie.

<sup>6</sup> vuto.

<sup>7</sup> what he.

<sup>8</sup> out.

<sup>9</sup> this.

<sup>10</sup> I.

- wold to our lorde <sup>1</sup>Iesu chryst<sup>1</sup> that I were vnder the  
 erth, for I wolde lyue no lenger in this world / a, *thou*  
 false traytour Brohart, thy kyn<sup>2</sup> dyd neuer good /  
 4 O Barnarde, wher is becom your noblenes, yet I can not  
 byleue *that* ye be anything culpable / anon thes newes  
 were knowen i[n]<sup>3</sup> the town, so *that* all the kynges &  
 princes were aduerteysed of the <sup>4</sup>mater / <sup>5</sup>they came  
 8 hastely to the paleys wheras they founde the abbot in  
 sore wepynges, whome they had slayne & <sup>6</sup>it had not  
 bene for y<sup>e</sup> good renowne that they knewe to be in  
 hym / therfore they forbare hym / then euery man  
 12 mounted on<sup>7</sup> theyr horses & rode toward<sup>8</sup> Burdeaux,  
 wheras they founde the burgesses and the comon people  
 in great cryes and wepynges, bewaylyng for<sup>9</sup> duke  
 Huon & the duches Esclaramonde,<sup>10</sup> and<sup>11</sup> Claryet  
 16 theyr doughter, who was lost and betraied by Brohart /  
 when the abbot of Cluny and all<sup>12</sup> the other prynces  
 were entered in<sup>e</sup>to Bordeaux and sawe suche sorowe  
 made there that<sup>12</sup> they all fell to wepynge / & as they  
 20 were in this sorow there came thether .vi. men bryng-  
 yng with them syr Barnarde dede, whom they had  
 found drownid in the ryuer of Geroune / if y<sup>e</sup> sorowe  
 was great before, then it was renewed when they sawe  
 24 Barnarde dede ; if I shulde reherse the sorow that was  
 made *that* daye in the citey of Burdeaux as well of the  
 prynces as of the abbot and comon people, it shuld be  
 ouer<sup>13</sup>longe to reherse / then the kynges and prynces,  
 28 well aduerteysed of the lynngage and parentes issued of  
 y<sup>e</sup> blode of Brohart, and how alwayes they haue bene  
 full of treason, they were serchid out in euery plase in  
 the citey, as well men as women and chyl dren there  
 32 were found out to the nombre of .lxx. persons / they

The kings are  
 wrathful with the  
 abbot.

All ride to  
 Bordeaux, where  
 the people are  
 weeping for the  
 loss of Huon,  
 Esclaramonde,  
 and Clariet.

Barnard's dead  
 body, found in  
 the Garonne,  
 is brought into  
 the city.

Brohart's kindred  
 had always been  
 full of treason,  
 and they are all  
 sought out,  
 men, women,  
 and children, to  
 the number of

<sup>1-1</sup> god.      <sup>2</sup> kindred.      <sup>3</sup> *iy in text.*

<sup>4</sup> Fol. cli. back, col. 1.      <sup>5</sup> and.      <sup>6</sup> if.      <sup>7</sup> vppon.

<sup>8</sup> the Citie.      <sup>9</sup> the noble.      <sup>10</sup> his wife.      <sup>11</sup> for.

<sup>12</sup> omitted.      <sup>13</sup> too.

70, and cast into  
the Garonne.

The suitors then  
leave Bordeaux,

and the abbot  
causes Barnard  
to be buried.

were all taken and caste in to the reuer of Geroune, to the entent *that* none shulde be lefte alyue of the<sup>1</sup> kynrede, and neuer<sup>2</sup> to be had in remembraunce / after this<sup>3</sup> done y<sup>e</sup> kynges and prynces departed out of 4 the citey & rode in to theyr<sup>4</sup> countrees ryght sorowfull and sore dyspleased for the lesynge of the lady Claryet ; and the abbot abode styll at Bur<sup>5</sup>deaux and buryed Barnarde, who was<sup>6</sup> sore complayned<sup>7</sup> of all<sup>8</sup> the 8 people. Now let vs leue spekyng of them and retourne to y<sup>e</sup><sup>9</sup> lady Claryet who was all alone on<sup>10</sup> the mountayne.

¶ How the lady Claryet all alone cam to the 12 see syde, wheras aryued the kyng of Granad in a ship, who toke away claryet / and of other maters. Ca. C.lxi.



Ow sheweth the story<sup>11</sup> *that* after y<sup>e</sup> 16 theues were slayne & Brohart dede, the lady Clariet abode alone vpon the mountayne with the dede men ; she wept petyously, & sayd, 'O 20

<sup>12</sup>very god,<sup>12</sup> in what owre was I borne in / alas what<sup>13</sup> hap & desteny haue I / it had bene better for me neuer to haue bene borne, for I se wel here I must dye / alas, I wote not whether to go, for in this Isle is nother 24 man nor woman to whome I maye go for any refu<sup>14</sup>ge.' thus sore complaynyng y<sup>e</sup> lady went downe the mountayne, and by that tyme the shyppe that she came in was floted away / and as she loked into the see she 28 saw a great shyppe comynge towards that<sup>15</sup> porte for fresshe water and for wode / <sup>16</sup>when she sawe that she was ioyful, & thanked our lorde Iesu chryst ; <sup>16</sup>she

Clariet fears she  
must die on the  
deserted island.

A great ship  
approaches her,  
and she is joyful.

<sup>1</sup> that. <sup>2</sup> more. <sup>3</sup> was. <sup>4</sup> owne.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. cli. back, col. 2. <sup>6</sup> were. <sup>7</sup> for. <sup>8</sup> omitted.

<sup>9</sup> faire. <sup>10</sup> vpon. <sup>11</sup> Historie. <sup>12-12</sup> good Lord.

<sup>13</sup> ill. <sup>14</sup> Fol. clii. col. 1. <sup>15</sup> the. <sup>16</sup> and.

thoughte they had bene chrysten men / but they were  
 Sarasyns and paynymes / & with them was a kynge  
 who was theyr lorde & souerayne, he was kynge of  
 4 Granade, and was retournynge into his countre, but he  
 had suche fortune on<sup>1</sup> the see that he was constraynid  
 to come thether; then they cast theyr ancre and toke  
 lond, and the kynge, when he saw the damoyzell<sup>2</sup> on<sup>1</sup>  
 8 y<sup>e</sup> see syde, he demaunded of her what she was and  
 of what countre / 'syr,' quod she, 'syn ye wyll knowe  
 of myne estate I shall shew you' / then y<sup>e</sup> yonge<sup>3</sup> lady  
 shewed before all them that were there present how she  
 12 was doughter to duke Huon<sup>4</sup> of Burdeaux, and shewed  
 all the aduenture that was fallen to<sup>5</sup> her / when the  
 kynge Sarasyn<sup>6</sup> harde that he was<sup>7</sup> ioyfull, and sayd /  
 'fayre damoyzell,<sup>2</sup> it is happy for you that I haue  
 16 founde you, for I haue no wyfe, ye shall be my wyfe  
 and lye withe me this nyghte / but fyrste ye muste  
 renewe<sup>8</sup> your law and byleue in<sup>1</sup> y<sup>e</sup> lawe of Mahomet,  
 on<sup>1</sup> whome I do byleue' / when the<sup>9</sup> lady harde the  
 20 paynyme kyng she sayd, 'god forbede that I shuld leue  
 the lawe of Iesu Chryste to byleue <sup>10</sup>on<sup>10</sup> Mahomet,  
 I had rather haue all my members drawen one pece fro  
 another *wyth* wylde horses then to be wyfe to suche a  
 24 man as ye be' / when the kynge harde y<sup>e</sup> damoyssel  
*that* she set so lytel <sup>3</sup>pryce<sup>3</sup> by hym he had great  
 dyspleasure therat, & lyfte vp his hand and gaue her  
 on<sup>1</sup> the cheke <sup>11</sup>suche a blowe that y<sup>e</sup> blode ran out of  
 28 her mouthe & nose, so that she fel to the erth, wherof  
 he was sore blamed of his men / and he said to<sup>5</sup> them,  
 'why, syrs, <sup>12</sup>hard you not<sup>12</sup> how she dyspysed our  
 lawe and set no more by me then yf I were<sup>13</sup> a boy';  
 32 then he commaunded that they shuld take & cast her

It belongs to the  
 saracen king of  
 Granade, who is  
 on board.

He sees Clariet,  
 and asks her her  
 name and  
 country.

He offers to  
 marry her, but  
 orders her first  
 to become  
 Mahomedan.

Clariet declares  
 she will never be  
 the king's wife.

The king in anger  
 strikes her on the  
 cheek.

<sup>1</sup> vpon.

<sup>2</sup> Ladie.

<sup>3</sup> omitted.

<sup>4</sup> Huon. duke.

<sup>5</sup> vnto.

<sup>6</sup> Sarazin kinge.

<sup>7</sup> right.

<sup>8</sup> deny.

<sup>9</sup> faire.

<sup>10-10</sup> in the law of.

<sup>11</sup> Fol. clii. col. 2.

<sup>12-12</sup> did you not hear.

<sup>13</sup> had been but.



He bids his men  
cast her in the  
sea;

but they carry  
her on board ship.

When the ship  
sails away, the  
king sees her on  
board, and  
threatens to have  
his pleasure of  
her.

She kneels before  
him and begs for  
mercy.

She prays to the  
Virgin,

and a great storm  
rises to aid her.

into the see / and he departed fro her in great dis-  
pleasure *that* she answered hym so rudely / then the  
sarasyns came & toke the lady rudely and caried her  
into the shyp, and so saued her, that<sup>1</sup> the kyng knew 4  
not therof / then when the kynge cam agayne to  
the shyp they hoysed<sup>2</sup> in<sup>3</sup> theyr ancrs and made<sup>4</sup>  
sayle, & had good wynd; then as the kynge walked vp  
& downe in the shyp he sawe the damoyzell within the 8  
shyp, wherof he was<sup>5</sup> abasshed, for he <sup>6</sup>had<sup>6</sup> thought  
that his men had drownid her / then he regarded<sup>7</sup> her  
and thoughte that he neuer sawe so fayre a damoyzell,<sup>8</sup>  
& so he desired her with all his hart, and sayde to<sup>9</sup> 12  
her, 'fayre damoyzell,<sup>8</sup> now ye be here your denyall  
shall not auayle you, for this nyght ye shall lye with  
me <sup>6</sup>al nakyd<sup>'6</sup> / when<sup>10</sup> Claryet harde the paynyme  
kynge / deuoutly she called on<sup>11</sup> our lorde <sup>12</sup>Iesu chryst,<sup>12</sup> 16  
& humbely requyryng hym to preserue her *virgynyte*  
& to brynge her out of the handes of y<sup>e</sup> sarasyns /  
<sup>13</sup>then she kneled downe before y<sup>e</sup> kynge, humbely  
desyryng hym to haue marcy<sup>14</sup> of her, & said how she 20  
was content to folowe his pleasure as sone as he came  
into his owne contre / 'wel,' quod the kyng, 'whether  
ye wyl or not ye must suffer my pleasure / for I wyl  
not depart fro ye tyl<sup>15</sup> ye<sup>16</sup> haue lyen with me<sup>17</sup> one 24  
nyght / and that I may holde you in myne armes' /  
<sup>13</sup>when she vnderstoode hym she began sore to wepe,  
desyrynge <sup>12</sup>the vyrgyn Mary<sup>12</sup> to socoure and ayde<sup>18</sup> her  
at that tyme / for otherwyse she saw <sup>19</sup>well she was but 28  
lost / therwith there <sup>20</sup>rose vp<sup>20</sup> so great a wynde and  
so horryble that the see that was calme and peasable  
began to ryse <sup>6</sup>and swell<sup>6</sup> so maruaylously that the

<sup>1</sup> but.    <sup>2</sup> drew.    <sup>3</sup> vp.    <sup>4</sup> hoysed vp.    <sup>5</sup> sore.

<sup>6-6</sup> omitted.    <sup>7</sup> looked vpon.    <sup>8</sup> Ladie.    <sup>9</sup> vnto.

<sup>10</sup> the faire Ladie.    <sup>11</sup> vpon.    <sup>12-12</sup> god.    <sup>13</sup> and.

<sup>14</sup> pittie.    <sup>15</sup> vntill.    <sup>16</sup> I.    <sup>17</sup> you.

<sup>18</sup> aide before succour.    <sup>19</sup> Fol. clii. back, col. 1.

<sup>20-20</sup> arose.

waves were as hye as mountaynes, and the wynde<sup>1</sup> so great *that* whether the sarasyns wolde or not it behoued them to abandon theyr shyp to y<sup>e</sup> wynde<sup>2</sup> and  
 4 wether,<sup>2</sup> wherof they were in suche fere that the kyng and all other had great doute of the<sup>3</sup> dethe; <sup>4</sup>theyr sayle was all to torne with y<sup>e</sup> wynd, & nere hande the shyp perysshed, they cryed<sup>5</sup> vp on theyr god  
 8 Mahomet for socour and ayde; the kyng was in such fere that he had<sup>6</sup> no lyste to desyre the fayre<sup>7</sup> Claryet of her loue, who was sore afrayde & pale for fere / this tourmente and tempeste endured all the nyghte / &  
 12 they were dreuen the same nyght be yonde valence y<sup>e</sup> great / and in the mornynge they sawe y<sup>e</sup> towne of Tours, to the whiche porte the wynde draue them /  
<sup>8</sup>when the paynymys saw *that* they were aryued there  
 16 they were<sup>9</sup> sorowfull, for they knew well<sup>10</sup> the towne was christened / they saw no maner how to eschew it, but they had rather to be as selaues all theyr lyues then to be drownyd in the see / the same tyme ther was  
 20 aryued at the same porte a noble knyght namyd syr Peter of Aragon; <sup>8</sup>when he saw the other shyp comynge to the porte by constraynte of the wynde, and sawe well without it were socoured the shyp shuld be  
 24 perysshed agaynst the rocke, wherby they within and all the ryches shulde be perysshed and drowned / then he cryed to the Galeyes that laye in the porte to go and socoure the straung shyp / <sup>8</sup>then the maryners  
 28 wente to the see and came to the shyppe.

The king and all his men think they will die.

The king is sore afraid.

The next day the wind drives them to the town of Tours,

where a brave knight, Sir Peter of Arragon, had just arrived.

The Saracens' ship is nearly wrecked, when Sir Peter goes in his galleys to her rescue.

<sup>11</sup>¶ when the Sarasyns sawe that they were in fere to be slayne, then there came two paynymys to the damoyzell to haue taken her and to haue cast her into  
 32 the see. Then she toke the mast of the shyppe in her armes and helde it so faste that they coude not drawe

The Saracens fear the Christians will slay them, and endeavour to fling Clariet overboard; but she clings to the mast, and cannot be moved.

<sup>1</sup> was.      <sup>2-2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> their.      <sup>4</sup> for.  
<sup>6</sup> and called.      <sup>6</sup> now.      <sup>7</sup> Ladie.      <sup>8</sup> and.      <sup>9</sup> right.  
<sup>10</sup> that.      <sup>11</sup> Fol. clii, back, col. 2,

The Arragonese  
enter the ship  
and see her  
struggling with  
the men.

Peter asks the  
Saracens how she  
came there.

In anger at their  
cruelty, he and  
his sailors slay  
all the Saracens  
except the king.

The king tells  
Peter how he  
found Clariet.

Peter replies that  
he must accept  
Christ or die.

The king refuses  
to abandon  
Mahomet,

her fro it / then the Aragonyse began to aproche to the  
shyppe, and cast their hokes to ioynne to gether. The  
lady in the shyppe had great fere / the whiche was no  
maruayle / howbeit she was ioyfull when she knew<sup>1</sup> 4  
they that came were chrystened / then the Aragonoys  
by the cordes and ropes enterid into the shyppe /  
<sup>2</sup>when Peter of Aragon & his company were entered  
into the shyp he sawe the damoyssel<sup>3</sup> sore wepynge / 8  
then he demaunded of the Sarasyns where they had  
get<sup>4</sup> that prynces / 'ryghte now<sup>5</sup> I sawe howe ye wold  
haue taken & cast her into the see and<sup>6</sup> I had not  
come hastely' / then one of them sayd / 'syr, we be of 12  
Granade, and fortune of y<sup>e</sup> see hath dreuyn vs hether,  
we be redy to be your sclauess or els to pay raunsome  
at your pleasure.' 'Paynyns,' quod peter, 'all the  
golde in y<sup>e</sup> worlde shall not saue your lyues / none of 16  
you shal scape' / then he commaunded that they  
shulde all be slayne, and that none shulde<sup>7</sup> scape alyue,  
the which was done incontynente / all were slayne  
excepte the kyng, of whome Peter of Aragone de- 20  
maunded whye he wolde haue drowned that noble  
damoyssell, and where they<sup>8</sup> founde her / 'syr,' quod  
y<sup>e</sup> kyng, 'we knowe her not / nor what she is, for we  
founde her all alone vpon a rocke in an Isle within the 24  
see. And when I sawe the great beaute and bountye  
that was in her I couetyd her, and caused her to be put  
into my shyppe, thynkyng to ha[ue] hadde my pleasure  
of her, but she wolde<sup>9</sup> in no wyse suffer me / wherfore 28  
I was displeasyd withe her' / 'well,' quod Peter, 'ye  
shall be slayne and go after your men with out ye wyl  
byleue in Iesu chryst and renounce the lawe of  
Mahomet' / 'syr,' quod the paynymme, 'I had rather<sup>10</sup> be 32  
slayne all quycke then to leue my holy law and to take

<sup>1</sup> that.    <sup>2</sup> and.    <sup>3</sup> Ladie.    <sup>4</sup> gotten  
<sup>5</sup> (quoth hee).    <sup>6</sup> if.    <sup>7</sup> shall.    <sup>8</sup> had.  
<sup>9</sup> Fol. cliii. col. 1.    <sup>10</sup> to.

- that byleue that ye ar of' / when Peter hard hym saye  
 so he gaue hym with his sworde suche a stroke on<sup>1</sup> the and Peter kills him.  
 hede *that* he claue it to the tethe, and the kyng  
 4 fel downe dede, wherof y<sup>e</sup> lady Claryet was<sup>2</sup> ioyfull.  
 Then Peter came to<sup>3</sup> her and demaunded what she was  
 and where the paynym<sup>4</sup> founde her / 'syr,' quod the  
 damoyzell,<sup>5</sup> 'I was borne in a parte of fraunce in a Claryet tells Peter a false story of her misfortunes.  
 8 towne named Nautes, in breytayne. <sup>6</sup>My father was of  
 Lisbon, and he had great desyre to se his frendes, so he  
 entered into a shyp and two of my bretherne and my  
 selfe & dyuers other marchauntes together, & when we  
 12 had thought to haue entered into y<sup>e</sup> haven at Lysbone,  
 a great horryble wynde toke vs so that we were fayne  
 to abandon our shyp and to let it go by the grace  
 of god and at the wyl of the wynde and wether / then  
 16 we passed the straytes of Marocke, and then our shyppe  
 ran agaynste a rocke & brast<sup>7</sup> all to peces, so that my  
 father and all that were in the shyppe were drowned /  
 and by the grace of god I sate on<sup>8</sup> a sacke of wolle and  
 20 helde me faste, & then the waues brought me to the  
 lond syde, wherof I thanke god / and within an owre  
 after this hethen kyng aryled there *with* his company  
 by fortune of the se, and so they toke me into theyr  
 24 shyppe / and the kyng sore<sup>9</sup> enforced hymselfe to  
 haue had his pleasure of me / and then by fortune  
 of another tempest we aryled here, wheras ye haue  
 slayne hym and all his.'<sup>10</sup> <sup>11</sup>'fayre damoyzell,' quod  
 28 Peter of Aragon, 'ye maye thanke god that ye be come  
 into myne handes' / 'syr,' quod she, 'I knowe well<sup>12</sup> yf  
 ye had not bene I had bene loste for euer / & therefore,  
 syr, as longe as god <sup>13</sup>hath geuen<sup>13</sup> me lyfe I wyll be  
 32 gladde to serue you as the moste lowest chaumberer<sup>14</sup> in

She offers to  
 serve Peter, who  
 has saved her,  
 as a maid of his  
 household.

<sup>1</sup> vpon.    <sup>2</sup> right.    <sup>3</sup> vnto.    <sup>4</sup> had.    <sup>5</sup> Ladie.  
<sup>6</sup> and.    <sup>7</sup> burst.    <sup>8</sup> vppon.    <sup>9</sup> omitted.    <sup>10</sup> men.  
<sup>11</sup> Fol. cliii. col. 2.    <sup>12</sup> that.    <sup>13-13</sup> shall giue.  
<sup>14</sup> Chamberlaine.

Peter promises to  
protect her.

He sails with her  
to Tarragona,  
where the king of  
Arragon was  
staying.

The king learns  
of his cousin  
Peter's approach,  
and goes to the  
shore to meet  
him.

Peter relates his  
adventures.

your house, and put my body and honeste into goddes  
handes and youers' / 'fayre damoyzell,' quod Peter,  
'as long as I leue ye shall not lacke / for by the grace  
of god your body and youre honoure shall be well 4  
saued / and peradventure <sup>1</sup>maye<sup>1</sup> haue such a husband  
that ye shall thynke your selfe<sup>2</sup> happy / our lorde<sup>3</sup>  
dyd<sup>4</sup> you a great grace when ye fell into my handes.'  
Then Peter of Aragon toke the damoyzell by the 8  
hande and commaundyd to hoise vp the sayles, and to  
retourne to<sup>4</sup> Taragon, a citeye betwene Barselone and  
Valence the great / wheras then was the kyng of  
Aragon / <sup>5</sup>so longe they sayled nyghte and daye that at 12  
the laste they sawe the towers of Taragone, wherof they  
thanked god / and as they aproched <sup>6</sup>vnto<sup>6</sup> the citeye  
the kyng of Aragon was in his palais lokynge out at a  
wyndowe / then he sawe comynge in the see .vi. galeys 16  
and a great shyppe, wherof he was abasshed, and  
maruayled what it myght be / for he knewe them not  
bycause of the great shyppe / then they *that* knew  
them came to the kyng and sayde how it was his 20  
cosyn, Peter of Aragon, <sup>7</sup>the whiche<sup>7</sup> is comen home in  
sauetye, thanked be god. Then the kyng and his  
lordes with hym wente downe and wente to the see  
syde, where as they founde the noble man, Peter of 24  
Aragon his cosyn, and all his companye with hym.  
Then the kyng embraced hym and sayd, 'cosyn, ye are  
ryght hartely welcom, I am ioyfull <sup>8</sup>of your good  
aduenture. I pray you, cosynne, shewe me where 28  
haue ye get this great shyppe that semeth to be so  
ryche' / then peter shewed<sup>4</sup> hym all the aduenture,  
and how he rescued the damoyssel out of the handes of  
the Sarasyns / and he shewed her to<sup>4</sup> the kyng, and 32  
sayde / 'syr, I byleue in this world there is not a

<sup>1-1</sup> you shall.      <sup>2</sup> right.      <sup>3</sup> god.      <sup>4</sup> vnto.  
<sup>5</sup> and.      <sup>6-6</sup> neere to.      <sup>7-7</sup> who.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. cliii. back, col. 1.



- fayrer, swetter, nor more gracious,<sup>1</sup> nor none that  
 semeth more to be extraute of a hye lynage' / the  
 kynge behelde the damoyzell, and she kneled downe  
 4 before hym / 'fayre damoyzell,' quod the kynge, 'I The king asks of  
 praye you shewe me what ye be and of what lynage / Clariet her lineage  
 and country.  
 and fro whence ye come' / the damoyzell,<sup>2</sup> who was in  
 great fere to name herselfe trewly / for fere lest she  
 8 shulde be in yll handes / <sup>3</sup>then she<sup>3</sup> caste downe her  
 hede<sup>4</sup> and began to wepe so that the teres fell fro her  
 eyen, and sayde / 'syr, I requyre you desyre no suche Clariet hesitates  
 thyng of me at this tyme, for I know not who is my to tell, for she  
 does not know  
 whether he is  
 friend or foe.  
 12 parente nor of what lynage I am of' / when the kynge  
 vnderstode the damoyssel and sawe how she wepte  
 he had great petye of her, and comforted her as moch  
 as he myght<sup>5</sup> / then Peter shewed<sup>6</sup> the kynge al that Peter tells the  
 the damoyzell had shewed hym / before, a[n]d<sup>7</sup> howe<sup>8</sup> king all he knows  
 of her.  
 'she was founde by the sarasyns,<sup>8</sup> whome I haue slayne,  
 she was happy that she fell in<sup>9</sup> my handes / for by the  
 grace of god I shall se her well maryed and set forthe' /  
 20 then the kynge and Peter wente fro the shyppes into y<sup>e</sup>  
 towne, & causid the damoyzell to be brought after She is taken to  
 Peter's lodging.  
 them with two lentyllmen in to Peters logynge, and as  
 she passed thurgh the towne she was regarded with  
 24 ladyes and damoysselles, and they al praysed her All the towns-  
 beautye, sayeng one to another that there was neuer a people admire her  
 fayrer<sup>2</sup> borne / nor more lykely to become of a noble beauty,  
 blode. <sup>10</sup>Great feast<sup>11</sup> was made in the citeye for y<sup>e</sup> and there is great  
 feasting made.  
 28 comynge home of Peter of Aragon, and of the damoy-  
 sell that he had brought *with* hym; the same tyme  
 Florence y<sup>e</sup> / kynges sone had bene on<sup>12</sup> hontynge, Florence, the  
 & cam home, and when he was in the towne and saw king's son, re-  
 turns from hunt-  
 ing, and he  
 wonders at the  
 merry-making.  
 32 the stretes hanged and the ladyes & damoyssels & other  
 makynge so great ioye and feast<sup>11</sup> / he was abashed,

<sup>1</sup> creature.      <sup>2</sup> Ladie.      <sup>3-3</sup> omitted.      <sup>4</sup> presently.<sup>5</sup> could.      <sup>6</sup> vnto.      <sup>7</sup> and in text.      <sup>8</sup> (quoth he).<sup>9</sup> to.      <sup>10</sup> Fol. cliii. back, col. 2.      <sup>11</sup> feasting.      <sup>12</sup> a.

and demaunded of a burges yf there were any newe weddyng / and <sup>1</sup> what they were <sup>1</sup> that the people made so great ioye and feast <sup>4</sup> / 'syr,' quod the burges, 'the feast that is made nowe and the ioye is for the comyng <sup>4</sup> home of Peter of Aragon, who hathe bene so longe out, for that god hath sent hym good aduenture, for he hath wonne and conquered the great shyppe of Malyke, <sup>2</sup> wherin was y<sup>e</sup> kynge of Granade, great ryches he hath <sup>8</sup> wonne, and he hath slayne all the sarasyns that were in the shyppe.' Then Florence restid not tyl he came to his cosyn, Peter of Aragons logynge, & made hym good chere, and said, 'cosyn, ye are welcome home, <sup>12</sup> and I am ryght ioyous <sup>3</sup> of youre good aduenture' / 'syr,' quod Peter, 'I thanke god I haue had good hap <sup>4</sup> / &, syr, I shall shewe you one thyng that I haue wonne wherof I am moste ioyfull.' then he <sup>16</sup> shewed hym the damoyzell who was sober and sad, and shewed hym how he wanne her / when Florence sawe the damoyzell his harte sprange for ioye / and y<sup>e</sup> more he beheld her the more fayrer she semyd. And <sup>20</sup> the damoyzell behelde hym ryght humbely / & she thoughte <sup>5</sup> she neuer saw <sup>6</sup> so fayer a <sup>6</sup> yonge man before, nor better made nor formed of all his membres. Florence that <sup>7</sup> behelde the damoyssel, by reason wherof <sup>24</sup> the darte of loue strake hym to the harte / wherof the wounde coude not lyghtely be helyd / I <sup>8</sup> maye well saye that in all the worlde in that tyme coude not be founde agayne such two <sup>9</sup> parsones, for the great beaute <sup>28</sup> wherwith they were garnysshed coude not be dyscryued / for god & nature had no thyng <sup>10</sup> for gotten in fourmyng of them / swetely they regarded ech other / at that tyme yf Florence had knowen that she had bene the <sup>32</sup> faye Clariet of Burdeaux he wolde haue maryed her

He is told of  
Peter's capture of  
the Saracen ship.

He goes to Peter's  
lodging and sees  
Clariet.

Florence is struck  
by her beauty,

and Clariet ad-  
mires his beauty.

They fall deeply  
in love with one  
another.

<sup>1-1</sup> wherefore it was.

<sup>2</sup> Maliga.

<sup>3</sup> ioyfull.

<sup>4</sup> fortune.

<sup>5</sup> that.

<sup>6-6</sup> a fairer.

<sup>7</sup> so.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. cliiii. col. 1.

<sup>9</sup> such.

<sup>10</sup> nothing *after* forgotten.

incontynent; she was greatly taken in the loue of  
 Florence, and so was he with her, then he desyred  
 with all his harte to knowe what she was / for his  
 4 hart gaue hym that she shulde be come of some noble  
 blode, and sayd to<sup>1</sup> hymselfe that he desyred moche to  
 know it, and that in all the world ther was no thyng  
 he loued so well, & thought that without her loue  
 8 he coude not longe endure / thynkyng to desyre her to  
 take hym for her louer, and *that* yf she refuse hym  
 that shorte shulde be his lyfe / but he<sup>2</sup> thought to be  
 so bold as to speke to her. Thus Florence, taken with  
 12 y<sup>e</sup> fyre of loue, toke the fayre damoyzell by the lylly  
 whyght hande & caused her to sit downe by hym /  
 then he drewe her a lytel aparte to the entent *that*  
 none shulde here hym / <sup>3</sup>then he sayd, 'fayre damoy-  
 16 sell, ye be welcome into these partyes / I pray you  
 'shewe me what ye be, and of what lynngage' / 'syr,'  
 quod the damoyzell, 'lytell shal you wyne when ye  
 know the sartayne what I am / but synne it pleaseth  
 20 you to knowe it<sup>2</sup> I shall shewe you / syr, know for  
 trouthe I am doughter to a pouer honest man of the  
 countre, and in dayes passed was one of the chaumberers  
 with the duches Esclaramond of Burdeaux; And, syr,  
 24 by great treason I was stollen awaye / wherby syn  
 I haue suffered moche pouertye, so that yf god & this  
 noble<sup>5</sup> man, Peter of Aragon, had not rescued me I had  
 bene loste for euer / & therfore, syr, synne I am pouer  
 28 and desolate / I requyre you in the honoure of our  
 lorde<sup>6</sup> that ye wyll not requyre me of any velany of my  
 body and honeste nother in dede nor worde / and, syr,  
 I byleue suerly no more ye thynke to do / for I had  
 32 rather be hewen al to peeces then any creature shulde  
 haue pleasure of my body without I were maryed' /  
 'fayre damoyzell,' quod he, 'I swere by god that me

Florence asks of  
her her history.

She falsely tells  
him she is a poor  
man's daughter,  
and a servant of  
the duches  
Esclaramonde.

<sup>1</sup> vnto.      <sup>2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> and.      <sup>4</sup> to.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. cliiii. col. 2.      <sup>6</sup> god.

Florence promises  
to protect her  
from all dis-  
honour.

If his father were  
dead he would  
marry her.

Clariet begs him  
to dismiss such a  
thought.

She secretly  
regrets that  
Florence does not  
know her true  
rank.

Florence begs her  
to take him for  
her servant, and  
confesses his love.

created that of me nor of any other leuyng man ye shal  
not be desyred agaynst your honoure / for I knowe no  
man leuyng *that* wolde requyre you of any dyshonour  
or saye any thyng that shulde not be agreable to you, <sup>4</sup>  
but I shall make hym to dye of an yll dethe / and I  
wyll that ye know<sup>1</sup> fro hensforth I wyll be your trew  
louer / and none shall make departure of vs two / and  
yf it were so that my father were dede I wold neuer <sup>8</sup>  
haue other wyfe but you' / 'syr,' quod the damoyzell,<sup>2</sup>  
'I pray you forbere spekyng of any such wordes / for  
it were not mete for the sone of a Kyng so to lowe<sup>3</sup>  
hymselfe as to set his loue vpon so pouer a mayd <sup>12</sup>  
as I am / <sup>4</sup>ye set your harte <sup>5</sup>in to lowe a place<sup>5</sup> / for yf  
y<sup>e</sup> kyng your father parseyue any thinge *that* ye shuld  
set your loue on<sup>6</sup> me, he wolde sone put me to dethe' /  
therwith she caste downe her hede and sayd to her selfe / <sup>16</sup>  
'O <sup>7</sup>very God,<sup>7</sup> yf this yong prynce knew suerly what I  
were, yt myght well be that he wolde haue me in  
maryage / as yet in all my lyfe I neuer set my loue  
vpon any parson but this yonge man whome I neuer <sup>20</sup>  
saw before, <sup>8</sup>maketh me to thynke that<sup>9</sup> I neuer  
thought before / so<sup>10</sup> that it maketh my blode and all  
my membres to trymble / I am in worse case for his  
<sup>11</sup>loue then he is for me' / therwith she began sore to <sup>24</sup>  
wepe / when Florence sawe her he was ryght sorowfull,  
& sayd, 'fayre damoyzell, I requyre you to take me  
for your trewe and faythfull seruante / otherwyse  
I can not se how I shulde<sup>12</sup> leue longe' / 'syr,' quod <sup>28</sup>  
she, 'I am wel content to graunt you my loue / for<sup>13</sup>  
*that* your dede and thought be vpon goodnes and  
honour / for yf I may parseyue in any maner that your  
thoughte be otherwyse ye haue loste my loue for euer.' <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> that.  
<sup>5-5</sup> to loue.

<sup>9</sup> which,

<sup>2</sup> Ladie.

<sup>6</sup> vpon.

<sup>10</sup> omitted.

<sup>12</sup> shall.

<sup>3</sup> debase.

<sup>7-7</sup> good Lord.


<sup>11</sup> Fol. cīiii. back, col. 1

<sup>13</sup> so.

<sup>8</sup> it.

'Fayre louer,' quod Florence, 'haue no doughte therof  
that euer I shall haue any thoughte of velany agaynste  
you.' Thus as ye haue harde was the fyrste aquaynt-  
4 aunce betwene these two louers, that is to saye, the  
fayre Claryet doughter to duke Huon of Burdeaux,  
& of Florence son to y<sup>e</sup> kyng of Aragon.

¶ Howe the kyng defended<sup>1</sup> his sone Flor-  
8 ence that he shuld not be so hardy<sup>2</sup> to  
fal aquaynted withe the fayre damoyssel<sup>3</sup>  
Claryet / and how Florence promysed the  
kyng, his father, to delyuer into his handes  
12 the kyng of Nauerne<sup>4</sup> presoner, in case<sup>5</sup> he  
wyl<sup>6</sup> be content at his retourne that he  
may<sup>7</sup> haue the new found damoyssel / the  
which thing the kyng promysed / but he  
16 dyd it not, for he made the damoyssel to  
be taken, and had drowned her if Peter  
of Aragon had not bene, who rescued<sup>8</sup>  
her.<sup>9</sup> Ca. C.lxii.

20  Hen Florence had long deuysed with  
the damoyssel / he toke<sup>11</sup> leue of her  
and of Peter of Aragon his cosyn,  
and then he retourned to the kyng  
24 his father, and the nexte day he wente  
agayne to the damoysselles lodgyng / so ofte he  
resorted thether that<sup>12</sup> brute ran in the palays and also  
in y<sup>e</sup> towne how that Florence was amorous of the  
28 damoyssel that Peter of Aragon had brought thether /  
13 y<sup>e</sup> mater at the last was shewed to kyng Garyn his  
father / wherwith he was so sorowfull that he was all

The next day  
Florence visits  
Clariet again,  
and so often he  
came that all sai t  
that he was in  
love with her.

<sup>1</sup> forbad.    <sup>2</sup> as.    <sup>3</sup> Ladie.    <sup>4</sup> Nauarre.    <sup>5</sup> that.  
<sup>6</sup> would.    <sup>7</sup> might.    <sup>8</sup> and saued.    <sup>9</sup> from the death.  
<sup>10</sup> Fol. cliiii. back, col. 2.    <sup>11</sup> his.    <sup>12</sup> great.    <sup>13</sup> and.



The king, his father, learns the rumour, and angrily swears to slay Clariet if it be true.

Florence confesses his visits to Clariet to the king.

The king warns the young man to avoid her.

Florence pleads that it is the part of youth to love,

in a rage, and sayde to<sup>1</sup> hymselfe / 'a, good lord, this new founde damoyzell shall<sup>2</sup> wynne my sone yf she can and get hym fro me; I knowe well by reason of the great beautye that is in her my sone shall<sup>2</sup> be 4 enamoryd of her, but by the lorde<sup>3</sup> I beleue on<sup>4</sup> yf I se that my son other go or come to<sup>5</sup> her, as it is sayd he dothe, that aquayntauns shall be derely solde<sup>6</sup> / for with myne owne<sup>7</sup> handes I shall sle her' / ryght sory 8 & angery was kyng Guaryn with his son Florence and with the damoyzell / <sup>8</sup>he sente for his sone / & when he was before hym, the kyng demaunded hym fersly for whense he came / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'I haue 12 bene a sportynge in my cosyn, Peter of Aragons house / and haue passed the tyme there with the newe come damoyssel / the moste fayreste that euer was borne, and<sup>9</sup> the moste ientylest and best taught, ryghte fayre 16 and swete ar her deuyses.' 'Florence,' quod the kyng, 'I charge the in as moche as thou fereste my displeasure, that thou come no more at her, beware that thou fallest not<sup>10</sup> in amours with<sup>10</sup> her / yf thou do 20 thou werte neuer so yll aquainted with any loue, nor there neuer came so yll aduenture to the damoyzell yf she draw the to loue her / for yf I may knowe that thou goest thether any more I shall set her in suche 24 a pryson wheras I shall cause her to ende her dayes myserably' / 'father,' quod Florence, 'me thynke ye do great wronge to let<sup>11</sup> vs to playe & <sup>12</sup>to deuyse<sup>12</sup> together in all goodnes & honour, god forbede<sup>13</sup> that I shuld 28 entende any wayes to <sup>14</sup>haue her and<sup>14</sup> disceyue her; dere father, remember<sup>15</sup> ye haue bene yong, therefore suffer that youthe may pas the<sup>16</sup> tyme in goodnes and honoure with vs as it hathe done with you / now ye 32

<sup>1</sup> within.      <sup>2</sup> wyll.      <sup>3</sup> god that.      <sup>4</sup> vpon.

<sup>5</sup> vnto.      <sup>6</sup> bought.      <sup>7</sup> Fol. clv. col. 1.      <sup>8</sup> then.

<sup>9</sup> and and in text.      <sup>10-10</sup> enamoured of.      <sup>11</sup> forbid.

<sup>12-12</sup> sport.      <sup>13</sup> defend.      <sup>14-14</sup> omitted.      <sup>15</sup> that.

<sup>16</sup> their.

are a<sup>1</sup> .iiii. score yere or more ye ought to thinke of no  
 thyng but to serue god, and eat, & drinke, and slepe;  
 it ought not to trouble you thoughe our youthe pas the  
 4 tyme in good warkes / ye ought to be content *that* we  
 loue by amours as ye haue done or<sup>2</sup> this / for to the  
 damoyzell I bere all honoure, <sup>3</sup>I wyll loue her how so  
 euer yt be taken fayre or fowle / ther is no man leuyng  
 8 shall let me as longe as lyfe is <sup>4</sup>in my body / she is  
 fayre and ientyll / and it is sayd how<sup>5</sup> I am fayre, and  
<sup>6</sup>how<sup>6</sup> that it were a mete copyll of <sup>7</sup>vs twayne<sup>8</sup> to be  
 ioyned together in maryage, <sup>3</sup>therfore, father, I praye  
 12 you blame no more me nor the damoyssel, for in all  
 that I can<sup>9</sup> I am <sup>10</sup>hers<sup>10</sup> and she is myne.'

as all old men  
have done when  
young.

He loves Clariet  
honourably,

and begs his  
father to favour  
their union.

¶ when the kynge<sup>11</sup> vnderstode his sone, in great  
 yre and displeasure he sayd, 'O thou ungarcyous lad,<sup>12</sup>  
 16 lytell thou praysest or honourest me in that thou wylte  
 do thus agaynst my wyll; knowe for sartayne yf I may  
 lyue<sup>13</sup> tyll tomorowe in y<sup>e</sup> mornynge I shall make a  
 departure of your two loues' / when Florence hard his  
 20 father, he sayde / 'my dere lord and father, and<sup>14</sup> god  
 wyll ye shall not do as ye haue sayd / for yf ye do  
 with myne owne handes I shall slee my selfe, for I  
 wyll not lyue one day after' / when the kyng hard  
 24 that he was<sup>15</sup> sorowfull for fere of lesyng of his sone /  
 & studyed in<sup>16</sup> hymselfe what to do / then he sayde,  
 'fayre sone, take thyne armure and go and seke  
 aduentures as I haue done in my tyme, then I shall  
 28 mary the to some wyfe, suche one as thou canste finde  
 in any countre, thoughe she be neuer so great or noble  
 I shall cause the to haue her / yf thou wylte leue<sup>17</sup>  
 & forsake this newe founde damoyssel / for by her no  
 32 welthe nor honoure can come to<sup>18</sup> the / it shulde be a

The king is very  
angry at his  
words.

If aught happen  
to Clariet,  
Florence will slay  
himself.

The king loves  
him too well to  
put his life in  
peril, and bids  
him go abroad  
and seek adven-  
tures.

<sup>1</sup> about.      <sup>2</sup> before.      <sup>3</sup> and.      <sup>4</sup> Fol. clv. col. 2.  
<sup>5</sup> that.      <sup>6-6</sup> omitted.      <sup>7</sup> for.      <sup>8</sup> two.      <sup>9</sup> doe.  
<sup>10-10</sup> her Louer.      <sup>11</sup> had well.      <sup>12</sup> Son.      <sup>13</sup> but.  
<sup>14</sup> if.      <sup>15</sup> right.      <sup>16</sup> within.      <sup>17</sup> leue *after* forsake.  
<sup>18</sup> vnto.

The king of  
Navarre threat-  
ens Arragon;

Florence shall  
fight against him.

But Florence will  
have no wife but  
Clariet.

The king of  
Arragon warns  
Peter that if  
Florence con-  
tinue to visit  
Clariet at his  
lodging, that she  
shall surely die.

A messenger  
brings news that  
the king of  
Navarre has  
ravaged Arragon,

great yl<sup>1</sup> to<sup>2</sup> me<sup>3</sup> / that after my dayes it shuld be  
said that a new found damoyzell shuld be lady &  
quene of my realme / thou knoweste well howe thyne  
vnclé, the kynge of Nauerne,<sup>4</sup> maketh me great warre / 4  
for a debate that is lately fallen betwene hym and me /  
I know wel now at this moneth of Apryl he wyll come  
& inuade my realme /<sup>5</sup> ther<sup>6</sup>efore, fayre<sup>7</sup> sone, seke for  
some other wyfe and let thys foley pas; then I shall 8  
make thee a knyght, and then helpe to ayde & defend  
my realme agaynst the kynge of Nauerne<sup>4</sup> thyne vnclé /  
thou arte byg and stronge ynoughe to defend my  
londe.' 7 'Father,' quod Florence, 'speke no more to<sup>2</sup> 12  
me, for I wyl neuer haue<sup>8</sup> other wyfe but this fayre  
damoyzell, whome I loue enterely' / 'sone,' quod the  
kynge / 'thou abaseste thy selfe ouer lowe, nor there is  
no frende nor kynne<sup>9</sup> that thou haste that wyll kepe 16  
any company with thee, but they wyll clene fle fro the;  
therfore, fayre<sup>7</sup> sone, put away fro the this foly /  
beware in as moche as thou thynkest to haue my realme  
after my disceas, and on<sup>10</sup> the payne to be banysshed<sup>11</sup> 20  
take not her agaynst my wyll.'

**T**hen the kyng called to<sup>2</sup> hym his cosyn, Peter of  
Aragon, and charged hym that yf Florence his  
sone came any more to his logynge that he shulde 24  
incontynent<sup>12</sup> shewe it hym<sup>12</sup> / 'for I promyse<sup>13</sup> by the  
faythe that I owe to<sup>2</sup> our lorde<sup>14</sup> Iesu chryst,<sup>14</sup> yf he  
come thether any more I shal cause the damoyzell that  
is in your howse to be slayne.' Florence was ryght 28  
sorowfull when he hard the pleasure of the kynge his  
father; thus as the kynge rebuked his sone there came  
in a knyght and kneled downe and sayd: 'syr, I haue  
brought you yl tydings, for the kynge of Nauerne<sup>4</sup> 32

<sup>1</sup> euill.

<sup>2</sup> vnto.

<sup>3</sup> thee.

<sup>4</sup> Nauarre.

<sup>5</sup> and.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. clv. back, col. 1.

<sup>7</sup> good.

<sup>8</sup> no.

<sup>9</sup> kindred.

<sup>10</sup> vppon.

<sup>11</sup> out of my Countrey.

<sup>12-13</sup> tell him of it.

<sup>13</sup> (quoth hee).

<sup>14-14</sup> god.

- is entered into your realme, and settethe all your cowntre  
 in flambe and fyre, and nere to your citey they be  
 to the nombre mo then .xxx.M. men, besyde the great  
 4 batayle *that* cometh after, wherin ther is a<sup>1</sup> .lx.M.  
 men / they exyle your cowntre, <sup>2</sup>they sle men, women and chyldren; they spare nother yonge <sup>3</sup>nor olde, it is  
 4 nede that ye make haste & to brynge your men  
 8 together to resyste your enemyes' / when kyng Gauryñ  
 hard the messanger he was<sup>5</sup> sorowful; then he called  
 to<sup>6</sup> hym his cosyn, Peter of Aragon, who was his chefe  
 constable, and sayde, 'syrs, make redy our men to  
 12 resyste our enemyes' / then he called to<sup>6</sup> hym Florence  
 his sone, & sayd / 'fayre sone, take thyne harnays<sup>7</sup> and  
 shewe thy vertue agaynst thyne enemyes who wasteth  
 my realme. <sup>2</sup>Take on<sup>8</sup> the chefe charg and lede myne  
 16 host / for I haue no pusaunce nor strenth to do it, for<sup>9</sup>  
 the great age that I am of; I haue leued so longe *that*  
 I can no more ryde / therfore defende thou the londe  
*that* thou shalte holde after me, and then doest thou  
 20 <sup>10</sup>wysely' <sup>10</sup> / 'father,' quod Florence, <sup>11</sup>'not and god  
 wyll I shall put my harnayes<sup>11</sup> on my backe to defende  
 your lond without<sup>12</sup> ye wyll geue me in maryage  
 y<sup>e</sup> fayre damoyssel<sup>13</sup> in my cosyn, Peter of Aragon's  
 24 house / yf ye wyll do me that courtoysye and promyse  
 me to do it / I shall delyuer into your handes your  
 enemye as presoner to do with hym your pleasure,  
 otherwyse loke not that I shall do anythyng.' when  
 28 the kynge saw that his sone wold none otherwyse do<sup>14</sup> /  
 then he commaunded all his other men, euery man, to  
 arme him<sup>15</sup> & go and resyste his enemyes / the which  
 they dyd incontynent; <sup>2</sup>they issued out into the felde  
 32 mo then .x.M. men, &<sup>16</sup> Peter of Aragon had the ledynge

and is slaying  
 with 30,000 men  
 all the  
 Arragonese.

Florence is  
 ordered by his  
 father to lead the  
 host against the  
 enemy;

but he will not go  
 unless he is per-  
 mitted to marry  
 Clariet.

The king orders  
 his men to set out  
 under Peter of  
 Arragon.

<sup>1</sup> about.    <sup>2</sup> and.    <sup>3</sup> Fol. clv. back, col. 2.    <sup>4</sup> great.

<sup>5</sup> right.    <sup>6</sup> vnto.    <sup>7</sup> armour.    <sup>8</sup> vppon.

<sup>9</sup> because of.    <sup>10-10</sup> as a wise man should doe.

<sup>11-11</sup> by the grace of god I will put no armour.    <sup>12</sup> except.

<sup>13</sup> that is.    <sup>14</sup> do after wold.    <sup>15</sup> self.    <sup>16</sup> Sir.

They meet the  
army of Navarre,

and although they  
fight bravely are  
forced to retire.

The men of  
Navarre pitch  
their tents outside  
Tarragona.

Florence is ad-  
vised again to lead  
the army: and on  
his refusing,  
unless his request  
be granted, the  
king falsely yields  
to him.

The king intends  
to drown Clariet  
while Florence is  
fighting.

of them, and they were not out of the towne two leges  
but they encountered theyr enemyes / there were many  
speres broken and many a knyght beten to the erth  
& slayne, <sup>1</sup>theyr bodyes lyenge without sowles amonge 4  
the horse fete / ryght valyauntly <sup>2</sup>bare hymselfe that  
day <sup>2</sup>Peter of Aragon.<sup>3</sup> But he [h]ad<sup>4</sup> not strenthe<sup>5</sup>  
suffycyent, but<sup>6</sup> <sup>7</sup>his enemyes encreasid, wherfore he  
was constrayned to recule<sup>8</sup> backe towards y<sup>e</sup> city / 8  
howbeit or<sup>9</sup> he entered he dyd great<sup>10</sup> damage to<sup>11</sup> his  
enemyes / when the Nauernoys saw the Aragonoys  
reculed<sup>8</sup> into the citey, then they pyght vp theyr tentes  
and paulyons aboute the towne / <sup>1</sup>when kynge Gauryn 12  
sawe his men retournyd, then he called his sone Flor-  
ence and sayde / 'sone, take thyne harnays<sup>12</sup> & go ayde  
and<sup>13</sup> defend the londe, the which partayneth to the after  
my dysses' / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'that shall<sup>14</sup> I neuer 16  
do without fyrst ye promyse me to geue me the fayre  
damoyssel in maryage, by that couenant that I shall  
delyuer into youre handes as presoner myne vnclē  
the kyng of Nauerne' / when the kynge<sup>15</sup> hard hym he 20  
mused a lytell, and sayd / <sup>16</sup>'sone, I graunt the thyne  
desyre so that thou wylte delyuer me thyne vnclē the  
kyng of Nauerne to do with hym at my pleasure /  
therfore take thyne armure & make the redy, thyne 24  
armure is good and thy sworde is with the best, and yf  
thou canst do as thou sayste thou shalt haue y<sup>e</sup> fayre  
damoyssell' / howbeit he sayd to hymselfe preuely that  
he had rather<sup>13</sup> lese one of his handes / then a straunger 28  
shuld be quene after hym, for as sone as my son<sup>17</sup> shall  
be issued out of the citey I shall cause the damoyssell  
to be drowned in the see / for I wyll not suffer her to  
lyue though I shuld be disherited for it. Then Flor- 32

<sup>1</sup> and. <sup>2-2</sup> did Sir. <sup>3</sup> behaue himselfe that day.

<sup>4</sup> gad *in text*. <sup>5</sup> ynough. <sup>6</sup> for.

<sup>7</sup> Fol. cli.[lvi.] col. 1. <sup>8</sup> retire. <sup>9</sup> before.

<sup>10</sup> losse and. <sup>11</sup> vnto. <sup>12</sup> Armour. <sup>13</sup> to. <sup>14</sup> will.

<sup>15</sup> his father. <sup>16</sup> My. <sup>17</sup> (quoth hee).



ence, herynge his father promysynge hym to haue the  
 damoyzell, he was ryght ioyfull. But he knew not the  
 inward yll wyll of his father, then he sayd / 'syr, then  
 4 I requyre you<sup>1</sup> sende for my louer hether / to the  
 entent *that* she may gyrd about me<sup>2</sup> my sworde,  
 wherby I shall be the more bolde & hardy when I  
 come into the batayle' / y<sup>e</sup> kyng <sup>3</sup>dyd as his sone  
 8 requyred, but the sone knewe not the fathers thought;  
 y<sup>e</sup> kyng sente two knyghtes for the damoyzell /  
 4 when she came there she was greatly regarded of all  
 them that were there / for they had neuer sene a fayrer,  
 12 nor one *that* semed to be extraucte of a hye generacyon /  
 when Florence saw her in the palays his harte rose vp,  
 and<sup>5</sup> ran<sup>6</sup> and clypped<sup>7</sup> and kyssed her, and the  
 damoyzell<sup>8</sup> suffered hym with<sup>9</sup> good wyll / wherwith  
 16 the kyng had at his hart suche sorow that he had  
 nere<sup>10</sup> ronne vpon them, but he forbare it bycause  
 he sawe his sone fedy to go agaynst his enemyes /  
 11 he then ayded<sup>11</sup> to arme his sone rychely, and in  
 20 lykewyse so dyd the<sup>12</sup> damoyssel / when kyng gauryn  
 had made his sone redy the damoyzell<sup>13</sup> gyrted<sup>14</sup> aboute  
 hym<sup>14</sup> his sworde / then the kyng drewe it out of the  
 shethe and therwith made hym knyght / 4 then his hors  
 24 was brought to<sup>15</sup> hym / and he lepte lightly vpon hym /  
 16 his spere in his hand and helme on<sup>17</sup> his hede, and  
 shyld aboute his necke. Then Florence sayd to<sup>15</sup> the  
 kyng his father / 'syr, I leue with you my louer<sup>13</sup>  
 28 whome I loue best in all this worlde. I leue her  
 in your kepynge, for if our lord god geue me that<sup>19</sup>  
 grace that I maye retourne, I shall brynge to<sup>15</sup> you myne  
 vnkle, the kyng of Nauerne, as a presoner.' The  
 32 kyng graunted to<sup>15</sup> his sone all that he wolde desyre /

But for the present Clariet is summoned to gird on her lover's sword.

The beauty of the lovers excites general admiration, but the king sees with sorrow Florence and Clariet embrace.

The king knights Florence with the sword that Clariet has girded on.

Florence promises to capture the king of Navarre.

<sup>1</sup> to.      <sup>2</sup> about me *after* sword.      <sup>3</sup> Fol. cli. [lvi.] col. 2.

<sup>4</sup> and.      <sup>5</sup> he.      <sup>6</sup> vnto her.      <sup>7</sup> embraced.      <sup>8</sup> Ladi

<sup>9</sup> a.      <sup>10</sup> hand.      <sup>11-11</sup> then he helped.      <sup>12</sup> faire.

<sup>13</sup> did.      <sup>14-14</sup> *after* sworde.      <sup>15</sup> vnto.      <sup>16</sup> with.

<sup>17</sup> vppon.      <sup>18</sup> Loue.      <sup>19</sup> the.

His father orders  
his men to do  
Clariet all honour  
until Florence be  
out of the city,  
when they are to  
drown her.

but he shewed<sup>1</sup> not the inwarde intencyon that he was purposed to do. Then the kyng commaunded .x. of his knyghtes to se the gydyng of the damoyzell and to honoure her as moche as they myghte / tyll<sup>2</sup> his sone <sup>4</sup> were out of the cetye / and then to drowne her in the see, to the entente that neuermore tydynges shulde be harde of her.

<sup>3</sup>¶ How florence wente to fyghte with his 8 enemyes / and howe<sup>4</sup> Peter of Aragon returned towardes the towne to brynge thether presoners, and how he rescued the <sup>5</sup>damoyzell Claryet fro drownynge, and how 12 after<sup>6</sup> kyng gauryn made<sup>7</sup> the damoyzell to be closed up in<sup>8</sup> prison. Ca. C.lxiii.



Hen Florence was armed and mounted he toke vp his horse fresly before y<sup>e</sup> 16 damoyzell and blessed hym and toke<sup>9</sup> leue of the kyng and of his louer<sup>10</sup> / and so departed and rode to the gate, and all that euer<sup>11</sup> saw hym sayd how they neuer sawe <sup>20</sup> so goodly a knyghte, nor more semyng to be fered / then he issued out of the gate and yode<sup>12</sup> towardes the tentes of his enemyes with .x.M. good knyghtes and hardy : the ladyes and damoysselles went to the walles <sup>24</sup> of the citeye to beholde the newe<sup>13</sup> knyghte / when the Nauernoys sawe hym comynge / ther cam agaynst hym mo then .xv.M. men : & they came downe in a valey by couerte : to haue cut hym the waye betwene the <sup>28</sup> hoste and the towne / but the valyaunt knyght,<sup>4</sup> Peter of Aragon, who was with Florence / spyed them / and so made haste to be afore them : and when he sawe<sup>9</sup>

Florence leaves  
the city with more  
than 10,000  
knights.

Fifteen thousand  
men of Navarre  
soon set upon  
them.

<sup>1</sup> knewe.

<sup>2</sup> vntill.

<sup>3</sup> Fol. cli. [lvi.] back, col. 1.

<sup>4</sup> Sir.

<sup>5</sup> faire.

<sup>6</sup> afterward.

<sup>7</sup> caused.

<sup>8</sup> a.

<sup>9</sup> his.

<sup>10</sup> Loue.

<sup>11</sup> omitted.

<sup>12</sup> roade.

<sup>13</sup> young.

- tyme to set on<sup>1</sup> his enemyes. Florence, who was sore desyrous to fulfyll his promyse to the kynge his father, toke his spere and incounteryd with a knyght with  
 4 suche vertue that he ran hym clene thrughe, and  
 2 with drawynge out of his spere the Nauernous fell downe dede / then Florence sayd / ‘god hath geuen me a good begynnyng’ / then he drewe<sup>3</sup> his sworde and  
 8 strake another on<sup>1</sup> y<sup>e</sup> helme that he claue his hede to the tethe / and the thyrd & fourth he made doulourously to dye,<sup>4</sup> he neuer sessed tyll<sup>5</sup> he had slayne .x. of his enemyes / thus under y<sup>e</sup> medowes of Courtoys  
 12 was on<sup>6</sup> horyble batayle betwene y<sup>e</sup> Nauernois & Arragonys / where there was on<sup>1</sup> both partyes suche slauter that it was<sup>7</sup> marueyle to behold it / anone Florence sworde was well knowen, for by the forse of his armes  
 16 he brake the great presses, for on<sup>1</sup> whome so euer his stroke light he was other slayne or cast to the erth, euery man fered hym so<sup>8</sup> that none dyrst abyde nor aproche<sup>9</sup> to<sup>10</sup> hym / the same tyme *that* Florence was  
 20 in the batayle doying of marueyls the fayre damoyzell Claryet was on<sup>1</sup> the walles of the citey with other ladies and damoysselles / regardynge the hye prowes that Florence dyd in the felde, & the ioye that she  
 24 had therof was sone retourned<sup>11</sup> vnto sorowe a[n]d<sup>12</sup> wepynges / for kynge Gauryn who coude not for gette the mortall hate that he had to the damoyzell. <sup>13</sup>he<sup>13</sup> called to<sup>10</sup> hym .x. knyghtes of them that were secrete  
 28 with hym, and sayd, ‘syrs, this new founde damoyzell withe whome my sone Florence is in hote amours / she dyspleaseth me so moche *that* I can not fynde in my harte to loke on<sup>1</sup> her. My sone thynketh to haue  
 32 her in maryage at his retourne / but as long as he leueth he shall neuer se her more what soeuer fal

Florence fights valiantly.

He kills ten of the enemy.

None whom he meets escapes his sword.

Clariet watches him from the walls of the city.

The king of Arragon calls ten knights to him,

<sup>1</sup> vppon.    <sup>2</sup> Fol. cli. [lvi.] back, col. 2.    <sup>3</sup> out.    <sup>4</sup> and.

<sup>5</sup> vntill.

<sup>6</sup> a.

<sup>7</sup> great.

<sup>8</sup> much.

<sup>9</sup> neere.

<sup>10</sup> vnto.

<sup>11</sup> turned.

<sup>12</sup> and in text.

<sup>13</sup> -<sup>13</sup> omitted.

and bids them  
cast her in the  
sea.

The knights, with  
heavy heart, visit  
Clariet.

She demands  
their will.

They tell her she  
must die, and  
bind her hands.

She begs them to  
have mercy on  
her, but they are  
deaf to her  
entreaty.

She is taken to  
the seaside by  
four men.

therof / therefore go your waye and take and cast her  
into the see amonge the greatest wawes that ye can  
fynde' / when these knyghtes vnderstode the kyng, who  
commaunded them to do <sup>1</sup>this murder, they were ryght 4  
sorowfull at theyr hertes / but they durste not saye naye,  
nor do agaynst his wyl, for yf they had they knew  
well<sup>2</sup> they shulde dye, for<sup>3</sup> they knewe well<sup>2</sup> there  
was nother marcy nor pytye in hym / therefore they 8  
durste make no semblant to the contrary / they fered  
so sore<sup>4</sup> to dysplese hym / then they wente and toke  
the damoyzell wheras she was / 'syrs,' quod she,  
'what wyll ye<sup>5</sup> with me, wherfore <sup>6</sup>take ye<sup>6</sup> me, let 12  
me go; yf ye wyll<sup>7</sup> any thyng with me, shew me' /  
they sayd, 'damoyzell, speke no more / for your ende  
is come, ye shall neuer se fayre day more:' <sup>3</sup>when she  
saw that she was so taken with .x. men, who went 16  
thretenyng to sle her, she then cast out a great crye,  
& desired god <sup>8</sup>and our lady<sup>8</sup> to ayde and socoure her /  
then they bounde the damoysselles handes with a cord,  
in suche wyse<sup>9</sup> that her whyght tender skynne braste<sup>10</sup> 20  
& they bounde her so sore *that* the blode droppyd out  
at her nayles / 'syrs,' quod she, 'I crye you marcy /  
lytell shall ye wyne to sle me, ye shall do great synne,  
syn<sup>11</sup> I haue not deserued it:' 'dame,'<sup>12</sup> quod they, 24  
'your wordes can not auayle you / the kynge wyll not  
that ye shall make anaunte to haue his sone in maryage /  
for ye shal be drowned in y<sup>e</sup> see whether ye wyll or  
not, your wepyng shall not ayde you' / then .iiii. 28  
rebaudes toke and bounde her, and drewe her by the  
fayre<sup>8</sup> here of her hede, & led her towards y<sup>e</sup> se syde  
to haue drowned her / but often tymes it is sayde that<sup>13</sup>  
god wyll haue sauyd can not be perysshed. This<sup>14</sup> same 32

<sup>1</sup> Fol. clvii. col 1.      <sup>2</sup> that.      <sup>3</sup> and.      <sup>4</sup> much.  
<sup>5</sup> doe.      <sup>6-6</sup> doe you take.      <sup>7</sup> haue.      <sup>8-8</sup> omitted  
<sup>9</sup> manner.      <sup>10</sup> burst.      <sup>11</sup> seeing.      <sup>12</sup> Madame.  
                                 <sup>13</sup> which.      <sup>14</sup> The.

season Florence was in the batayle, wheras he fought  
 with his enemyes, and<sup>1</sup> Peter of Aragon had take[n]<sup>2</sup>  
 many presoners, and he came to<sup>3</sup> Florence and sayde /  
 4 'a, syr, I requyre you let vs retourne to the citey /  
 and be content<sup>4</sup> with that ye haue done this day : for  
 yonder ye may se comynge all the hole hoste of the  
 Nauernoysse agaynste whome it is not possible for vs to  
 8 endure / for they are mo then .lx. thousand men, and  
 they all hateth vs to the dethe / ye haue done ynoughe,  
 ye<sup>5</sup> ought to be content / yf they take you none can  
 saue your lyfe' / 'cosyn,' quod Florence, 'I pray you  
 12 or<sup>6</sup> I departe, let me iuste ones with myne vncle the  
 kyng of Nauerne, whome I haue promysed to yelde as  
 presoner to<sup>3</sup> the kyng my father / & therby I shall  
 haue in maryage the fayre damoyssel, my loue,<sup>7</sup> and  
 16 for the loue of that fayre damoyssell I shall make many  
 a Nauernoys to lese theyr lyues.' 'Syr,' quod Peter,  
 'syn ye desyre your owne dethe / so moche I am sory  
 therof / but I wyl no longer tary here, for it is not  
 20 possyble for vs to tary here *without* we wyl be slayne  
 wylfully / & I haue here many presoners, I will go  
 lede them in to the citey and then I shall retourne  
 agayne to<sup>3</sup> you / to the entente that yf other you or I  
 24 be taken presoner by them we maye be redemed agayne.'  
 Then Peter wente to the citey with all his presoners ;<sup>5</sup>  
 when he was come into the citey / he hard a great  
 noyse abought the market place, wherof he had great  
 28 maruayle, and wente thether / and then he sawe there  
 .iiii. fowle glotons<sup>8</sup> drawynge the fayre damoyssell  
 Claryet towards the see syde to drowne her / when  
 he saw that he was neuer so sorowful in all his lyfe  
 32 before / and incontynente<sup>9</sup> let go his presoners and  
 drew out his sword and cryed to<sup>3</sup> them *that* led the

Meanwhile, Peter of Aragon urges Florence to return to the city, since they have done sufficient injury to the enemy for the day : and reinforcements are coming to aid Navarre.

Florence begs for one ioust with his uncle, the king of Navarre.

Peter will not tary, and resolves to lead his prisoners back to the city.

He meets Clariet being dragged to the sea side.

He lets go his prisoners, attacking those who had Clariet;

<sup>1</sup> Sir.      <sup>2</sup> takey *in text*.      <sup>3</sup> vnto.  
<sup>4</sup> Fol. cvlii. col. 2.      <sup>5</sup> and.      <sup>6</sup> before.      <sup>7</sup> Loue.  
<sup>8</sup> villaines.      <sup>9</sup> did.



he kills all the  
four.

Clariet begs his  
protection.

He cuts the cords  
about her.

Clariet weeps bit-  
terly in fear.

Peter leads her  
to his lodging,  
and visits the  
king.

He asks him why  
he would slay  
Clariet, and bids  
him lay no hand  
on her, for she  
is his.

damoyzell: 'a, ye <sup>1</sup>fowle horson<sup>1</sup> theues, let *that*  
damoyssel go whom I brought for beyond ye se: ye  
dyd neuer such foly in<sup>2</sup> your lyues,' and *therwith* he  
strak so<sup>3</sup> ye fyrst with his sword<sup>4</sup> *that* his hede flew <sup>4</sup>  
<sup>5</sup>fro the body, and the seconde he claue to the teth /  
and the .iii. and .iiii. he slew / when the <sup>6</sup>damoyzell<sup>6</sup>  
saw the erle Peter, ryght petuously<sup>7</sup> she began to crye,  
and sayd / 'syr, I requyre you haue petye of me, & <sup>8</sup>  
helpe & ayde me as ye haue done or<sup>8</sup> this tyme, other<sup>9</sup>  
lord nor mayster I haue none but you / syr, for god  
sake vnbynde me and put me out of this payne that I  
am in' / then Peter wente to the damoyzell and cut <sup>12</sup>  
ye cordes a sonder, wherwith she was bounde: and for  
the sorow that she was in she fell downe in a swoune:  
then Peter toke her vp and sayde / 'fayre damoysselle,  
<sup>10</sup>take comforte in you,<sup>10</sup> I shal ayde<sup>11</sup> to saue you;' <sup>16</sup>  
the damoyssel<sup>12</sup> wept petuously and sayde to herselfe /  
'a, Huon of Burdeaux, my dere father, the great paines  
and pouertes that ye were wonte to suffer ye haue left  
me, now enherlyter to the same / alas, I knowe not <sup>20</sup>  
where you nor my mother is, I byleue I shall neuer se  
you more' / then Peter of Aragon toke the damoyssel  
by the hande and led her to his logynge in the towne /  
then he wente to the palays, wheras he found kyng <sup>24</sup>  
Guaryn, to<sup>13</sup> whom he sayd / 'o, thou olde dotynge  
fole, wherfore or for what cause wolde you haue slayne  
the damoyssel, and she is none of yours / she is myne,  
I wan her vpon the see and saued her lyfe, ye can <sup>28</sup>  
make no clayme to her.' Thus as Peter spake to the  
kyng there entered into the palais two knyghtes, and  
they sayde to the kyng / 'syr, before you is the erle  
Peter, your cosyn, who hathe delyuered and rescued ye <sup>32</sup>

1-1 false.    2 all.    3 omitted.    4 in such sort.  
<sup>5</sup> Fol. clvii. back, col. 1.    <sup>6-6</sup> faire Ladie.    <sup>7</sup> pitifully.  
<sup>8</sup> before.    <sup>9</sup> neither.    <sup>10-10</sup> be of good cheere, for.  
<sup>11</sup> helpe.    <sup>12</sup> faire Ladie.    <sup>13</sup> vnto.

newe founde damoyzell, & hathe slayne the .iiii. men  
 that shulde haue drowned her in the see / when kyng  
 Guaryn saw the erle before hym / <sup>1</sup>sayd, <sup>2</sup>‘how arte<sup>2</sup>  
<sup>4</sup> thou so hardy<sup>3</sup> to <sup>4</sup>haue slayne<sup>4</sup> my men for doynge of  
 my commaundemente / then he <sup>5</sup>cryed to his men and  
 sayd / ‘syrs, I charge you take this velayne here who  
 hath done me this offence, for I shall neuer haue ioye  
<sup>8</sup> at my harte tyll<sup>6</sup> I see hym hanged a hye on<sup>7</sup> yonder<sup>8</sup>  
 rocke / then<sup>9</sup> men stepte forth to haue taken the erle  
 Peter / & when he saw that they aproched nere to<sup>10</sup>  
 hym, he drewe his sworde and claue the hede of the  
<sup>12</sup> fyrst to the tethe, and he slew the seconde, thyrde,  
 and fourthe / he bette downe<sup>11</sup> to the erthe / then the  
 other fled awaye so that there was none that durst  
 aproche nere to<sup>10</sup> hym / for they were vnarmed and he  
<sup>16</sup> clene<sup>12</sup> armed / then he cam to the kynge and sayde /  
 ‘a<sup>13</sup> false olde dottarde, full of syn and outrage / how  
 dare ye thynke to do such an outrage, ye are not  
 worthy to bere a crowne ; your sone Florence ought to  
<sup>20</sup> haue it / for a traytour ought to holde no realme ; full  
 derely ye shall aby the yll wyll of the damoyzell /  
 and the more to make hym abasshed he made sem-  
 blaunte to ryn vpon the kyng with his sworde / who  
<sup>24</sup> for fere of hym ran into his chaumbre and shote fast  
 the dore after hym / and the erle Peter stondynge  
 without, sore thretened the kynge / then the kynge  
 sayde, ‘cosyn Peter, I crye you marcy, yf I haue done  
<sup>28</sup> yll<sup>14</sup> / I am redy to make a mendes at your pleasure, I  
 was sore dyspleasyd with my sone, and therefore I  
 thought to be reuenged on<sup>7</sup> her *that* hathe caused all  
 this / I shal make amendes / but by the grace of <sup>15</sup> our  
<sup>32</sup> lorde Iesu chryst<sup>15</sup> my son shal neuer haue her in

The king orders  
Peter to be  
arrested and slain.

But the knight  
draws his sword,  
and slays all who  
would lay hands  
on him.

He bitterly re-  
proaches the king,

and pretends as if  
he would kill him.

The king rushes  
from Peter to his  
chamber, and  
shuts the door.  
Peter threatens  
the old man from  
without, and the  
king promises to  
do his will,

<sup>1</sup> he.      <sup>2-2</sup> why wert.      <sup>3</sup> as.      <sup>4-4</sup> slay.  
<sup>5</sup> Fol. clvii. back, col. 2.      <sup>6</sup> vntill.      <sup>7</sup> vpon.      <sup>8</sup> a.  
<sup>9</sup> his.      <sup>10</sup> vnto.      <sup>11</sup> more.      <sup>12</sup> well.      <sup>13</sup> thou.  
<sup>14</sup> euill.      <sup>15-15</sup> god.

although he will  
not consent to  
Clariet's union  
with his son.

He pardons Peter  
the murder of his  
men.

He will keep  
Clariet in prison,  
and tell Florence  
she is drowned;  
as soon as Flor-  
ence has forgotten  
her or married  
another she shall  
be sent in safety  
to a foreign  
country.

Peter agrees to  
the king's plan.

Clariet is im-  
prisoned, but well  
cared for.

Florence is to  
know nothing of  
her whereabouts.

maryage to dye, therefore I wyll neuer consent that a  
newe found damoyzell should be herytes of suche a  
realme<sup>1</sup> as is<sup>2</sup> the realme of Aragon.' Then syr Peter  
answered and sayde / 'syr, beware, blame her no more, 4  
be contente with that ye haue done all redy / it may  
be *that* this<sup>3</sup> damoyzell<sup>4</sup> is of as hye a lynngage as is<sup>5</sup>  
your sone, wherfore such tyme myght<sup>6</sup> come that ye  
shulde<sup>6</sup> derely be rewardyd / paraduenture, the damoy- 8  
sell was stollen away by some yll tyraunte / she hathe  
bene yll loged<sup>7</sup> with you, when ye wolde so crewelly  
haue slayne her' / 'cosyn,' quod the kyng, 'the mater  
is yl come to pas, for her sake ye haue slayne<sup>8</sup> of my 12  
men / the whiche I pardon you / but as for the damoy-  
sell I wyll set her in pryson in a towre / out of the  
whiche she shall not departe, and I wyll shewe my sone  
that she is drowned in the see / and I wyll kepe her in 16  
pryson tyll my sone haue forgotten her, or elles haue<sup>9</sup>  
taken a nother wyfe / then I wyll delyuer her & sende  
her into some other countre, where as she shall be  
better entreated'<sup>7</sup> / when the erle Peter harde the 20  
kyng saye so, he agreed to his sayenge, and thoughte  
that aduyse to be good / & was content with that he  
had sauyn her lyfe / then the kyng opened his<sup>3</sup> chaum-  
bre dore & so came into the palays / then he sente for 24  
the damoyzell / and then she was set in pryson in a  
towre / and y<sup>e</sup> kyng commaundid to a secrete saruaunt  
that he shuld se that the damoyzell shuld lacke<sup>10</sup> no  
thyng for her leuyng, and charged hym on<sup>11</sup> payne of 28  
his lyfe to kepe the mater secrete / and he charged all  
tho *that* knewe therof in any wyse to shewe Florence,  
his sone, no thyng of her / then he closed vp the dore  
with stone to the entent that she shulde not issue out, 32  
& lefte no thyng open / but a lytell wyndow towardes

<sup>1</sup> Kingdome.

<sup>2</sup> is *after* Aragon.

<sup>3</sup> the.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. clviii. col. 1.

<sup>5</sup> omitted.

<sup>6</sup> may.

<sup>7</sup> entertained.

<sup>8</sup> many.


<sup>9</sup> hath.

<sup>10</sup> want.

<sup>11</sup> vpon.

the towne of courtoys, wherein her mete was put in<sup>1</sup> /  
 other wyndowes there were openyng vpon the feldis,  
 the whiche gaue great lyght into the house. Thus the  
 4 fayre<sup>2</sup> Claryet was closed vp in to the towre / where as  
 she had good<sup>3</sup> leysur to wepe and wayle. Now let vs  
 leue spekyng of the damoyzell and speke of Florence,  
 who was in the batayle.

- 8 ¶ How Florence dyscomfyted his enemyes, &  
 toke the kyng of Nauerne & led hym into  
 the towne, & delyuered hym to the kyng  
 his father / and how florence delyuered  
 12 hym agane quyte bycause<sup>4</sup> his father  
 shewed<sup>5</sup> hym that the<sup>6</sup> damoyssel was  
 drowned. Ca. C.lxiii.

- 16  E haue well harde here before how the  
 erle, Peter of Aragon, departed fro  
 Florence and retourned into the citey,  
 for he coude not cause Florence to  
 leue the batayle, wheras he dyd mar-  
 20 uayles for the loue of the fayre<sup>2</sup> Claryet, whome he  
 trusted to wed: he slew so many of his enemyes that  
 the feldes were couered with the dede bodyes / when  
 the kyng of Nauerne, his vncler, <sup>7</sup>[s]awe that, he was<sup>8</sup>  
 24 sorowfull to se his men so slayne / then he came  
 agaynste Florence his nephue, and sayd / 'a, thou  
 vnkynd nephue, cursed be thou,<sup>9</sup> I shall neuer haue  
 ioye at my harte as longe as I se the alyue / thou hast  
 28 done me this day great damage, I had rather dye an yll  
 deth<sup>10</sup> with out I were<sup>10</sup> reuenged vpon<sup>11</sup> the / wherfore  
 I requyre the to iuste with me / I chalenge thy londe,  
 the whiche shall be myne / thou shalte neuer be lorde

Florence does  
 marvels on the  
 battle-field.

The king of  
 Navarre chal-  
 lenges him to  
 combat.

<sup>1</sup> omitted.    <sup>2</sup> Ladie.    <sup>3</sup> Fol. clviii. col. 2.    <sup>4</sup> that.  
<sup>5</sup> vnto.    <sup>6</sup> faire.    <sup>7</sup> Fol. clviii. back, col. 1.    <sup>8</sup> right.  
<sup>9</sup> you.    <sup>10-10</sup> then not to be.    <sup>11</sup> of.

Florence soon  
strikes the king to  
earth, where he  
lies in a trance.

The youth tells  
his foe that he  
will give him as  
prisoner to a fair  
damsel.

The king yields,  
and rides before  
Florence into the  
town.

The men of  
Navarre do not  
rise up in time to  
rescue their king.

therof.' Florence answered and sayd, 'I shall not  
refuse the Iustes' / then he put vp his sworde, & toke  
a great spere / and so ran agaynste the kynge his  
vncler / and y<sup>e</sup> kynge came agaynst hym / <sup>1</sup>they met <sup>4</sup>  
together so rudely that the kynges spere brake all to  
pees / but Florence spere was byge, wherwith he  
strake the kynge so rudely that he fell to the erthe  
with his fete vpward, & he fell so rudely<sup>2</sup> that he laye <sup>8</sup>  
in a traunce, <sup>3</sup>so that or he coude releue<sup>3</sup> Florence toke  
hym by y<sup>e</sup> ventayle of his helme, and sayd, 'Nauer-  
noyse, or I slepe I shall render<sup>4</sup> you prisoner into the  
handes of a fayre damoyzell, whome I loue enterly / <sup>5</sup>12  
in all the worlde there is none lyke her in beautye,  
yf ye refuse thus to do, with my sword I shall inconty-  
nent stryke of your hede fro the shulders' / the kynge  
sayd he was content to fulfyll his pleasure, & to yelde <sup>16</sup>  
hymselfe prysoner / then Florence toke his sworde fro  
hym, and made hym to mounte on<sup>6</sup> his horse / and  
made hym to [r]yde<sup>7</sup> before hym towards the towne,  
and delyuered hym to the keypyng of .x. knyghtes / <sup>20</sup>  
and Florence rode after with his sworde in his hande al  
bloody / y<sup>e</sup> crye and noyse began to be great among the  
Nauernoys / they enforsyd them on all parties to haue  
rescued theyr kyng, but they could not come in tyme / <sup>24</sup>  
for by that <sup>8</sup>tyme Florence was within the gates of the  
citty, wheras he was well<sup>9</sup> receyued.

¶ when the Nauernoys saw how they loste theyr  
payne,<sup>10</sup> and how theyr kynge was entered into the <sup>28</sup>  
citty they were<sup>11</sup> sorowfull, and came before the barryers  
& skyrmysshed, and wan but lytell, and so retourned  
with small profyghte and sorowfull for the losse<sup>12</sup> they  
had receyued that daye, for the felde was couered <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> and. <sup>2</sup> sodenly.

<sup>3-3</sup> and before he could be recovered. <sup>4</sup> deliuer. <sup>5</sup> for.

<sup>6</sup> vpon. <sup>7</sup> dyde *in text*. <sup>8</sup> Fol. clviii. back, col. 2.

<sup>9</sup> right ioyfully. <sup>10</sup> labour. <sup>11</sup> right. <sup>12</sup> that.



with dede men / thus they retourned to theyr tentes  
 and paulyons, and the Aragonoys entered into the  
 citey of courtoys with great ioye / <sup>1</sup>when they were in  
 4 the citey, then Florence toke the kyng of Nauerne, his  
 vncle, by the hande, and ledde hym to the palays, and <sup>2</sup>  
 alyghted & wente into the hall, wheras he founde kyng  
 Guaryn his father, who had great ioye of his comynge /  
 8 when he sawe his sone Florence bryngynge his enemye  
 presoner / he enbrased his sone, and sayd, 'My ryght  
 dere sone, I am ryght ioyous <sup>3</sup> of your comynge' /  
 'father,' quod Florence, 'I haue done so moch by the  
 12 ayde of our lord Iesu chryst that I haue taken your  
 enemye prysoner, whome I render into your handis to  
 do with hym at your pleasure. Now I wyll ye kepe  
 your promyse with me syn I haue quyt myne / nowe it  
 16 is tyme that ye delyuer to <sup>4</sup> me the damoyzell, whome  
 I shall make quene and lady after your dysces' / when  
 the kynge vnderstode his sone he was al in a rage, and  
 sayd / 'fayre son, leue thy folly & take suche a wyfe  
 20 acordyng to thyne estate, & thynke no more of *that*  
 new foundelyng, for knowe for trouthe I haue caused  
 her to be caste in <sup>5</sup> y<sup>e</sup> see, wheras she is drowned /  
 Thou arte a fole to thynke that I wyll <sup>6</sup>suffer after my  
 24 dysses that a poore caytyfe, newe founde, shulde be  
 lady and quene crowned of such a realme / beware in  
 as moche as thou thynkest to dysplease me / *that* tho  
 be not so hardy <sup>7</sup> to speke or to <sup>8</sup>remembre eny mor  
 28 the newe founde damoyssel' / when Florence harde y  
 kyng his father saye how the damoyzell was drowned  
 in the see, his blod mounted into his face / and  
 his harte was so oppressed and so heuy that he had no  
 32 power to speke / & suche a marueylous colde swete  
 toke hym that there was no vayne nor membre in

The army of  
 Navarre retires to  
 its tents, and the  
 army of Arragon  
 enters the city.

The king of  
 Arragon warmly  
 welcomes Flo-  
 rence, who enters  
 the palace with  
 his prisoners.

Florence demands  
 Chariet.

His father bids  
 him have done  
 with such folly,  
 and tells him that  
 Chariet is  
 drowned.

Florence is over-  
 come at the  
 words.

<sup>1</sup> and.      <sup>2</sup> there.      <sup>3</sup> ioyfull.      <sup>4</sup> vnto.

<sup>5</sup> to.      <sup>6</sup> Fol. cliv. col. 1.      <sup>7</sup> as.

<sup>8</sup> omitted.

He falls to the  
ground in a  
trance.

He revives, and  
curses his father.

He will go to the  
place where she  
was drowned,  
and share her  
sepulture.

He invites the  
king of Navarre  
and his prisoners  
to aid him to  
revenge himself  
on his father.

his body but trymbelyd for sorowe<sup>1</sup> and anger that was  
in hym / so that he had no power to sustayne hymselfe,  
but fell downe to y<sup>e</sup> erthe in a great traunce / <sup>2</sup>so<sup>2</sup>  
that euery man there wente<sup>3</sup> he had bene dede, and <sup>4</sup>  
euery man complayned for hym / <sup>4</sup>specyally y<sup>e</sup> kynge  
his father was<sup>5</sup> sorowfull, and wold as then that he had  
neuer begonне that mater / when Florence cam agayne  
to hymselfe, he sayd / 'O <sup>6</sup>very god,<sup>6</sup> the erthe ought <sup>8</sup>  
to be cursed when it sustayneth such a <sup>7</sup>kyng <sup>8</sup>tray-  
toure<sup>8</sup> that hathe done suche a case<sup>9</sup> / great pareyle it  
is to be conuersaunt with hym' / then Florence loked  
vpon the knyghtes aboute hym, and sayde / 'syr, <sup>12</sup>  
I requyre you for all the loue that<sup>8</sup> ye ought of reason  
to bere me / bryng me to y<sup>e</sup> sam place where as she  
whome I loue perfectly was perysshed and drowned /  
for other sepulture I desyre none / but the same that <sup>16</sup>  
she hathe: for the loue of her it shall please me well  
to be vnder couerte vnder the wawes of the se where as  
my louer<sup>10</sup> is, to the entente that of me there be harde  
neuer more remembraunce' / Then he behelde the kynge <sup>20</sup>  
of Nauerne his vnclе, whom he had taken presoner, &  
sayd, 'syr kynge of Nauerne, thou arte <sup>11</sup>my presoner /  
but yf thou wylte ayde me to be reuenged of this  
treason that my father hathe done, I shall <sup>12</sup>let the <sup>24</sup>  
go agayne franke<sup>13</sup> and quyte' / 'fayre nephue,' quod  
he, 'leue that foly and speke no more therof / for  
it touchethe moche your honoure / and ye shall be  
blamed of all them that here spekyng therof.' 'Syr,' <sup>28</sup>  
quod Florence / 'what is that ye saye, ye know wel ye  
are my presoner, and that it lyethe in me whether  
ye shall lyue or dye.' 'Fayre nephue,' quod the  
kynge, 'I wyll well agree to your wordes / but yf ye <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> sorow *after* anger.

<sup>2-2</sup> in such sort.

<sup>3</sup> thought.

<sup>4</sup> and.

<sup>5</sup> right.

<sup>6-6</sup> good Lord.

<sup>7</sup> trayterous.

<sup>8-8</sup> omitted.

<sup>9</sup> deede.

<sup>10</sup> Loue.

<sup>11</sup> Fol. clix. col. 2.

<sup>12</sup> then.

<sup>13</sup> free.

wyll beleue me / byleue the kynge youre father, & leue  
 to do after your owne wyll' / 'what,' quod Florence,  
 'ye know wel that in me it lyethe to stryke of your  
 4 hede without ye wyll agre vnto my wyl and pleasure,  
 the whiche thyng I wyll do without<sup>1</sup> incontynente ye  
 swere the dethe of kyng Guaryn my father / and *that*  
 neuer to take peas with hym tyll<sup>2</sup> ye haue brought hym  
 8 to the dethe / on<sup>3</sup> this condycyon I shall set you  
 in sauegarde / for the traytoure hathe dysceued me of  
 the thyng that I loue best in this world.' Then y<sup>e</sup>  
 kynge of Nauerne sayd / 'fayre<sup>4</sup> nephue, ye ar as yet  
 12 yonge, I can not tell whether youre wordis and promyses  
 are stable and ferme or not / for the youth that I se in  
 you and also for the great dyspleasure that ye be in<sup>5</sup> as<sup>5</sup>  
 now / <sup>6</sup>therefore, fayre nephue, I haue great fere that  
 16 ye shulde begyle me.' 'Syr,' quod Florence, 'god  
 forbode that I shulde be so dysceyuable of my promyse  
 to promyse you any thyng and fulfill it not, what so  
 euer shulde fall therof.' At this tyme there were but  
 20 fewe parsons in the palays with the kynge / for all the  
 lordes and knyghtes were gone in to the towne to theyr  
 logynges to refresshe<sup>5</sup> & to rest<sup>5</sup> them of theyr trauayle  
 & <sup>7</sup>werynes / therfore the kynge was in his palays with  
 24 a small company / y<sup>e</sup> which Florence had well espyed /  
<sup>6</sup>there<sup>8</sup> were a<sup>8</sup> sartayne of Florence knyghtes aboute  
 hym, to<sup>9</sup> whom he sayd, all wepyng / 'syrs, inconty-  
 nent go and get me my horse, and also the kynge  
 28 of Nauerne his hors redy at the gate' / the which was  
 done; when they were come then Florence sayde to<sup>9</sup>  
 the kynge of Nauerne his vncl / <sup>10</sup>'if ther be eny  
 corage in you to be saue and out of damage<sup>11</sup> take this  
 32 sword in your hande, and let vs leue this vnhappy  
 kynge to vse his dayes in sorowe / and come on and

The king, his  
uncle, counsels  
him to obey his  
father's will.

Florence threat-  
ens his life :  
unless he swears  
the death of the  
king of Arragon  
in his behalf, he  
must die.

The royal prisoner  
fears that Florence  
will deceive him.

There were few  
people about the  
palace.

Florence orders  
horses for himself  
and the king of  
Navarre.

He gives a sword  
to his prisoner,  
and bids him  
follow him.

1 except.      2 vntill.      3 vpon.      4 Deere.  
 5-5 omitted.      6 and.      7 Fol. clix. back, col. l.  
 8-8 was.      9 vnto.      10 good vncl.      11 seruage.

Outside the town,  
Florence again  
exacta a promise  
from the king of  
Navarre to slay  
his father.

Then the king  
joins his army,

and summons all  
the men of his  
realm to attack  
the king of  
Arragon.

folowe me' / 'fayre nephue,' quod the kynge of  
Nauerne / 'I haue great fere *that* ye wyll begyle me' /  
'syr,' quod Florence, 'thynke it not, but come on<sup>1</sup> after  
me & ye shall se what I wyll do' / then Florence 4  
departed and the kynge of nauerne with hym; they  
lepte on<sup>2</sup> theyr horses / when they were on<sup>2</sup> theyr  
good horses ther was no man at that tyme in the towne  
abrode to let Florence of his enterpryse / but thus they 8  
passed bothe tyll<sup>3</sup> they were without the towne / then  
Florence sayd to the kynge his vncl / 'syr, nowe ye  
knowe well that I haue broughte you out of this  
towne, and therfore I requyre you agayn that ye neuer 12  
take peas with the kyng my father, tyll<sup>3</sup> ye haue  
slayne him' / 'fayre nephue,' quod the kyng, 'that<sup>4</sup> ye  
requyre me to do I shall fulfyll it, and thus I recom-  
mende you to god:' when the kyng saw hym selfe 16  
so well delyuered he was ioyfull / & so rode tyll<sup>3</sup> he  
came to his hoste, wheras his men receiued hym with  
great ioy, & they demaunded how he was scaped out of  
the handes of Florence / then the kyng shewed all the 20  
maner howe Florence deliuered hym, wherof they had  
great maruayle, and had great ioy of his comyng; <sup>5</sup>and  
to acomplysse his promyse to Florence his nephue / he  
sente to all his realme of Nauerne, to all his frendes 24  
and alyes<sup>6</sup> to come and ayde hym. Now we shall leue  
spekyng of the kyng of Nauerne, and speke of Florence  
his nephue.

¶ How kyng Guaryn put Floren[ce] his sone 28  
in<sup>7</sup> a towre in preson / and howe the da-  
moysel scapyd out of the towre and spake  
with Florence, her loue, at an arche vpon  
the gardayne syd, and how they were 32

<sup>1</sup> omitted.    <sup>2</sup> vpon.    <sup>3</sup> vntill.    <sup>4</sup> which.  
<sup>5</sup> Fol. clix. back, col. 2.    <sup>6</sup> other.    <sup>7</sup> to.

spyed / and how she thought to haue  
drowned herselfe. Ca. clxv.



4 **W**hen Florence had delyuered the kyng  
of Nauerne his vncke, whom he had  
taken before in the batayle / then he  
returned agayne into y<sup>e</sup> citey and so  
rode tyll he came to the palayes, wheras

8 he founde the kynge his father, <sup>1</sup>and sayde, as a man  
almoste out of his mynde <sup>2</sup> / 'O, thou false traytour,  
thou hast done so moch thughe thyne ylues, that I  
had rather desyre the <sup>3</sup> dethe then the <sup>3</sup> lefe' / Then he

Florence returns  
to his father and  
reproaches him.

12 sayd to the knyghtes that were there presente / 'syrs,  
I praye you brynge me to the see and caste me therin  
in the same place, wheras my louer <sup>4</sup> was cast, for I  
wyll not lyue one owre lenger / yf ye do not this I

He orders his men  
to cast him in the  
sea, in the same  
place where  
Clariet was  
drowned.

16 shall sle myselfe withe myne owne handes' / when  
kyng Guaryn harde his sone saye so, he was ryght  
sorowfull / and spake fersly to <sup>5</sup> his sone, & com-  
maunded to take hym and to sette hym in pryson in the

Florence is  
ordered to prison  
by the king.

20 towre, in suche wyse that he may be sure of hym / and  
sayd, 'well I oughte to be angry in my harte when this  
boy, myne owne sone, thus delethe withe me: but by  
the faythe that I owe <sup>6</sup> to my <sup>6</sup> lorde, <sup>7</sup>saynt Iames <sup>7</sup> /

24 the dyspleasure *that* he hathe done to <sup>5</sup> me he shall  
derely abyte it / for as longe as he leueth he shall haue  
no fote of my londe' / 'syr,' *quod* Florence, 'by you  
nor by your londe, nor by any thyng that ye can do,

28 I set not therby a boton, for I had rather dye then  
lyue.' There was no man presente but *that* wepte  
petuously <sup>8</sup> for petye / <sup>9</sup>when Florence sawe them  
wepe, he said to <sup>5</sup> them / 'syrs, com to <sup>5</sup> me, tak of my

32 harnays <sup>10</sup> & put me into the handes of the kynge my

<sup>1</sup> Fol. clx. col. 1.

<sup>2</sup> wits.

<sup>3</sup> thy.

<sup>4</sup> Loue.

<sup>5</sup> vnto.

<sup>6-6</sup> vnto our.

<sup>7-7</sup> god.

<sup>8</sup> gruously.

<sup>9</sup> and.

<sup>10</sup> armour.



His armour is removed, and his father takes him roughly by the hand.

He leads his son to the great tower.

Florence complains of his hard fortune, and Clariet overhears him, for she was shut up in the same tower.

She scrapes away the bricks in the wall with her fingers and a little knife, and enters the garden that is round about the tower.

father, for I wyll not that any of you shuld haue any displeasure for my sake / lette me bere the blame my selfe syn<sup>1</sup> I haue lost the thyng that I loue best' / then the knyghtes came to<sup>2</sup> Florence and vnarmed hym <sup>4</sup> and delyuered hym to y<sup>e</sup> kyng his father / then the kyng toke hym by the hand and led hym forth rudely, and sayd howe he wolde set hym in suche a place out of the which he shuld not com of a longe space. The <sup>8</sup> erle Peter of Ara<sup>3</sup>gon had great sorow, but he durst speke no word / the kyng hymselfe led hym to the great towre, and there lefte hym sore wepyng and makynge great sorow for his louer<sup>4</sup> that<sup>5</sup> he had lost / <sup>12</sup> he made such sorowe that petye it was to here / & when the nyghte came and that he remembered the damoysell his sorowes began to renewe. And as wel as he made sorow for his louer<sup>4</sup> / y<sup>e</sup><sup>6</sup> damoysel Clariet, <sup>16</sup> who was in the same towre muryed<sup>7</sup> vp in pryson, she harde the complayntes that Florence made / and so long she herkenid that at the last she thought<sup>8</sup> she knew y<sup>e</sup> voyce, and sayd / 'O, <sup>9</sup>very god,<sup>9</sup> what may <sup>20</sup> this be, who is this that I here thus complayne; me thynke I haue hard or<sup>10</sup> this tyme <sup>11</sup>that voice,<sup>11</sup> <sup>12</sup>me thynke it shuld be he that loued me so wel: I wyll not leue serching tyll<sup>13</sup> I maye knowe the trouthe.' <sup>24</sup> Then y<sup>e</sup> noble<sup>14</sup> damoysel came to the dore *that* was newly muryd<sup>7</sup> vp / wherby the mortar was not fully drye, and she scraped with her fyngers and with a lytell knyfe that she had, so *that* at<sup>15</sup> laste she scraped <sup>28</sup> out a stone. Then she assayed to pull out mo / so moche she dyd with her fyngers and<sup>15</sup> knyfe that she made a great hole in the newe wall / so that she creped out and went in to the gardayne, the which isyued to <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> seeing.      <sup>2</sup> vnto.      <sup>3</sup> Fol. clx. col. 2.      <sup>4</sup> Loue.

<sup>5</sup> whom.      <sup>6</sup> faire.      <sup>7</sup> immured.      <sup>8</sup> that.

<sup>9</sup> <sup>9</sup> good Lord.      <sup>10</sup> before.      <sup>11-11</sup> *before* this tyme.

<sup>12</sup> aud.      <sup>13</sup> vntill.      <sup>14</sup> *omitted*.      <sup>15</sup> the.

the towre / and then she felte by her a rosyer, vnder  
 the which she sate her downe / the mone shone bryght,  
 wherby the gardayne was as lyght as though it had  
 4 bene clere daye. Then she toke a fayre rose in her  
 hande, the which smelled swetely, & sayd / <sup>1</sup>‘O, very  
 God,<sup>1</sup> I wolde<sup>2</sup> it were your<sup>3</sup> pleasure that my louer  
 were here by<sup>4</sup> me, I thynke he be not far<sup>5</sup> hence / I  
 8 wysse with hym this swete rose, so *that* he knewe<sup>2</sup> it  
 came fro me / I wyll not leue serchyng<sup>6</sup> tyll<sup>6</sup> I haue  
 found hym / yf I can not <sup>7</sup>fynde hym in doloure &  
 mysery I must ende my dayes’ / the same tyme that the  
 12 damoyzell complayned thus in the gardayne, Florence  
 who was in the towre / and harde the<sup>8</sup> damoyzell in  
 the gardayne, he knew her well by the voyce, and sayd,  
 ‘O, very<sup>9</sup> god, what is it that I here, yonder in the  
 16 gardayne: ‘dere louer,’ quod the damoyzell,<sup>10</sup> ‘it is she  
 whome ye do loue so well / I am issued out of the  
 towre, wher in I haue bene in great mysery / <sup>11</sup>I can  
 not tell what wyll fall therof / comforte me or elles I  
 20 shall dye here in great sorowe:’ when Florence harde  
 the voyce of his louer<sup>12</sup> / he had suche ioye at his harte  
 that he forgate all his dolour / when he saw that she  
 was not dede / then he sayd to<sup>13</sup> her: ‘a, my ryght  
 24 swete louer<sup>12</sup> whether wyll ye go / for yf the kynge, my  
 father, know that ye be scaped out of the towre incon-  
 tynent, he wyll sle you, he wyl haue no petye of you,  
 and I can not ayde<sup>14</sup> you. <sup>15</sup>Fayre louer,<sup>15</sup> I praye  
 28 you gather me some flowers, and caste them in at this  
 wyndowe / I shall pas my dolours the better when I  
 haue in my handes any thyng that comethe out of  
 yours’ / then the damoyzell gathered roses and Flowers,  
 32 & dyd cast them into her louer: wher of Florence had

She takes a rose  
 in her hand, and  
 declares that she  
 will find her lover,  
 whose voice she  
 has heard.

Florence recog-  
 nizes her.

He fears that his  
 father will slay  
 her when he finds  
 that she has  
 escaped.

He begs her to  
 gather flowers for  
 him.

1-1 Ah, good Lord.    2 that.    3 thy.    4 with.  
 5 from.    6 untill.    7 Fol. clx. back. col. 1.    8 faire.  
 9 good.    10 faire Ladie.    11 and.    12 Loue.  
 13 vnto.    14 succour.    15-15 Sweet loue.

The wall of his prison is too thick to allow him to take Clariet by the hand.

One of the watchmen discovers them talking to each other, and warns them to be silent.

More watchmen follow and find the hole in the wall, through which Clariet made her way,

and declare that she has fled away.

In despair Clariet leaves the garden of the tower and climbs a rock by the sea, thinking to drown herself.

great ioye / when he had receyued them fro her, and  
 kyst them often tymes : then he came to the wyndowe  
 thynkyng to haue taken his loue<sup>1</sup> by the hande, but  
 he coude not, <sup>2</sup>for<sup>2</sup> the wall was to thycke, wherof they 4  
 were bothe sory / the same tyme whyles they were  
 thus deuysynge together, the wache men came abought,  
 whome the kyng had sent thether to spye and knowe  
 if Peter of Aragon dyd sende to<sup>3</sup> those prisoners any 8  
 comforte or ayde / <sup>4</sup>when he came thether he<sup>5</sup> harkened  
 and harde the voyces of thos <sup>6</sup>two persons, and harde  
 well theyr wordes, and wepte for<sup>7</sup> petye of them : then  
 swetely the wache man called to<sup>3</sup> them, & sayd, 'hold 12  
 your peas, for yf ye be spyed ye can not scape the  
 dethe ; I haue great petye of you both : I pray to<sup>8</sup> god  
 preserue you, for I canne not <sup>2</sup>ayde nor<sup>2</sup> comforte  
 you' / Then they held theyr peas and so wente a 16  
 sonder to the entent<sup>9</sup> they shuld not be harde nor  
 sene / then<sup>10</sup> thether came two other wache men, sente  
 thether by y<sup>e</sup> kyng to se yf any body came to the towre  
 to ayde or comfort the two presoners / when they were 20  
 come nere to y<sup>e</sup> towre they saw the newe made wall  
 broken / then they sayde eche to other, suerly the  
 damoyzell is fled and hathe broken<sup>11</sup> pryson / then  
 they cryed out and made a <sup>12</sup>scrye,<sup>12</sup> and said the 24  
 damoyssel is fled out of the towre / when the damoyssel,  
 beyng in the gardayne, harde the noyse that the spies  
 made she was in great fere and doubte, the which was  
 no maruayle, then incontynent as preuely as she coude 28  
 she wente fro the towre and wente to the ende of the  
 gardayne / wheras there was a hye rocke, & vnder the  
 rocke a great water and depe, she clame<sup>13</sup> vp<sup>2</sup> vpon the  
 rocke and sayde : ' A, Florence, my dere loue, this day 32  
 shall be the departynge of vs two / it must behoue me

<sup>1</sup> Loue.

<sup>2-2</sup> omitted.

<sup>3</sup> vnto.

<sup>4</sup> and.

<sup>5</sup> they.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. clx. back, col. 2.

<sup>7</sup> meere.

<sup>8</sup> to after god.

<sup>9</sup> that.

<sup>10</sup> ther came.

<sup>11</sup> out of.

<sup>12-12</sup> great crye.

<sup>13</sup> did cline.

to dye for your sake' / she saw in the gardaine a great  
 nombre of torches lyght and men sekyng all about  
 for her, wherof she was afracyd and not without a  
 4 cause / for she knew wel<sup>1</sup> yf she were taken she were  
 lost for euer / ryght swetely she called on<sup>2</sup> our lord god  
 and on the<sup>3</sup> vyrgyn Mary<sup>3</sup> for ayde and comferte, &  
 sayd: 'alas, yf I be taken I can not scape fro the  
 8 marterdome of dethe, but synne it is thus that we must  
 nedis depart for euer, I had rather be drowned then be  
 ta<sup>4</sup>ken;' therwith she made the syngne of y<sup>e</sup> crosse,  
 recommendynge herselfe to oure lorde<sup>5</sup> Iesu chryst,<sup>5</sup>  
 12 and therwith tombeled downe the rocke to haue fallen  
 down into the water / but as she fell she fell<sup>6</sup> in a  
 great busshe by the waye / wherby she was prycked in  
 dyuers places on her face and handis so that the blode  
 16 folowed, wherby she felte such payne *that* she swooned /  
 then the noyse ran thrughe<sup>7</sup> the paleys how<sup>1</sup> the  
 damoyzell was scapyd out of the towre / so<sup>8</sup> that the  
 kyng was aduertised therof,<sup>9</sup> wherof he<sup>9</sup> was sorowful,  
 20 & made promyse that erle Peter of Aragon shulde lese  
 all his londes & goodes, as he thoughte that by his  
 meanes she<sup>10</sup> scaped the pryson.

She sees men  
 with torches seek-  
 ing her below,

and prays to the  
 Virgin for aid.

She throws herself  
 from the rock,  
 but falls upon  
 bushes, and her  
 life is saved,  
 although she  
 swoons.

The king learns  
 news of her  
 e-scape, and blames  
 Sir Peter.

¶ How the fyrst wacheman found out the  
 24 damoyssel, and led her into a great wode  
 therby / and after<sup>11</sup> the same wacheman  
 delyuered out of pryson Florence,<sup>12</sup> and  
 shewed hym the place wher the damoyssel  
 28 was, and howe florence and claryet entered  
 into the see / & how the kyng went after  
 his sone, & the wacheman taken. Ca. clxvi.

<sup>1</sup> that.      <sup>2</sup> vpon.      <sup>3-3</sup> holy Ghost.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. clxi. col. 1.      <sup>5-5</sup> god.      <sup>6</sup> lighted.      <sup>7</sup> out.

<sup>8</sup> in such sort.      <sup>9-9</sup> who.      <sup>10</sup> was.      <sup>11</sup> afterward.

<sup>12</sup> Florence *after* deliuered.

The first watch-  
man who had  
spied Florence  
and Clariet talk-  
ing, finds Clariet.



Hus as the brute was in y<sup>e</sup> palays for<sup>1</sup>  
scapyng of the damoyzell / the fyrst  
wache man that fyrst had spyed y<sup>e</sup> .ii.  
louers together / he<sup>2</sup> went all aboutghte <sup>4</sup>  
in the gardayne to seke<sup>3</sup> yf he coude  
fynde the damoyzell: he sought so moche that he  
founde the damoyzell, where as she laye in the busshe  
in great parayle to be drowned / this wacheman <sup>4</sup> was a 8  
wyse man, and as preuely as he coude he issued out of  
the gardayne and went downe to the water syde, and  
there he founde a lytell bote & entered into it / and so  
passed the vyne gardayne as preuely as he coude, so <sup>12</sup>  
that none harde nor sawe hym: and when he was  
agaynst the busshe wheras the damoyzell was / then<sup>2</sup>  
he spoke to her softly, and sayd, <sup>5</sup> 'damoyzell, be not  
abasshed, for yf I may in any maner of wyse, I shall<sup>6</sup> 16  
ayde you / come downe and enter into this bote, and I  
shall set you in the foreste, and tary there tyll<sup>7</sup> I  
brynge to you Florence, your louer / the whiche I shall  
do by the grace of Iesu, for yf I can by any maner of 20  
menes / I shall brynge hym out of<sup>1</sup> daunger that he is  
in / bycause I haue alwayes loued hym, and for the  
goodnes that he hathe done to me I shall nowe rewarde  
it' / when the damoyzell harde the wacheman / for <sup>24</sup>  
ioye therof she forgate all her sorowe, and incontynente  
as well as she myght she issued out of the busshe and  
went downe the ryuer syde. Then she entered into  
the bote, & the wacheman set her ouer & lefte her in y<sup>e</sup> 28  
forest, y<sup>e</sup> which ioyned to the water syde / then he  
toke his leue of her, and sayd / <sup>5</sup> 'damoyzell, tary here  
tyll<sup>7</sup> I retourne agayne to you.' 'Frend,' quod the  
damoyzell, 'I praye to <sup>8</sup>our lord<sup>8</sup> ye may so spede as <sup>32</sup>  
to brynge hether my louer, and to set hym out of  
daunger;' and so he departed and entered agayne into

He promises to  
take her to a  
forest, and there  
bring Florence to  
her.

She enters the  
boat in which the  
watchman has  
come to her, and  
disembarks at the  
forest by the  
waterside.

<sup>1</sup> the.

<sup>2</sup> omitted.

<sup>3</sup> see.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. clxi. col. 2.

<sup>5</sup> Faire.

<sup>6</sup> will.

<sup>7</sup> untill.

<sup>8-8</sup> god that.



the gardayne, harkenynge towardes the palays, where as  
 there was great brute made for the scapyng of the  
 damoyzell; but there was no dought made of Florence,  
 4 bycause the tower that he was in was <sup>1</sup>so<sup>1</sup> stronge and  
 thycke. Also the chambre that he was in was not  
 towarde the palays, but it laye open agaynst the gar-  
 2 den; then the sayd wacheman came to y<sup>e</sup> wall syde,  
 8 where as there was a strayte lope<sup>3</sup> into Florence chaum-  
 bre, and he had two gotes fete in his handes / then he  
 callyd Florence, and sayd / 'syr, yf ye wyll be with  
 your louer<sup>4</sup> who taryeth for you in the forest, wheras I  
 12 haue lefte her in sa[ue]garde / helpe yourselfe that ye  
 were out of this towre / take here this gotes fete and  
 do you so moche there within to enlarge the lope that  
 ye myghte<sup>5</sup> issue out / and here without I shall make  
 16 the hole wyder' / when Florence vnderstode y<sup>e</sup> wache-  
 man he was neuer so ioyful in al his lyfe / when he  
 hard the man say that his louer<sup>4</sup> was in sauegarde /  
 then they laborid so sore that they made the lope so  
 20 large that Florence issued out / <sup>6</sup>then the wacheman  
 brought Florence to the stable, wheras some of the  
 kynges horses stode / specyally there was one <sup>7</sup>there<sup>7</sup>  
 coude<sup>8</sup> be founde <sup>1</sup>no suche<sup>1</sup> / this wacheman, who had  
 24 great affecyon and desyre to do seruyse to this yonge  
 lorde, dyd so moche *that* he brought to<sup>9</sup> Florence his  
 harnais,<sup>10</sup> his shyld and his helme, and his sworde and  
 a good spere / and so Florence armyd hym and lepte  
 vpon the good horse / then the wacheman shewed hym  
 the place in the forest, wheras he had left the damoy-  
 sell / and then he toke his leue of Florence, who  
 sayde, 'frynde, the seruyce that ye haue done me shall  
 32 be well rewarded in tyme to come:' then he rode  
 forth and lefte not tyll<sup>11</sup> he came there,<sup>12</sup> as his louer<sup>4</sup>

The same  
 watchman shows  
 Florence how he  
 may escape.

Florence issues  
 forth from the  
 tower: he is  
 brought by the  
 watchman to the  
 king's stables,

he is armed and  
 mounted on the  
 best horse.

He reaches the  
 forest, and finds  
 Clariet.

1-1 omitted.

2 Fol. clxi. back, col. 1.

3 hole.

4 Loue. 5 may. 6 and. 7-7 whose lyke. 8 not.

9 vnto.

10 armour.

11 vntill.

12 where.

She mounts the horse beside her lover, and they ride away.

Men are seen in pursuit.

They coast along the seaside of the forest,

and come to a little port, where a ship is ready to set sail.

The master takes them on board.

The watchman arrives on the shore when they have left, and sorrows much, for he is in fear of his life.

was; <sup>1</sup>when he saw her his ioye was renewed, then he alyghted and kyssed his loue,<sup>2</sup> & when he sawe that she was so bloody he had great petye of her, and sayd / 'dere loue,<sup>2</sup> it is nedefull that we departe or<sup>3</sup> the <sup>4</sup> daye come / therfore make you redy and lepe vp behyn le me' / <sup>1</sup>then Florence moun<sup>4</sup>ted and she lepte up behynde hym and so departed as sone as they myght / when they were in the felde the damoyzell <sup>8</sup> lokyd backe to<sup>5</sup> the citey <sup>6</sup>ward<sup>6</sup> / and she saw<sup>7</sup> great number of men issued<sup>8</sup> out / then she said to<sup>9</sup> Florence / 'syr, I se wel<sup>10</sup> we be loste, for I se moche people issued<sup>8</sup> out of the citey, it is not possyble for us to be sauid, <sup>12</sup> but that we shall be taken, and specially I can not scape; I se well *that* nowe our loue shall depart / your father is fell and crewell, I knowe well<sup>10</sup> he wyll sle me:' then the wacheman came rynnynge after Florence <sup>16</sup> for fere that he had of the kynge / but he coude not ouertake Florence / who fled with his loue<sup>2</sup> behynde hym as fast as he myghte costynge<sup>11</sup> the see syde / for Florence knew well the preuy wayes, for<sup>12</sup> he had often <sup>20</sup> tymes vsed the wayes when he was wonte to go a hawkyng or huntynge, so long he rode that he came to a lytel porte, where ther was a shyppe redy to depart / then Florence alyghted and his loue<sup>2</sup> with <sup>24</sup> hym, & tyed his hors to a tree, <sup>1</sup>then he toke the damoyzell by y<sup>e</sup> hand and came to the mayster of y<sup>e</sup> shyp and agreed so with hym that he and his loue<sup>2</sup> entered into the shyppe / then they hoysed vp theyr <sup>28</sup> sayles and so went<sup>13</sup> fro the lond / the wacheman came to the see syde trustynge to haue founde Florence there / <sup>1</sup>he was ryght sorowfull when he saw them so far in<sup>14</sup> y<sup>e</sup> see: he was in great fere of<sup>15</sup> his lyfe. Then <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> and.      <sup>2</sup> Loue.      <sup>3</sup> before.      <sup>4</sup> Fol. clxi. back, col. 2.

<sup>5</sup> towards.      <sup>6-6</sup> omitted.      <sup>7</sup> a.      <sup>8</sup> issuing.

<sup>9</sup> vnto.      <sup>10</sup> that.      <sup>11</sup> toward.      <sup>12</sup> because.

<sup>13</sup> sayled.      <sup>14</sup> on.      <sup>15</sup> loosing.


kyng Guaryn came thether with a great nomber, and  
 when he sawe the shyp so farre in the see, he sayde /  
 'a, good lorde, now haue I loste my sone / for I knowe  
 4 well he is gone in yonder shyp and the damoyseil with  
 hym / by the faythe that I owe to<sup>1</sup> our lorde Iesu  
 Chryste the<sup>2</sup> wacheman shall lese his hede' / then the  
 wache<sup>3</sup> man was taken and fast bounde, so that the  
 8 blode came out at his fyngers endes, and sayd all  
 wepyng, 'a, <sup>4</sup>very god,<sup>4</sup> in an yll oure I was ac-  
 quaynted with Florence and his loue<sup>5</sup>: also for the  
 goodnes *that* I haue done I shall haue a small rewarde,  
 12 this day I am lyke to lese my lyfe for loue of my lorde.'

The king of  
Arragon sees the  
ship, and learns  
that his son with  
Clarlet is on  
board.

He orders the  
watchman to lose  
his head.

¶ Of the great debate that was in the palays  
 for the wachemens sake, whomme the kynge  
 wolde haue had to be hanged / and how  
 16 the kyng of Nauerne took the citey of  
 courtoyse / and how he departed<sup>6</sup> thence.

Ca. C.lxvii.

20  Hen the erle, Peter of Aragon, sawe the  
 wache man taken by whome Florence  
 and his loue<sup>5</sup> wer saued / he was  
 sory to se the man so sore be<sup>7</sup>ten and  
 entreated<sup>8</sup> / then he wente in hast to

Sir Peter pities  
the watchman.

24 the kynge, and sayd / 'syr, ye shewe well by your  
 workys that ye haue but small reason to suffer thus  
 this poore man to be beten, and that ye wolde put hym  
 to deth / for the goodnes that he hath done to your  
 28 sone therin<sup>9</sup> he hath done but as he shulde do, and  
 lyke a trewe seruaunte; ye ought the better to loue  
 hym, ye shall do yll to put hym to deth / I wyl<sup>10</sup> ye  
 knowe<sup>10</sup> yf ye put hym to dethe I wyl neuer<sup>11</sup> serue

He pleads for him  
with the king.

<sup>1</sup> vnto.

<sup>2</sup> this.

<sup>3</sup> Fol. clxii. col. 1.

<sup>4</sup> <sup>4</sup> good Lord.

<sup>5</sup> Loue.

<sup>6</sup> from.

<sup>7</sup> Fol. clxii. col. 2.

<sup>8</sup> threatened.

<sup>9</sup> therein *after* done.

<sup>10</sup> that.

<sup>11</sup> not.

If he is slain, Sir  
Peter will join  
the king of  
Navarre.

The king of  
Arragon is  
obdurate.

The watchman's  
kindred kneel  
before the king,  
and implore him  
to have mercy.

Sir Peter declares  
the man shall not  
die unless by  
judgment of the  
lords and council.

The watchman is  
sent to prison,  
and the king goes  
to his palace,  
followed by Sir  
Peter and the  
knights, who  
loved him.

The king orders a  
scaffold to be  
erected.

Sir Peter orders  
the watchman's  
friends to go to a  
tower and arm  
themselves with  
the armour they  
shall find there.

you one daye lenger; But I wyll rather go to the  
kyng of Nauerne, and<sup>1</sup> to mayntayne his warre  
agaynste you' / when the kyng hard hym so to threte  
hym, he sware by god he shulde repent it, and how 4  
there shuld no man saue the wachemans lyfe: then the  
poore man enbrased the kynges leg & cryed for marcy /  
but the kyng sware and made promyse howe he shuld  
be hanged without marcy / when the erle Peter harde 8  
that he was<sup>2</sup> sorowfull / the poore man wepte &  
behelde the people that were there assembeled / and  
desyred them to praye for his sowle / sayenge howe he  
shuld dye for sauynge of his lorde / there were many 12  
of y<sup>e</sup> pore mans kyn,<sup>3</sup> they knelyd all downe before the  
kyng desyrynge hym to pardon hym / the kyng  
answered *that* he wold not / when the erle Peter harde  
that he sayd to the kyng, 'syr, suerly he shall not dye 16  
without it be by iugemente as your lordes and coun-  
sayle shal ordayne:' when the kyng hard that he was  
sore dysplesyd, and so entered in to the citeye and set  
the wacheman in pryson / then he wente to his palays, 20  
and Peter folowed hym, & acompanyed with many  
other knyghtes such as loued hym, and in lyke wyse so  
dyd the poore mannes kyn<sup>3</sup> / when the kyng was in his  
palays he commaunded<sup>4</sup> a scaffolde to be made, wheron 24  
he wolde haue the wacheman to lese his hede / when  
his kynsmen harde that they cryed for marcy / but the  
kyng wold do no thyng at theyr desyre / when<sup>5</sup> erle  
Peter sawe the yll wyll of the kyng he made a token 28  
to the wachemannes frendes, who were in nombre<sup>6</sup> a  
.C. and .l., *that* they shuld go to such a towre, where<sup>7</sup>  
was great plente of harnays,<sup>8</sup> and to breke it vp and to  
arme them, and so they dyd, and came agayne to the 32  
palais; and when the kyng sawe them comynge

<sup>1</sup> helpe.

<sup>2</sup> verie.

<sup>3</sup> kindred.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. clxii, back, col. 1.

<sup>5</sup> the.

<sup>6</sup> about a.

<sup>7</sup> there.

<sup>8</sup> Armour.

armyd / he cryed to his men that they shuld arme  
 them and to take them that were so bolde to come in<sup>1</sup>  
 his presence all armed; and when euery man was  
 4 armed they came agayne to the palays to haue taken  
 the wachman and all his kynred / but then<sup>2</sup> the wache-  
 man and his frendes, who were redy in armure, set  
 vpon the kyngis men: & also Peter of Aragon and his  
 8 company ayded them / so *that* there was great, so great  
 a skyrmysshe in the palays that it was petye to se it,  
 they cut of armes, legges & hedis, eche of other /  
 fynally the kynge and his men were so sore constrayned  
 12 *that* of force they abandoned the palays and fled awaye /  
 and the kynge fled into his chaumbre for sauegarde.  
 Anone the newes ran in the towne that the kynge was  
 sore assemblyd<sup>3</sup> in the palays and<sup>4</sup> iopardy of his  
 16 lyfe / then all the comunalte wente & armed them /  
 and sowned the larom bell, there was suche a noyse and  
 brute as thoughe all the world had bene lost / then a  
 spye went out and shewed the kynge of Nauerne howe  
 20 kynge Guaryn was assembeled in his palays within the  
 citey bycause of a wacheman whome<sup>5</sup> y<sup>e</sup> kyng wolde  
 put to dethe bycause<sup>6</sup> he had delyuered out of preson  
 Florence and the da<sup>m</sup>moysell his louer: <sup>8</sup> then the kyng  
 24 of Nauerne, ryght ioyous<sup>9</sup> of those newes, commaunded  
 hastely his men to be redy in harnays<sup>10</sup> / for he sayde<sup>5</sup>  
 it was tyme then or elles neuer to assayle the citey /  
 'great desyre I haue<sup>11</sup> to be reuenged of this kinge who  
 28 had wedded my syster / whome he hathe slayne, I shall  
 neuer haue ioye at my harte / tyll<sup>12</sup> I be reuenged' /  
 then euery man armed them / and so assemblyd  
 together with baners dysplayed, and so came in good  
 32 order towards the citey to assayle it / but when they  
 within the towne hard the crye and noyse without,

They return to  
 the palace and set  
 upon the king's  
 men.

Sir Peter aids the  
 former.

The king is driven  
 from his palace.

All the city is in  
 commotion.

News of the riot  
 is taken to the  
 king of Navarre.

He orders his  
 men to assail the  
 city.

1 to. 2 omitted. 3 assaulted. 4 in. 5 that.

6 in that. 7 Fol. clxii. back. col. 2. 8 Loue.

9 ioyfull. 10 armour. 11 (quoth he). 12 vntill.



At the approach  
of the men of  
Navarre the strife  
in the palace  
ceases.

The king of  
Arragon and his  
lords came forth  
to give battle to  
Navarre.

But the men of  
Navarre defeat  
the men of  
Arragon, and  
enter the city.

The king of  
Arragon takes  
refuge in a church,  
but he is never-  
theless taken  
prisoner.

He reproaches his  
enemy with sacri-  
lege in seizing him  
in the church.

The king of  
Navarre admits  
the sin, and pro-  
mises to release  
him if he will  
pardon the watch-  
man.

& sawe theyr enemyes comynge towardes them / they  
wente and shewed it at y<sup>e</sup> palays, wherby the stryfe  
there seased / & then the kynge and all his lordes, with  
all his people, issued out in batayle / then there began 4  
a sore batayle, and many a man slayne and maynid /  
but there were so many Nauernoys, that whether kyng  
Guaryn wold or not, parforce they were fayne to  
abandon the vyctory to theyr enemyes / and were fayne 8  
to flee into the towne: but theyr enemyes folowed  
them so nere that the kynge of Nauerne and his men  
entered in with them / then the kynge of Nauerne  
commaunded<sup>1</sup> none to<sup>2</sup> be slayne without they were 12  
found in defence / for he sayd he caryd not so he  
myght be reuenged of the kynge. Then the Nauernoys  
spred abrode in the citey takynge presoners / then kyng  
Gauryn fled to the mynster church / then he stode in 16  
the church dore to make defence / but it coude not  
auayle hym, there was so many of his enemyes that he  
fled to the hye aulter for sauegard / but y<sup>e</sup> kyng of  
Nauerne, who was entered into the church, com- 20  
maunded his men to take Guaryn / y<sup>e</sup> whiche they  
dyd / 'syrs,' <sup>3</sup>quod kynge Guaryn, 'ye do me great  
wronge to take me in this holy place, whereas euery  
man shulde be sauyl / aboute all thynges y<sup>e</sup> house of 24  
god ought to be refuge for euery man' / then y<sup>e</sup> kyng  
of Nauerne, who was holden for a good holy man /  
heryng what kynge Guaryn sayd, he knew well<sup>1</sup> he  
sayd<sup>4</sup> trouthe, and repentyd hymselfe, and sayd / 28  
'fayre brother,<sup>5</sup> for the offence that I haue committed  
agaynst our lorde god <sup>6</sup>Iesu chryste,<sup>6</sup> I shall amend it  
to the doble / so that ye do pardon the wacheman that  
hathe delyuered my nephue Florence out of your 32  
preson / I shall then shew you this courtoysye; for the  
offence that I haue made I and all my men shall issue

<sup>1</sup> that.

<sup>2</sup> should.

<sup>3</sup> Fol. clxiii. col. 1.

<sup>4</sup> the.

<sup>5</sup> Nephewe.

<sup>6-6</sup> omitted.

out of this cite without takynge of any presoner or  
 any maner of goodes / for the loue of my nephue  
 Florence, whome I loue enterely, and for the goodnes  
 4 of the people I shall go to my tentes without, and  
 I wyll graunte you a truse to endure for a moneth / and  
 I promyse you the monethe ones expyryd / I shall  
 aproche agayne so nere to this cite / that as long as  
 8 lyfe is in my body I shall not departe tyll<sup>1</sup> I haue  
 taken this cite and you, whome I take for myne  
 enemye / to haue you as my presoner / for I shall neuer  
 haue ioye at my harte tyll<sup>1</sup> I haue reuengyd the deth  
 12 of my syster, your wyfe / then kynge Guaryn sayde /  
 ‘syr<sup>2</sup> kynge of Nauerne / of the courtoysye and bountye  
 that ye shewe<sup>3</sup> me I thanke you / and as for the wache  
 man, I do pardon hym all myne yll wyll / and wheras  
 16 ye saye *that* ye wyll come so nere my cite to wyn it /  
 when *that* cometh, by the grace of god & by the helpe  
 of my t̄rew subiectes I shall do y<sup>e</sup> best I can to defende  
 my selfe and my cite’ / then the kyng of Nauerne  
 20 issued out of <sup>4</sup>the church, & lepte on<sup>5</sup> his horse and  
 rode to the gate and taryed there tyll<sup>1</sup> all his men were  
 clene auoyded out of the cite, to y<sup>e</sup> entent *that* none  
 presoners nor goodes shulde not<sup>2</sup> be had<sup>6</sup> out of the  
 24 cite, wherof his men were angry, & specially they  
*that* were poore / the other caryd not greatly bycause  
 y<sup>e</sup> .ii. kynges had bene so long frendes together / wher-  
 fore y<sup>e</sup> warre dyspleasid them, and<sup>7</sup> were sory that it  
 28 enduryd so longe / when the kynge of Nauerne saw  
 that all his men were issued out of the cite / then he  
 withdrew hym into his tent / then he closyd in the  
 cite with a sege abydynge tyl<sup>1</sup> the truse were<sup>8</sup> ex-  
 32 pyryd. Nowe let vs leue to speke of this warre  
 betwene these two kynges, & speke of Florence, who  
 sayled vpon the see with his louer Claryet.

There shall then  
 be a month's  
 truce, after which  
 the war shall  
 begin again.

The king of  
 Arragon pardons  
 the watchman.

The men of  
 Navarre depart  
 from the city,

and close the city  
 in a siege till the  
 truce should be  
 expired.

<sup>1</sup> vntill.    <sup>2</sup> omitted.    <sup>3</sup> vnto.    <sup>4</sup> Fol. clxiii. col. 2.

<sup>5</sup> vppon.    <sup>6</sup> caried.    <sup>7</sup> they.    <sup>8</sup> was.

¶ How the shyp wherin Florence <sup>1</sup>and his  
louer was in <sup>1</sup>was taken by the sarasyns,  
and all theyr company taken and slayne,  
and led to the castel of Anfalerne. 4

Ca. C.lxviii.



The master of the  
ship in which  
Florence had  
taken refuge  
learns his  
history;

he puts himself  
and his ship  
under Florence's  
orders, so that he  
may go where his  
father may not  
find him.

The master offers  
to take him to  
Marseilles.

He story<sup>2</sup> sheweth that after *that* Flor-  
ence was departed out of his cowntre  
with his loue<sup>3</sup> Claryet; how be it he <sup>8</sup>  
knew not what she was / so it was  
that the mayster of the shyp that he  
was in was of Marcyl<sup>4</sup> / when he  
knew that Florence was sone to kynge Guaryn of <sup>12</sup>  
Aragon, & that he had put his truste in hym, then he  
came to<sup>5</sup> Florence & sayd / 'syr, the goodnes and  
honoure *that* I se in you causeth me to say to<sup>5</sup> you  
that<sup>6</sup> I wolde not do to another; I wel perseyue by <sup>16</sup>  
you *that* ye are in great dought of y<sup>e</sup> kynge your father,  
leste he shulde folowe you to get you agayne / <sup>7</sup>syr, to  
the entente that ye <sup>8</sup>shall be well assured of me and of  
my maryners, I put in to your handes my selfe, my <sup>20</sup>  
shyppe, and all my maryners / and I wyl<sup>9</sup> they obeye  
you as they haue done me, and that ye be maister ouer  
vs al. And, syr, neuer thynke that the kynge of  
Aragon, your father, shall trouble you / we be<sup>10</sup> farre <sup>24</sup>  
ynoughe fro hym: by y<sup>e</sup> grace of god we shall so  
conducte you that we shall brynge you to the holy  
sepulture, & after brynge you<sup>11</sup> to marcyll<sup>4</sup> / and then  
fro thence ye maye go whether as it plesse you' / 'syr,' <sup>28</sup>  
quod Florence, 'of the honour and great courtoysye  
that ye offer me, I thanke you' / then all they that were  
within the shyppe sayde, 'syr, refuse not to be oure  
mayster / for yf the wynde had not bene agaynst vs we <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup>—<sup>1</sup> was and his Loue.

<sup>2</sup> History.

<sup>3</sup> Loue.

<sup>4</sup> Marsellis.

<sup>5</sup> vnto.

<sup>6</sup> which.

<sup>7</sup> but.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. clxiii. back. col. 1.

<sup>9</sup> that.

<sup>10</sup> are.

<sup>11</sup> bothe.

- had bene farre of by thys tyme / syr, haue no doubte  
 we shall all obeye you and do as ye commaunde vs, syn  
 it is our maysters pleasure' / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'I  
 4 thanke you of your offer, god suffer me to deserue it' /  
 Florence was ioyfull of the good aduenture that god had  
 sent hym. <sup>1</sup>Thus he and his louer<sup>2</sup> sayled ioyfully in  
 the see of Aufrike. So longe they sayled *that they*  
 8 paste the Isles of Corse, and Sardayne, & Cesyll, and  
 on a wednysdaye betymes they aryued nere to y<sup>e</sup> Isle of  
 Candy / there ther<sup>3</sup> arose vpon them a maruaylous  
 great wynd and tempest, so that parforce they were  
 12 dreuen to the coste of Barbary; the tempeste was  
 so great that euery man was in fere of drownynge / the  
 wawes were great & ferfull / the damoyseil was in  
 great doubte when she saw the maryners in suche fere :  
 16 <sup>1</sup>she called deuoutly vpon our lorde Iesu chryste, desyr-  
 ynge hym to haue petye of her and to brynge them to  
 a good porte / when Florence perseyued his louer<sup>2</sup> and  
 all his<sup>4</sup> maryners <sup>5</sup>in suche fere as they were <sup>3</sup>in<sup>3</sup>  
 20 he comforted them the best he myght<sup>6</sup> / but it auayled  
 not, for the wynde draue them whether they wold  
 or not towards Bongy, nere to a citey namyd as then  
 Aufalerne, where as they were fayne to caste theyr  
 24 ancre in great fere of lesynge of theyr lyues / then ther  
 fel on them a galey wherin were a .C. sarasyns / & another  
 great shyp wherin were mo then .iiii. C. men, & they  
 all fell vpon Florence shyp / when Florence sawe bothe  
 28 the shyppe and galey to set vpon his shyp / the  
 mayster of the shyp and the maryners began to wepe,  
 and sayd to<sup>7</sup> Florence, <sup>8</sup>'syr, you & we all ar lost, we  
 shall be all sclaues with y<sup>e</sup> sarasyns : yonder galey and  
 32 shyp ar full of sarasyns, and they are redy comynge to  
 set vpon vs' / when Florence hard that, he sayd, 'syr,

They sail in the  
sea of Africa,

and arrive there  
on the island of  
Candia.

Then a storm  
drives them to  
the coast of  
Barbary.

The wind alarms  
all the sailors and  
Clariet.

A large galley and  
a ship come  
towards them.

They are Saracen  
vessels.

<sup>1</sup> and. <sup>2</sup> Loue. <sup>3</sup> omitted. <sup>4</sup> the.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. clxiii. back. col. 2. <sup>6</sup> could.

<sup>7</sup> vnto. <sup>8</sup> Ah.

Florence implores  
all to place their  
trust in God.

He bids them  
fight vigorously  
for their lives.

The battle begins  
sharply.

Florence works  
marvels.

But many of his  
men, with the  
master of his  
ship, are slain.

Bombs are hurled  
on Florence's ship  
from the shore.

be not abasshed / <sup>1</sup>whom god wyll ayde<sup>2</sup> can not be  
perysshed / no mortal man can hurt hym, let vs put our  
trust in hym, and take suche grace as he wyll sende  
vs / the great nombre of people can not hurt vs yf god <sup>4</sup>  
wyll ayde vs / let vs shewe our selfe lyke men, they be  
without lawe and without fayth / and we byleue in  
god ; <sup>3</sup> let vs arme our selues and shew our selues lyke  
men to defende our lyues' / when the mayster and the <sup>8</sup>  
maryners harde Florence, they sayd / 'syr, <sup>4</sup>in the  
sauegard of our lorde Iesu chryst, and vnto<sup>4</sup> you we  
commyt our selues' / then they all armed them / and  
euery man stode at theyr defence / then Florence sayde / <sup>12</sup>  
'syrs, let vs all thynke that ve nowe do fyght for our  
lyues, and therfore let vs not be abasshed, euery man  
thynke to do his beste that he can / I loue by amours /  
beholde her here <sup>5</sup>by me<sup>5</sup> by whome I am so moued to <sup>16</sup>  
do well / and to defende bothe her & me' / 'syr,' quod  
they, 'shame haue he *that* <sup>6</sup>fayntethe' / then the shyp  
and the galey came nere to Florence shyppe ; then the  
shotte of both partyes flewe so thyecke as though it had <sup>20</sup>  
bene snow : there was a great bataile betwene them,  
great hurte was done with castynge downe<sup>7</sup> of barres  
<sup>8</sup>out of<sup>8</sup> the toppes / two tymes Floren[ce] entered into  
the shyppe of his enemyes, wheras he dyd maruellous, <sup>24</sup>  
and slewe so many sarasyns that the water was red with  
the blode of them that were slayne of bothe partyes /  
there was an orryble batayle / many of Florence men  
were slayne / the good maister was slayne and the <sup>28</sup>  
most parte of his men. Also fro the lond there were  
shot bombardis and gonnes at Florence shyppe, so that  
therby, and with the great barres of Iron the shyp was  
sore enpayryd, for it was stryken thrughe in a .C. <sup>32</sup>  
places, so<sup>9</sup> that the see enteryd with great abundaunce /

<sup>1</sup> hee.

<sup>4-4</sup> to.

<sup>2</sup> saue.

<sup>5-5</sup> omitted.

<sup>8-8</sup> from.

<sup>3</sup> by whome we trust to be saued.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. clxiii. col. 1.

<sup>9</sup> in such sort.

<sup>7</sup> out.



- when the damoyzell sawe that mortall dyscomfyture,  
 how there company were slayne and theyr shyp nye full  
 of water, & sawe no mo parsones lefte alnye with  
 4 Florence but .vi. parsons,<sup>1</sup> she was then in great fere /  
 and she thought she had rather enter into the sarasyns  
 shyppe then to be drowned in the see / she sawe the  
 galeye, the whiche laye ioynynge to the shyppe, she  
 8 lepte into the shyppe to saue her lyfe; when Florence  
 sawe his louer<sup>2</sup> in the galeye he was nere out of his  
 mynde<sup>3</sup> for sorowe, and he sawe well<sup>4</sup> yf he taryed styl  
 in his owne shyppe he shulde be drowned / then he  
 12 lepte in to the galeye whereas his louer<sup>2</sup> was / and there  
 he slewe many a sarasyn, but there were so moche  
 people that with force of dartes and speres he was  
 borne downe / then they toke and bounde his handes  
 16 so sore that the blode ran out at his nayles. Thus  
 Flo<sup>5</sup>rence was taken and all his men slayne and  
 drowned excepte some that were taken / then Florence  
 wept for petye of them, and sayd / 'a, my father, how  
 20 falsely haue you wrought agaynst me / thus by your  
 foly I am in great daunger / I shall neuer retourne in  
 to my countre without god helpe me' / often tymes he  
 beheld his louer<sup>2</sup> / whome the sarasyns dyd sore bet  
 24 and yll entrete<sup>6</sup> / wherof Florence had suche dys-  
 pleasure that he was nere hande out of his wyttes.  
 'Alas,' quod Florence,<sup>7</sup> 'I oughte greatly<sup>1</sup> to be sorow-  
 full to se her that I loue best so sore beten and  
 28 tormented before my face / O cursed dethe, why  
 sufferest thou me to lyue to see this<sup>8</sup> that my louer<sup>2</sup>  
 shulde be thus delte with, and yet I can not helpe nor  
 socoure her,' therwith he wepte, and sodaynely fell in  
 32 a swoone amonge the handes of the sarasyns / when the  
 damoyzell sawe her louer fallen in a traunce, and sawe

The ship is nearly  
 shattered: only  
 six with Florence  
 are left alive.

Clariet is very  
 fearful, and think-  
 ing the ship she  
 is in will sink,

leaps into the  
 Saracen's galley.

Florence follows  
 her in great  
 alarm, and he is  
 taken prisoner.

Clariet is beaten  
 and maltreated.

Florence prays  
 for death,

and falls down in  
 a swoon.

<sup>1</sup> omitted.

<sup>2</sup> Loue.

<sup>3</sup> wits.

<sup>4</sup> that.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. clxiii. col. 2.

<sup>6</sup> threaten.

<sup>7</sup> he.

<sup>8</sup> day.

Clariet comes to him, and thinks him dead.

She laments her cruel fate,

and falls down in a trance beside her lover.

Sorbare, the captain of the town and castle on the shore, enters the galley, and pities the lovers, for he was a secret Christian.

Florence and Clariet are delivered into his hands, and he takes them to the castle.

The other prisoners are sent to various towns, and cruelly ill-used.

hym so pale of colour / she came to<sup>1</sup> hym / and she wente<sup>2</sup> suerly that he had bene dede, and also the sarasyns sayde the same. Then she cryed out, and said, 'O<sup>3</sup> very god,<sup>3</sup> why do you consente the dethe of 4 my louer, seynge that we must thus depart for euer, it is no thyng the payne and yll that I suffer / but my sorowe is for the dethe of my louer here before me / I ought to be sorowfull when the moste fayrest,<sup>4</sup> &<sup>5</sup> 8 swetest<sup>6</sup> / & most<sup>5</sup> ientylest creature of all y<sup>e</sup> worlde is thus dede and loste for euer, and the most valyauntest knyght that euer was borne,'<sup>7</sup> therwith she fell downe in a traunce by her louer /<sup>7</sup> All that sawe them thought 12 suerly that they had bene both dede without any recouer, and had great petye and compassyon of them / then he that was the capetayne of the towne & castall, who was named Sorbare, cam<sup>8</sup> into the shyp, and sawe 16 where Florence & his louer<sup>9</sup> laye one by another as dede, he had great petye of them, for he was a good chrysten man / but he durste not be<sup>10</sup> knowed<sup>10</sup> therof for fere of sleynge / he loued well god, and dyd after<sup>11</sup> 20 good seruyce in chrystendome / for by hym the sayd two louers were saued fro the dethe, as ye shall here after<sup>12</sup> / when these .ii. louers were come agayne to themselues / the sarasyns then delyuered them bothe 24 into the capetayns handes /<sup>7</sup> when Florence saw his swete louer<sup>9</sup> by hym, he enbracid and kyssed her swetely / the capetayne sorbare, when he sawe the youthe of these two louers, he had great petye of them / 28 but he made therof no semblaunt<sup>13</sup> / he toke them bothe into the castell with hym, and the other presoners suche as had taken them, brought them into dyuers towers, wheras they were kepte in great mysery / for 32

<sup>1</sup> vnto.

<sup>2</sup> thought.

<sup>3-3</sup> good Lord.

<sup>4</sup> faire.

<sup>5</sup> omitted.

<sup>6</sup> sweet.

<sup>7</sup> and.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. clxiii. back, col. 1.

<sup>9</sup> Loue.

<sup>10-10</sup> to knowe.

<sup>11</sup> afterward.


<sup>12</sup> hereafter.

<sup>13</sup> semblance.

the sarasyns had no pety of them bycause they were chrystened.

¶ Howe Sorbare the capetayne comforted

4 Florence and Claryet / and howe there  
aryued .iiii. shyppes with chrysten men by  
fortune of the see, and how Florence was  
knownen by them. Ca. clxix.

8  Hen the capetaine of the castell was  
within the castell, and Florence and  
his louer<sup>1</sup> with hym / he sayde to  
them / 'frendes, I haue great petye of  
12 you. shewe me what ye be and what  
fortune hath brought you hether, syn<sup>2</sup> ye be<sup>3</sup> yonge;  
'howe is it that ye wolde aduenture vpon the see wherin  
are so many perelles / yf ye shewe me the trouthe ye  
16 shall lese nothyng therby / for yf I canne I shall set  
you in suche a pla[c]e<sup>5</sup> wheras ye shall be in sauegarde' /  
'syr,' quod Florence, 'I shall shewe you all myne  
aduenture what so euer fall therof. Syr, knowe for  
20 trouth<sup>6</sup> I am sone to kynge Guaryn kynge of Aragon,  
and I am departed fro hym in dyspleasure.' Thus  
Florence shewed Sorbare all his hole aduenture / and  
how he was taken by his father, and howe he scaped  
24 and his louer<sup>1</sup> also / then he sayd, 'syr, I haue shewed  
you the trouthe, I commyt my body and my louers<sup>7</sup>  
here into your handes / <sup>8</sup>In you lyethe our lyfe and  
dethe; ye maye do with vs at your pleasure' / and  
28 therwith he kneled downe / then Sorbare toke hem vp  
and sayd / 'fayre sone, be not abasshed, for I haue bene  
or<sup>9</sup> this tyme in as great aduenture / haue no doubte I  
shall so order the matter that ye shall be out of all

The captain in-  
quires of the  
condition of the  
fugitives,

and promises  
them all assist-  
ance,

Florence tells his  
history.

<sup>1</sup> Loue. <sup>2</sup> seeing. <sup>3</sup> so.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. clxiii. back, col. 2. <sup>5</sup> plate *in tert.* <sup>6</sup> that.

<sup>7</sup> Loues. <sup>8</sup> for. <sup>9</sup> before.

The captain bids  
his servants offer  
no hurt to the  
damsel,

and tells Florence  
how he once  
visited Duke  
Hyon, and saw  
his fair daughter.

Florence and  
Clariet are placed  
in separate  
chambers.

Clariet laments  
her loneliness,  
and complains of  
Oberon for having  
given his realm to  
her father.

parayle / but kepe euery thyng secrete to your selfe<sup>1</sup> /  
then Sorbare called to<sup>2</sup> him .iiii. of his seruantes and  
sayde / ' I commaunde you to<sup>3</sup> do no rudenes to<sup>3</sup> this  
presoner<sup>4</sup> nor to<sup>4</sup> this damoyssel / but<sup>4</sup> lette them haue 4  
brede, fleshe & wyne at theyr pleasure / as I had when  
I was presoner at Terascon / fayre sone,' quod Sorbare  
to Florence, ' knowe for trouthe<sup>5</sup> I was ones kynge of  
Belmaryn / & ones I fought with Aymery of Narbone, 8  
and I was taken by the handes of Reynalt of Beau-  
lande / then I was brought to<sup>6</sup> the citeye of Burdeaux,  
wheras I sawe a noble prynce namyd duke Hyon, who  
had wedded a noble lady called Esclaramonde, doughter 12  
to the admyrall Gaudes / <sup>4</sup>they had a doughter wel-  
beloued with<sup>7</sup> <sup>8</sup>them / she was the fayreste damoyssell<sup>9</sup>  
that euer I sawe,<sup>10</sup> she passed<sup>11</sup> not<sup>12</sup> at that tyme vi.  
yere of age / and as I harde say syn there came to 16  
Burdeaux dyuers kynges and great prynces for to haue  
had her in maryage / then I cam preuely to myne  
vnclie who gaue me this castell to kepe when he sawe  
that I had loste all myne owne realme / and bycause 20  
I was well entretyd<sup>13</sup> amonge y<sup>e</sup> chrysten men I wyll  
that these presoners be well delte withal' / ' syr,' quod  
his seruantes, ' syn<sup>14</sup> it is your pleasure we shall ac-  
complysshe the same.' then they toke Florence and the 24  
damoyssell and dyd set them in a towre eche of them  
in a chaumbre apart, wherof they were<sup>15</sup> sorowfull /  
when the fayre damoyssell sawe that she was put fro  
her louer she was ryght sory / she began then<sup>16</sup> to com- 28  
playne and said / ' a, my ryght dere father<sup>17</sup> and dere  
mother Esclaramonde, I maye well hate the acquaynt-  
aunce that ye haue had with kynge Oberon / for by  
hym I haue lost you both. ye haue forgotten me in this 32

<sup>1</sup> selues.      <sup>2</sup> vnto.      <sup>3-5</sup> vse well.      <sup>4-4</sup> and.

<sup>5</sup> that.      <sup>6</sup> to to *in text*.      <sup>7</sup> of.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. clvii [clxv]. col. 1.      <sup>9</sup> Ladie.      <sup>10</sup> did see

<sup>11</sup> was.      <sup>12</sup> aboue.      <sup>13</sup> entertained.      <sup>14</sup> seeing.

<sup>15</sup> right.      <sup>16</sup> then *after* sory.      <sup>17</sup> Duke Hyon.

worlde when ye leue me in this pryson / a, kynge  
 Oberon, thou hast done me great yll & domage when  
 thou dydest geue <sup>1</sup>to<sup>1</sup> my father thy realme, whereas is  
 4 the citey of Momure,<sup>2</sup> wheras nowe is the duke my  
 father and y<sup>e</sup> duches my mother: I haue lost the  
 flowre of all my kyn,<sup>3</sup> I am sure<sup>4</sup> I muste<sup>5</sup> dye in this  
 towre for<sup>6</sup> sorowe. A, false deth, thou dydest me great  
 8 yll that thou tokest not me when I was yonge and  
 lytell. I yeld myselfe to god <sup>1</sup>and to his dere mother<sup>1</sup>  
 whom I requyre to haue petye of me / and wolde to  
 god that I were in company with my louer Florence /  
 12 the capetayne hathe done yll thus to separte vs a  
 sonder, for yf I were with hym I shuld the better pas  
 the tyme / yf <sup>7</sup>his father knewe of what lynage I am  
 of and whose doughter I am he wolde not haue refused  
 16 to haue geuen me his sone in maryage / but he shall  
 not know it<sup>1</sup> for me what so euer payne I suffer.  
 Florence, who was<sup>8</sup> in the chaumbre nexte aboue<sup>9</sup> the  
 chaumbre where as the fayre damoyzell Claryet was /  
 20 who had well harde the complayntes that she had made  
 before, and vnderstode euery worde that she had  
 spoken, wherof he was the ioyfullest man at his hart  
 lyuyng / for yf he loued her wel before then he loued  
 24 her moche better / <sup>2</sup>then he loked out at a wyndow  
 wheras he saw Sorbare walkyng vp and downe in the  
 courte of the castell. Then Florence requyred hym to  
 haue petye and compassyon of the damoyzell beyng  
 28 in the towre alone / 'frend,' quod Sorbare, 'suffer a  
 season.<sup>10</sup> I shall sette you bothe in suche a place or<sup>11</sup>  
 it be nyght that ye shall be bothe ioyfull / be not  
 abashed / for the loue of you I shall leue the lawe of  
 32 Mahomet, and byleue on<sup>12</sup> our lord Iesu chryst / <sup>13</sup>when  
 it is nyght and euery man a<sup>12</sup> bed / we shall enter into

Florence over-  
hears her com-  
plaint,

and appeals to  
Sorbare to permit  
him to rejoin her.

Sorbare renews  
his promise to  
save them both,  
and offers to turn  
Christian.

<sup>1-1</sup> omitted.

<sup>2</sup> and.

<sup>3</sup> kindred and.

<sup>4</sup> that.

<sup>5</sup> shall.

<sup>6</sup> with.

<sup>7</sup> Fol. clvii [clxv]. col. 2.

<sup>8</sup> aboue.

<sup>9</sup> vnto.

<sup>10</sup> for a time.

<sup>11</sup> before.

<sup>12</sup> in.

<sup>13</sup> for.



Four great ships  
conveying 2000  
pilgrims to Jeru-  
salem come in  
sight.

Florence and  
Sorbare go down  
to make inquiries  
of them.

a galeye that lyeth here by : but as for your other men  
that be presoners abroad in the towne / it wolde be  
hard for me to get them out of preson.' 'Then I pray  
to <sup>1</sup>our lorde Iesu chryste,' <sup>1</sup> quod Florence, 'to ayd & 4  
socoure them in theyr great nede.' Great pitye had  
Sorbare when he harde Florençe so peteously pray for  
the sauegarde of his men whome he muste leue behind  
him yf god socour hym not : then Sorbare sawe com- 8  
ynge to <sup>2</sup> the port warde <sup>3</sup> .iiii. great shyppes wherein  
there were a <sup>4</sup> two thousande pylgremes who were com-  
ynge <sup>5</sup> fro Ierusalem <sup>5</sup> warde <sup>3</sup> fro the holy sepulture /  
but by fortune of the see & force of y<sup>e</sup> wynd they were 12  
constrayned <sup>6</sup> to aryue there / then the capetayne wente  
vp into the towre to se Florence whome he toke by the  
hande and sayd / 'frend, yonder ye maye se .iiii. great  
shyppes full of people comynge hether by force of the 16  
wynde / let vs go downe and se what they be and whc  
is theyr capetayne' / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'I am redy  
to folowe your pleasure / my body & my louer <sup>7</sup> I com-  
myt to your sauegarde' / then the capetayne sente for 20  
the damoyzell, & when Florence sawe her he was  
ryghte ioyfull and sayd, 'dere louer, <sup>8</sup> be no thyng  
afrayed / the capetayne and I wyll go downe to the see  
syde to knowe what people be yonder that comethe in 24  
yonder shyppes / and anone we wyll retourne agayne  
to <sup>9</sup> .you' / 'syr,' quod the damoyzell, 'god be youre  
gyde' / Sorbare and Florence went downe to the hauen  
syde / <sup>10</sup> when the shyppes aryued they saw wel <sup>11</sup> there 28  
was moche <sup>12</sup> people, and parseyued well howe <sup>11</sup> they  
were chrysten men. Then Sorbare saluted them and  
sayde / 'syrs, ye be wellcome. I praye you <sup>13</sup> shewe me  
fro whence ye come, & what ye seke for in these 32

<sup>1-1</sup> god.      <sup>2</sup> towards.      <sup>3</sup> omitted.      <sup>4</sup> more then.

<sup>5-5</sup> at Ierusalem after sepulture.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. clvii [clxv]. back, col. 1.      <sup>7</sup> Loues.      <sup>8</sup> Loue.

<sup>9</sup> vnto.      <sup>10</sup> and.      <sup>11</sup> that.      <sup>12</sup> many.

<sup>13</sup> to.

- partyes, & what ye be.' Then the chefe mayster of them answered and sayde / 'syr, we be of the realme of fraunce, and we come nowe fro Ierusalem fro the
- 4 pylgrymage of the holy sepulture : and the force of the wynd hathe caused vs to aryue here. <sup>1</sup> yf we ought to paye anythyng for comynge hether we are redy to pay it : 'syrs,' quod Sorbare, 'syn<sup>2</sup> this is your aduenture
- 8 ye ar hether<sup>3</sup> welcome to me / syn ye be here aryued it is reason that I be comfortid and ayded by you. <sup>1</sup> I say vnto you that I byleue vpon <sup>4</sup>our lorde god<sup>4</sup> Iesu chryst / but as yet I was neuer chrystened / I shall
- 12 shew you, syrs, what ye shall do. yf ye wyl byleue me ye neuer came to <sup>5</sup>so fayre aduenture / ye shall go with me into the castell here aboue / in which place I shall fornysshe you all with horse & harnays<sup>6</sup> / then<sup>1</sup> ye
- 16 shall abyde in the castell and make no noyse nor shewe youre selfe<sup>7</sup> / then<sup>1</sup> I wyll go to the hauen and garnysshe a galey with all thynges necessary / in this towre there are many presoners<sup>8</sup> of<sup>4</sup> frensshe men who
- 20 were taken but late in this hauen, and many were slayn, & such as be taken as<sup>9</sup> presoners in this towne / and erly in the mornyng we wyl issue out of the castell into the towne and set fyre in dyuers places / then the
- 24 sarasyns wyll haue great busynes to rescue and stanche the fyre / <sup>1</sup>then we wyll enter into theyr howses & take all theyr gooddes and all the presoners and all the ryches that we can fynde in the towne we shal put it in to our
- 28 shyp : and yf the sarasyns come to asayle our shyppe with botes and barges / then lette vs defende our selfe<sup>7</sup> as well as we can / and fyrst of all let vs go and take all the shyppes *that* be in the hauen' / when the cape.
- 32 tayne of y<sup>e</sup> .iiii. shyppes hard Sorbare they praysed his aduyse and good counsaile : and they all with one

The captain tells  
Sorbare they come  
from France.

Sorbare bids them  
welcome.

He tells them of  
the French prison-  
ers in the town,

and how they may  
help him to set  
them free.

<sup>1</sup> and. <sup>2</sup> seeing that. <sup>3</sup> after welcome.

<sup>4-4</sup> omitted. <sup>5</sup> Fol. clvii [clxv]. back, col. 2.

<sup>6</sup> armour. <sup>7</sup> selues. <sup>8</sup> presoners after men. <sup>9</sup> are.

The captain of the  
pilgrims inquires  
who Florence is.

Sorbare tells him.

The captain  
replies that they  
are come from the  
king of Arragon  
to search for him.

acord concluded to do his pleasure / 'syr,' quod Sor-  
bare, 'to y<sup>e</sup> entent that ye shall byleue me and to haue  
of me no maner of suspecte / yf ye wyl haue knowlege  
what I am this yong man that ye se here be me can <sup>4</sup>  
enforme you' / 'syr, quod the patron, 'by your vysage  
it apereth well that all trouthe is in you, & how<sup>1</sup> that  
ye be<sup>2</sup> a noble man. therefore, syr, <sup>3</sup>all we put our  
selfe in<sup>3</sup> your conducte and grace / but, syr, yf it <sup>8</sup>  
maye be your pleasure to shew vs what yonge Ientyl-  
man is that we se there by you. <sup>4</sup>syr, ye shulde do me  
a great pleasure, for me thynke I shulde haue sene hym  
or<sup>5</sup> this' / 'patron,' quod <sup>6</sup>Sorbare, 'syn ye wyll knowe <sup>12</sup>  
it gladly I shall shewe you / syn<sup>7</sup> he hath dyscouered  
hym selfe to me / knowe for trouthe<sup>8</sup> he is sone to  
kyngue Guaryn of Aragon / who by fortune of the see  
aryued here <sup>1</sup>there as ye be<sup>1</sup> / and here parforce he was <sup>16</sup>  
taken and his men most parte slayn / and with hym  
was taken a noble damoyzell who is aboue in my  
castell' / when the patron and they that were with hym  
vnderstode that it was Florence sone to<sup>9</sup> kyngue Guarin<sup>1</sup> <sup>20</sup>  
of Aragon they were therof ryght ioyfull, for they were  
all of the realme of Aragon, and sent forthe by the  
kyngue to serche for Florence / they thanked <sup>10</sup>our lorde  
Iesu chryst<sup>10</sup> of the<sup>11</sup> aduenture that he had sent them <sup>24</sup>  
to fynde Florence there: whome they were sente to  
serche for / then they came to Florence and knelyd  
downe before them<sup>12</sup> and sayd / 'a, syr, ye ought to  
thanke god that we haue founde you. we haue mar- <sup>28</sup>  
uayle why ye hyde your name fro vs / for we be all  
sente fro kyngue Guaryn youre ffather to serche for you /  
for yf god had not sente you this good fortune we  
shulde neuer haue hard any tydynges of you / nor haue <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> omitted.

<sup>4</sup> truly.

<sup>8</sup> that.

<sup>2</sup> are.

<sup>5</sup> ere.

<sup>9</sup> the.

<sup>3-3</sup> we all commit ourselues to.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. clxvi. col. 1.

<sup>7</sup> seeing.


<sup>10-10</sup> god.

<sup>11</sup> their good.

<sup>12</sup> him.

shewed the kyng your father any thyng to his pleasure.'

¶ Howe Sorbare and Florence & theyr company went in<sup>1</sup> the towne and robbed and spoyled it / and so toke the se with great ioy<sup>2</sup> and the damoyzell<sup>3</sup> Claryet with them, and toke theyr cource to sayle to<sup>4</sup> the realme of Aragon. Ca. C.lxx.

<sup>5</sup>  Hen the patron & his company knewe and sawe Florence the ioy *that* they made can not be recounted, nor the chere that they made to Florence when they were entered into the castell / wherof sorbare had great ioy : the same season whyles they made this great ioye and feste<sup>6</sup> there was in Sorbare's company a sarasyn who vnderstode the language of frenche<sup>7</sup> / and had well hard the enterpryse that the chrysten men were determyned to do / and also he saw well how sorbare was ioyned to theyr company / then he preuely departed, and hastely he went into the towne and shewed the burgesses and comons of the enterpryce that the chrysten men had concluded to do, & how that Sorbare was become chrysten / when the paynmys<sup>8</sup> vnderstode that / incontynent they went and armyd them and came to the castell thynkyng to haue wonne it / but they founde there suche defence and resystence that<sup>9</sup> they dyd there lytell<sup>10</sup> to theyr profight / yet the assaulte endu<sup>11</sup>ryd tyll<sup>12</sup> the nexte daye / and at last<sup>13</sup> were constrayned to withdrawe fro the castel a great space. Florence, who was within, cryed

A Saracen in Sorbare's company overhears the plan to rescue the French prisoners.

The townsmen rise up and attack Sorbare's castle, but to no purpose.

<sup>1</sup> to.      <sup>2</sup> and triumph.      <sup>3</sup> faire Ladie.      <sup>4</sup> towards.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. clxvi. col. 2.      <sup>6</sup> feasting.      <sup>7</sup> French language.

<sup>8</sup> Sarasyns.      <sup>9</sup> that which.      <sup>10</sup> was small.

<sup>11</sup> Fol. clxvi. back, col. 1.      <sup>12</sup> vntill.      <sup>13</sup> they.

As soon as the  
Saracens retire,  
Sorbare advises  
Florence and the  
men with him to  
issue out and  
attack them.

The town is fired,  
and many Sara-  
cens slain in the  
streets.

The prisoners are  
rescued.

to them and sayd / 'a, ye false velaynes, ye haue slayne  
my men / but yf god suffer me to lyue theyr deth shal  
be derely sold<sup>1</sup> / when the paynyns saw that they  
coude not atayne to the castel / then they blew the 4  
retrayte; and every man retourned to theyr owne house.  
Then Sorbare sayde to Florence and his company /  
'syr, I aduyse you all to lepe on youre horses / for now  
the paynyns are returned to theyr logynye very of 8  
theyr trawayle, and many of them sore hurte, and they  
are in great fere; I knowe theyr condycyons well  
ynoughe / and bycause that after trauayle and laboure  
a man is febelyd & full of fere / and now every man 12  
is in his owne house and vnarmed to be at theyr ease /  
therfore I counsaile that incontynent<sup>2</sup> Issue out and  
set vpon the towne.' Then Florence and all the other  
seyd / 'syr, as ye haue deuysed we ar redy to do it / 16  
for a more noble counsaile was neuer geuen' / then every  
man made hym redy and <sup>3</sup>so<sup>3</sup> issued out of the castell,  
and Florence and Sorbare went before them and  
sessyd<sup>4</sup> not tyll<sup>5</sup> they were entered into the towne, 20  
for ther enter<sup>6</sup> coude not be defended, for<sup>7</sup> the castell  
ioyned to a corner of the towne: then they made a  
great crye and spred abroad in the towne and put in  
fyre in dyuers places / and slewe downe the paynyns 24  
in the stretes and market places / fynally, they dyd so  
moche by force of armes that they brought the towne  
vnder theyr subieccyon / and the enhabytauntes therof<sup>8</sup>  
slayne, <sup>3</sup>none spared,<sup>3</sup> and all the chrysten presoners 28  
rescued, who had great ioy when they saw Florence,  
theyr lord, whom they thought <sup>9</sup>had bene dede / great  
ryches that day was wonne in that towne, the which  
was geuen and departed to<sup>10</sup> them that had deserued it / 32  
& Florence gaue to the chrysten presoners great ryches /

<sup>1</sup> bought.

<sup>2</sup> we.

<sup>3-3</sup> omitted.

<sup>4</sup> rested.

<sup>5</sup> untill.

<sup>6</sup> entring.

<sup>7</sup> because.

<sup>8</sup> all.

<sup>9</sup> Fol. clxvi. back, col 2.

<sup>10</sup> vnto.



- thus when the towne was wonne and the ryches there  
of put into theyr shyppes / then<sup>1</sup> they all departed and  
set fyre on al the citey / then they went into the castel,  
4 wheras the damoyssel Claryet was, who had great ioy  
when she sawe Florence her louer / <sup>2</sup>then Sorbare, who  
had great desyre to departe<sup>3</sup> thence, toke all the treasure  
and ryches & had it into theyr shyppes, and vytayled  
8 them with all thynges necessary / then when it was  
daye in the mornynge they departed fro the castell &  
wente to theyr shyppes with great ioye / Florence  
holdynge his louer<sup>4</sup> by the hande / sayde vnto her /  
12 'dere louer,<sup>4</sup> kynge Guaryn, my father, hath sente to  
seke for me all aboute bothe by londe and by water /  
and these *that* be come here with these shyppes were  
sent forth by the kynge, my father, to serche for me' /  
16 when the damoyzell hard how Florence wold brynge  
her agayne to his father she had great fere, and said,  
'syr, ye knowe ryghte well the great hate and dys-  
pleasure that your father hathe to you and to<sup>1</sup> me / for  
20 god sake, syr, let vs go some other waye : ' 'dere  
louer,<sup>4</sup> quod florence, 'haue no fere of my father ; for  
yf ye <sup>5</sup>wolde haue<sup>5</sup> shewed youre name & what ye be  
or<sup>6</sup> this tyme / it had easid vs of moche payne.' 'A,  
24 syr,' quod she, 'it is not as ye wene it were' / 'well,'  
quod Florence, 'it is suffycient to me as it is' / then  
they hoysed vp theyr sayles & so sayled tyll<sup>7</sup> they were  
fare of fro that londe. <sup>2</sup>Sorbare was ryght ioyful in  
28 *that* he had saued y<sup>e</sup> chrysten men / and for the loue  
of Florence he forsoke his owne lawe and his countre /  
then <sup>8</sup>he sayde to<sup>9</sup> Florence / 'syr, my body and  
goodes I abandon to you in suche wyse *that* I shall  
32 neuer leue you for lyfe nor deth' / 'syr,' quod Florence,  
'of the goodnes and trouthe that ye haue shewed me,

Florence at length  
rejoins Clariet,

and preparations  
for their return  
to Arragon are  
made.

Clariet fears the  
king of Arragon.

Sorbare promises  
never to abandon  
Florence.

<sup>1</sup> omitted.    <sup>2</sup> and.    <sup>3</sup> from.    <sup>4</sup> Loue.  
<sup>5-5</sup> had.    <sup>6</sup> before.    <sup>7</sup> vntill.    <sup>8</sup> Fol. clxvii. col. 1.  
<sup>9</sup> vnto.

I thanke you, and I shall neuer haue peny worthe, but the halfe shalbe yours.'

Nowe let vs leue spekyng of them saylynge ioyfully on the see towards Aragon / and let vs speke 4 of kynge Guaryn, who was besegid within y<sup>e</sup> citey of Courtoys by his brother in lawe, the kynge of Nauerne.

¶ How kyng Huon, kynge of the fayrey, sente two of his knyghtes to the two kynges / and 8 howe he apered betwene them with a great nombre / and of the peas that he made betwene them. Ca. C.lxxi.



The truce between the king of Navarre and King Guaryn is within two days of ending.

A mysterious voice rises from the earth and addresses the combatants.

¶ Ell haue ye hard<sup>e</sup> before howe that after 12 the kyng of Nauerne had taken kynge Guaryn presoner, and that truse was taken for a sartayne space / and then eche of them to shewe theyr powers / 16 so it fell that two dayes before the brekyng vp of y<sup>e</sup> trewe, and that theyr aydes and pursaunces were assemblyd together: the one partye within the citey and the other without with the kyng of Nauerne, who sore 20 thretened kynge Guaryn / bycause he had banysshed awaye his sone Florence, his nephue / and sayd he had rather dye then such an yll kyng <sup>1</sup>shulde not be punysshed / this kynge of Nauerne had assemblyd 24 suche a nombre of people that the valayes and hylees were couered with men of warre / & y<sup>e</sup> nyght before the truse brake vp there was hard in the ayre a ferfull voyse / the whiche when it began to speke / the erth 28 trymbelyd and thondered and lyghtened so that all they that were there assemblyd / as well they within as without had suche fere that they were lykely to haue ryn awaye / then the voyse began to speke / 32

<sup>1</sup> Fol. clxvii. col. 2.

and sayde / 'syrs, ye that be here in the felde redy to  
 fyght of bothe partyes make no haste to ioynе together  
 in batayle, for suche ayde and socoure shall be sent to  
 4 you bothe that ye shall be all ioyfull' / therwith the  
 voyce passed awaye & was hard no more, wherby both  
 partyes wer abasshed, and all the nyght they were in<sup>1</sup>  
 theyr prayers / besechyng <sup>2</sup>our lord Iesu chryste<sup>2</sup> to  
 8 ayde and socoure them / kyng Guaryn was sore abasshid  
 when he hard the voyce, and sayde / 'O, <sup>3</sup>very god,<sup>3</sup>  
 if this<sup>4</sup> people that is<sup>5</sup> assembelyd be slayne by my  
 meanes and for me / my sowle shall be lost for euer /  
 12 Alas, my sone Florence, I was yll counsailed when I  
 chasyd you awaye fro me, I dyd great syn when I  
 dyd<sup>6</sup> put you in pryson, I am very<sup>7</sup> of my lyfe / it  
<sup>8</sup>skyllethe not of my dethe<sup>8</sup> / I am more sory for you,  
 16 my dere sone, whome I haue betrayed and dreuyn away  
 with out<sup>9</sup> cause / Alas, by my meanes this realme shall  
 be wasted & dystroyed, y<sup>e</sup> whiche ye ought to haue  
 after me' / therwith he swouned amonge his lordes, so<sup>10</sup>  
 20 they all thoughte he had bene dede, wherof they sore  
 complayned / <sup>11</sup>at last the kyng came agayne to hym-  
 selfe / then his lordes comforted hym / and so had<sup>12</sup> hym  
 to here mas,<sup>13</sup> and after mas<sup>13</sup> there apered sodaynely  
 24 <sup>14</sup>before hym two goodly yonge knyghtes / the one was  
 Gloryand and the other Malabron / they were two  
 knyghtes of the fayrey / then they all smyllynge saluted  
 the kynge, and sayde / 'syr,<sup>15</sup> kynge Huon of Burdeaux  
 28 salutethe the by vs, he is kynge of all the fayrey, <sup>11</sup>he  
 wyll come to ayd the and to defende thy lond : and <sup>16</sup>he  
 wyll that thou knowest / how<sup>10</sup> he is father to y<sup>e</sup> fayre  
 damoyssel Claryet, whom thou namest the newe founde  
 32 damoyssel, and bycause thou hast banissshed fro the

It promises a speedy and a peaceful settlement of the dispute between them.

King Guaryn feels remorse for having banished his son.

Two goodly young knights suddenly approach him. They are the faïries Gloriand and Malabron, and promise the King Huon's aid.

<sup>1</sup> at.      <sup>2-2</sup> God.      <sup>3-3</sup> good Lord.      <sup>4</sup> these.      <sup>5</sup> are.

<sup>6</sup> omitted.      <sup>7</sup> wearie.

<sup>8-8</sup> is no matter though I die, and.      <sup>9</sup> a.      <sup>10</sup> that.

<sup>11</sup> and.      <sup>12</sup> bad.      <sup>13</sup> Service.

<sup>14</sup> Fol. clxvii. back, col. 1.      <sup>15</sup> Royall.      <sup>16</sup> also.

They tell of the marriage he will make between Florence and Clariet.

The two fairies return to Huon

and remind him of the peril of Florence and Clariet on the sea. Huon promises to go to Courtois with a mighty army.

Huon tells Esclaramonde

thy sone Florence / he wyl come to the to make the  
 peas betwene the and thy brother in lawe the kynge of  
 nauerne / & he wyl make the maryage betwene thy  
 sone Florence and Claryet his doughter' / when kynge 4  
 Guaryn harde the knyght of the fayrey he had such  
 ioy at his hart that his wyl not what to do nor<sup>1</sup>  
 saye /<sup>2</sup> he came to the knyght and enbraced hym, all  
 wepyng, and sayde / 'syrs, knowe for trouthe, my 8  
 body, my lyfe, and all that I haue I submytte it into  
 the handes of y<sup>e</sup> good kynge Huon to do therwith at  
 his pleasure' / with those wordes the .ii. knyghtes  
 vanysshed awaye, no man wylt how nor whether, so<sup>3</sup> 12  
 euery man had great maruayle / kynge Guaryn and his  
 lordes lyfte vp theyr handes to the heuen, makynge  
 the syngne of the crosse, recommaundyng themselfe to  
 4our lorde<sup>4</sup> Iesu chryste / and y<sup>e</sup> two knyghtes restyd 16  
 not tyll<sup>5</sup> they cam to the citey of Momure to kynge  
 Huon, and shewed hym what they had done & sayd to  
 kyng Guaryn / and shewed Huon of the daye of batayle  
 that was taken betwene the two kynges, and sayde / 20  
 'syr, haue petye of Florence and of Claryet, your  
 doughter, who are as nowe on the see in a great tem-  
 pest' / then Huon sayd / 'surely they and I shal be  
 shortly before <sup>6</sup>the citey of Courtois with suche<sup>4</sup> a 24  
 nombre of people that the erthe shall be coueryd with  
 them / to the entent that yf any<sup>7</sup> of these <sup>8</sup>kynges  
 wyll<sup>4</sup> do contrary to my wyll I shall dystroie hym for  
 euer / for shortly I wyll that my doughter Claryet 28  
 shal be duches of Burdeloys / <sup>2</sup>she is so fayre that  
 there is none lyke her, & I shall<sup>9</sup> shew the great loue  
 that I haue<sup>10</sup> to her' / then Huon called to hym Esclara-  
 monde, and sayde: 'lady, ye shall se this daye the 32  
 thyngne that ye<sup>11</sup> desyre <sup>4</sup>sore<sup>4</sup> to se, that is your

1 or. 2 and. 3 that. 4-4 omitted. 5 vntill.  
 6 Fol. clxvii. back, col. 2. 7 either. 8 those two.  
 9 wil. 10 beare. 11 much.

- doughter Claryet / to whome I gyue her in<sup>1</sup> gyfte, that she shall be byloued of euery man, and I wyll that fro hense forthe she shall gyue largely gyftes & rewardes
- 4 to ladyes, damoysselles, knyghtes, and squyers ; for I wyll that fro henseforth she haue her pleasure with out sufferynge of any more yll or parell, for she hath suffered ynoughe / this daye was fayre and clere, and
- 8 with in y<sup>e</sup> citey of courtoyse there was moche<sup>2</sup> people assembelyd / and they were in great deuocyon / some made masses<sup>3</sup> to be song, and some were confessed and ordered them selues towards the batayle. Then kyng
- 12 Guaryn commaunded euery man to lepe on<sup>4</sup> theyr horses redy armyd / then<sup>5</sup> the kyng hym selfe mounted <sup>6</sup>and so<sup>6</sup> issued out of the citey / and commaunded his constable and marshalles to ordayne .iii. batayles in the
- 16 name of god <sup>7</sup>and saynt Gorge.<sup>7</sup> Kyng Guaryn had assembelyd a great nombre of men, he had mo then .l.M. men / there ye myght haue sene ladyes & damoysselles and burgesses / that wepte for fere of theyr
- 20 frendes, <sup>7</sup>husbondes / fathers, and bretherne,<sup>7</sup> whome they sawe goynge to<sup>8</sup> the batayle warde<sup>7</sup> / <sup>5</sup>they went all to y<sup>e</sup> walles / <sup>7</sup>and the<sup>7</sup> colleges & churches <sup>9</sup>with theyr crosses and baners went <sup>10</sup>on processyon praying<sup>9</sup>
- 24 for the good spede of theyr kyng and of theyr frendes. Now let vs leue spekyng of these two kynges, who were redy in the felde rengyd in order of batayle, the one agaynste the other / and let vs speke of kyng
- 28 Huon / who called before hym all his lordes of the fayrey / there was the fayre esclaramonde, and Gloryand, and Malabron, and many other knyghtes of the fayrey / then kyng Huon sayde / 'syrs, ye all know well that
- 32 by the wyll of god / kyng Oberon whyles he leued gaue me all his realme / and syngnory and pusanee

how she shall soon see their daughter Clariet.

King Guaryn with his army issues forth from the town of Courtois.

Huon calls all his fairy lords about him.

<sup>1</sup> the.      <sup>2</sup> many.      <sup>3</sup> Service.      <sup>4</sup> vppon.      <sup>5</sup> and.  
<sup>6-6</sup> then they.      <sup>7-7</sup> omitted.      <sup>8</sup> towards.  
<sup>9-9</sup> to pray to God.      <sup>10</sup> Fol. clxviii. col. 1.



He bids them  
prepare for war.

that he had ouer all the fayrey of the worlde / therby  
then I may haue all my commaundementes fulfyllid /  
then syn god hath geuen me this gyfte / I wyll not  
suffer the manslautre and murder *that* is lyke to be 4  
betwene the two kynges of Aragon and Nauerne /  
therefore I wysshe myselfe with two .C.M. men wel  
armyd and rychely besene<sup>1</sup> and all mounted on good  
horses / and also I wysshe to haue as many on fote<sup>2</sup> / 8  
furnysshed with bowes and crosbowes. Also I wysshe  
a .C.M. to be aparayled in gownes of cloth of gold and  
sylke / and also I wysshe for my doughter Claryet,  
whome I haue lefte a longe tyme in payne and mysery, 12  
wherof I repente me / for myne entencyon is to mary  
her to Florence, son to kyng Guaryn of Aragon, the  
whiche Florence is so fayre : so hardy and so humble  
and curtoyse that in all the worlde there is none lyke 16  
hym / I wysshe hym & al his company and Sorbare  
with him to be at the hauen of courtoyse. Also I  
wysshe my tente in the medow betwene the hostes of  
the two kynges, and I wyl that my tent be suche that 20  
there be none lyke it in all the worlde, and on<sup>3</sup> the top  
<sup>4</sup>therof I wyll there be pyght a dragon of fyne golde' /  
kyng Huon had no soner made his wysshe but he and  
all his company were there as he had deuysed. when 24  
the kyng of Nauerne sawe so moch<sup>5</sup> people and so  
many tentes and paulyons so nere hym / and that he  
sawe the ryche and pusaunt paulyon of kyng Huons  
with the flambynge dragon / he was greatly maruayled.<sup>6</sup> 28  
Then he called his lordes and knyghtes and sayd / 'syrs,  
behold what people are yonder before us logyng, me  
thynke I neuer sawe so many together in all my lyfe /  
I wote not what it maye<sup>7</sup> be, I am in doubte' / then he 32  
called to<sup>8</sup> hym two knyghtes, and said / 'syrs, go

He orders a won-  
drous tent for  
himself.

Suddenly the  
fairy band, with  
Huon at its  
head, is trans-  
ported to the  
scene of the war-  
fare between King  
Guaryn and the  
king of Navarre.

<sup>1</sup> by seeming.    <sup>2</sup> on fote *after* crosbowes.    <sup>3</sup> vpon.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. clxviii. col. 2.    <sup>5</sup> many.    <sup>6</sup> dismayed.

<sup>7</sup> should.    <sup>8</sup> vnto.

- thether and knowe what people they be & what they  
meane: or<sup>1</sup> whether they be frendes or enemyes, and  
who is chefe ouer them.' 'Syr,' quod y<sup>e</sup> two knyghtes,  
4 'we wyll not go thether, for we knowe not whether  
they be oure enemyes or not' / when the kyng of  
Nauerne vnderstode *that* those knyghtes nor none other  
wolde go thether he was sorowful / as the kyng was  
8 thus deusynge / thether came the two knyghtes of the  
fayrey, Gloryand and Malabron / then Gloryand sayd /  
'syr,<sup>2</sup> kyng of Nauerne, kyng Huon of Burdeaux hath  
sent vs to you, and commaundeth you that ye make peas  
12 betwene you & kyng Guaryn, for he wyll gyue his  
doughter Claryet to your nephue Florence, who is the  
fayrest lady of y<sup>e</sup> world' / when the kyng of Nauerne  
vnderstode the<sup>3</sup> two messangers sente fro kyng Huon,  
16 he was ryght ioyful / and commaunded all his lordes to  
go with hym to kyng Huon / they obeyed his com-  
maundement and rode with hym tyll<sup>4</sup> he came before  
the ryche paulyon of kynges Huons / wheras they  
20 alyghted and were wel re<sup>5</sup>ceyued; then the kyng of  
Nauerne saluted kyng Huon / who sayde, 'syr, ye be  
welcome' / <sup>1</sup>then y<sup>e</sup> kyng of Nauerne knelyd downe  
before kyng Huon & sayde, 'syr, I am redy to ful-  
24 fyll your pleasure:' then Gloryand toke the kyng of  
Nauerne by the arme and reysyd hym vp / and set hym  
downe by kyng Huon and Esclaramonde: then kyng  
Huon sente for kyng Guaryn / who incontynent came  
28 to hym accompanied with a .M. knyghtes / <sup>1</sup>when he  
was come he saluted kyng Huon and sayde, 'syr, ye  
be<sup>6</sup> welcome into my countre of Aragon, the whiche I  
offer to you to do therwith at your pleasure / and, syr,  
32 all that ye haue commaunded me to do by your two  
knyghtes I am redy to acomplysshe,' and there he  
shewed <sup>7</sup>all wepynge<sup>7</sup> to kyng Huon / the occasyon

The king of  
Navarre's knights  
fear to approach  
the new-comers.

Gloryand and  
Malabron come  
to him,  
and bring com-  
mands from Huon  
to make peace  
with King  
Guaryn.

With all his lords  
he goes to Huon's  
tent,

and offers to do  
his pleasure.

Huon sends for  
King Guaryn.

Guaryn also pro-  
mises to submit  
to Huon, and  
rehearses the  
causes of the war.

<sup>1</sup> and.

<sup>2</sup> omitted.

<sup>3</sup> these.

<sup>4</sup> vntill.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. clxviii. back, col. 1.

<sup>6</sup> are.

<sup>7-7</sup> after Huon.

Huon tells him  
how Clariet is  
his daughter,  
and will marry  
Florence.

Guarn expresses  
his great joy.


Queen Esclara-  
monde longs to  
see her daughter.

of the warre, and of his sone Florence, who for the loue  
of a new found damoyzell was put in pryson, wherof  
he repented him, for he said<sup>1</sup> 'there was not a fayrer  
damoyzell in the worlde, & for the loue of her 4  
Florence, my son, is departed fro me, & I thynke  
I shall neuer se hym more.' 'Syr<sup>2</sup> kynge Guarnyn,'  
quod Huon, 'know for trouthe<sup>1</sup> shortely ye shall se  
them both come hether to me / for I wyll mary them 8  
together: the damoyzell is my doughter, and <sup>3</sup>hathe  
to <sup>3</sup> name<sup>4</sup> Claryet / and I wyll ye knowe she is  
noble and issued of a royall lynage / <sup>5</sup>none more noble  
in this countre / she hathe bought her desteny ryght 12  
derely' / when kynge Guarnyn knew that the noble  
damoyssel was doughter to kynge Huon, and *that* he  
wolde make a maryage betwene her and his sone  
Florence, and that they shulde come thether shortely / 16  
he was neuer so ioyfull in all his lyfe before: then he  
knelyd downe before kynge Huon, and cryed hym  
marcy, <sup>6</sup>and sayde / 'a, syr, howe maye it be that in  
myne old dayes suche a grace may come to me, as to 20  
haue againe my dere sone / & that the noble damoyssel  
whome I haue done so moche yll vnto shall be his  
wyfe.' Then kyng Huon rose vp and sayd / 'syr<sup>7</sup>  
kynge, haue no doubte but that ye shall haue your sone / 24  
for I canne not so sone wysshe for hym / but they shall  
be <sup>8</sup>with me<sup>8</sup> where soeuer they be in the world' / wher  
of all they that were presente had great maruayle /  
'syr,' quod the quene Esclaramonde, 'when shal the 28  
owre come that I myght<sup>9</sup> se my dere<sup>2</sup> doughter  
Claryet / <sup>10</sup>syr, ye knowe well<sup>1</sup> I <sup>11</sup>am come<sup>11</sup> hether  
with you for none other cause:' 'dame,'<sup>12</sup> quod Huon,  
'ye shall se her shortely.'

32

<sup>1</sup> that.    <sup>2</sup> omitted.    <sup>3-3</sup> her.    <sup>4</sup> is.    <sup>5</sup> there is.  
<sup>6</sup> Fol. clxviii. back, col. 2.    <sup>7</sup> noble.    <sup>8-8</sup> both here.  
<sup>9</sup> may.    <sup>10</sup> and.    <sup>11-11</sup> came.    <sup>12</sup> madame.

¶ How Florence and Claryet aryued &<sup>1</sup> theyr  
company, and came to kynge Huon, and of  
the great ioye that was made at theyr com-  
4 ynge / and there<sup>2</sup> they were wedded together  
and the peas confermyd betwene y<sup>e</sup> two  
kyngeſ. Ca. C.lxxii.

8  Hen kynge Huon sawe the q[ue]ene  
his wyfe wepe his harte tendered and  
sayde / 'a, my dere doughter Claryet,  
great petye I haue of you and of  
Florence the hardy. I wysſhe you  
12 bothe and all your company here at the porte on the  
see-syde / as rychely aparayled as euer was quene or  
prynceſ departynge out of theyr house to be maryed /  
& that with you there be ladyes and damoyſelles  
16 rychely aparayled: and of the fayreſt *that* be in my  
realme of the fayrey': he had no ſoner made his wysſhe  
but that ſhyppes and galeys aryued at the porte: &  
anone Florence and Claryet were in the medow rychely  
20 acompanyed with trompettys: tabours:<sup>4</sup> harpes:  
vyalles: and lutes and all other instrumentes, the  
which ſowned ſo melodyouſly that it ſemyd to all the  
herers that they were rauyſſhed into paradyſe, & alſo  
24 there were ladyes and damoyſelles & knyghtes of the  
fayrey ſyngynge ryght ſwetely / the herers ſemyd<sup>5</sup> to  
be aungelles of paradyſe / and they were aparayled  
richely,<sup>6</sup> garniſſhed *with* precyous ſtones, ſo that with  
28 y<sup>e</sup> ſonne ſtrykynge<sup>7</sup> on<sup>8</sup> them: they ſhynyd<sup>9</sup> in ſuch  
wyſe that who ſouer had ſene them wold haue thought  
that god and all the court of paradyſe had bene there  
aſſembelyd / thus Florence came with .iii. M. men  
32 makynge great ioye. After<sup>10</sup> came rydynge y<sup>e</sup> fayre

Huon is touched  
at Eſclaramonde's  
grief for the ab-  
ſence of Clariet,

and expreſſes his  
wiſh to ſee her  
and Florence  
richly apparrelled  
in his preſence.

Straightway they  
arrive in ſhips,  
amid melodious  
muſic.

3000 men bear  
Florence com-  
pany, and Clariet

<sup>1</sup> there with.    <sup>2</sup> how.    <sup>3</sup> Fol. clxix. col. l.  
<sup>4</sup> omitted.    <sup>5</sup> thought them.    <sup>6</sup> and.    <sup>7</sup> ſhining.  
<sup>8</sup> vpon.    <sup>9</sup> glittered.    <sup>10</sup> him.

follows riding on  
a rich palfrey,

with two fairy  
ladies, Morgan  
and Oriand.

After these come  
Transelyne and  
many damsels of  
fairy-land.

Huon and Esclara-  
monde go to meet  
Florence and  
Clariet.

Huon and his  
wife kiss their  
daughter.

Claryet on<sup>1</sup> a ryche palfrey ambelynge, so fresshely  
harnaysyd<sup>2</sup> and rychely aparayled that in all the worlde  
there was none suche: the harnays<sup>3</sup> hangynge full of  
<sup>4</sup>belles of syluer<sup>4</sup> / makynge so swete a noyse that **4**  
maruayle it was to here them: yf I shulde dyscryue  
the beautye & ryches *that* was on her palfrey, it shulde  
be to longe to reherse / this lady Claryet <sup>5</sup>was acom-  
panyed with .ii. notable ladyes of the fayrey / the one was **8**  
Morgan, and the other Oryand<sup>6</sup> / who came syngynge  
after Claryet. Then after came the lady Transelyne  
with many damoyssels of ye fayrey / great ioye there  
was made: <sup>7</sup>then kynge Huon sayd to Esclaramonde **12**  
his wyfe / 'dame,<sup>8</sup> it is tyme that ye depart, for I se  
yonder comynge to<sup>9</sup> vs <sup>10</sup>warde<sup>10</sup> my doughter Claryet  
and Florence' / when Esclaramonde harde *that* she was  
ryghte ioyfull for the great desyre that she had to se **16**  
her doughter: the quene went forth hyely<sup>11</sup> acom-  
panyed / then kynge Huon & the other .ii. kynges with  
all theyr companyes, with baners dysplayed with great  
ioye & treumphe wente to mete Florence and Claryet: **20**  
ye may well thynke that kynge Guaryn had great ioye  
of the comynge of his sone, and sawe suche an assemble  
mete there together to receiue him. he deuoutly thanked  
our lord <sup>12</sup>Iesu christ.<sup>12</sup> Thus these kynges & prynces **24**  
wente to mete these .ii. yonge parsons rychely acom-  
panyed / so<sup>7</sup> great ioy had Claryet when she saw the  
quene her mother before her that<sup>7</sup> she wepte for in-  
warde ioye that she had / & when the quene sawe her **28**  
doughter she enbrased and kissed her often tymes, and  
of a great season none of them coud speke to other,  
<sup>10</sup>theyr hartes were so ouer come<sup>10</sup> for ioye / then kynge  
Huon came & toke his doughter out of the quenens **32**  
armes / and kyssed her mo then .xx. tymes / Then

<sup>1</sup> vpon.      <sup>2</sup> garnished.      <sup>3</sup> armour.      <sup>4-4</sup> siluer bels.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. clxix. col. 2.      <sup>6</sup> Glorianda.      <sup>7</sup> and.      <sup>8</sup> Madame.

<sup>9</sup> towarde.      <sup>10-10</sup> omitted.      <sup>11</sup> nobly.      <sup>12-12</sup> god.



- kyng Guaryn came to<sup>1</sup> Florence & sayd, 'dere sone, I haue sore<sup>2</sup> trespassed agaynst you / in that wrongfully I put you into my presone / <sup>3</sup>I complayne greatly to  
 4 you of your vncl the kyng of Nauerne who hath wasted your countre' / 'syr,' quod Florence, 'I requyre you<sup>4</sup> pardon my vncl / <sup>5</sup>reason is<sup>6</sup> that I shulde be content that peas<sup>7</sup> be made betwen you / and, syr, I  
 8 requyre<sup>8</sup> you<sup>4</sup> gyue me this damoyssel in maryage.' 'son,' quod kyng<sup>6</sup> Guaryn: be in suerte<sup>9</sup> ye shall haue her & none other / for a more noble lady can not be founde in this<sup>6</sup> .x. realmes' / 'syr,' quod Florence,  
 12 'I thanke you' / <sup>3</sup>thus these .ii. companyes ioyned together / and the kyng of Nauerne came to his nephue Florence, and enbrasyd hym and sayd / 'fayre nephue, of your retourne I am ryghte ioyous'<sup>10</sup> / 'syr,' quod he,  
 16 'I am well plesed with the peas that is made betwene my father and you' / Thus they rode tyll<sup>11</sup> they came to the tentes & there alyghtyd / then kyng Huon called the other two kynges and sayde / 'syrs, howe  
 20 saye you, wyll ye abyde by myne aduyce and put into myne handes the dyscorde *that* hathe bene betwene you?' / they answeyrd<sup>9</sup> they were content to do as he wold haue them. Then kyng Huon sayd / 'syrs, then  
 24 my wyll is that peas and acorde be betwene you and all yours' / and they lyberally agreed therto, wherof kyng Huon was ioyfull. Then kyng Huon desyrd Florence to shewe his aduenture, and how he was rescued by  
 28 sorbare. Then Florence shewed al his aduentures: <sup>3</sup>y<sup>e</sup> other kynges were ryght ioyfull to here it, and all other that harde it, and<sup>12</sup> greatly prayسد<sup>13</sup> Sorbare for his dede: and<sup>14</sup> honorid hym greatly<sup>6</sup> and made hym great  
 32 feaste<sup>15</sup> and chere / and caused hym to be chrystened.

King Guaryn asks  
pardon of his son  
Florence.

Guaryn promises  
that he shall  
marry Claret.

The king of  
Navarre also  
comes up and em-  
braces Florence,  
his nephew.

The two kings  
make peace.

Florence recites  
his adventures.

Sorbare is greatly  
honoured and is  
baptized.

<sup>1</sup> vnto.    <sup>2</sup> much.    <sup>3</sup> and.    <sup>4</sup> to.    <sup>5</sup> it is.  
<sup>6</sup> omitted.    <sup>7</sup> Fol. clxix. back, col. 1.    <sup>8</sup> desire.  
<sup>9</sup> that.    <sup>10</sup> ioyfull.    <sup>11</sup> vntill.    <sup>12</sup> dyd.    <sup>13</sup> praise.  
<sup>14</sup> moch.    <sup>15</sup> feasting.

Huon gives  
Florence and  
Clarinet three  
cities.

The marriage is  
solemnized with  
much festivity.

Then kyng Huon sayd to the .ii. kynges, 'Syr, I wyll that presently eche of you do pardon other<sup>1</sup> all yll wyll.' 'Syr,' quod they, 'we are redy to do it,' & so eche of them enbrasyd other / wherof kyng Huon had 4 great ioie, and so had all other lordys and knyghtes that were there assembelyd / <sup>2</sup>'syr<sup>2</sup> kynge Guaryn,' quod Huon / 'incontynent I wyll *that* your sone Florence haue <sup>3</sup>my doughter in maryage / and I geue 8 them the citeye of Burdeaux / Blames / & Geronyl, and all the apendantes therto belongynge' / when kinge Guaryn hard the offer that kynge Huon<sup>4</sup> made to his sone Florence he thankyd hym <sup>5</sup>with good harte,<sup>5</sup> and 12 so dyd all the other lordes / who alowed greatly that maryage. <sup>6</sup>Kynge Guaryn, <sup>2</sup>when he<sup>2</sup> saw the honour, loue, and courtoysye that<sup>7</sup> Huon dyd to Florence his sone, he knelyd downe and sayde / 'syr, my chylde 16 and yours I comytte into your handes / vse them at your pleasure' / then by consente of bothe fathers they were fyaunsed<sup>8</sup> and spowsed together all in one daye / the fest and solempnyte of this maryage endured 20 .viii. dayes / the kynge of Nauerne gaue to<sup>9</sup> Florence his realme of Nauerne to possede<sup>10</sup> and enioye after his discease : of the festes and iustes and tournays that was made that .viii. dayes I make no mencyon therof, for it 24 were ouer longe to reherse / then kynge Huon gaue his doughter <sup>2</sup>Claryet<sup>2</sup> .xxx. somers charged with gold & great ryches / wherby the ioie encressyd of all partyes / then the lordes and the other people of Aragon came to 28 kynge Huon, and all wepyng they desyryd hym to haue petye and compassyon of them / and *that* he myght fynd some meanes *that* they myght haue some recompense for y<sup>e</sup> great hurtes & damages *that* they had 32 receyuyd by reason of the warre betwene these .ii.

<sup>1</sup> of.      <sup>2-2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> Fol. clxix. back, col. 2.      <sup>4</sup> had.  
<sup>5-5</sup> hartely.      <sup>6</sup> When.      <sup>7</sup> Kinge.      <sup>8</sup> wedded.  
<sup>9</sup> vnto.      <sup>10</sup> possess.

kynges, wherby they were nere dystroyed by the  
 Nauernoys / when quene Esclaramond hard y<sup>e</sup> people  
 complayn / she enbrased her husband and sayd / 'syr,  
 4 I requyre<sup>1</sup> you for y<sup>e</sup> loue of our<sup>2</sup> chyl dren / to haue  
 petye of this people who requyrethe for ayde / for in  
 you is all theyr trust' / 'dame,'<sup>3</sup> quod Huon, 'I shall  
 incontynent shew what grace<sup>4</sup> I shal<sup>5</sup> do for the loue of  
 8 you.' then kyng Huon commaunded all the peopel to  
 knele downe,<sup>6</sup> then he sayd / 'syrs, all ye *that* be here  
 assemblyd, to y<sup>e</sup> entent *that* ye shall not thinke *that*  
 the thyng that I wyll do shuld be any wychecrafte or  
 12 yllusyon / but that it is by y<sup>e</sup> wyll of our lorde Iesu  
 chryst / the gyfte that kynge Oberon gaue me or<sup>7</sup> he  
 dyed, the which was all the pusaunce & dyngnyte that  
 he had in all the fayrey of the worlde / therfore knowe  
 16 that by the pusaunce and dyngnyte that our lorde<sup>8</sup> Iesu  
 chryst<sup>8</sup> made kynge Oberon my predyscessor to gyue  
 me / I will that this realme of Aragon, wheras it hath  
 had damage by reason of the warre, so that the realme  
 20 is sore brent<sup>9</sup> and wastyd, <sup>6</sup>I wyll that it be agayne in  
 the same case as it was before any warre began, and  
 that all castelles and houses brente<sup>9</sup> or beten donne be  
 better .iii. tymes then they were before / and I wyll  
 24 that fro hensforthe euery man serue god & thanke hym  
 of this grace that he hathe sente you' / then he lyfte  
 vp his hande and blessyd all the people with the syngne  
 of the crosse / <sup>6</sup>as sone as he had done his blessinge  
 28 euery thyng was as he had deuysed thurgh<sup>10</sup> all the  
 realme. Thus was y<sup>e</sup> wyll of <sup>11</sup>our lorde<sup>11</sup> Iesu chryste  
 at the instaunce and prayer of<sup>12</sup> noble kyng Huon.

Huon miracu-  
 lously restores all  
 the damage that  
 the war has  
 wrought in  
 Arragon.

He blesses all the  
 people.

¶ Howe kynge Huon and quene Esclaramond  
 32 departed, and howe he gaue great<sup>13</sup> gyftes

<sup>1</sup> desire.    <sup>2</sup> your.    <sup>3</sup> Madame.    <sup>4</sup> Fol. clxx. col. 1.

<sup>5</sup> will.    <sup>6</sup> and.    <sup>7</sup> before.    <sup>8-8</sup> god.    <sup>9</sup> burnt.

<sup>10</sup> out.    <sup>11-11</sup> omitted.    <sup>12</sup> the.    <sup>13</sup> rich.

to<sup>1</sup> the two kynges, and to al other lordis  
and ladyes, & damoysselles / and of the  
sorowe that was betwene the mother and  
the doughter at theyr departynge. 4

Ca. C.lxxiii.



<sup>2</sup> Hen kenge Huon had made his prayers  
to our lorde <sup>3</sup>Iesu chryst,<sup>3</sup> and that his  
bone<sup>4</sup> was graunted, he thankyd god / 8  
suche festes, iustys and tournays as  
was made there duryenge the fest /  
was neuer sene nor harde of in no<sup>5</sup> cronycle here  
before / then kyng Huon made hym redy to departe / 12  
<sup>6</sup>he gaue gyftes or<sup>7</sup> he departed to them that were  
there, & specyally to Sorbare, to whome he recom-  
maunded his doughter Claryet, and desyred hym not to  
leue her / 'syr,' quod Sorbare, 'the great loue that I 16  
haue to you constrayneth me neuer to forsake her nor  
them that shall come of her, as long as lyfe is in my  
body' / when que[ne] Esclaramond vnderstode the  
departynge of her lorde Huon / & sawe that she must 20  
leue her doughter, she had great sorowe at her harte,  
and so all wepyng she came to her doughter, and  
sayde / 'ryghte dere doughter, ye ought greatly to  
thanke our lorde god <sup>3</sup>Iesu chryst<sup>3</sup> in *that* he hathe 24  
cast you out of so many parayles, & now to haue great  
honoure, & to be exalted lyke a rych & a<sup>8</sup> pusant lady /  
therefore, always set your harte on god, & serue<sup>9</sup> & loue  
him ; be lyberall to them *that* be poore / nor mocke no 28  
*parson*<sup>10</sup> / nor be no iangler agaynst your husbond /  
nor harken to non yl sayers,<sup>11</sup> fle fro flaterers / loue  
your husbond, kepe youreselfe alwayes trewe / to the  
entente *that* none yll reporte be made of you. Marke 32

Huon prepares to  
return to fairy-  
land.

Esclaramonde  
weeps at leaving  
her daughter.

She gives Clariet  
good advice.

<sup>1</sup> vnto.

<sup>2</sup> Fol. clxx. col. 2.

<sup>3-3</sup> god.

<sup>4</sup> request.

<sup>5</sup> any.

<sup>6</sup> and.

<sup>7</sup> before.

<sup>8</sup> omitted.

<sup>9</sup> feare.

<sup>10</sup> body.

<sup>11</sup> lyers.

wel this doctryne / for I can not tell yf euer I shall se  
 you agayne or not.' when the fayre Claryet hard her  
 mother, sodaynely she began to wepe, and sayd /  
 4 'O my ryght dere lady and mother, y<sup>e</sup> departyng  
 of you & of the kyng my father fro me oughte sore to  
 greue me, syn we haue ben together so lytel<sup>1</sup> a seson<sup>2</sup> /  
 for your <sup>3</sup>departyng is to me so greuable that yt  
 8 ys great payne to me to bere it' / then the mother and  
 the doughter clyppye and kyssyd ech other mo then  
 .xx. tymes, and oftener wold haue don &<sup>4</sup> kyng Huon  
 had not bene / for then he toke his doughter Claryet  
 12 in his armes and kyssyd her often tymes, tenderly  
 wepyng, By cause he knewe well he shulde neuer  
 se her after<sup>5</sup>; then he lyfte vp his hande and gaue her  
 and her husbonde his blyssyng, and shewyd them  
 16 many fayre ensamples and doctrynes. Then the noble  
 quene Esclaramonde knelyd downe & prayed kyng  
 Huon, hyr husband, that he wold counsell and aduer-  
 tyse them what they shuld do. 'dam,'<sup>6</sup> quod Huon,  
 20 'ryse vp, for suche petye I haue of them and of you  
 that nere hand my harte faylethe me / <sup>7</sup>I tary here  
 ouer<sup>8</sup> longe / <sup>9</sup>I muste nedys departe; come hether my<sup>10</sup>  
 doughter and kysse me / and sone Florence, with you I  
 24 leue my doughter / kepe her well as longe as god wyll  
 suffer her to be with you' / then kyng Huon toke leue  
 of the two kynges, who were ryght sorowfull of his  
 departyng / and he desyeryd then alwayes to be good  
 28 louers together / and so toke his leue, and sayde, 'I  
 wysshe myselfe and<sup>11</sup> my quene, and all my company,  
 to be in my palays of Momure' / he had no soner  
 spoken the word but that he was there / and sodaynly  
 32 he<sup>11</sup> vanysshed fro the two kynges, wherof they and all  
 other were greatly abasshyd, so that they wyst not

Huon tenderly  
 takes leave of his  
 daughter.

He wishes himself  
 and his company  
 in his palace of  
 Momur, and they  
 suddenly vanish  
 away.

<sup>1</sup> small.<sup>2</sup> time.<sup>3</sup> Fol. clxx. back, col. 1.<sup>4</sup> if.<sup>5</sup> againe.<sup>6</sup> Madame.<sup>7</sup> and.<sup>8</sup> too.<sup>9</sup> for.<sup>10</sup> deere.<sup>11</sup> omitted.



The King of  
Navarre takes  
leave of King  
Guaryn.

Soon afterwards  
Guaryn dies,


and Florence is  
crowned king.

Clariet becomes  
the mother of a  
fair daughter.

what to saye, <sup>1</sup>they had thought it had bene but a dreme, but by the <sup>2</sup>reason of the great giftes and riches that he had lefte behynd him amonge them. Then after al these thynges done the kynge of Nauerne toke <sup>4</sup>leue of kynge Guaryn, and departed; and his nephue Florence rode with hym .iiii. <sup>3</sup>leges, and then retourned to courtoyse, to Claryet his wyfe, and there they taryed two monethes in great ioy and solas. Then after <sup>8</sup>a sartayne space kyng Guaryn, who was <sup>4</sup>sore agyd<sup>4</sup> and auncyente, toke a sykenes, wherby he passyd out of this world / for whose dethe Florence his sone, and Claryet, wept many a salt tere. Then he was buried <sup>12</sup>with great solemnyte / <sup>1</sup>then by all the lordes and peers of the realme Florence was chosen & crowned kynge, and Claryet quene / great solempnyte and ioy was made at theyr coronacyon. Thus with great ioye <sup>16</sup>& gladnes Florence and Claryet were together, so that at the laste Claryet was great with chylde / wherof Florence and all the noblemen and comons of the realme were ioyfull, & thankyd our lord <sup>5</sup>Iesu chryste.<sup>5</sup> <sup>20</sup>and when the tyme came the quene was brought a bedde of a fayre doughter, wherof bothe father and mother were <sup>6</sup>ioyfull / the whiche ioye within a whyle after tornyd to sore wepynge & great heuynes, as ye <sup>24</sup>shall here after.<sup>7</sup>

¶ How quene Claryet was brought a bed of a doughter / at which delyueraunce the quene dyed / and howe when the yonge <sup>28</sup>damoyzell cam to the age of .xv. yere, the king her father wolde haue had her in maryage, wher with al his lordes were sore trowbelyd. Ca. C.lxxiii. <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> and. <sup>2</sup> omitted. <sup>3</sup> Fol. clxx, back, col. 2.  
<sup>4-4</sup> verie old. <sup>5-5</sup> god. <sup>6</sup> right. <sup>7</sup> hereafter.

<sup>1</sup>  Hen kyng Florence was aduertysyd *that*  
<sup>4</sup> his quene was delyuered of a doughter,  
 he thankyd god / the chyld was borne  
 to the christenyng in to the chefe  
 church, and was namyd yde; the ioy  
 of the comyng of this chyld cost derely to the quene  
 her mother, for by reason of the payne that she enduryd  
<sup>8</sup> she departed out of this lyfe, and so dyed / y<sup>e</sup> chylde  
 was brought to kynge Florence; <sup>2</sup>when he sawe her he  
 was ioyfull, and demaundyd how her mother dyd / and  
 they thought that the mater coude not be hyden  
<sup>12</sup> nor kepte secrete, they sayd / 'syr, your quene is  
 departed to god' / when the kynge harde that he  
 fell downe in a swoune, so that every man fered he had  
 bene dede / <sup>2</sup>when he came to hymselfe he sayd / 'a,  
<sup>16</sup> my ryghte dere loue,<sup>3</sup> in an yll oure ye were borne;  
 for your sake I had forgotten all payne, and thought to  
 haue liued in rest with you / me thynke ye be rauysshed  
 & stollen awaye fro me / a, false deth, *thou* arte hardy  
<sup>20</sup> to take fro me that thyng that<sup>4</sup> I <sup>5</sup>louyd best / the  
 most fayrest, most trewest, and most<sup>6</sup> swetest creature  
 leuyng' / then his lordes came and comforted hym;  
 the cryes, complayntes, and wepynges rose thrughe<sup>7</sup>  
<sup>24</sup> the citey, all ladyes, and damoysselles, &<sup>6</sup> burgesses, and  
 maydens, and all the comons made great lamentacyons;  
 that nyght the quene was wachyd, & the nexte morn-  
 ynge, with great cryes & wepynges, the quene was  
<sup>28</sup> borne into y<sup>e</sup> chefe churche; her obsequy was done  
 notably, and so layd in a rych sepulture / y<sup>e</sup> sorow *that*  
 the kynge made was neuer none such sene / the kyng  
 was vysyted by y<sup>e</sup> lordes of his realme, but they coude  
<sup>32</sup> not cause hym to take any solas, but alonly to go now  
 and then to se his dere doughter, y<sup>e</sup> lady yde / and  
 euer when he sawe her his sorowe renewyd / <sup>2</sup>she was

The child is  
named Ide.

Clariet dies at her  
birth.

Florence grieues  
much for her.

Clariet is buried.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. clxxi. col. 1.

<sup>2</sup> and.

<sup>3</sup> Loue.

<sup>4</sup> which.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. clxxi. col. 2.

<sup>6</sup> omitted.

<sup>7</sup> throughout.

He is brought up  
in much luxury.

At fifteen years of  
age her beauty  
surpassed that of  
all other women.

Her father falls in  
love with her.

He proposes to  
his lords that he  
should marry  
again.

He calls all his  
lords to him in  
council.

wel norysshed and broughte vp, and when she came to  
the age of .xv. yere she was beautyfull / wyse, and  
sage, for she was brought vp with .iiii. noble ladyes,  
and ordered as it apartayned to a kynges chyld / <sup>1</sup>her **4**  
father, kynge Florence, louyd her so well *that* he could  
neuer be satysfied with loking vpon her / oftentymes  
he kyssed her holdynge her in his armes, he wolde  
neuer mary agayne for loue of her / so moche grew and **8**  
encreased this noble lady<sup>2</sup> yde, that she came to the age  
of .xv. yere complete / the fresshe beauty & bounte  
*that* was in her, yf I shulde dyscryue it, it shuld<sup>3</sup> be  
ouer long to reherse, but I dare wel say *that* in beauty **12**  
as then she passyd all other women of y<sup>e</sup> worlde / for  
god & nature had employed al theyr study to forme  
her / ther was neuer<sup>4</sup> man *that* saw her but *that*<sup>2</sup>  
louyd her, & so dyd her father; so *that* on a day the **16**  
kyne had his lordes aboute hym / <sup>5</sup>the one of them  
was Sorbare,<sup>5</sup> whome the kyng louyd derely / <sup>1</sup>the  
kynge, seyng his <sup>6</sup>doughter yde growe and encrese  
in all vertues / he sayde to his lordes / 'syrs, it were **20**  
good *that* there were some wyfe found out for me /  
whome I wyll mary yf any suche can be found in all  
condycyons lyke to her that I had before' / when  
his lordes harde the kyng they were ioyful in that the **24**  
kyng wolde mary agayne / Alas, they knewe not the  
kynges inward entencyon / but shortely after they<sup>7</sup>  
knew it, wherby moche yll and myschefe came after,<sup>8</sup>  
and many a man slaine, and many a churche brente,<sup>9</sup> **28**  
as ye shall here after<sup>10</sup> / Then the kyng wrote and  
sente to all hys lordys and knyghtes of his realme  
to com to his court at a daye assyngnyd; <sup>1</sup>when they  
were al com to the palays ther they founde the kyng, **32**

<sup>1</sup> and.      <sup>2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> would.      <sup>4</sup> any.

<sup>5-5</sup> and Sorbare was amonge them.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. clxxi. back, col. 1.

<sup>7</sup> the kyng.

<sup>8</sup> afterward.

<sup>9</sup> burnt.

<sup>10</sup> hereafter.

who humbly reseyuid them, and made them great  
 fest,<sup>1</sup> & had them to dyner withe hym / when the  
 dyner was done / the kyng and all his lordys went  
 4 in to a gardeyne, were as y<sup>e</sup> kynge wolde kepe hys  
 counseyll; <sup>2</sup> when they were all there and the kynge  
 set in his sete, he sayde / 'syr, ye know well I haue  
 no mo children but a doughter, who hathe bene desyred  
 8 in maryage by dyuers kynges and prynces / but I  
 wolde not consent to mary her / nor I thought not to  
 mary myselfe for<sup>3</sup> loue of her mother, whome I so  
 derely lound / but now I am <sup>4</sup> in wyl to be maryed  
 12 and to take a wyfe / so<sup>5</sup> she be semblable to her that is  
 departed / and therefore I haue sente for you to shewe  
 you my wyll and pleasure.' when his lordes hard hym  
 they wer ioyfull, & sayd / 'syr, knowe for trouthe  
 16 there is no woman leuyng in chrystendome that<sup>6</sup> yf ye  
 wyll haue her, ye shal, yf she be neuer so fayre or so  
 hye <sup>7</sup> a parage<sup>7</sup> / & therefore, syr, thynke in your selfe  
 whether ye wyll that we shall go to get you a wyfe.'  
 20 <sup>8</sup> 'Syr,' quod the kynge, 'in this matere ye shall  
 not nede to take <sup>9</sup> great payne<sup>9</sup> / for y<sup>e</sup> wyfe that I wyl  
 haue is not far<sup>10</sup> hence; it lyethe in me to haue her yf  
 I lyst' / 'syr,' quod the lordes, 'wyl it please you  
 24 to name her that shal be so happy' / 'syr,' quod  
 y<sup>e</sup> kyng, 'it is my doughter yde whome I wyl take to  
 my wyfe, for the great loue that I had to her mother' /  
 when the lordes hard that they regardy<sup>11</sup> eche other /  
 28 blessing them selues of the orryble and detestable  
 wordes of the kyng, and beheld<sup>12</sup> him maruaylously.  
 Then Sorbare, who was of the kynges preuy counsaile,  
 began to speke, and sayde / 'a, syr, god forbede that  
 32 suche a shame shulde come to you / for it is worse then

The lords approve  
 his proposal to  
 marry a second  
 time.

He announces his  
 intention of  
 wedding Ide.

The lords are  
 horror-stricken,

and Sorbare  
 reproaches him  
 for meditating so  
 unnatural a crime.

<sup>1</sup> feasting.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> the.      <sup>4-4</sup> minded to marie.

<sup>5</sup> that.      <sup>6</sup> but.      <sup>7-7</sup> of Lyneage.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. clxxi. back, col. 2.      <sup>9-9</sup> any paines.      <sup>10</sup> from.

<sup>11</sup> beheld.      <sup>12</sup> looked on.

Florence grows  
wrathful.

Idc is summoned  
by her father.

bogery<sup>1</sup> to hym that wyll polute his owne proper  
blode<sup>2</sup> by hymselfe engendered / ye shulde not be  
worthy to syt in a chayre royall / <sup>3</sup>ye ought to be the  
myrrour & ensample to other men how they shulde <sup>4</sup>  
lyue / wyll you then breke the law that god hath geuen  
vs / put fro you that crewelte, ye shall fynde no man  
wyll prayse you in your so doynge or thynkyng<sup>5</sup> /  
when the kyng hard sorbare he beheld hym sore,<sup>6</sup> and <sup>8</sup>  
sayd / 'sorbare, knowe for trouthe but that I fynde<sup>5</sup>  
myselfe moche bounde to<sup>6</sup> you, I wolde stryke of thy<sup>7</sup>  
hede / and there is no man that speketh to the con-  
trary / but I shal put hym to dethe.' Then all the <sup>12</sup>  
lordes together sayde to the kyng<sup>8</sup> / 'syr, do as ye  
lyst<sup>8</sup> / Sorbare hathe sayd as a noble man ought to do,  
for yf ye do otherwyse ye ar not worthy to bere a  
crowne' / & so helde theyr peas; they durst speke no <sup>16</sup>  
more for fere of him, & also bycause they thought  
suerly<sup>9</sup> the deuyll was within hym to mosyon<sup>10</sup> such  
a<sup>11</sup> mater / when y<sup>e</sup> kyng hard the wyl of his lordes /  
hastely<sup>12</sup> he sent for his doughter / who came with <sup>20</sup>  
a smy<sup>13</sup>lyng countenaunce, not knowynge<sup>14</sup> the vn-  
reasonable wyll of the kyng<sup>8</sup> her father / <sup>3</sup>when she  
came before hym she knelyd downe / the kyng toke  
her vp & set her bytwene his armes, and kyssed her <sup>24</sup>  
more then .xx. tymes / the lady knewe no thyng<sup>15</sup>  
<sup>15</sup>y<sup>e</sup> kynges<sup>15</sup> entencyon none other wyse but that she  
thought he dyd it but as a father ought to do with his  
chylde. the lordes then<sup>16</sup> sayd softly one to another / <sup>28</sup>  
'A, vnhappy kyng<sup>8</sup>, his thoughtes be farre vnlyke to  
his doughters / for yf she were here alone he wolde dys-  
honest<sup>17</sup> her, althoughe he<sup>18</sup> be her<sup>19</sup> owne father<sup>20</sup> /

<sup>1</sup> heathen.    <sup>2</sup> Daughter.    <sup>3</sup> and.    <sup>4</sup> angrily.  
<sup>5</sup> hold.    <sup>6</sup> vnto.    <sup>7</sup> your.    <sup>8</sup> please.    <sup>9</sup> that.  
<sup>10</sup> any.    <sup>11</sup> omitted.    <sup>12</sup> hastily after Daughter.  
<sup>13</sup> Fol. clxxii. col. 1.    <sup>14</sup> of.    <sup>15-15</sup> her father's.  
<sup>16</sup> then after chylde.    <sup>17</sup> dishonour.    <sup>18</sup> she.  
<sup>19</sup> his.    <sup>20</sup> doughter.




y<sup>e</sup> kyng, seyng his doughter yde so excellent fayre, he  
sayde to hymselfe<sup>1</sup> without he hadde his doughter in  
maryage he shulde dye for<sup>2</sup> rage / <sup>3</sup>the kyng behelde  
4 her, and made her to syt downe by hym, and sayde.  
'my dere doughter, ye are as an orpheline on the  
mothers syde / wherfore I haue great petye of you that  
ye haue lost her / and ye resemble so moche your  
8 mother / that I thynke when I se you in the face that  
I se her before me, wherfore<sup>4</sup> I loue you the better,  
and therefore<sup>5</sup> it is my wyll to take you to my wyfe,  
<sup>6</sup>for other then you I wyll none wed.'<sup>6</sup>

He tells her his  
wicked desire.

12 ¶ Of the great sorow that the damoyssel<sup>7</sup> yde  
made when she harde her father how he  
wolde haue her in maryage / and howe by  
the meanes of a noble lady and Sorbare,  
16 she departed at midnyght, & went at the  
aduenture that god wolde sende her.

Ca. C.lxxv.

8  Hen y<sup>e</sup> damoyssel<sup>7</sup> hard her father her  
20 fresshe red couloure<sup>9</sup> in her face<sup>9</sup>  
became pale & wan, <sup>3</sup>she cast downe  
her loke to the erthe, & sayd, 'a, my  
ryght dere fader, take hede what ye  
24 say, for yf ye be hard of them *that* be here presente /  
ye shall be greatly blamed.' Then the damoyssel<sup>7</sup> wold  
haue resen vp to haue gone fro her father, but the  
kyng toke her by the hand, and sayd, 'My doughter,  
28 make no daunger nor refuse to folowe my wyll / for ye  
sle me for the loue that I bere you' / then all the  
lordys knelyd downe before the kyng, and helde vp

Ide grows pale at  
the words.

The lords kneel  
before Florence,

<sup>1</sup> that.    <sup>2</sup> with.    <sup>3</sup> and.    <sup>4</sup> and therefore.

<sup>5</sup> for this cause.

<sup>6-6</sup> for I will haue none other in mariage.    <sup>7</sup> Damsell.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. clxxii. col. 2.    <sup>9-9</sup> omitted.

and implore him  
to have pity on  
himself and on  
his daughter.

But Florence is  
obdurate.

Ide resolves to  
escape from her  
father.

theyr handes / and desyred the kynge for his owne  
welthe and honour that he wolde haue petye of hym-  
selfe & of his doughter, and that he wold neuer thynke  
to do suche a dede / for yf he dyd he shulde neuer be 4  
set by after: when the kynge harde his lordes how  
they resoned with hym to haue tourned his mynde / he  
answered as a man full of felony<sup>1</sup> 2 and Ire, and sayd,  
that in the dyspyte of them all, whether they wolde or 8  
not, he wolde haue her to his wyfe / and that yf there  
were any so hardy<sup>3</sup> to speke to hym to the contrary, he  
wolde cause them to dye a shamefull dethe / and he  
sore rebukyd them / when the damoyzell hard her 12  
father so speke to<sup>4</sup> his lordes and knyghtes / then she  
saw well y<sup>e</sup> dysordynate<sup>5</sup> loue of her father / then<sup>6</sup> she  
began to wepe, and sayde, 'O very<sup>7</sup> god, I shall be  
shamyd & lost for euer yf he take me to his wyfe / for 16  
both of vs cannot scape without dampnacyon' / then  
she thought in<sup>8</sup> herselfe that yf she coude in any wyse  
scape she wyll<sup>9</sup> fle a waye so farre of that there shuld  
neuer<sup>10</sup> tydynges be harde of her. Then the kynge 20  
sente her into her chambre with her maydens, who  
were sorowfull and dyscomforted when they harde of  
that mater / for the kynge had commaunded them to  
kepe her well / and to ordayne a bayenge<sup>11</sup> for her, 24  
bycause y<sup>e</sup> next day he wold mary her / when the  
damoyssel yde was in her chaumbre she callyd to her  
an auncyent lady, who had bene her mastres,<sup>12</sup> then she  
voyded all other out of her chaumbre, and made 28  
semblaunte to slepe / and when she sawe that all other  
were gone she knelyd downe and held vp both her  
handys before the lady, and all wepynge sayd / 'a, my  
ryght dere lady and mastres,<sup>13</sup> I com to you as a poore 32

<sup>1</sup> villany.

<sup>2</sup> Fol. clxxii, back, col. 1.

<sup>3</sup> as.

<sup>4</sup> unto.

<sup>5</sup> inordinate.

<sup>6</sup> and.

<sup>7</sup> good.

<sup>8</sup> within.

<sup>9</sup> would.

<sup>10</sup> any.

<sup>11</sup> rich bed.

<sup>12</sup> mistresse and.

<sup>13</sup> Mistresse.

orphelyn without father or mother / my mother is ded  
 as ye knowe well / but he that shulde be my father  
 wold be my husbond / y<sup>e</sup> whiche is a thyng that the  
 4 erthe oughte not to bere nor sustayne them that wolde  
 lyue in suche maner, and therefore, dere mastres,<sup>1</sup> coun-  
 sayle and ayde this poore dyscomforted orphelyne, and  
 helpe me that I myghte be out of y<sup>e</sup> syghte of hym  
 8 that <sup>2</sup>ought to be my father / for I had rather go into  
 a<sup>3</sup> farre countre and<sup>4</sup> to lyue in pouerte / then to ende  
 my dayes withe hym in doynge of such a dede, and at  
 the end to be dampnyd and loste.' when the olde  
 12 lady, who was ryght noble & sage, harde the petuous<sup>5</sup>  
 complaint of the damoyssel yde, whom she had norysshed  
 & brought vp, she answeyrd and sayde / 'my ryghte  
 dere doughter, for the great loue that I bere you I  
 16 shall ayde and counsayle you and brynge you out of  
 this doughte / as somtyme dyd my brother, Peter  
 of Aragon, to the lady Claryet your mother / he rescued  
 her out of the handes of the sarasyns wheras<sup>6</sup> she was  
 20 in ioperdy of her lyfe / for all your father I shal not let  
 to ayde you.' when the damoyzell yde hard the good  
 wyll of the lady how she wold ayde her / all wepyng she  
 kyst her <sup>7</sup>mouth and eyen,<sup>7</sup> and sayde / 'a, my ryght  
 24 dere mother / y<sup>e</sup> goodnes that ye do to me god rewarde  
 you<sup>8</sup> / for it lyeth not in me' / then the old lady  
 issued out of her chaumbre and lefte the lady yde sore<sup>9</sup>  
 pensyue, and went into Sorbares chaumbre / who was  
 28 as then in the palays, for he was of the kynges preuy  
 counsayle / <sup>10</sup>when he came to his chaumbre & found  
 the lady there, he demaundyd what aduenture had  
 brought her thether / y<sup>e</sup> lady drew hym apart and  
 32 shewyd hym the request and prayer of the damoyzell  
 yde / wherof Sorbare, for the great petye <sup>7</sup>that<sup>7</sup> he had

She takes counsel  
 with the old  
 mistress of her  
 chamber.

The old dame  
 goes to Sorbare's  
 chamber,

and tells him of  
 Ide's desire of  
 escape.

<sup>1</sup> Mistresse.

<sup>2</sup> Fol. clxxii. back. col. 2.

<sup>3</sup> some.

<sup>4</sup> there.

<sup>5</sup> pitifull.

<sup>6</sup> when.

<sup>7-7</sup> omitted.

<sup>8</sup> for it.

<sup>9</sup> verie.

<sup>10</sup> and.

He offers her  
man's apparel, so  
that Ide may  
disguise herself  
therewith and  
run away.

of her he<sup>1</sup> began to wepe, and auoyded his chaumbre /  
the better to speke with the lady at his ease / then<sup>2</sup>  
they deuysed together of dyuers thynges, and at last<sup>3</sup>  
concludyd / for the saluacyon<sup>4</sup> of the damoysselles<sup>4</sup>  
body, that this aunicyente lady shulde bere to her the  
aparaile of a man, and that at the oure of mydnyght  
she shulde araye<sup>5</sup> her therewith / and then shew her<sup>2</sup> let  
her go out of the palays and come to the stable, were<sup>8</sup>  
as she shall fynd me redy with the best horse that her  
father hath redy for her to lepe on.<sup>6</sup>

The old dame  
makes all arrange-  
ments, and shows  
them to Ide.

¶ when the aunsyent lady vnderstode Sorbare, she  
was ryght ioyfull, and *thought* his counsayle good / 12  
<sup>2</sup>then she departyd and made redy al the aparayll  
belongyunge to a man / then she came to the damoyssell  
ydes chambre, and shewed her the conclusyon that was  
taken betwene her and Sorbare / when the damoyssell 16  
harde that she had great ioy at her hart, <sup>2</sup>she clypped  
and kyssed her / y<sup>e</sup> lady was glad when she sawe her  
somewhat recomforted,<sup>7</sup> and sayd / 'fayre lady, y<sup>e</sup>  
kyng your father hathe ordayned for you<sup>8</sup> a bayne,<sup>9</sup> 20  
therefore go thether & bayne<sup>9</sup> with other damoysselles,  
to the entent that the kyng do not suspecte any thyng /  
and when ye haue bayned<sup>10</sup> you a sartayne space lette  
your bed be made redy / and when ye are in your 24  
chaumbre go to youre bed / and then commaund me  
and all the damoysselles to go and bayne<sup>9</sup> vs / and I  
shall kepe them there so longe a space *that* they shall  
haue good lyst to slepe / and I shall leue here by youre 28  
beddes syde all your mannes aparayle / <sup>2</sup>aray you  
therin, and then gyrt this sworde abought you / & put  
on your sporres / & when ye are out of the palays go to  
the stables, where ye shall fynd a hors redy for you.' 32  
Then they went in to the bayenge<sup>11</sup> chaumbre<sup>12</sup> in her

<sup>1</sup> omitted.    <sup>2</sup> and.    <sup>3</sup> they.    <sup>4</sup> sauegard.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. clxxiii. col. 1.    <sup>6</sup> vppon.    <sup>7</sup> comforted.

<sup>8</sup> for you *after* bath.    <sup>9</sup> bath.    <sup>10</sup> bathed.    <sup>11</sup> bathing.

<sup>12</sup> and she.

smoke redy to go into the bayenge<sup>1</sup> / <sup>2</sup>all the other  
 damoysselles were ioyfull when they sawe her come  
 thether / for they went<sup>3</sup> she had been gone to slepe  
 4 for<sup>4</sup> the dyspleasure that she had at her hart; then  
 they <sup>5</sup>sayd one to another / 'it semethe that our lady  
 is well apaysed of her sorowe, me thynke to morowe  
 she shall be lady and quene; <sup>2</sup>she shal be wyfe and  
 8 doughter to y<sup>e</sup> kynge her father, the which is a thyng  
 vnresonable' / then they came to her and bayned<sup>6</sup> her,  
 and festyd her as moche as they myght / when the  
 lady yde thought it was tyme to departe, she sayde to  
 12 her mastres<sup>7</sup> and to the other damoysselles / howe she  
 had bayned<sup>6</sup> her ynoughe, and that she wolde go into  
 her chaumbre to slepe / and bad all the other to go &  
 bayne<sup>8</sup> them / and that there shulde no mo go with her  
 16 but two of them to bryng<sup>9</sup> her to bed, & she sayd  
 to her mastres<sup>7</sup> that she shuld go and brynge her with  
 the other<sup>10</sup> damoysselles / the whiche thyng they dyd  
 gladly<sup>11</sup> / the damoyssell departed and went into her  
 20 chaumbre wrapped in a mantell of scarlet / when  
 y<sup>e</sup> two damoysselles had brought her a<sup>12</sup> bed they toke  
 leue of her, & departed and closed the dore after them,  
 and then they went and bayned<sup>6</sup> them with other /  
 24 and when the damoyssell yde felte herselfe all drye /  
 she rose and arayed her in the mannes aparayle as well  
 as she coude / and toke the sworde and gyрте it  
 about her / & dyd on her spores / <sup>2</sup>then she wente  
 28 to a great lowe wyndowe on y<sup>e</sup> gardayne syde, and  
 there she lepte out into y<sup>e</sup> gardayne as preuely as she  
 coud, and so wente <sup>13</sup>all alone<sup>13</sup> by the wall syde tyll<sup>14</sup>  
 she came to the posterne / then she wente out towardes  
 32 the stabyl / <sup>2</sup>when she came there she founde redy<sup>15</sup>

Her maidens  
attend Ide while  
bathing.

But she soon  
leaves them for  
her chamber.

Ide when left  
alone dons man's  
apparel, and girts  
a sword at her  
side.

She leaps from the  
window into the  
garden, and goes  
to the stable,

<sup>1</sup> bathing.    <sup>2</sup> and.    <sup>3</sup> thought.    <sup>4</sup> because of.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. clxxiii. col. 2.    <sup>6</sup> bathed.    <sup>7</sup> Mistresse.    <sup>8</sup> bath.

<sup>9</sup> haue.    <sup>10</sup> omitted.    <sup>11</sup> ioyfully.    <sup>12</sup> to.

<sup>13-13</sup> along.    <sup>14</sup> vntill.    <sup>15</sup> redy after horse.




where a horse is  
made ready for  
her by Sorbare.

there<sup>1</sup> a hors in Sorbares hande / and at the arson<sup>2</sup> of  
the sadyll a bag full of brede and flesshe, and two  
botelles of good wyne / then the damoyzell toke the  
horse, & without any worde spekyng she lepte vp <sup>4</sup>  
quyckely; then Sorbare, all wepyng, sayde, 'My  
<sup>3</sup>dere doughter, god be thy gyde and bryng the to  
sauegarde / go thy waye and kepe the way on<sup>4</sup> thy  
lyfte hande / <sup>5</sup>folowe the see syde' / 'Syr,' quod she, <sup>8</sup>  
'the goodnes that<sup>1</sup> ye haue shewed me god rewarde  
you, in to whose sauegarde I commende you' / thus  
departed this noble lady yde to eschewe and flee fro the  
yll dyshordenate<sup>6</sup> wyll of her fater / <sup>5</sup>she entered in <sup>12</sup>  
to the forest, kepyng no hye waye / and so she rode  
.iii. dayes alonge the wode tyll<sup>7</sup> she thought well that  
she was farre fro her countre. Nowe let vs leue  
spekyng of her tyll<sup>7</sup> <sup>8</sup>tyme be<sup>8</sup> to retourne to her <sup>16</sup>  
agayne, and let vs speke of kyng florence her fater.

She makes for the  
forest.

¶ How kyng Florence was sorowfull when he  
was aduerteysed of his doughters depart-  
yng, who was aparayled lyke a man, and <sup>20</sup>  
how shee came into almayne, and how she  
found sartayne theues in a forest, and how  
she came to Rome to the emperour lyke a  
squire. Ca. Clxxvi. <sup>24</sup>

<sup>9</sup>  E haue harde here before in this hystory  
howe kynge florence of Aragon wold  
haue his owne doughter, the damoy-  
zell yde in maryage agaynst the wyll <sup>28</sup>  
of all his lordes and people; after that  
he had spoken with her and commaundyd the bayne<sup>10</sup>

<sup>1</sup> omitted.

<sup>2</sup> pommell.

<sup>3</sup> Fol. clxxiii. back, col. 1.

<sup>4</sup> vpon.

<sup>5</sup> and.

<sup>6</sup> dishonorable.

<sup>7</sup> vntill.

<sup>8-8</sup> we haue occasion.

<sup>9</sup> Fol. clxxiii. back, col. 2.

<sup>10</sup> bath.

to be orderyd for her to the entente<sup>1</sup> the nexte daye to  
 take<sup>2</sup> her in maryage / the nyght aprochyd, and after  
 supper the kyng wente to his bed / <sup>3</sup>then the nexte  
 4 mornynge betimes tidynge was brought to y<sup>e</sup> kyng  
 how the kyng of Nauerne was come to se hym / the  
 kyng wente to mete with<sup>4</sup> him, and made hym great  
 chere, and so came together to the palays / and then  
 8 incontynent it was shewed the kyng how his daughter  
 was fled away, wherof y<sup>e</sup> kyng was so sorowfull and  
 angry *that* no man durste speke a worde to hym, <sup>5</sup>he  
 went in to his daughters chaumbre: there he found the  
 12 ladyes and damoysselles that had y<sup>e</sup> kepyng of her;  
 y<sup>e</sup> kyng wolde haue ryn vpon them and<sup>6</sup> the kyng of  
 Nauerne had not bene, who letted hym and blamed hym  
 moche when he knewe the cause of her departynge /  
 16 and what y<sup>e</sup> kyng wolde haue done / then came the  
 horse keper to the kyng, and sayde / how his good  
 horse was stollen awaye the same nyght. Then the  
 kyng as a man desperate commaunded on all sydes  
 20 men to ryde after,<sup>6</sup> and who soeuer coude brynge his  
 daughter agayne or elles sure tydynge of her he  
 promysed to gyue hym a .M. florences of gold / there  
 were many that for loue of that mony rode forthe, to  
 24 the nombre of .iii.C.; they rode dyuers wayes, but  
 there was none of them that coude brynge any newes<sup>7</sup>  
 of her / and so retorned to y<sup>e</sup> kyng, who was sorowfull  
 when <sup>8</sup>he coude here no thyng of her / great wepynges<sup>9</sup>  
 28 there was<sup>10</sup> in y<sup>e</sup> city for<sup>11</sup> goynge awaye of the damoy-  
 sel / for<sup>12</sup> fere that she had of her father, & rode vpon  
 the good horse / in the daytyme she wolde rest her in  
 the wodes, and in the nyght she wold ryde forthe.  
 32 Thus she passyd all the prouynces of Aragon / <sup>3</sup>then

The king of  
Navarre comes to  
visit Florence.

Florence is told of  
his daughter's  
flight.

In his wrath he  
would have slain  
her maidens, had  
not the king of  
Navarre pre-  
vented him.

He sends messen-  
gers after Ide.

<sup>1</sup> that.    <sup>2</sup> haue.    <sup>3</sup> and.    <sup>4</sup> omitted.    <sup>5</sup> if.

<sup>6</sup> her.    <sup>7</sup> tidings.    <sup>8</sup> Fol. clxxiii. col. 1.

<sup>9</sup> lamentations.    <sup>10</sup> made.    <sup>11</sup> the.

<sup>12</sup> because of the.

From Arragon  
Ide goes into  
Lombardy, and  
thence to Ger-  
many.

She tarries at  
Basle.

Men are going to  
Rome to aid the  
emperor against  
the king of  
Castille.

Ide offers her  
service to a  
German soldier.

she passed into Lombardy. of her iorneyes and ad-  
uentures I wyll make no mencyon, because she founde  
no thyng by the waye to let her; she rode so longe  
that she aprochyd to y<sup>e</sup> countre of almayne / <sup>1</sup>when <sup>4</sup>  
she came there her mony fayled her, wherby she was  
constrayned to selle her hors for money to lyue with  
all, and so wente afote / and at y<sup>e</sup> last came to the  
citye of Basyle, and ther she taryed a season, and ther <sup>8</sup>  
dyspendyd her money / so longe she laye there that she  
harde howe the emperour of Rome sent for men all  
aboutght to ayde and socoure hym agaynst the kynge of  
castell, who made him great warre / when she sawe <sup>12</sup>  
*that* many noble men were goynge to Rome to socour  
the emperour she was ioyfull, and sayd to her host that  
yf she had horse and harnays<sup>2</sup> she wolde go with  
other into the warre / and thought in<sup>3</sup> her selfe that <sup>16</sup>  
she wold gladly be aquaynted with the emperoure  
of Rome, who was named Othon / <sup>1</sup>she thought yf she  
myght she wolde take counsaile of hym / <sup>1</sup>she dyd so  
moche that she fell in a quayntaunce *with* some of the <sup>20</sup>  
almayns / so that they were glad to se her / she semid  
to them to be so fayre<sup>1</sup> a yonge squire / then an  
Almayne *that* was there sayd to<sup>4</sup> her / 'frende, come  
hether to me and shewe me what thou art' / 'syr,' <sup>24</sup>  
quod she, 'I am to hym that my seruyce may please /  
for I desyre nothyng but to serue some noble man /  
but<sup>5</sup> late I was in Aragon, and there I seruyd <sup>6</sup>a lord  
that is dede / wherfore I am come hether for the <sup>28</sup>  
dyspleasure that I haue of his dethe / <sup>1</sup>I can well  
serue a genttelman / and kepe his horse, and yf nede  
be to dryue his sompterhors / & if I come in batayle or  
in scymysse *with* my mayster, I thynke he shall <sup>32</sup>  
haue worse then I in his company' / the Almayne,  
herynge her so<sup>7</sup> speke, sayde, 'fayre sone, that thou

<sup>1</sup> and.

<sup>2</sup> armour.

<sup>3</sup> within.

<sup>4</sup> vnto.

<sup>5</sup> of.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. clxxiii. col. 2.

<sup>7</sup> to.

sayst procedethe of a good corage / therfore good must  
 come to the yet, I pray the shewe me thy name' / 'syr,'  
 quod she, 'I am called yde' / 'brother,' quod the  
 4 Almayne, 'I retayne<sup>1</sup> y<sup>e</sup> to<sup>2</sup> my seruyse, take hede of  
 my horse' / 'syr,' quod she, 'I am redy to do you the  
 best seruyce that I can' / <sup>3</sup>y<sup>e</sup> Almayne had her to his  
 logging. Thus she then serued <sup>4</sup>and she<sup>4</sup> was wonte to  
 8 be serued, for she fered yf it shulde be parseyued that  
 she were a woman it shulde<sup>5</sup> be to her trobyl / therfore  
 she kepthe herselfe close and secrete: <sup>6</sup>she was<sup>7</sup> .iii.  
 dayes with her mayster after that the other company  
 12 were gone <sup>8</sup>to romeward,<sup>8</sup> <sup>9</sup>her mayster myght not  
 departe so sone as the other dyd, for his busynes was  
 not redy / <sup>6</sup>then thre days after they departed to go to  
 Rome / and she was harnaysed<sup>10</sup> after the coustume  
 16 of the countre. she serued so wel her mayster that he  
 prayسد her, and<sup>11</sup> so long they rode that they came and  
 aproched nere to the countre of rome, so that on a daye  
 they entered into a great darke forest / wherin laye in  
 20 a bussument a<sup>12</sup> .vii. score spaynardys, lyenge there to  
 abyde theyr aduenture; they lay in a darke valey, and  
 when they saw the Almaynes <sup>13</sup>them escryed<sup>13</sup> them to  
 the dethe, and ran vpon they. Then yde, who rode  
 24 before her mayster, couchyd her spere and strake a  
 spanyarde there <sup>14</sup>clene thrughe the body, and with the  
 drawynge out of <sup>15</sup>her spere the spanyarde fell downe  
 dede, of the whiche course her mayster prayسد her /  
 28 then y<sup>e</sup> spanyardes ran in amonge the almayns, who  
 ryght valyantly defended them,<sup>16</sup> but theyr defence  
 coud not auayle them / for fynally<sup>17</sup> they were all  
 slayne, so that none scapyd alyue / but alonly yde,  
 32 who dyd bere her so valyauntly that she slewe .iiii. of

Her master is  
 bound for Rome,  
 and Ide goes with  
 him.

On the journey  
 Spaniards in  
 ambush attack  
 them.

Ide and her com-  
 panions defend  
 themselves vali-  
 antly, but all the  
 Germans but her-  
 self are slain.

<sup>1</sup> entertain.    <sup>2</sup> into.    <sup>3</sup> so.    <sup>4-4</sup> that.    <sup>5</sup> wold.

<sup>6</sup> and.    <sup>7</sup> continued.    <sup>8-8</sup> towards Rome.    <sup>9</sup> but.

<sup>10</sup> armed.    <sup>11</sup> omitted.    <sup>12</sup> about.    <sup>13-13</sup> they despised.

<sup>14</sup> therwith.    <sup>15</sup> Fol. clxxiii. back, col. 1.    <sup>16</sup> selues.

<sup>17</sup> at the end.

She rides on  
alone, and falls in  
with a gang of  
thieves.

She begs meat and  
drink of them.

They attack her.

the spanyardes, but when she sawe that her mayster  
and all his company were slayne / with her sworde  
in her hande all blody she fled awaye, and rode out of  
the way and toke a lytell pathe, the whiche brought 4  
her to a rocke, and there she alyghted, and taryed in  
the wode all<sup>1</sup> nyghte tyll<sup>2</sup> the nexte mornynge / she  
had so great hunger and thyrste,<sup>3</sup> for she had rydden  
all<sup>4</sup> day *without mete or drynke* / then<sup>5</sup> in the mornynge 8  
she loked all about<sup>6</sup> and saw in an herber<sup>7</sup> a<sup>8</sup>.xxx.  
theues syttynge at a table etynge and drynkyng at  
theyr pleasure; <sup>5</sup> when the damoyzell sawe them, for  
the great rage of hunger that she suffered constrayned 12  
her in such wyse that she forgate all fere and went to<sup>9</sup>  
them / when the theues sawe her one of them sayd to  
his felaws, 'I se yonder comynge a <sup>10</sup>yonge<sup>10</sup> squyre  
mounted on<sup>11</sup> a good horse / the which shal be ours' / 16  
<sup>5</sup> when yde aprochyd to them she humbely saluted the  
company, and sayd, 'Syr, yf it may please you to let  
me eat and drynke with you I wyll pay for my scot'<sup>12</sup> /  
'frende,' quod one of them, 'is there any man that 20  
hath bene your gyde in this forest?' 'syr,' quod yde,  
'god hathe bene my conduct, and none other' / then  
one of the theues stepte forthe and toke her horse by  
the brydell, and sayd to his company, 'syr, laye on, 24  
stryke hym downe, he shall neuer eate nor drynke  
more; <sup>10</sup>as for<sup>10</sup> his horse shall not scape me' / when  
she<sup>13</sup> sawe <sup>14</sup>that she was so<sup>10</sup> taken she was in great  
fere, <sup>5</sup>she durst make no countenance to defende her 28  
selfe / there were so manye theues vpon her / she  
thought to humble herselfe, which should be more  
profyt, & sayd, 'Syr, why make ye that haste to sle  
me / lytel shal ye wyne therby nor lese,<sup>15</sup> hold here 32

<sup>1</sup> that.      <sup>2</sup> vntill.      <sup>3</sup> that she was neere hand famished.

<sup>4</sup> the.      <sup>5</sup> and.      <sup>6</sup> her.      <sup>7</sup> arbour.      <sup>8</sup> about.

<sup>9</sup> vnto.      <sup>10-10</sup> omitted.      <sup>11</sup> vpon.      <sup>12</sup> shotte.

<sup>13</sup> the Damsell.      <sup>14</sup> Fol. clxxiii. back, col. 2.      <sup>15</sup> looze.



my sword, I yelde me<sup>1</sup> into your handes, and I praye  
 you in the honoure of <sup>2</sup>our lorde<sup>2</sup> Iesu chryst<sup>3</sup> gyue me  
 some mete and drynke / for I <sup>4</sup>haue suche hunger<sup>4</sup> that  
 4 I am <sup>5</sup> nere dede for famyne<sup>5</sup> / then the mayster thefe  
 sayde, 'squire, haue no fere to be stryken, thou shalte  
 haue no more hurte then myselfe, but thou shalt haue  
 all that thou lackest; go thy waye & sytte downe  
 8 and eat and drynke at thy pleasure' / 'syr,' quod  
 yde, 'I thanke you' / then the damoyzell sate downe  
 with them, & dyd eate and drynke at her<sup>6</sup> pleasure /  
 7 when they had all eten and were resyn vp, then the  
 12 theues began to stryue amonge themselfe, sayenge to  
 theyr chefe mayster how he had done yll, that he  
 wolde not suffer them to sle the squire / then another  
 answered, & sayd how there shuld no hurte be done to<sup>8</sup>  
 16 hym, bycause he was so fayre a yonge man and so  
 courtoys / and sayd<sup>9</sup> it shuld be great damage to  
 sle hym / <sup>10</sup>better it were<sup>10</sup> to kepe hym styll with  
 them, and to lerne hym to stele and to mourder men /  
 20 and yf he wyll not do so<sup>11</sup> it were<sup>12</sup> reason to sle hym.  
 ¶ when yde vnderstode the theues she was in great  
 fere, and callyd vpon oure lorde <sup>13</sup>Iesu chryste,<sup>13</sup> pray-  
 enge hym humbly in her great nede to succour and  
 24 aide<sup>14</sup> her / then the chefe mayster demaunded what  
 was her name / then she answered in great fere to be  
 slayne, and sayd, 'syr, my <sup>15</sup>name is yde, & I am of the  
 realme of Fraunce; and we were in company whan we  
 28 departed out of our countre a<sup>16</sup> forty gentyl men / we  
 were goinge to haue serued the emperour of Rome, who  
 hath now warre with the kynge of spayne / and we  
 found in our way a<sup>16</sup> seuen score spayniardes in a

She yields to  
them,

and they offer her  
meat and drink.

Many of the  
thieves wish to  
make Ide a mem-  
ber of their band.

The chief of them  
asks her name  
and history.

She tells how she  
is on her way to  
serve the emperor  
of Rome.

<sup>1</sup> myselfe.      <sup>2-2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> to.      <sup>4-4</sup> am so hungry.

<sup>6-6</sup> almost famished.      <sup>6</sup> their.      <sup>7</sup> and.      <sup>8</sup> vnto.

<sup>9</sup> that.      <sup>10-10</sup> and that it were better.      <sup>11</sup> then.

<sup>12</sup> good.      <sup>13-13</sup> god.      <sup>14</sup> aide before succour.

<sup>15</sup> Fol. clxxv. col. 1.      <sup>16</sup> about.

The chief bids her  
join them.

She refuses  
stoutly.

The chief insists  
on wrestling with  
her; if he throws  
her, he will seize  
her horse and all  
her clothes.

He demands that  
her horse shall be  
set beside her,  
and that the  
thieves should  
draw aside.

busschement lyeng in <sup>1</sup>the botom of <sup>1</sup>a valey / <sup>2</sup>they  
set on <sup>3</sup>vs and slewe all my company, none scaped but  
myselfe / and therfore, syrs, I pray you let me haue  
agayne my horse and my sworde, and shew me y<sup>e</sup> way <sup>4</sup>  
to Rome / it shall<sup>4</sup> be a great almes dede to shewe me  
that courtoyse.' 'Nay,' quod the mayster thefe, '*that*  
wyll we not do / but thou shalte tary with vs, and  
lerne to be a thefe and a murdrer; <sup>5</sup>yf thou wylte not <sup>8</sup>  
thus do / with my swerde I shall stryke of thy heed.'  
'Syr,' quod yde / 'ye wolde haue me to a thyng that  
I was neuer accustomed to do, nor none of my lynage /  
nor I haue none intencyon to do any suche workes / <sup>12</sup>  
therfore I pray you let me haue my horse and my  
swerde, than ye do me great curtoyse / and whan I am  
mounted on <sup>3</sup>my horse / yf one of you wyll defye me,  
and yf I defende not my selfe from hym / than stryke <sup>16</sup>  
of my heed / I haue boughte my mete and drinke very  
dere if I shuld lose my horse' / than the mayster thefe  
said, 'bycause I se thou arte so hardy I wyll wrastell  
with the / on <sup>3</sup>the <sup>6</sup>couenaunt that yf thou cast me <sup>20</sup>  
thou shalt be one of vs<sup>7</sup> / & yf thou be cast to the  
erthe / than I wyll haue thy horse and thy swerde /  
and dyspoyle the of all thy clothes' / Than yde sayd,  
'I am content thus to do / so that ye withdrawe <sup>1</sup>backe<sup>1</sup> <sup>24</sup>  
your men fro me / and set my horse by me, and  
my swerde tyed to my saddle bowe / for it is <sup>1</sup>sayd in<sup>1</sup>  
a comen prouerbe / that a man is taken for a foole that  
putteth his trust in a thefe' / whan the <sup>8</sup>theues herd <sup>28</sup>  
that they coude not forbare laughynge / and they had  
great desyre to se this wrastelynge betwyxt them /  
than they withdrewe abacke / and set his hors ther by  
hym / than the noble damsell yde quykely toke the <sup>32</sup>  
thefe / who thoughte to haue borne her to the erth /  
but she drewe hym so sore to her *that* he coude scant

<sup>1-1</sup> omitted.

<sup>2</sup> so.

<sup>3</sup> vpon.

<sup>4</sup> would.

<sup>5</sup> and.

<sup>6</sup> this.

<sup>7</sup> our companie.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. clxxv. col. 2.

haue any breth / and therwith she cast hym soo rudely  
to the erth against a stone that he was therwith in  
a swone / and with the fall all his teth brast<sup>1</sup> in his  
4 mouth.

Ide throws the  
thief in the tussle,  
and he falls so  
heavily on a stone  
that he swoons.

¶ Whan yde sawe the thefe in that daunger quyeckly  
she wente to her horse and mounted vp / than she  
drew out her swerde, and said, 'A, ye horson<sup>2</sup> thefes /  
8 youre treason shall not auayle you / for ye haue  
all thought vyolence and treason agaynst me / go &  
helpe your maister who lyeth yonder / I thinke he  
shall euer remembre this wrastlynge bytwene vs. <sup>3</sup>I  
12 haue now no dout of you all / tho ye were a hondred  
mo / for yf I may<sup>4</sup> I shall make you all be hanged  
& strangled' / than the quyeckest and<sup>5</sup> lyghtest thefe  
amonge them stept forth and toke hym by the brydell  
16 of his hors / <sup>3</sup>whan she saw that / she lyfte vp her  
swerde & strake the thefe on<sup>6</sup> the hande / so that the  
hande flew fro his body and hanged styll vpon her  
brydle / than he ranne awaye thinkynge to dye for<sup>7</sup>  
20 payne of his hande / <sup>3</sup>than she dasht in amonge the  
thefes / they had no wepen aboute them to defende  
them withal / but they were there to their foly,  
nor they had no fere of that / that<sup>8</sup> fell / nor they  
24 byleued not that suche a yonge squier shulde haue  
had suche hardinesse<sup>9</sup> & force; <sup>10</sup>she fought fyersly  
amonge them, and cut of armes and shulders, & claue  
some to the brayne / she dyd so<sup>11</sup> that she slew fyue <sup>12</sup>of  
28 the thefes or<sup>13</sup> she departed / and whan she sawe time  
to departe / she sporred her hors / for by that tyme the  
resydue of the theues had gette<sup>14</sup> weapons / and they  
folowed her to haue slayn her or her hors / than  
32 she departed with the sporres / her hors was good /

Ide mounts her  
horse, and bids  
the thieves look  
to their chief.

A thief seizes her  
bridle, but she  
strikes off his  
hand with her  
sword.

She drives her  
horse among  
them,

and uses her  
sword vigorously  
upon them.

After slaying five

she spurs on her  
horse and escapes.

<sup>1</sup> burst.

<sup>2</sup> vilde.

<sup>3</sup> and.

<sup>4</sup> can.

<sup>5</sup> the.

<sup>6</sup> vpon.

<sup>7</sup> with the.

<sup>8</sup> which.

<sup>9</sup> hardness.

<sup>10</sup> then.

<sup>11</sup> much.

<sup>12</sup> Fol. clxxv. back, col. 1.

<sup>13</sup> before.

<sup>14</sup> gotten.

Ide arrives at  
Rome, and salutes  
the emperor.

He asks her  
history.

She tell of her  
recent exploits.


therfore anone she was ferre fro them / than the theues  
saw they lost but there payn<sup>1</sup> to folow any further,  
therfore they let her goo / whan yde sawe that she was  
scaped their handes / humbly she thanked our lorde 4  
<sup>2</sup>Iesu chryst,<sup>2</sup> desyrynge him to ayde and conducte her  
into some sauegarde / <sup>3</sup>she rode so long that she issued  
out of the great forest / of her iourneys and lodgyng I<sup>4</sup>  
make no mencyon / but she spedde so in her Iourney 8  
that she ariued at the noble cite of Rome, and she toke  
vp her lodgyng nere to the palayes / wheare as the  
emperour was deuysynge with his lordes of the feates  
of the<sup>5</sup> warre / than yde wente thyther / & kneled 12  
downe and saluted themperoure and all his lordes.  
When the emperoure and the Romaynes that were  
there saw the goodly yonge man who so humbly  
had<sup>5</sup> saluted them / they gretly<sup>5</sup> regarded him<sup>6</sup> for the 16  
beaute that they saw in him. Than the emperour said  
to<sup>7</sup> hym / 'fayre son, shewe me what ye be and  
fro whence ye come, *that* thus cometh hyther to me.'  
'Syr,' quod yde / 'I am a squier that came now straye 20  
fro Almayne / wheare as I haue serued a certayne  
tyme / and lytell there I haue wonne, whear of I am  
sory / and but late<sup>8</sup> I was in a<sup>5</sup> place / wheare diuers  
Spanyardes and other were in company, and they al<sup>5</sup> 24  
had great desyre to make warre / and they wente to the  
kynge of Spayne, your enemy / but or<sup>9</sup> they hadde  
ferre gone / they that were in my company met with  
them / and there we foughte <sup>10</sup>together and slewe 28  
y<sup>e</sup> moost parte of them, and there I was a lytell hurte /  
and now, syr, I am come to you to serue your grace / if  
my small seruyce may please you / & in the best wyse  
that I can I shall serue you trewly.' 32

<sup>1</sup> labours.      <sup>2-2</sup> god.      <sup>3</sup> and.      <sup>4</sup> wyll.      <sup>5</sup> omitted.

<sup>6</sup> much.      <sup>7</sup> vnto.      <sup>8</sup> lately.      <sup>9</sup> before.

<sup>10</sup> Fol. clxxv. back, col. 2.

¶ How the damsell yde was retained<sup>1</sup> with  
 the emperour of rome / and how the lady  
 Oliue, his doughter, was in <sup>2</sup>amours with<sup>2</sup>  
 4 yde, wenyng she had ben a man / & how  
 the kyng of Spaine came before the cite  
 of Rome, and how the noble damsell yde  
 tooke the kyng of Spaine in batayle and  
 8 dyscomfyted him. Ca. C.lxxvii.

12  Han themperour herde yde speake / he  
 well<sup>3</sup> behelde her, and saw how she  
 was byg and great / and thought *that*  
 he neuer saw<sup>4</sup> in<sup>5</sup> his lyfe before  
 so fayre a yonge man / and as the  
 emperoure was talkyng with yde / theare came to  
 them Olyue the emperours doughter. Than all the  
 16 lordes rose vp at her comyng / than<sup>6</sup> she sate downe  
 by her father / & beheld greatly the yonge squier / and  
 greatly<sup>7</sup> she praised her<sup>8</sup> in her corage, bycause of the  
 meruaylous great beaute that was in her / wenyng  
 20 <sup>9</sup>to her<sup>9</sup> that <sup>10</sup>she had bene a man / this Olyue was so  
 fayre, so swete, and so meke, that for her bounte and  
 humylyte she was <sup>9</sup>wel<sup>9</sup> byloued of euery man / then  
 the emperour demaundyd of yde what was her name &  
 24 fro whence she came. 'Syr,' quod she, 'my name is  
 yde, and<sup>11</sup> was borne at Terascon, <sup>6</sup>I am kyn to duke  
 Nayms of Bauyer, & to Aymery of Narbon, and to  
 Gyllerme the scotte / but by the kynsmen of Ganelon  
 28 I was chasyd and banysshed out of my countre, and syn  
 I haue endured moche payne and pouerte.' Then the  
 emperour sayd, 'frend, thou art of a good kynryd / I  
 retayne<sup>12</sup> the in my courte / for the bounte *that* I

The emperor  
 admires her  
 fairness.

Oliue his daugh-  
 ter beholds Ide,  
 and praises her  
 prowess.

Oliue, like all who  
 see Ide, never  
 doubts that she is  
 a man.

Ide feigns her  
 early history.

The emperor  
 takes her into his  
 service,

<sup>1</sup> entertained. <sup>2-2</sup> enamoured of.

<sup>3</sup> were *after* beheld her. <sup>4</sup> he neuer saw *after* lyfe.

<sup>5</sup> all. <sup>6</sup> and. <sup>7</sup> much. <sup>8</sup> him. <sup>9-9</sup> omitted.

<sup>10</sup> Fol. clxxvi. col. 1. <sup>11</sup> I. <sup>12</sup> entertaïne.



and bids her  
attend his daugh-  
ter Olive.

thynke<sup>1</sup> be in the, and also for thy good lynage.  
'Syr,' quod yde, 'god geue me grace that I maye  
do you suche seruyce that it maye be to youre plea-  
sure' / 'doughter Olyue,' quod the emperour, 'for y<sup>e</sup> 4  
loue of you I haue reteyned<sup>2</sup> this squyer to serue you' /  
'father,' quod Olyue, 'I thanke you / for he<sup>3</sup> semethe  
*that* he is come out of a good house<sup>4</sup> / and I had  
no seruau<sup>nt</sup> of<sup>5</sup> a longe<sup>6</sup> season, that better contentethe 8  
me' / then the emperour sayd to<sup>7</sup> yde / 'my frend,  
serue me well, behold here my doughter, whome I loue  
enterely, 8to whome I delyuer you to serue her; I  
haue no mo chyl<sup>dren</sup> but she, & therfore serue her 12  
trewly as a man ought to do that is come of suche  
a lynage as ye<sup>9</sup> be come of<sup>9</sup> / yf ye serue her wel and  
trewly, ye had neuer in all your lyfe before so good  
aduenture' / 'syr,' quod yde, 'I shall do so moche that 16  
by the grace of Iesu<sup>10</sup> that<sup>5</sup> you & she shal be wel  
content / and, syr, there is no thyng<sup>e</sup> but<sup>11</sup> lyghtly  
I can do it to serue a noble man, and in the warre  
I shal defende my selfe I trust as well a nother, and 20  
also I can serue at a table before a kynge or a<sup>5</sup> quene.'  
'frende,' quod the empe<sup>12</sup>rou<sup>r</sup>, 'yf ye can do thus as ye  
saye ye are well come hether, and ye shall fayre y<sup>e</sup>  
better / and I am ioyfull of youre comynge to serue me, 24  
ye shall neuer haue nede to go out of my seruyce' /  
when yde harde y<sup>e</sup> emperoure humbly<sup>13</sup> she thankyd  
hym / 8thus was yde retaynyd<sup>2</sup> with the emperour /  
whereas she dyd so moche by her good seruice that the 28  
emperour and his doughter, & all they of the courte  
louyd and praysed her, and the damoyzell Olyue often  
tymes gladly regardyd yde, and began in her harte sore  
to loue her / and yde, who parseiued her, prayed 32

All at the court of  
the emperor  
praise and love  
Ide.

<sup>1</sup> to.      <sup>2</sup> entertained.      <sup>3</sup> it.      <sup>4</sup> stocke.  
<sup>5</sup> omitted.      <sup>6</sup> great.      <sup>7</sup> vnto.      <sup>8</sup> and.      <sup>9-9</sup> are.  
<sup>10</sup> god.      <sup>11</sup> but *after* lightly.      <sup>12</sup> Fol. clxxvi. col. 2.  
<sup>13</sup> humbly *after* she.

to<sup>1</sup> our lorde <sup>2</sup>Iesu chryste<sup>2</sup> that he myght<sup>3</sup> so dele *that*  
 she be not acused nother of man or<sup>4</sup> woman / she gaue  
 almes often tymes to pore men, and she visyted gladly<sup>5</sup>  
 4 holy churche; she demenyd herselfe in suche wyse that  
 of euery man she was byloued and praysed / often  
 tymes she prayed to <sup>2</sup>our lord Iesu chryst<sup>2</sup> for kynge  
 Florence her father, for all that she was chasyd & fled  
 8 out of her countre by his occasyon and cause / yette she<sup>6</sup>  
 prayed euer<sup>1</sup> to god that she myght be agreed with  
 hym. Thus this damoyssel yde was in this daunger  
 seruyng the emperour and his doughter Olyue the  
 12 space of two monethes / & on a day she was in  
 the palays with the emperoure / and thether came  
 in great hast a messanger, and came and saluted the  
 emperour, and sayde / ‘syr, knowe for trouth / <sup>7</sup>y<sup>e</sup>  
 16 kynge of Spayne, with great pusaunce, is entered into  
 youre empyre of Rome, and wasteth all before hym  
 with fyre and sworde / <sup>8</sup>many a Romaine he hathe  
 slayne / and he hath sworne by his lawe that or<sup>9</sup>  
 20 a moneth be passed he wyll be with in your citey  
 of Rome with all his pusaunce, and he saythe that he  
 wyl haue his pleasure of your doughter, & to make you  
 to <sup>10</sup>dye of <sup>1</sup>a shameful deth by cause ye haue refused  
 24 to gyue<sup>11</sup> your doughter in maryage / syr, it were<sup>12</sup>  
 better for you that he had wedded<sup>13</sup> youre doughter,  
 then so many men shulde haue been slayne, and so  
 many townes brente<sup>14</sup> & destroyed / & castelles beten  
 28 downe / syr, go quyckly agaynst hym and defende  
 youre countre, or elles ye shall se hym shortely pyght  
 vp his tentes & paulyons before this citey’ / when the  
 emperour hard the messanger he studyed a great  
 32 season, and loked vpon yde, and sayde / ‘frende,

She prays for her  
wicked father.

News is brought  
the emperour of  
the approach of  
the king of Spain  
with a great and  
victorious army.

The invader  
declares he will  
have his pleasure  
of Olive, and will  
slay her father.

<sup>1</sup> omitted.      <sup>2-2</sup> god.      <sup>3</sup> would.      <sup>4</sup> nor.      <sup>5</sup> the.

<sup>6</sup> alwayes.      <sup>7</sup> that.      <sup>8</sup> and.      <sup>9</sup> before.

<sup>10</sup> Fol. clxxvi. back, col. 1.      <sup>11</sup> him.      <sup>12</sup> had been.

<sup>13</sup> married.      <sup>14</sup> burnt.

The emperor  
takes counsel  
with Ide.

Ide asks for fight-  
ing men, and  
promises to lead  
them against the  
enemy.

The emperor con-  
fers knighthood  
on Ide.

counsaille me, for I thought ful lytell that these men  
of war wold haue come vpon me, and nowe they waste  
and dystroye my lond.' 'Syr,' quod yde, 'trowble not  
your selfe for it; comforte youre selfe and reioyse your 4  
lordes & saruauantes, and let me haue men to fyght with  
them, and I wyll loke vpon them or<sup>1</sup> they come any  
nerer / and by the grace of god I shall cause them to  
bye derely the dystruccyon that they haue made in 8  
yours cowntre yf god saue my lyfe and my <sup>2</sup>good<sup>2</sup>  
sword'<sup>3</sup> / when y<sup>e</sup> emperour hard the valyant corage of  
yde, he prayسد hyr moche in his harte, and sayd /  
'frend, your reason pleaseth me well / and therfore I 12  
shal do you that honour as to make you a knyght,  
wherby your prowes and hardynes shall encreas' /  
'syr,' quod yde, 'of the honour *that* ye wyll do to me  
I am ryght ioyful / and thanke you therof' / then the 16  
emperoure came to<sup>4</sup> yde and gyrte aboute hym a good  
sworde & a ryche / it was so good that there was none  
lyke it in goodnes, nor<sup>5</sup> sharper, nor harder / <sup>6</sup>then y<sup>e</sup>  
emperoure gaue her the necke stroke of knyghthood, 20  
and sayde / 'yde, remembre this order, the whiche ye  
haue receyued this daye / and I praye <sup>2</sup>to<sup>2</sup> god<sup>7</sup> it  
maybe to the encreas of your honour, and euer <sup>8</sup>beware  
that your thoughtes be not lyght nor vauerynge, but 24  
be<sup>9</sup> sage and dyscrete, and atemperate, and be hardy in  
baytell, and cast away fro you all fere <sup>2</sup>and drede<sup>2</sup> / and  
when ye haue wonne any goodes or ryches / kepe them  
not locked in your cofers / but <sup>10</sup>depart with<sup>10</sup> them to 28  
poore knyghtes, the whiche shall encrease and exalte  
your honoure / and alwayes loue<sup>11</sup> holy church; yf ye  
do thus ye can not fayle to come to great honour, &  
euer shew youre vertue ageynst your enemyes' / 'syr,' 32  
quod yde, 'by the grace of <sup>12</sup>our lord Iesu chryst<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> before.    <sup>2</sup> omitted.    <sup>3</sup> hold.    <sup>4</sup> vnto.    <sup>5</sup> neither.

<sup>6</sup> and.    <sup>7</sup> that.    <sup>8</sup> Fol. clxxvi. back, col. 2.

<sup>9</sup> rather.    <sup>10-10</sup> distribute.    <sup>11</sup> the.    <sup>12-12</sup> god.

I shall so do that ther is no spaynyarde But that shall  
 wysse themselfe<sup>1</sup> to be on the other syde of the see' /  
 then eueryman arayed them in the paleys & in the  
 4 citey / <sup>2</sup>then trompettes and tabors and hornes began  
 to sowne in the citey, so that all the cheualry and  
 comunalte of the citey were redy armyd / then they  
 came all before the palays and presentyd themselfe  
 8 to the emperour / who dyd commaunde them that daye  
 to folowe & obeye the commaundement of yde, whom  
 he commytted that day to<sup>3</sup> be as chefe capetayne, and  
 sayde, 'syrs, loke ye do as moche for hym as ye wolde  
 12 do for me, <sup>2</sup>ye knowe well<sup>4</sup> I am old and feble, and can  
 bere armure no lenger / nor I am not able to ryde as I  
 myghte haue done or<sup>5</sup> this tyme / wherfore I desyre  
 you, & also commaunde you all on payne of youre  
 16 lyues to do euery thyng<sup>6</sup> that he commaundethe in the  
 stede of me as well as thoughe I dyd commaunde you<sup>7</sup>  
 myne own parsone, for he that dothe the contrary,  
 he shall lose his hede without any other redempeyon.'  
 20 Then they all sayde they wold so do syn it was  
 his pleasure. Then the noble emperoure causyd yde to  
 be rychely armyde, and then delyueryd <sup>8</sup>hym his owne  
 hors, who was so good *that* his lyke coude not be  
 24 founde in no<sup>9</sup> countre / <sup>10</sup>yde mounted vp quykely  
 with helme and shyld and a great spere / then<sup>2</sup> yde  
 toke leue of the emperour and of the lady Olyue, and  
 so rode thrughe the citey of Rome with all his host;  
 28 and when they were without the citey yde ordeyned  
 .iii. batayles / y<sup>e</sup> two fyrst batayles were led by two  
 great lordes / and the thyrde yde dyd gyde it,<sup>11</sup> and thus  
 with baners dysplayed<sup>12</sup> anaunsed forthe towardses theyr  
 32 enemyes / y<sup>e</sup> spanyardes thought suerly all had bene  
 theyrs / bycause they sawe of all the waye that they

He bids his  
 soldiers obey all  
 Ide's commands.

He gives Ide his  
 own horse.

Ide takes leaue of  
 the emperor and  
 of Olive.

She puts the men  
 in battle array,

<sup>1</sup> himself.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> doe and.      <sup>4</sup> that.      <sup>5</sup> before.

<sup>6</sup> as.      <sup>7</sup> in.      <sup>8</sup> Fol. clxxvii. col. 1.      <sup>9</sup> any.

<sup>10</sup> then.      <sup>11</sup> omitted.      <sup>12</sup> they.

had come no maner of defence made agaynst them / but  
it is an olde sayenge / *that* many thynges remayneth of  
such folysshe thoughtes / as it dyd with the span-  
yardes / for they thought suerly <sup>1</sup>the citey of Rome was <sup>4</sup>  
won ; but yf god ayde and socoure the damoysele yde  
and her cheualry, she shuld take fro them or it were  
nyght theyr hope to haue any vycetry / she rode by her  
bataylles and encoraged her men, and mouyd them to 8  
do valyauntly, <sup>2</sup>thus they aprochyd towardes theyr  
enemyes : great crye<sup>3</sup> and noyse there was when the  
batayles encounteryd together / the shot flewe so  
thykke of both partyes that it semed to be snowe and 12  
hayle / yde encountered with a knyght, nephue to the  
kyng of Spayne / he receyued suche a stroke, that for  
all his armure ydes spere wente clene thurgh his body /  
so that the knyght fell to the erthe with his fete 16  
vpwarde, and so dyed myserably amonge the horse fete /  
then yde sayde, ‘ of god be thou cursyd ; in an yll owre  
thou camste hether to recey[ue] suche an offerynge. I  
challenge fro you all the empyre of Rome ’ / then she 20  
sayde to herselfe, ‘ good lord god, humbly<sup>4</sup> I re<sup>5</sup>quyre  
the this day<sup>6</sup> ayde and socoure me this<sup>7</sup> poore fugy-  
tyue ’ / therwith she sporred her horse <sup>8</sup>with the  
spores<sup>8</sup> / and with the same spere she slewe another 24  
great baron of Spayne, and so slewe with the same  
spere dyuers other / and when the spere was broken /  
<sup>8</sup>then<sup>8</sup> she drew out her <sup>8</sup>good<sup>8</sup> sworde, the whiche the  
emperoure had geuen her / then she came to a notable 28  
duke of Spayne, vncle to the kyng, to whome she gaue  
suche a stroke with her good sworde that she claue his  
hede to the tethe, and so<sup>9</sup> fell downe dede / then she  
dashed into the thyckest presse / and euer dyd chese 32  
out of the greatest parsonages, and slew many of them,

and they meet the  
Spaniards.

He kills the  
nephew of the  
king of Spain.

She wields her  
sword in the  
thickest parts of  
the fight with  
deadly force.

<sup>1</sup> that.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> ioi.      <sup>4</sup> humbly *after* require.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. clxxvii. col. 2.      <sup>6</sup> to.      <sup>7</sup> a.

<sup>8-8</sup> omitted.      <sup>9</sup> he.



for she thought the mo that were slayne of the great  
 men, the more shulde her enemyes be afrayed, therfore  
 she chese out suche one after another / and also the  
 4 Romaynes fought valiantly / so that by the hyge  
 prowes of yde and of the good cheualry Romayne<sup>1</sup> that  
 was with her / made the Spanyardes abasshed, and  
 caused them to fle awaye / and had neuer retourned  
 8 agayne and<sup>2</sup> the duke of Argonne, with .thre.M.  
 knyghtes in his company, had not bene, who made  
 them that fled to retourne agayne / then there began  
 agayne a ferse batayle, and many a man slayne /  
 12 the Romayns dyd valyauntly by the ayde and comforte  
 of theyr capytayne; she rode into the thyckeste of the  
 prese & bet downe the Spanyardes on al sydes, that  
 petye it was to se / Great was the noyse, petuously  
 16 cryed out the hurt men lyeng among the horse fete,  
 which were beten downe to the erthe / then the kyng  
 of Spayne came in to the batayle with his sworde  
 in his hande, and encounteryd with a great lorde  
 20 of Rome, whiche was cosyn to y<sup>e</sup> emperour / y<sup>e</sup> kynge  
 gaue <sup>3</sup>hym suche a stroke on<sup>4</sup> the helme that he claue  
 his hede in to y<sup>e</sup> braynes / and then the kynge slewe  
 another / then yde, who saw that, was sorowful, and  
 24 sayd, 'I ought lytell to be prayسد / without I reuenge  
 the deth of this .ii. lordes slayne by y<sup>e</sup> kynge of  
 Spayne' / <sup>5</sup>she rode to the kynge and gaue hym suche  
 a stroke on<sup>4</sup> the helme / that all the sercles with stones  
 28 and perlys flew downe to the erth, and strok a waye a  
 part of his coyfe and<sup>6</sup> here and skynne, and yf the  
 kyng had not tornid his hede <sup>7</sup>elles his hed<sup>7</sup> had bene  
 clouen to the tethe, and the sworde glente<sup>8</sup> & lyght on<sup>4</sup>  
 32 the horse necke and strake it clene asonder, and so the  
 hors fell downe dede, & the kynge to the erthe, wherof

The Spaniards  
 begin to flee  
 before her;

but the king of  
 Spain comes into  
 the battle

and slays the  
 emperor's cousin.

Ide rides up to  
 him, slays his  
 horse, and fells  
 him to the  
 ground.

<sup>1</sup> of the Romanes.

<sup>2</sup> if.

<sup>3</sup> Fol. clxxvii. back, col. 1.

<sup>4</sup> vpon.

<sup>5</sup> then.

<sup>6</sup> omitted.

<sup>7-7</sup> it.

<sup>8</sup> glaunced.

the spanyardes where sore afrayed,<sup>1</sup> thynkyng theyr  
 His guards flee, kynge had bene ded<sup>2</sup> / so they fled awaye & lefte him  
 there lyeng on the erth in a traunce, so<sup>3</sup> that he coude  
 and Ide makes him prisoner while he lies in a  
 trance. nother se, nor<sup>4</sup> here, nor speke one word; then the 4  
 damoyzell yde toke hym and delyuered him to two  
 noble lordes of the emperours courte, and when he  
 reuyued he was made to swere and promise to be a trew  
 presoner / those two lordes wente with the kynge 8  
 of spayne into the citey of Rome, and presentyd hym  
 The king is taken before the emperor by two lords.  
 to<sup>5</sup> the emperour fro yde / wherof the emperour thankyd  
 god *that* he sente yde thether to serue hym / then  
 the kyng was set in a strong towre, and yde was 12  
 without<sup>6</sup> doynge maruayles in armes, so that euery man  
 was abasshed therof / <sup>7</sup>so that<sup>7</sup> y<sup>e</sup> spanyardes made  
 hym<sup>8</sup> way / fynally, by y<sup>e</sup> hye prowes of the damoyzell  
 Ide's prowess wins the battle.  
 yde, the kynge of Spayne was taken, and all his 16  
 men dyscomfyted; happy was he that myght scape to  
 saue his lyfe / long endured y<sup>e</sup> chase,<sup>9</sup> wherin many  
 were slayne and taken / then yde and her company  
 retorned to the<sup>10</sup> tentis and pa<sup>11</sup>ulyons, and there they 20  
 founde great ryches, the whiche was broughte out  
 of Spayne / <sup>7</sup>the whiche<sup>7</sup> was geuen and departed<sup>12</sup>  
 to them *that* had deserued it / great ioye was made in  
 the<sup>13</sup> citey of Rome / for the batayle was well sene 24  
 ouer the walles, and speeyally the lady Olyue had well  
 regarded the hye prowessse of yde / wherby she louyd  
 Olive loves Ide for her courage.  
 her so in her hart that she smyled for ioye, and sayde  
 to herselfe, <sup>14</sup>'yonder yonge knyght I do gyue my 28  
 loue / the whiche I neuer before grauntyd to any man  
 leuyng / but it is good ryght and reason that I graunt  
 She had loved none before.  
 my loue to yde' / suche<sup>15</sup> wordes Olyue sayde to  
 herself.

32

<sup>1</sup> abasshed.    <sup>2</sup> slaine.    <sup>3</sup> in such sort.    <sup>4</sup> omitted.<sup>5</sup> vnto.    <sup>6</sup> still.    <sup>7-7</sup> and.    <sup>8</sup> her.<sup>9</sup> the chase *after* endured.    <sup>10</sup> their.<sup>11</sup> Fol. clxxvii. back, col. 2.<sup>12</sup> distributed.<sup>13</sup> noble.<sup>14</sup> to.<sup>15</sup> like.

¶ How y<sup>e</sup> emperoure of Rome receyuid hyely  
 the noble damoyzell yde, and of y<sup>e</sup> honour  
 that was made to<sup>1</sup> her / & how the em-  
 perour made her constable of his empyre /  
 and how the kyng of Spayne was delyuered  
 out of pryson, and made homage to<sup>1</sup> the  
 emperour. Ca. C.lxxviii.

8 **A**fter *that* the bataile was done and  
 fynysshed, and the botye departed<sup>3</sup> /  
 yde with great triumphe, acompanyed  
 with lordes and knyghtes, enteryd  
 12 into y<sup>e</sup> citey of Rome / <sup>4</sup>the emperour  
 was enformed of the comynge of yde  
 and of her valyaunt dedis, by whom the batayle was  
 wonne,<sup>5</sup> and howe that none coude endure agaynst her,  
 16 wherof y<sup>e</sup> emperour had suche ioye at his harte that he  
 wyst not what to do; <sup>4</sup>he thanked our lorde <sup>6</sup>Iesu  
 chryst<sup>6</sup> that the mater wente so to hys honoure and  
 glory / therwith yde came to the palays, wheras she  
 20 was receyued with great ioye with all the coleges of y<sup>e</sup>  
 citey / and when the emperoure sawe her he rose and  
 enbrasyd her, and sayde / ‘my trewe frende yde /  
 of your comyng I am ryght ioyous,<sup>7</sup> for this day ye  
 24 haue done suche honoure to our empyre *that* y<sup>e</sup> ought  
 to be honoured for euer, and bycause ye haue done vs  
 suche seruyce we wyll<sup>8</sup> ye shall be the myrour for  
 al other knyghtes to encorage them to do wel / we  
 28 therefore make you our fyrst chaumberlayne and hye  
 constable of all our empyre Romaine, and all my  
 londes and syngnoryes I abandon to be at your com-  
 maundement in all thynges that ye thynke resonable to  
 32 be done / for I wyll and commaund that all my lordes

The emperor  
 receiues Ide with  
 great joy.

He makes Ide his  
 first chamberlain  
 and high  
 constable.

<sup>1</sup> vnto.    <sup>2</sup> Fol. clxxviii. col. 1.    <sup>3</sup> distributed.  
<sup>4</sup> and.    <sup>5</sup> obtained.    <sup>6-6</sup> god.    <sup>7</sup> ioyfull.    <sup>8</sup> that.

The king of  
Spain is brought  
before the  
emperor.

The emperor  
sentences him  
to death.

The king in  
alarin offers to  
make abject  
submission,  
and implores  
mercy.

do obeye you.' 'Syr,' quod yde, 'of this honour  
I thanke you / god gyue me the grace that I may  
all wayes parseuer to do that thyng that shall be to  
you agreable and profytable to your countres and 4  
syngnoryes' / then the emperour sente for the kyng of  
spayne out of pryson / <sup>1</sup>when he was come he knelyd  
downe and sayde / 'syr, I requyre you haue petye of  
me' / the emperour answered fersly, and sayd / 'kynge 8  
of Spay<sup>2</sup>ne / for what cause are you come out of your  
countre of spayne thus to dystroy and waste myne  
empyre; ye haue slayne many of my lordes and  
knyghtes, who neuer dyd you any dyspleasure; and 12  
besyde *that*, ye haue brente<sup>3</sup> many of my townes, and  
beten downe my castelles, wherof I am sory, seyng  
that nother I nor none of myne dyd you neuer<sup>4</sup> dys-  
pleasure / and bycause that all yll<sup>5</sup> oughte to be 16  
punysshed, and all good dedys rewarded / or<sup>6</sup> euer I  
drynke any wyne I shall cause your hede to be streken  
of, for any mans spekyng to the contrary I shall not  
fayle to do it' / when the kyng harde that he was in 20  
great fere / & prayed humbly <sup>7</sup>that he wold<sup>7</sup> haue  
petye of hym, and sayde how he was redy to make  
amendys of all his trespasses / and to repayre agayne  
al the yll damages done by hym and<sup>8</sup> caused to be 24  
done within the empyre, and therwith to do homage  
and feaulte to<sup>9</sup> hym, and to holde the realme of spayne  
of hym, promysynge also yf any war were made  
agaynst the emperour / he to<sup>10</sup> come and socoure hym 28  
with .xx.M. men at his owne proper costys and dys-  
pence,<sup>11</sup> and to be with hym agaynst all men *that* wolde  
trouble hym / then the emperoure sayde / 'syr<sup>12</sup> kyng of  
Spayne, knowe for trouthe that for all youre promyse 32  
and wordes I wyll do but lytell for it, for ye shall not

<sup>1</sup> and.

<sup>5</sup> euill.

<sup>2</sup> Fol. clxxviii. col. 2.

<sup>6</sup> before.

<sup>10</sup> would.

<sup>7-7</sup> him to.

<sup>11</sup> charges.

<sup>3</sup> burnt.

<sup>8</sup> or.

<sup>12</sup> omitted.

<sup>4</sup> any.

<sup>9</sup> vnto.

- scape<sup>1</sup> me' / then the damoyzell yde stept forth and sayde to the emperoure / 'syr, I haue often tymes hard say that he that humbleth hymselfe and cryethe for  
 4 marcy / reason then<sup>2</sup> requereth *that* he shulde haue marcy graunted hym, and therfore, syr, I requyre you to receyue this kynge to your grace, and pardon his trespas, seyng the offers that he hathe offeryd to do /  
 8 <sup>3</sup>he shal<sup>4</sup> become your lege <sup>5</sup>man, and holde his lond of you / and amende the damages that ye haue suffered / he that reason offereth ought to haue reason / well<sup>6</sup> ye ought to thanke god syn suche a man as he is puttethe  
 12 hymselfe into your handes' / when the emperoure vnderstode yde, he sayde / 'frende yde, your wytte and courtoysye is to be alowed / and by cause I knowe that the counseall that ye gyue me is resonable, I wyl  
 16 do as ye wyl haue me / take<sup>7</sup> him, and by you he shall be delyuered' / 'syr,' *quod* yde, 'I thank you' / when the kyng of spayn sawe that he shuld haue grace, and that with a mendis makyng he shuld be quyte de-  
 20 lyuered, he thankyd god / & dyd homage to the Emperoure, and delyuered hym<sup>8</sup> plegys suffycient<sup>9</sup> to make restytucyon as he had promysyd / then the emperour gaue hym a sauecoundyte tyl<sup>10</sup> he <sup>11</sup>was re- and is liberated.  
 24 tourned<sup>11</sup> into his owne countre, & all the other presoners were delyuered, such as were taken in the batayle by the Romayns / then the kynge of Spayne was ioyfull, and oftentimes thankyd the damoyzell yde by whose  
 28 meanes *that*<sup>12</sup> bounte and courtoysye was shewed hym / then he toke<sup>13</sup> leue of the emperour and of yde, and of all other lordes and knyghtes *that* were there present / and so he retourned into his countre of Spayne / where  
 32 as he was receyued with sore wepynges for y<sup>e</sup> great

Idc pleads for his life with the emperor.

The emperor agrees to spare the king's life.

He does homage to the emperor,

and is liberated.

He thanks Ide many times.

<sup>1</sup> from.      <sup>2</sup> then *before* reason.      <sup>3</sup> that.      <sup>4</sup> will.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. clxxviii. back, col. 1.      <sup>6</sup> and.      <sup>7</sup> you.

<sup>8</sup> omitted.      <sup>9</sup> sufficient *before* pledges.      <sup>10</sup> vntill.

<sup>11-11</sup> came.      <sup>12</sup> this.      <sup>13</sup> his.



losse that they<sup>1</sup> had receyued. Now we shall leue  
spékynge of hym and retourne to our mater.

¶ Howe the emperoure gaue his doughter  
Olyue in maryage to the damoyssel yde / 4  
knowynge none other but that she had  
bene a man, <sup>2</sup>and howe she was apeched  
by a verlette, that harde theyr deuyses  
whyles they were a<sup>3</sup>bed together, wherby 8  
the emperour wold haue brent<sup>4</sup> the damoy-  
ssel yde. Ca. C.lxxix.



Ide does the  
emperour much  
service;

she settles all the  
disputes of his  
lords.

Olive falls more  
deeply in love  
with her.

After that the kynge of Spayne was  
departed fro Rome, the emperour 12  
honoryd and praysed moch yde for  
y<sup>e</sup> good seruyce *that* she had done /  
who euer better & better parseuered  
in good seruyce doynge, for she dyd 16  
so moche by her wyt that all dyscordes and debates  
that were in the empyre betwene lordes or neybour, she set them in peas and acorde, wherfore the emperour  
louyd her in such wyse that without her he dyd 20  
nothyng / and the emperours doughter Olyue loued  
her in suche wyse that she coude not lyue one day  
without y<sup>e</sup> syght of her, she was so taken with loue,  
thynkyng that she neuer sawe so goodlye a <sup>5</sup>yonge 24  
man / and so on a day the emperour assemblid his  
lordes and his preuy counsayle / to whome he shewed  
and sayde that he had but one doughter, the which as  
then was of lawful age / wherfore he wolde that she 28  
shulde be maryed, to the entente *that* she myght haue  
hayes to enioye his londes after his dyscese / & sayd,  
'syrs, I thynke yf all y<sup>e</sup> world shuld be serchyd there

<sup>1</sup> he.

<sup>2</sup> Fol. clxxviii. back, col. 2.

<sup>3</sup> in.

<sup>4</sup> burnt.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. clxxix. col. 1.

coude not be founde a man so worthy to haue my  
doughter Olyue in maryage as our welbeloued constable,  
the valyaunt yde, by whom so noble seruyce hath bene  
4 done to vs and to our hole empyre / for I wolde or<sup>1</sup> I  
dye that she shulde be maryed / and I thynke I can  
not better bestow her / for in al the worlde there is not  
a more valyaunt knyght then yde is, nor that is better<sup>2</sup>  
8 worthy to gouerne an empyre or a great realme' / when  
the lordes vnderstode y<sup>e</sup> emperoure / they al allowed his  
mynde, and counsailed hym to do the same; then the  
good emperoure called to hym yde, and sayd, 'My dere  
12 <sup>3</sup>and cordyall<sup>3</sup> frende, for y<sup>e</sup> great seruyce that ye haue  
done / I wyll rewarde you as by reason I am bound to  
do, and I can not gyue you a more rycher thinge, nor  
that I loue better, then Olyue my dere doughter /  
16 whom I wyll gyue you in maryage, and I wyll that ye  
take her to your wyfe, to the entente that after my  
dayes ye maye gouerne myne empyre / for nowe I fele  
my selfe agyd and feble / wherfore I shal be content  
20 that fro hensforthe ye haue the gouernynge therof / and  
now I delyuer to you my londe in kepynge to gouerne  
it as your owne' / 'A, sir,' quod yde, 'what is that  
ye saye / ye knowe well I am but a poore gentylman  
24 banysshed out of my countre / and<sup>4</sup> am worthe noth-  
ynge / great <sup>5</sup>damage it shulde be so noble a damoyzell  
to be assyngned to <sup>6</sup>so poore a<sup>6</sup> man as I am / syr, I cry  
you marcy, humbly requyrynge you to take aduyce that  
28 your doughter, who is so fayre, maye be maryed to  
some hye prynee and pusaunte, to the entent that yf ye  
shulde haue any busynes that he myght be of power to  
ayd and to socour you / <sup>7</sup>I am poore, & ought alwayes  
32 to trauayle and to take payne to get honour for me, and  
to encrease my lynage' / 'what,' quod y<sup>e</sup> emperour, 'are  
you so hardy<sup>8</sup> to refuse my doughter, by whom great

The emperor  
declares that he  
can bestow her  
nowhere so well  
as on Ide,  
his valiant  
constable.

The emperor  
informs Ide of  
his purpose.

Ide deprecates  
the notion of  
marriage with  
Olive;  
she is a poor  
gentleman  
banished out of  
her own countrey,  
unworthy of  
such honour.

The emperor is  
wrathful at his  
officer's rejection

<sup>1</sup> before.<sup>2</sup> more.<sup>3-3</sup> omitted.<sup>4</sup> I.<sup>5</sup> Fol. clxxix. col. 2.<sup>6-6</sup> such a poore.<sup>7</sup> for.<sup>8</sup> as.

of his daughter's  
hand;

and Ide in fear  
yields to his will.

The emperor  
reveals the matter  
to Olive.

She is very  
joyful;

she desires to be  
married quickly.

welth and goodnes maye come to you' / 'syr,' quod  
yde, 'syn it is so that it plesse you to shewe me this  
honoure I wyll not refuse it / but, syr, I saye it to the  
entente *that* ye shulde take good aduyce therin / & syn<sup>1</sup> 4  
ye be<sup>2</sup> content that I shulde thus do, and that it is your  
pleasure, I am content, and<sup>3</sup> humbly thanke your grace  
of the honour that ye bere me' / then the emperour  
sente for his doughter, who cam to<sup>4</sup> hym with a glad 8  
hart, for she had ben aduerteysed of the mater why that  
her father sent for her / <sup>5</sup>then the emperoure sayd,  
'doughter, ye muste promyse me to do as I shall shewe  
you' / 'syr,'<sup>6</sup> quod she, 'it is not in me, nor I wyll 12  
not refuse any thyng that is your pleasure' / 'doughter,'  
quod the emperoure, 'ye do well so to answeere me / &  
bycause I haue no mo but you that ought to haue my  
realme after me, therfore I wyll ye take a husbonde, to 16  
the entent that your lordes and syngnoryes maye  
be defended by hym, & therfore I wyl<sup>7</sup> ye take to your  
husband our capetayne, the valyaunte yde, whome  
I loue enterely / this is my pleasure and agremente of 20  
all my lordes / yf it be your pleasure to haue hym, he  
shall be kynge and you quene after my disces.' 'syr,'  
quod <sup>8</sup>the lady, 'I am redy to fulfyll your wyll,<sup>9</sup> and  
to obeye your commaundementes, and I thanke god of 24  
this fayre aduenture that is fallen to me this day / for  
I shall haue hym that I <sup>10</sup>haue loued<sup>10</sup> beste; I haue  
not now lost my tyme, when I shall haue at my wyl  
hym whom I <sup>11</sup>most desyre in<sup>11</sup> the worlde' / <sup>12</sup>she 28  
knelyd downe before her father & thankyd hym of his  
gyfte / <sup>5</sup>then she rose and kyste her father, and sayde,  
'ryght dere father, I requyre you haste<sup>13</sup> that this be  
done; let us go to the church to be wedded, for me 32

<sup>1</sup> seeing.

<sup>2</sup> are.

<sup>3</sup> I.

<sup>4</sup> vnto.

<sup>5</sup> and.

<sup>6</sup> Deere father.

<sup>7</sup> that.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. clxxix. back, col. 1.

<sup>9</sup> pleasure.

<sup>10-10</sup> loue.

<sup>11-11</sup> loue best in all.

<sup>12</sup> then.

<sup>13</sup> to hasten.

thynke we ought so to do ;' when the lordes hard the  
 lady they laughed at her haste / <sup>1</sup> then the emperour  
 said, 'doughter, come forth and fyaunze your hus-  
 4 bond, and you, yde, aproche nere ; and nowe, after my  
 dethe, I gyue you all <sup>2</sup> my realme, <sup>2</sup> and I gyue you my  
 dere doughter in recompence of the good seruyce that  
 ye haue done me' / when yde vnderstode the emperour /  
 8 all her blode chaunged, she wyste not what to do, all  
 her body trymbelid ; for fere she callyd vpon our lorde  
 god ryght petuously to herselfe, and prayed god <sup>3</sup> to  
 haue petye of her, and to counsayle her what was best  
 12 for her to do / for she sawe that parforce the emperoure  
 wold mary her to his doughter, and sayde, 'a, my  
 father Florence, by you and by your dyshordynat  
 rage I am nowe brought to this case, when ye made me  
 16 to departe by case ye wolde haue had me to your wyfe,  
 but or <sup>4</sup> I wold haue consentyd therto I had rather <sup>5</sup>  
 haue bene brent <sup>6</sup> / therfore I fled awaye to eschewe that  
 shame, wherby I haue bene syn in many paretles / for <sup>7</sup>  
 20 the which, by the wyll of god, I haue scapyd, wherof I  
 ought to thanke hym / and I thought to kepe my selfe  
 with in Rome secrete, and that no man shulde know  
*that* <sup>8</sup> I am a woman, but I shall be acusyde by the  
 24 emperours doughter, whose loue is so sore <sup>9</sup> set on me  
 that I haue no powre to escape without I stele preuely  
 away fro them all ; and yf I shewe them what I am, I  
 maye then sone haue some vclany and <sup>10</sup> accuse me and  
 28 send me to <sup>10</sup> y<sup>e</sup> kyng my father, or els to send hym  
 word where I am, and then in great haste he shall <sup>11</sup>  
 sende for me / or elles, yf I wyll scape, I must fle awaye  
 ouer the see / howbeit, I speke but lyke a fole / syn <sup>12</sup>  
 32 this fortune is fallen to <sup>13</sup> me to haue y<sup>e</sup> emperours

The emperor  
 promises to  
 bequeath his  
 kingdom to his  
 daughter and son-  
 in-law.

Ide is sorely  
 troubled,  
 and prays to  
 heaven for aid.

She curses her  
 father's wicked-  
 ness.

She fears that  
 when her disguise  
 is discovered she  
 will be sent back  
 to Florence her  
 father.

<sup>1</sup> and.      <sup>2-2</sup> mine Empire.      <sup>3</sup> him.      <sup>4</sup> before.  
<sup>5</sup> to.      <sup>6</sup> burnt.      <sup>7</sup> from.      <sup>8</sup> Fol. clxxix. back, col. 2.  
<sup>9</sup> much.      <sup>10-10</sup> bee accused and sent vnto.      <sup>11</sup> will.  
<sup>12</sup> seeing.      <sup>13</sup> vnto.

Ide and Olive  
are formally  
affianced.

They are soon  
afterwards  
married.

A great feast  
follows.

Olive and Ide go  
to the wedding  
chamber;

but Ide main-  
tains her disguise.

doughter in maryage and his realme<sup>1</sup> / I shall wed  
her & do as god wyl gyue me grace to do' / All this the  
damoyzell yde spoke to herselfe. Then she sayde to  
the emperour / 'syr, syn it is your pleasure to geue me 4  
your doughter in maryage, I am redy to take her.'  
Then they were led to the mynster churche / and there  
they were fyaunced, wherof great ioie was made in  
rome / then the day of maryage came / then<sup>2</sup> the fayre 8  
Olyue was led to the churche betwene .ii. kynges / and  
yde went afore all<sup>3</sup> sadly / and so <sup>4</sup>they<sup>4</sup> cam to the  
church, and there<sup>5</sup> were wedded. Then great was the  
trumphe and ioie <sup>4</sup>that was<sup>4</sup> in the citeye of Rome; 12  
many a ryche garment of golde and sylke was worne  
that daye / <sup>2</sup>euery man ran to se the new brydes / then  
they went to the palays, and so to dyner. Of the  
festes and<sup>4</sup> sportes and ryche metys that was<sup>6</sup> there 16  
that day, yf I shulde shew it the tyme shulde be ouer  
longe to reherse yt / but syn Rome was fyrste founded  
yt was not knowen that ther had ben such a fest as this  
maryage<sup>7</sup> / for no man<sup>8</sup> thought but that yde had ben 20  
a man / and after supper, <sup>9</sup>and that<sup>9</sup> it was tyme to go  
to rest / the brydes were brought in to ther chaumber /  
then the lady <sup>10</sup>Olyue went to her bedde / than came  
yde and the chambre auoyded / <sup>11</sup>than yde<sup>11</sup> locked fast 24  
the dore, to the entent that none shulde here them /  
than he<sup>12</sup> cam to the<sup>4</sup> bed, and layde hym<sup>13</sup> downe on  
the bed syde / & said to Olyue / 'my ryght swete loue,  
god gyue you good nyght / for as for me, I can gyue 28  
you no good / for<sup>14</sup> I fele suche a dissease, the which  
greueth me sore' / and therwith she kyst Olyue, who  
answered and said / 'my swete louer, ye ar the thing  
in the worlde that I moost desyre / for the bounte and 32

<sup>1</sup> Empire.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> verie.      <sup>4</sup> omitted.      <sup>5</sup> they.

<sup>6</sup> were.      <sup>7</sup> wedding.      <sup>8</sup> bodie.      <sup>9-9</sup> when.

<sup>10</sup> Fol. clxxx. col. 1.      <sup>11-11</sup> and shee.      <sup>12</sup> shee.

<sup>13</sup> her.      <sup>14</sup> because.



swetnes that I know in you, ye<sup>1</sup> do with me as it shall  
 please you / & to the entent that ye shall not thynke  
 that I haue so great desyre that ye shulde do y<sup>e</sup> thyng,  
 4 the whiche of right ought to be done bytwene man and  
 woman<sup>2</sup> / I am content to forbere it this<sup>3</sup> .xv. daies /  
 & bycause that dyuers folkes are here aboute to herken<sup>4</sup>  
 vs / I am contente to gyue you trewes / for we shall  
 8 haue space ynoughe hereafter to sporte vs / for<sup>5</sup> I  
 knowe such noblenes in you that I am sure ye wyll  
 take none other wyfe / nor touche none other / but that  
 ye wyll kepe your fayth & trouth to me / for I am  
 2 chast, & so ye shall fynde me / it suffyseth me to  
 clyppe and<sup>3</sup> kysse you / and as for y<sup>e</sup> preuy loue, I am  
 content for this tyme, syn it is your pleasure, to forbere  
 it.' Than yde answered / 'fayre lady, I wyll not refuse  
 16 youre wyll.' thus they passed that nyght with clyp-  
 pyng and kyssyng. Than in the mornynge they  
 arose and made them redy, & cam in to the palais /  
 themperour beheld Oliue his doughter / to se if she  
 20 were any thinge chaunged<sup>3</sup> or altered<sup>3</sup> / and said,  
 'doughter / how is it with your husbond?' 'Syr,'  
 quod she, 'euy as I desyre / for I loue yde my hus-  
 bonde better than I doo<sup>6</sup> you / all though ye be<sup>7</sup> my  
 24 father' / at that<sup>8</sup> worde the emperoure and all his  
 lordes laughed / so great ioy and feast<sup>9</sup> was ther made,  
 10 the whiche<sup>10</sup> endured eyght dayes. Than every man  
 toke leaue and wente whyther as they list / than<sup>5</sup> after  
 28 the fyftene daies were past<sup>11</sup> that yde had lyen with  
 Oliue / yde touched her not but with<sup>3</sup> clippynge and<sup>3</sup>  
 kyssyng / wherof Oliue was sorowfull, and said to  
 herselfe, 'O, good lorde, I was engendred in an euyll  
 32 hour when I haue married the goodlyest person of the  
 worlde / and the moost worthyest and hardiest that

The wedding  
 festivities  
 continue for  
 eight days.

<sup>1</sup> then.

<sup>2</sup> wife.

<sup>3</sup> omitted.

<sup>4</sup> heare.

<sup>5</sup> and.

<sup>6</sup> loue.

<sup>7</sup> are.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. clxxx. col. 2.

<sup>9</sup> feasting.

<sup>10-10</sup> that it.

<sup>11</sup> expired.

He is forced to  
reveal the truth  
to Olive,

who declares that  
she will keep the  
secret.

A page overhears  
Ide's confession,

and bears news  
of it to the  
emperor.

euer was gyrd<sup>1</sup> with swerde and<sup>2</sup> rode on hors /  
he maketh noo<sup>3</sup> maner of<sup>3</sup> semblaunce to do that  
thyng<sup>4</sup> that I so sore haue desyred / than she drew  
nere to yde and touched him<sup>5</sup> / than yde, who knewe<sup>4</sup>  
<sup>3</sup> ryght<sup>3</sup> well what her desyre was / he<sup>3</sup> turned<sup>6</sup> to  
herward<sup>6</sup> and wolde hyde himselfe no lenger fro her /  
but all wepyng<sup>7</sup> cryed her mercy, and shewed her fro  
the begynnynge to the endynge the maner of all her<sup>8</sup>  
aduenture / and how that she was a woman and was  
fledde awaye bycause her father wolde haue married her  
himselve. And whan Oliue vnderstode yde / she was  
right sorowfull / howbeit, she comforted yde, and said /<sup>12</sup>  
' my right swete loue, discomforte not yourselfe / for ye  
shall not be<sup>7</sup> bewrayed for<sup>7</sup> me nother to no man nor  
woman lyuyng<sup>8</sup> / we are wedded togyther, <sup>8</sup>I wyll  
be good and trewe to you syn ye haue kept youre selfe<sup>16</sup>  
so trewly / with you I wyll vse my tyme and passe my  
destany syn it is thus, for I se wel it is the pleasure of  
our lord godde.' Thus as Olyue and yde were deuy-  
synge togyther of their secretes / a page, beyng<sup>9</sup> in a<sup>20</sup>  
chaumbre that ioyned<sup>9</sup> fast vnto<sup>9</sup> their chaumbre,  
herde well all their secrete wordes and communycacion  
what eche of them had sayd vnto<sup>10</sup> y<sup>e</sup> other, <sup>11</sup>than he in  
all hast went to the emperour and shewed hym all that<sup>24</sup>  
he had herde betwene y<sup>e</sup> two louers / whan themperour  
herde that he was ryght sorowfull, and saide, 'felowe,  
beware what thou sayest / looke that thy reporte be  
trewe / for yf I fynde it contrary thou shalt dye of<sup>3</sup><sup>28</sup>  
an yll deth' / 'syr,'<sup>3</sup> quod he<sup>3</sup> / 'if it be not as I haue  
sayd, and that yde be not a woman, whom ye take for  
a man, stryke of my head.' Than themperour made  
hym to be taken & kept, to the entent to proue the<sup>32</sup>  
trouthe / for he thought the matter straunge to byleue /

<sup>1</sup> a.      <sup>2</sup> or.      <sup>3-3</sup> omitted.      <sup>4</sup> which.      <sup>5</sup> her.  
<sup>6-6</sup> toward her.      <sup>7-7</sup> accused by.      <sup>8</sup> and.  
<sup>9-9</sup> close to.      <sup>10</sup> to.      <sup>11</sup> Fol. clxxx, back. col. 1.

- than he called to hym the lordes of his preuy counsell /  
 and he shewed them the mater / whearof they had  
 great<sup>1</sup> marueyle, seynge the great vertue / and hye  
 4 prowes that was in yde / <sup>2</sup>they greatly complayned<sup>3</sup> the  
 mater, and were sorowfull / than the emperour, who was  
 right pensyfe, sware and made promyse / that if he  
 found the mater in *that* case / he wolde cause both his  
 8 doughter and yde to be brent,<sup>4</sup> bycause of hydyng  
 of that straunge cas, and sayd, 'if yde had dyscouered  
 the matter to me be tymes / my doughter sholde neuer  
 haue wedded<sup>5</sup> her, and the matter<sup>6</sup> kepte close fro me /  
 12 I shal neuer haue ioy at my herte tyll<sup>7</sup> I knowe the  
 trouth' / than he commaunded a bayne<sup>8</sup> to be made  
 redy in his owne chambre, whearin he wolde haue yde  
 to be bayned,<sup>9</sup> to the entent that he myght know the  
 16 trouth or<sup>10</sup> she scaped away, for he sayd he wold not  
 suffre suche boggery<sup>11</sup> to be vsed / the baynge<sup>12</sup> was  
 made redy, and yde was sent for / who knewe no-  
 thyng of that matter / than themperour sayd to him,<sup>13</sup>  
 20 'yde, do of your clothes, for ye shal bayne<sup>8</sup> you with  
 me' / whan yde herd the emperour, she was sore  
 abashed, and sayd, 'Syr, I pray you forbere it for this  
 time, for<sup>14</sup> I haue not ben accustomed to be <sup>15</sup>bayned.'<sup>9</sup>  
 24 Than the emperoure sayde / 'I wyll not bere<sup>16</sup> it / for I  
 wyll se you naked / for yf I fynde it trewe that<sup>17</sup> hathe  
 ben shewed me / bothe you and my doughter shall be  
 brent.'<sup>4</sup> Whan yde herd that she sawe well she was  
 28 betrayed and loste / than she kneled downe before the  
 emperour and cryed hym mercy / and requyred hym to  
 haue pyte of her / than<sup>2</sup> the emperour in great hast  
 sent for his lordes, who were in the hall / talkyng  
 32 together, & were sorowfull for yde, whom they loued

The emperor  
calls his lords  
together,  
and asks their  
advice.

He swears that if  
Ide be a woman,  
she and Olive  
shall be burnt.

A bath is set out  
in his own  
chamber,

and the emperor  
bids Ide enter it  
in his presence.

Ide protests,  
and falls weeping  
at his knees.

<sup>1</sup> much.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> of.      <sup>4</sup> burnt.      <sup>5</sup> married.  
<sup>6</sup> now.      <sup>7</sup> vntill.      <sup>8</sup> bath.      <sup>9</sup> bathed.      <sup>10</sup> before.  
<sup>11</sup> falsehood.      <sup>12</sup> bathing.      <sup>13</sup> her.      <sup>14</sup> because.  
<sup>15</sup> Fol. clxxx. back, col. 2.      <sup>16</sup> forbere.

<sup>17</sup> which.

The Emperor  
will have no  
mercy on her,

and the fire is  
prepared to burn  
her.

Ide prays to the  
Virgin.

entyrely / so they cam to y<sup>e</sup> emperour, and founde yde  
before hym on her knees sore wepyng / so<sup>1</sup> that for pety  
of her they wept all / than themperour shewed them  
all the dede / whearfore he<sup>2</sup> must nedes se Iustyce to 4  
be done vpon yde / who than by the peers & lordes  
of Rome was iudged to be brent.<sup>3</sup> Than it was  
commaunded the fyre to be made redy to bryn<sup>4</sup> her, the  
whiche was done / and yde before the emperour abyd- 8  
ynge her iudgment, with her handes ioyned lyft vp  
towards the heuen / makynge pyteous<sup>5</sup> praiers to our  
lorde god and to the<sup>6</sup> vyrgyn Mary his moder,<sup>6</sup> praienge  
them to haue pety of her soule, and to receyue it in to 12  
the holy paradyse / for she saw wel y<sup>e</sup> ende<sup>7</sup> was come<sup>7</sup>  
of her lyfe.

¶ Howe oure lorde god made great myracles  
for yde / for god made hym<sup>8</sup> to chaunge 16  
from the nature of a woman and to become  
a parfite man / whearof the emperour & his  
doughter Oliue<sup>9</sup> had great ioy / and so yde  
and olyue lay togyther and engendered a 20  
fayre sonne named after Croysant. And of  
the deth of the emperoure. Ca. C[1].xxx.

A marvellous  
voice from heaven  
is heard while Ide  
is praying.

It bids the  
emperor do Ide  
no hurt.

The same houre that yde was in her prayers /  
sodenly there appered in the chambre a great clere 24  
light / and therwith a meruelous swete odoure / that it  
semed all y<sup>e</sup> chambre to be full of ensence and spyces  
aromatyke / then anone<sup>10</sup> after they herd an angelyke  
voyce sent from oure lorde god & sayd / 'thou em- 28  
perour of Rome, oure lorde god commaundeth the by  
me / that thou be not so hardye<sup>11</sup> to touche yde to  
do her any hurte / for oure lorde god hath done her y<sup>e</sup>

<sup>1</sup> in such sort.    <sup>2</sup> ye.    <sup>3</sup> burnt.    <sup>4</sup> burn.  
<sup>5</sup> pitifull.    <sup>6-6</sup> hooly ghost.    <sup>7-7</sup> after lyfe.    <sup>8</sup> her.  
<sup>9</sup> Fol. clxxxi. col. 1.    <sup>10</sup> presently.    <sup>11</sup> as.

grace for the goodnes *that* is in her / he doth consent  
 and wyll by his dyuyne puyssaunce / that she be  
 chaunged in nature, and<sup>1</sup> become a parfeyght man as all  
 4 other be with out any difference / & also god com-  
 maundeth that the page whom thou hast in pryson that  
 thou<sup>2</sup> let hym go quyt<sup>2</sup> / for that<sup>3</sup> he sheweth the was  
 of troughe / this mornyng yde was a woman, and<sup>4</sup> now  
 8 he<sup>5</sup> is a man / Also god commaundeth the to make  
 thyself redye, for *thou* shalt lyue here in this world but  
 .viii. dayes longer / therfor fro henceforth let yde and  
 Olyue thy doughter haue gouernynge of thy realme,<sup>6</sup>  
 12 who or<sup>7</sup> this yere be passed shall haue betwene them a  
 sonne who shal be named Croisant, who shall do mer-  
 uelles whan he cometh to age. many aduentures and  
 pouertyes he shall suffer in his youth, but afterward he  
 16 shall haue ioy and welth ynough' / & with those  
 wordes the angell wanysshed away / and left them-  
 perour and his lordes and al the people of Rome in  
 great ioy for y<sup>e</sup> euident<sup>8</sup> myracle that our lord god had  
 20 sent by the prayer of yde / who and<sup>9</sup> Olyue his wyfe  
 had great ioy and thanked our lord<sup>10</sup> Iesu Chryst<sup>10</sup> /  
 than the feest and tryumphe began agayne at Rome.  
 the<sup>11</sup> day past and the nyght came, and yde and Olyue  
 24 went to bed togyther, and toke there sport in suche  
 wyse that the same nyght was gotten & engenderyd  
 the fayre Croysant, whearby y<sup>e</sup> ioy dobled in the cite of  
 Rome / the next daye yde came to the palayes with  
 28 other lordes. And themperour was in his chambre  
 makynge of his testament / for he had not forgotten the  
 wordes of the aungell. so he lyued .viii. dayes longer,  
 and on the .ix. day he dyed / and he was borne into  
 32 the great churche of saynt Peter, wheare his absequy  
 was done solemply, and layde in his tombe, the whiche

Her sex is to be changed.

The emperor will die within eight days.

All the words come true.

The emperor dies, and is buried in St. Peter's church.

<sup>1</sup> to.

<sup>2-2</sup> settest him at libertie.

<sup>3</sup> which.

<sup>4</sup> but.

<sup>5</sup> she.

<sup>6</sup> Empire.

<sup>7</sup> before.

<sup>8</sup> Fol. clxxxi. col. 2.

<sup>9</sup> with.

<sup>10-10</sup> god.

<sup>11</sup> that.



was ordeyned for hym as it apartayned. his sone in law and his doughter morned accordynge to the custome than vsed / and<sup>1</sup> after .viii. dayes was<sup>2</sup> passed all the noble lordes of the cuntrye came to the courte and 4 crowned yde emperoure & Olyue his wyfe empresse / greate<sup>3</sup> feest and ioy<sup>3</sup> was made at theyr coronacion. And whan Olyue thempresse approched her time / she was delyuered of a fayre sonne / and whan he was 8 cristened he was named Croysant / that is to say, growyng, because the mone the same tyme was Increasyng / of the chere that yde and his lordes made at the byrth of this chyde nede not to be rehersed / for ye may well 12 thynke it was as great as euer was any done before / than the tyme came that thempresse was chyrched, wherof gret ioy was made. this chylde was well norysshed,<sup>4</sup> two notable ladyes had the kepyng of hym 16<sup>5</sup> tyll<sup>5</sup> .vii. yeres<sup>6</sup> were past<sup>6</sup> / then a noble knyght and an aunseant was set aboute hym, and a wyse and a great clerke to teche hym co<sup>7</sup>nyng, for comonly it is said that a kyng without letter<sup>8</sup> or conyng is compared 20 to an asse crowned / often tymes the father & the mother wolde visytte theyr chylde / he was kept to scole tyll<sup>9</sup> he was .xv. yeres of age, and he was so good a clerke that ther was none in the cite of Rome / but 24 that he coude well dispute with hym and assayle his questions / yf his beawte / greatnes / force / humylyte / and good vertues whearwith he was indewed / yf I shulde discriue / <sup>10</sup>or report<sup>10</sup> them it shulde<sup>11</sup> be ouer 28 longe to rehearse / whearof yde and his mother olyue hadde such ioye that they wyst not what to do, but alonely to thanke god of his grace / for this<sup>12</sup> chylde grew so in bygnes and strength that euery man was 32 therof abasshed in such wyse that at that tyme there

Olive is delivered  
of a fair son,

who is named  
Croissant.

He is carefully  
trained in youth.

He is kept at  
school till he is  
fifteen.

<sup>1</sup> then.      <sup>2</sup> were.      <sup>3-3</sup> ioy and feasting.      <sup>4</sup> and.

<sup>5-5</sup> vntill he was.      <sup>6-6</sup> of age.

<sup>7</sup> Fol. clxxxi. back, col. 1.      <sup>8</sup> learning.      <sup>9</sup> vntill.

<sup>10-10</sup> omitted.      <sup>11</sup> would.      <sup>12</sup> their.

coude not be founde in y<sup>e</sup> cite of Rome of his age none  
 so great / nor so <sup>1</sup>bygge of strength<sup>1</sup> / whearof his father  
 & his mother and all the noble lordes & knyghtes were  
 4 ryght ioyfull.

His strength  
 excels that of  
 other men.

¶ Howe Kyng Florence sent two knyghtes to  
 Rome to themperour his sonne, desiringe  
 hym to come and se him, & to leue thempyre  
 8 of Rome to his son croisant / & to set noble  
 men aboute him to gyde him / and also<sup>2</sup>  
 bringe with him thempresse / the faire  
 Oliue.

## Capitulo .Clxxxi.

12 He emperour and thempresse, seynge  
 theyr sonne to growe & amende euery  
 day in all good warkes, they thanked  
 god, prayenge hym to gyue hym the  
 16 grace from bet<sup>3</sup>ter to better to par-  
 seyuer / so it fell that on a witsonday



themperour and thempresse helde estate royall at there  
 palayes for y<sup>e</sup> solempnyte of that day<sup>4</sup> / there was many  
 20 diuers<sup>5</sup> kynges / barons / dukes / erles / duchesses and  
 ladyes / & whyles they were in the myddes of theyr  
 dynere / there arryued two notable aunciaunt knyghtes /  
 4whan they were entered into the palayes they came

Messengers from  
 King Florence  
 come to Ide.

24 before themperour & kneled downe and sayd / 'god  
 that hath vs created saue & kepe the noble kyng  
 Florence of Aragon and of Nauerne and duke of Bur-  
 deaux / and the same god saue y<sup>e</sup> ryght noble and ryght  
 28 excellent emperour <sup>6</sup>Romayne, her<sup>6</sup> dere sonne, and his  
 fayre doughter thempresse Olyue' / whan themperour  
 yde herd spekyng of his father / he was feerfull in his  
 hert bycause of y<sup>e</sup> shamfull thyng not faysable<sup>7</sup> the  
 32 whiche he wolde haue done agaynst hym / ryght in-

<sup>1-1</sup> hie of stature.

<sup>2</sup> to.

<sup>3</sup> Fol. clxxxi. back, col. 2.

<sup>4</sup> and.

<sup>5</sup> omitted.

<sup>6-6</sup> of Rome his.

<sup>7</sup> faileable.

He inquires after  
his father.

The messengers  
tell of Florence's  
wrath because of  
Ide's flight,

as if how he fell  
ill,

tentiuely he behelde the two knyghtes, and demaunded  
howe the kynge his father dyd / euer syn he departed  
from hym / than one of the knyghtes answered and  
sayd / 'ryght dere syr, yf the doloure / the<sup>1</sup> displeasure / 4  
& the great rage whearin your father was for your de-  
partyng / if I shulde shewe it / ouer<sup>2</sup> longe it shulde  
be to reherse / but shortly I shall shew you the sub-  
staunce of the matter / the same mornynge after your 8  
departure<sup>3</sup> tydynges was brought to the kyng your  
father how that the kynge of Nauern, your vncl, was  
come to se hym. than your father went and met hym,  
and brought hym in to the cite of courtoyse with great 12  
ioye & myrth / than<sup>4</sup> they alyghted at y<sup>e</sup> palayes, and  
there tydynges was brought to the kinge your father  
how ye were fled away, whearby suche sorow and  
doloure & displeasure toke hym at the herte / that there 16  
was none that durst loke hym in the face / <sup>5</sup>for he  
loked lyke a speryt for<sup>6</sup> the folysse loue that he had  
on you / he ranne about in the palayes as a disparate  
man / so that for fere of hym there was nother ladye 20  
nor damesell that durst abyde hym for the great furour<sup>7</sup>  
and displeasure that he was in / so that by reason  
of his great yre he fell in a greuowse malady, whearin  
he thought <sup>8</sup>to<sup>8</sup> haue dyed / and so was confessed 24  
& made hym redy to receyue the holy <sup>9</sup>sacrament<sup>9</sup> /  
than the kynge of Nauerne, & Sorbare, and dyuers other  
prynces came too vysyt hym, and desyred hym to put  
that folye out of his mynde and to crey<sup>10</sup> god<sup>11</sup> mercy / 28  
many notable clerkes<sup>12</sup> were there / and they shewed  
hym many good reasons and ensamples, and sayde  
without he wolde leue and forsake his folye he shulde  
be dampned<sup>13</sup> bodye and soule / <sup>4</sup>when the king your 32

<sup>1</sup> omitted.

<sup>2</sup> too.

<sup>3</sup> departing.

<sup>4</sup> and.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. clxxxii. col. 1.

<sup>6</sup> because.

<sup>7</sup> furie.

<sup>8-8</sup> that he should.

<sup>9-9</sup> ghost.

<sup>10</sup> to.

<sup>11</sup> for.

<sup>12</sup> doctors.

<sup>13</sup> condemned.

father saw hym selfe in that doubte, knowynge that he  
 had done yll to cause you to fle away / and that no  
 tydynges coude be herde of you / suche a contrisyon  
 4 and a repentaunce toke hym that greate haboundaunce  
 of droppes fell frome his eyen / so<sup>1</sup> that all his face was  
 wet / and he had <sup>2</sup>so great<sup>2</sup> doloure and contrisyon<sup>3</sup> in  
 hymselfe that euery man that sawe hym wepte for  
 8 petye / and the kynge of Nauern had so great petye of  
 hym that he was so sorowfull that a greuous syknes  
 toke him, so that the fourth daye he dyed, wherof y<sup>e</sup>  
 kynge your father was ryght sorowfull / at last his  
 12 syknes determyned, and<sup>4</sup> was recoured and in good  
 helth a certeyne space / but by reason of the dolour  
 that he had for you he coude not be ceased / <sup>5</sup>he fel  
 agayne sore syke, and so he contynueth, and hathe no  
 16 power to ayde nor<sup>6</sup> releue hymselfe / but he eteth and  
 drynketh ynough. And after nowe of late it hathe ben  
 shewed hym / all your lyfe, and how by y<sup>e</sup> grace of  
 7 our lord<sup>7</sup> <sup>8</sup>god it is fallen to you / whearby suche ioye  
 20 is come to his herte that there was neuer suche ioye  
 before<sup>7</sup> in no mans herte, and yet he sayth that he shall  
 neuer haue parfeyght ioye at his herte tyll<sup>9</sup> he may se  
 you / and therfore he hath sent vs heder to you / and  
 24 he desyreth and commaundethe as moche as the father  
 can commaund his chylde / that both you and them-  
 presse your wyfe leue this your countrie in y<sup>e</sup> gydynge  
 of your sonne, and to leue notable persons aboute hym  
 28 to kepe and to conducte hym ; for it shalbe to you more  
 profeyghtable & better to vse your lyfe in pease in the  
 realmes of Aragon and Nauerne with the duchye of  
 Burdeaux / the whiche to you parteyneth by iust en-  
 32 heritaunce / and he hathe gyuen vs in charge not too  
 departe hense tyll<sup>9</sup> y<sup>e</sup> haue shewed me your wyll, to the  
 entent that we may brynge hym sum good newes.


and was induced  
 to repent of the  
 sin he had  
 meditated.

For love of Ide,  
 Florence is still  
 sore sick.

The messengers  
 entreat Ide and  
 Olive to visit  
 him,  
 and to leave  
 Croissant regent.

1 in such sort.      2-2 such.      3 greefe.      4 he.      5 but.  
 6 and.      7-7 omitted.      8 Fol. clxxxii. col. 2.      9 vntill.

¶ Howe the emperoure yde and thempresse  
Olyue gaue good instructions to there sonne  
whan they departed from Rome, and how  
they arryued at Courtoyse and cam to 4  
Florence, who with great ioy receyued them  
as his chydren. Capitulo .clxxxii.

<sup>1</sup>  Han themperour yde had herde this  
knyght reporte these newes of the 8  
kyng his father / the water fell frome  
his eyen for petye and ioy *that* he had,  
and answered and sayd. 'Syr, I wyll  
that ye knowe well that of your comynge and good 12  
newes I am ryght ioyfull / but I am sory for the<sup>2</sup> sik-  
nes that my father is in / whearfor to recomfort hym  
and<sup>3</sup> make hym ioyfull, I wyll<sup>4</sup> ye retourne to hym  
and say howe that humblye I recommaunde me to his 16  
good grace, and that at mydsomer nexte I and my wyfe  
shal<sup>5</sup>be with hym.' the messengers, herynge that  
answere, were ryght ioyfull. Than after dyner they  
toke theyr leue of themperour and of thempresse / who 20  
gaue them many ryche gyftes for the honour of kynge  
Florence theyr father / and so the messengers departed /  
Whan thempresse Olyue vnderstode the wyll of her  
lorde / she was ryght sorowfull for to leue her countree 24  
wheareas she was borne and norysshed, and specially to  
leue her sonne Croisant whom she loued. But syn it  
was the pleasure of her lorde so to do she contented  
herselfe / for she loued her husbonde so well that she 28  
wolde in no wyse saye agaynst his pleasure nor lette  
hym to do his wyll / ryght sorowfull were the prynces  
and lordes of that countree and all the people of Rome.  
But the best wyse they coude they comforted them- 32

Ide is sorry  
for his father's  
sickness,

and promises to  
visit him.

Olive does not  
wish to leave her  
country and her  
son.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. clxxxii. back, col. 1.    <sup>2</sup> great.    <sup>3</sup> to.  
<sup>4</sup> that.    <sup>5</sup> will.



selues by cause of the yonge prynce Croysant, who  
 shulde tary and abyde with them,<sup>1</sup> whom themperour  
 delyuered to<sup>2</sup> them to be kept / and than he spake to  
 4 his son, and shewed him many <sup>3</sup>fayre and <sup>3</sup> notable<sup>4</sup> Ide instructs  
Croissant in all  
the duties of  
emperor,  
 reasons <sup>3</sup> and doctrynes; <sup>3</sup> he commaunde hym to be  
 swete<sup>5</sup> and courtoyse to his<sup>6</sup> people <sup>3</sup>and to his lordes,<sup>3</sup>  
 and that he shulde not be lyght of credence / and that  
 8 in any wyse he <sup>7</sup>shulde not <sup>8</sup>leen<sup>8</sup> his eares to here  
 flatterers, nor the venym<sup>9</sup> that cometh from them that  
 wyll lye and flatter to please hym with al to the entent  
 to come to theyr entensyon / whearby many a prynce  
 12 hath ben destroyed / and brought into<sup>10</sup> hell, whearas<sup>11</sup>  
 they and theyr londe also for beleuyng of them haue  
 ben dampned perpetually / ‘son, loke thou be serued and gives him  
good advice.  
 with gentylmen, suche as are come of them that hathe  
 16 been of good renome / loue<sup>12</sup> holy churche / gyue almes  
 to the poore for loue of <sup>3</sup>our lorde<sup>3</sup> Iesu cryst / let thy  
 cofers<sup>13</sup> be open to thy good knyghtes, beware<sup>14</sup> bee noo  
 nygarde, and beware<sup>14</sup> be not ouercome with wyne / lede  
 20 an honest lyfe / haunt and kepe companye with the  
 aunsyent sages,<sup>15</sup> and laude and prayse them yf they be  
 worthye / flee flatterers and mockers, and beware therof  
 thy selfe / for thou canst not do worse / for<sup>16</sup> it shall<sup>17</sup>  
 24 abate thyne honour.’ Thus themperour yde sayd to  
 his sonne Croysant, and shewed hym manye notable  
 saynges and goodly<sup>18</sup> instructions. than he called his  
 lordes and sayd. ‘Syr, the moost parte of you know-  
 28 eth my wyll, the whiche is that I and my wyfe wyl go  
 into Aragone to the kyng my father / therfore I desyre Ide takes leave  
of his lords.  
 you all and commaunde you / that ye wyll haue my  
 sonne as recommended<sup>19</sup> / I haue left hym great treasure,  
 32 to the entent that yf any warre or any other besines

<sup>1</sup> and. <sup>2</sup> vnto. <sup>3-3</sup> omitted. <sup>4</sup> examples and.  
<sup>6</sup> gentle. <sup>6</sup> Lordes and. <sup>7</sup> Fol. clxxxii. back, col. 2.  
<sup>8-8</sup> listen with. <sup>9</sup> filth. <sup>10</sup> to. <sup>11</sup> whereby.  
<sup>12</sup> the. <sup>13</sup> chests. <sup>14</sup> thou. <sup>15</sup> noblemen.  
<sup>16</sup> because. <sup>17</sup> will. <sup>18</sup> fayre. <sup>19</sup> to you.

fall to hym / that he shall haue rychesse suffeyent to  
withstonde them that wolde do hym <sup>1</sup>any damage<sup>1</sup> or  
his countree / and also the realme of Aragon is not so  
farre<sup>2</sup> hence / but<sup>3</sup> anone I may haue newes from hym.' 4

They promise to  
serve his son  
Croissant.

¶ Whan the lordes vnderstode themperoure, and  
how he had taken on hym this vyage, they knew well  
they coude not let nor stope hym of his pleasure.  
Than they all answered in generall / and said that as 8  
<sup>4</sup>nere as they coude they wolde acomplyssh his com-  
maundement, and so<sup>5</sup> serue trewly his sonne Croysant,  
and to ayde / kepe, and defende his countre agaynst all  
men that wolde anoye hym. 'Syr, quod themperoure, 12  
'I thanke you.' Thus after that the emperour had  
spoken with his sonne and with his lordes, and shewed  
them his wyl and pleasure / than<sup>6</sup> he made redye for  
his iorney, and toke with hym a certeyne <sup>7</sup>of notable<sup>7</sup> 16  
knyghtes to accompanye hym & Olyue thempresse his  
wyfe. <sup>8</sup>he apareled<sup>8</sup> two great shyppes, and caused  
them to be charged with vytayles and artelrye, as it  
apartayned for y<sup>e</sup> defence of theyr bodyes and lyues, 20  
& toke with hym great richesse and<sup>6</sup> aparell & iewelles /  
than he toke his leue of the pope and of all his lordes,  
and of all them of the cite, who made great sorow for  
theyr departynge / than they entred in to the ryuer of 24  
Tybre, accompayned with a<sup>9</sup>.v. C. knyghtes / at theyr  
departynge they toke leue of theyr sonne Croysaunt,  
and kyssed hym often tymes / whan thempresse sawe  
her sonne whome she must departe fro she began to 28  
wepe / but themperoure comforted her as moche as he  
myght<sup>10</sup> / than they toke theyr shyppes, & so departed  
and sayled so longe in the streme<sup>11</sup> of Tybre that they  
came in to the hye see, wheare as they sayled nyght 32  
and day with good wynde, that without daunger they

He and his  
company go by  
way of the Tiber,

<sup>1-1</sup> after country.

<sup>2</sup> from.

<sup>3</sup> that.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. clxxxiii. col. 1.

<sup>5</sup> to.

<sup>6</sup> omitted.

<sup>7-7</sup> number of.

<sup>8-8</sup> and he fournysshed.

<sup>9</sup> about.

<sup>10</sup> could.

<sup>11</sup> Riuer.

- arryued at the cite of Courtoyse, wheare as they were  
 receyued with great ioy.<sup>1</sup> so they came to y<sup>e</sup> palayes  
 2and there<sup>2</sup> founde kyng Florence lyenge on a couche,  
 4 who whan he was aduertesed of there comynge he had  
 greate ioy / than themperour and thempresse entered  
 in to the palayes and came wheare as the kyng laye /  
 than they both kneled downe before hym / and whan  
 8 the kyng sawe them he had suche ioy that he coude  
 3speke no worde / but made a token *that* they shulde  
 aproche nere to hym, and so they dyd / he enbrased &  
 kyssed them often tymes / and whan he myght speke  
 12 he sayd, 'my ryght dere chyldren, of your comynge I  
 am ryght ioyous,<sup>4</sup> and of the grace that god hath sent  
 to you' / then agayne he kyssed often tymes thempresse  
 Olyue, & sayd howe she was welcome in to the realme  
 16 of Aragone / of<sup>5</sup> great ioy <sup>6</sup>and feest and<sup>6</sup> gyftes &  
 presentes that were gyuen and done at theyr welcom-  
 ynge, yf I shulde shew it at lenth it shulde be ouer  
 longe to reherce / and therfore I passe it ouer. Nowe  
 20 let vs leue spekyng of the kyng and of the emperour  
 and empresse his wyfe, who toke suche pleasure to  
 abyde with kyng Florence that neuer after they re-  
 toured too Rome / but they reygned together al theyr  
 24 lyues in peace and good<sup>7</sup> loue / & they had no <sup>8</sup>mo  
 chyldren<sup>8</sup> / but Croissant whom they had left at Rome,<sup>9</sup>  
 of whom we shall speke nowe after.<sup>10</sup>

and arrive at  
Courtois.

Florence warmly  
welcomes Ide and  
Olyue.

They remain  
henceforth in his  
kingdom,  
and share his  
rule.

Croissant alone  
rules at Rome.

- ¶ Howe Croysant was so large<sup>11</sup> and so  
 28 liberall that he gaue away all the treasure  
 that hys father had left hym / so that at last  
 he had no more to gyue / and so was con-  
 streined to go seke his aduenture, he & a  
 32 verlot aloney.

Ca. c.lxxxiii.

<sup>1</sup> and.      <sup>2-2</sup> whereas they.      <sup>3</sup> Fol. clxxxiii. col. 2.  
<sup>4</sup> ioyfull.      <sup>5</sup> the.      <sup>6-6</sup> feasting.      <sup>7</sup> good before peace.  
<sup>8</sup> child but,      <sup>9</sup> and.      <sup>10</sup> hereafter.      <sup>11</sup> bountifull.

Croissant delights  
in sports,



and in giving rich  
gifts.

He enriched the  
poor,

and gave away  
all his father's  
treasure.

But when he  
grew poor all  
former friends  
avoided him,

and refused him  
loans of money.

After<sup>1</sup> themperour yde and y<sup>e</sup> empressse  
Olyue were departed from<sup>2</sup> Rome,  
Croysant theyr son grew and amend-  
ed in all thynges. he delyghted to<sup>4</sup>  
take his pleasure in all sportes<sup>3</sup> / he  
made to be cryed<sup>4</sup> Iustes<sup>5</sup> and  
tournoyse, and gaue large gyftes to ladyes and to  
knyghtes. none went from hym without sum gyft. <sup>8</sup>  
he toke great pleasure to gyue gyftes / so that he was  
praysed of euery man / howbeit dyuers aunsyent and  
wyse men sayd, 'yf Croysant, oure yonge prynce, dele  
thus longe<sup>6</sup> with y<sup>e</sup> treasure that his father left hym / <sup>12</sup>  
it wyll be sore<sup>7</sup> wasted, and suche as now foloweth  
hym wyll forsake hym whan they se that he hath no  
more to gyue' / as they dyd in dede / as ye shall here  
after / for he gaue to them that were pore, whearby <sup>16</sup>  
they were made ryche, who after wolde not gyue hym  
one morsell of breade / he was so lyberall & so great a  
dispender<sup>8</sup> that all the treasure that his father had left  
hym he gaue it awaye / so *that* many compleyned <sup>20</sup>  
greatly<sup>9</sup> his bountye & larges,<sup>10</sup> he gaue awaye so moche  
*that* he was forsed to mynyshe<sup>11</sup> his estate, and was  
forsaken of all them that were wont to serue hym, by-  
cause he had no more to gyue them, so *that* whan they <sup>24</sup>  
met hym they wolde tourn to another way / & whan he  
knew *that* he had so great shame that he determyned  
to departe pryuely out of the countre, and<sup>12</sup> goo seke  
his aduentures / for he sawe well<sup>1</sup> he had gyuen awaye <sup>28</sup>  
<sup>13</sup>so moche<sup>13</sup> and lent that he coude not than fynde one  
man *that* wolde lene<sup>14</sup> hym a<sup>15</sup> peny / than with that  
that<sup>16</sup> was left he bought two good horses, and monted  
on the one and<sup>17</sup> the other a verlet, and a male behynde <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> that.      <sup>2</sup> the Citie of.      <sup>3</sup> and.      <sup>4</sup> proclaimed.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. clxxxiii. back, col. 1.      <sup>6</sup> omitted.      <sup>7</sup> much.

<sup>8</sup> spender.      <sup>9</sup> of.      <sup>10</sup> for.      <sup>11</sup> diminish.      <sup>12</sup> to.

<sup>13-13</sup> after lent.      <sup>14</sup> lend.      <sup>15</sup> one.      <sup>16</sup> which.

<sup>17</sup> vppon.

hym, and therin a gowne and his shertes and<sup>1</sup> hose and shoes, and he had in his purse no more but one c. fl. for his dispence.<sup>2</sup> Than<sup>3</sup> in a mornynge he departed  
 4 from Rome, to thentent he shulde not be perseyued, and rode so long by his iorneyes that he was far of from the cyte of Rome more than .iiii. dayes iornay. Now let vs leue spekyng of hym tyll tyme shal be to retourne  
 8 to hym agayne.

He flees from Rome.

¶ How they of Rome sent to the kinge  
 Guymart of Puylle, to the entent that he shulde come and gouerne that countre, and  
 12 to be theyr lorde, bicause that Croisant was a chylde, and had gyuen and wasted all that he had, and howe Guymart came theder and was receyued as lorde.

16

Ca. Clxxxiii.

**A**fter that the barons and senatours of Rome were aduertesede that theyr yonge lorde Croysaunt was departed from the cite, and that he had all wasted and spended the treasure that he had / than they assembled at the capetale / than<sup>5</sup> ther was one sayd / 'cursed is that  
 24 londe whearof y<sup>e</sup> lorde is a chyde, as ye may well parseyue by our yonge lorde Croysant, who hathe all dispended<sup>6</sup> and gyuen all<sup>7</sup> y<sup>e</sup> great treasure that his father had left hym / yll<sup>8</sup> shulde he gouerne his londe  
 28 and countre whan he can not kepe it<sup>1</sup> that<sup>9</sup> is closed fast in his cofers / and therfore, myne aduyse is that we sende to kynge Guymart of Puylle / who is all redye of the mynde to come and besege vs, bycause he knoweth

The lords, finding themselves without a ruler,

resolve to invite King Guymart of Puylle to take the throne.

<sup>1</sup> omitted.<sup>2</sup> expenses.<sup>3</sup> and.<sup>4</sup> Fol. clxxxiii. back, col. 2.<sup>5</sup> and.<sup>6</sup> spent all.<sup>7</sup> away.<sup>8</sup> verie badly.<sup>9</sup> which.



Guymart accepts  
the invitation,  
and becomes  
emperor.

well that we be without a lorde / and therfore myne  
adyuse is that we sende to<sup>1</sup> hym a notable enbassed<sup>2</sup>  
desyrynge hym to come to this cite of Rome / and how<sup>3</sup>  
that this cite shall do to hym obeysaunce / better it is 4  
to sende by tymes than to late / to thentent that<sup>4</sup>  
he nor none of his do no<sup>5</sup> domage to the londes of  
Rome' / all they that were there agreed to his sayenge /  
& so they sent to hym, who<sup>6</sup> receyued the enbassetours<sup>7</sup> 8  
ryght honorably / and so he came to Rome, wheare as  
he was receyued for theyr lorde peacesablye. But or<sup>8</sup>  
he entred in to Rome they went and met hym, and  
with great tryumphe<sup>9</sup> brought hym in to the cite with 12  
trômpettes and tabours<sup>10</sup> blowyng before hym tyll<sup>11</sup> he  
cam to the church of saynt Peter, and there he offered  
and kyst the relykes / whearof he made his oth, suche  
as emperours<sup>12</sup> accustomed to make / he to defend 16  
& kepe Rome & y<sup>e</sup> empyre. Than he went to the  
palayes, wheare as he was receyued of the noble men  
and of the people / <sup>13</sup>he gouerned Rome in peace and  
good<sup>14</sup> Iustice. Nowe let vs leaue spekyng of hym 20  
and retourne to Croysant.

¶ Howe Croysaunt arryued at Nyse in pro-  
uaunce, and came to the erle Remon, who  
was beseged by the sarazyns / & of the 24  
honour that the erle Remon dyd to Croi-  
sant / and how he gaue hym his baner  
to bere, & made him knyght / and of the  
great enmye that the erles son had at 28  
Croysant. Ca. Clxxxv.

<sup>1</sup> vnto.      <sup>2</sup> Ambassage.      <sup>3</sup> say.      <sup>4</sup> neither.      <sup>5</sup> any.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. clxxxiii. col. 1.      <sup>7</sup> Ambassadors.      <sup>8</sup> before.

<sup>9</sup> joy.      <sup>10</sup> Drummes.      <sup>11</sup> vntill.      <sup>12</sup> are.      <sup>13</sup> then.

<sup>14</sup> good *before* peace.



1 After that Croysant was departed from  
 Rome he<sup>2</sup> and his verlet,<sup>3</sup> and had  
 4 well sene how<sup>4</sup> in all Rome they set  
 no thyng by hym bycause he hadde  
 no more good<sup>5</sup> to gyue.<sup>6</sup> Than he  
 rode throw Romyne and Lombardy  
 / and passed Pyemont / and than he<sup>2</sup> came in to  
 8 Daulpheney; and when he came in to the towne  
 of Grenoble it was shewed hym that in Prouaunce  
 there was a notable<sup>7</sup> prynce named erle Remon, of  
 saynt Giles, who was beseged by londe and by water in  
 12 y<sup>e</sup> towne of Nyse by the kynge Grenade and the kyng  
 of Belmaryne / who day and nyght made great assautes  
 to the cite / and they had sworne and made promyse  
 that they wyll<sup>8</sup> neuer departe<sup>9</sup> thense tyll<sup>10</sup> they haue<sup>11</sup>  
 16 wonne the towne / and slayne the erle Remon / whan  
 Croysant herde those newes, the hardye prowes wheare  
 with he was garnysshed and replete set him in to  
 so hye a wyll / that he thought the sarazyns flewe in<sup>12</sup>  
 20 the Eyer, and that he wolde reyse theyr sege or<sup>13</sup> it be  
 nyght / and for the bryngynge<sup>14</sup> desyre that he had he  
 thought to goo theder to proue his vertue agaynst the  
 paynymys / so whan he had rested his horse he and his  
 24 squyer monted and rested not tyll he came to Nyse;  
 in an euyunnyng late he<sup>15</sup> aryued without perseyuynge  
 of them of the sege / for as then they were all in their  
 tentes / for<sup>16</sup> a lytell before there had bene at the gate  
 28 a great skyrmysh / whearfor the sarazyns were wery of  
 theyr trauayle / & also on *that* parte *that* Croysant  
 aryued there were no sarazins lodged / than he came to  
 y<sup>e</sup> gate and prayed y<sup>e</sup> porter to let hym enter / & whan  
 32 the porter saw there were no mo but .iii. persons, & *that*

Croissant rides  
into Provence.

Earl Remon of  
Saint Giles is  
besieged in Nice  
by the kings of  
Grenade and of  
Belmaryne.

Croissant arrives  
at Nice,

<sup>1</sup> Fol. clxxxiii. col. 2.      <sup>2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> with him.

<sup>4</sup> that.      <sup>5</sup> gifts.      <sup>6</sup> them.      <sup>7</sup> noble.      <sup>8</sup> would.

<sup>9</sup> from.      <sup>10</sup> untill.      <sup>11</sup> had.      <sup>12</sup> to.      <sup>13</sup> before.

<sup>14</sup> burning.      <sup>15</sup> there.      <sup>16</sup> because.

and enters it.

Next day he goes  
to the palace of  
the Earl Remon.

The earl welcomes  
him kindly.

A battle will take  
place on the  
morrow.

The earl's  
brother, the  
duke of Calaber,  
is expected with a  
large army.

he was crystened,<sup>1</sup> he suffred *him* to enter without any  
refuse / & whan Croysant sawe *that* he was in without<sup>2</sup>  
daunger he was ioyfull,<sup>3</sup> <sup>4</sup>he came to one of the best  
lodgynges in the towne, and there he alyghted and  
souped with his host / Bycause it was late to go that  
nyght to the court; there he taryed all that nyght tyll<sup>5</sup>  
y<sup>e</sup> next mornynge / than he went to the palayes,  
wheare as he found the erle Remon deusynge with his  
lordes and knyghtes of the dedes of y<sup>e</sup><sup>6</sup> warre; than  
Croysant saluted the erle and all his lordes. whan the  
erle sawe the yonge man he greatly behelde hym / and  
thought that in all his lyfe he had neuer sene so  
goodlye a person, and thought that he was com of sum  
noble lynage. Than he toke Croysant by the hande  
and demaunded what was<sup>7</sup> his name. 'Syr,' quod he,  
'my name is Croysant' / 'Croysant,' quod the erle, 'ye  
are welcome / ye are come well at a point both for you  
and for me / for I haue great nede to haue men with  
me to ayde me / and me thynke by your personage  
that ye shulde acheue a great interpryses / for of your  
age I haue not sene in my dayes a yong man more  
lykely to be fered of his enemyes / & bycause I se by  
your apparell that ye be<sup>8</sup> no knyght, I shall make you  
a knyght to thentent *that* to morow your prowes  
& hardynes may be proued / for ye maye se here  
without this towne two kynges, enemyes to oure  
crysten fayth, and by the <sup>9</sup>pleasure of our lorde Iesu  
cryst I haue intensyon<sup>9</sup> to morow to gyue them batayle,  
I loke this nyght for my brother, the duke of Calaber,  
who bryngeth with hym a<sup>6</sup> .xxx.M. men of warre /  
and a<sup>6</sup> .xx.M. I haue all redye with in the towne / and  
considerynge your hye corage to come hether to serue  
me, I shall do you more honour; after I haue made you

<sup>1</sup> a Christian.      <sup>2</sup> any.      <sup>3</sup> then.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. clxxxiiii. back, col. 1.      <sup>5</sup> vntill.      <sup>6</sup> omitted.

<sup>7</sup> was *after* name.      <sup>8</sup> are.      <sup>9-9</sup> grace of god I intend.

knyght I shall gyue you my baner to bere / and yf ye  
do as me thynke ye shulde do your payne shal not be  
lost.' 'Syr,' quod Croysant, 'god gyue me the grace  
4 that to <sup>1</sup>morowe to hym and to you I may do such  
seruices that it may be welth to all crystendome, and  
that god may perfourme in me that<sup>2</sup> wanteth / for yf  
ye make me knyght al the dayes of my lyfe after  
8 I shalbe yours' / than the erle incontynent sent for a  
son of his, who as than was no knyght, and dyuers  
other, whom he made knyghtes with Croysant / than  
he sayde to Croysant, 'frend, I pray to our lord <sup>3</sup>Iesu  
12 cryst<sup>3</sup> to gyue you suche fortune to-morow that ye may  
wanquysshe the batayle.' 'Syr,' quod he, 'god gyue  
me the grace to render to you thanks for the honour  
that nowe ye do to me / for as for me, by the grace of  
16 god that<sup>4</sup> to morowe I shall so do that your enemyes  
shall curse the hour that they are come hether to  
assayle you' / whyles *that* Croysant was thus made  
knyght with the erles son and other, the same tyme  
20 thether came y<sup>e</sup> duke of Calaber, and he came to  
the palayes / of the great<sup>4</sup> chere that he had made hym  
by his brother, the erle Remon, I wyll make no  
mensyon / therof / but he came at y<sup>e</sup> same poynt<sup>5</sup> that  
24 these new knyghtes were made, and that<sup>6</sup> quyntheyne  
was set vp to proue them selfe. Than y<sup>e</sup> duke of  
Calaber and the erle Remon his brother went theder<sup>7</sup>  
desyreous to se who dyd best / than y<sup>e</sup> duke demaunded  
28 of the erle what yong knyght it was that rode by his  
neuw, for he thought<sup>8</sup> he neuer saw <sup>9</sup>a goodlyer<sup>9</sup>  
person nor more puyssant of his age. Than the erle  
sayd how he was come thether to seke for honour.  
32 But what he was nor of what lynage he knew not.  
Thus they talked togyther of this yonge knyght Croy-

The earl knights  
Croissant with  
other young men.

The duke of  
Calaber arrives.

The quintain is set up.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. c|xxxiiii. back, col. 2.      <sup>2</sup> which.      <sup>3-3</sup> god.

<sup>4</sup> omitted.      <sup>5</sup> season.      <sup>6</sup> a.      <sup>7</sup> verie.      <sup>8</sup> that.

9-2 so goodly a veng.

sant / <sup>1</sup>whan they came to y<sup>e</sup> place wheareas the  
 quyntayne was dressed vp / the erles son ranne and  
 bracke his spere all to peces, and than other assayed  
 themselfe / sum bracke theyr speres, and sum fell too <sup>4</sup>  
 the erthe parforce<sup>2</sup> <sup>3</sup>of there stroke / but there was none  
 that coude remoue the quyntayne / whan Croissant sawe  
 that all had assayed themselues to throw<sup>4</sup> the quyn-  
 teyne, he had a greate spere, and ran so fyersly that he <sup>8</sup>  
 strake the quyntayne and ouerthrew it to the ground,  
 whearof euery man had great meruayle; the duke sayd  
 to y<sup>e</sup> erle that he neuer sawe so goodlye a stroke,  
 and sayd howe he is greatly to be doubted that gyue <sup>12</sup>  
 such strokes; he was greatly praysed of the ladyes and  
 dameselles that were there present, & specially of the  
 erles doughter, who was a fayre damesel. But who  
 soeuer was ioyfull, y<sup>e</sup> erles sonne was displeased / <sup>16</sup>  
 he toke agaynst hym a mortall hate and an yll enuye,  
 so that yf he had durst he wolde haue ryn vpon  
 Croissant to haue distroyed him, and concluded in his  
 corage that yf he myght lyue longe he wolde make <sup>20</sup>  
 Croysantes lyfe to departe from his bodye / and so he  
 had done and<sup>5</sup> god had not ayded Croysant / whan  
 Croysant had ryn his course he rode to the erle, who  
 sayd to hym ryght swetly / 'Croissant, god encrease <sup>24</sup>  
 your bountye<sup>6</sup> and<sup>7</sup> gyue you grace to perceyuer<sup>8</sup> your  
 goodnes / and I pray you humblye to shewe me the  
 trouthe what ye be and of what lynage, for I am sure<sup>9</sup>  
 ye <sup>10</sup>be come<sup>10</sup> of sum hye lynage.' 'Syr,' quod Croy- <sup>28</sup>  
 sant, 'syn ye wold know it I shall shew you y<sup>e</sup> trouthe.  
 Syr, knowe for trouthe I am sonne to the noble  
 emperour of Rome, and I am departed out of<sup>11</sup> countre  
 for certen causes, the<sup>12</sup> whiche I coude<sup>13</sup> not suffer / <sup>32</sup>  
 and therefore I went too serche myne aduentures such as

Croissant alone is  
 able to strike it  
 and throw it  
 down.

The ladies praise  
 Croissant.

The earl's son is  
 jealous of  
 Croissant.

The earl asks of  
 what family  
 Croissant is.

He tells of his  
 father.

<sup>1</sup> and. <sup>2</sup> by force. <sup>3</sup> Fol. clxxxv. col. 1.

<sup>4</sup> ouerthrow. <sup>5</sup> if. <sup>6</sup> honour. <sup>7</sup> god. <sup>8</sup> in.

<sup>9</sup> that. <sup>10-10</sup> are. <sup>11</sup> the. <sup>12</sup> omitted. <sup>13</sup> would.



god wold sende me' / whan the erle herde hym speke  
 he was ryght ioyouse,<sup>1</sup> and thanked god, & sayd, 'fayre  
 sonne, ye be welcom, I am ioyfull of your cominge, for  
 4 the goodnes that I see in you apparent; I haue a  
 doughter ryght fayre, whome I wyll gyue you in  
 2 maryage, and as moche of my goodes and of my londes  
 and seynoryes that ye shal neuer be pore.' 'Syr,'  
 8 quod Croysant, 'your fayre offer that ye make me  
 I wyll not refuse, and I thanke you. But or<sup>3</sup> <sup>4</sup>euer<sup>4</sup>  
 I take a wyfe my wyll is to do so moche *that* myne  
 honour may be exalted, and that renowne maye ryne  
 12 vpon me as it hathe done of my *predecessours*, and that  
 I may *conquyre* londes and seynoryes.' Than the  
 erles sonne, herynge his father make Croysant suche an  
 offer as to gyue him his sister in maryage and a great  
 16 parte of his londe / he was therewith sore troubled in his  
 hert; <sup>5</sup> he toke agaynst hym a cordyall hate, and made  
 promyse in hym selfe that if he may<sup>6</sup> retourne from the  
 batayle he wyll<sup>7</sup> cause Croysant to dye an yll deth /  
 20 thynkyng not to be disenheryt by hym / after those  
 wordes the duke of Calaber and the erle Remon toke  
 betwene them y<sup>e</sup> yonge knyght Croysant & led him by  
 the hande to the palayes, wheare as he was receyued  
 24 with great ioye / and after dyner they came in to the  
 hall wheare as all the lordes were. Than Croysant,  
 who greatly desyred<sup>8</sup> to be in suche a place wheare as  
 he myght shew his prowes, spake on hye, and sayd to<sup>9</sup>  
 28 erle Remon, 'Syr, ye knowe well *that* y<sup>e</sup> enemyes  
 of oure lorde god & yours hath beseged you in your  
 towne / the whiche is a thyng not to be suffred, <sup>4</sup>and  
 vnreasonable,<sup>4</sup> so long without doynge<sup>10</sup> them any  
 32 anoyauce / and therfore, syr, I counsell<sup>11</sup> that or<sup>3</sup> they  
 knowe moche of your estate or <sup>4</sup>of your<sup>4</sup> puyssaunce,

The earl offers  
Croissant his  
daughter in  
marriage.

Croissant will  
accept the offer  
after he has  
proved his  
prowess.

The earl's son  
hears of the  
offer, and

growing more  
envious, resolves  
on the death of  
the new-comer.

<sup>1</sup> ioyfull.

<sup>2</sup> Fol. clxxxv. col. 2.

<sup>3</sup> before.

<sup>4-4</sup> omitted.

<sup>5</sup> as.

<sup>6</sup> myght.

<sup>7</sup> would.

<sup>8</sup> delighted.

<sup>9</sup> the.

<sup>10</sup> of.

<sup>11</sup> you.

Croissant advises  
an immediate  
sortie.

or what people ye haue, it were best ye went to assayle them<sup>1</sup> without any lenger taryenge / orden your hedes<sup>2</sup> and your capeteysn to gyde your people, to the entent that whan ye were<sup>3</sup> issued out of the towne<sup>4</sup> and than<sup>4</sup> that<sup>4</sup> euery man may knowe what ye are purposed to do / <sup>5</sup>and than sende to your enemyes a messenger and gyue your enemyes knowledge of your comynge, and we shall folowe so fast that they shall haue no leaser to arme them' / whan the duke of Calaber & y<sup>e</sup> erle Remon vnderstode the noble Croysant they prayed moche his counsell and aduyse. Than they ordeyned theyr batayles and theyr capeteysn / and than they<sup>12</sup> issued out of the towne with all theyr companye.

The earl's forces  
prepare to march  
against the  
enemy,  
who is besieging  
them in Nice.

¶ Howe Croisant dyd meruayles in the batayle, by whose prowes the sarazins were discomfited and slayne, whearof the erle Remon<sup>16</sup> and the duke of Calaber were ryght ioyfull.

Ca. clxxxvi.

Croissant leads  
one detachment.



Han the erle Remone was without the towne / he ordeyned thre batayles.<sup>20</sup> The fyrst Croysant had the leadynge therof, & the erle sayd to him, 'frende, I praye you this day shew from whense ye come, and how that ye be of the lynage<sup>24</sup> inperyall, and of the good lyne of the duke of Burdeaux / for I haue suche trust in god and in the vertue of your armes / that me thynke now<sup>6</sup> myne enemyes do flee awaye before me.' 'Syr,' quod Croisant, 'I shall<sup>28</sup> do so much by y<sup>e</sup> grace of god that our enemyes shall haue no leaser to graunt vs the victorye. The seconde batayle led<sup>7</sup> the erle Remons sonne, and his father sayd

The earl's son  
leads a second.

<sup>1</sup> therefore.      <sup>2</sup> Battayles.      <sup>3</sup> are.      <sup>4-4</sup> omitted.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. clxxxv. back, col. 1.      <sup>6</sup> now after do.

<sup>7</sup> led after sonne.

to hym that he shulde that day <sup>1</sup>shew forth his vertue  
 and prowes. The thyrd batayle the erle Remone and  
 the duke of Calaber had the gydyng the of, <sup>2</sup>they set  
 4 in euery batayle .xv. M. men / than the erle Remon  
 went before euery bataile sterynge and mouyng them  
 to do well / <sup>2</sup>than the erle sent a messenger to the host  
 of the sarazyns to shew them of the coming of the  
 8 crysten men / <sup>2</sup>they were before theyr tentes in .v.  
 batayles / they were in nombre a <sup>3</sup>.C. M. sarazyns,  
 whearof there were .ii. kinges and foure Admyrallles.  
 This messenger dyd his message / and whan he had  
 12 done / he retourned to the erle Remon & shewed  
 hym all that he had herde & sene. Than Croysant  
 sayd to the erle. 'Syr, I requyre<sup>4</sup> you<sup>5</sup> shew me what  
 armes the .ii. sarazyn kynges doth beare, to the entent  
 16 that I maye knowe them / for the sonner that the great  
 men be slayne the sonner y<sup>e</sup> other wyll fle / for<sup>6</sup> that  
 shall<sup>7</sup> abasshe them and the sooner to be discomfyted,  
 for men without a lorde are / as shepe without a  
 20 sheparde.' Then y<sup>e</sup> erle shewed hym theyr armes and  
 bages. 'Syr,' quod Croysant, 'syn I am hereof aduer-  
 tesed I shall neuer rest tyll<sup>8</sup> I have incountred them yf  
 god wyll saue myne armes and good sworde' / than the  
 24 paynyns who saw well y<sup>e</sup> crysten men comyng / they<sup>9</sup>  
 cast vp a great cry & so meruelous that there was none  
 so hardy / but that<sup>9</sup> was abasshed therof / for it semed  
 that all y<sup>e</sup> worlde there aryued / whan Croysant sawe  
 28 the sarazyns approche he auaunsed his batayle / and  
 whan they ioyned / he couched his spere and strake  
 therewith the sonne<sup>10</sup> of<sup>11</sup> kyng of Belmaryne / so that  
 the spere hede passed thorowe his bodye more than a  
 32 good<sup>9</sup> fote / and so with drawyng out of his spere the  
 sarazyn fell downe deed amonge the horse feet, <sup>12</sup>whearof

The earl himself  
 and the duke of  
 Calaber lead the  
 third.

The Christians  
 announce their  
 approach to the  
 Saracen enemy.

Croissant longs to  
 attack the two  
 Saracen kinges.

Croissant  
 advances,  
 and kills the  
 son of the king of  
 Belmaryne,  
 and many others.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. clxxxv. back, col. 2.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> about.      <sup>4</sup> pray.

<sup>5</sup> to.      <sup>6</sup> because.      <sup>7</sup> will.      <sup>8</sup> vntill.      <sup>9</sup> omitted.

<sup>10</sup> sonne after Belamyne.      <sup>11</sup> the.      <sup>12</sup> Fol. clxxxvi. col. 1.

the paynims had great dolour whan Croysant had  
 slayne the sonne<sup>1</sup> of y<sup>e</sup> kyng of Belmaryn / there cam  
 before hym the neuwe of the kyng of Grenade /  
<sup>2</sup>Croysaunt bare hym to the erthe so rudelye so<sup>3</sup> that 4  
 in the fallynge he brocke his necke / than he ranne at  
 the thyrd and at<sup>3</sup> y<sup>e</sup>.iiii. and slew them / and as longe  
 as his spere helde<sup>4</sup> ceased not to sle and to bet downe y<sup>e</sup>  
 sarazyns / and whan his spere was broken he tooke his 8  
 sworde, wherwith he claue the sarazyns to the brayne,  
 and cut of armes and handes / he made amonge them  
 such slawghter that there was not so hardye a sarazyn  
 that durst abyde his full strok, but they fled from hym 12  
 as the shepe doth before the wolfe / anone the tydinges  
 was brought to the kyng of Belmaryn howe his sonne  
 was slayne by a yonge knyght who dyd meruaylles in  
 the batayle / <sup>2</sup>whan the kyng knew that his sonne was 16  
 slayn he wepte for sorow, and made promyse that he  
 had rather dye than the deth of his son shulde be  
 vnreuenged / and therwith he preased into the batayle,  
 and met at his comynge the dukes seneschall <sup>5</sup>of Ca- 20  
 laber,<sup>5</sup> and strake hym with his spere in suche wyse  
 that he ranne hym clene thorow, and so he fell downe  
 deed / than y<sup>e</sup> batayle began fyersly, and they of Pro-  
 uauunce and of Calaber dyd valyauntly / than y<sup>e</sup> erle 24  
 Remon came in to the batayle, and met with the Ad-  
 myrall of Cordes and gaue hym with his sworde <sup>6</sup>suche  
 a stroke<sup>6</sup> on y<sup>e</sup> helme that he claue his hede to the  
 brayne, and so he fell downe deed / than he sawe the 28  
 kyng of Grenade, who slew many a crystenman; than  
 the erle Remon toke a spere & ranne at the kyng, and  
 strake hym so on y<sup>e</sup> vyser of his helme that he fell to  
 y<sup>e</sup> erth with his fete vpwarde amonge his owne men, 32  
 and had ben there slayne and his men had not <sup>7</sup>socoured

The Saracens flee  
 before him.

The king of  
 Belmaryne is  
 made de-sperate  
 by the loss of  
 his son.

The Earl Remon  
 fights valiantly,

and nearly kills  
 the king of  
 Grenade.

<sup>1</sup> sonne *after* Belamyne.

<sup>5-5</sup> *before* seneschall.

<sup>2</sup> and.

<sup>3</sup> omitted.

<sup>4</sup> he.

<sup>6-6</sup> *before* with his sworde.

<sup>7</sup> Fol. clxxxvi. col. 2.

hym / in another place was Croisant, and he saw before  
 hym the kynge of Belmaryn, who rode aboute sekyng  
 for Croysant to be reuenged vpon<sup>1</sup> hym for y<sup>e</sup> deth of  
 4 his sonne / <sup>2</sup>whan the kynge sawe Croysant betyng  
 downe horse and men, and that none coude resyst  
 agaynst hym / he had greate desyre to be reuenged, and  
 sayd to Croysant. 'O thou false traytour that hath  
 8 slayne my sonne, I ought greatly to laude and prayse  
 Mahounde yf I may be reuenged vpon the' / than he  
 couched his spere and strake Croysaunt in the myddes  
 of his shyld, so that his spere flew all to peces / but for  
 12 all y<sup>e</sup> stroke Croysant remoued no more / than tho he  
 had stryken a stone walle / & Croysant, sore displeased  
 that the kynge had gyuen hym suche a stroke / lete go  
 the brydell of his horse, & lyft vp his sworde with  
 16 bothe his handes / and strake the kynge as he past by  
 on the corner of his helme in suche wyse that he strake  
 it clene asondre. <sup>2</sup>yf the stroke had not gleynted<sup>3</sup> he  
 had clouen his hede to the gyrdell / but the sworde  
 20 tourned & alyght on<sup>4</sup> the hors necke, so that he strake  
 y<sup>e</sup> necke clene asondre / so<sup>5</sup> that of force y<sup>e</sup> kynge  
 tumbled to the erth<sup>6</sup> astoned of the stroke that he had  
 receyued / and if he hadde not ben quykely rescowed  
 24 Croysant had striken of his hede / than the sarazyns  
 remounted agayne theyr kynge, & ran at Croysant, and  
 cast at hym dartes<sup>7</sup> and iauelyns to haue slayne hym /  
 but they durst not aproche nere hym so moche they  
 28 fered hym / howbeit they hurte hym in dyuers places.  
 he helde his sworde in his handes, wherewith he strake  
 no man with a full stroke / but that he claued his hede  
 to the brayne / than he saw y<sup>e</sup> great admyrall of Spayn,  
 32 & he gaue hym suche a stroke that his hed was clouen  
 to y<sup>e</sup> chyn, & so fell down deed. great <sup>8</sup>sorow made

The king of  
 Belmaryne  
 challenges  
 Croissant,

and is stricken to  
 the earth by the  
 youth.

Croissant is hard  
 pressed by the  
 Saracens,

but kills many  
 of them.

including the  
 great admiral  
 of Spain

<sup>1</sup> of.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> glaunced.      <sup>4</sup> vpon.  
<sup>5</sup> in such sort.      <sup>6</sup> sore.      <sup>7</sup> dartes after cast.  
<sup>8</sup> Fol. clxxxvi. back, col. 1.



and the king of  
Grenade.

the sarasyns, and specially y<sup>e</sup> kyng of Grenade / <sup>1</sup>whan  
Croysant sawe hym he knew hym well by his armes,  
wherof he was ioyfull / <sup>1</sup>Croysant aproched to hym and  
gaue hym on the helme suche a stroke that his hede <sup>4</sup>  
was clouen to y<sup>e</sup> brain, and so the kyng fell down deed /  
than Croysant ranne at hym that bare the sarazyns  
baner, whearin<sup>2</sup> was paynted the Image of Mahounde<sup>3</sup> /  
he strake hym that bare it with a reuerse stroke betwene <sup>8</sup>  
the necke and the shulders / that the hede with the  
helme flew in the felde / and he<sup>4</sup> layd<sup>5</sup> so in y<sup>e</sup> thycke  
prease that anone he made way / the sarazyns wolde<sup>6</sup>  
haue reased vp agayne theyr baner / but they <sup>12</sup>  
coude not.

Croissant also  
slays the king of  
Belmaryne.


¶ Whan the sarazyns saw theyr kinge deed and  
theyr banner lyenge on y<sup>e</sup> ground, theyr corage began to  
fayle them / than they brayled and opened theyr array <sup>16</sup>  
and began to lese<sup>7</sup> place / and Croysant, who toke hede  
of nothyng / but to sley the great capeteyns, at last  
he<sup>4</sup> saw before hym the kyng of Belmarne, who had  
slayne many a cristenman that daye / Croysant strake<sup>8</sup> <sup>20</sup>  
hym suche a stroke on the ryght shulder that arme and  
shylde fell to the erth,<sup>9</sup> and by reason of the great  
doloure that the kinge felt / he fell in sowne amonge  
the hors fete, wheareas he dyed myserable / the duke <sup>24</sup>  
of Calaber & the erle Remon regarding the hie dedes  
of armes done and acheued by Croysant had great  
meruayle of his force and puissaunce / <sup>1</sup>they blyssed  
the houre that he was borne in / thankynge god of his <sup>28</sup>  
comynge theder / they rested and behelde hym howe  
he made theyr enemyes to fle awaye, for none was so  
hardy to abyde hym / fynally if I shulde reherse y<sup>e</sup> hie  
dedes that Croysant dyd that day it shulde be ouer <sup>32</sup>  
longe to declare / for by hym & by his great hardines

<sup>1</sup> and.      <sup>2</sup> wheron.      <sup>3</sup> Mahomet.      <sup>4</sup> omitted.  
<sup>5</sup> on.      <sup>6</sup> fayne.      <sup>7</sup> loose.      <sup>8</sup> gaue.  
<sup>9</sup> erth in text.

the paynymys and sarazyns were vt<sup>l</sup>terly discomfyted / He utterly  
defeats the  
Saracens.  
for he was happye that coude saue hymselfe / thus they  
fled on all sydes<sup>2</sup> towards y<sup>e</sup> see syde, <sup>3</sup>there were mo  
4 slayne in the fleyng than were in y<sup>e</sup> playn batayle /  
for from thense to the see syde the wayes were couered  
with deed men / such as myght saue them selues in y<sup>e</sup>  
shyppes were happy, but there were but<sup>4</sup> few that  
8 scaped / after y<sup>e</sup> chace<sup>5</sup> done they of Prouaunce and of<sup>6</sup>  
Calaber came to the boutey, y<sup>e</sup> whiche was<sup>7</sup> great / <sup>3</sup>the  
whiche<sup>3</sup> the erle Remon <sup>8</sup>departed and gaue in suche  
wyse<sup>8</sup> that euery man was <sup>9</sup>content with him :<sup>9</sup> for there  
12 was suche rychesse in the tentes of the sarazyns that it  
coude not be estemyd<sup>10</sup> / wherby all suche as <sup>11</sup>had  
ben<sup>11</sup> at y<sup>e</sup> batayle were riche euer after, both they &  
theyr frendes.

16 ¶ Of the great honour that erle Remon dyd  
to Croisant, & howe he wolde haue gyuen  
hym hys doughter in mariage / whearof the  
erles sonne was sore enuyous, and thought  
20 the same nyght to haue mordered <sup>12</sup>in his  
bed <sup>12</sup>the noble Croisant / but he failed, for  
the noble Croisant slew hym & after fled  
awaye as fast as he myght.

24 Capitulo. C.lxxxvii.

28  Fter that the batayle was fynysshed,  
and that the sarazyns were deed, the  
erle Remon with great reuerence  
came to<sup>13</sup> Croysant, and toke hym by  
the hande, and ledde hym in to the  
towne betwene the duke of Calaber

Earl Remon  
does Croissant  
great honour.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. clxxxvi. back. col. 2. <sup>2</sup> partes. <sup>3</sup> and.

<sup>4</sup> verie. <sup>5</sup> was. <sup>6</sup> omitted. <sup>7</sup> exceeding.

<sup>8-8</sup> distributed so liberally therof. <sup>9-9</sup> wel contented.

<sup>10</sup> valued. <sup>11-11</sup> were. <sup>12-12</sup> after Croisant. <sup>13</sup> unto.

and hym selfe / and they dyd hym as greate honour as  
they coude deuyse, & so entered in to the towne, and  
with great <sup>1</sup>Ioy & solempnite thei were receyued /  
<sup>2</sup>they came to the palaies & dysarmed<sup>3</sup> them / & whan <sup>4</sup>  
they were refreshed / than<sup>4</sup> y<sup>e</sup> duke of Calabre & y<sup>e</sup>  
erle Remon came to Croysant / than<sup>2</sup> the erle said. 'O  
right noble knight, replete with all vertues and hyghe  
prowes, to whom no man is comperable / y<sup>e</sup> stronge <sup>8</sup>  
arme / shelde / and resorte<sup>5</sup> of the countree of Prouence  
and Languedoc / by thy hye vertu<sup>6</sup> this day<sup>7</sup> hast saued  
one of the quarters of cristendone, whearby the fayth  
of Iesu<sup>4</sup> chryst is exalted / the whiche yf thou haddest <sup>12</sup>  
no ben / had ben abated and staunched / it is not in  
me to say nor recompt the goodes<sup>8</sup> that ye haue done  
vs this day / nor it lyeth not in me to rewarde it / but  
if it were thy pleasure to abase thy selfe so lowe / as <sup>16</sup>  
to take my doughter in mariage / y<sup>e</sup> whiche I wold  
gladly se / <sup>2</sup>I wyll gyue the / the one halfe of all that  
euer I haue / for a fayrer iewel nor a richer I can not  
giue than my dere doughter whome I loue entyrlly. <sup>20</sup>  
She is the fayrest <sup>9</sup> / the swetest<sup>10</sup> / and the <sup>11</sup>moost  
humble<sup>11</sup> damsell that is now lyuyng.' Whan Croysant  
had well vnderstande the erle Remon he said. 'Syr,  
of your curtoyse and ryche gyfte that ye offre me / I <sup>24</sup>  
wyll not refuse it / but thanke you hertly therfore<sup>12</sup> / &  
as for your doughter whome ye offre to gyue to<sup>4</sup> me /  
I trust<sup>13</sup> I shall do her that honour that on<sup>14</sup> her heed  
I shall set a crowne of golde and make her Empresse <sup>28</sup>  
of Rome / wheare she shall be serued and honoured / as  
lady of<sup>15</sup> all the countree.' Whan the erle herde the  
answere of Croysant / he was right<sup>16</sup> ioyfull / but his  
sone who was there present / <sup>17</sup>had nye raged for<sup>17</sup> dys- <sup>32</sup>

The earl again  
offers Croissant  
his daughter in  
marriage,  
and one half of  
his property.

Croissant accepts  
the offer.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. clxxxvii. col. 1.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> vnarmed.  
<sup>4</sup> omitted.      <sup>5</sup> refuge.      <sup>6</sup> prowess.      <sup>7</sup> thou.  
<sup>8</sup> goodnesse.      <sup>9</sup> most faire.      <sup>10</sup> sweet      <sup>11-11</sup> humblest.  
<sup>12</sup> therof.      <sup>13</sup> that.      <sup>14</sup> vpon.      <sup>15</sup> ouer.      <sup>16</sup> verie.  
<sup>17-17</sup> was neere hand in a rage with the.

- pleasure,<sup>1</sup> and sayd<sup>2</sup> to hym. 'By god, Croysant / syn  
 thus by you I shalbe disherited / and that my father  
 wyll giue you that<sup>3</sup> of right apartayneth to me / or<sup>4</sup> <sup>5</sup>I  
 4 graunt therto, I shall make you to dye of an euil<sup>6</sup> deth /  
 though I do it by treason / nor thou shalte neuer haue  
 my syster in maryage' / thus thought the erles sone to  
 worke against Croysant, who knewe nothyng therof /  
 8 <sup>7</sup>thus without god helpe him / he was lykely to <sup>8</sup>be<sup>8</sup>  
 slayne petyously. Than there began great Ioye in the  
 palais / the erle Remon wente to se his doughter, and  
 sayd to her / 'my dere doughter / knowe for trouth I  
 12 haue gyuen you in mariage / to the moost fayre / and  
 hardiest knight *that* euer was gyrded with<sup>9</sup> swerde:  
 that is Croysant whom ye se here, by whom we<sup>10</sup> all  
 delyuered and brought out of seruage into fredom / for  
 16 we had ben all lost if his hye prowes had not ben, by  
 whom all the paynims are discomfyted' / whan the  
 damsell herde her father she was right ioyous<sup>11</sup> / and  
 thanked god and said. 'Syr, syn it is your pleasure to  
 20 gyue me to this noble knight / I shall not refuse hym /  
 but I am agreed<sup>12</sup> to fulfyl your pleasure,' whearof  
 Croysant was ioyful, for she was so fayre that euery  
 man had meruayle therof. Than the damsell saluted  
 24 Croysant and said. 'Syr, of your comynge and socours  
 we ought to be ioyous<sup>11</sup> / for by you we are restored to  
 ioye: y<sup>e</sup> which was lost' / 'lady, quod Croysant / so  
 goeth the workes of our lorde god / <sup>13</sup>men maketh  
 28 batayles / and god gyueth y<sup>e</sup> victory' / thus deuysynge  
 they entred into y<sup>e</sup> chambre wheare as the bourdes  
 were redy sprede / but Iacars the erles sonne wolde  
 not come there / but he wente into the towne in to a  
 32 secrete place / and thither he sent for ten of his affinite /

The earl's son  
grows more  
wrathful with  
Croissant.

The earl informs  
his daughter of  
Croissant's  
promise to marry  
her.

She willingly  
assents.

Iacars, the  
earl's son,  
summons ten of  
his relatives.

<sup>1</sup> that he had.      <sup>2</sup> enragedly.      <sup>3</sup> which.      <sup>4</sup> before.

<sup>5</sup> Fol. clxxxvii. col. 2.      <sup>6</sup> euill.      <sup>7</sup> and.

<sup>8-8</sup> haue bene.      <sup>9</sup> a.      <sup>10</sup> were.      <sup>11</sup> ioyfull.

<sup>12</sup> content.      <sup>13</sup> for.

and plots to  
murder Croissant  
while asleep.

A young squire  
overhears the  
traitors,

and reveals the  
plot to Croissant.

Croissant will not  
believe such  
treachery.

Croissant sups  
with Earl Remon,

in whom he had parfite affiaunce / than he shewed to  
them all his intencion, and determined that whan Croy-  
sant was a<sup>1</sup> bedde and a slepe / than thei to murdre  
him in his bed <sup>2</sup>and his squier also. Whan these .x. 4  
traytours vnderstode their maister / they answered and  
said how they were all redy to do his commaundement  
what soeuer com therof / thus they taried y<sup>e</sup> houre to  
accomplysshe their vngracious enterpryse / as they were 8  
in their comunicacion / there was in a chambre there  
besyde / a yonge squier who had wel herde their enter-  
pryce & what thei were determined to doo / than he  
said to himselfe *that* surely he wold aduertise Croysant 12  
of their malicious enterpryce / to the entent *that* he  
shuld not be surprised / <sup>3</sup>he departed as *preuely* as he  
coud & <sup>4</sup>cam to Croissant / & shewed him how the  
erles sone with .x. men were determined to murdre him 16  
the<sup>5</sup> same night in his bed slepyng / & how *that* eche  
of them had a sharpe knyfe / & <sup>6</sup>said, 'syr, be <sup>7</sup>gar-  
nysshed<sup>7</sup> to defende your lyfe / for thei all haue sworne  
your deth' / Whan Croysant vnderstode y<sup>e</sup> squier he 20  
waxed as reed as a brenninge coole / & sayd, 'I can  
not byleue *that* suche a treason shuld be in the corage  
of a noble man / as to murdre hym *that* neuer dyd him  
trespas' / 'sir, *quod* the squier / 'ye may do as ye 24  
please / but without ye fynde remedy / ye are but lost.'  
Whan Croysant herde *that* he trembled for<sup>8</sup> displeure  
*that* he was in / & he thought in<sup>9</sup> him selfe *that* he  
wold not shew the matter to no<sup>10</sup> person lyuyng / but 28  
he sware *that* if any came to do him displeaser *that*<sup>11</sup>  
with his swerd he wold cleue his heed to y<sup>e</sup> brayne /  
thus the matter rested tyl<sup>12</sup> it was night / & so he went  
in to y<sup>e</sup> hal amonge<sup>8</sup> other lordes, & there he founde y<sup>e</sup> 32  
erle / who made hym great chere / the<sup>13</sup> souper was redy,

<sup>1</sup> in.      <sup>2</sup> Fol. clxxxvii. back, col. 1.      <sup>3</sup> then.      <sup>4</sup> so.  
<sup>5</sup> very.      <sup>6</sup> he.      <sup>7-7</sup> readie armed.      <sup>8</sup> the.      <sup>9</sup> within.  
<sup>10</sup> any.      <sup>11</sup> omitted.      <sup>12</sup> untill.      <sup>13</sup> and.



and<sup>1</sup> than they sate downe: of their seruyce I make  
no rehersall / after they had souped diuers sportes were  
shewed in y<sup>e</sup> hall, & whan<sup>2</sup> houre requisyt came enery  
4 man went to bed / <sup>3</sup>y<sup>e</sup> erle Remon had pre<sup>4</sup>pared for  
Croysant a fayre chambre with a riche bed for him / &  
a couche bed for his squier / than Croisant toke leue of  
y<sup>e</sup> erle & of the damsell with whom he was <sup>5</sup>in  
8 amours<sup>5</sup> / than he went to his chambre wel accompanied  
with knightes and squiers / than<sup>6</sup> with in a seson<sup>6</sup> thei  
toke leue of him / & than he was alone<sup>7</sup> saue with<sup>7</sup>  
his squier / whom he made to lye in the couch bed<sup>1</sup> /  
12 & shewed him nothyng of *that* he thought to do /  
than Croysant armed him at all peeces / his helme on  
his heed / his shelde about his neeke & his swerde  
about him / and so layde him downe in his bed &  
16 hyd him with clothes that his armure shuld not be sene  
by them that shuld<sup>8</sup> come thyder / <sup>9</sup>there he lay as  
preuely as he coude / & than about mydnight the erles  
son entred in to the chambre all vnarmed with his  
20 swerde in his hande & his .x. companyons with him /  
eche of them with a sharpe weapon in their handes /  
than thei approched to Croysantes bed, than<sup>3</sup> the erles  
sone lyfte vp his swerde & strake Croysant on the  
24 helme suche a stroke *that* the swerde sverued in his  
hande, whearby he parceyued *that* he was armed &  
that he had warnyng of their comyng, whearof he was  
right serowfull / than he recouered againe another  
28 stroke, thynkyng to haue slaine Croysant / but he  
coulede not / his helme was so good / than the other .x.  
strake at Croysant / but they coulede do hym no hurt,  
his harneys<sup>10</sup> was so good / than Croisant <sup>11</sup>as a hardi  
32 knight<sup>11</sup> rose vp quickly with his swerde in his hande /  
whan the erles sone sawe that / he was neuer so

and afterwards  
withdraws with  
his squire to a  
rich chamber.

Croissant puts on  
strong armour.

The earl's son  
enters,

and strikes  
Croissant on the  
helm, but does  
him no hurt.

The other traitors  
strike him also.

Croissant rises,

<sup>1</sup> omitted.    <sup>2</sup> the.    <sup>3</sup> and.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. clxxxvii. back. col. 2.    <sup>5</sup> <sup>5</sup> enamoured and.

<sup>6</sup> while.    <sup>7-7</sup> sauing onely.    <sup>8</sup> would.

<sup>9</sup> so.    <sup>10</sup> armour.    <sup>11-11</sup> after quickly.

and strikes the  
earl's son dead.

But the others  
kill Croissant's  
squire.

Croissant slays  
five of them.

afrayde in all his lyfe / & thought to haue fled away /  
but Croysant was before him / & gaue him suche a  
stroke on y<sup>e</sup> heed with his swerde that he claue <sup>1</sup>his  
heed<sup>1</sup> to y<sup>e</sup> chyn, & so he fel downe deed / & the other 4  
had slayne Croysantes <sup>2</sup>squier, whearof he was sory /  
than he ran at them lyke a man dysperate, and dyd  
so moche that within a shorte space he had slayne fyue  
of them / & the other fled away into a nother chambre 8  
and durste<sup>3</sup> speake no<sup>4</sup> worde.

¶ Howe Croysant departed from Nyse with  
his swerde in his hande, and howe the erle  
Remon was sorowful for the deth of his <sup>12</sup>  
sone, and chased after Croisant, but he  
coud not be found. Ca. C.lxxxviii.

Croissant is in  
fear because he  
has slain the  
earl's son,



and determines to  
flee.

He finds the  
stables barred.

Han Croysant saw himselve so enter- <sup>16</sup>  
priced, and that he had slayne the  
erles sone, he was in great feare / for  
he knew well<sup>5</sup> yf he were taken he  
shulde be in daunger of his lyfe / <sup>20</sup>  
therefore hastily he departed out of the palais, and whan  
he came to the stable wheare his hors stode / he founde  
a greate yron chayne before the dore, to the entent that  
y<sup>e</sup> hors shulde not be taken out in the nyght tyme / <sup>24</sup>  
<sup>6</sup>whan he saw that he was sore discomforted, and said,  
'O very god, now by thy grace ayde me, I ought well  
to be sory whan I must leue my hors. Alas, now  
I can not tell how to beare myn armure / certaynely <sup>28</sup>  
without<sup>7</sup> god ayde<sup>8</sup> me now I se no way how I may<sup>9</sup>  
scape alieue. Alas, I thought to haue ben married to y<sup>e</sup>  
erles doughter / but now I am ferre fro it syn I haue  
slayne her brother / I was <sup>10</sup>not in mynde so soone<sup>10</sup> <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> <sup>1</sup> it.      <sup>2</sup> Fol. clxxxviii. col. 1.      <sup>3</sup> not.      <sup>4</sup> one.  
<sup>5</sup> that.      <sup>6</sup> and.      <sup>7</sup> except.      <sup>8</sup> succour.  
<sup>9</sup> can.      <sup>10-10</sup> minded.

to haue retourned into my cowntre / tyl<sup>1</sup> I hadde conquered some honoure and londes, whearby I might haue ben receyued honourably of them that dyd set  
 4 nothyng by me' / than he began sore to wepe / <sup>2</sup>he went through <sup>3</sup>the towne <sup>4</sup>as preuely<sup>4</sup> as he mighte / He goes all armed through the town, and enters an empty house.  
 he coule not trauayle longe in his armure / <sup>5</sup>he behelde in a corner of a strete <sup>6</sup>a voyde house,<sup>6</sup> thyder he  
 8 went<sup>7</sup> & vnarmed him of all his armure except his swerde, and so he was in a wyght iacked, and than he rested not tyll<sup>1</sup> he came to the gate, and called the porter and desyred him to open the gate, saynge howe<sup>8</sup> and goes to the gate of the city.  
 12 he had busynes to do a lytell without the towne / the porter answered chorlysshely,<sup>9</sup> and sayl / 'there requyreth no hast, he might well abyde' / for he sayd he wolde not open no gate tyll<sup>1</sup> it was fayre day. 'Frende,' The porter refuses to open the gate.  
 16 quod Croysant, 'I praye the shewe me this curtoyse' / the porter answered fyersly, & said / 'thou doest but lose thy payne<sup>10</sup> for the gate shall not be opened the<sup>4</sup> tyll<sup>1</sup> the sonne ryse.' Whan Croysant sawe that <sup>4</sup>for no  
 20 fayre wordes<sup>4</sup> y<sup>e</sup> porter wolde<sup>11</sup> open the gate<sup>12</sup> / he set his hande vpon<sup>13</sup> his swerd, and sayd / 'thou false traytour, without<sup>14</sup> incontynent<sup>15</sup> thou<sup>16</sup> open the gate with my swerde I shal slee the.' whan the porter sawe  
 24 that Croysant held a naked swerde in his hande to <sup>17</sup>haue stryken<sup>17</sup> him, he had great feare / <sup>18</sup>he came forth in hast with the keyes in his hande, and said, 'syr, I shall open y<sup>e</sup> gate with a good wyl;' how be it and the porter yields.  
 28 he was so afrayde that all his body trembled for feare / than he came to the gate & opened the wycket / <sup>18</sup>than Croisant issued out vnarmed, and had on but a cloke ouer his doubled,<sup>19</sup> and his swerde about him, and

<sup>1</sup> vntill.      <sup>2</sup> so.      <sup>3</sup> Fol. clxxxviii. col. 2.      <sup>4-4</sup> omitted.<sup>5</sup> but.      <sup>6-6</sup> before of.      <sup>7</sup> and he went before thyder.<sup>8</sup> that.      <sup>9</sup> stubbornly.      <sup>10</sup> labour.      <sup>11</sup> not.<sup>12</sup> by fayre meanes.      <sup>13</sup> to.      <sup>14</sup> except.<sup>15</sup> incontynent after gate.      <sup>16</sup> dost.      <sup>17-17</sup> strike.<sup>18</sup> and.      <sup>19</sup> cloake.

Croissant escapes  
to Rome.

The traitorous  
companions of  
the earl's son  
who had escaped  
alive tell the  
earl of Crois-  
sant's deed.

The earl swoons  
on seeing his dead  
son.

a lytell purse by<sup>1</sup> his gyrdell, and therin twenty shyl-  
lynges in money, and no more / thus as ye haue herde  
Croissant issued out of y<sup>e</sup> towne of Nyse in Prouance,  
and he<sup>2</sup> toke the way to<sup>3</sup> Rome, but or<sup>4</sup> he had gone 4  
two leeges / the fyue traytours that fledde fro him and  
were hydden in a chambre / whan they thought *that*  
Croissant was departed, for thei thought <sup>5</sup>he wolde not  
tary bycause he had slayne the erles sone / than they 8  
went out of the chambre makyng great bruyt and  
great<sup>2</sup> noyse / soo that euery man rose in the palayes /  
and the erle him selfe rose and came in to y<sup>e</sup> hall with  
his swerde in his hande, & there he founde the fyue 12  
traytours / who shewed hym that for certayne wordes  
betwene Croysant and his sone there was a fray be-  
twene them / whearby your sone is slayne by the  
handes of Croissant / the whiche he dyde wylfully, to 16  
the entent to haue all youre londes after youre dyssease,  
bycause ye haue gyuen him youre doughter in mariage /  
and or<sup>4</sup> we coulde come he was fledde / but or<sup>4</sup> he  
departed out of the chambre he slewe fyue men besyde 20  
your sone, for they were not armed / &<sup>6</sup> Croysant was  
armed / <sup>7</sup>he semed rather a spirite than any<sup>8</sup> mortall  
man / and whan we sawe that we coulde not approche  
to him bycause he was armed / we slew his squier. 24  
Whan the erle herde them it was no meruayle thought  
he was sorowfull; <sup>7</sup>than he went in to the chambre  
wheare as his sone lay dede / whan he came thyder<sup>9</sup> for  
great distres that he had at his herte he fell downe 28  
vpon his sone in a swone / <sup>7</sup>whan he came to himselfe  
he cryed, and sayd, 'A, Croysant, your acqueyntaunce  
is to me very herde / than he commaunded his men to  
arme them and incontynent to go after Croysant, who 32  
so petyously hath slayne his sone / and said, 'if I maye

<sup>1</sup> at.      <sup>2</sup> omitted.      <sup>3</sup> towards.      <sup>4</sup> before.


<sup>5</sup> Fol. clxxxviii. back, col. 1.      <sup>6</sup> but.      <sup>7</sup> and.      <sup>8</sup> a.

<sup>9</sup> there.

take him he shall neuer scape my handes without  
 deth' / than in the palais and in the towne every  
 ma[n]<sup>1</sup> armed them, and the erle himselfe armed him  
 4 & mounted on his hors and issued out at<sup>2</sup> y<sup>e</sup> gate with  
 moche<sup>3</sup> people / and than thei rode abroad in the  
 countree serchyng / and demaundyng if any man met  
 with Croi<sup>s</sup>ant, but he coude here no certayn newes of  
 8 him except of one man, that said howe he met hym a  
 fyue leeges fro thens / and how<sup>5</sup> that he went a great  
 pace.

He vows Crois-  
 sant's death,  
 and orders his  
 arrest.

He with many  
 armed men  
 pursue Croissant,  
 but to no purpose.

12  Han the erle herde that / he saw wel it  
 was but a payn<sup>6</sup> lost to folowe any  
 ferther / than he returned to y<sup>e</sup> towne  
 right sorowful and sore displeased for  
 the deth of his sone / and yet againe  
 16 he greatly complainned for Croissant for<sup>7</sup> that ad-  
 uenture, and said<sup>8</sup> a more valiaunt knight can<sup>9</sup> not be  
 founde / nor<sup>10</sup> more curtoyse / nor more <sup>11</sup>sage<sup>11</sup>, wold  
 to god that bytwene him and me <sup>12</sup>there were<sup>12</sup> a good  
 20 accorde,<sup>13</sup> so that he hadde my doughter in mariage /  
 so<sup>14</sup> that after my disese he might haue my londe /  
 than diuers of his men said / Sir, lete him go, he seme<sup>15</sup>  
 rather a dyuell than a man / he is fiers and cruell / he  
 24 setteth<sup>16</sup> no more to slee men<sup>17</sup> than some do to drinke  
 the<sup>5</sup> good wine / let him goo / he was borne<sup>7</sup> an  
 yll houre / than the erle entred in to the towne right  
 sorowfull and sore displeased for the deth of his sone /  
 28 & also for Croisantes aduenture / <sup>14</sup>than he caused  
 his sone to be buried as it apartained / <sup>14</sup>great sorowe  
 was made by the erle, and by y<sup>e</sup> duke of Calabre and  
 other knightes that were there / but thei knew not the

The pursuers  
 return home,

<sup>1</sup> may in text. <sup>2</sup> of. <sup>3</sup> many.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. clxxxviii. back, col. 2. <sup>5</sup> omitted. <sup>6</sup> labour.

<sup>7</sup> in. <sup>8</sup> that. <sup>9</sup> could. <sup>10</sup> neither.

<sup>11-11</sup> wise, &. <sup>12-12</sup> before bytwene. <sup>13</sup> amitie.

<sup>14</sup> and. <sup>15</sup> semeth to be. <sup>16</sup> makes. <sup>17</sup> a man.



and none of them  
knows the truth.

trouth of the matter / who so euer made sorow /  
the erles doughter was sorowfull / both for her brother  
and also for y<sup>e</sup> noble Croisant whom she had thought  
to mary. Now let vs leaue spekyng of them, and 4  
retourne to Croisant.

<sup>1</sup>¶ Howe Croisant arived in the subburbes of a  
lytel towne called Florencolle, and lodged  
amonge ruffians and vyleyns / and howe 8  
thei fell at stryfe / and how Croisant slewe  
them and fledde, and was in great dau<sup>n</sup>ger.  
And howe he came in to the cyte of Rome,  
whereas there was noo man that wolde 12  
gyue hym one morsel of brede / and how  
he wente and lay in an olde palayes on<sup>2</sup>  
a burden of strawe. Capitulo .Clxxxix.



Croissant  
journeys on,  
but finds little to  
eat or drink.

He approaches  
Florencolle.

Han Croissant saw that he was departed 16  
fro y<sup>e</sup> towne of Nyse, and that he was  
alone afote / he made his complayntes  
to our lord god, requyeynge him  
humbly to haue pety on<sup>3</sup> him / than 20  
he went forth, and so trauailed thre dayes & thre  
nightes without mete or drinke / but a lytel brede and  
water / he had such hungre and thirst that he could  
scant<sup>4</sup> susteyne himselfe on his fete / so at last a lytell 24  
before the sonne was sette he came to a lytel towne  
called Florencolle, whearof the gates were shytted whan<sup>5</sup>  
he came thyder / than in y<sup>e</sup> subburbes he saw a house  
lyke a tauerne, & he sware though he shulde be slayne 28  
he wolde go to that house to ete & drinke / and to pay  
well for his scot<sup>6</sup> / it had ben better for him to haue  
passed by / for there he was in great peryll of his lyfe,

<sup>1</sup> Fol. clxxxix. col. 1.    <sup>2</sup> vpon.    <sup>3</sup> of.    <sup>4</sup> scarce.  
<sup>5</sup> before.    <sup>6</sup> shot.

as ye shall here / thus he approached to y<sup>e</sup> house and  
herde how the cokes were busy in the kytchyn / than  
he sawe a great fyre in a chambre / & wheare there was  
4 <sup>1</sup>the greatest ruffyans / & plaies at dyse in all y<sup>e</sup> towne /  
& they had prepared flesshe and fysshe for their  
souper. Whan Croysant saw y<sup>e</sup> preperacion *that* was  
made there for the syxe ruffians / he entred in to the  
8 house and saluted the hoost, & demaunded if he might  
be lodged there / y<sup>e</sup> hoost said ye / & how he shulde  
be there well serued bothe of wyne and of meate / suche  
as he wolde demaunde / than Croisant entred<sup>2</sup> in /  
12 <sup>3</sup>the ruffians met with<sup>4</sup> him and said how he was  
welcome, and eche of them pynched other & wynked  
with y<sup>e</sup> one eye, and said softly to the maister of  
them / this great stradiot<sup>5</sup> is come well at a poynte /  
16 for or<sup>6</sup> he departe he shall pay for our scot<sup>7</sup> & expence /  
and anone we shal<sup>8</sup> put y<sup>e</sup> dyse in to his handes /  
whearby he shall leaue gowne / cap / and money if he  
haue any. Croysant dyd not vnderstande them by  
20 cause they spake Iaragon<sup>9</sup> / than Croisant said / ‘syrs,  
if I eate with you, paynge my scot,<sup>7</sup> shall it turne you  
to any displeasure.’ ‘frende,’ quod the maister of  
them / ‘it pleaseth me well that ye eate with vs’ / than  
24 they wasshed<sup>10</sup> and sate downe at the table nere by<sup>11</sup>  
the fyre, <sup>3</sup>thei were wel serue of euery thyng. Whan  
Croisant was set he began sore<sup>4</sup> to fede / <sup>12</sup>for the  
hunger that he had<sup>12</sup> / for in thre dayes before he hadde  
28 eaten nothyng but brede & water / whearfore<sup>13</sup> he  
had the better appetyte, and also he founde there good  
wyne and fresshe, & he drank therof at his pleasure.  
whan thei had wel eaten & dronken, & were wel chafed  
32 by reason of the good wyne / the hoost rose vp and

He enters a  
tavern,  
where cooks are  
busy,  
and ruffians  
playing with dice.

Croissant asks the  
host for lodging,  
and is well  
received.

He asks permis-  
sion to eat with  
the ruffians,  
paying his own  
scot.

He makes a good  
meal.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. clxxxix. col. 2.      <sup>2</sup> went.      <sup>3</sup> and.      <sup>4</sup> omitted.

<sup>5</sup> Trauailer.      <sup>6</sup> before.      <sup>7</sup> shot.      <sup>8</sup> wil.

<sup>9</sup> whisperingly.      <sup>10</sup> all together.      <sup>11</sup> to.

<sup>12-12</sup> well, (his hunger was so great).

<sup>13</sup> & therefore.

The host brings  
the reckoning,

but the chief of  
the ruffians  
insists that they  
should all play  
with dice,  
and that the loser  
should pay all.

Croissant offers to  
pay the whole  
bill.

One of the  
ruffians calls for  
a new bottle of  
wine,

and the chief of  
them again pro-  
poses to cast with  
the dice to decide  
who should pay  
for it.  
Croissant refuses  
to play with dice,  
and declares that  
he has already  
paid enough.

said, 'syrs / it is tyme to make rekenynge, and *that*  
euery man paye his parte' / than the maister ruffian  
said, 'syr, make ye y<sup>e</sup> accompt / <sup>1</sup>ye can better do it /  
than we / <sup>2</sup>shewe vs what we shall pay euery man <sup>4</sup>  
lyke' / 'syrs,' quod the hoost, 'as nere <sup>3</sup>as I can  
reken ye must paye in all .xii. sh., & loke euery man  
pay his parte' / than the maister ruffian began to  
swere bloode & woundes that thei shulde plei at the 8  
dyse to se who shulde pay for all / than he said to  
Croisant / 'frende, ye must come playe with vs ;  
beholde here .iii. dyse, good and square, we must do so  
that<sup>1</sup> one shall<sup>4</sup> pay the hole expence whan<sup>5</sup> we <sup>12</sup>  
departe' / 'Syr,' quod Croisant, 'we shall not nede to  
play at dyse to know who shall pay for the scot,<sup>6</sup> I  
wyll paye it all togyder without ony stryfe' / than thei  
said thei were well content ther with, & thanked him / <sup>16</sup>  
than one of them, the falsest vyleyne amonge them,  
wyfully caste downe a potte of wyne vpon y<sup>e</sup> table,  
wherof his felowes blamed him ; than he answe[d] &  
said / 'syrs, ye nede not to be angry therwith / for <sup>20</sup>  
there is none of you wyll drynke therof / it is better to  
haue a fresshe potte of wyne of a new vessel' / thei  
said, well that is trew, so be it / than their hoost  
brought them a new pot ful of wyne, & said, 'syrs, this <sup>24</sup>  
pot of wyne is not of the fyrst rekenynge, this is  
a potte of a newe accompt' / than the maister ruffian  
said to Croysant / 'Syr, take and cast the dyse, for the  
first cast shal be yours.' Croysant beheld them fiersly, <sup>28</sup>  
& said / 'nay, syrs, I shall kepe me therfro<sup>7</sup> / for  
I neuer played at y<sup>e</sup><sup>8</sup> dyse in al my lyfe / be content  
with the .xii. s. *that* I shall pay for our scot<sup>6</sup> / for by  
reason of the longe vyage *that* I haue made I am not <sup>32</sup>  
wel furnysshed of money / for I haue but xiii. s. in my  
purse' / than y<sup>e</sup> maister said / 'thou art better arayed

<sup>1</sup> for.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> Fol. clxxxix back, col. 1.      <sup>4</sup> must.  
<sup>5</sup> before.      <sup>6</sup> shot.      <sup>7</sup> from that.      <sup>8</sup> omitted.

- than we / <sup>1</sup>thou must vse thy wordes<sup>2</sup> other wyse / for  
 thou shalt not thus scape / thou shalt leue thy gowne  
 to pay for our scot<sup>2</sup> to morow in y<sup>e</sup> morning.' than  
 4 another ruffian said / ' & I wyll haue his hose & his  
 shoes<sup>3</sup> to bye fyssh for our dyner' / whan Croysant  
 herde the <sup>4</sup>vylayne he began to chaunge colour, & was  
 sore displeased, and said right fyersly / 'Syrs, leue your  
 8 clatterynge, yet I haue .xiii. s. in my purse, the whiche  
 I wyl gyue you rather than ye shuld be displeased / me  
 thynke this ought to sufficee you / for,<sup>1</sup> syrs, I am  
 a noble man, & lately I was made knight, for if I were  
 12 ones agayne in my countree I wold neuer come<sup>5</sup> thens  
 to seke for such aduentures / ye ought to beare me<sup>6</sup>  
 honor syn I <sup>7</sup>say to<sup>7</sup> you that I am a knight' / y<sup>e</sup>  
 ruffian said / howe his wordes nor his prechyng shuld  
 16 not auayle him / but that he must leue his gowne /  
 iacked / hosen & shoes / than Croisant, replete with yre,  
 dyd of his surecot, the whiche was furred with armyns,  
 & cast it to them / & said, 'syrs, nowe ye ought to be  
 20 content with me / & I ought to be quyt' / whan  
 y<sup>e</sup> ruffians vnderstode him thei cried all at ones that he  
 shulde put of his hosen & his shoen / & his gyrdle / &  
 purse / & gowne / & bad him quickly delyuer it to  
 24 them / and than to auoyde y<sup>e</sup> house / for thei said there  
 was no lodgyng for him / <sup>1</sup>the hoost to plesse the  
 vylaynes said howe thei said trouthe / than Croisant, ful  
 of yre & dyspleasure, turned his visage to y<sup>e</sup> benche  
 28 where as<sup>8</sup> his good swerd lay / wherof he was ioyous<sup>9</sup>  
 that thei had not taken it away / than he stept thyder  
 & toke it in his handes & drewe it out, & came to the  
 vylaynes, & thei arose against him with their swerdes  
 32 in their handes / & he strake y<sup>e</sup> maister ruffian so  
 meruaylous a stroke / that he claue his hed to y<sup>e</sup> teth /

But one of the  
 ruffians insists  
 that he is  
 wealthier than  
 they, and must  
 pay their scot  
 again.

Croissant grows  
 angry,  
 but offers to give  
 them all the  
 money he has  
 left ;

he says he is a  
 knight.

The ruffians  
 demand all his  
 clothes.

Croissant in  
 wrath gives them  
 his surecot,

but they demand  
 his hose, shoes,  
 girdle, purse, and  
 gown, and bid  
 him, after he has  
 given them these,  
 leave the house.

Croissant draws  
 his sword,

and strikes the  
 chief of the  
 ruffians dead.

<sup>1</sup> and.

<sup>2</sup> tongue.

<sup>3</sup> tomorrow.

<sup>4</sup> Fol. clxxxix. back. col. 2.

<sup>5</sup> from. <sup>6</sup> my.

<sup>7-7</sup> shew.

<sup>8</sup> omitted.

<sup>9</sup> ioyfull.

Three others he  
kills.

The host raises  
the cry of murder,

but Croissant  
rushes from the  
house and from  
the town.

The rulers of the  
town come to the  
tavern,

and order the  
men to pursue  
Croissant.

so he fell downe deed before y<sup>e</sup> chymney / & fro  
another he strake his heed / & than he slewe y<sup>e</sup> thirde /  
& the<sup>1</sup> fourth / & the other two had so great feare *that*  
thei fled away / than the hoost began to crye / a thefe / 4  
a murdrer; but Croissant wold do him no hurt, he  
issued out of y<sup>e</sup> house with<sup>2</sup> his swerd in his hande,  
& ran as fast as <sup>3</sup>he coulede tyll<sup>4</sup> he was without y<sup>e</sup>  
subburbes / than he ran in the feld ouer hedges & 8  
dykes,<sup>5</sup> to thentent *that* none shuld folow him; than  
he herkened towardes y<sup>e</sup> towne, where he herd great  
crynge / & noyse of y<sup>e</sup> hoost of the house *that* he cam  
fro / wherby all his neyghbours / tailers / cordiners<sup>6</sup> / 12  
drapers / & men of all craftes / came to y<sup>e</sup> house, and  
there was such<sup>7</sup> noyse made in y<sup>e</sup> subburbes / *that* the  
towne gates were opened, & y<sup>e</sup> burgesses issued out &  
came to the house where as the noyse was / & whan y<sup>e</sup> 16  
rulers<sup>8</sup> of y<sup>e</sup> towne came thyder & sawe the men lye  
deed / they demaunded of y<sup>e</sup> hoost who had done *that*  
murdre / 'Syr,' quod y<sup>e</sup> hoost / <sup>1</sup>'*that* hath done<sup>1</sup>  
a great<sup>1</sup> vacabond<sup>9</sup> / who is bygge & mighty / for 20  
I neuer sawe with myn eyen a man better made ne<sup>10</sup>  
fourmed / & he is fled away with his swerde in his  
handes<sup>11</sup> yonder hie way / but, syr, for goddes sake  
com not to nere him / for he semeth no man whan he 24  
is angry / but he is lyke a man out of his wytte with-  
out<sup>12</sup> feare or<sup>13</sup> doubte' / than y<sup>e</sup> ruler<sup>8</sup> commaunded  
to folowe him bothe on horsbacke & a fote, & they ran  
al to harnes,<sup>14</sup> though y<sup>e</sup> captayne were not greatly 28  
afrayde / yet he wolde not be y<sup>e</sup> first shulde go forth /  
he loued better *that* another shuld take that aduauntage /  
thus on all sydes a<sup>11</sup> horsbacke & a fote / they folowed  
Croissant, who helde<sup>15</sup> not y<sup>e</sup> hie way / & it was farre in 32  
the night, & also there were many that wolde not chafe

<sup>1</sup> omitted. <sup>2</sup> in in text. <sup>3</sup> Fol. clxxxx. col. 1.

<sup>4</sup> untill.

<sup>5</sup> diches.

<sup>6</sup> Shoemakers.

<sup>7</sup> a.

<sup>8</sup> Magistrates.

<sup>9</sup> hath done it.

<sup>10</sup> nor.

<sup>11</sup> on.

<sup>12</sup> all.

<sup>13</sup> and.

<sup>14</sup> armour.

<sup>15</sup> kept.



- themselfe ouer sore to seke for him / for thei wolde  
 make no prease to receyue his offryng / for<sup>1</sup> they fered  
 to fynde him / <sup>2</sup>whan thei had sought a longe space in  
 4 y<sup>e</sup> felde & in the<sup>3</sup> wayes, & coude not fynde him /  
<sup>4</sup>than<sup>4</sup> thei all returned to their towne / & Croisant went  
 euer fro y<sup>e</sup> towne warde with his swerde<sup>5</sup> in his hande  
<sup>4</sup>all naked<sup>4</sup> / <sup>2</sup>whan he saw that he was wel two leeges  
 8 of them,<sup>4</sup> he entred into y<sup>e</sup> hye waye, & praysed god  
 that he was so scaped with <sup>6</sup>out daunger / but he was  
 sore displeased in that he had neuer a peny in his purse,  
 & nothyng but his swerde &<sup>4</sup> his cote / & a rich purse  
 12 at his gyrdle, & also he sawe<sup>7</sup> it was wynter, & frost &  
 snowe / also he felt y<sup>e</sup> cold wynde, y<sup>e</sup> whiche dyd him  
 moch yll / thus he went forth al night / & the next  
 day tyll<sup>8</sup> it was nere night / than he ariued at a  
 16 vyllage / <sup>2</sup>ther he was fayne to sel his swerd for lacke  
 of money to pay for his scot<sup>9</sup> / he came to a lodge  
 where he was well serued of euerythyng that he wolde  
 haue, than in the mornynge whan he departed he solde  
 20 his purs for as moch as he coude gete / than<sup>2</sup> he  
 trauayled forth so long that he approached to Rome /  
 & than<sup>4</sup> he cam to a lodgyng without the gate, & there  
 he lodged that night / than<sup>2</sup> in the mornynge he de-  
 24 maunded of his hoost to whome the towne pertained,  
 & who was lord therof, & what is<sup>4</sup> his name<sup>10</sup> that  
 gouerneth the towne / the hoost said, 'frend, he that  
 now is lord here is named Guimart of Puile, but or<sup>11</sup> he  
 28 came hider we had a yong lord, the most<sup>4</sup> fayrest yong  
 gentylman that euer was sene / & he was sone to y<sup>e</sup>  
 noble emperour yde / ye somewhat resemble him / but  
 he was of so yll rule & so ful of folies<sup>4</sup> and youth<sup>4</sup> /  
 32 that all the riches that his father had left him / he  
 dispended,<sup>12</sup> & gaue away<sup>4</sup> his riches<sup>4</sup> to euery man

Croissant escapes  
them,

but he has no  
money, and the  
weather is very  
cold.

He comes to a  
village, and sells  
his sword and  
purse.

He reaches Rome,

and learns how  
Guymart of Puile  
rules there.

<sup>1</sup> because. <sup>2</sup> and. <sup>3</sup> high. <sup>4-4</sup> omitted.

<sup>5</sup> naked. <sup>6</sup> Fol. clxxx. col. 2. <sup>7</sup> that. <sup>8</sup> untill.

<sup>9</sup> shot.

<sup>10</sup> was.

<sup>11</sup> before.

<sup>12</sup> spent.

that wold <sup>1</sup>haue it, & so he gaue so moche to euery man *that*<sup>1</sup> he left himself nothyng to lyue by. And after I herde say that he had in himselfe suche shame *that* he departed priuely with a squier & went to seke <sup>4</sup>his aduentures / but no man knoweth where he is / nor whyder <sup>2</sup>that euer<sup>2</sup> he wyll<sup>3</sup> come agayne or not / and y<sup>c</sup> comoners<sup>4</sup> of the cyte made lytell therof / for after he was departed they sente for Guymart of Puile, <sup>8</sup>whom they haue made emperour.<sup>5</sup> Whan Croysant vnderstode his hoost / <sup>6</sup>right pytuously<sup>6</sup> he complayned <sup>7</sup>to him selfe, & said, ‘Alas, caytiue that I am, what shall I do that thus bath loste all myn enherit.<sup>12</sup> aunce without recouer / & besyde that, I haue nothyng to spende / nor I haue no crafte<sup>8</sup> to lyue by / it muste behoue me to dye for<sup>9</sup> hungre & colde, I haue no more but .xxv. s., for the which I solde my purse.’ Thus as <sup>16</sup>wel as he coud he contynued tyll lent / than the season began to waxe somewhat hotter / <sup>10</sup>euery day in the mornynge he wolde here masse<sup>11</sup> / euery man that sawe him / behelde him sore<sup>12</sup> for the great beaute that he <sup>20</sup>was of / <sup>10</sup>there were dyuers that knewe him / but they wolde make no semblaunt<sup>13</sup> therof / to the entente that they wolde gyue to him nothyng / <sup>10</sup>whan they sawe him thei wolde eschewe<sup>14</sup> the way, bycause he shuld not <sup>24</sup>knowe them / there were many of them that he had done them moche good,<sup>15</sup> and gyuen them in suche wyse that they were become riche & he pore / & ther was none of them that wolde offre him one morsel of brede / <sup>28</sup>wherof he was sorowfull / for than he sawe wel his money was gone, so that he had neuer a peny<sup>16</sup> / than he thought to sel his gowne rather than to dye for

He lives at Rome  
in retirement,

and none of his  
old friends will  
have aught to do  
with him.

<sup>1-1</sup> craue anything of him so that in the end. <sup>2-2</sup> omitted.

<sup>3</sup> euer. <sup>4</sup> communalte. <sup>5</sup> of this Empire.

<sup>6-6</sup> after compleyned. <sup>7</sup> Fol. clxxxx. back, col. 1.

<sup>8</sup> trade. <sup>9</sup> through. <sup>10</sup> and. <sup>11</sup> seruice and.

<sup>12</sup> greatly. <sup>13</sup> semblaunce. <sup>14</sup> shun.

<sup>15</sup> vnto. <sup>16</sup> left.

hungre, & so he dyd / he solde it for xxviii s., & than  
 he taryed in his lodgyng as long as his money endured /  
 so<sup>1</sup> he contynued<sup>2</sup> tyll<sup>3</sup> Easter / by that tyme all his  
 4 money was done.<sup>4</sup> Than he thought<sup>5</sup> he wold go in<sup>6</sup>  
 the stretes to se yf he myght spye any burgesses to  
 whom he had done in tymes past some good vnto / &  
 to demaunde of him some courtoyse / & so he issued out  
 8 of his lodgyng & walked into the stretes & parceyued<sup>7</sup>  
 a ryche burges / who was lenyng out at a wyndowe in  
 his house / Croysant knewe him well / for it was  
 he that made him ryche / <sup>8</sup>for afore<sup>8</sup> he was but pore /  
 12 than he thought to knowlege him self to that burges /  
 than Croysant came<sup>9</sup> and saluted <sup>10</sup>him right humbly,  
 and sayd / ' syr,<sup>11</sup> remembraunce of a pore caytyue to  
 whom fortune is contrary / who in tyme past dyd you  
 16 moche good whan ye serued him / yf ye be a good man,  
 as I hyleue ye be<sup>12</sup> / of that goodnes <sup>13</sup>ye haue<sup>13</sup>  
 remembraunce / & it may so be / yf ye do so ye shall  
 fare the better' / whan the burges herde Croysant  
 20 he behelde him fyersly / <sup>14</sup>he knew him anone<sup>14</sup> / &  
 without makyng<sup>15</sup> any maner of answeere, he called his  
 page, and commaunded him to brynge him a pan full  
 of water to y<sup>e</sup> wyndowe / and he dyd as his maister had  
 24 commaunded him / than y<sup>e</sup> burges toke y<sup>e</sup> panne full of  
 water / than<sup>1</sup> he behelde Croisant who stode vnder the  
 wyndow / and dyd cast the water vpon his heed / soo  
 that his fayre heere, cote & shyrt, were all wete /  
 28 Croisant without any worde spekyng made him selfe  
 clene / and after<sup>16</sup> sayd to y<sup>e</sup> burges that yf he lyued  
 longe the offence that he hadde done him<sup>17</sup> shulde  
 derely <sup>18</sup>be bought / <sup>18</sup>the burges, who was proud &  
 32 disdaynfull, set but lytell by his wordes / Croisant,

He has to sell his gown,

but at last all his money is spent.

Croissant appeals for aid to a burges whom he himself in past time had made rich.

But the burges only throws a pan of water at him.

<sup>1</sup> and. <sup>2</sup> there. <sup>3</sup> vntill. <sup>4</sup> gone. <sup>5</sup> that.

<sup>6</sup> to. <sup>7</sup> saw. <sup>8-8</sup> and before. <sup>9</sup> went.

<sup>10</sup> Fol. clxxxx. back, col. 2. <sup>11</sup> haue. <sup>12</sup> are.

<sup>13-13</sup> haue you. <sup>14</sup> presently. <sup>15</sup> of. <sup>16</sup> afterward.

<sup>17</sup> he. <sup>18-18</sup> buy it but.

who was right sorowfull, toke his way towardses the  
 palayes, before y<sup>e</sup> whiche there was an olde palais,  
 where as no man had dwelled in of a long space,  
<sup>1</sup>he entred in at the gate, the whiche was great, and <sup>4</sup>  
 stode open / and there he sawe a great pyller, where as  
 there laye two bundles<sup>2</sup> of strawe / *than* he layd him  
 downe & slept right sore,<sup>3</sup> angry with the burges *that*  
 had so wete him with water / y<sup>e</sup> whiche burges, after <sup>8</sup>  
<sup>4</sup>that<sup>4</sup> he had cast this water vpon Croysant, he went  
 to the palayes to the emperour Guymart to flatter and  
 to please him / <sup>1</sup>he founde the emperoure lenyng in a  
 wyndowe, and he saluted him, and said / 'syr, I bryng<sup>12</sup>  
 certayne tydynges of Croisant / sone to themperour ; I  
 who of right ought to be enheritour of this empyre,  
 wherof ye be<sup>5</sup> as now em<sup>6</sup>perour ; he is come into this<sup>7</sup>  
 towne *in* his double without hose or shoes / he is <sup>16</sup>  
 arayed lyke a vacabande / or a ruffian comyng fro the  
 tauerne, <sup>1</sup>he is so great and so wel made in all his  
 membres that he semeth more lyke a champion redy to  
 fyght *than* euer I sawe man in<sup>8</sup> my lyfe / yf ye wyll <sup>20</sup>  
 byleue<sup>9</sup> my counsell, stryke of his heed or cast him in<sup>10</sup>  
 a pytte, <sup>4</sup>to thentent<sup>4</sup> that of him there be neuer had<sup>11</sup>  
 memory / for if he lyue longe he may do you damage  
 & put you out of this empyre, the<sup>4</sup> whiche ye holde / <sup>24</sup>  
 the whiche shulde partayne to him.' *whan* themperour  
 Guymart vnderstode the burges, he behelde hym fyersly,  
 & said / 'speke no more to me of this matter / for *thou*  
 doest lyke a traytoure ; thou knowest well that by him <sup>28</sup>  
 and by<sup>4</sup> his dede thou and dyuers<sup>4</sup> other are<sup>12</sup> made  
 riche / <sup>1</sup>thou arte lyke him *that* betrayed our lorde  
 Iesu chryste / therfore I commaunde the fro hensforth  
 come not in my syght / for I wyll haue none acqueynt- <sup>32</sup>  
 aunce nor conuersacyon with a traytour ; if it be so that

Croissant goes to  
 an old palace,

and sleeps there  
 on straw.

The burgess goes  
 to Guymart,

and warns him  
 of Croissant's  
 return.

Guymart reproves  
 the burgess for his  
 ingratitude,

<sup>1</sup> and.    <sup>2</sup> burdens.    <sup>3</sup> sorowfull &.    <sup>4-4</sup> omitted.  
<sup>5</sup> are.    <sup>6</sup> Fol. clxxxix. col. 1.    <sup>7</sup> the.    <sup>8</sup> all.  
<sup>9</sup> follow.    <sup>10</sup> to.    <sup>11</sup> any more.    <sup>12</sup> bee.


Croisant be pore, it is pety & damage<sup>1</sup> and great syn to  
 doo him any yll / <sup>2</sup>I haue done him great yll whan his  
 londes and sygnoryes <sup>3</sup>I kepe<sup>3</sup> wrongfully and without<sup>4</sup>  
 4 cause, wherof I thinke my selfe gretly culpable against<sup>5</sup>  
 god for the syn that I haue done <sup>6</sup>whan<sup>6</sup> I holde the  
 honour & sygnory that of reason ought to partayne to  
 him / this daye is Easter day, on<sup>7</sup> y<sup>e</sup> whiche day euery  
 8 good crysten man ought to humble himselfe to <sup>8</sup>our  
 lorde<sup>8</sup> / cryinge him mercy and pardon of<sup>2</sup> all their  
 synnes / it is reason that I make pease with god, and  
 do so that he may be with me content.<sup>9</sup>

and declares that  
 he himselfe has  
 done the yench  
 much wrong.

12 ¶ Howe themperour Guymart spake & re-  
 buked the burges that spake yll of Croy-  
 sant, and howe <sup>10</sup>themperour bare meate  
 & drinke to the place where as Croisant  
 16 slept / and of the meruaylous tresure that  
 he founde in a chambre in the sayd olde  
 palayes / and of that<sup>11</sup> was shewed him  
 by two knyghtes whom he founde there.

20

## Capitulo .C.lxxxx.

24  Han the burges vnderstode themperour  
 he was in great feare, & soo departed  
 ryght sore abasshed / & thought he  
 had ben to hasty to reporte suche  
 newes / & so right sorowfull departed  
 and lefte themperour alone in a wyndowe right sore  
 pensyue, and said to himselfe, 'O very god, the  
 28 pouerte that Croysant is in is by my cause / for I haue  
 all that ought to be his / <sup>12</sup>I kepe it from him perforce;  
 yf I kepe it styll I may wel say that my soule shal

<sup>1</sup> lamentable.    <sup>2</sup> for.    <sup>3-3</sup> after whan.    <sup>4</sup> a.

<sup>5</sup> the almighty.    <sup>6-6</sup> him, in that.    <sup>7</sup> vpon.

<sup>8-8</sup> god.    <sup>9</sup> before with me.    <sup>10</sup> Fol. clxxxxi. col. 2.

<sup>11</sup> which.    <sup>12</sup> and.



Guymart walks  
down to the old  
palace full of  
remorse,

and sees Croissant  
sleeping on the  
straw.

He fetches wine  
and meat,

and sets them  
down by Crois-  
sant, who still  
sleeps.

He sees an iron  
door standing  
open,

and looking  
beyond it per-  
ceives all manner  
of treasure.

neuer come in<sup>1</sup> paradyse, but shal be dampned for  
euer.' Thus themperour Guymart compleyned to him  
self, and so went downe in to his palaies / and so  
walked vp and downe by him selfe before y<sup>e</sup> olde 4  
palayes, the whiche was nere to his palays / <sup>2</sup>he loked  
in at a gate and sawe a man lye slepyng on a burden  
of strawe, <sup>2</sup>he thought incontynent<sup>3</sup> it shulde be Croy-  
sant by the reporte of the burges. Whan the emperour 8  
saw him / he had so<sup>4</sup> great pety of him that he wepte /  
<sup>2</sup>than he wente in to his palayes and commaunded one  
to brynge to<sup>5</sup> him a towell with brede and flesshe / &  
a bottel of wyne / y<sup>e</sup> which thyng was done; than 12  
themperour toke a mantel furred with gryse, & dyd it  
about him selfe, & toke the wyne & mete, & com-  
maunded his men<sup>3</sup> <sup>6</sup>none to<sup>7</sup> folow him / <sup>8</sup>he went  
downe y<sup>e</sup> greses & came to the palais where as Croissant 16  
slept, <sup>2</sup>themperour set the mete and wyne nere by  
Croissant, and awoke him not, than he couered him  
with the mantell and than<sup>9</sup> departed / & as y<sup>e</sup> emperour  
was departyng he loked on his right hande & sawe 20  
a dore open all of yren, <sup>10</sup>sore bonded with barres of  
yren,<sup>10</sup> & he sawe a clerenes within / in such wyse as  
though there had ben within .C. torches brennyng<sup>11</sup> /  
he went thyder & entred into the chambre / y<sup>e</sup> which 24  
was great & large, & he sawe all about y<sup>e</sup> chambre  
great coffers, y<sup>e</sup> which stode open, & thei were full of  
golde / & other coffers full of Iewelless & riche stones /  
y<sup>e</sup> whiche shone<sup>12</sup> with suche lyght that themperour 28  
was<sup>13</sup> maruayled / also he sawe great peces of plate &  
money lying on y<sup>e</sup> erth, & besyde he sawe<sup>14</sup> vessel /  
<sup>15</sup>cuppes / & pottes of golde & syluer, & great peces of  
golde bordred with precious stones. Also he sawe 32

<sup>1</sup> to.      <sup>2</sup> and.      <sup>3</sup> that.      <sup>4</sup> such.      <sup>5</sup> vnto.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. clxxxvi. back, col. 1.      <sup>7</sup> should.      <sup>8</sup> then.      <sup>9</sup> he.

<sup>10-10</sup> & banded verie strongly with yron barres.

<sup>11</sup> burning and.      <sup>12</sup> did shine.      <sup>13</sup> greatly.

<sup>14</sup> a great.      <sup>15</sup> of.

riche gownes hangynge on perches of clothe of golde &  
 syluer,<sup>1</sup> in so great nombre *that* the emperour was sore  
 abasshed / & said who so euer left this treasure here /  
 4 might wel be called a great lord / for he thought<sup>2</sup> al y<sup>e</sup>  
 golde in y<sup>e</sup> worlde / & all the riche iewelles were  
 brought togyder<sup>3</sup> might not be compared to y<sup>e</sup> treasure  
*that* he saw there / & said he was happy to come  
 8 thyder / than he passed forth where he saw an ymage  
 of fyne golde, & it was as byg as a chylde of two yere  
 of age / & wheare as the eyen shulde stonde there were  
 two gret carbuckles / y<sup>e</sup> whiche cast so great clerences  
 12 *that* all y<sup>e</sup> chambre was lyght therwith / whan them-  
 perour sawe *that* ymage he thought to haue taken it &  
 to haue borne it into his palais / but he had moche ado  
 to lyfte it / than he loked towardes a lytell dore, out of  
 16 y<sup>e</sup> whiche he saw comynge two knightes well armed at  
 al peeces with their swerdes in <sup>4</sup>their handes,<sup>5</sup> they came  
 to themperour & said / 'beware, frende / be not so  
 hardi to bere any thyng fro hens / for y<sup>e</sup> treser *that* is  
 20 here is not yours / nor it belongeth you<sup>6</sup> not to haue  
 it / therfore set downe agayne that ymage / without ye  
 do it shortly / ye shall by it derely<sup>7</sup> / y<sup>e</sup> emperour,  
 seynge the two knightes thretenyng him / he was in  
 24 great feare / <sup>5</sup>he set downe the ymage & beheld y<sup>e</sup>  
 knightes, & said / 'Syr, ye speke fyersly to me / for  
 the treasure / the which ye warne me *that* I shulde not  
 take any parte therof, by all right ought to be myn,  
 28 and none others / syn I haue founde it / <sup>5</sup>therfor  
 I coniure you by y<sup>e</sup> puyssaunce of god / & of his  
 aungelles & archangelles, & all saintes / that y<sup>e</sup> shewe  
 me y<sup>e</sup> trouth to whom this treasure <sup>8</sup>do parteyne<sup>8</sup> / ye  
 32 ought to knowe it / syn ye haue y<sup>e</sup> kepyng therof /  
 than y<sup>e</sup> .ii. knyghtes answered & said / 'syr, this

He passes through  
 it, and finds an  
 image of fine gold,  
 which he tries to  
 lift.

But two knights  
 approach him,  
 and bid him lay  
 it down, for none  
 of the treasure is  
 his.

The emperor asks  
 to whom it  
 belongs.

<sup>1</sup> sylke.    <sup>2</sup> if.    <sup>3</sup> they.    <sup>4</sup> Fol. clxxxix. back, col. 2.

<sup>5</sup> and.    <sup>6</sup> you *after* to.    <sup>7</sup> derely *before* by it.

<sup>8-8</sup> doth belong.

They tell him it  
is Croissant's  
property,

and bid him take  
three besants of  
gold and proclaim  
through the city  
that he will give  
every poor man a  
florin.

Croissant, they  
say, will then  
come to the palace,

and he will learn  
by a sign that all  
belongs to the  
valiant knight.

treasure *that* ye here se / ought to *partayne* to Croisant,  
sone to yde themperour, who alone lyeth on a burden  
of strawe here by not ferre fro this chambre / he lyeth  
right porely & naked / the which treasure was iudged <sup>4</sup>  
to him .v.C. yere past / <sup>1</sup>neuer syn <sup>2</sup>there hath *ben*  
taken fro it y<sup>e</sup> value of a <sup>3</sup>peny / nor neuer syn it was  
layde here there neuer entred any erthely man but  
onely you ; Croysant who slepeth without is a valiaunt <sup>8</sup>  
knight, & ful of <sup>4</sup>all <sup>4</sup>trouth / wherefore, yf ye wyll know  
to whom this treasure *parteyneth* / I shall shewe you  
y<sup>e</sup> maner how ye may know it / beholde yonder hepe of  
golde / go & take therof .iii. besantes / & put them in <sup>12</sup>  
to your purse / than returne into your palais & <sup>5</sup>make  
a crye through <sup>5</sup>rome *that* al pore men com to your  
court, & *that* to ech of them ye shall <sup>6</sup>gyue a floryn <sup>7</sup>of  
golde. Whan Croisant shall here that he shal <sup>6</sup>not be <sup>16</sup>  
behynde / but he wyl come amonge other to take that  
almes / & than y<sup>e</sup> thre besantes *that* shal be in your  
purse, take & cast <sup>8</sup>them on the erth / one in one  
place / & a[no]<sup>9</sup>ther in another place / wheare as y<sup>e</sup> <sup>20</sup>  
pe[ople] must pas to com to receyue your [almes], than  
Croisant shall come the same [way] & fynde the thre  
besantes, the whic[h by] reason of his noblenes &  
bounte he will come & brynge them to you a[gain], <sup>24</sup>  
therby ye shall know *that* y<sup>e</sup> treasu[re that] is here  
assembled <sup>10</sup>parteyneth to hi[m, and] ought to be his /  
than gyue him your [faire] doughter in mariage / &  
than <sup>4</sup>bryn[ge him] hyther / & than <sup>4</sup>ye shal se that he <sup>28</sup>  
ma[y take] of this treasure at his pleasure / fo[r it is]  
all his / no man shall say the contra[rie, and] doynge  
thus as we haue sayd / ye s[hall] haue parte of this  
treasure.'


<sup>1</sup> and.      <sup>2</sup> that time.      <sup>3</sup> one.      <sup>4-4</sup> omitted.

<sup>5-5</sup> cause to be proclaimed throughout.      <sup>6</sup> will.

<sup>7</sup> Florent.      <sup>8</sup> Fol. clxxxxii. col. 1.

<sup>9</sup> leaf torn [ ] from 1601 ed.      <sup>10</sup> before you.

¶ Howe the two knightes th[at] kept this  
treasure spake with the emperour Guymart,  
& shewed him the maner howe he shulde  
4 know Croisant. And of the meruaile that  
Croisant had whan he awoke & sawe the  
mete & drinke by him. Capitulo .C.lxxxxi.

8  Han the emperour had wel herde the  
two knightes he went to the hepe of  
golde & toke the thre besantes, &  
[dyd]<sup>1</sup> put them in<sup>2</sup> his purs / <sup>3</sup>than  
he toke<sup>4</sup> leaue of the two knyghtes &

The emperor  
takes the three  
besants and  
returns to the  
palace.

12 departed, <sup>3</sup>whan he was issued out / he loked behynd  
him / than<sup>3</sup> he saw the dore fast closed / wherof he  
had great meruayle / & fownde Croysant styll slepyng /  
& so he past by, & wold not awake him / & than he  
16 went to his palaies; & then his lordes demaunded  
of him where he had ben that he taried so longe, but  
he wolde not shew them any thyng of y<sup>e</sup> matter /  
than he<sup>5</sup> went to dyner, & was <sup>6</sup>[richly serued; and  
20 then Croissant / who lay and slept in the old Pallaice /  
suddenly awoake, and had great maruaile of the furred  
Mantle that he found vppon him / and he saw also  
lying by him a Napkin, and therin wrapped good  
24 white bread, Capon, rosted Fesant, & Partridge, and  
therby he saw lying a great bottel full of wine, and  
when he saw this good cheere, he thanked god of that  
adventure. Then he did eate of the meate, and dranke  
28 of the wine at his pleasure; and when he had well  
eaten and drunke, he departed from thence, and left the  
rest behind him, and tooke nothing with him: and  
also he left the furred Mantle, for he durst not weare  
32 it, but sayd to himselfe, that he had no right thereto,

Croissant awakes  
and marvels at  
the wine and meat  
at his side.

<sup>1</sup> All in [ ] from 1601 ed. omitted.

<sup>2</sup> to.

<sup>3</sup> and.

<sup>4</sup> his.

<sup>5</sup> the emperour.

<sup>6</sup> Fol. clxxxxii. col. 2.

because it was a thing that was none of his, and so he went downe through the streets of the Towne.

¶ The prooffe that the emperour Guymart made to know Croisant, vnto whome he gaue his Doughter in mariage, and deliuered] h[im all his Signiorie and Inheritance,] whe[reof great ioye was made at] Rom[e]. Ch. CLXXXII. [C.lxxxxii.] 8



The emperor proclaims that he will give every poor man in the city a florin of gold.

Croissant resolves to take his share of the alms.

The king throws the three besants in three different places about the road by which the poor men come to the palace, but they pass them by.

[Hen the emperor was risen from dinner, he called to him Foure of his seruants, to whome he gaue in charge that they should cause to be proclaimed in 12 euerie Streete] of the towne [that all pore men that would] come to themp[erour, should haue in almes] eueryman a Fl[orent of gold of the value] of .x. sous / the w[hich crie was made] in euery 16 strete & ma[rket place in Rome, where]by <sup>1</sup>all the<sup>1</sup> pore m[en drew to wardes the Pallaice.] Whan this crye wa[s made Croissant heard] it, whearof he was [ioyfull, and said howe] hee would goe thider [among 20 others to ha]ue the emperours almes, <sup>2</sup>wherewith hee thought hee would pay his host, and then in haste he went thether. The Emperour, who was there readie / thought to see & prooue whether the two Knights 24 sayings were true or not, & so drew out of his purse the Three Besans of gould, the which he did cast in diuers places, in the way as the pore men shuld come to the Pallaice, but many poore men passed ouer them, and 28 perceiued them not: & then Croissant came amonge others, & he saw among the mens feet one Besan of gould faire and bright, and he stouped downe and tooke it vp, and then he went forth, & within a little 32

1-1 euerie.

<sup>2</sup> Fol. clxxxxii. back, col. 1.



- while after he found the second Besan, the which also  
 he tooke vp, and a little further among the mens feete he  
 espyed the Third Besan, the which also hee tooke vp ;  
 4 then hee thought within himselfe, and sayd, ‘Alas,  
 what a Caitiffe am I? if these had beene siluer, they  
 had been mine, but they are fine gould, wherfore I am  
 beguiled, for they appertaine to the Emperour Guymart,  
 8 who holdeth this Empire ; [I] haue no right to kepe  
 them, because they belong not to mee, therefore I wyll  
 [render them to the emperour, vnto w]home [they  
 doe appertaine.’ then hee came to] the Em[perour, Croissant comes  
and picks up the  
three besants.  
 12 & sayd, ‘Sir, I haue fou]nde by y<sup>e</sup> [way as I came to  
 your Pallaice] .iii. besans [of gould, the which here I]  
 delyuer to [you, for of right and reason they apper-  
 ta]yne vnto you, [because of the right and title that you]  
 16 haue to the [Empire, but if the hadde beene] syluer I  
 mi[ght haue kept them as mi]ne owne without blame.’  
 [When the right noble Em]perour vnder[stood him, he  
 beheld hi]m, & syghynge he [sayd, ‘Freend, you are  
 20 wel]come / the bounte, [noblenesse, and wisdom]e  
 that is in you / [shall ayd you to com]e to y<sup>e</sup> place  
 wheare[of in reason you ought to] be / for the goodnes  
 [and troth that I h]aue sene in you I wyl [giue you my] He brings them  
to the emperor.  
 24 doughter in mariage, <sup>1</sup>[wh]om<sup>2</sup> ye shall take<sup>3</sup> to your  
 wyfe, & ther [with] I shall yeld you the crowne imperial  
 [of the noble] empyre of Rome / y<sup>e</sup> which of right  
<sup>4</sup>you parteyneth.’<sup>4</sup> When<sup>5</sup> Croisant<sup>6</sup> vnder[stood] the  
 28 emperour he was right ioyfull, [and kne]lled downe to  
 the erth in the presen[ce] [of all] the lordes that were  
 there present, [thank]ynge him of y<sup>e</sup> honoure *that* he  
 offred [him. The] emperour, who was a noble<sup>7</sup> wyse  
 32 [Prince,] toke him vp by the hande and led [him in]  
 to a chambre, whearin he caused a [bathi]nge to be The emperor  
receiues him  
kindly, and offers  
him his daughter  
in marriage.

<sup>1</sup> Fol. clxxxii. back. col. 2.<sup>2</sup> I loue entirely and.<sup>3</sup> her.<sup>4-4</sup> appertaineth to you.<sup>5</sup> the noble.<sup>6</sup> had well heard and.<sup>7</sup> and a.


He gives Croissant rich apparel.

His fair daughter is brought to Croissant.

prepared, whearin Crois[ant was] bayned.<sup>1</sup> Than the  
emperour [brou]ght him such apparel as was met for  
[him] to haue. Whan he<sup>2</sup> was thus richely [app]arelled /  
a fayrer nor a better made<sup>3</sup> [ma]n coude not be founde <sup>4</sup>  
in a<sup>4</sup> xviij real[mes] crystened / whearof kyng<sup>5</sup> Guymart  
[had] great ioye, and said<sup>6</sup> that in all his lyfe he neuer  
saw a more goodlyer prince / <sup>7</sup>he was great amonge  
other men, & wel furnysshed of al his membres; he <sup>8</sup>  
was byg & large in his shulders / <sup>8</sup>the skyn whyte  
enewed<sup>9</sup> with reed / his heere lyke gold wyre, <sup>8</sup>his face  
streyt with a large forheed / his eyen gray, <sup>8</sup>his nose  
well made / longe armes / & byg / handes, fayre & <sup>12</sup>  
streyt legges<sup>10</sup> / <sup>8</sup>his fete well proporcioned and made /  
kyng<sup>5</sup> Guymart coude not be satysfied with<sup>11</sup> regardyng  
of him / <sup>12</sup>he lede him into the palais wheare as his  
lordes were, who greatly<sup>13</sup> praysed him, and said eche to <sup>16</sup>  
other / <sup>6</sup>that they had neuer sene<sup>14</sup> so goodly a prynce /  
nor better<sup>15</sup> fourmed of his membres / than the kyng<sup>5</sup>  
sent for his doughter by two great lordes / <sup>8</sup>they wente  
to her chambre for her / <sup>16</sup>she came into y<sup>e</sup> palais to y<sup>e</sup> <sup>20</sup>  
kyng<sup>5</sup> her father, richely accompanied with ladyes  
& damselles / of their apparel I wyl make no longe  
rehersall / for it was as riche as might be, & she was so  
fayre / that god and nature coude not amende her / <sup>24</sup>  
nor<sup>17</sup> no Painter in the world, though he were neuer so  
skilfull, could not paint y<sup>e</sup> fashion nor proportion of  
her beautifull bodie, and all that were there present,  
both young and old, sayd that they neuer sawe nor <sup>28</sup>  
heard report of so faire a cople of Creatures as the  
noble Croissant and this Ladie were, for euerie man  
thought that they were made for nothing else but  
to cause men to behould them and their beutie. <sup>32</sup>

<sup>1</sup> bathed and.    <sup>2</sup> Croissant.    <sup>3</sup> fourmed.    <sup>4</sup> omitted.  
<sup>5</sup> the Emperor.    <sup>6</sup> how.    <sup>7</sup> for.    <sup>8</sup> and.    <sup>9</sup> mingled.  
<sup>10</sup> his Legs before fayre.    <sup>11</sup> the.    <sup>12</sup> and then.  
<sup>13</sup> lauded and.    <sup>14</sup> before.    <sup>15</sup> made nor.    <sup>16</sup> then.  
<sup>17</sup> from 1601 ed. The page in the earlier ed. is torn away.

¶ Howe the Emperour Guymart promised  
Croissant that within three days he should  
haue his Daughter in mariage; And how  
4 the Emperour Guymart led Croissant to  
the olde Pallaice, and shewed him the great  
Treasure that the two Knightes kept for  
him. Ch. clxxx[x]iii.

8  Hen the Emperour Guymart sawe his  
Daughter come, hee toke her by the  
hand, and sayd, 'My right deere  
Daughter, I haue found for you a  
12 Husband, to whome I haue giuen you,  
and you may well say that a fairer man nor a hardyer  
Knight you neuer sawe before, and that is the noble  
Croissant, vnto whom this Empire appertaineth by  
16 rightfull enheritance, and he is Son to the noble  
Emperour Ide, who hath giuen this Empire to his son  
Croissant, but when he was of no great age he departed  
from this Cittie with a small companie, and went  
20 to serue in strang countreys, and when the Lords  
of this countrey saw that they were without a Lord,  
they sent for me into Puille, and so they made mee  
heere Emperour wrongfully and without reason; but  
24 nowe since that Croissant the rightfull Inheritour is  
returned; for to discharge my soule towards God,  
I shall put into his hands al his Empire, without  
keeping from him any part thereof, for as for me I am  
28 rich and puissant ynough; and therefore, Croissant, if  
it be your pleasure, you shall haue my Daughter in  
mariage.' 'Sir,' (quoth Croissant) 'if it be her plea-  
sure I will not refuse her, for I neuer sawe a fairer nor  
32 none that I had rather to haue.' When the faire  
Damsell vnderstood Croissant shee was right ioyfull,  
and she beheld Croissant, who seemed to her so faire

The emperor in-  
forms his daugh-  
ter of Croissant's  
return, and how  
he intends to  
restore to him his  
empire.

The daughter  
loves Croissant.

that her loue was enflamed vpon him, for the more she beheld him, the more she loued him / and she thought it long vntill the matter was made perfect; then she sayd to the Kinge her Father, ‘Sir, then it is your will 4 and pleasure that I shall haue Croissant in marriage, you may commaund mee as it please you, it were a folly for mee to make refuse; and, Sir, I require you to let vs be married shortly, for if I haue not him I 8 renounce all marriage for euer, for there is none other that euer shall set the Ring on my finger, but onely Croissant.’ When the King vnderstoode his Daughter hee laughed hartely, and sayd, ‘Deere Daughter, thinke 12 not the contrarie, but that you shall haue him to your Husband.’ then the King sent for a Bishoppe, who assured them together, whereof the Damsell was so ioyful that she wist not what to doo, and priuely she 16 thanked our Lorde god: and if she loued him well, Croissant loued her as well, and both of them desired for the day that they might come together in wedlocke.

Three dayes later  
the wedding takes  
place.

When Three dayes were passed, and that the 20 prouision was made readie for the wedding, then King Guymart made them to sweare each to other, and especially he made Croissant to promise that on the Third day hee should take his Daughter in marriage, 24 the which Croissant promised, and sware so to doe: then the King tooke Croissant by the hand, and ledde him to the old Pallaice, to prooue if the Treasure that was there might be had away by Croissant, as the two 28 Knightes had shewed him; and then they two alone came to the ould Pallaice; when they were come thether the King sayd, ‘Faire Sonne, I loue you well, and also you ought to beare me your loue, since 32 you shall haue my Daughter in marriage, and because I haue great affiance in you, I shall shew you what I thinke to say, and that which lyeth in my heart; it is of troth, that about foure dayes passed, as I came from 36

seruice, I stooode and leaned out at a window in my  
 Pallaice, and I beheld this same place where as we be  
 now, and where I saw you lye asleepe, repleat with  
 4 famine and pouertie, I tooke of you great pitie, and I  
 brought to you bread and drinke, and did sette it by  
 you, and I couered you with a furred mantle, and so I  
 let you lye still, for I would not awake you, and as I  
 8 returned from you, I sawe a dore open of this Chamber,  
 the which you see now closed, out of the which I sawe  
 a great light yssue; then I went thether and entred  
 into the Chamber, and there I sawe so great Treasure,  
 12 *that* I neuer saw none such in all my life: there was a  
 rich Image of gould, the which I thought to haue taken  
 and borne with me, and as I had it in my handes, two  
 knightes well armed came foorth, whereof I was  
 16 afraide; then they sayd vnto me, that I should not be  
 so hardy as to touch the Image nor no part of the  
 Treasure that I saw there, for they sayd that it did not  
 appertaine to me, and if I did the contrarie I should  
 20 repent it, and they sayd incontinent they would slay  
 me: then I demaunded to whome that Treasure did  
 belong. Then they sayd that it did belong vnto  
 Croissant, who lay heere without a sleepe, and they  
 24 commaunded me to take three Besans of gould to  
 prooue thereby to whome the Treasure should apper-  
 taine, and then they aduised me to make a Dole  
 to poore men / and that I shold cast down the Besans  
 28 vppon the earth whereas the poore men shoulde passe  
 by, and he that found them and brought them to me,  
 this Treasure should appertaine to him, wherefore,  
 I pray you, let vs go thether to know the troth.' 'Sir,'  
 32 (quoth Croissant) 'I pray you let vs goe thether.'

The emperor tells  
 Croissant of the  
 treasure in the  
 old palace.

When they came there they found the dore closed,  
 and then Croissant knocked thereat, and sayd, 'Ye  
 Sirs, that be within, I pray you in the name of God to  
 36 open this dore.' incontinent the dore opened, and



They enter the treasure-chamber, and find the two knights guarding it.

They tell Croissant that Oberon placed the treasure here for him 500 years since.

He thanks the knights,

who bid him be liberal and pitiful to the poor.

They vanish suddenly.

there they found the two Knightes with their swords in their hands. Then Guymart and Croissant entred into the Chamber, and the two Knightes came to Croissant, & made him great cheere, and sayd, 'Crois- 4  
sant, your great Prowesse and Noblenes is greatly to be praised, we haue been a longe time heere sette to kepe for you this Treasure that you see heere, for it is Fine Hundred yeeres since that we were set heere by King 8  
Oberon to keepe this Treasure for you, and hee shewed vs that it appertained to you, and neuer since it was touched by any man, but onely by King Guymart, whome / to the intent to ayd and succour you / wee 12  
had him take three Besans of gould, and shewed him that this Treasure appertained neither to King nor Emperour, but alonely to you, which is so great that no man liuing can esteeme it / you may take it & beare 16  
it away, or giue it whereas it shall please you, and whatsoeuer you take from it, all your life it shall not diminish nor decrease.' When Croissant vnderstood them, hee was ioyfull, and thanked the Knightes in 20  
that they hadde so longe kept his Treasure; then they tooke leaue of Croissant, and embraced him, and sayd, 'Sir, we require you to bee courteous and liberall, and pitifull to the poore, and loue well all noble and wise 24  
men, and giue to them largely, and be good and true to your Father in law, King Guymart, for he is a noble and a wise Prince; you ought to thanke him, & to loue him about all other men liuing.' Then Croissant thanked 28  
them of their good aduertisement, and then they tooke their leaue, and so departed sodenly, that neither Croissant nor Guymart wist not where they were become, whereof they were abashed, and made on 32  
them the signe of the crosse; then they looked about the Chamber and saw the Treasure that was there, whereof Croissant was so abashed that he wist not what to say, for there was a great light in the Chamber 36

as though there had been Thirtie Torches lighted, by reason of the bright stones that were there. to speake of the Treasure that was in that Chamber,  
 4 I cannot shewe it, for ther was so much that they were thereof abashed to behold it.

The brilliance of the treasure gives a great light in the room.

When Croissant sawe this Treasure, it was no maruaile though he was ioyfull, and thought to himselfe  
 8 that he would not spare to giue to them that were worthy, & such as did serue him truely, and so hee did, for he gaue so largely that all the Citie praised him; and when they had beene there a certaine space,  
 12 Croissant sayd to King Guymart, 'Sir, of this treasure I will that you haue the one halfe, & you shall haue the keys of that, and giue thereof at your pleasure.' 'Faire Sonne,' (quoth the King) 'I thanke you, all that  
 16 I haue is yours, and all that you haue is mine, wee will part nothing betweene vs as longe as we liue.' Then they departed from thence, and Croissant tooke certaine of the iewels to giue to his Spouse; and then they  
 20 departed out of the Chamber, & locked the dore, & tooke the key with them, and so they returned to the Pallaice right ioyfull. Then Croissant gaue to the Lady the rich iewels, who then humbly thanked  
 24 him therefore.

Croissant gives generously of the treasure.

¶ Of the great Treasure that they had, and how Croissant wedded the noble damsell, daughter to King Guymart, and of the  
 28 feaste there made. Ch. clxxx[x]iiii.

32 **A**fter that King *Guymart* and *Croissant* were returned to the Pallaice, the Ladie was readye apparelled, and then the two Louers were wedded together in the Chappell of the Pallaice. The great ioye and myrth

Croissant and the emperor's daughter are married.

that was made in the Citie I omyte, they dyned, and after dynner the yong Knyghts justed, and the joye and sporte cannot be expressed, and after supper, and the dauncing was done, *Croissant* and his Ladie went 4 to bed in a riche Chamber; so faire a coupelle was neuer seene, and on the morowe the feasteinge was renewed, and continuede fifteene dayes. And longe tyme thei lyued together. So that at laste King 8 *Guymart* lay sicke in bed, and on the fourthe daye he dyede, to the great sorowe of Ladie *Katherine* his daughter, and of *Croissant*, who dearelye loude him. And after his deathe, by the consente of all the Lordes 12 of the empire, *Croissant* was crowned *Emperour*. And the Ladie *Katherine Empress*, at whos coronation was made greate feasting and ioye. *Croissant* amended and encreased the signorie of Rome, & conquered 16 diuers Realms, as Ierusalem, And all Surrey, as more plainlye you may knowe by the Cronicle that is made of him and his.

King Guymart  
dies,

and Croissant is  
crowned his suc-  
cessor.

Here ends the  
history of Huon  
of Bourdeaux.

Thus endethe the auncient, honourable, famouse, 20 and delightfulle hystorie of *Huon of Bourdeaux*, one of the Peers of Fraunce, and Duke of Guyenne, and of dyuers Princes liuing in hys tyme. Translated out of frenche into English by Syr Iohn *Bourchire*, Knight, 24 Lord *Berniers*, at the requeste of the Lord *Hastings*, *Earl of Huntinton*, in the yere of our Lorde God, one thousande fve hendrede and three score and Ten, and now newlie reuised and corrected thys present yere, 28 1601.

FINIS.

## PREFATORY NOTE.

APOLOGY for my unconscionable delay in completing this edition of Lord Berners' *Huon of Burdeux* may be misconstrued as an impertinence. I will therefore only venture to say, that since I undertook the work and produced the first part early in 1883, my time has been more fully occupied than I could have then anticipated, and that my leisure has of late years grown very limited. I trust, however, that this concluding portion of my labour will not seem unsatisfactory to those who were good enough to express approval of my earlier efforts.

My best thanks are due to Mr. W. A. Clouston for the interesting and valuable notes which he has supplied on the magical episodes in the Romance.

SIDNEY L. LEE.





## APPENDIX.

- I. *Lord Berners and Euphuism*, p. 785.
- II. *Lord Berners' work on Calais*, p. 789.
- III. *The Hamilton MS. of Huon*, p. 789.
- IV. *Contemporary Criticism of Huon*, p. 790.
- V. *The Bibliography of Lord Berners' Huon*, p. 791.
- VI. *The 1601 Revision of Lord Berners' English*, p. 791.
- VII. *A table of the magical incidents in the romance, with notes*, p. 798.
- VIII. *Index Locorum, with a note on the romance's geography*, p. 811.
- IX. *Index Nominum*,<sup>1</sup> p. 815.
- X. *Glossary*, p. 839.

I. LORD BERNERS AND EUPHUISM.<sup>2</sup>

It has been recently proved that English Euphuism is a Spanish product,—an imitation of the style of Antonio de Guevara, a Spanish writer of the early part of the sixteenth century. John Lyly, the author of *Euphues*, has been deprived of the honour, long assigned him, of having invented ‘a new English.’<sup>3</sup> The leading characteristics of his manner of writing are undoubtedly borrowed from Sir Thomas North’s translation of Guevara’s popular book, *Libro del Emperador Marco Aurelio con el Relox de Príncipes*.<sup>4</sup> North’s version appeared under the title of the *Dial of Princes*, in 1557, with a dedication to Queen Mary: it was republished in 1568, ‘newly reuised and corrected, and reformed of faultes escaped in the first edition.’ Lyly’s indebtedness to North has been fully illustrated elsewhere,<sup>5</sup> but it is important to note here that North himself was anticipated by Lord Berners in his endeavour to introduce Guevara’s style and

<sup>1</sup> The editorial matter is fully indexed here.

<sup>2</sup> See Introduction, p. xlv.

<sup>3</sup> In 1632 Edward Blount, when issuing Lyly’s *Six Court Comedies*, writes of the author in an address ‘to the Reader’:—‘Our Nation are in his debt, for a new English which hee taught them. *Euphues* and his England [i.e. Lyly’s book] began first that language.’

<sup>4</sup> It is worth noting that all the English translations from Guevara were made through the French.

<sup>5</sup> See *Euphuismus*, by Dr. Landmann, Giessen, 1881; *Shakspeare and Euphuism*, by Dr. Landmann, in New Shakspeare Soc.’s Transactions, 1884.

his best known work to English readers. Doubts were fully expressed at the time of the first publication of North's translation, as to his right to claim the glory of having discovered Guevara, or even of having done any part of the work of translation himself. The charges were in part justified.<sup>1</sup> Lord Berners and Lord Berners' nephew, Sir Francis Bryan,—the first Englishmen to present their countrymen with Guevara's writings in English versions,—did more for Guevara's fame and influence in England than Sir Thomas North. And their labours were at the service of the public many years before North attempted authorship.

'At Calais ye tenth daie of Marche in the yere of the reigne of our soueraygne lorde King Henry the .VIII. xxiiii' (*i. e.* 1533), Lord Berners completed, according to the colophon of the first published edition of 1534, his translation of Guevara's *Marke Aurelie Emperour*, otherwise called the *Golden Boke*. The Spanish original bore the title *Libro Aureo de Marco Aurelio Emperador y Eloquentissimo Orador*, and it was an expanded version of the same work that Sir Thomas North anglicized three-and-twenty years later. Both versions are identical in style and almost identical in subject matter; and a comparison of the two translations shows that Lord Berners writing in 1533 (and not North writing in 1557) is the true parent of Euphuism or Guevarism in England.

I print side by side Berners' and North's versions of the prologue of the *Golden Boke*. Lord Berners' sentences are Euphuistic beyond all question; they are characterized by the forced antitheses, the alliteration, and the far-fetched illustrations from natural phenomena, characteristic of Lyly and his successors.<sup>2</sup> The subject is the destructive and productive powers of Time:—

<sup>1</sup> To the second edition of the *Dial of Princes* North added a fourth book, which he had previously omitted, and 'certain letters [of Guevara] written by Marcus Aurelius, selected out of the Spanishe copie, not wrytten in the Frenche tongue.' In '*the Epistle to the Reader*,' which prefaces these appendices, North writes under date 10th May, 1568: 'What detracting tongues report of mee & my first traucell in the translation of this *Dyall*, enlarging them at pleasure to woork my defan e, disabling my dooing heerein, by brute yt was no woork of myne, but the fruit of others labor: I neede not much force, since by dayly proof wee see that yll desposed mynds can neuer frame an honest tongue in head.'

<sup>2</sup> These results have been previously made public in a letter contributed to

## BERNERS.

'There is nothyng so entier, but it deminisheth; nor nothyng so hole, but that is wery; nor nothyng so strong, but that it breaketh; nor nothyng so well kept, but that it corrupteth. . . . The frutes in the spryngyng tyme haue not the vertue to gyue sustenavnce, nor perfyte swetenesse to satisfie the taste of them that eateth thereof: but thanne passeth the season of sommer and haruest comethe, whiche tyme doth better rype them, and thanne that that we do eate, dothe profyte us, the profe thereof is ryghte sauerynesse, and gyueth the more force and vertue, and the greater is the taste.'

## NORTH.

'There is nothing so entyer but may be diminished: nothyng so healthful but may be diseased: nothing so strong, but may be broken: neyther anything so wel kept, but may be corrupted. . . . The fruits of the spring time haue no force to giue sustenance, nor perfait sweteness to giue any sauour, but after that the sommer is past and haruest cometh, they rype and then all that we eate nourisheth more and gyueth a better tast.'

The popularity of Lord Berners' translation, of which nine editions are known to have been published between 1534 and 1560, and five between 1560 and 1588, is a remarkable indication of the favour bestowed on Euphuistic style in England before the time of North or Lyly.

But more can be proved in the same direction. The translator's prologue to Lord Berners' *Froissart*, written in 1524, and that to be found in other of his works, show him to have come under Guevara's or a similar influence before he translated the *Golden Boke*. In the following abbreviated extracts from the prologue to *Froissart* the parallelism of the sentences, the repetition of the same thought differently expressed, the rhetorical question, the accumulation of synonyms, the classical references are irrefutable witnesses to the presence of well-developed Euphuism. Berners is writing of the advantages of history:—

---

the *Athenæum*, for 18th August, 1883. To make the parallel more effective, the following extracts from Lyly's *Euphues*, in which the form of the sentences is almost identical with those in the two passages printed above, should be read with them:—'There is nothing lyghter than a feather, yet is it sette a loft in a woemann's hatte: nothing slighter then haire, yet is it most frised in a Ladies head, so that I am in good hope, though there be nothing of lesse accounte then *Euphues*, yet he shal be marked with Ladies eyes, & lyked sometimes in their eares' (p. 221); or, 'There is nothing more swifter than time, nothing more sweeter: wee haue not as *Seneca* saith little time to liue but we leese muche, neither haue we a short life by Nature, but we make it shorter by naughtynesse' (p. 152).

‘Ones the continuall redyng thereof maketh yonge men equall in prudence to olde men; and to olde fathers stryken in age, it mynys-treth experience of thinges. More it yeldeth priuate persons worthy of dignyte, rule and gouernaunce: it compelleth the emperours, hygh rulers, and gouernours to do noble dedes, to thende they may optayne immortall glory: it exciteth, moueth and stereth the strong, hardy warriours for the great laude that they haue after they ben deed promptly to go in hande with great and harde parelles in defence of their countre: it prohybyteth reprouable persons to do mischeuous dedes. . . . What moued the strong and ferse Hercules to enterpryse in his lyfe so many great incomparable labours and parylls? . . . In semblable wyse dyd his imitator, noble dyke Theseus and many other. . . . What knowledge should we haue of auneynt thinges past, and historie were not, whiche is the testimony thereof, the lyght of trouthe, the maystres of the lyfe humayne, the presydent of remembraunce and the messanger of antiquite? Why moued and stered Phaleryus, the kyng of Phtholome oft and delygntly to rede bokes? Forsothe for none other cause but that . . .’

Nor was Lord Berners the only author who fell under Euphuistic influences at this early date. His sister Margaret was the mother of Sir Francis Bryan, one of Henry VIII's favourites, and a lover of literature, who was influenced by his uncle's literary tastes.<sup>1</sup> The first edition of Berners' *Golden Boke of Marcus Aurelius* was published posthumously. The colophon states the translation to have been undertaken 'at the instaunt desire of his [Berners'] neuewe Sir Frauncis Bryan knyghte,' and to Sir Francis its posthumous publication was avowedly due. At the close of Berners' *Golden Boke* is a passage applauding the 'swete style' of 'the sentences of this booke,' which is an 'envoy' in praise of Guevarism almost certainly from Sir Francis' pen. Bryan's admiration of Guevara is further shown by his own translation of another of Guevara's works in 1548. The English title runs:—*A Dispraise of the Life of a Courtier in Commendacion of the Life of a Labouryng Man*. London (by T. Berthelet), August 1548. Bryan must therefore be placed beside his uncle as one of the progenitors of English Euphuism. And Lord Berners must be held responsible for the direction of his nephew's literary tastes.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> See the article on Bryan in the *Dictionary of National Biog.*

<sup>2</sup> It may, perhaps, be not deemed altogether impertinent if I note here the chief editions of English translations of Guevara's works published before the issue of Lyly's *Euphuus* in 1579:—

## II. LORD BERNERS' WORK ON CALAIS.

On p. xlv of the Introduction, I state, on the authority of Anthony à Wood, that Lord Berners was the author of a tract on *The duties of the inhabitants of Calais*. At the time of writing I was not aware that this work was still extant, but I now find that Mr. J. G. Nichols, in his edition of *The Chronicle of Calais*, published by the Camden Society in 1846, had identified it with a copy of *Ordenances for Watch and Ward of Calais*, printed by him from the British Museum (MS. Cotton. Faust. E. vii, 89—102b). The tract is of no literary interest, but it gives a valuable account of the police regulations enforced in Calais while under English rule.

## III. THE HAMILTON MS. OF HUON.

On p. xxxv I state, on the authority of the *Athenæum*, that the Hamilton collection of MSS. included an illuminated copy of the French poetical romance of *Huon of Burdenx*.

- 
- |      |   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
|------|---|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1534 | } | <i>The Golden Boke of Mark Aurelie</i> , by Lord Berners.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 1535 |   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 1537 |   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 1542 |   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 1546 |   |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 1548 |   | <i>The Dispraise of the Life of a Courtier</i> , by Sir Francis Bryan.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 1554 |   | <i>The Golden Boke of Mark Aurelie</i> , by Lord Berners.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 1557 |   | <i>The Dial of Princes</i> , by Sir Thomas North.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 1560 |   | <i>The Golden Boke</i> , by Lord Berners.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 1568 |   | <i>The Dial of Princes</i> , 2nd edit., by Sir Thomas North.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 1574 |   | <i>The Familiar Epistles of Sir Anthony of Guccara</i> , by Edward Hellowes.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 1575 | A | <i>A Looking Glasse for the Courte</i> , composed in the Castilian tongue, by the Lorde Anthony of Guevarra, Bishop of Mondiment . . . . . out of Castilion drawne into French by Anthony Alaygre, and out of the Frenche tongue into English, by Sir Francis Bryan, Knight . . . —a second edition of <i>The Dispraise of the Life of a Courtier</i> , edited by T. Tymme, minister. |
| 1577 |   | <i>The Familiar Epistles of Sir Anthony of Guccara</i> , by Edward Hellowes (2nd edit.).                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 1577 | A | <i>A Chronicle conteynynge the Lives of tenne Emperours of Rome</i> , compiled by the most famous Syr Antonie of Guevara, by Edward Hellowes. Dedicated to Queen Elizabeth.                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 1577 |   | <i>Golden Epistles</i> : gathered as well out of the remaynder of Guevara's works as other Authours, Latin, French, and Italian, by Geoffrey Fenton.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 1578 | A | <i>A booke of the Invention of the Art of Navigation</i> . . . compiled by the famous Sir Antonie of Guevara, by Edward Hellowes. Dedicated to Lord Howard of Effingham.                                                                                                                                                                                                              |



At the time of writing, the sale of these MSS. to the German Government had just been completed ; but although they had arrived in Berlin, the authorities there had not had time to examine them. Herr Tobler has since examined the romances included in the MSS. ; and has published an account of the Huon MS. in the transactions of the Akademie der Wissenschaften zu Berlin. It there appears that the MS. is a version of the *chanson de geste* of Huon d'Auvergne, and has no concern whatever with *Huon of Bordeaux*.

#### IV. CONTEMPORARY CRITICISM OF HUON.

To the instances given above on pp. xlviii and xlix should be added the very uncomplimentary notice of 'Huon' in 'The Epistle to the Reader,' prefixed by Thomas Bowes to the second of his 'French Academie' (1594)—a translation from the French of Primaudaye. After denouncing dramatists as atheists, Bowes proceeds :—

'It were too long to set downe the Catalogue of those lewde and lascivious bookes which haue mustered themselues of late yeeres in Paules Churchyard, as chosen souldiers ready to fight vnder the diuels banner, of which it may bee truely said, that they prevaile no lesse (if not more) to the vpholding of Atheisme in this light of the Gospel, then the Legend of Lies, *Huon of Burdeaux*, King Arthur, with the rest of that rabble, were of force to maintaine Popery in the dayes of ignorance.'

The passage from Gervase Markham's *Health to the Gentlemanly Profession of Serving Men* (1578), in which reference is made to *Huon of Burdeaux*, may be worth giving in full (cf. p. xlix and p. 370). Markham is referring to the baneful attractions which gold has for mankind. He adds :—

'But the Deuill (in my iudgement), the authour, roote, and originall of all mischiefe and miserie hath infused into this mettall some peece of Adamant, and into man's desire and affection some lump of Iron ; which Adamant, according to his nature, drawing the Iron vnto it, linketh them selues togeather in undesolveable bondes, not much vnlyke the Castle of Adamant, feigned in the historie of *Hughon of Burdeaux*, which Castle having drawne the sayd Hughon vnto it, all hope of departure thence was quite extinguished, onely except he coulde escape and be thence delyuered by an extraordinarie and imminent danger : which was to be carried ouer the sea in the clawes of a Griffine, whose desire was to deuoure

him, and that was one danger ; and in great hazard in regarde of his wayghte to fall from the sayd Griffine into the ocean and so be drowned, and that was another danger ; which dangers as they were great and perilous, so I holde them perils no lesse dangerous and as hard for them to be separated and deliuered from this pernicious Adamant Castle that hath linked and chained them schues unto it by their extraordinarie couetowse desire of this worldly Mammon.'

## V. THE BIBLIOGRAPHY OF LORD BERNERS' *HUON*.<sup>1</sup>

On 1 Feb. 1638-9 Master Purfoot assigned to Master Thomas Wright all his interest in *Huon of Burdeaux*, and in *The History of Valentine and Orson* (Arber's Transcript of the Stationers' Registers, iv. 45).

## VI. THE 1601 REVISION OF LORD BERNERS' ENGLISH.

Nearly seventy years after the romance of *Huon* was translated by Lord Berners into the English of his generation, the publisher of a third edition (1601) entered on his title-page that 'the rude English' was 'corrected and amended.'<sup>2</sup> The first paragraph is completely recast in the Elizabethan version, and shows that the reviser at first contemplated rewriting the romance in a pompous Euphuistic style. 'In the tyme accountyde the yere of grace' becomes 'In the time by computation called ye yeere of grace;' 'Charles the Grete, namyd Charlemayn' becomes 'Charles the Great, more vulgarly knowne by the name of Charlemaine;' and the last sentence of the paragraph is transformed thus:—

c. 1533.

'The renoume of hym & of hys noble valiaunt chivalry strechyd out of ye eest into the west in such wyse that for euer there shalbe made of hym perpetuall memory, as here after ye shall here.'

1601.

'But let it suffice, God was their guide, Religion the cause, Honour the object, & perpetuall Fame the reward, which both led him & his traine to these worthy attempts, & still brought them backe with the due to their valorous enterprises; extending both his & their renowne to all parts of the world, & registering their names in the kalender of neuer dying memorie.'

<sup>1</sup> See page lvii.

<sup>2</sup> See p. lvi, *sup*.

On pp. 6-7 another long passage is completely transformed, but, unlike the opening paragraph, the revised language is studiously made simple and straightforward.

This sweeping style of revision was, however, rapidly abandoned. In the rest of the book the revision affected every page, but the method proved that it was merely undertaken by a rapid reader—probably a printer's reader—mainly with a view to removing the obvious archaisms. Old words, liable to puzzle the pleasure-seeking public, to whom romances appealed, were replaced by modern words; the Gallicized English, in which Lord Berners, an accomplished French scholar, not infrequently indulged, was completely anglicized; the punctuation and spelling were occasionally made to conform to more modern rules; now and then an old-fashioned construction was altogether reformed; in very rare cases the sentence was rewritten. The alterations were not made with sufficient system to satisfy all the requirements of scientific philology, but they exhibit in a practical fashion the notions of an every-day Elizabethan as to the characteristic differences between his own written language and that of his grandfather.

Of purely grammatical changes made on archaic grounds, those affecting inflections are not very numerous. The plural forms *eyen* (p. 13) and *yere* (p. 29) are replaced by *eyes* and *yeares*. The pronoun *ye* disappears in favour of *you*, and the forms *tho* (p. 193) and *moo* (p. 36) become *those* and *more*. In the case of verbs, such strong forms of the past tense as *bet* (p. 86) and *clume* (p. 683) are softened into *did beat* and *did clime* (climb). The old ending of past tenses and participles in *-yle* or *-yd* (apealyde, baynyd, deuysyd, etc.) is modernized into *-ed*. *Quod* (p. 21) becomes *quoth*, and the participial termination of *-en* in *bresten* (p. 69) is abandoned. The termination *-eth* or *-yth* in third person plural of present tenses is not uncommon in Lord Berners. Thus he writes, '*These thynges hath*' (p. 9), and '*I se them aproche that desyryth my deth*' (p. 26). In the Elizabethan version these phrases become '*These thynges have,*' and '*I se them aproche that desire my death.*'

Changes of construction are rarely made in the 1601 revision. But the double negative did not approve itself to the reviser, and he

usually removes one of the negative particles. Thus 'none other shall have *no* profyght' (p. 13) becomes 'none other shall have *any* honour;' and '*nor neuer none* of hys lynage gaue as yette very good counsell' (p. 12) becomes '*nor ever any* of his lynage,' etc. A few of Lord Berners' favourite constructions are loose adaptations from the French, and these are as a rule removed. In Lord Berners' phrase '[they] *coude* them great thanke' (p. 499) the reviser reads *gave* for *coude*, thus conforming to modern usage. This is a favourite phrase with Lord Berners (cp. 'I *can* you grete thanke,' p. 5). The French original has '[*Je*] *bou gré vous scay*,' and Lord Berners slavishly reproduces the phrase, translating *savoir* by *can* [O.E. *cun*, *cunnan* = *ken*, *know*]. In Berners' *Froissart* the expression is more frequently employed. Cotgrave, like the reviser, does not recognize it. Under *scavoir* he translates '*savoir bon gré à . . .*' by 'to *give* thanks unto . . .'

The rejection of archaic words is the most valuable part of the reviser's labour. So far as connecting particles and non-substantive words are concerned, the enumeration is necessarily brief, but each of them is important. Thus *or* in the sense of *before* is invariably rejected for *ere* or *before*. The enclitic *as*, which Lord Berners was in the habit of occasionally adding to *there* and *then*, and almost invariably to *where*, is always dropped. *Than* for *then* is never accepted, and the forms *syn* (p. 199), *seen*, or *sin* are not allowed to do duty for *since*. *Towards* or *toward* is in Lord Berners' language used as two separate words, and the word governed by it is very often inserted after *to*. Thus we meet with *to her warde* (p. 254), *to us warde* (p. 295), *to the host warde* (p. 328), *to ye gallores warde* (p. 328), *to the tre warde*; but all these in the Elizabethan version are transformed into *toward her*, *towards us*, *towards the Hooste*, *toward the gallours*, and *towards the tre*. *Clene* for *wholly*, as in *clene armyd* (p. 197), is replaced by *all*. The *which* figures perpetually in the old version, and the article is rejected in the new (cp. p. 16). *What* is not allowed to stand for *why* (p. 33), and the excessive employment of *that* to the exclusion of *which*, and with vague reference not to the preceding word, but to long clauses, is avoided by the Elizabethan. The awkwardness of the repetition of *then*,

used merely as a connecting particle—a common feature of all early English prose—is met by its omission or by the substitution of *and*. With regard to auxiliary verbs, it should be noted that *a*, the attenuated form of *have* (p. 149), and *woll*, a common variant of *will* (p. 87), either of which is frequent in Lord Berners' prose, are not found in the revised version. The verb *do* is used far more loosely by Lord Berners than his successor allowed to be correct. Thus Berners writes 'They *dyd* to have Huon *jagyd*' (p. 22), where the reviser substitutes *laboured* for *dyd*; '[He] *dyd* of his brothers gowne' (p. 28) becomes 'he *did* take off'; in the sentence 'ye that . . . haue well herde the grete vnresonablenes that the kynge *do* too one of oure peeres,' *do* is replaced in the Elizabethan version by *offers*. Another very common verb used by Lord Berners is *ween* or *went* for *think* or *thought*. The latter in the 1601 version invariably takes the former's place. It is clear that such a phrase as 'it skeeleth not of my dethe' (p. 677) had an archaic sound to the reader of 1601, for he refashions it as 'It is no matter though I die.'

The following list contains most of the substantive words, which the Elizabethan appears to have rejected on the sole ground that they had fallen or were falling out of common use. Many of them still figured in the poetry of the day, and Shakespeare pressed some of them into his service. But the fact that the reviser of Lord Berners' text put himself to the pains of substituting for them more familiar expressions, is positive proof that they sounded in his ear rude or old-fashioned. The reader will hardly need to be warned that the substituted word is not always the best or even a correct representative of the original. A reference to the Glossary will sufficiently remove difficulties on this score.

c. 1533.			1601.	
apayred	...	p. 240	replaced by	griued
apealyde	...	p. 22	}	"
appellyd	...	p. 31		
arson	...	p. 700	"	pommell (of a saddle)
beseen	...	p. 119	"	adorned
brast	...	p. 103	"	brake
breſt	...	p. 117	"	burst
carnall	...	p. 33	"	louing
chere	...	p. 57	"	countenance
clypped	...	p. 635	"	embraced
crope	...	p. 169	"	back



c. 1533.				1601.
dele	...	p. 554	replaced by	whit
departed	...	p. 336	"	parted
fell	...	p. 120	"	bolde
fellest	...	p. 210	"	cruellest
fordo	...	p. 487	"	undoe
gader [ <i>i. e.</i> gather]	...	p. 305	"	call
grees	...	p. 373	"	degrees
grese	...	p. 119	"	degrees
hore	...	p. 224	"	hoarie
imagenyd	...	p. 221	"	practised
impe	...	p. 12	"	tree
japery	...	p. 85	"	jest
lesynge	...	p. 37	"	loosing
leuer	...	p. 349	"	rather
meny	...	p. 499	"	companie
pylhyng	...	p. 401	"	killinge
refuse	...	p. 70	"	refusal
scot	...	p. 704	"	shotte
sore abashed	...	p. 359	"	greatly afraid
soppe	...	p. 38	"	drought
sparhawke	...	p. 7	"	sparrow-hawke
swounyd	...	p. 24	"	I wounded
trough	...	p. 31	"	certainte
yode	...	p. 636	"	rode
wanhope	...	p. 364	"	false hope
went	...	pp. 200, 233	"	thought
wente	...	p. 334	"	hoped

The following Gallicized words, used by Lord Berners as well as by Caxton and a few other early translators from the French, were never fairly naturalized in England. How literal Lord Berners could be on occasion, our comment on his use of 'can grete thanke' has already shown. With it may be compared such a phrase as 'escried a hye,' by which Berners renders 'escria en haut.' Several of those words which were ejected by the Elizabethan reviser (cp. *parents*, *denise*) had not, however, entirely dropped out of the language, but they were quickly disappearing, and clearly were not quite familiar in 1601. As in the case of the merely archaic words, the reviser's rendering is not always correct (cp. *entreated*). Reference should be made to the Glossary when the sense is not obvious.

c. 1533.				1601.
in amours with	...	p. 630	replaced by	enamoured of
assemeled	...	p. 613	"	assailed
assembelyd	...	p. 659	"	assaulted
bayngned	...	p. 537	)	bathed
baynyd	...	p. 427		
bountye	...	p. 146	"	goodness

c. 1533.			1601.
brochyd ( <i>broche</i> )	p. 22	replaced by	spurred
chatelyne ...	p. 493	"	captain
condute ...	p. 18	"	conducte
consent any ...	p. 27	"	give consent to
cordiner ...	p. 764	"	shoemakers
couetys ...	p. 251	}	couetousness
couytes ...	p. 320		
defend ...	p. 46	"	forbid
deuysyd ...	p. 7	"	advised
deuysinge ...	p. 13	"	communing
deuyses ...	p. 58	"	conferences
to deuysel ...	p. 630	"	to sport
dispender ...	p. 738	"	spender
dyspence ...	p. 718	"	charges
dolent ...	p. 356	"	sorrowfull
dolour ...	p. 32	"	ill hap
doloure ...	p. 3	"	greefe
domage ...	p. 146	"	wrong
dystroyed ...	p. 46	"	were impouerished
enbassed ...	p. 740	"	ambassage
enbassetours ...	p. 740	"	ambassadours
endoctryned ...	p. 576	"	educated
ensample ...	p. 12	"	example
entreated ...	p. 642	"	entertained
entreated ...	p. 657	"	threatened
escryed a hye ...	p. 185	"	cryed on hye
extorsyon ...	p. 47	"	crueltie
feloney ...	p. 696	"	villany
felony ...	p. 4	"	rashness
fersly ...	p. 23	"	boldly
fyaunsed ...	p. 686	"	wedded
glotons ...	p. 639	"	villaines
a high ...	p. 197	"	aloud
inportable ...	p. 544	"	insupportable
mastres ...	p. 696	"	mistress
messe ...	p. 216	"	service
mossell ...	p. 140	"	nostril
muryed ...	p. 650	"	immured
Noyfull ...	p. 440	"	Yrkesome
Noyfull ...	p. 579	"	too tedious
occysyon ...	p. 320	"	slaughter
oreson ...	p. 146	"	prayer
par[ent]age ...	p. 693	"	lyneage
parent ...	p. 9	"	kinsman
parentes ...	p. 2, 12	"	kindred
pastaunce ...	p. 46	"	pastime
payne ...	p. 644	"	labour
prefessyd ...	p. 34	"	pretended
purchase ...	p. 12	"	provide
purchaseth for ...	p. 13	"	seeks
purchasyd for ...	p. 216	"	practised against
rased ...	p. 145	"	torne
reculyd ...	p. 42	"	staggred

c. 1533.				1601.
releue	...	p. 198	replaced by	recover
releuyd	...	p. 147	"	recouered
renyed	...	p. 89	"	denyed
requere	...	p. 21	"	desire
require	...	p. 264	"	request
rybaadis	...	p. 538	"	villaines
semylytude	...	pp. 41, 138	"	likelihood
stradiot	...	p. 761	"	trauailer
Vaylable	...	p. 12	"	available
Vileny	...	p. 20	"	shame

Several misprints and puzzling misspellings were justifiably corrected by the Elizabethan, of which the following are the most notable:—

*Misprints.**Misspellings.*

c. 1533.				c. 1533.		1601.
above	p. 160	alone		besynes	p. 14	businessse
aperaelyd	p. 74	appointed		herber	p. 704	arbour
aryued	p. 181	armyd		impossessyons	p. 210	impositions
commonynge	p. 392	coming		leaue thystorys	p. 166	learneth the
excusyd	p. 26	accused				Historie
folye	p. 302	foyled		lybardes	p. 16	leopardes
frusshe	p. 474	russhe		portrayd	p. 412	portraiture
inbushyd	p. 25	ambushed		seasyd, <i>i. e.</i> ceased	p. 14	stayed
				sirode	p. 359	sea roode

Not infrequently when attempting to remove a difficulty caused by misspelling he comes to grief. Thus, 'If any *plea* come therby,' which means 'if any plea or charge be brought,' the reviser reads, 'If any *hurt* come.' The French original reads *plait*. 'He shal derely abyce (*i. e.* abide) it' (p. 305) is rendered 'He shall derely *buy* it.' 'To ordayne a bayenge,' *i. e.* a 'bayninge,' or 'bathing,' is changed into 'To ordaine a rich bed.'

A large number of changes were made like the last out of pure lightness of heart, and no philological deduction can be drawn from them. They were doubtless prompted in the first instance by the awkward spelling of the old text. Most of these changes are just such as a printer's reader might be expected to make if left to his own devices, and prove how permanent are the characteristics of these invaluable men, to whom no author ought to omit an opportunity of expressing his frequent indebtedness.

c. 1533.		1601.	c. 1533.		1601.
force	p. 152	violence	dysordynate	p. 696	inordinate
chorlysshely	p. 757	stubbornly	fell after	p. 4	afterwards en-
clerely	p. 363	evidently			sued
clerkes	p. 732	doctors	fortunyð	p. 21	happened
drams, <i>i. e.</i>			praysyd	p. 39	regarded
drachms	p. 142	ducates	rengyd, <i>i. e.</i>		
dysshordenate	p. 700	dishonorable	ranged	p. 494	arriued

It is not safe to draw any very large conclusion from the revision. But a comparison of the two versions shows that while the structure of the language had changed very slightly, about five per cent. of Lord Berners' vocabulary was judged to be out of date, nearly seventy years after his death, by a reader who made his standard of intelligibility the ordinary speech of his well-to-do contemporaries. At the same time it is noticeable, although not surprising, that the great literature of the end of the sixteenth century excluded a far smaller percentage of Lord Berners' vocabulary. Poets always have a predilection for the archaisms of language. Many words ejected by the Elizabethan reviser from Lord Berners' text are employed by Shakespeare in plays that were written about the date of the revision. The fact proves, if proof were needed, that Shakespeare freely indulged a taste for archaic expressions, and was exceptionally well read in the works of his predecessors.

## VII. A TABLE OF THE MAGICAL EPISODES IN THE ROMANCE.

\* \* It is worth noting that the most striking of Huon's magical adventures—his shipwreck on the adamant rock, his fight with the griffin, and his journey down the subterranean river—consecutively recorded on pp. 354—386 and pp. 407—444,<sup>1</sup> are related in the same order, and with little difference in detail, in the popular Bavarian story of *Herzog Ernst von Baiern* (see Karl Bartsch's scholarly edition issued at Vienna in 1869, and Simrock's *Die Deutschen Volksbücher*, iii. 305—15). The prose version of the folk-tale about Duke Ernest is still well known throughout Germany. It appears in its earliest known shape in a poem (of the Lower Rhine), of which a twelfth

<sup>1</sup> On pp. 387—407 the story of Esclaramonde's sufferings at the siege of Bordeaux is inserted.

century MS. is extant. Arranged somewhat differently, each of Huon's magical adventures appears in one or other of the seven journeys of Sindbad the Sailor in the *Arabian Nights*. That the whole episode is of Oriental origin admits of no doubt. But two interesting questions suggest themselves. By what channel did the story reach the authors of *Huon* and of *Herzog Ernst*? Which of the two authors may claim the credit of first presenting it to European readers? Probably the Crusades produced sufficient intercourse between Europe and Asia to supply an answer to the first question. The second might be the subject of prolonged investigation, but a first survey of the evidence can point only to one result. The earliest extant manuscript of *Huon* which includes these adventures is of the fourteenth century (see p. xxxiii, *supra*). The date of the earliest *extant* manuscript of this portion of *Huon* is not, however, in itself conclusive as to the date of its composition. Nevertheless there are indications that historical events of the late thirteenth and early fourteenth centuries were known to the romancer, and we are not inclined to accept a date earlier than the fourteenth century for the later sections of the romance. The earliest version of *Herzog Ernst* has been dated two centuries earlier. Hence a strong presumption is created in favour of the theory that the author of *Huon* borrowed from the author of *Herzog Ernst*.

#### THE ADAMANT ROCK.

This magnetic rock, which appears in the story of *Herzog Ernst*, and in the story of Sindbad in the *Arabian Nights*, draws towards it all ships (with iron nails in them), and on Huon reaching it (p. 370) the masts of vessels which have been wrecked on it are so massed together as to present the appearance of a forest. Sir John Mandeville describes it in almost identical terms (ed. 1839, pp. 161, 163, 271). He localizes it in a Chinese sea; other writers, like the author of the *Arabian Nights*, place it somewhere between Tonquin and Cochin China.<sup>1</sup>

The myth of the existence of a magnetic rock that drew the iron nails out of passing ships, thus causing them to go to pieces, or that bodily attracted them to it (for it is told both ways), is one of the numerous marvels of the

<sup>1</sup> The small-type notes are by Mr. W. A. Clouston.



'hollow-sounding and mysterious main' so universally credited in mediæval times. It had doubtless been orally current in Europe long before the date of either *Duke Ernst* or *Huon*: and while it may have been brought from the East through the Crusades, it is perhaps as likely to have been introduced through the Moors of Spain. Be this as it may, the incidents of Duke Huon's first journey to the East have an unquestionable resemblance to some of the adventures of the renowned Sindbád.

In the old French romance of the *Chevalier Berinus* there is a very curious account of the Rock of Adamant, which drew the ex-king of Blandie's five ships to it. The crews were in despair, for well they knew that when their food was all consumed a terrible, lingering death was in store for them. Presently an extremely attenuated man is observed to creep on board one of the ships, in quest of food, as it turns out, and he informs them that there is an inscription on the rock, but he had not read it. Aigres, the brave son of Berinus, goes on to the rock with the lean man, who shows him the inscription, which was to this effect: 'Whoever may touch this rock can only be freed by depositing on it all his wealth, save what may be necessary to enable him to complete his voyage: one of the crew, chosen by lot, must then go to the top of the rock and cast into the sea the ring which he will find there, when the vessel shall instantly be freed, but he must remain on the rock.' Aigres returns and acquaints them of the purport of the inscription: lots are drawn, and Aigres is the victim. After bidding his family adieu, he goes to the top of the rock, throws the ring in the sea, and all the five ships are at once set free and sail away, taking the remarkably lean man with them. The rock is infested by enchanters, but the gallant Aigres contrives to avoid their snares, until another ship is drawn to the rock, when he informs the mariners of the only means by which they can escape (for it would appear the ring returned to the top of the rock each time it was thrown into the sea). Lots are drawn, and so on, as before—an inconsistent story, if ever there was one!

The Rock of Adamant also figures in the Legend of St. Brandanus.—Is it possible that the myth had its origin in some old-world sailor's 'yarn' of an actual rock, now submerged, to which vessels were driven by a very strong current, a mishap which the unskillful navigators might ascribe to the attracting force of the rock itself? There is always a substratum of fact in legends of this kind, could it be discovered—they were not wholly invented.

#### THE APPLES OF YOUTH.

At the bidding of an angel Huon gathers three of these apples, each of which, when eaten by a man of eighty or a hundred years old, transforms him to a young man of thirty (p. 436). Huon bestows one of these apples on the Admiral of Tauris (p. 465), and his white hair and beard grow yellow as he eats it, and he suddenly becomes a youth of strength and beauty. The second is eaten by the abbot of Cluny, who is 114 years old, with similar results (pp. 552—5). The third rejuvenates Thierry, Emperor of Germany (p. 568).

This is essentially an Oriental idea—the counterpart of that of the Water of Immortality. In Indian story-books fruits—generally mangoes, the favourite fruit of high and low throughout Hindústán—are frequently represented as

possessing magical properties, such as curing barrenness in women, and conferring perennial youth upon whoever ate of them. We are told in the Persian Parrot-Book (*Tūtī Nāma*),<sup>1</sup> for instance, that a Prince having obtained some fruit of the Tree of Life, which grew in a far distant land, in order to test its virtue, gave part to a decrepit old woman ('experimentum in corpore vili'), who no sooner tasted it than she became a blooming damsel of 'sweet eighteen.' With variations, the same story is found in several Indian collections, such as the *Kathā Manjarī*, and there is also a version of it in the Tamil romance entitled *Alakēsa Kathā*; in both it is a mango fruit that has this quality, and the king causes some of it to be given to an aged goldsmith who was in prison for fraud, and it turned him into a youth of sixteen years—let us trust he was then released, that he might begin life over again!

There is a rather curious story about this kind of fruit in the Indian romance entitled *Sinhasana Dvātrinsatī*, or Thirty-two Tales of a Throne (and it occurs also in other collections), where a Brāhman having received from his favourite deity, as a reward for his devotional austerities, the fruit of immortality, joyfully proceeds home and shows it to his wife, who advises him to give it to Rājā Bhātrihari, as the wealth he was sure to present him with in return were preferable to an endless life of poverty. He goes to the palace, and presenting the fruit to the good rājā, acquaints him of its nature, and is rewarded with a lakh of rūpīs. The rājā gives the fruit to his wife, telling her that if she ate it her beauty should increase day by day, and she should be immortal. The rānī gives it to her paramour, the chief of the police, who, in his turn, presents it as the choicest of gifts to a favourite courtesan, who, after reflecting that it would only enable her to commit innumerable sins, resolves to offer it to the rājā, hoping to be rewarded in a future life. When Rājā Bhātrihari again received the fruit he was astonished, and on learning from the courtesan from whom she had obtained it, he saw that his wife was unfaithful, so, abandoning throne and kingdom, he departed into the jungle, where he became an ascetic. But we are not told what became of the fruit—perhaps the good rājā destroyed it, fully convinced that immortality on this earth would not be altogether a blessing!

#### ARMOUR THAT RENDERS THE WEARER INVULNERABLE.

See the account of giant Galaffer (p. 103).

#### CAIN.

On a plain near the Caspian Sea, from which there appears to be no exit, Huon finds a 'tun made of the heart of oak bound all about with bands of iron,' which rolls round and round 'in the circuit of the plain.' Beside it lies a great iron mallet. Within Cain, the murderer of his brother Abel, is confined, with serpents and toads devouring him; but he is unable to die. He implores Huon to break the tun with the mallet, and thus release him. A fiend of hell is waiting with a boat to bear Cain from the accursed

<sup>1</sup> Composed by Ziyā-ed-Dīn Nakhshabī about A.D. 1306, but representing a much older work no longer extant.

p'lace, and Cain suggests that after Huon has broken the tun, he shall tie the mallet round his neck, represent himself as Cain to the fiend, and effect his escape. Huon declines to touch the tun, but takes advantage of Cain's advice (pp. 484—492). He is ferried by the fiend to the city of Collanders, continues to call himself Cain, and is enthusiastically received by the pagans, who do not discover the deceit.

#### THE CUP OF OBERON.

This cup, which Oberon presents to Huon, fills with wine in the hands of any man who, being 'out of deadly sin,' attempts to drink out of it, but is always empty when a sinful man touches it (pp. 76, 77). The Emperor Charlemagne is proved sinful by this test, while Huon, his wife, and Gerames are all shown to be innocent of sin (p. 260).

Magical tests of chastity occur in many Asiatic as well as mediæval European romances and tales. In the *Kathā Sarit Sāgara*,<sup>1</sup> a merchant named Guhasena is about to depart on a long trading journey, and both he and his wife have misgivings as to each other's fidelity during their separation, when the deity Siva appears before them, and puts in the hand of each a red lotus, which should fade if either proved unfaithful.—In the Persian *Tūtī Nāma* (or Parrot-Book) the wife of a soldier, on his leaving her to enter a great man's service, gives him a nosegay, which should betoken her chastity while it bloomed. And in the charming Arabian tale of Prince Zayn al-Asnām the King of the Genii gives him a magic mirror, in which if he see the reflection of any damsel undimmed, he may be sure that she is 'a clean maid, without aught of defect or default, and endowed with every praiseworthy quality; but if, on the contrary, the figure be found obscured, then know that she is sullied by the soil of sex;'—and the story of how the Prince at length found the required pure and spotless damsel is 'familiar to every schoolboy.'

From the East the idea of such magical tests was, no doubt, brought to Europe during the crusading times, when many a brave and worthy knight, as he lay sleepless in his tent on the plains of Syria, must have often thought of his dame at home, and wondered whether she had not found a substitute for him in the person of the 'lordly abbot, or perchance some meaner priest'! In *Amadis de Gaul* the test is a garland, in *Perce Forest* a rose, which remained fresh so long as its wearer continued chaste; while in *Tristan*, *Perceval*, *Morte d'Arthur*, *Orlando Furioso*, and *Le Lay du Corn*, a cup of wine if spilled in the hand of either male or female indicated the unfaithful lover. In the old metrical romance of the *Wright's Chaste Wife* (edited for the E. E. T. S. by Dr. Furnivall) a poor widow gives the wright, when about to espouse her daughter, a garland of roses which would keep their colour while

<sup>1</sup> Signifying, "Ocean of the Streams of Story," a great Sanskrit collection, of the 11th century, slightly abridged from a work apparently now lost, entitled *Vrihat Kathā*, or Great Story, written five hundred years earlier.

his wife was true to him, but not otherwise. In like circumstances, a carpenter, according to the *Gesta Romanorum*, received from his mother-in-law a shirt which would not be soiled or torn so long as his wife was chaste; and this also occurs in the North German tale of 'The King and Queen of Spain' (Thorpe's *Fule-Tide Stories*).<sup>1</sup> In Bandello, Part I., Nov. 21, a Bohemian nobleman has a magic picture of his wife, which would betoken her infidelity by turning yellow (or *green*, the colour supposed to be appropriate to jealousy!); and this novel it was, doubtless—not some oral version of the *Wright's Wife*, as I once thought—that suggested to Massinger the plot of his play of *The Picture*. Everybody knows the old English ballad of the *Boy and the Mantle*, derived from a *fabliau*, where a mantle will fit only a woman who is perfectly chaste. In the *Gesta Romanorum* a wild elephant can only be lulled asleep by two pure virgins; and in an Indian story a white elephant falls down dead, and a devotee informs the king that it will be restored to life by the presence of a chaste woman: surely no one could be so infatuated as to believe it likely—even possible—that these two stories were independently invented!

The ancient Hebrews had a water-ordeal to test a woman suspected of infidelity by her husband, which may have been derived from the Egyptians—see the Book of Numbers, ch. i. vv. 5–21, from which it is very evident that no woman conscious of guilt would risk such a punishment, threatened by one of the sacred order of the priesthood, and so she would stand self-convicted—truly, a shrewd device! The Hindús seem also to have had a water-ordeal, though of a different kind, for similar cases: in the *Rámáyana* it is related that Sita, the wife of Rámá, in order to prove her chastity, which the reverend hermits strongly suspected, boldly leaped into the "tank of trial," and—more fortunate than many of her equally innocent European sisters in modern times who were "ducked" for witchcraft—she escaped being drowned, and thus satisfied the suspicious ascetics.

#### DREAMS AND ANGEL'S VISIONS.

Gerard learns approaching events in a dream (p. 16). An angelical voice, heralded by a shining light, addresses Huon (p. 435).

#### FAIRIES.

At Oberon's birth (p. 73) a discontented fairy caused him to cease growing when three years old, but afterwards regretting this act, made him the fairest creature that ever nature formed. Translyne gave him the power of seeing through all men's minds, and another fairy that of going whither he would by merely wishing himself there. Gerames tells Huon (p. 63) that any one speaking to Oberon is lost for ever, a common popular notion. Oberon can raise up tempests (p. 67), place rushing rivers in the paths of his enemies, or

<sup>1</sup> It is curious to find this idea in a popular Bengali story, where a girl tells her companions that he who gets her for his wife will be a happy man, for the cloth she wears will never be soiled or torn.—See Rev. Lal Behari Day's *Folk-Tales of Bengal*, p. 236.



suddenly call into being palaces for his friends, and by a touch of his rod make roads for them through stormy rivers. For further accounts of Oberon; the dwarf king of the fairies, and his attendants Gloridas, Gloriande, Lempatrix, Margale, Oryane, Translyne, see under these names in the Index Nominum.

#### FIENDS AND EVIL ANGELS.

The devil of hell, who is in league with Cain (p. 489), has a head as big as an ox's head, his eyes are redder than two burning coals, his teeth great and long, and as rough as a bear, and he casts fire and smoke out of his gorge like a furnace (p. 489). Huon, when wrecked on a rock in the Spanish sea, finds a castle there inhabited by monks, who are evil angels, chased out of Paradise with Lucifer (p. 592). When they please they come among living men in the likeness of bears or wer-wolves. Others tempt men and women to their damnation; others follow the thunder and tempest in the air, and some destroy ships and men on the seas. They still have most of the powers of the fairies, and create, by merely wishing, towns and castles on high rocks, with minstrels and all that appertains to rich living, but Christ compels them to conduct daily divine service (p. 593).

#### THE FOUNTAIN OF YOUTH.

This fountain cures those who bathe in its stream of all infirmities (p. 434). It is apparently situated on Alexander's Rock.

The virtues of this Fountain are thus described in Way's rendering of the *fabliau* of "The Land of Cockaigne"—that is, Kitchenland, where all sorts of sensual delights abound—

"But the chiefest, choicest treasure,  
In this land of peerless pleasure,  
Was a well, to say the sooth,  
Cleped the Living Well of Youth.  
There, had numb and feeble Age  
Crossed you in your pilgrimage,  
In those wondrous waters pure,  
Laved a while, you had a cure:  
Lustihed and youth appears  
Numbering now but twenty years."

The circumstance that, according to *Huon*, the Fountain was on Alexander's Rock clearly indicates that the idea was, directly or indirectly, derived from Eastern sources, since the universal Muslim legend tells how Alexander despatched the (mythical) prophet El-Khizr to fetch him some of the Water



of Immortality, and when, after much painful toil and long and weary journeying, the prophet reached the fountain, he had no sooner drank a little of its waters than they disappeared; and since then no man has been able to discover the Fountain.—But long before the days of Alexander, if we may credit the Rabbinical tradition, Solomon, the son of David, sent a messenger to procure him some of the Water of Immortality;—meanwhile the sage monarch would have ample time to reflect upon this delusive world: for was it not he who, having seen everything under the sun, declared that ‘all is vanity and vexation of spirit?’ We might therefore well expect that, on this account, when his messenger returned with the Water of Immortality, the ‘wisest of men’ would decline the potation; and decline it he did; but not because ‘all is vanity’ (the Rev. Mr. Stiggins, by the way, was of the same opinion—always excepting a little pine-apple rum), but because he could not endure the thought of surviving his female favourites!

The assertion that since El-Khizr took his draught of immortality no one has been able to find the Fountain can’t be true—if *all* stories be true—for have we not in the oral and written (popular) histories of many lands most circumstantial accounts of successful expeditions to the Fountain of Life? What, for instance, was the water which the beautiful and brave young princess, in the Arabian tale of the ‘Envious Sisters,’ sprinkled on the stones, as she went down the hill (after securing the Bird that spoke and the Tree that sang), thereby changing them back into their original forms of princes and nobles—what, but this same Water of Life? And again, in another Arabian tale, when Prince Ahmad is required by his silly father, the king—prompted by an envious, malignant vazir—to get him some of the water that could cure all ailments, and the Prince’s bewitching bride, the *Peri Bánú*, obtains it for him, spite of the lions and serpents which guarded the fountain—what was this but the identical water of which old El-Khizr drank—unless, indeed, there existed more than one fountain of the same kind in those far-off days? Then there is the delightful German tale, ‘*Das Wasser im Leben*,’ to which Grimm has appended a note, stating that in Conrad of Wurtzburg’s *Trojan War*, written in the 13th century, Medea gets water from Paradise to renew the youth of Jason’s father.—There’s no end, in sooth, to the number of stories of magical fountains of all sorts—fountains of immortality, of youth, of oblivion, of love, of disdain; and fountains, eke, that changed a man into a woman, and a woman into a man!

#### GIANTS.

The first giant Huon meets is Angolaffer or Galafer, who is seventeen feet high (p. 103). He has robbed Oberon of the tower of Dunother, and of a suit of armour which renders invulnerable any man who, wearing it, is ‘without spot of deadly sin’ and the son of a virtuous mother (p. 105). Huon puts it on, and strikes off the giant’s head. Angolaffer’s brother Agrapart is of the same height, and has two teeth protruding from his mouth, each a foot long: his eyes are like two burning torches, and ‘he was a foot between the brows’ (p. 140). Huon worsts him in a duel (p. 148).

## THE GRIFFIN OR GRYPHON.

Huon sees this monster while in the castle of the Adamant, carrying off in its talons the corpses of sailors shipwrecked on that fatal rock (p. 426). Lying down among the dead men, Huon is himself carried by it through the air to its nest on Alexander's Rock (p. 429). It is a female bird with eyes like basins of fire, and of enormous size; but Huon succeeds in slaying it, as well as its young. He preserves a foot of the monster as a curiosity, and presents it on his return to King Louis of France (p. 583), and 'by King Philip it was hanged in the holy chapel, whereas it is as yet' (p. 583).

Accounts of this bird figure in *Marco Polo's Travels*, where it is called Gryphon; in the story of Sindbad in the 77th Arabian Night (under the name of Rukh), and in the travels of Rabbi Benjamin of Tudela. "Its story is identical," writes Colonel Yule, "with that of the Garuda of the Hindoos, the Simurgh of the old Persians, the 'Angka of the Arabs, the Bar Yachre of the Rabbinical legends, the Gryps of the Greeks" (Yule's *Marco Polo*, ii. 349, 350). Its habitat has been referred to the China seas by early Eastern writers; Marco Polo heard of it at Madagascar; the legends of Northern Siberia tell how it has visited their climes. Marco Polo describes it as an enormous eagle. Rabbi Benjamin of Tudela writes that when sailors were in danger of being lost at sea near China, they sewed themselves up in hides and awaited the griffin, who carried them to land, believing them to be natural prey. According to the story of Duke Ernest of Bavaria the duke was wrecked like Huon, on the rock of Adamant, but escaped with his life; the dead bodies of most of his companions were carried off by the griffin; and they themselves were whisked alive through the air by the bird to a rock, whence like Huon they travel down a river in the heart of a mountain. There is a Persian drawing engraved in Lane's *Arabian Nights*, of the Rukh or Gryphon carrying through the air three elephants, one in its beak, and two in its claws. Naturalists believe the bird to be an antediluvian member of the ostrich family, identical with the fossil bird *Æpyorius*. A fossil egg of the species, capable of holding nearly  $2\frac{1}{2}$  gallons of water, is in the British Museum.

To Colonel Yule's list of *wunderrogels* may be added the Eorosh of the Zend; the Kargas of the Turks; the Kirni of the Japanese; and the sacred Dragon of the Chinese.—The device which Benjamin of Tudela describes sailors as adopting when in danger of being shipwrecked—sewing themselves in skins and awaiting the Griffin, who carried them to land, believing them to be his natural prey—occurs in several Arabian tales, where it is generally practised by magicians on young lads whom they have seduced from home; the object being to obtain precious stones from the top of the mountain where the Rukh carries them, after which the magicians leave their victims to their fate, which however always proves a happy one.

#### THE HORN OF OBERON.

This horn was made by four fairies in the isle of Cephallonia; one (Gloriande) endowed it with the power of curing by its blast all manner of sickness; a second (Translyne) with the power of satisfying hunger and thirst; a third (Margale) with the power 'that whosoever heard this horn, though he were never so poor and feeble by sickness, he should have such joy in his heart that he should sing and dance'; a fourth fairy (Lempatrix) gave the horn the gift of forcing him who heard it to come at the pleasure of him who blew it (p. 66). When this 'rich horn of ivory' is bestowed by Oberon on Huon, its only virtue mentioned is that it brings a hundred thousand men to the aid of him who blows it, if—and the condition is all-important—there is genuine need of help (pp. 77, 78).

Musical instruments having the same property as that with which the third fairy endowed the horn of Oberon, viz. of making every one who heard it to dance, *volens volens*, are common to the folk-tales of all Europe. For examples, the magic pipe in our old English tale of *The Friar and the Boy*, and the violin in its German counterpart (in Grimm), *Das Jule im Dorn*, and the harp in the Icelandic *Herauds ok Bosi Saga*; and akin to these is the pipe of the Piper of Hamelin, which not only drew all the rats into the Weser but drew all the children into a mountain. In the Icelandic saga, which, according to Mr. Baring-Gould, rests on a mythological foundation, a harp occurs which belongs to one Sigurd. 'Bosi slays Sigurd, puts on his skin and clothes, and taking the harp goes in this disguise to the banquet-hall of King Godmund, where his true love is about to be married to another man. He plays the harp, and the knives and plates, the tables and stools, then the guests, and lastly the monarch himself are set to dancing. He keeps them capering till they are too exhausted to move a limb, then he casts the bride over his shoulder and makes off.'<sup>1</sup> In Croker's collection of Irish Fairy Legends one Maurice Connor is said to have been able by playing a certain tune on his bagpipes, to make old and young, lame and lazy, "up and *fut* it," till they fell down from sheer exhaustion.—The fourth virtue of Oberon's horn, that of bringing a hundred thousand men to the aid of him who blows

<sup>1</sup> *Curious Myths of the Middle Ages*, ed. 1869, p. 431.

it, is also found in the horn that drew crowds which was presented by the little man in red to one of three soldiers journeying together, according to the German story of 'The Nose' (in Grimm); and also in the bagpipe of the young hero of a Slav tale in M. Dozon's French collection (No. 2), which when played upon calls up any number of armed soldiers

#### JUDAS ISCARIOT.

In the perilous gulf or whirlpool near hell, Huon finds Judas floating about on a piece of canvas. This canvas (Judas says) he once gave away to a poor man for God's sake, a gift of charity unique in his career; and God afterwards restored it to him as a reward for his virtuous act, to protect him from the wind on his right side. Tormented to death, he cannot die (pp. 363, 369). The story finds a parallel in the Irish legend of St. Brendan, who met Judas on an iceberg in the Northern Sea, and learnt that he was allowed to leave the sinner's burning lake every Christmas night to cool himself in the snow, because he had once given his cloak to a leper. This story is the subject of one of Mr. Matthew Arnold's best known poems (see Mr. Thomas Olden's notice of St. Brendan in the *Dict. Nat. Biog.*).

#### A MAN TRANSFORMED INTO A SEA BEAST.

Oberon's messenger Malabron, who carries Huon on his back through the sea (p. 111), and resembles a bear, was a handsome man, whom Oberon punished for disobedience by transforming him into a beast of the sea for thirty years. When Huon makes the sign of the Cross, the skin of the beast temporarily falls off, and reveals as fair a man as could be seen.

#### MECHANICAL CONTRIVANCES.

Two men of brass 'without ceasing beat with their flails' before the gate of Dunother, the residence of the giant Angolaffer, so that none can enter it alive. On opening a wicket, however, from within, a wind rushes forth and sets the men at rest (pp. 98, 99).

#### PRECIOUS STONES.

Of the stones gathered by Huon in the underground river, one preserves its bearer from poison or treason, another from fire and



sword, a third from all discomfort and old age, a fourth cures blindness, and a fifth renders its owner invisible (pp. 454-7).

Magic gems play important parts in innumerable tales. They are frequently obtained from grateful serpents. Thus, in an Albanian tale (No. 9 of M. Dozon's French collection), a youth having saved the life of a serpent receives as a reward from its father a wishing-stone, by means of which, *à la* Aladdin, he has a magnificent palace erected and gets a beautiful princess for his bride.—In the *Jātakas*, or Buddhist Birth-Stories, we read of a gem which, when put in the mouth, enabled one to rise into the air and go wherever he wished.—In the Persian romance which recounts the imaginary adventures of Hatim Taï, the hero slays a dragon and takes out of the monster's head a pearl which restored sight to the blind; cured the bite of a snake; endeared its possessor alike to friend and foe; secured victory in battle; conferred profound wisdom and boundless wealth; and rendered all creatures obedient to his commands.—The notion of dragons or serpents having gems in their heads (as well as being guardians of hidden treasure), still prevalent in the East, seems to be a relic of serpent-worship, and recalls Shakespeare's 'toad, ugly and venomous,' &c. A Kashmiri folk-tale relates how a 'snake-woman' was burnt for twenty-four hours in a furnace, and among her ashes was found a small round stone—the real essence of the 'snake-woman,' and whatever one touched with it was turned to gold. The alchemists of old times were not aware of this ready process of obtaining the long-sought Philosopher's Stone: but, then, you must first catch your 'snake-woman'!

In the *Gesta Romanorum* (ed. E. E. T. S., story of Guido) we read of a stone of three colours, obtained from a thankful serpent, 'possessed of three virtues: bestowing evermore joy without heaviness; abundance without fail; and light without darkness.' The same story is told in Gower's *Confessio Amantis*, B. v., but the stone which the grateful reptile gives the hero had the useful—but, from a moral point of view, rather questionable—property of always returning to his purse after having sold it—there, sure enough, was the stone again, along with the gold paid for it by the unlucky jeweller!—Needless it were to multiply examples.

#### THE SERPENT.

This animal guards the castle of the Adamant (p. 374). It is 'higher than a great horse, with eyes redder than fire, with marvellous great talons and tail.' Sir Arnold, Huon's knight, flees on catching sight of it; but Huon kills it after making the sign of the Cross, by thrusting a broad-headed spear down its throat when it opened its mouth to swallow him. Huon's own sword could not pierce its skin, which is harder than iron or steel (p. 381).

#### SUBTERRANEAN RIVER.

When leaving Alexander's Rock, Huon is wafted in a richly-jewelled boat down the rock-confined river of Dyplayre (pp. 431-440). After three days' journeying the rocks close above him and



form a dark passage, down which his ship is hurried at a great pace; the air is bitterly cold, voices are heard cursing their ill-fortune in diverse languages. There is also thunderous noise of falling water. A tempest arises, and great bars of red-hot iron fall hissing in front of the ship. After three days the vessel runs aground on a gravel bank of precious stones. Launching his vessel once again he travels on in mid stream still underground, and on the eleventh day passes out of the darkness, and finds himself in the Sea of Persia. This underground river or perilous gulf, as it is also called, is stated to lie "between the Sea of Persia and the Great Sea-ocean." A similar journey is made by Sindbad and by Herzog Ernst (cp. Tasso's *Gerusalemme liberata*, xiv. 32 ff.).

#### SWORDS.

Galans forged three invincible swords, of which one called Durandel was owned by Roland; the second was named Courtain; and the third, rusty and old to outward appearance, was given Huon by Ivoryn (p. 182).

The hero of chivalric romance is usually provided with a most trenchant blade, which he only can wield, and a steed, like himself, high-spirited and of extraordinary endurance, that carries him through all dangers. In the Edda of Samund we are told that Wieland (or Velent) the Smith forged a sword of such sharpness that when he cleft his rival Emilius with it the blade seemed to the latter only like cold water running down his body: 'Shake thyself,' said Wieland; he did so, and fell in two halves, one on each side of the chair. And in the Gíslí Saga it is related that the sword Gray-steel, which was forged by the Dwarfs, could bite whatever its blow fell upon—be it steel, or iron, or anything else. So, too, Arthur's famous blade, 'y-hote' Excaliber, could 'kerve steel, yren, and al-thing.'

In the Bedouin romance of *Antar* the poet-hero has an all-powerful sword called Dhamí, which was made out of a thunderbolt, and the skill and labour of the smith who forged it were but ill-requited; for when he took it to his employer—not Antar, but an Arab chief—with just pride but little prudence, he exclaimed, 'Sharp is the sword, O chief, but where is the smiter?' to which the chief replied, flourishing Dhamí, 'As for the smiter—I am the smiter,' and, suiting the action to the word, he smote off the head of the unlucky artisan. When Dhamí came, by mere accident, as it did, into the possession of the hero Antar, he plied it on the heads of his foes with such effect that many a time and oft he cleft a doughty knight and his horse each in two halves!

But the swords of romance had sometimes other wonderful qualities than that of carving steel and iron, or of cleaving man and horse. For instance, in the *Kathā Sarit Sāgara* the hero Indīvarasena receives from the goddess Durga a sword by the power of which he should not only conquer his enemies, but it would obtain for him whatever he desired; and in another story (but

this often occurs in Indian fictions) the hero, in like manner, obtains a sword by means of which he could fly through the air. We must not forget the sword which 'the king of Araby and Inde' sent, according to Chaucer's *Squire's Tale*, to the King of Tartary, that, like the spear of Telephus, could cure the wound it gave—a quality which seems to be amusingly distorted in a modern popular Norse story, in Sir George W. Dasent's *Tales from the Ejjeld*, where Master Tobacco receives from an old witch a sword, one edge of which was black, the other white; and 'if he smote with the black edge, everything fell dead, and if with the white edge, everything came to life again.' This sword, moreover, could become a knife and be carried in the pocket, and when drawn out it was a sword again.

#### ADDITIONAL NOTE.

Florence's incestuous love for his daughter Ide is utterly inconsistent with his previous manly character, and a very clumsy interpolation by one of the continuators of the Romance. Nevertheless it has parallels both in Asiatic and in several European fictions. In No. xiii. of Pandit Natésa Sastri's *Folk-Lore in Southern India* (London: Trübner) a king wishes to marry his four daughters after the death of his wife, their mother, but by a clever device they not only save themselves from such an unnatural union, but bring their father to a due sense of the enormous crime he purposed committing. And in the German tale entitled, in Grimm, 'Allerleirauh,' and in one of our English translations, 'Catskin': in Perrault's 'Peau d'Ane'; in the modern Greek story entitled, 'Xylomarie' (M. Legrand's French collection), and in other popular European tales, the heroine has also to flee from the incestuous love of her father.—W. A. C.

#### VIII. INDEX LOCORUM.

\* \* \* Mediæval romances show as little regard for geography as for history, and Huon's travels in the East baffle all detailed description. The names of the places visited, although often hopelessly disguised by misspellings, are, however, rarely quite fictitious. The compiler of the romance obviously had access to some early book of Oriental travel, and thence derived his geographical nomenclature. I have tried to identify a few of the names below. If we take Huon's journeys seriously, the FIRST JOURNEY to the East may be described as taking him to Jerusalem; thence from Southern Syria he crosses the sea to the mouth of the Nile, whence he is carried to Cairo. On leaving Egypt he appears to visit some island of the Greek Archipelago, and thence to pass to the mainland of Asia Minor (Turkey in Asia), whence he returns to Brindisi. On his second JOURNEY to the East he finds himself near the Caspian Sea, whence he makes his way to Tabriz in Persia, and to Angora in Turkey in Asia. After a voyage in the Persian Gulf, he arrives at Antioch and

Damascus, and visits most of the known towns in Palestine. His THIRD JOURNEY to Momur, Oberon's realm in India, is not described after he suffers shipwreck off an unnamed rock in the Mediterranean near Spain. Thence he is carried through the air by fairies to Momur, a shadowy kingdom of India.

Abylante, desert of, 478. [A lake in Anatolia, Turkey in Asia, is now named Abullionte or Abullonia, and is similarly situated in relation to Angora (*q. v.*) as the Abylante of the romance.]

Acre, 62, 519 (besieged by Persians), 522.

Adamant, castle of, 370.

Affryke, Aufrike, 2; sea of, 663.

Albaney, 72.

Alexander's rock, 427.

Almayn, Almayne, 279, Germany.

Anfalerne, a seaport, 161.

Anfamie, a Saracen kingdom, 357.

Angore, 472, Angora (Enguri) in Anatolia, Turkey in Asia.

Antioch, 497.

Antiopheney, a Saracen kingdom, 512.

Aquytanie, 18, Aquitaine.

Armanye, Ermyne, 489, 498, Armenia: part is called 'low,' and part 'high,' 498.

Arogone, 313, Aragon.

Arrabey, 519, Arabia.

Austrych, 277, Austria.

Babylon, city of, 49, 50, 61, 83, 113, 130, Cairo. [All mediæval

travellers speak of Cairo as 'Babylon in Egypt' (*Bambelonia d'Egitto*, Marco Polo). Cairo is mentioned under this name by Diodorus, quoting Ctesias, by Strabo and by Ptolemy. Babul, close to Old Cairo, still preserves the old name of the city; cp. Yule's *Marco Polo*, i. 23.]

Barbarye, 310, 519, 663, Barbary.

Barselone, 624, Barcelona.

Basyle, 702, Basle.

Bauier, 2, Bavaria.

Beauland, 668, perh. Beaulieu.

Belmarnyn, 741.

Berry, 281.

Blay, Blaye, castle of, 275; town of, 578.

Borgoyn, 316, 399, Bourgogne.

Bougye, 310, a town in Barbary.

Bouillon, 59, Boulogne.

Boulnant, 603, a realm of Oberon handed to King Arthur: probably identical with Bolgara or Bolghar on the Wolga, a town of Upper Bulgaria, which Arab writers regarded as the northernmost limit of the habitable world; cp. Yule's *Marco Polo*, i. 4—6.

- Brandys, a sea-port, 54, 55, 233,  
     Brindisi.  
 Burdeux, 5, 7, *et pass.* Bordeaux.  
 Calaber, 743, Calabria.  
 Caluery, 59, Mount Calvary.  
 Candy island, 663, Candia.  
 Caspys, sea of, 472, the Caspian.  
 Cceyll, Cesyll, 663, Sicily.  
 Chafalene, an island, 66; 'the  
     priney isle,' 72—3, Cephalonia.  
 Chalons, 252.  
 Champagne, 52.  
 Cluny, 52; battle near, 531.  
 Colanders, a city of Armenia,  
     489—496.  
 Coleyn, 284, Cologne.  
 Constantyne the noble, 466, Con-  
     stantinople.  
 Corse, isle, 663, Corsica.  
 Courtois, 676.  
 Cret, isle of, 213, Crete.  
 Damas, 497, Damascus.  
 Damiet, Damyet, 130, 155, 161,  
     Damietta.  
 Dolphenny [Dolphinne, 1601 ed.],  
     316; Daupheney, 741, Dau-  
     phiné.  
 Dorbrey, 507.  
 Dunother, tower of, 96.  
 Dyplayre, river, 439 [brings Huon  
     to Tauris in Persia].  
 Egypt, 73, etc.  
 Englund, 607, England.  
 Ermyne, *see* Armanye.  
 Escalence, 100, 501, Escalon.  
 Eufrates, flood of, 478, Euphrates.  
 Flanders, 252.  
 Florencoll, 760.  
 France, 3, *et pass.*  
 Gasere, 445, 501, Gaza.  
 Geanes, 445, prob. Geaune in  
     Landes, France.  
 Gerone, a town near Bordeaux,  
     15.  
 Geromill, 62; Geronell, 578.  
 Gerounde, province, 406, Gironde.  
 Gerounde river, 356, Garonne.  
 Grenade, 741, Granada.  
 Hell, gulf of, 362.  
 Hungary, 607.  
 Jaffe, 58, 497, 500, Jaffa or Joppe,  
     Palestine.  
 Jaffet, castle of, 519. [There is  
     an island Jaffatine in Red Sea.]  
 Jene, 519.  
 Jerusalem, 59, 500.  
 Lombardy, 702.  
 Luysarne, city in Spain, 415;  
     ? Luserna, Italy.  
 Lyon 'on the river Rone,' 403,  
     Lyons.  
 Lysbone, 416, Lisbon.  
 Magence, Maience, 278, 531, May-  
     ence.  
 Marrocke 'stratis,' 415.  
 Marseyle, Marsile, seaport, 528,  
     Marseilles.  
 Mascon, 403, 500.  
 Mauryse, abbey at, 219.  
 Mede, 457, Media.  
 Mesque, 129.  
 Mombraunte, 131.

- Momur, capital of fairyland, a realm of India, 74, 604.  
 Monglew, 'the which is called Lyon,' 403.  
 Montleberry, 14, 18.  
 Mountaubon, 472, Montauban.  
 Myllayne, 420, Milan.  
 Napelous, 499, Nablous.  
 Naplese, 61, Naples.  
 Nasareth, 519, Nazareth.  
 Navarre, 633.  
 Nile, river, 112, 116, 130, 155.  
 Noisaunt, Noysaunt, an island near the gulf of hell, 168.  
 Noremburge, 294, Nüremberg.  
 Nyse, 741, Nice.  
 Olyfarne, 511.  
 Orcaney, 511.  
 Orleance, 14, Orleans.  
 Paris, 2, *et pass.*  
 Pauey, 33, Pavia.  
 Perce, Perse, 443, 451, 497; gulf of, 449, Persia.  
 Portyngale, 415, Portugal.  
 Puylle, 740, Apulia.  
 Pyemont, 741, Piedmont.  
 Raines, plains of, 507.  
 Rame, Ranes, a city in Palestine, 500, 507, Ramah.  
 Red Sea, 111.  
 Roddes, the coast of, 213, Rhodes.  
 Romaine, 741, Romagna.  
 Rome, 2, *et pass.*  
 Rone, river, 316, Rhone.  
 Rousillon, 530.  
 Rownceuall, 2, Roncesvalles.  
 St. Giles, 741.  
 St. Omer, 209.  
 Sathab, gulfe of, 528. [In Sir John Mandeville's Travels (ed. 1839, p. 26), a city of this name (otherwise Catala, So-talia, Cataillie, etc.) is described as lying somewhere between Rhodes and Cyprus.]  
 Saxoney, 2.  
 Sayre, 518, prob. Tyre (Soor).  
 Selauoney, 1, Selavonia.  
 Spayne, 1, *et pass.*  
 Strabourge, 278, Strasburg.  
 Surrey, 100, Syria.  
 Taragon, 624, Tarragona.  
 Tarascon, 668.  
 Thauris in Perce, 443. [In mediæval books of travels this is the name given to Tabriz, the chief city of Adherbaijaz, a Persian province on the Caspian. Marco Polo gives a full description of it, i. 70—4.]  
 Thesalye, 265, Thessaly.  
 Tortouse, 313, prob. Tortosa [in *Roland*, 916, 'Turteluse'].  
 Tournous, 530.  
 Tours, a seaport, 611.  
 Troye, siege of, 412.  
 Troyes, 52.  
 Trypoley, 310, Tripoli.  
 Valence the great, 624.  
 Vergier, 530.  
 Vyene, Viene, 276, Vienna.  
 Ynde, 489, India.



## IX. INDEX NOMINUM.

\* \* \* The editorial introduction and appendix are indexed here as well as the text of the romance. A few notes are inserted on one or two characters ; see, for example, *NAIMES*.

*ABBOT OF CLUNY, v. CLUNY.*

*ABBOT OF MAURYSE, v. MAURYSE.*

*ACLIS*, Duchess of Burdeux, and Huon's mother, 56 ; sister of the Pope, 54, and of Garyn, 56 ; receives Charlemagne's messengers, 7 ; sends her sons to Paris, 11 ; learns Huon's ill-fortune, 52 ; dies, 53, 210.

*AGRAPART*, a giant, laments the death of his brother Angolafer, 140 ; insults Gaudys at Babylon, 141 ; is challenged by Huon, 147, and defeated, 148 ; becomes Gaudys's man, 150.

*ALBANEY*, duke of, 265.

*ALBERIC*, a German fairy, xxx.

*ALEAUME* or *AELMUS*, xxxiv, another name for Gerames (*q. v.*).

*ALEXANDER THE GREAT*, vii ; son of Neptanabus, 73 ; his picture in castle of Adamant, 412 ; a rock called after him, 427 ; spoke with trees of the sun and moon, 427.

*ALMAYNE*, Emperor of, *v. THIERRY*.

*AMAURY*, Earl, longs for Huon's land, 5 ; proposes to take it for Charlot, *ib.* ; reproved by Charlemagne, 12 ; plots against Huon, 13 ; in ambush, 19 ; bears Charlot's body to Charlemagne, 18, 31 ; charges Huon with Charlot's murder, 33 ; lies to the Emperor, 35 ; challenges Huon, 35 ; swears that Huon lies, 40 ; fights, 42, and is slain, 44.

*AMPHAGE*, a horse, saves Barnard in battle, 396.

*AMPHAMIE*, king of, Esclaramonde's brother, 403.

*ANGELARS*, Huon's vassal, slain, 275.

*ANGOLAFFER*, *GALAFFER*, *GALAFRE*, giant of Dunother, 96 ; of terrible aspect, 102-3 ; threatens Huon, 103 ; his magic armour, 105 ; fights, and is slain by Huon, 108-9 ; pagans pay him tribute, 129.

*ANGORE*, admiral of, 472 ; visits Huon, 473, and is slain, 476.

*ANTONIUS, MARCUS*, husband of Cleopatre, 411.

*ARAGON*, king of, *v. GARYN*.

- ARNOLD, Sir, climbs the Adamant rock, 373; rouses the serpent, 374; killed by Saracens, 377.
- ARTHUR, King (of Brittany), vii; Sir Thomas Malory's *Morte d'Arthur*, xlviii; wants to succeed Oberon in throne of fairyland, 599; comes to Oberon's palace, 601; refuses for a time to acknowledge Huon as king of fairyland, 602; is given by Huon Boulgnant and sway over fairies of Tartary, 603; attends Oberon's funeral, 606.
- ARTHUR OF LITTLE BRITAIN, Lord Berners' romance of, xlvii.
- ASCHAM, ROGER, quoted, xlviii.
- ASPREMONT, a *chanson de geste*, xiii.
- AUBERON, *v.* OBERON.
- AUDE, LA BELLE, sister of Oliver, xii.
- AYMON, *FOUR SONS OF*, a romance, xix, xx, xxiii, xlvii.
- BALAACH, 500, *v.* TRAMPOYNGNYFLE.
- BALAN, a *chanson de geste*, xiii.
- BARNARD, Huon's faithful knight, 338; receives a horse from Huon, 356; supports Gerames in a night-sortie at siege of Bordeaux, 393; alone survives, 396; entrusted by Esclaramonde with care of Clariet, 399; rides to Cluny, 402; announces fall of Bordeaux to abbot of Cluny, 404; seeks Huon, 445; at Tauris, 446; meets Huon without recognizing him for a time, 447-50; sees the value of Huon's precious stones, 453; finds a stone that makes its holder invisible, 454; with Huon against Angore, 475, and Colanders, 489, and the Saracens, 504; at Marseilles, 545, and Cluny, 557, and Mayence, 558; guards Clariet at Cluny, 607; is drowned by traitor Brohart, 611; his body found in Garonne, 617; is buried at Cluny, 618.
- BAUDOUYN (Baldwin), son of Ogier, slain by Charlot, 4. [This story is told at length in the *chanson* of *Ogier le Danois*, and in some detail in the original poem of *Huon*, 98—193.]
- BAUDOYN, brother of Godfrey of Bouillon, buried at Calvary, 59.
- BELMARYN, king of, besieges Nice, 741; killed by Croissant, 750.
- BENET, St., patron of Cluny, 574.
- BERNERS, Lord, translates *Huon*, xxxix; his history, xl; his

translations, xlii; end of life, xlv; undertakes *Huon*, liv; his Euphuism and knowledge of Guevara, 785; his work on Calais, 789.

*BERTE AU GRAND PIED*, a chanson de geste, xiii.

BERTRAND, son of Naymes, slain by Ogier, 33. [The story is in *Ogier le Danois*.]

BLANCHARDIN, Sorbryn's horse, 184; seized by Huon, 187.

BOURGOYNE, king of, aids abbot of Cluny, 530.

BOWES, THOMAS, quoted, 790.

BROHART, a traitor, seeks to marry Clariet, 608; gets her and Barnard into a boat, 610; kills Barnard, 611; is wrecked and killed by thieves, 614; his kindred flung into Garonne, 618.

BRYAN, Sir Francis, and Berners' literary work, 788.

BURDELOYS, people of Burdeux, fight valiantly, 319.

BURDEUX, bishop of, 419, *v.* LISBON, bishop of.

CÆSAR, JULIUS, Oberon's father, 72, 265, 411; builds tower of Dunother, 96, and castle of Adamant, 411; vanquishes Pompey and Ptolemy of Egypt, *ib.*; attacked at Adamant by three Egyptian kings, *ib.*; slain at Rome, 412.

CAIN, CAYME, confined in oaken tun, 484; begs Huon to release him, 485; tries to trick Huon, 486; is abandoned, 487.

CALABER, king of, visits Nice, 743; fights at siege, 747.

CARAHAW, King, at Oberon's death and funeral, 605-6.

CHALONS, earl of, 252.

CHARLEMAGNE, romances about him, viii; their growth in France, ix; in Iceland, xi; head of a family of romance heroes, xiv; English romance about, xviii, xix; English play about, xxiii; reigns in France, 1, 756; defeated at Roncesvalles, 2; desires lords to choose successor, 3; sends for Huon and Gerard, 7; hears Huon's complaint and promises redress, 27; grieves over Charlot's corpse, 32; rages at Huon, 33; proclaims duel between Huon and Amaury, 40; banishes Huon, 48; sends him on mission to Babylon, 49; receives Gerard and Gybouars, traitors, 235; accepts Huon's treasure from their hands, *ib.*; deceived as to Huon's mission and return by Gerard, 237; resolves to examine Huon at Bordeaux, 241; makes good cheer at Bordeaux, 242; threatens

Huon, 249; orders peers to try Huon, 250; condemns him, 255; reproaches Naymes, *ib.*; suddenly sees Oberon approach, 259; is charged by Oberon with terrible sin, 260; receives from Huon relics of mission, 266; pardons Huon, *ib.*; leaves Bordeaux, 268; dies, 388.

CHARLES THE BALD, xxviii, xxix.

CHARLOT, his historical prototype Charles the Bald's son, xxix; in *Ogier le Danois*, xxix; Charlemagne's elder son, 4; plots against Huon with Amaury, 13; advances against Huon and Gerard, 19; attacks Gerard, 20; challenged by Huon, 23; slain, 24, 388; brought before Charlemagne, 32.

CLARE, St., 313.

CLARIET, CLARYET, Huon's and Esclaramonde's daughter, born, 313; christened, 314; entrusted to Barnard's care, 399; taken to abbot of Cluny, 403; visited by Huon disguised, 548; is richly dowered by Huon, 581; has kings for suitors, 607; is kidnapped by traitor Brohart, 608; resists him, 610; on a desert island and with thieves, 613-14; rescued by Saracen king of Grenade, 619; declines to marry him, 620; saved by Sir Peter of Aragon, and taken to Tarragona, 624; meets Florence, who loves her, 625; disguises her history, 626; is hated by Florence's father, king of Aragon, 630; is to be drowned by his orders, 631; saved by Sir Peter, 640; imprisoned in same tower as Florence, 652; escapes, 653; joins Florence in forest, *ib.*; flies with Florence, and taken by Sorbare, 666; brought back to Courtois by Huon, 685; marries Florence, 686; has a child Ide, 690, and dies, 691.

CLARIMODES, fairy boatman, 597.

CLARISSE, another name of Clariet (*q. v.*), xxxiv; *chanson* about, *ib.*

CLEOPATRE, sister of Julius Cæsar, married Marcus Antonius, 411.

CLUNY, abbot of, accompanies Huon to Paris, 18-26; charges Amaury with lying, 36; bids Huon accept Amaury's challenge, 37; goes with Huon to Cluny, 51-2; receives infant Clariet, 403; prepares attack on messenger of German Emperor, 530; welcomes Huon's return, 549; is one hundred and fourteen years old, 552; eats Huon's apple of youth and becomes a man of thirty, 554; attacks German Emperor in error with 20,000 men,

576; entertains Emperor, 577; guardian of Clariet, 607; calls her suitors together at Blaye, 316.

COLOGNE, provost of, leads burghers to battle for Emperor, 299; attacks Huon after truce, 804; begs pardon of Huon, 306.

CONSTANTYNE, Emperor, nominated the patriarch of Jerusalem, 500.

COURTAYN, a sword, 182.

CRASSYN POLYNGER, bearer of German Emperor's banner, killed by Huon, 297.

CROISSANT, son of Olive and Ide, born, 730; regent of Emperor Ide, 733; reigns alone, 737; charitable, 738; flees from Rome, 739; at Nice, 741; welcomed by Earl Remon, 742; excels at the quintain, 744; attacks Saracen besiegers of Nice, 746-8; is to marry Remon's daughter, 745, 753; is attacked by Remon's son, 754; kills the son, 755; flees from Nice, 758; reaches Florence, 760; falls among thieves, 761; kills them, 763; at Rome, 765; lives in retirement there, 766; no one aids him, 767; sees miraculous treasure in old palace, 771; picks up three besants and gives them to Emperor Guymart, 775; marries Guymart's daughter, 778; seizes Oberon's treasure in old palace, 780.

DENIS, St., 27, 28.

DOON DE MAIENCE, the head of a family of romance heroes, *xiv n.*

DORBRYE, DORBREY, a giant, admiral of, fights against Huon, 507; is slain, 510-11.

DURENDAL, Roland's sword, xii, 182. [See *Chanson de Roland*, l. 926, and M. Leon Gautier's note in his edition, pp. 90-1.]

ELINAS, a Saracen captain, converted, 422.

EMERY, Sir, knight of abbot of Cluny, 545.

EMPEROR. See CHARLEMAGNE, OTHO, and THIERRY.

ENGLAND, king of, Clariet's suitor, 607; *chanson* about, xxxiv.

ERNST VON BAIERN, romance of, 797.

ESCLARAMONDE (Huon's wife), daughter of Gaudys of Babylon, 50, 119; thrice kissed by Huon, 120; grieves for Huon in prison, 125; visits him and confesses her love, *ib.*; grows angry on being told she is a Saracen, 126; keeps Huon without food, *ib.*; consents to turn Christian, 127; plans Huon's escape, 128; tells Gerames all, 133; plots her father's death, 139; arranges for



Huon to fight Agrapart, 143 ; is converted, 154 ; goes with Huon to Rome, 155 ; yields to temptation, 156 ; shipwrecked, 157 ; threatened by pirates in her father's service, 158 ; pleads for Huon, 159 ; is carried off to sea, 161 ; freed by Galaffer, 162 ; is loved by him, *ib.* ; begs to be delivered to Ivoryn, 183 ; visited by Gerames, 193 ; swears loyalty to Huon, whom she thinks dead, 194 ; desires to enter a convent, 195 ; meets Huon at Anfalerne, 200 ; leaves for France, 213 ; comforts Garyn's widow, 215 ; baptized by Pope at Rome, 217 ; married to Huon, *ib.* ; fears for Huon, 227 ; her horse stumbles, *ib.* ; bound to a horse by Gerard, 231 ; in prison at Bordeaux, 232 ; before Charlemagne, 243 ; bewails Huon's fate, 253 ; visited by three pilgrims at Bordeaux, 275 ; entreats Huon to stay, 280 ; with child, 281 ; loved by Ravall, 283 ; hears from Huon of his adventures, 307 ; bids Huon get aid from her brother Salybraunt, 310, 324, 349 ; gives birth to Clariet, 312 ; urges Huon to go to the East, 353 ; grieves for Huon, 387, and for Gerames' death, 397 ; is afraid, 399 ; bids Barnard take Clariet to Cluny, *ib.* ; begs mercy of Thierry, 400 ; is promised life, 401 ; imprisoned at Mayence, 406 ; appears in vision to Huon, 520 ; led to stake, 532 ; saved by Oberon, 538 ; treated well by Emperor, 543 ; meets Huon, 570 ; goes with him to Cluny and Bordeaux, 572 ; in fairyland, 597 ; crowned queen there, 601 ; with Huon at Courtois, 682.

*FERUMBRAS (SIR)*, an English romance, xviii *n.*

*FIERABRAS*, a romance, xiii, xviii *n.*, xix.

FLANDERS, earl of, 252.

FLORENCE or FLORENT, *chanson* about, xxxiv ; son of king of Aragon, Clariet's suitor, 607, 616 ; meets Clariet at Tarragon, 626 ; does not know who she is, 627 ; wants to marry her, 628 ; offends his father, 630 ; will not fight Navarre unless he marry Clariet, 633 ; leaves for battle on receiving promise, 636 ; captures king of Navarre, 644 ; is told by his father that Clariet is drowned, 645 ; invites his prisoners to avenge Clariet and kill his father, 647 ; is imprisoned by his father, 650 ; meets Clariet in prison, 652 ; escapes with her, 656 ; to Africa, 663 ; attacked by Saracens, 665 ; delivered to Sorbare, a secret Christian, 666 ; at Courtois

with Clariet, 684 ; marries Clariet, 686 ; becomes king of Aragon, 690 ; loses wife, 691 ; loves his own daughter Ide, 692 ; angry at her escape, 701 ; sends for Ide, 731 ; resigns his rule, 737.

FLORIMONT OF ALBANY, 72 ; son of duke of Albany, 265.

*FROISSART*, translated by Lord Berners, xliii.

GALAFFER, admiral of Anfalerne, 161 ; frees Esclaramonde from pirates, 162 ; loves her, *ib.* ; will not deliver her to Ivoryn, 164 ; threatens Ivoryn, 165 ; sees Ivoryn's army upon him, 183 ; deplores death of his nephew Sorbryn, 187 ; retires before Ivoryn and Huon, 188 ; receives Gerames kindly, 192 ; tells them of Esclaramonde, *ib.*, and of Ivoryn, 193 ; learns history of Huon, 201 ; submits to Ivoryn, 202 ; aided by Ivoryn against Huon, 203 ; encourages Ivoryn, 207 ; angry at Huon's flight, 213 ; enters Anfalerne, 214.

GALANS, forger of swords, 182.

GALERAN, cousin of Duke Raoull, slain by Huon, 290.

GALLERANCE, a knight of Huon, 323.

GANELON, traitor of Roncevalles, xxii, 3.

GAREYN, 217 ; the baptismal name of Mouflet (*q. v.*).

GARIN DE MONGLAINE, the head of a family of romance heroes, xiv *n.*

GARYN, Guaryn of St. Omer, brother of the Pope, 54, 55 ; receives Huon, 56 ; accompanies him, 58-9 ; killed in fight with Saracens at Anfalerne, 206 ; his wife told by Huon of his death, 214.

GARYN, GUARYN, king of Aragon, 666 ; will not consent to marriage of Florence and Clariet, 630 ; orders her to be drowned, 631 ; deceives Florence, *ib.* ; imprisons Clariet, 640, and Florence, 650 ; will not pardon the watchman who releases them, 658 ; attacked by king of Navarre, 661 ; besieged by Navarre at Courtois, 676 ; accepts Huon's intervention, 682 ; makes peace with Navarre, 685 ; dies, 690.

GAUDYS, admiral of Babylon, 50, 64, 71, 668 ; gave ring to Angolaffer, 106 ; hears Huon's horn, 118 ; orders his arrest, 120 ; sees ring and welcomes Huon, 120 ; refuses to turn Christian, 121 ; sends Huon to prison, 124 ; receives Gerames disguised, 131 ; insulted by giant Agrapart, 141 ; promises his daughter's hand to

any one who fights giant, 142 ; invites Huon, 144 ; receives Agra-part's homage, 150 ; will not turn Christian, 152 ; is delivered to Huon by Oberon, 153, and is slain by Huon, *ib.*

GEFFREY, a French knight in Macaire's service, 90 ; protects Huon, 91 ; drives Macaire from his castle, 92 ; is given Tormont by Huon, 97.

GERAMES meets Huon, 60 ; his history, 61 ; directs Huon to Babylon, 63-4 ; accompanies Huon, 65 ; warns Huon of Oberon, 67-9 ; fears Oberon's banquet, 75 ; buys food for Huon's supper at tournament, 86 ; warns Huon of Macaire, 89 ; dissuades Huon from going to Dunotter, 97 ; remains with Huon's company at Dunotter after Huon leaves it, 110 ; waits for Huon's return, 129 ; sees a ship approach the shore, 129 ; kills the pagan sailors, 129 ; embarks with his companions in the ship to seek Huon, 130 ; arrives at Babylon, 130 ; enters the admiral's palace, 131 ; gives the name of Jeracle, Ivoryn's son, 132 ; pretends that his companions are his prisoners, 132 ; is told that Huon is dead, *ib.* ; learns the truth from Esclaramonde, 133 ; suspects her, *ib.* ; sends her companions to Huon's prison, 134 ; takes food to them, 136 ; allows Esclaramonde to visit Huon, 137 ; sees Huon daily, 138-9 ; keeps Huon's trophies in his side, 153 ; bids Huon obey Oberon, 155 ; is defied by Huon, 156 ; enters a little boat with his company and leaves Huon, *ib.* ; reaches Anfalerne, 191 ; is well received by Galaffer, 192 ; offers to aid him against Ivoryn, 193 ; visits Esclaramonde, *ib.* ; arms for the fight, 197 ; is attacked by Huon, 198 ; throws him to the ground and recognizes him, 199 ; pretends to take Huon prisoner, in order to bring him to Esclaramonde, 199 ; brings Huon and his company to Anfalerne, 200 ; shuts out the admiral and all his men, and kills all in the town, 200 ; fights with Huon before the castle against the Saracens, 206 ; recognizes his brother in Guyer of Bordeaux, 211 ; has been sixty years away from France, 212 ; leaves for France with Huon, 213 ; at Brandys, 214 ; at Rome, 215 ; warns Huon against journeying too early, 228 ; advises Huon to conciliate Gerard, 229 ; is robbed of the objects of Huon's mission by Gerard, 230 ; is allowed to live, 231 ; is brought into Bordeaux tied to a horse, *ib.* ; cast into prison,

232 ; before the Emperor at Bordeaux, 243 ; shows the wound made in his side by Gerard, 248 ; with Huon at Coleyn, 295 ; fights with vigour against the Germans, 299 ; promises to aid Huon against the German Emperor, 317 ; is taken prisoner, 321 ; is condemned to be hanged, 326 ; mounts the scaffold, but is released, 331 ; promises to protect Esclaramonde in Huon's absence, 355 ; consoles Esclaramonde, 387 ; fights bravely, 389 ; advises a night attack, 392 ; leads the force, 394 ; is attacked fiercely by Savary, 395 ; is slain by the Emperor, 396.

GERARD, Thierry's bastard son, slain by Huon, 347.

GERARD, GERARDE, GERARDYN, Huon's brother, 5, 118 ; goes with Huon to Paris, 15 ; has an evil dream, 16 ; is attacked by Charlot, 20 ; is wounded, 21 ; at Paris, 26 ; entrusted with Huon's lands in his absence, 51 ; gives Huon a Judas kiss, 52 ; petitions to be a peer of France, 52 ; at Bordeaux, *ib.* ; marries a daughter of Gilbert of Cecyll, 53 ; grows wicked, 210 ; learns of Huon's return, 220 ; takes counsel with his father-in-law, 221 ; treacherously visits Huon at the abbey of Mauryse, 223 ; desires Guyer's death, 226 ; urges Huon to set out for Bordeaux at cock-crow, 227 ; complains that Huon's return makes him penniless, 228 ; asks for some land, 229 ; seizes the objects of Huon's mission, 230 ; kills the abbot of Mauryse and seizes Huon's treasure, 233 ; sends a third part to Paris, 235 ; gives some of it to Charlemagne at Paris, and declares that he has imprisoned Huon because the mission has failed, 237 ; goes with Charlemagne to Bordeaux, 241 ; challenged by Huon, 248 ; forced by Oberon to confess all, 261-2 ; charges Gybouars with suggesting the plot, 263 ; is hanged, 265.

GERARD OF ROUSILLON, son of duke of Bourgogne, 530. [Hero of a popular chanson, *Gerart de Rousillon*, one of the peers of France. See Gaston Paris' translation of poem, 1884.]

GILBERT, *v.* GYBOUARS.

GIRARDE DE VIANE, a chanson quoted, xiv *n.*

GLORIADAS, a fairy living in Adamant castle, 412.

GLORIANDE, GLORIENT, GLORYAUNT, a fairy, 65, 267, 278 ; intercedes for Huon with Oberon, 70, 167 ; sent to save Esclaramonde, 537 ; delivers Oberon's message to Emperor of Germany, 540 ; receives

- Huon at Momur, 598 ; sent by Huon to make peace between kings of Aragon and Navarre, 677.
- GODFREY OF BOUILLON, buried at Calvary, 59.
- GODIN, chanson about (a son of Huon), xxxv.
- GODUN, a German knight, proposes to slay Huon in an ambush, 294.
- GONDER, Christian provost of Tormont, 83 ; receives Huon, 84 ; tries to make peace between Huon and Macaire, 93 ; restores Huon's horn, 94.
- GRENADE, Saracen king of, I., rescues Clariet and offers her marriage, 619 ; ill-treats her, 620 ; is killed at Tours by Sir Peter of Aragon, 623.
- GRENADE, Saracen king of, II., besieges Nice, 740 ; killed by Croissant, 749.
- GUALTER, a peer of France, urges Huon's death, 251.
- GUARYN. See GARYN.
- GUEVARA, ANTONIO DE, the Spanish author, 786, 788.
- GUITALIN, a chanson de geste, xiii.
- GUY DE BOURGOGNE, a chanson de geste, xiii.
- GUY OF WARWICKE, a romance, xlvii.
- GUYCHARD, Huon's companion, 54, 55 ; refuses to leave him, 59.
- GUYER, GUYRE, provost of Bordeaux, 15, 62 ; pilgrim to Holy Sepulchre, 209 ; a hundred years old, 209 ; tells Huon of his family, 210 ; Gerames' brother, 211 ; with Huon at Rome, 215 ; at Bordeaux, 218 ; hated by Gerard, 226.
- GUYMART OF PUYLLE (Apulia), becomes Emperor of Rome in Croissant's absence, 740 ; learns of Croissant's return, 768 ; takes food to Croissant, 770 ; sees treasure at the old palace, 771 ; is bidden to distribute three besants to poor, 772-3 ; restores crown to Croissant and dies, 775, 782.
- GUYNEMER, earl of St. Omer, 100.
- GWYN-ARAUN, a Welsh fairy, xxx.
- GYBOUARS, 219 ; Gylberde, duke of Cecyll [Sicily], a traitor, 53 ; promises to outwit Huon, 221 ; lays ambush for Huon, 223 ; binds Huon, 229 ; kills abbot of Mauryse, 233 ; seizes Huon's treasure, 234 ; makes his cousin abbot of Mauryse, *ib.* ; with Gerard at



Paris, 235 ; confirms Gerard's lies, 239 ; proved guilty by Gerard's confession, 263 ; is hanged, 265.

GYRARD. See GERARD.

HABOUREY, Huon's messenger, 342-3.

HARRY OF ST. OMER, a peer of France, 251.

HASTINGS, Lord George, earl of Huntingdon, encourages Lord Berners to translate *Huon*, liv.

HELYE. See SEBYLLE.

HENRY VIII., patron of Lord Berners, xli, xlii.

HILDEBERT, a German duke, protects Esclaramonde, 533.

HUNGARY, king of, Clariet's suitor, 607.

HUON OF BORDEAUX, son of Sevin and Aclis (*q. r.*), *chanson de geste* about, xxiv ; historical foundation for his story, xxviii ; growth of romance, xxxii ; its supplements, xxxiii ; printed in French prose, xxxvii ; French play about, xxxviii ; first English translation, xxxix ; its popularity, xlviii, xlix ; English play of, xlix ; bibliography of Lord Berners' romance about, liii, 791 ;—owns Bordeaux, but does no homage to the Emperor, 5 ; summoned to Paris, 5 ; starts for Paris, 15 ; comes upon Charlot, 19 ; sees Gerard fall, 20 ; challenges Charlot, 23 ; kills Charlot, 24 ; sets Gerard on Charlot's horse, 24 ; goes to the Emperor's court, 25 ; tells of Charlot's treachery, 26—30 ; defends himself from Amaury's charge of murder, 34 ; accepts Amaury's challenge, 37 ; swears on relics before fighting, 39 ; fights and slays Amaury, 42-4 ; is sentenced to banishment by Charlemagne, 45 ; complains of this injustice, 46 ; is ordered to go on a perilous mission to Babylon, 49 ; sets out on his journey, 51 ; arrives at Rome, 54 ; at Brandys, 56 ; is joined there by Garyn, 58 ; visits Jerusalem and Calvary, 59 ; meets Gerames, 60 ; sees Oberon, 65 ; refuses to speak to him, 67 ; runs from him, 69 ; marvels at his beauty, 71 ; speaks to him, 72 ; receives of Oberon a rich banquet, 74-5 ; drinks of Oberon's magic cup, 77 ; is given the cup and the ivory horn, 77 ; mistrusts their magic power, 79 ; blows the horn recklessly, 80 ; is cursed and forgiven by Oberon, 81 ; at Tormont, 82 ; lodges with the provost, 84 ; gives a great supper to 4000 poor men, 84-6 ; his cup works a miracle, 86 ; invites Macaire to supper, 88 ; goes with Macaire to

his castle, 90 ; is saved from Macaire's murderous plot, 90-1 ; is besieged by Macaire, 92-3 ; sounds his horn, 94 ; kills Macaire, 95 ; is aided by Oberon, 95 ; leaves Tormont, 97 ; approaches the tower of Dunother, 98 ; rouses the giant, 103 ; tells him his history, 104 ; dons the giant's magic armour, 106 ; fights with the giant, 108 ; kills him and takes his tower, 109 ; leaves his company there, 110 ; carried by Malabron up the Nile, 112 ; reaches Babylon, 113 ; tells a lie, 114 ; reaches the admiral's garden, 116 ; blows his horn, 118 ; kills a paynim king, 120 ; shows Gaudys a ring, *ib.* ; is well received and thrice kisses Esclaramonde, *ib.* ; informs Gaudys of his mission, 122 ; fights with his men, *ib.* ; kills his nephew, 123 ; is seized, *ib.* ; is sent to prison, 124 ; is visited by Esclaramonde, 126 ; reproaches her with being a Saracen, *ib.* ; is kept without food, *ib.* ; is reconciled to Esclaramonde, 127 ; is reported to be dead, 128 ; overhears his companions talk in the prison, 134 ; reveals himself to them, 135 ; sees Gerames daily, 138-9 ; is invited to fight the giant Agrapart, 144 ; agrees to do so, 145 ; defies Agrapart, 147 ; conquers him, 148 ; invites Gaudys to become a Christian, 151 ; summons Oberon, 152 ; kills Gaudys, 153 ; obtains trophies from Gaudys, *ib.* ; is warned by Oberon against intercourse with Esclaramonde before marriage at Rome, 154 ; sets out with Esclaramonde for Rome, 155 ; cannot resist temptation, *ib.* ; is wrecked alone with Esclaramonde on an island, 157 ; begs bread of pirates, 158 ; is threatened by them, 159 ; is left alone by them, bound hand and foot, 160 ; is on the isle of Noisant, 166 ; is helped by Malabron, 168 ; is carried by him to the mainland, 169 ; meets Mouflet, a minstrel, who gives him food and clothes, 170 ; gives a lying account of himself, 171 ; calls himself Salater, 172 ; becomes servant of Mouflet, 173 ; goes to Mombraunt, 174 ; is asked by Ivoryn what he can do, 177, 178 ; is challenged to play chess with Ivoryn's daughter, 178 ; is loved by her, 179 ; wins the game, 180 ; refuses the advantage of his victory, *ib.* ; begs for horse and armour to fight for Ivoryn, 181 ; obtains a magic sword and a poor horse, 182 ; accepts Sorbryn's challenge, 185 ; kills Sorbryn and seizes his horse Blanch-

ardin, 187 ; helps Ivoryn to defeat Galaffer, 188 ; is feasted by Ivoryn, 189 ; leads a second attack on Galaffer, 196 ; attacks Gerames fighting on the other side, 198 ; is forced to the ground, 199 ; recognizes Gerames, *ib.* ; meets Esclaramonde, 200 ; is attacked by Ivoryn and Galaffer in concert, 203 ; hears Moulet call on his aid from the gallows, 205 ; with his companions dashes out of the castle and kills the hangman, 205 ; fights valiantly against the Saracen, 206 ; receives French pilgrims at Anfalerne, 208 ; learns from Guyer of his family, 210 ; purposes to return to France in the pilgrims' ship, 212 ; with all his company sets sail for France and arrives at Brendys, 213 ; goes to church, 214 ; tells the wife of Garyn of St. Omers of her husband's death, 214 ; at Rome, 215 ; welcomed by the Pope, 216 ; is married to Esclaramonde, 217 ; leaves Rome for Bordeaux, 218 ; sees Gerard, his brother, 223 ; tells him of his trophies and treasures, 224 ; regrets that his brother should have Gybouars for father-in-law, 225 ; sleeps with Gerard, 226 ; is roused by Gerard at cock-crow to go on to Bordeaux, 227 ; resolves to visit the Emperor, 228 ; promises Gerard half of his treasure, 229 ; is wrathful with his brother because he wants more, *ib.* ; conciliates Gerard, 230 ; is attacked by Gybouars in ambush, *ib.* ; is bound, *ib.* ; is brought to Bordeaux, 231 ; cast into prison, 232 ; is brought before the Emperor, who visits Bordeaux, 243 ; accuses his brother of treachery, 244 ; tells the story of his journey, 244-5 ; and of his return, 246-8 ; challenges Gerard and Gybouars, 248 ; learns of Oberon's intervention, 258 ; drinks from Oberon's enchanted cup, 260 ; pleads for his brother's life, 264 ; is promised by Oberon the kingdom of the fairies, 266 ; receives his lords' homage, 274 ; hangs Angelars, who defies him, 275 ; is envied by Raoul of Austrych, 279 ; learns of Raoul's plots against his life from an old servant, 279 ; sets out to Mayence to slay the traitor, 280 ; receives Raoul in disguise, 282 ; comes to Coleyn for a tournament, 284 ; leaves his escort behind and rides to Mayence, 285 ; visits the Emperor and Raoul in the palace, 286 ; puts his case without mentioning names to the Emperor, 287 ; kills Raoul in the Emperor's presence, 288 ; resists the attempt of the

Germans to arrest him, 289-90; strikes down the Emperor, 292; escapes, 293; meets his company at Coleyn, 295; has 13,000 men with him, 296; prepares for battle in a wood near Coleyn, 297; fights valiantly, *ib.*; meets the Emperor, and reproaches him, 299; overcomes the Emperor in a duel, 300-1; grants six months' truce, 303; is attacked in mistake by the burghers of Coleyn, 304; pardons the provost of Coleyn, 307; returns to Bordeaux, *ib.*; relates his adventures to his wife, 307-9; declines to seek aid of Salybraunt, 311; complains of Oberon's neglect, 313; summons his men, 316; begs Gerames' aid, 317; prepares a sortie, 319; fights valiantly, 320; attacks the Emperor, 323; retires to Bordeaux, 323; sees the gallows set up for Gerames, 327; prepares a rescue, 328; sees Gerames on the scaffold, 331; slays the hangman, 332; rescues Gerames, 333; spares Sir Otho, 334; repulses the Germans, 334, 338-9; pursued by Germans, who enter Bordeaux, 335; spares the lives of 500 prisoners, 336; finds his force dwindles, 341; sues for peace in vain, 342; makes sudden sortie, 344; strikes the Emperor, 346; loses more men, 348; despairs, 349; resolves to seek aid in the East, 350; seizes the German herds, 351; will slay Esclaramonde's brother if he will not be christened, 353; is confessed by the bishop of Bordeaux, and receives a hallowed stool, 355; takes his knights with him, *ib.*; sails down the Garonne, 356; takes ship for Anfamie, 358; encounters storms, 359; approaches the gulf of hell, 361; prepares for death, 362; speaks with Judas, 364-7; hurries from the gulf of hell, 367; approaches the rock Adamant, 368; longs to attack the castle, 371; is warned of its dangers, 372; desires to fight with the serpent in the castle, 375; attacked by Saracens, 376; loses many knights, 378; slays many Saracens, 378; alone of his company survives famine, 379; visits the Adamant castle, 380; slays the serpent, 382; marvels at the castle's splendour, 383; and eats fruit in the garden, 385; finds feeble sustenance there, 407; discovers a marvellous cellar, 408; sees four fairies, 409; obtains from them meat and drink, 410; enjoys every luxury, 412; sees Moorish ship on Adamant rock, 414; promises Moors safety, if converted to Christianity, 417; receives

the bishop of Lisbon, an old friend, 419 ; grows weary of inactivity, 425 ; perceives the griffin, 426 ; confessed by the bishop of Lisbon, 428 ; is carried off by the griffin, pretending to be dead, 429 ; at the white rock, 430 ; attacks and slays the griffin and her young, 431-3 ; bathes in the fountain of youth, 434 ; eats of the apples of youth, *ib.* ; is bidden by an angel to gather these apples, 436 ; learns of the fate of Bordeaux from the angel, 436-7 ; leaves the rock, 439 ; finds a rich ship, *ib.* ; passes through a dark passage in the rocks, 441 ; lands at Tauris in Persia, 443 ; meets Barnard, 447 ; finds the ballast of his ship to be precious stones, 448 ; well received by the admiral of Tauris, 456 ; gives the admiral an apple of youth, 465 ; is promised the aid of the admiral of Tauris, 470 ; leaves Tauris with the admiral, 471 ; at Angore, 472 ; fights against the men of the city, 475 ; kills the admiral, 476 ; conquers the city, 477 ; coasts by Abylaunte, 478 ; reaches an evil port, 480 ; ascends a mountain above, 483 ; meets Cain, 484 ; learns Cain's history, and abandons him, 487 ; meets an awful fiend, 489 ; pretends to be Cain, 491 ; is treated well by the fiend, *ib.* ; at Colanders, 492 ; meets the admiral of Tauris and Barnard again, 495 ; travels to Antioch, 498 ; and Damascus, 499 ; and goes on to Jerusalem, 500 ; advises a forward attack on the Saracens at Rames, 503 ; kills five kings and two admirals, 508 ; kills the admiral of Dorbrys, 511 ; attacks the sultan Saphadim, 514 ; is hard beset, and is rescued, 516 ; returns to Acre, 519 ; has a vision of trouble at Mayence, 520 ; anxious to go to Esclaramonde, 522 ; advises a return of the admiral of Tauris' troops, 523 ; resolves to return to Europe, 525 ; at Marseilles, 528 ; visits Cluny disguised as a pilgrim from Jerusalem, 547 ; sees Clariet, 548 ; reveals himself, to the joy of all, and tells his adventures, 551 ; offers the abbot an apple of youth, 553 ; brings his men and wealth from Tournois to Cluny, 557 ; goes with Barnard to Mayence, 559 ; is the first pilgrim to approach the Emperor on Good Friday, 560 ; gives him a precious stone, 561 ; is promised the release of Esclaramonde, 565 ; tells his adventures, 566 ; gives the Emperor an apple of youth, 568 ; and meets Esclaramonde, 570 ; with his wife and Emperor goes to Cluny,



572; beats back abbot's men, 576; and enters Bordeaux, 578; sends the griffin's foot to King Louis, 583; sets out for fairyland, 583; driven into Spanish Sea, 585; shipwrecked near a beautiful castle, where monks live who are evil angels, 588; is preserved by magic stones, 593; carried by a monk to a high rock, 595; reaches Oberon's city of Momur, 597; is crowned king of fairyland by Oberon, 600; threatens to enforce obedience on King Arthur, 602; gives Arthur parts of his realm, 603; attends Oberon's funeral, 606; comes with fairy army to Courtois to arrange dispute between the kings of Navarre and Arragon, and to marry Florence to his daughter Clariet, 676-82; meets Clariet, 684; makes good all damage done by war, 687; returns to Momur, 689.

**IDE**, daughter of Florence and Clariet, born, 690; of great beauty, 692; sought in marriage by Florence, her own father, 694; escapes in man's apparel, 697; helped by Sorbare, 700; goes to Germany, 702; attacked by thieves, 705; at Rome salutes Emperor, 708; mistaken for a man, 709; attends Emperor's daughter Olive, 710; is knighted, 712; leads Emperor's army against Spaniards, 714; does deadly slaughter, 716; takes king of Spain prisoner, 718; pleads for his life, 719; declines to marry Olive, 721; yields to threats, 722; married to Olive, 724; sex discovered, and sent to stake, 728; sex miraculously changed, 729; crowned Emperor, 730; visits Florence at Courtois, 737; helps Florence to rule, 737.

**ISOUDE**, xxvii, loved by Tristram, 157.

**IVORYN OF MOMBRAUNTE**, 131; uncle of Esclaramonde, 161; learns of her and of her father's fortune, 163; sends to take Esclaramonde from Galaffer, 164; is defied, and prepares for war upon Galaffer, 165; summons his men of war, 174; swears vengeance, 175; receives Mouflet the minstrel, and Huon his servant, 176; asks Huon what is his capacity, 177; makes trial of his knowledge of chess by bidding him play with his daughter, 178; leads his troops to Anfalerne, 183; applauds Huon for slaying Sorbryn, 187; defeats Galaffer, 188; honours and feasts Huon, 189; leads second attack on Anfalerne, 197; sees Huon follow Gerames into Anfalerne, 199; urges his men to rescue Huon, 200; receives

- Galaffer's submission, 201; fights with Galaffer against Huon, 203; condemns Mouflet to death, 204; learns of Huon's flight, 213; enters the castle of Anfalerne, 214.
- IVORYN's daughter loves Huon, 179; plays chess with him, 180; watches the fight, 196.
- IYACARS, son of Earl Remon of St. Giles, plots to murder Croissant, 745, 754; is killed, 756.
- JAMES, St., 28.
- JERACLE, son of Ivoryn, 132.
- JOHN, St., feast of, 124, 132.
- JOYEUSE, Charlemagne's sword, xii.
- JOZERANE, German knight killed by Huon, 322.
- JUDAS ISCARIOT, 459; kisses Jesus, 52, 223; floats on canvas by gulf of hell, 363; recounts his history, 364-5; cannot die, 366; once gave away piece of canvas in charity, *ib.*; warns Huon of peril, 367.
- JULIUS CÆSAR. *See* CÆSAR.
- KATHARINE, Guymart's daughter, marries Croissant, 782.
- LEMPATRIX, a fairy, 66.
- LEWIS, LOYS, LOWIS, Charlemagne's younger son, 4; succeeds as Emperor, 388; receives griffin's foot from Huon, 583.
- LISBON, bishop of, wrecked on Adamant rock, 416; recognizes Huon, 419; is free from sin, 421; eats at pleasure in Adamant castle, 422; baptizes Saracens, *ib.*; warns Huon of griffin, 428.
- LOHERAINS, *LES*, a romance where Huon mentioned, xxviii.
- LYLY, JOHN, and Euphuism, 785.
- MACAIRE, MACAYR, Huon's uncle, brother of Sevin, tyrant of Tor-mont, 81; is a pagan, 83; longs for Huon's magic cup, 87; threatens Huon, *ib.*; recognizes him as his nephew, 89; invites him to his castle, *ib.*; plots to murder Huon, 90-1; is driven from castle, and besieges Huon there, 92. [There is a *chanson* named *Macaire* (twelfth cent.), whose hero charges Charlemagne's queen Blanche fleur with adultery.]
- MAHOUNDE, 133, *et passim*; Macomyte, 477; Mahomet, 500.
- MALABRON, MALLABRON, a man transformed by Oberon into a sea beast, 111; bears Huon up the Nile, 112; begs Oberon to let him

aid Huon, 167; condemned to be sea monster twenty-eight years longer, 167-8; swims to Huon at Noisaunt, and brings him to mainland, 169; at Bordeaux, 267; accompanies fairy Gloriande, 598, 677.

MARCUS AURELIUS, *Book of*, translated by Lord Berners, xlv, 784.

MARGALE, a fairy, 65.

MARKHAM, GERVASE, quoted, xlix, 790.

MAURYSE, abbot of, welcomes Huon, 219; invites Huon and Gerard to supper, 225; keeps Huon's treasure, *ib.*; is killed by Gerard and Gybouars while guarding the treasure, 233.

MERES, FRANCIS, quoted, xlviii.

MERLIN, MARLYN, son of Ogier the Dane, accompanies King Arthur to Oberon's court, 601.

MORGAN LE FAY at Oberon's court, 536; sister of King Arthur, 601, 684.

MOUFLET, a minstrel, 170; helps Huon, 171; served Gaudys, 172; takes Huon as his servant, 173; at Mombraunt, 174; tells Ivoryn of Gaudys' death, 175; plays the viol before Ivoryn, *ib.*; is well rewarded, 176; celebrates Huon's victories, 190; is condemned to be hanged for befriending Huon, 204; is saved by Huon, 205; plays before Huon, 207; in France, 213; baptized by Pope, 217; is called Garyn, *ib.*

NAIMES, NAYMES, Duke of Bavaria. [A character invariably introduced into Charlemagne romances. According to *Aubri le Bourgoing*, he is son of Gasselin, king of Bavaria; is protected from an usurper, Cassile or Tassillon, by Charlemagne; in *Roland*, *Aspremont*, and *Aequin* he plays great part as friend of the Emperor; in the *Voyage à Jerusalem* he first appears as one of 'les douze pairs'; in the *Anseis de Carthage* (late poem) his death is recounted. He is the Nestor of the Charlemagne cycle; cp. *Aspremont*, 'Tel conseiller n'orent ongues li Franc.'] Survivor of Roncesvalles, 2; chief of Charlemagne's council, 3; complains of Amaury's guile, 6, 12; seeks to comfort Charlemagne, 32; prepares duel between Huon and Amaury, 38; reproaches Emperor, 41; intercedes for Huon, 47; with Huon at Troyes, 52; declines Gerard's offer of treasure, 235; suspects Gerard, 238; denounces him, 239;

urges Emperor to send for Huon, 249; declares Huon cannot be tried at Bordeaux, 255; drinks from Oberon's enchanted cup, 261.

NAVARRÉ, king of, fights against king of Aragon, 633; taken by Florence, 644; released, 647; enters Tarragon, 660; besieges king of Arragon at Courtois, 676; accepts Huon's intervention, 681; makes peace, 685; visits Florence, 701.

NEPTANABUS, father of Alexander the Great, 73.

NORTH, *Sir Thomas, and Euphuism*, 785-8.

OBERON, king of fairyland, his literary history traced, xxix; compared with Welsh Gwyn and German Alberich, xxx; his genealogy criticized, xxxi; *Le Roman d'Auberon*, xxxiii; Wieland's poem of, xxxviii; in *Midsummer Night's Dream*, 1; Weber's opera about, li;—besets the road to Babylon, 63; the dwarf king of fairyland, *ib.*; is seen by Huon, 65; blows his magic horn, 66, 70; speaks to Huon, 67; raises a storm, 67, 69; attacks him, 70; recites Huon's adventures, 71; tells his history, 72-3; king of Momur, 74; gives Huon a magic banquet, 74-5; his magic cup, 76; gives Huon the cup and horn, 77-8; makes a path through water for Huon, 78; is recklessly summoned by Huon, 80; curses him, *ib.*; forgives him, 81; foretells peril for Huon, and bids him farewell, 82, 96, 154, 267; comes to Tormont, to protect Huon, 94; is angry with Huon, 118; comes to Huon's aid in killing the Admiral Gaudys, 152; places Huon's trophies gained from Gaudys in Gerames' side, 153; warns Huon against having intercourse with Esclaramonde till their marriage at Rome, 154; gives him a ship, *ib.*; laments Huon's misfortunes, 166; bids Malabron fetch him Huon's horn, cup, and harness, 169; pities Huon's misfortunes in France, 257; appears before Charlemagne with 100,000 men, 258-9; wills the fetters to fall from Huon, 259; offers the king his enchanted cup, 260; charges Charlemagne with crime, *ib.*; rebukes the Emperor, 261; bids Gerard appear, *ib.*; orders the objects of Huon's mission to appear before Charlemagne, 264; is mistaken by Charlemagne for God, 265; recites his history, *ib.*; bids Huon come to Momur in four years' time, 266; promises him the kingdom of fairyland, *ib.*; tells of his going to Paradise, 267; laments over Huon, 273-4;

- grieves for his father Julius Cæsar's death, 412; will never come to castle of Adamant afterwards, *ib.*; sends Gloriande and Malabron to save Esclaramonde, 536-8; sick at Momur, 597; receives Huon as his successor, 598; crowns Huon king and Esclaramonde queen of fairyland, 600; welcomes King Arthur, 601; makes peace between Huon and Arthur, 602; dies, 605; is carried to Paradise, is buried in a new abbey, 606; sets treasure in old palace at Rome for Croissant, 780.
- OGIER THE DANE, subject of chanson de geste, xiii *n.*, xv *n.*; father of Baudouyn, 4; kills Bertrand, Naymes' son, 33; destroyed city of Colanders, 489; father of Merlin, 601.
- OLIVE, Roman Emperor's daughter, falls in love with Ide, 709; is betrothed to Ide, 721; married, 724; discovers Ide's sex, 726; is delivered of son, Croissant, 730.
- OLIVER, xii; death of, 2.
- OLYFARNE, king of, killed by Huon, 511.
- ORCANÉY, admiral of, brother of the Sowdone, killed by Huon, 511.
- ORTNIT, a German Emperor, xxx, xxxi.
- ORYANE, a fairy, 684.
- OTHO, Emperor of Germany at Rome, 702; accepts Ide's service, 709; knights Ide, 712; applauds Ide's prowess, 717; spares king of Spain, 718; insists on Ide's marriage to Olive, 721; learns Ide's sex, 727; orders Ide to be burned, 728; dies, 729.
- OTHON, a German knight, ordered to hang Gerames and French prisoners, and pleads for delay, 329; rebukes the hangman for insulting Gerames, 331; is spared by Huon, 333; agrees to serve Huon, *ib.*; fights well, 334; supports Gerames, 393.
- OTINEL, or OTUEL, a chanson de geste, xviii *n.*, xix, xx.
- PETER, St., church of, at Rome, 54.
- PETER (Sir) of Aragon, 621; rescues Clariet at Tours, 622; kills king of Grenade, 623; brings Clariet to Tarragona, 624; leads men against king of Navarre, 634; rescues Clariet from drowning, 640; threatens king of Aragon, 642; pleads for watchman who released Clariet and Florence, 655.
- PHILIP, king of France, hangs up Huon's griffin's foot in a chapel, 583.



POMPEY, fights with Cæsar, 73, 265 ; vanquished by Cæsar, 411.

POPE OF ROME, Huon's uncle, receives Huon, 54, 216 ; baptizes Esclaramonde and Mouflet, 216 ; marries Huon and Esclaramonde, 217.

PTOLEMY kings of Egypt attack Cæsar at Adamant : their treasure, 411.

RAOUL, duke of Austria, hears of Esclaramonde's beauty, 276-7 ; nephew of German Emperor, 278 ; begs his uncle to announce tournament, 278 ; plots Huon's death, 279 ; visits Bordeaux disguised as pilgrim, 281 ; lies to Huon, 282 ; deeply in love with Esclaramonde, 283 ; at Mayence, *ib.* ; is abused by Huon of coveting his wife, 288 ; is slain by Huon, 289.

*RAUF COILZEAR*, an English poem, xix, xx.

REMON, Earl of St. Giles, besieged at Nice by kings of Grenade and Belmaryne, 741 ; accepts Croissant's help, 742 ; offers his daughter to Croissant, 745, 753 ; threatens to murder Croissant, 759.

*RENAUD DE MONTAUBAN*, a chanson de geste, xiii, xix *n.*, xx.

REYNAULTE OF BEAULAND takes Sorbare, 668.

REYNGAULTE OF MOUNTABAN wins and loses Angore, 472-3.

RICHAR, a knight of Huon, 341.

ROLAND, *chanson of*, x ; its authorship, xvii, xxi ; death of, 2.

*ROLAND AND VERNAGU*, xviii, xx.

ROUSILLON, GERARD of. *See* GERARD.

*ROWLANDE'S SONG*, an English poem, xix.

SALAMON, temple of, 500.

SALATER, false name assumed by Huon, 172.

SALMET, JOHAN, an incredulous monk, 553 ; sent to prison, and is pardoned, 555.

SALYBRAUNT, king of Bougye, brother of Esclaramonde, offers Huon aid, 310.

SAPHADIN, Sowdan of Babylon and Egypt, 500.

SAVARY, Earl, killed by Huon, 298.

SAVARY or SAVORY, duke, father of Raoull, 315 ; brother of Emperor of Germany weeps over his son's death, 315 ; before Bordeaux, 319 ; fights with Huon, 321 ; is defeated, 322 ; retreats from an

- ttack, 339; believes Bordeaux impregnable, 340; urges Thierry o persist with siege, 390; falls on Gerames, 395.
- SEBYLLE meets Huon at Dunother, 98; daughter of Guynemer of St. Omer, and niece of Duke Sevin, 100; her history, *ib.*; directs Huon to the giant's chamber, 102; is married to a converted admiral of Babylon, 154.
- SEGE OF MELAYNE, an English romance, xviii.
- SEVIN or SÉGUIN, duke, his historical origin, xxviii, xxix; in romance, xxxvii; Huon's father, 5, 12, 13, 17, 23, 59, 61.
- SEYNE, Earl of, slain by Huon, 291.
- SEZAR, 73. *See* CÆSAR, JULIUS.
- SORBARE, Saracen ruler and reputed Christian, takes care of Florence and Clariet, 666; once king of Belmaryn, 668; offers to become Christian, 669; welcomes French pilgrims, 670; attacked by Saracens, 673; overcomes them, 674; advises Florence, 693; helps Ide to escape, 700.
- SORBRYN, nephew of Angolaffer, 184; challenges Ivoryn's bravest soldier, 185; is defied by Huon, 186; and killed, 187.
- SOWDONE, *i. e.* Sultan. *See* GAUDYS and SAPHADIN.
- SOWDONE OF BABYLON, an English romance, xviii *n.*
- SPAIN, king of, fights against Emperor of Rome, 714; is captured by Ide, 718; his life spared, 719.
- SPERGUER, Sir Hans, a German knight, 291.
- SYMCAN, temple of, 500.
- TAURIS, admiral of, welcomes Huon, 456; has served Charlemagne, 459; consents to turn Christian, 463; eats apple of youth, and grows young, 465; hallowed by bishop of Greece, 466; offers Huon his daughters in marriage, 467; promises to help in rescue of Esclaramonde, 469; with Huon against the admiral of Angore, 475; gets the admiral's horse, 477; is left by Huon, 480; at Colanders, 489; besieges the city, 493; conquers it, and finds Huon, 495; at Antioch, 498; marches to Jerusalem, 499; defeats Saracens there, 505-18; raises siege of Acre, 525; offers army to Huon against German Emperor, 525.
- THIERRY, Duke, 23.
- THIERRY, TYRREY, Emperor of Germany, declares tournaments at

Mayence, 278, 284 ; appealed to by Huon, 287 ; sees Huon murder Raoull, 288 ; pursues him, 291 ; is struck by him, 292 ; swears to take Bordeaux, 293 ; leads his army against Huon, 297 ; challenges Huon, 300 ; is defeated and rescued, 301 ; begs six months' truce, 302 ; at Cologne, 303 ; censures the provost for ignoring truce, 305 ; collects army at Mayence, 314 ; ravages land about Bordeaux, 317 ; before the city, 318 ; promises Esclaramonde to the slayer of Huon, 320 ; wounded by Huon, 323 ; orders Gerames to be hanged, 326 ; orders another attack on city, 338 ; declines peace, 343 ; attacks Bordeaux, 389 ; runs Gerames through the body, 396 ; enters Bordeaux, 398 ; forbids outrage, *ib.* ; speaks with Esclaramonde, 400 ; imprisons her at Mayence, 406 ; grieves for his nephew, 532 ; prepares to burn Esclaramonde, *ib.* ; spares her by Oberon's order, 542 ; treats her well, 543 ; receives precious stone from Huon, 561 ; releases Esclaramonde, 565 ; eats Huon's apple and becomes young, 568 ; at Chuny met Huon, 572 ; entertained at Bordeaux, 578.

THOLOMEUS, 411. *See* PTOLEMY.

THYBAULT, THYBAULTE, king of Jerusalem, 500, 502.

TRAMPOYNGFLE, TRAMPONGNIFLE, TRAMPOIGNIFLE [‘the which is as moch to say as Balaach Balak’], messenger from the Sowdan at Jerusalem, 500 ; is hanged, 520.

TRANSLYNE, TRANSELYNE, a fairy, 66, 601, 602, 603, 606, 684 ; her gift to Oberon, 73 ; niece of Morgan le Fay, 536.

TROYES, CHRETIEN DE, poet, xiv.

TRYSTRAM, xxvii ; died of love, 157.

TURPIN, his *Latin chronicle*, viii n., xx.

VERGIER, lord of, 530 ; kills the German Emperor's nephew, 531.



X. GLOSSARY.<sup>1</sup>

THE following words occurring in the text are clearly typographical errors:—

- p. 28, l. 13, *puysson read punysyon, i. e. punishment*.  
 p. 81, l. 16, *renynsyd read renynsyd, i. e. renounced*.  
 p. 223, l. 7, *eniunyd read eniunyd, i. e. enjoined*.  
 p. 305, l. 4, *asyse read aryse*.  
 p. 430, l. 30, *repenisshed read replenisshed*.  
 p. 596, l. 26, *stone read shone*.

A bought, *adv.* about, 372.

A bowndance, *sb.* abundance, 367.

A brode, *adv.* abroad, *sprede abroad* = spread out, 170.

A hye, *adv.* aloud, 197.

A pon, *prep.* upon, 5.

A tournyd, *perf.* have turned, 149.

Above, *adv.* on shore, 160. Cf. *Tor. of Portugal*: 'Ffast from the land row they began, *Above* they left that gentilman, With wild bestis to have byde.'

Abusshement, *sb.* ambush, 225.

Abye, *vb.* [buy], atone for, suffer for, 542. [O.E. *a*, out, *byegan*, to buy.]

Aduertysyd, *pp.* informed, 71. [Fr. *avertir*.]

Affectuosly, *adv.* earnestly, 9. [O. Fr. *affectueux*.]

Afrayed, *ppl.* alarmed, 40.

Al to brast, burst utterly asunder, 300; al = utterly, entirely to brast, *pt. ppl.* = burst asunder, from *tobresten* [A.S. *toberstan*]; *to* is a prefix signifying 'in pieces' or 'asunder.' Cf. *Judges* ix. 53: 'all to brake' = utterly brake in pieces.

All wheres, *adv.* everywhere, 136.

Almayne, *sb.* Germany, 296. [O.Fr. *almainque*.]

Almayns, *sb. pl.* Germans.

Alonely, *adj.* solitary, single, 46.

Alonlye, *adv.* solely, entirely; *emph.* for *only*, 9.

Alow, *vb.* commend, approve of, 337. [O.Fr. *alouer*, from Lat. *allaudare*.]

Alowed, *pt.* commended, praised, 686.

Amoures, *sb.* love, 155; in amoures = in love. [Fr. *amour*.]

Amyte, *sb.* friendship, 8. [Fr. *amitié*.]

Apareyled, *ppl.* attired, apparelled, 15.

Apayred, *ppl.* injured, weakened, 340. [O.Fr. *empeirer*, from Lat. *em* + *pejorare*, to worsen, make worse.]

Apeace, *vb.* appease, allay, 14.

Apechyle, *pt.* accused, impeached, 22; v. APELE.

Apeasyd, *ppl.* appeased, allayed, 16.

Apeched, *ppl.* betrayed, informed against, 720. [O.F. *empechier*.]

Apele, *vb.* accuse, impeach, 25. [O. Fr. *appeler*.] '*appeler*, . . . to accuse, appeach.'—*Cotgrave*.

<sup>1</sup> This part of the work is largely due to Mr. W. H. Utley of Owen's College, Manchester. Mr. Henry Bradley, co-editor of the *Oxford New Dictionary*, has kindly supplied a few notes.



Aperelyd, *ppl.* apparelled, 3.  
 Aperteynyd, *vb.* belonged, 4.  
 Apeychyd, *pt.* accused, impeached, 27.  
 Apon, *prep.* upon, 169.  
 Appellyd, *pp.* 44; v. APEALYDE.  
 Arson, *sb.* pommell, saddle-bow, 700. [O.Fr. *arzon.*]  
 Assaye, *vb.* try, test, 178.  
 Assenbeled, *pt.* attacked, assailed, 613. [O.Fr. *assembler.*] This meaning is very rare, and Murray's New English Dictionary cites this passage only in support of it. It occurs also on p. 659, l. 20.  
 Assoylled, *pt.* absolved, 217. [O. Fr. *a(s)soillir, a(s)soldre.*]  
 Asspyall, *sb.* [espial], a waylaying, 26. [O.Fr. *espier.*] '*espier, . . . to dog, lie for, waylay.*'—*Cotgr.*  
 Astonnyd, *pp.* stunned, 42. [O.Fr. *estoner, to stun.*] '*He fell to the grounde astonyed.*'—*Merlin*, x. 164.  
 Astaynst, *prep.* against, 108.  
 Atemperate, *adj.* temperate, 712. [O.Fr. *atempéré.*]  
 Atons, *adv.* at once, 431.  
 Auansyd, *pt.* advanced, 308.  
 Anaunt, *sb.* boast, 308; he made his avaunt = he boasted. [O.Fr. *avaunter, to boast.*]  
 Auayle, *vb.* lower, 359. [O.Fr. *avaler, from phr. à val, Lat. ad vallem.*] '*Drawe vp your ankers and aueyle your sayles.*'—*Lord Berners, Froiss.* l. cccxxiv., 619.  
 Auctoryte, *sb.* authority, power, 581. [O.Fr. *autorité.*]  
 Auow, *sb.* vow, 183.  
 Auoyd, *vb.* depart, 48. '*. . . he commanded them to auoid.*'—*G. Sandys, Trav.* 72.  
 Avoydyd, *pp.* emptied, cleared, 40. '*. . . commanded the chambre to be avoided.*'—*Elyot, Gov.* II. vii. 105.  
 Balays, *vb.* balance, steady, 460; i. e. ballast. [*Balays* is an intermediate form between *balance*, Fr. *balancer* and *ballast*, O.Sw.

*barlast*, due to confusion between the two.]  
 Baptyme, *sb.* baptism, 95. [Fr. *baptême.*]  
 Bassade, *sb.* embassy, 466. [O.Fr. *embassade.*]  
 Bayne, *sb.* bath, 698. [O.Fr. *baigne.*]  
 Baynyd, *pt.* bathed, 427.  
 Beofes, *sb.* beeves, cattle, 183. [O. Fr. *boef.*]  
 Besant, *sb.* 772. 'A gold coin, first struck at *Byzantium*, and seemingly equivalent to the Roman solidus or aureus, but afterwards varying in value between the English sovereign and half-sovereign. It was current in Europe from the 9th cent., and in England till superseded by the noble, *temp.* Edw. III. Used by Wyc. if to translate both *talentum* and *drachma.*'—*Murray.*  
 Besene, *adj.* clad, furnished, 119, 680.  
 Bet, *pt.* beat, hammered, 86.  
 Borow, *sb.* town, borough, 336. [A.S. *burh.*]  
 Bountye, *sb.* goodness, generosity, 146. [Fr. *bonté.*]  
 Brast, *pt.* broke, burst, 103. [A.S. *brestan.*]  
 Brent, *pp.* burnt, 192. [brennen, Chaucer, C. T., 2333. A.S. *byrnan.*]  
 Brest, *vb.* burst, 117. [A.S. *berstan.*] '*So wolde God myn herte wolde brest.*'—*Chaucer, C. T.*, 6685.  
 Bresten, *pp.* burst, bursten, 69.  
 Bretherne, *sb. pl.* brethren, 56.  
 Brochyd, *pt.* spurred, 22. [O.F. *brocher, to spur.*] '*Ther lances alle forth laid and ilk man broched his stede.*'—*Robert of Brunne*, p. 305.  
 Brother-germayn, a full brother; i. e. with same father and mother, 511. [O.Fr. *germaine.*]  
 Brunt, *sb.* attack, onset, 305. [Icel. *bruna.*]  
 Brute, *sb.* tumult, noise, 181. [Fr. *bruit.*]  
 Brydale, *sb.* bridal, wedding, 613. [M.E. *bride ale*, bride feast.]  
 Brydes, *sb. pl.* newly married couple, 217. [Here bryde = spouse.]

- Brynynge, *ppr.* burning, 103.  
 Burden, *sb.* bundle, 760. [*L. e.* as much as can be borne.]  
 Bushment, *sb.* ambuscade, ambush, 14.  
 By cause, *conj.* because, 19.  
 Camesyd, *adj.* flattened, 103; came-syd nose = a pug-nose. [*Fr. camus.* Ital. *camuso.*] 'And though my nose be *camused*, my lips thick.'—*Ben Jonson, Sad Shep.*, ii. 1. 'Round was his face & *camois* was his nose.'—*Chaucer, C. T.*, 3932.  
 Carnall, *adj.* pertaining to the flesh, hence related, connected by birth, 333. 'Thei were noble knyghtes . . . and many of hem *caruell* frendes.'—*Merlin*, I. ii. 117.  
 Caryag, *sb.* [carriage], things carried, baggage, accoutrements, 498. [*O. Fr. cariage.*] 'cariage . . . all the necessary provision of an army, baggage.'—*Cotgrave.*  
 Cassydony, *sb.* chalcedony, 440. [*Low Lat. cacedonius.*]  
 Caytyfe, *sb.* [cattiff], prisoner, mean person, 645. [*O. Fr. catif.*]  
 Chameney, *sb.* [chimney], fire-place, 383. [*O. Fr. cheminée.*]  
 Chatelyne, *sb.* castellan, governor of a castle or town, 493. [*Fr. châtelain.*]  
 Chaumberer, *sb.* maid-servant, 623. [*O. Fr. chambrière.*]  
 Clere, *sb.* face, countenance, 57. [*O. Fr. chere.*] 'The lady is rody in the clere.'—*Alisaunder.*  
 Chorlysshely, *adv.* churlishly, 757.  
 Chyualrey, *sb.* collective for a body or number of knights, 2.  
 Clame, *pt.* of climb, 652.  
 Clee, *sb.* *pl.* claws, 430. [*A.S. clá.*]  
 Clene, *adv.* completely, 197.  
 Clerke, *sb.* scholar, man of letters, 274.  
 Clocher, *sb.* belfry, 68. [*Fr. clocher.*]  
 Clypped, *pt.* embraced, 635. [*A.S. clyppen.*] ' . . . then ag-in worries he his daughter, with *clipping* her.'—*Shakspeare, Winter's T.*, V. ii.  
 Colyke, *sb.* colic, 194.  
 Comoned, *pt.* [communed], conversed, 135. [*O. Fr. communier.*]  
 Companye, *vb.* associate, consort, 17. [*O. Fr. compaignier.*]  
 Comunalte, *sb.* common people, 401. [*O. Fr. communaulté.*]  
 Condempne, *pr.* condemn, 167.  
 Conduite, *vb.* conduct, 18.  
 Connynge, *adj.* skilful, 172. [*A.S. cunnare.*]  
 Contynwe, *sb.* contents, 57. [*Fr. contenu.*]  
 Conuersante, *adj.* resident, having one's abode, 592.  
 Conyng, *sb.* skill, dexterity, 730.  
 Corante, *adj.* current, in circulation, 364. [*O. Fr. courant.*]  
 Coraunt, 52; v. *CORANTE.*  
 Cordiners, *sb.* *pl.* shoemakers [= cordwainers, from *corduain*, a kind of Spanish leather made at *Cordova*], 764.  
 Cordyall, *adj.* affectionate, cordial, 721.  
 Cosyn, *sb.* kinsman, cousin, 52.  
 Coude, *vb.* could, 499.  
 Couerte, *sb.* a covered place, hiding place, 636; by couerte = under cover, hiding. [*O. Fr. covert.*]  
 Couetys, *sb.* covetousness, 251. [*O. Fr. coveitise.*]  
 Counsell, *vb.* to take counsel, consult, 3.  
 Courteys, *adj.* courteous, 171. [*O. Fr. curteis.*]  
 Couyn, *sb.* trick, artifice, 50. [*O. Fr. covine.*] 'They ne knewe his sleight and his *couyne*.'—*Chaucer, C. T.*, 605.  
 Croytes, 320; v. *COUETYS.*  
 Coiffe, *sb.* [coif], a cap worn under the helmet, 715; a close fitting helmet, 24. [*O. Fr. coiffe.*]  
 Creature, *sb.* creator, 436.  
 Credens, *sb.* credit, 699. Cf. 'letters of credence.' [*O. Fr. credence.*]  
 Croupe, *sb.* [crop], back, *lit.* top, or that which sticks out, 169. [*A.S. croupe.* Cf. *I. el. kropp.*, a hump. *D.n. krop.* the trunk of the body.]  
 Crye, *sb.* proclamation, 296.  
 Crysten, *adj.* Christian, 83.

Damoselles, *sb. pl.* maids, 540. [O. Fr. *damoisele*.]

Dampned, *pp.* damned, 283; v. CONDEMNED.

DeCESSYD, *pp.* [deceased], dead, 54. [O. Fr. *deces*.]

Dedes, *sb. pl.* deeds, 171.

Defende, *vb.* forbid, 46. [Fr. *défendre*.]

Defowlyd, *pt.* [defiled], trod under foot, trampled on, 433. [O. Fr. *defouler*, to trample under foot.]

'... defouled hym under hym myd honde and myd fote.'—*Rob. of Glouc.*

Dele, *sb.* part, portion, 554. [A. S. *dæl*.]

Denyd, *pp.* dined, 190. [Fr. *diner*.]

Departed, *pp.* separated, 336. [O. Fr. *departir*, to distribute, separate.]

Deoure, *sb.* duty, 46. [Fr. *devoir*.]

Deuyses, *sb. pl.* conversation, 58. [Fr. *deviser*, to converse, chat.]

Deuysyd, *pp.* proposed, planned, 7; conversed, 273.

Deuysynge, *prp.* conversing, communing, 13; v. DEUYES.

Devours, *sb. pl.* duties, 300. [Fr. *devoirs*.]

Dismay, *vb. reflex.* to be dismayed, 17; dismay you not = be not dismayed.

Dolent, *adj.* sorrowful, 356. [Fr. *dolent*, doleful.]

Dolour, *sb.* pain, suffering, 23. [O. Fr. *doleur*.]

Domage, *sb.* misfortune, injury, 146. [Fr. *dommage*.]

Doubled, *sb.* doublet, 757.

Dought, *sb.* [doubt], fear, 9; v. DOUGHTED.

Doughted, *sb.* [doubted], feared, 197. [In M. E. usually spelt *douted*, from Lat. *dubitare*. Not connected with *doughty*, which is from A. S. *dyhtig*, valiant.]

Douted, 335; v. DOUGHTED.

Drams, *sb. pl.* drachmæ, 142.

Dressed up, erected, set up, 744. [Fr. *dresser*, to erect, set up.]

Durynge, *prp.* [during], enduring, 232. [Fr. *durer*, to endure, suffer.]

Dymes, *sb. pl.* [dimes], tithes, *i. e.* offerings, 485. [O. Fr. *disme*;

Lat. *decimus*.] 'He gaue hym dymes of alle thingis.'—*Wycliffe*, *Gen.* xiv. 20.

Dyn, *pp.* [done], used for, 502; past tense, = did.

Dysces, *sb.* decease, death, 603.

Dysconfyt, *vb.* [discomfit], vanquish, 47. [O. Fr. *desconfire*.]

Dyscounfyture, *sb.* discomfiture, defeat, 2. [O. Fr. *desconfiture*.]

Dyscryue, *vb.* [describe], describe, 140. [O. Fr. *descrire*.]

Dyshordenate, *adj.* [disordinate], unlawful, intemperate, 700. [Fr. *désordonné*.]

Dysordynate, 696; v. DYSHORDE-NATE.

Dysparasyon, *sb.* desperation, despair, 364.

Dyspence, *sb.* expense, 718. [O. Fr. *despence*.]

Dyssayue, *vb.* deceive, 69. [O. Fr. *decever*.]

Dysspyse, *vb.* [despise], to make despicable, *i. e.* to curse, 42.

Dyssymell, *vb.* [dissimule], to disguise, conceal, 254. [Fr. *dissimuler*.]

Dystroyed, *pp.* killed, 46.

Enbassed, *sb.* [embassade], embassy, 740.

Enbassetours, *sb. pl.* ambassadors, 740.

Enbusshid, *pp.* ambushed, 222.

Endroctryned, *pp.* [endoctrined], educated, taught, 576.

Enherytor, *sb.* [enheritor], heir, 4. [Fr. *héritier*.]

Ensampl, *sb.* example, 12. [O. Fr. *ensample*.]

Entermedled, *pt.* mingled, 337. [O. Fr. *entremedler*.] '*Entremedled* with tydynges.'—*Chaucer*, *House of Fame*, iii. 1031.

Entraylyd, *pp.* interwoven, variegated, 384. [O. Fr. *entreiller*.]

Entreated, *pp.* used, treated, 642. [O. Fr. *entraiter*.]

Erytage, *sb.* heritage, inheritance, 143.

Escryed, *pt.* cried out, called, 185. [O. F. *escrier*, to exclaim, call out.]

Excusyd, *pp.* accused, 26.

- Extorsyon, *sb.* [extortion], forcible exaction, 47.
- Eyen, *sb. pl.* eyes, 13.
- Fal, *vb.* [fall], to become, to happen; fal aquaynted = become acquainted, 629.
- Falshede, *sb.* falsehood, 253. [O.Fr. *fals.*]
- Fardell, *sb.* bundle, 172. [O.Fr. *fardel*; Low Lat. *fardellus.*] '... sittynge with hise *fardels* in the street.'—*Wycliffe, Judges* xix. 17.
- Fause, *adj.* forced [of a gallop], 335.
- Faye, *sb.* fairy, 536; the Fr. *le* is here used for *the*. [O.Fr. *fae.*]
- Fayrye, *sb.* the nation of Fairies; Fairyland, also magic, enchantment, 305. [O.Fr. *faerie.*] 'The contree of *Faerie.*'—*Chaucer, C. T.*, 13731.
- Faysable, *adj.* feasible, possible, 731. [O.Fr. *faisable.*]
- Feactes, *sb. pl.* [feats], deeds, actions, 15. [O.Fr. *faictes.*]
- Fell, *adj.* fierce, 120. [A.S. *fel.*]
- Fellest, *adj. superl.* cruellest, 210. [A.S. *fel.* fierce.]
- Felon, *adj.* malicious, wicked, 5. [O.Fr. *felon*; Low Lat. *felo*, a traitor.]
- Felony, *sb.* treachery, perfidy, 4; v. FELON.
- Fersly, *adv.* fiercely, 23. [O.Fr. *fers.*]
- Fleyngge, *pp.* fleeing, 181.
- Florence, *sb.* a gold coin, value 6s., 276.
- Folye, *pp.* foiled, defeated, 302. [O.Fr. *fouler*, to trample on.]
- Fordo, *vb.* undo, 487. [A.S. *fordon.*]
- Fournyshe, *vb.* [furnish], perform, 51. [Fr. *fournir*; O.H.G. *frumjan*, to perform.]
- Fre, *adj.* [free], noble, 273.
- Frendis, *sb. pl.* friends, 37.
- Fresshyngge, *sb.* relief, 488.
- Fret, *adj.* adorned, ornamented, 259. [A.S. *frætwan*, to adorn.] 'Alle hir fyue fyngres were *fretted* with rynges.'—*P. Plowman*, A. ii. 11.
- Frusshe, *sb.* encounter, 474. [O.Fr. *fruisse.*] 'Felle was the *frusshe*, fey were there mony.'—*Destr. of Troy*, 5931.
- Funt, *sb.* font, 216.
- Fyaunce, *vb.* [fiance], betrothe, aliance, 50. [O.Fr. *fiaveuer.*]
- Gables, *sb. pl.* imposts, customs, 210. [O.Fr. *gabelle.*] 'gabelle, (any kind of) impost, imposition, custom.'—*Cotgrave.*
- Gader, *vb.* gather, 305. [A.S. *gaderian.*]
- Gambaud, *vb.* gambol, 187. [Fr. *gambaud.*]
- Goodes, *sb. pl.* services, good deeds, 752.
- Goth, *vb.* goeth, 83. [3rd sing. prec. of *go.*]
- Grees, *sb. pl.* [degrees], steps, stairs, 373. [O.Fr. *gré*; Lat. *gradus.*]
- Grese, *sb. pl.* 119; v. GREES.
- Gruged, *pt.* [grudged], angered, 374. [O.Fr. *gruger*, to murmur.]
- Habandon, *vb.* abandon, give up, 190.
- Hache, *sb.* axe, 510. [Fr. *hache.*]
- Hast, *vb.* ask, 222.
- Haunt, *vb.* frequent, 10. [O.Fr. *hauter.*]
- Hayers, *sb. pl.* heirs, 720.
- Herber, *sb.* an arbour, a retreat formed by the branches of trees, 704. [There is some doubt whether this word is a corruption of *harbour*, O.E. *herberge*, O.Fr. *herberge*, a lodging (Skeat), or of M.E. *herber*, O.Fr. *herbier*, a garden of herbs (Stratman).]
- Herbyger, *sb.* [harbinger], one who looks out for a lodging for another, 504. [O.Fr. *herberge*, a lodging.]
- Herytes, *sb.* heiress, 642.
- Heuynes, *sb.* heaviness, 544.
- Hole, *adj.* [whole], healthy, well, 28. [A.S. *holen.*]
- Honeste, *sb.* chastity, 624. [O.Fr. *honeste.*]
- Hore, *adj.* [hoar], white, 224. [A.S. *hār.*]
- Hostrye, *sb.* hostelry, 235.
- Howdeous, *adj.* hideous, 489.
- Hyely, *adv.* nobly, 684.



Hyssed, *pt.* hoisted, 478. [Fr. *hausser*.]

Janglers, *sb. pl.* quarrelsome fellows, 10. [O.F. *jangler*, to talk loudly, to quarrel.]

Japery, *sb.* jesting, 85; in iapery = in jest. [Fr. *gaber*.]

Jentylmen, *sb. pl.* gentlemen, 247.

Ill, *adj.* evil, wicked, 4.

Imagenyd, *pt.* devised, 221.

Impe, *sb.* a graft or shoot, 12. [Low Lat. *impotus*, a graft.] 'Of feble trees ther comen wretched *imps*.' *Chaucer, C. T.*, 13962.

Inbushyd, *pp.* ambushed, 25.

Incombraunce, *sb.* trouble, 23.

Incontynent, *adv.* immediately, forthwith, 7. [Fr. *incontinent*.]

In portables, *adj. pl.* intolerable, 544. [O.Fr. *importable*.] 'importable, intollerable, insupportable, not to be borne.'—*Cotgrave*. The *s* is added by anal. with *tr. pl.*

Inpossessyons, *sb. pl.* impositions, taxes, 210.

Intreated, *pp.* treated, used, 365; yll intreated = ill used. [O.Fr. *entraite*.]

Jurnay, *sb.* journey, 275. [Fr. *journée*.]

Justed, *pp.* jousted, fought, 186. [O.Fr. *jouster*.]

Knowlege, *vb.* confess, acknowledge, 44.

Knowlegyng, *pp.* 504; v. KNOWLEGE.

Kyne, *sb.* king, 692.

Kyrtyl, *sb.* kirtle, 520. [A.S. *cyrtel*.]

Langusshe, *vb.* linger in pain, languish, 408. [O.Fr. *languir*.]

Large, *adj.* liberal, generous, 546. [Fr. *large*; Lat. *largus*, liberal.]

Larges, *sb.* [largess], liberality, 496. [Fr. *largesse*.]

Larum, *sb.* noise, abbrev. for alarum, 472. [Fr. *alarme*, to call to arms.]

Lenger, *adv.* longer, 48.

Lesyng, *sb.* [loosing], forfeit, 37.

Let, *vb.* to delay, be slow, also to

hinder, 37. [A.S. *læt*, slow, whence *late* is also derived.]

Leuys, *sb. pl.* levers, bars, 380. [O. Fr. *levier*.]

Loge, *sb.* lodge, 56. [Fr. *loge*; It. *loggia*.]

Logyng, *sb.* [lodging], dwelling-place, 31.

Longed, *vb.* belonged, 155. [A.S. *lengian*.] 'That aȝ perteineth and longeth all only to the judges.'—*Chaucer, Tale of Melibeus*.

Lothely, *adj.* loathsome, 533. [A.S. *lað*.]

Lowe, *vb.* lower, abase, 628.

Lybardes, *sb. pl.* [libbards], leopards, 16.

Lyge, *adj.* bound by feudal tenure, 236. [Etym. doubtful] lyge man, [liegeman] = subject, vassal. '... liegemen to the Dane.'—*Shaks., Hamlet*.

Lyger, *adj.* nimble, 382. [O.Fr. *legier*.] 'legier, quick, nimble, active.'—*Cotgrave*.

Male, *sb.* bag, wallet, 170. [O.Fr. *male*; mod. Fr. *malle*.] This word still survives in the word *mail*, in the sense of letters, &c., carried by post, from the bag (*mail-bag*) in which they are carried.

Malle, *sb.* mallet, hammer, 484. [O.Fr. *mail*; Lat. *malleus*.]

Mantell tree, *sb.* the shelf over a fire-place, 383. [O.Fr. *mantel*, and *tree*, prob. in sense of a piece of wood, a beam.] 'Upon the mantle tree . . . stood a pot of lambative electuary.'—*Tatler*, No. 266.

Mastres, *sb.* mistress, governess, 696. [O.Fr. *maistresse*.]

Medelyd, *pp.* [meddled], mixed, mingled, 442. [O.Fr. *medler*, to mix, jumble.]

Meny, *sb.* retinue, company, 499. [O.Fr. *mesnie*.] 'The kyng and his meyne went to burgh Konan.'—*Robert of Brunne*, p. 15.

Meruayll, *sb.* wonder, astonishment, 321. [O.Fr. *merveille*.]

Mew, a sparhawke, 177. (1) moult



- a sparrowhawk, (2) cage a sparrowhawk.
- Mew, *vb.* to confine, to keep in a cage, a term in falconry, 177. Cf. Baret's *Alvearie*: 'A mue for haukes, cauea vel cauceola accipitrum; to muen a hauke, in cauean, &c., compingere accipitrem.' — *Baret*.
- Minysshed, *vb.* diminished, 341. [O. Fr. *menuisier*, to lessen.]
- Mo, *adj.* and *adv.* more, 64. [A.S. *mā*.]
- Monyssions, *sb. pl.* munitions, 58.
- Moo, *adv.* [mo], more, 36.
- Mossell, *sb.* muzzle, snout, 140. [O. Fr. *musel*.]
- Motons, *sb. pl.* sheep. [Fr. *moutons*.]
- Moyte, *sb.* half, 467. [Fr. *moitié*.]
- Mulet, *sb.* mule, 52.
- Muryed, *pp.* immured, 650. [Fr. *murer*.]
- Mygh, *vb.* [might], could, 67. [A.S. *mygan*, to be able.]
- Nerehand, *adv.* nearly, almost, 40.
- Noblesse, *sb.* nobles collectively, company of lords and ladies, 314. [Fr. *noblesse*.]
- Nones, [nonce], for the nones, 133; [= orig. *for then anes*] = for the once, for the occasion or purpose.
- Nother, *conj.* neither, 5.
- Nowell, *sb.* [noel], a cry of joy, orig. a Christmas carol, 578. [Fr. *noël*, Christmas.]
- Noyfull, *adj.* irksome, painful, 440. [O.Fr. *ausi*, mod. Fr. *ennui*, annoyance.]
- Oboute, *prep.* about, 13.
- Or, *adv.* ere, before, 11. [A.S. *ær*.]
- Or it be longe, before long, 273.
- Orpheline, *sb.* orphan, 695. [Fr. *orpheline*.]
- Orphelyns, *sb. pl.* orphans, 210.
- Orroure, *sb.* horror, 122.
- Orryble, *adj.* horrible, 101.
- Oueragis, *sb. pl.* works, ornaments, 380. [Fr. *ouvrage*.]
- Pagany, *sb.* heathendom, country of the pagans, 170.
- Parage, *sb.* lineage, birth, 693. [Fr. *parage*.] 'Ye are a man in this town of grete *parage*.' — *Barons*, *Froiss.*, ii. 52.
- Parelles, *sb. pl.* perils, 56.
- Parentes, *sb. pl.* cousins, kindred, 2. [Fr. *parent*, a cousin or kinsman.]
- Parfayte, *adj.* complete, 66. [O.Fr. *parfaite*.]
- Parforce, *adv.* by force, 275. [Fr. *par-* and *force*.]
- Parfyte, *adj.* perfect, complete, 294.
- Pariuryd, *pp.* perjured, 487.
- Parteynynge, *pr. p.* belonging, 8. [O.Fr. *partenir*.]
- Pastours = pastures, 477.
- Patrone, *sb.* captain, 212. 'Patrone of a galley, *patro de galie*.' — *Palsgrave*.
- Paynyms, *sb. pl.* pagans, heathens, 81. [Fr. *païenisme*.]
- Pelot, *sb.* pilot, 358. [O.Fr. *pilot*.]
- Persuaunt, *vb.* pursue, 81.
- Perteyse, *sb. pl.* parties, 507.
- Petuously, *adv.* piteously, 35, 715. [O.Fr. *piteus*.]
- Playse, *vb.* please, 36. [O.Fr. *plaisir*, to please.]
- Plee, *sb.* a suit, trial, 26. [O.Fr. *plai*.]
- Portables; v. IN PORTABLES.
- Porte, *sb.* gate, 56. [Fr. *porte*.]
- Poynt, *sb.* condition in good point = in good condition, trans. of Fr. *enbonpoint* [*en bon point*], 307.
- Praysyd, *vb.* esteemed, valued, 39. [O.Fr. *praiser*.] 'She praiseth not his playing worth a bene.' — *Chaucer*, *C. T.*, 9728.
- Proues, *sb.* prowess, valour, 1. [O. Fr. *prouesse*.]
- Pryce, to 'blow the pryce' means to 'blow a blast to celebrate the capture of an animal.' The phrase occurs several times in Middle English; v. *Sir Gawain*, 1362, also *Bl. of St. Albans*, and *MS. Cotton Vesp. B. xii.*, quoted by the editors of *Sir Tristram*. 'The pryce' was blown when the hunting party arrived at the door of the hall on their return. In *Sir Tristram* the same thing is called the 'tokening' in l. 518, but in

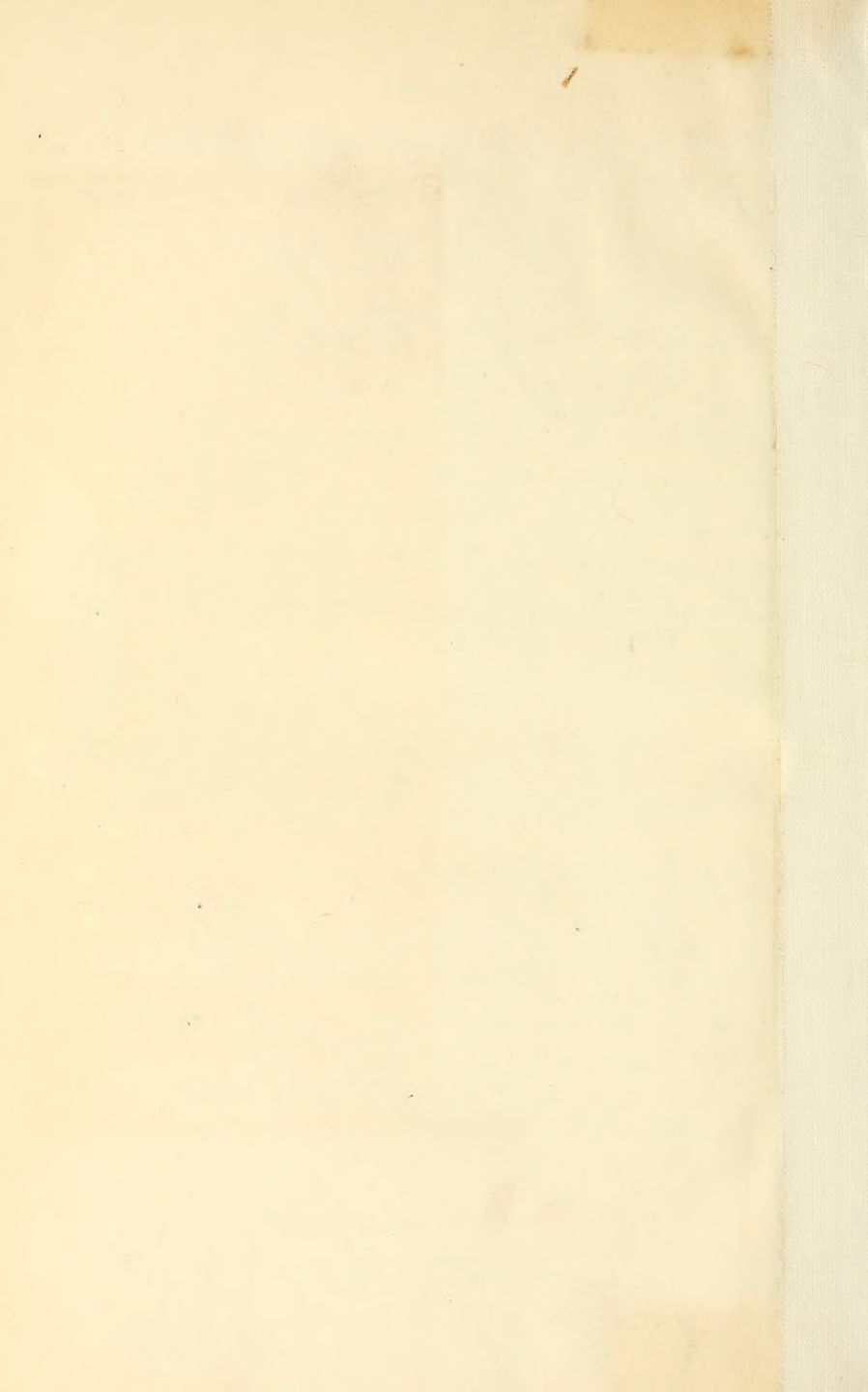
- 2749/50 we have, 'He blewe priis as he can þre mot oþer mare.' The word is probably to be identified with Fr. *prise*.
- Pryuey, *adj.* privy, intimately conversant with, 13. [O.Fr. *prive*.]
- Purchase, *vb.* procure, 12. [O.Fr. *purchacer*.]
- Purcoloys, *sb.* portcullis, 335. [O.Fr. *porte coulisse*.]
- Puruey, *vb.* provide, 599. [O.Fr. *porvoir*.]
- Pusant, *adj.* puissant, powerful, 47. [Fr. *puissant*.]
- Puyssance, *sb.* puissance, might, 39.
- Pyght, *pp.* pitched, 285. 'the kyng then *pyght* his paulyions.' —*Sabyan*, ii. ann. 1272.
- Pylled, *pp.* hairless, bald. [Lat. *pilo*, to make bald.] Cf. pill-pate, a shaven head.
- Pyllynge, [pillling], pillaging, 401. [Fr. *pillier*, to pillage.]
- Pyraottes, *sb. pl.* pirates, 375.
- Quarter, *sb.* portion, 13.
- Queyntance, *sb.* acquaintance, 92. [O.Fr. *coint*.]
- Rased, *pp.* torn, lit. scraped, 145. [Fr. *raser*, to scrape.]
- Recountre, blow, attack, 431. [Fr. *rencontre*.]
- Reculyd, *pt.* recoiled, 42. [Fr. *reculer*.]
- Reculynge, *pr. p.* recoiling, retreating, 317.
- Regardyd, *pp.* looked, 17. [Fr. *regarder*, to look.]
- Releue, *vb.* a feudal term, signifying to recognise with the usual formalities that a fief is held from the feudal lord, 5. [Fr. *relever*.] In 511/4, releue = to rise up again.
- Releuyd, *pt.* rose up, 147. [Fr. *relever*.]
- Rengyd, *pp.* ranged, 494. [O.Fr. *renger*.]
- Renoume, *sb.* renown, fame, 2. [Fr. *renom*, *renommée*.] '... O thou far renowned sonne.' —*Spenser*, *F. Q.*, i. 6.
- Renyed, *pp.* denied, 89. [Fr. *renier*, to deny.]
- Renynsyd, *pt.* renounced, 81. [Fr. *renoncer*.]
- Repenissed, for replenished = filled again, 430.
- Requere, *vb.* require, ask, 3. [O.Fr. *requerir*.]
- Requyre, *vb.* require, ask, 264; requyre me of = ask me for, prob. for Fr. *requerir de*.
- Resorte, *sb.* refuge, resource, 752. [Fr. *ressort*.]
- Retourned, turned, 637.
- Rude, *adj.* coarse, rough, 300. [Fr. *rude*.]
- Rybault, *sb.* [ribald], a low fellow, 85. [O.Fr. *ribaud*.]
- Rybawdis, *sb. pl.* [ribalds], brutal wretches, 538. [O.Fr. *ribaud*, *riband*.]
- Ryghtwysly, *adv.* righteously, 251. [A.S. *rihtwis*, wise as to what is right.]
- Ryuyled, riveled, *pp.* wrinkled, shrunk, 568. 'I'll give thee tackling made of riveled gold, Wound on the barks of odoriferous trees.' —*Marlowe's Dido*, 1594.
- Sage, *adj.* wise, discerning, 214. [Fr. *sage*.]
- Saruage, *sb.* [serfage], slavery, servitude, 468. '... Doth in lordship and *servage*.' —*Chaucer*, *C. T.*, 11106.
- Saue countyte, *sb.* safe conduct, 719.
- Sawyd, *pp.* saved, 477. [M.E. *sawuen* for *sawen*, Fr. *sauver*.]
- Sclaue, *sb.* slave, 161. [Fr. *esclave*.]
- Scole, *sb.* school, 419. [A.S. *scōlu*.]
- Scot, *sb.* share, a contribution towards the general fund, 704. [O.Fr. *escot*.] This is the original meaning, but here it seems to mean rather that for which the share is paid, not the share itself. Cf. '... we may fortune to mete with suche that shall pay for our *scotte*.' —*Berners*, *Froiss.*, i. 207.
- Sease, *vb.* cease, 14.
- Seen, *conj.* since, 26.
- Semblant, *sb.* [semblance], appearance, 26. [O.Fr. *semblance*.]
- Semblaunt, made semblaunt = pretended, 205; v. SEMBLANT.

- Semylytude, *sb.* [similitude], likelihood, 41.
- Sennys, *conj.* since, 71.
- Sercles, *sb. pl.* [circles], 715; v. SERKELL.
- Serkell, *sb.* [circle], a band worn round the helmet, 24. [O.Fr. *sercle*.]
- Sertes, *sb. pl.* servants, 138.
- Set, *pp.* put, placed, 189.
- Sew, *conj.* since, 49.
- Seygnoryes, *sb. pl.* [seignories], domains, 140. [O.F. *seigneurie*.]
- Sher thursdaye, Shrove thursday, 560.
- Sirode, *sb.* sea-road, 359.
- Skapyd, *pt.* escaped, 16.
- Skaut, *adv.* [scout], scarcely, 559. [Icel. *skautpt.*]
- Sle, *vb.* slew, 40.
- Slee, *vb.* slay, 43.
- Sleuers, *sb. pl.* slivers, fragments, 42. [A.S. *sligan*, to cleave.]
- Smoke, *sb.* smock, 699. [A.S. *smoc*.]
- Solas, *sb.* [solace], comfort, 606. [O.Fr. *solaz*.]
- Solempne, *adj.* solemn, 36.
- Somer, *sb.* pack-horse, sumpter horse, 144. [O.Fr. *somier*, a pack-horse.] v. SUMPTER RS.
- Sommer, *sb.* 52; v. SOMER.
- Sompterhors, *sb.* [sumpterhorse], pack-horse, 702. [O.Fr. *sommetier*, from O.Fr. *somme*, a pack, burden.]
- Soort, *sb.* [sort], lot, company, 38. [Fr. *sorte*.]
- Soppe, *sb.* sup, drink, 38. [Fr. *souper*; A.S. *súpan*.]
- Sot, *sb.* fool, 47. [Fr. *sot*, a fool.]
- Sowdeours, *sb. pl.* soldiers, 314. '... he had of suche *sowdeours* to defende hym.'—*Fabyan, Chron.* c. 82.
- Sowned, *pt.* [sound], swooned, 300. 'Sound' is common in Shakspeare in this sense.
- Sparhawke, *sb.* sparrowhawk, 7.
- Sperclyd, *pt.* spread, scattered, 476.
- Sporres, *sb. pl.* spurs, 291; on the sporres = in great haste; equiv. to modern phr. 'with whip and spur.'
- Spryngynge tyme, spring time, 525.
- Stalle, *pt.* stole, 310.
- Stethy, *sb.* anvil, 380. [Icel. *steði*, an anvil.]
- Stradiot, *sb.* a kind of soldier, 761. [O.Fr. *estradiot*.] 'Among the Frenchmen were certaine light horsmen called *stradiotes*.'—*Hall, Henry VIII.*, f. 28.
- Stuyd, *pp.* [stewed], bathed, washed, 543. [O.Fr. *estuer*, to bathe.] 'estuver, to stue, soake, bathe.'—*Cotgrave*.
- Swerde, *sb.* sword, 182. [A.S. *sweorde*.]
- Swounyd, *pt.* swooned, fainted, 24.
- Sygned, *pp.* assigned, appointed, 473. [O.Fr. *signer*.] *Chaucer, Ct. of Love*, l. 642.
- Syn, *conj.* since, 5. [A.S. *sithen*.]
- Syngnory, *sb.* seignory, kingdom, dominion, 4. [Fr. *seigneurie*.]
- Synse, *conj.* since, as, 36.
- Syt, *vb.* to lean on, rest on, 43.
- Tale, *sb.* number, 328. [A.S. *taln*.]
- Taylles, *sb. pl.* tolls, taxes, 210. [O.Fr. *tailles*.]
- Temperours, for themperours, the emperor's, 13.
- Than, then, 15. [A.S. *thanne*.]
- Thedyr, *adv.* thither, 60. [A.S. *ðider*.]
- Thentent, for 'the entent' = the intent, 'for thentent' = with the intention, 60.
- Thought, *sb.* [thought], care, trouble, 3. '... the old man for very thought and grief of heart pined away.'—*Holland*.
- Thursty, *adj.* thirsty, 66. [A.S. *thurst*.]
- Tonne, *sb.* tun, barrel, 484. [A.S. *tunne*, a barrel.]
- Tornoys, *sb. pl.* tourneys, tournaments, 62. [O.Fr. *tournoi*.]
- Tournyd, *pt.* returned, 210. 'Ere from this war thou *turn* a conqueror.'—*Shakspeare*.
- Traytour, *adj.* faithless, traitourous, 41. [O.Fr. *traiteur*.]
- Treason, *sb.* treachery, 44.
- Trepasyd, *pt.* [trespassed], departed, 17. [O.Fr. *trespasser*, to go beyond, depart.] 'Robert de Bruce

- ... *trespassed* out of this uncertain world.'—*Berners, Froiss.*
- Trewes, *sb.* truce, 304. [O.Fr. *trues.*]
- Trone, *sb.* throne, 216. [O.Fr. *throne.*]
- Trought, *pt.* believed, 44. [From M.E. *trowen*, mod. E. *trouw*, A.S. *treowian.*]
- Truage, *sb.* orig. meaning is homage, fealty, 334. Here it seems to be collective for those who do homage, *i. e.* prisoners.
- Truss, *vb.* to pack, bind up, 173. [O.Fr. *trusser.*]
- Trybutayr, *adj.* tributary, subject, 105. [O.Fr. *tributaire.*]
- Tryumphe, *sb.* glory, 41.
- Tuo, *num.* two, 252.
- Vance, a vance for avaunt, *q. v.*, 69.
- Vauerynge, *sb.* wavering, 712.
- Vaylable, *adj.* [valuable], profitable, 12. [O.Fr. *valer*, to be of use.]
- Vayleth, *vb.* availleth, 254.
- Veleny, *sb.* villainy, 20.
- Vertu, *sb.* strength, 24. [Fr. *vertu*; Lat. *virtus.*]
- Very, *adj.* true, 168. [O.Fr. *verai.*]
- Ungarcyous, *adj.* ungracious, 631.
- Vttranse, *sb.* [utterance], extremity, 47. [O.Fr. *oultrance*; mod. Fr. *outrance*: in phrase *à outrance.*] 'to the utterance.'—*Macb.*, III. i. 72.
- Vttraunce, 196; v. VTTRANSE.
- Wan, *vb.* won, 184.
- Wanhope, *sb.* delusion, false hope, 364. [A.S. *wan*, deficient.] 'The foolish wanhope of some usurer.'—*Chaloner.*
- Warde, to her warde = toward her, 254. Cf. 'to you ward.'—2 *Cor.* xiii. 12.
- Wassale, *sb.* [vassal], wretch, villain, 23. 'O, *vassal!* miscreant!'—*K. Lear*, I. i.
- Wayter, *sb.* boarhound, 50. [Fr. *vautre.* Ital. *veltro.*]
- Went, *pp.* thought, 233. [*pt.* of *wenen*, to suppose, ween. A.S. *wénen.*] 'She had *went* it had bene hir husbande.'—*Chaucer, The Mylner of Abingdon.*
- Wenyng, *pr. p.* [weening], thinking, 21; v. WENT.
- Wesshyde, *pp.* washed, 537. [M.E. *weschen.*]
- Wheareas, *adv.* where, 744.
- Whereas, *adv.* where.
- Wight, *adj.* [wight], stout, strong, 96. [Icel. *vigr*, serviceable for war.]
- Witsonday, *sb.* Whit-Sunday, 731. [White Sunday, perhaps from white garments worn on that day. *Vigfusson.*]
- Wode, *adj.* violent, raging, 479. [A.S. *wód*, mad, raging.] 'What shulde he studie and make himselfen wood.'—*Chaucer, C. T.*, 184. '... *wode* within this wood.'—*Shakspeare, Mid. N. Dr.*, II. i. 192.
- Wold, *pp.* willed, wished, 304. [A.S. *willen*, *pt.* l. *wolde.*]
- Woll, *vb.* wishes to, would, 87.
- Wyage, *sb.* voyage, 16. [O.Fr. *veiage.*]
- Wynynge, *sb.* [winning], gain, 13. [A.S. *winnan.*]
- Yentyll, *adj.* [gentle], noble, gallant, 20. [O.Fr. *gentil.*] 'gentil, ... gallant, noble.'—*Cotgrave.*
- Yll, *adj.* [ill], wicked, 37.
- Ylnes, *sb.* [illness], wickedness, 43. 'She that is ynchaste is a sea and treasure of all *ilnesse.*'—*Vives.*
- Ymagenyde, *pp.* imagined, planned, 2.
- Ynow, *adj. pl.* enough, 84. [A.S. *genoh.*]
- Yode, *pt.* rode, 636.
- Yought, *sb.* youth, 65. [A.S. *geóguð.*]







PR  
1119  
E5  
no.41,  
etc.

Early English Text  
Society  
[Publications]  
Extra series. no.41,43,50

PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE  
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET

---

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY

---

CIRCULATE AS MONOGRAPH



